Rules for Building and Classing

Marine Vessels

Part 3
Hull Construction and Equipment



July 2025

RULES FOR BUILDING AND CLASSING

MARINE VESSELS
JULY 2025

PART 3
HULL CONSTRUCTION AND EQUIPMENT

American Bureau of Shipping
Incorporated by Act of Legislature of
the State of New York 1862

© 2025 American Bureau of Shipping
1701 City Plaza Dr
Spring, TX 77389 USA

PART 3

Hull Construction and Equipment

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 General....1

Section 1 Introduction....4
Section 2 General Requirements....14

CHAPTER 2 Hull Structures and Arrangements....37

Section 1 Longitudinal Strength....64
Section 2 Shell Plating....84
Section 3 Decks....107
Section 4 Bottom Structures....119
Section 5 Frames....146
Section 6 Web Frames and Side Stringers....163
Section 7 Beams and Longitudinals....172
Section 8 Pillars, Deck Girders and Transverses....186
Section 9 Watertight Bulkheads and Doors....196
Section 10 Deep Tanks....222
Section 11 Superstructures, Deckhouses and Helicopter Decks....230
Section 12 Machinery Space and Tunnel....257
Section 13 Stems, Stern Frames, Rudder Horns, and Propeller Nozzles....262
Section 14 Rudders and Steering Equipment....287
Section 15 Protection of Deck Openings....354
Section 16 Protection of Shell Openings....405
Section 17 Bulwarks, Rails, Freeing Ports, Side Scuttles,Windows, Ventilators, Tank Vents and Overflows....425
Section 18 Ceiling, Sparring, and Protection of Steel....454
Section 19 Weld Design....459
Section 20 Guidance on Finite Element Analysis....479
Appendix 1 Calculation of Shear Stresses for Vessels Having Longitudinal Bulkheads....486
Appendix 2 Loading Manuals and Loading Instruments....489
Appendix 3 Loading Manuals and Loading Instruments: Additional Requirements for Bulk Carriers, Ore

Carriers and Combination Carriers 150 Meters (492 Feet) and above in Length (L_f) 494
Appendix 4 Buckling Strength of Longitudinal Strength Members for Vessels Over 61 m (200 ft) in Length..... 500
Appendix 5 Guidelines for Calculating Bending Moment and Shear Force in Rudders and Rudder Stocks.....509
Appendix 6 Portable Beams and Hatch Cover Stiffeners of Variable Cross Section 521
Appendix 7 Review of Portable Industrial Equipment and Modules..... 523
Appendix 8 Buckling Strength Assessment of Ship Structural Elements..... 531

CHAPTER 3 Subdivision and Stability.....579
Section 1 General Requirements..... 585
Appendix 1 Intact Stability of Tankers During Liquid Transfer Operations..... 601
Appendix 2 Intact Stability Requirements for Offshore Support Vessels.....604
Appendix 3 Intact Stability Requirements for Fishing Vessels.....612
Appendix 4 Subdivision and Damage Stability Requirements for Bulk Carriers.....631
Appendix 5 Damage Stability Requirements for Offshore Supply Vessels.....634
Appendix 6 Damage Stability Requirements for Fishing Vessels 640
Appendix 7 Computer Software for Onboard Stability Calculations 644

CHAPTER 4 Fire Safety Measures.....654
Section 1 Structural Fire Protection 656
Appendix 1 Fiber Reinforced Plastic (FRP) Gratings 659

CHAPTER 5 Equipment.....664
Section 1 Anchoring, Mooring, and Towing Equipment..... 667
Section 2 Mooring of Vessels at Single Point Moorings 704
Section 3 Equipment without symbol Ⓔ 709

CHAPTER 6 Navigation.....710
Section 1 Visibility 711

CHAPTER 7 Testing, Trials and Surveys During Construction - Hull.....722
Section 1 Tank, Bulkhead and Rudder Tightness Testing..... 724
Section 2 Trials..... 738
Section 3 Surveys..... 739

PART 3

CHAPTER 1
General

CONTENTS

SECTION 1 Introduction 4

1 Introduction 4
- 1.1 Application 4
- 1.2 Goals 4
- 1.3 Organization of Hull Construction Requirements 4

3 Length 5
- 3.1 Scantling Length (L) 5
- 3.3 Freeboard Length (L_f) 6

5 Breadth (B) 7

7 Depth 7
- 7.1 Molded Depth (D) 7
- 7.3 Scantling Depth D_s 8

9 Draft 8
- 9.1 Molded Draft (d) 8
- 9.3 Scantling Draft (d_s) 8

11 Maximum Service Speed (V) 8

13 Molded Displacement and Block Coefficient 8
- 13.1 Molded Displacement (Δ) 8
- 13.3 Block Coefficient (C_b) 9

15 Decks 9
- 15.1 Freeboard Deck 9
- 15.3 Bulkhead Deck 9
- 15.5 Strength Deck 9
- 15.7 Superstructure Deck 9

17 Weights 10
- 17.1 Deadweight (DWT) 10
- 17.3 Lightship Weight 10

19 Primary Supporting Members 10

21 Local Supporting Members 10

23 Framing Systems 10

23.1 Transverse Framing....10
23.2 **Longitudinal Framing** 11
25 Gross Tonnage....12
25.1 International Tonnage....12
25.3 National Tonnage....12
27 Units 12
29 Watertight....12
31 Weathertight....13

FIGURE 1 Typical Organization of Hull Construction and Equipment Rules 5
FIGURE 2 Scantling Length and Draft....6
FIGURE 3 Freeboard Length (L_f) 7
FIGURE 4 Molded Depth (D) 7
FIGURE 5 Decks 10
FIGURE 6 Transverse Framing 11
FIGURE 7 Longitudinal Framing....12

SECTION 2 General Requirements....14
1 General 14
1.1 Objective....14
1.2 Application....15
1.3 Material 15
3 Application of Steel Materials 150 mm (6.0 in.) and Under in Thickness 17
3.1 Selection of Material Grade 17
3.5 Ships Exposed to Low Air Temperatures 21
3.7 Design Temperature t_D 24
3.9 Cold Cargo for Ships Other Than Liquefied Gas Carriers....25
5 Scantlings 25
5.1 General 25
5.3 Rounding of Calculated Thickness....26
5.5 Direct Analysis 26
7 Proportions 26
9 Workmanship 27
11 Drydocking 27
13 Structural Elements and Members....27
13.1 General 27
13.3 Primary Supporting Members....27
13.5 Local Supporting Members....28
15 Structural Design Details 29
15.1 General 29
15.3 Termination of Structural Members 29
15.5 Fabrication 30

15.7 Bolted Connections..... 30
15.9 Connection of Stiffeners and Main Supporting Members..... 30
17 Certification of Materials, Equipment, and Components..... 31
17.1 Basic Requirements..... 31
17.3 Type Approval Program..... 32
17.5 Non-mass Produced Equipment and Components..... 32
17.7 Details of Certification of Some Representative Products..... 32
19 Foundations and Supporting Structure 34
19.1 General..... 34

TABLE 1 Material Grades 17
TABLE 2A Material Class or Grade of Structural Members for Vessels ≥ 90 m (295 ft) in Length..... 18
TABLE 2B Material Class or Grade of Structural Members for Vessels 61 m (200 ft) ≤ *L* < 90 m (295 ft) in Length..... 20
TABLE 3 Application of Material Classes and Grades – Structures Exposed at Low Temperatures 22
TABLE 4 Material Grade Requirements for Classes I, II and III at Low TemperaturesClass I..... 23
TABLE 5 Certification Details - Hull Materials..... 32
TABLE 6 Certification Details - Equipment..... 33
TABLE 7 Certification Details - Structural Components..... 34
TABLE 8 Specific Foundation and Supporting Structure Requirements 35

FIGURE 1 Typical Deck Arrangement for Membrane Type Liquefied Gas Carriers 20
FIGURE 2 Commonly Used Definitions of Temperatures 25
FIGURE 3 Longitudinal Extension at End 30
FIGURE 4 Full Collar Plates 31

PART 3

CHAPTER 1
General

SECTION 1
Introduction *(2024)*

1 Introduction *(2024)*

1.1 Application *(2024)*

These Rules are applicable for marine vessels* intended for unrestricted service having a speed length ratio $V/\sqrt{L} < 2.36(1.3)$ where L is in meters (feet) as defined in [3.1] and V is in knots as defined in [11]; otherwise the ABS *Rules for Building and Classing High-Speed Craft* apply.

Note: * Marine vessels herein include these vessels formerly covered by ABS *Rules for Building and Classing Steel Vessels*, ABS *Rules for Building and Classing Offshore Support Vessels,* and ABS *Rules for Building and Classing Steel Vessels under 90 Meters (295 Feet) in Length.*

1.2 Goals *(2024)*

Part 3 primarily covers Structural and Stability Goals. In addition, Fire Safety, Anchoring, Mooring, and Towing Equipment, and Navigation Goals are covered. Tier 1 goals are also provided in each section throughout this Part. Refer to ABS *Rules for Alternative Arrangements, Novel Concepts and New Technologies (Part 1D)* for a comprehensive list of goals.

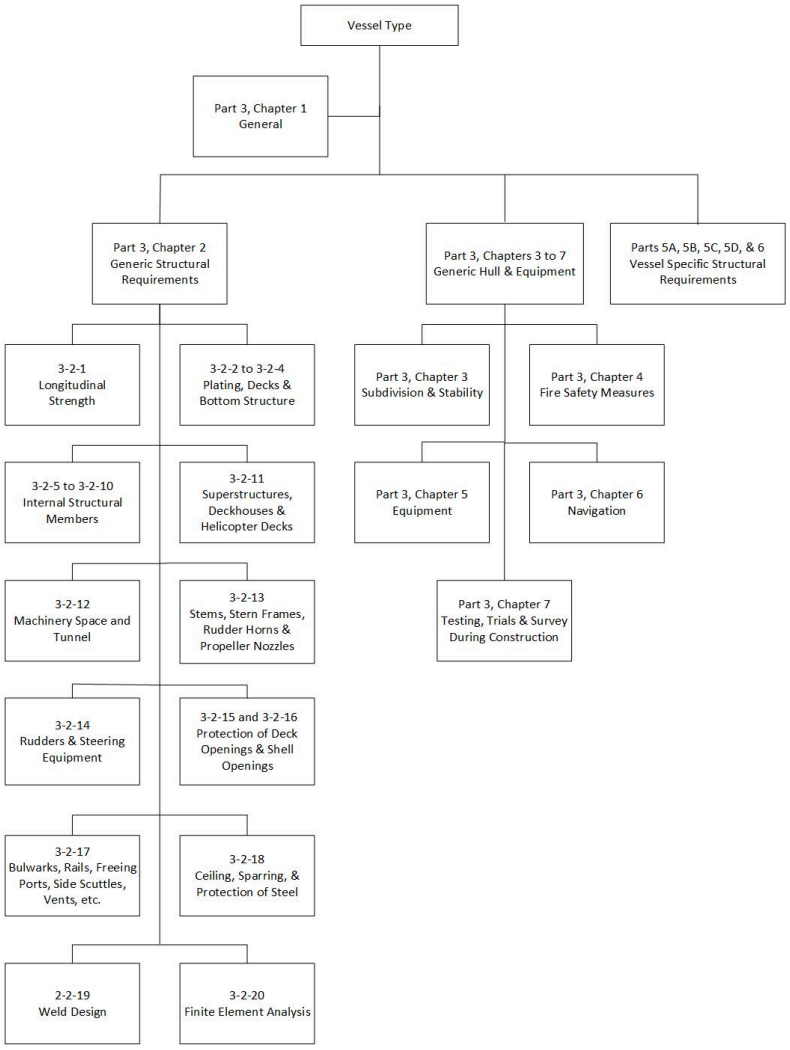
1.3 Organization of Hull Construction Requirements *(2024)*

Part 3 contains classification requirements for hull construction and equipment. These requirements complement the vessel-specific requirements contained in:

- Part 5A & 5B, Specific Vessel Types, Common Structural Rules for Bulk Carriers and Oil Tankers
- Part 5C, Specific Vessel Types
- Part 5D, Offshore Support Vessels for Specialized Services
- Part 6, Specialized Items and Systems
- Other applicable ABS Requirements

The typical relationship between the requirements contained in Part 3 and the various vessel-specific requirements is shown in [FIGURE 1]. The extent of the different Specific Vessel Type Rule sets varies in scope, therefore, when there is overlap with Part 3 requirements, the Specific Vessel Type requirements will govern.

FIGURE 1
Typical Organization of Hull Construction and Equipment Rules



The following definitions of symbols and terms are to be understood (in the absence of other specifications) where they appear in the Rules.

3 Length

3.1 Scantling Length (L) *(2024)*

L is the distance in meters (feet) measured on the waterline at the scantling draft from the fore side of the stem to the centerline of the rudder stock. For use with these Rules, L is not to be less than 96% and need not be greater than 97% of the extreme length on the waterline at the scantling draft. See [FIGURE 2] .

The forward end of L is to coincide with the fore side of the stem on the waterline on which L is measured.

In ships without rudder stock (e.g., ships fitted with azimuth thrusters), L is to be taken equal to 97% of the extreme length on the waterline at the scantling draft.

In ships with an unusual stern and bow arrangement, the length, L, is to be specially considered.

3.1.1 Forward End *(2024)*

The forward end (FE) is the perpendicular at the intersection of the waterline at the scantling draft with the fore side of the stem. See [FIGURE 2] .

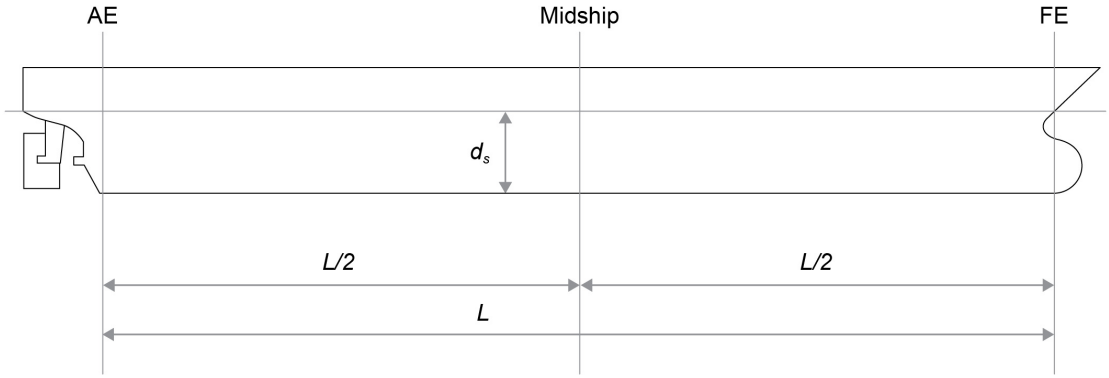
3.1.2 After End *(2024)*

The after end (AE) is the perpendicular at the aft end of the Scantling Length, L . See [FIGURE 2] .

3.1.3 Amidships *(2024)*

Amidships is the midpoint between the forward end (FE) and the after end (AE). See [FIGURE 2] .

FIGURE 2
Scantling Length and Draft *(2024)*



3.3 Freeboard Length (L_f) *(2024)*

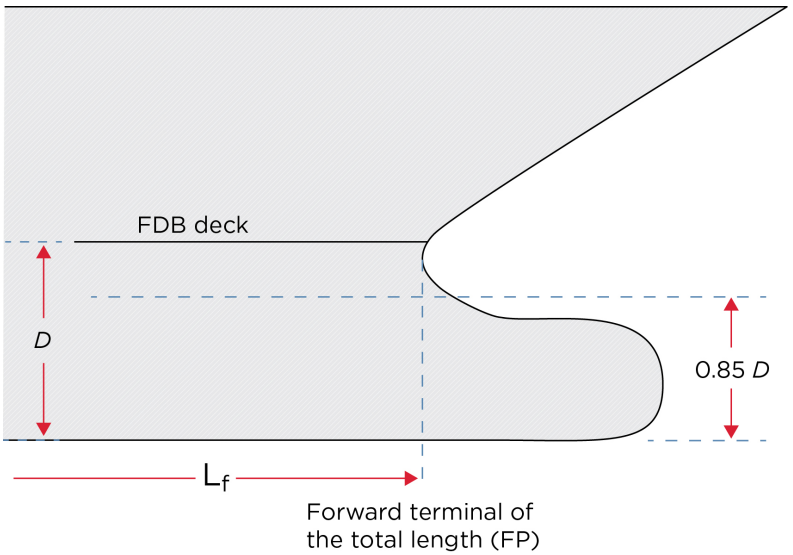
i) *The length (L_f) is to be taken as 96% of the total length on a waterline at 85% of the least moulded depth measured from the top of the keel, or as the length from the fore side of the stem to the axis of the rudder stock on that waterline, if that be greater. (IMO ICLL)*

ii) *For ships without a rudder stock, the length (L_f) is to be taken as 96% of the waterline at 85% of the least moulded depth. (IMO ICLL)*

iii) Where the stem contour is concave above the waterline at 85% of the least molded depth, both the forward terminal of the total length and the fore-side of the stem, respectively, are to be taken at the vertical projection to that waterline of the aftermost point of the stem contour (above that waterline). See [FIGURE 3] .

iv) In ships designed with a rake of keel, the waterline on which this length is measured is to be parallel to the designed waterline at 85% of the least molded depth D_{min}, found by drawing a line parallel to the keel line of the vessel (including skeg) tangent to the molded sheer line of the freeboard deck. The least molded depth is the vertical distance measured from the top of the keel to the top of the freeboard deck beam at side at the point of tangency.

FIGURE 3
Freeboard Length (L_f) *(2024)*



5 Breadth (B) *(2024)*

Breadth *(B)* is the greatest molded breadth in meters (feet).

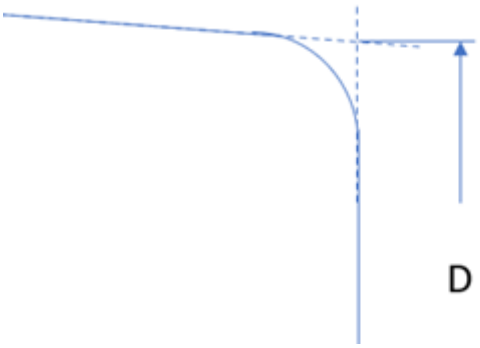
7 Depth

7.1 Molded Depth (D) *(2024)*

Molded depth (D) is the vertical distance measured in meters (feet) at the middle of scantling length L from the molded base line to the top of the freeboard-deck beam at side.

In vessels having rounded gunwales, D is to be measured to the point of intersection of the molded lines of the deck and side shell plating. See [FIGURE 4] . In cases where watertight bulkheads extend to a deck above the freeboard deck and are to be recorded in the *Record* as effective to that deck, D is to be measured to the bulkhead deck.

FIGURE 4
Molded Depth (*D*) *(2024)*



7.3 Scantling Depth D_s

Scantling depth (D_s) used with scantling requirements is the vertical distance in meters (feet) measured according to the following table as applicable:

Superstructure Arrangement		*D_s in meters (feet) Measured*	
		From	*To*
(a)	Having superstructure arrangements as described in 3-2-2/3.1, or 3-2-2/3.5, or 3-2-2/3.7	The molded base line	The uppermost continuous deck at side
(b)	Having superstructure arrangements as described in 3-2-2/3.3	The molded base line	The superstructure deck at side, or the uppermost continuous deck at side, as appropriate
(c)	All other arrangements	The molded base line	The strength deck (see [15.5]) at side

9 Draft

9.1 Molded Draft (d)

Molded draft (d) is the vertical distance in meters (feet) measured from the molded base line to the summer load line.

9.3 Scantling Draft (d_s) *(2024)*

Scantling draft (d_s), as shown in [FIGURE 2] , is the maximum draft, in meters (feet), at which the strength requirements for the scantlings of the ship are met with the following specifications:

i) d_s, is the vertical distance measured from the molded base line to the deepest load line to which the vessel is designed to operate.

ii) d_s is not to be less than that corresponding to the assigned freeboard. For offshore support vessels d_s is not to be taken less than $0.67\,D_s$.

iii) In no case, vessel to be issued a load line certificate to operate at sea with a draft greater than that corresponding to the freeboard assigned, if that be less.

iv) d_s is to be indicated on the Midship Section and Shell Expansion drawings.

11 Maximum Service Speed (V) *(2024)*

Maximum Service Speed (V) is the maximum ahead service speed, in knots, which the ship is designed to maintain in service at the summer load line at the maximum propeller RPM (Revolutions per Minute) and corresponding engine MCR (Maximum Continuous Rating).

13 Molded Displacement and Block Coefficient

13.1 Molded Displacement (Δ)

Δ is the molded displacement of the vessel in metric tons (long tons), excluding appendages, taken at the summer load line.

13.3 Block Coefficient (C_b) *(2024)*

Block coefficient (C_b) is obtained from the following equation:

$C_b = \Delta_s/1.025LB_{wl}d_s$ (SI & MKS units)

$C_b = 35\Delta_s/LB_{wl}d_s$ (US units)

where

Δ_s = molded displacement of the vessel in metric tons (long tons), excluding appendages, taken at the scantling draft d_s.

L = scantling length, as defined in [3.1]

d_s = scantling draft, as defined in [9.3]

B_{wl} = greatest molded breadth measured amidships at the scantling draft, in m (ft)

15 Decks

15.1 Freeboard Deck *(2024)*

The freeboard deck normally is the uppermost complete deck exposed to weather and sea, which has permanent means of closing all openings in the weather part thereof, and below which all openings in the sides of the ship are fitted with permanent means of watertight closing. See [FIGURE 5] .

Where a vessel is designed for a special draft, considerably less than that corresponding to the least freeboard obtainable under the International Load Line Regulations, the freeboard deck, for the purpose of these Rules, may be taken as the actual lowest deck from which the draft can be obtained under those regulations.

15.3 Bulkhead Deck *(2024)*

The bulkhead deck is the highest deck to which the watertight bulkheads extend and are made effective. See [FIGURE 5] .

15.5 Strength Deck *(2024)*

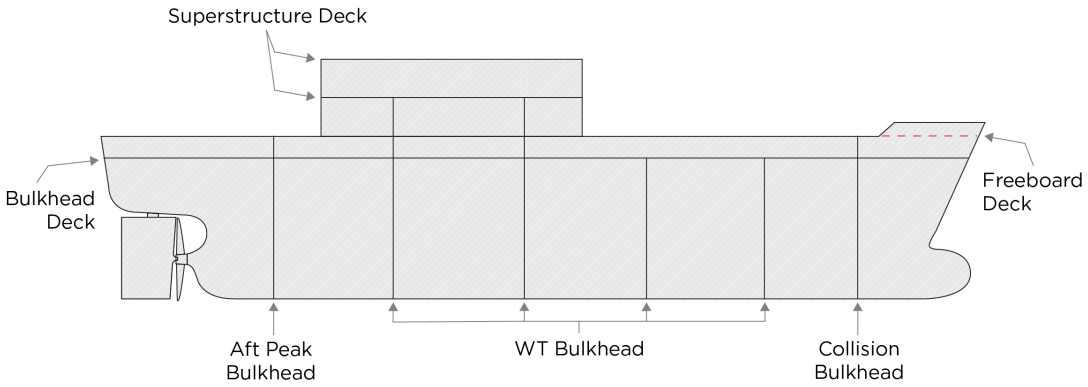
In general, the strength deck is the deck that forms the top of the effective hull girder at any part of its length with the following exception.

- The uppermost deck to which the side shell plating extends is considered to be the strength deck for that portion of the length, except in way of short superstructures, wherein the modified requirements for the side shell (see 3-2-2/3) and superstructure deck (see 3-2-3/5.9) are adopted. In way of such superstructures, the deck on which the superstructures are located is to be considered the strength deck. (see [3-2-1/11]).

15.7 Superstructure Deck *(2024)*

A superstructure deck is a deck above the freeboard deck to which the side shell plating extends. Except where otherwise specified, the term “superstructure deck” where used in these Rules refers to the first such deck above the freeboard deck. See [FIGURE 5] .

FIGURE 5
Decks *(2024)*



17 Weights

17.1 Deadweight (DWT)

For the purpose of these Rules, deadweight, *DWT*, is the difference in metric tons (long tons) between the displacement of the vessel at its summer load line in water having a specific gravity of 1.025 and the lightship weight.

17.3 Lightship Weight

For the purpose of these Rules, lightship weight is the displacement of the vessel in metric tons (long tons) with no cargo, fuel, lubricating oil, ballast water, fresh water nor feed water in tanks, no consumable stores, and no passengers or crew nor their effects. The weight of mediums on board for the fixed fire-fighting systems (e.g., freshwater, CO_2, dry chemical powder, foam concentrate, etc.) are to be included in the lightweight and lightship condition.

19 Primary Supporting Members

Structural members such as girders, transverse webs, stringers, floors and etc. that support local supporting members.

21 Local Supporting Members

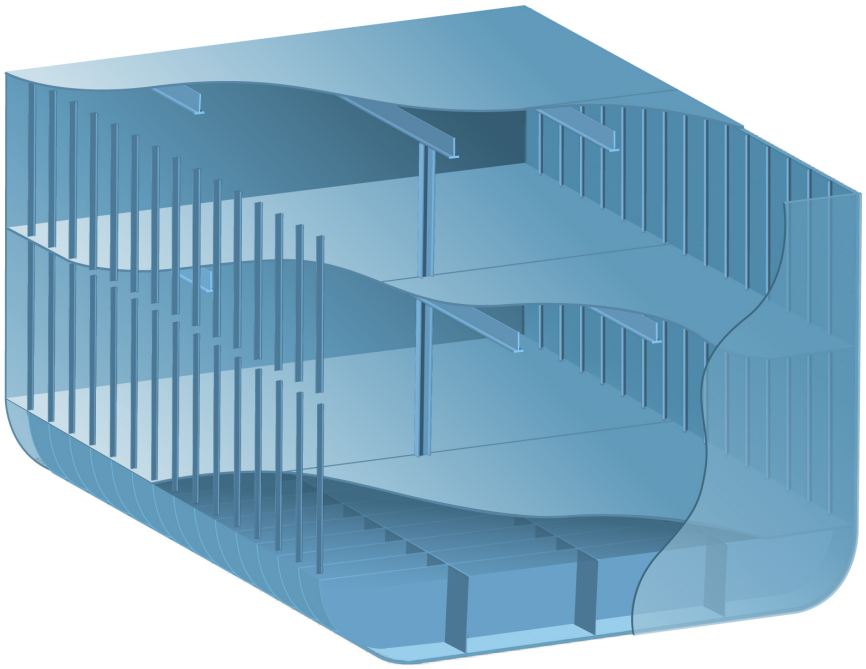
Structural members that directly support the plating such as: longitudinals, beams, frames and stiffeners.

23 Framing Systems *(2024)*

23.1 Transverse Framing

In a transversely framed vessel, floors, frames, and beams form rings spaced closely together. Longitudinal strength is provided by the keel, center girder, side girders, deck girders, bottom, deck and side shell plating, and the tank top. See [FIGURE 6] .

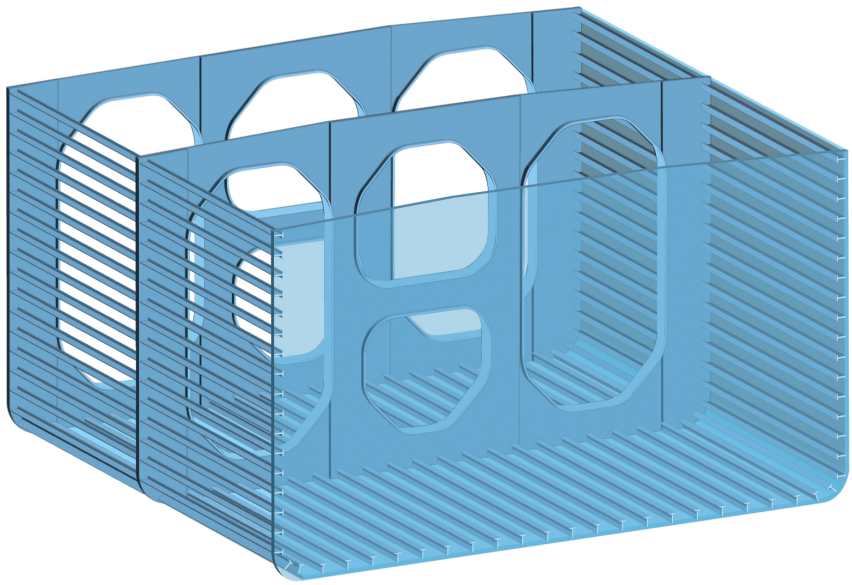
FIGURE 6
Transverse Framing



23.2 Longitudinal Framing

In a longitudinally framed vessel, the rings are formed of floors, deck transverses and web frames that replace the frames. These rings are farther apart than in transverse framing. The longitudinal reinforcement members are deck girders, girders, the keel and a large number of deck, bottom and side longitudinals. See [FIGURE 7] .

FIGURE 7
Longitudinal Framing



25 Gross Tonnage

25.1 International Tonnage

For the purpose of application of these Rules to vessels intended for unrestricted service [see [1A-1-3/1] of the ABS *Rules for Conditions of Classification (Part 1A)*], the referenced gross tonnage throughout the Rules is the measure of the internal volume of spaces within the vessel as determined in accordance with the provisions of the "International Convention on Tonnage Measurement of Ships, 1969".

25.3 National Tonnage

As an alternative to [25.1] above, requirements applicable on the basis of National Tonnage measurement and National Regulations will be considered for vessels whose operation is intended to be restricted exclusively to domestic service. [See [1A-1-3/7] of the ABS *Rules for Conditions of Classification (Part 1A)*].

27 Units

These Rules are written in three systems of units, viz., SI units, MKS units and US customary units. Each system is to be used independently of any other system.

Unless indicated otherwise, the format of presentation in these Rules of the three systems of units is as follows:

SI units (MKS units, US customary units)

29 Watertight *(2024)*

Watertight means the capability of preventing the passage of water through the structure in any direction under a head of water for which the surrounding structure is designed.

31 Weathertight *(2024)*

Weathertight means that in any sea condition, water will not penetrate into the vessel.

1 General *(2024)*

1.1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1.1 Goals

The vessel structure is to be designed, constructed, operated and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goals*
STRU 1	In the intact condition, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU 2	Resist structural failure associated with accidental conditions.
STRU 3	Provide protection to persons on board, the environment and required safety services.
STRU 3.1	Maintain mechanical properties during extreme temperatures.
MAT 1	The selected materials' physical, mechanical, and chemical properties are to meet the design requirements appropriate for the application, operating conditions, and environment.

1.1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above stated goals, the following functional requirements apply to this section:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Structure (STRU)	
STRU-FR1	Scantlings are to have sufficient strength to resist failure and excessive deformation associated with buckling and yielding when subjected to the loads anticipated throughout the service life, including hull girder loads, deck cargo loads, green water loads, hydrostatic loads (tanks and watertight boundaries), etc.
STRU-FR2	Limit crack propagation from the deck to side shell, side shell to bottom, and vice versa.

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
STRU-FR3	Limit crack propagation at locations susceptible to fractures.
STRU-FR4	Prevent buckling of structural members.
STRU-FR5	The design of the termination of structural members is to prevent yielding or fatigue cracks.
STRU-FR6	Avoid discontinuities, misalignment, and other harmful details that may lead to failure in service.
STRU-FR7	Design bolted connections to transmit load between structural elements
STRU-FR8	Provide sound quality for all workmanship and structural fabrication.
Materials (MAT)	
MAT-FR1	Provide materials with properties and quality appropriate for the location in the hull based on the criticality of the structure and thickness of material.
MAT-FR2	Provide higher toughness materials in locations subject to low temperatures to prevent brittle fractures.
MAT-FR3	Avoid galvanic corrosion due to dissimilar metals.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

1.2 Application *(2024)*

To use these Rules, the following are to be met:

i) The requirements of the Rules apply to vessels of all welded construction.

ii) The design temperatures for unrestricted service are assumed to be not less than –10°C (14°F) for air temperature and not less than 0°C (32°F) for sea water temperature. For ships intended to operate in areas with low air temperatures [below -10ºC (14ºF)], see [3.5] and [3.7] .

1.3 Material

1.3.1 Steel

These Rules are intended for vessels of welded construction using steels complying with the requirements of Chapter 1 of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)*. Use of steels other than those in Chapter 1 of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)* and the vessels' corresponding scantlings are to be specially considered.

1.3.2 Aluminum Alloys *(2024)*

The use of aluminum alloys in hull structures is to be considered upon submission of a specification of the proposed alloys and their proposed method of fabrication.

Aluminum alloys for deckhouses, helicopter landing platforms, masts, ladders and hatch covers are acceptable upon approval in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 5 of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)* and the applicable fire safety requirements in Part 3, Chapter 4.

The material and transition details of welded bi-material joints are to meet the requirements outlined in Appendix [2-5-A1] of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)*.

Non-welded bi-material joints are to comply with the following:

i) Connections between steel and aluminum structures are to be made by interfacing bimetallic inserts. Details of interfacing bimetallic inserts are to be in accordance with the requirements in [3-2-13/3] of the ABS *Rules for Building and Classing High Speed Craft*.

ii) Aluminum structures and components are to be fully and efficiently precluded from having direct contact with steel by approved non-wicking, non-water absorbing insulating materials, to avoid electrolytic corrosion.

iii) Such joints are to be appropriately painted, coated, wrapped or protected by other methods to prevent galvanic corrosion.

iv) Maximum stresses are not to exceed the applicable requirements modified based on the actual properties established in accordance with Appendix [2-5-A1] of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)*.

The following drawings/information are to be submitted for review as applicable:

i) Drawings indicating the location on the vessel of welded and non-welded bi-material joints

ii) Information denoting appropriate plate thickness and material specification

iii) Butt/fillet welding procedure for welded bi-material joints

iv) Manufacturing procedure and control manual for bi-material joints.

v) Material certificate and test results of the bi-material joints

vi) Calculation of maximum tensile and shear stress for bi-material joints when installed

vii) Details of non-welded bi-material joints

Commentary:

The use of explosion bonding may be considered depending on the application and the mechanical and corrosive properties of the hull.

End of Commentary

1.3.3 Design Consideration *(2024)*

Where scantlings are reduced in association with the use of higher-strength steel or where aluminum alloys are used, adequate buckling strength is to be provided.

Where it is intended to use material of cold flanging quality for strength members, this steel is to be indicated on the plans. The design is to account for the lower yield strength of the material. See [2-1-2/13.5] of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)*.

1.3.4 Guidance for Repair *(2024)*

Where special steels (i.e., brittle crack arrest steels, enhanced corrosion resistant steel, high strength/low alloy steel, stainless steel, and high manganese steels) are used in the construction and those materials not encompassed in Chapter 1 of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)*, a set of plans showing the following information for each steel is to be placed aboard the vessel:

i) Material Specification

ii) Welding procedure

iii) Location and extent of application

These plans are in addition to those normally placed aboard the vessel, and are to show all material applications.

3 Application of Steel Materials 150 mm (6.0 in.) and Under in Thickness *(2021)*

3.1 Selection of Material Grade *(2024)*

i) Steel materials for particular locations are not to be lower grades than those required by [TABLE 1] for the material class given in [TABLE 2A] , [TABLE 2B] , or [TABLE 3] depending on the length (*L*) of the vessel.

ii) The provision in [3.1]) is not required for vessels in length (*L*) under 61 m (200 ft). For vessels under 61 m (200 ft) in length, material is to be per [1.3.1] . ASTM A36 steel otherwise manufactured by an ABS-approved steel mill, tested and certified to the satisfaction of ABS may be used in lieu of Grade A for a thickness up to and including 12.5 mm (0.5 in.) for plate and 19 mm (0.75 in.) for sections. In addition, the dimensions for ASTM A36 steel are to comply with [2-1-1/15] .

iii) When tensile stresses through the thickness (Z direction) exceed approximately 50% of the minimum specified yield stress (as defined in the applicable ABS Rules), consideration is to be given to applying Z grade steel (refer to [2-1-1/17] of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)*). Alternatives to applying Z grade may be proposed provided it is demonstrated by ultrasonic testing before and after welding that no through thickness tearing has occurred, and/or the welding preparation, weld size and bead sequence is such that damaging through thickness loads induced by weld shrinkage are avoided.

Commentary:

When fatigue loading is present, the effective strength of higher-strength steel in welded construction may not be greater than that of ordinary-strength steel.

Precautions against corrosion fatigue may also be necessary.

End of Commentary

TABLE 1
Material Grades
(2024)

Plate Thickness t mm (in.)	*Material Class*		
	I	***II***	***III***
$t \le 15 (t \le 0.60)$	A[(2)], AH	A, AH	A, AH
$15 < t \le 20 (0.60 < t \le 0.79)$	A, AH	A, AH	B, AH
$20 < t \le 25 (0.79 < t \le 0.98)$	A, AH	B, AH	D, DH
$25 < t \le 30 (0.98 < t \le 1.18)$	A, AH	D, DH	D [(1)], DH
$30 < t \le 35 (1.18 < t \le 1.38)$	B, AH	D, DH	E, EH
$35 < t \le 40 (1.38 < t \le 1.57)$	B, AH	D, DH	E, EH
$40 < t \le 100 (1.57 < t \le 4.00)$	D, DH	E, EH	E, EH
$100 < t \le 150 (4.00 < t \le 6.00)^{(3)}$	E, EH	E, EH	E, EH

Notes:

1 Grade D, of these *plate* thicknesses, is to be normalized.

2 ASTM A36 steel otherwise manufactured by an ABS approved steel mill, tested and certified to the satisfaction of ABS may be used in lieu of Grade A for a thickness up to and including 12.5 mm (0.5 in.) for plate and up to and including 19 mm (0.75 in.) for sections.

3 Rolled plates over 100 mm (4 in.) thick are to be in accordance with [2-1-1/16] of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)*).

TABLE 2A
Material Class or Grade of Structural Members for Vessels ≥ 90 m (295 ft) in Length
(1 July 2021)

Line No.	*Structural Members*	*Within 0.4L amidships*	*Outside 0.4L amidships*
		Material Class [8] or Grade	*Material Class or Grade*
A	**Secondary**		
A1	Longitudinal bulkhead strakes, other than those belonging to the Primary category	I	A[10]/AH
A2	Deck plating exposed to weather, other than that belonging to the Primary or Special category		
A3	Side plating [12]		
B	**Primary**		
B1	Bottom plating, including keel plate	II	A[10]/AH
B2	Strength deck plating, excluding that belonging to the Special category [13]		
B3	Continuous longitudinal plating of strength members above strength deck, excluding hatch coamings [13, 14]		
B4	Uppermost strake in longitudinal bulkhead		
B5	Vertical strake (hatch side girder) and uppermost sloped strake in top wing tank		
C	**Special**		
C1	Sheer strake at strength deck [1, 9, 13]	III	II (I outside *0.6L* amidships)
C2	Stringer plate in strength deck [1, 9, 13]		
C3	Deck strake at longitudinal bulkhead [2, 9, 13]		
C4	Strength deck plating at outboard corners of cargo hatch openings in container carriers and other ships with similar hatch opening configurations [3, 13]		
C5	Strength deck plating at corners of cargo hatch openings in bulk carriers, ore carriers, combination carriers and other ships with similar hatch opening configurations [4, 13]		

Line No.	*Structural Members*	*Within 0.4L amidships*	*Outside 0.4L amidships*
		Material Class [8] or Grade	*Material Class or Grade*
C6	Trunk deck and inner deck plating at corners of openings for liquid and gas domes in membrane type liquefied gas carriers [4, 14]		
C7	Bilge strake [5, 6, 9]		
C8	Longitudinal hatch coamings of length greater than 0.15*L* including coaming top plate and flange[7]		
C9	End brackets and deck house transition of longitudinal cargo hatch coamings [7]		
D	**Other Categories**		
D1	Plating materials for stern frames supporting rudder and propeller boss, rudders, rudder horns, steering equipment [15], propeller nozzles, and shaft brackets	-	II[11]
D2	Strength members not referred to in A to C and D1 [17]	A[10]/AH	A[10]/AH
D3	Equipment foundations, Non-hull structure, Appurtenant structures	[16]	[16]

Notes:

1 Not to be less than grade E/EH[9] within 0.4*L* amidships in ships with length exceeding 250 m (820 ft).

2 Excluding deck plating in way of inner-skin bulkhead of double hull ships.

3 Not to be less than class III within the length of the cargo region.

4 Not to be less than class III within 0.6*L* amidships and class II within the remaining length of the cargo region.

5 May be of class II in ships with a double bottom over the full breadth and with length less than 150 m (492 ft).

6 Not to be less than grade D/DH within 0.4*L* amidships in ships with length exceeding 250 m (820 ft).

7 Not to be less than grade D/DH.

8 Special consideration will be given to vessels of restricted class.

9 Single strake required to be class III or E/EH are to have breadths not less than 800 + 5*L* mm (31.5 + 0.06*L* in.), but need not exceed 1800 mm (71 in.), unless limited by the geometry of the vessel's design.

10 ASTM A36 steel otherwise manufactured by an ABS approved steel mill, tested and certified to the satisfaction of ABS may be used in lieu of Grade A for a thickness up to and including 12.5 mm (0.5 in.) for plates and up to and including 19 mm (0.75 in.) for sections.

11 For rudder and rudder body plates subjected to stress concentrations (e.g., in way of lower support or at upper part of spade rudders), class III is to be applied.

12 Single side strakes for ships exceeding 150 m (492 feet) without inner continuous longitudinal bulkheads between bottom and the single strength deck are not to be less than grade B/AH within cargo region in ships.

13 Not to be less than grade B/AH for members contributing to the longitudinal strength within 0.4*L* amidships in ships with length exceeding 150 m (492 feet) and single strength deck.

14 Not to be less than grade B/AH for inner deck plating and plating between the trunk deck and inner deck for members contributing to the longitudinal strength within 0.4L amidships in membrane type liquefied gas carriers and other similar ship types with a double deck arrangement above the strength deck and with length exceeding 150 m (492 feet). See [FIGURE 1] .

15 Steering equipment components other than rudders, as described in Section 3-2-14.

16 ASTM A36 steel otherwise tested and certified to the satisfaction of ABS may be used in lieu of Grade A for a thickness up to and including 12.5 mm (0.5 in.) for plates and up to and including 19 mm (0.75 in.) for sections.

17 Deck plating below the strength deck at corners of cargo hatch openings immediately forward and aft of the engine room and/or deck house in container carriers and other ships with similar hatch opening configurations, is not to be less than Class I.

FIGURE 1
Typical Deck Arrangement for Membrane Type Liquefied Gas Carriers

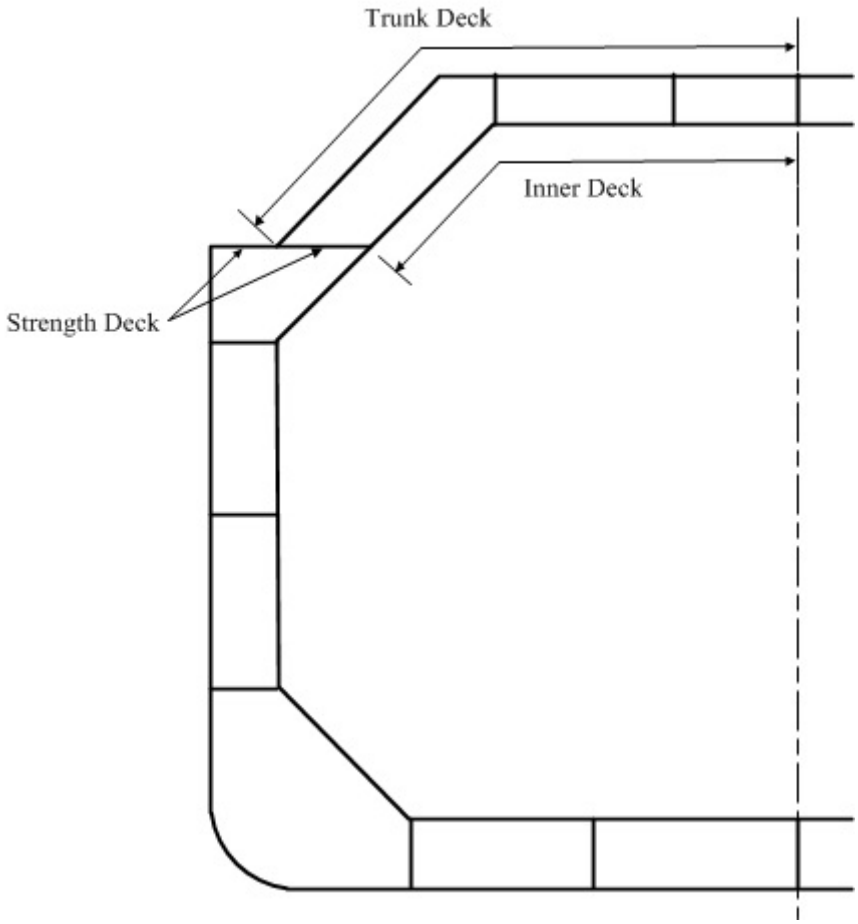


TABLE 2B
Material Class or Grade of Structural Members for Vessels 61 m (200 ft) ≤ *L* < 90 m (295 ft) in Length

Structural Member	*Material Class* [1]	
	Within 0.4L Amidships	*Outside 0.4L Amidships*
Shell		
Bottom plating including keel plate	II	A[4]/AH
Bilge strake	II	A[4]/AH
Side plating	I	A[4]/AH
Sheer strake at strength deck [2]	II	A[4]/AH

Structural Member	*Material Class* (1)	
	Within 0.4L Amidships	*Outside 0.4L Amidships*
Decks		
Strength deck plating (3)	II	A(4)/AH
Stringer plate in strength deck (2)	II	A(4)/AH
Strength deck plating within line of hatches and exposed to weather, in general	I	A(4)/AH
Strength deck strake on tankers at longitudinal bulkhead	II	A(4)/AH
Longitudinal Bulkheads		
Lowest strake in single bottom vessels	I	A(4)/AH
Uppermost strake including that of the top wing tank	II	A(4)/AH
Other Structures in General		
External continuous longitudinal members and bilge keels	II	A(4)/AH
Plating materials for stern frames supporting rudder and propeller boss, rudders, rudder horns, steering equipment (5), propeller nozzles, and shaft brackets	—	I
Strength members not referred to in above categories and above local structures	A(4)/AH	A(4)/AH

Notes:

1 Special consideration will be given to vessels in restricted service.

2 A radius gunwale plate may be considered to meet the requirements for both the stringer plate and the sheer strake, provided it extends suitable distances inboard and vertically. For formed material, see [2-4-1/3.13] of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2).*

3 Plating at the corners of large hatch openings are to be specially considered.

4 ASTM A36 steel otherwise manufactured by an ABS approved steel mill, tested and certified to the satisfaction of ABS may be used in lieu of Grade A for a thickness up to and including 12.5 mm (0.5 in.) for plates and up to and including 19 mm (0.75 in.) for sections.

5 Steering equipment components other than rudders, as described in Section 3-2-14.

3.5 Ships Exposed to Low Air Temperatures *(1 July 2019)*

i) For ships intended to operate in areas with low air temperatures [below -10ºC (14ºF)], the materials in exposed structures are to be selected based on the design temperature t_D, to be taken as defined in [3.7] .

ii) Materials in the various strength members above the lowest ballast water line (BWL) exposed to air (including the structural members covered by Note 5 of [TABLE 3] TABLE 3)and materials of cargo tank boundary plating for which [3.9] is applicable are not to be of lower grades than those corresponding to Classes I, II and III, as given in [TABLE 3] , depending on the categories of structural members (secondary, primary and special). For non-exposed structures (except as indicated in Note 5 of [TABLE 3]) and structures below the lowest ballast water line, [3.1] applies.

iii) The material grade requirements for hull members of each class depending on thickness and design temperature are defined in [TABLE 4] . For design temperatures $t_D < -55°C$ (–67°F), materials are to be specially considered.

iv) Single strakes required to be of Class III or of Grade E/EH or FH are to have breadths not less than 800 + 5*L* mm (31.5 + 0.06*L* in.), maximum 1800 mm (71 in.). *L* is as defined in 3-1-1/3.1.

v) Plating materials for sternframes, rudder horns, rudders and shaft brackets are not to be of lower grades than those corresponding to the material classes given in [3.1] .

TABLE 3
Application of Material Classes and Grades – Structures Exposed at Low Temperatures
(1 July 2019)

Structural Member Category	*Material Class*	
	Within 0.4L Amidships	*Outside 0.4L Amidships*
Secondary		
Deck plating exposed to weather, in general	I	I
Side plating above BWL		
Transverse bulkheads above BWL(5)		
Cargo tank boundary plating exposed to cold cargo(6)		
Primary		
Strength deck plating (1)	II	I
Continuous longitudinal members above strength deck, excluding longitudinal hatch coamings		
Longitudinal bulkhead above BWL(5)		
Top wing tank bulkhead above BWL(5)		
Special		
Sheer strake at strength deck (2)	III	II
Stringer plate in strength deck (2)		
Deck strake at longitudinal bulkhead (3)		
Continuous longitudinal hatch coamings (4)		

Notes:

1 Plating at corners of large hatch openings to be specially considered. Class III or Grade E/EH to be applied in positions where high local stresses may occur.

2 Not to be less than Grade E/EH within 0.4*L* amidships in ships with length exceeding 250 m (820 ft).

3 In ships with breadth exceeding 70 m (230 ft) at least three deck strakes to be Class III.

4 Not to be less than Grade D/DH.

5 Applicable to plating attached to hull envelope plating exposed to low air temperature. At least one strake is to be considered in the same way as exposed plating and the strake width is to be at least 600 mm (24 in.).

6 For cargo tank boundary plating exposed to cold cargo for ships other than liquefied gas carriers, see [3.9] .

TABLE 4
Material Grade Requirements for Classes I, II and III at Low Temperatures
Class I
(1 July 2019)

Thickness, in mm (in.)	*–11 to –15°C (12 to 5°F)*	*–16 to –25°C (4 to –13°F)*	*–26 to –35°C (–14 to –31°F)*	*–36 to –45°C (–32 to –49°F)*	*–46 to –55°C (–50 to –68°F)*
t ≤ 10 (t ≤ 0.39)	A, AH	A, AH	B, AH	D, DH	D, DH
10 < *t* ≤ 15 (0.39 < *t* ≤ 0.60)	A, AH	B, AH	D, DH	D, DH	D, DH
15 < *t* ≤ 20 (0.60 < *t* ≤ 0.79)	A, AH	B, AH	D, DH	D, DH	E, EH
20 < *t* ≤ 25 (0.79 < *t* ≤ 0.98)	B, AH	D, DH	D, DH	D, DH	E, EH
25 < *t* ≤ 30 (0.98 < *t* ≤ 1.18)	B, AH	D, DH	D, DH	E, EH	E, EH
30 < *t* ≤ 35 (1.18 < *t* ≤ 1.38)	D, DH	D, DH	D, DH	E, EH	E, EH
35 < *t* ≤ 45 (1.38 < *t* ≤ 1.80)	D, DH	D, DH	E, EH	E, EH	-, FH
45 < *t* ≤ 50 (1.80 < *t* ≤ 1.97)	D, DH	E, EH	E, EH	-, FH	-, FH

Class II
(1 July 2019)

Thickness, in mm (in.)	*-11 to -15°C (12 to 5°F)*	*-16 to -25°C (4 to -13°F)*	*-26 to -35°C (-14 to -31°F)*	*-36 to -45°C (-32 to -49°F)*	*-46 to -55°C (-50 to -68°F)*
t ≤ 10 (t ≤ 0.39)	A, AH	B, AH	D, DH	D, DH	E, EH
10 < t ≤ 20 (0.39 < t ≤ 0.79)	B, AH	D, DH	D, DH	E, EH	E, EH
20 < t ≤ 30 (0.79 < t ≤ 1.18)	D, DH	D, DH	E, EH	E, EH	-, FH
30 < t ≤ 40 (1.18 < t ≤ 1.57)	D, DH	E, EH	E, EH	-, FH	-, FH
40 < t ≤ 45 (1.57 < t ≤ 1.80)	E, EH	E, EH	-, FH	-, FH	-, -
45 < t ≤ 50 (1.80 < t ≤ 1.97)	E, EH	E, EH	-, FH	-, FH	-, -

Class III
(1 July 2019)

Thickness, in mm (in.)	*-11 to -15°C (12 to 5°F)*	*-16 to -25°C (4 to -13°F)*	*-26 to -35°C (-14 to -31°F)*	*-36 to -45°C (-32 to -49°F)*	*-46 to -55°C (-50 to -68°F)*
t ≤ 10 (t ≤ 0.39)	B, AH	D, DH	D, DH	E, EH	E, EH
10 < t ≤ 20 (0.39 < t ≤ 0.79)	D, DH	D, DH	E, EH	E, EH	-, FH
20 < t ≤ 25 (0.79 < t ≤ 0.98)	D, DH	E, EH	E, EH	E, FH	-, FH
25 < t ≤ 30 (0.98 < t ≤ 1.18)	D, DH	E, EH	E, EH	-, FH	-, FH
30 < t ≤ 35 (1.18 < t ≤ 1.38)	E, EH	E, EH	-, FH	-, FH	-, -

Thickness, in mm (in.)	*-11 to -15°C (12 to 5°F)*	*-16 to -25°C (4 to -13°F)*	*-26 to -35°C (-14 to -31°F)*	*-36 to -45°C (-32 to -49°F)*	*-46 to -55°C (-50 to -68°F)*
35 < t ≤ 40 (1.38 < t ≤ 1.57)	E, EH	E, EH	-, FH	-, FH	-, -
40 < t ≤ 50 (1.57 < t ≤ 1.97)	E, EH	-, FH	-, FH	-, -	-, -

3.7 Design Temperature t_D

The design temperature t_D is to be taken as the lowest mean daily average air temperature in the area of operation.

- *Mean:* Statistical mean over observation period (at least 20 years)
- *Average*: Average during one day and night
- *Lowest*: Lowest during year

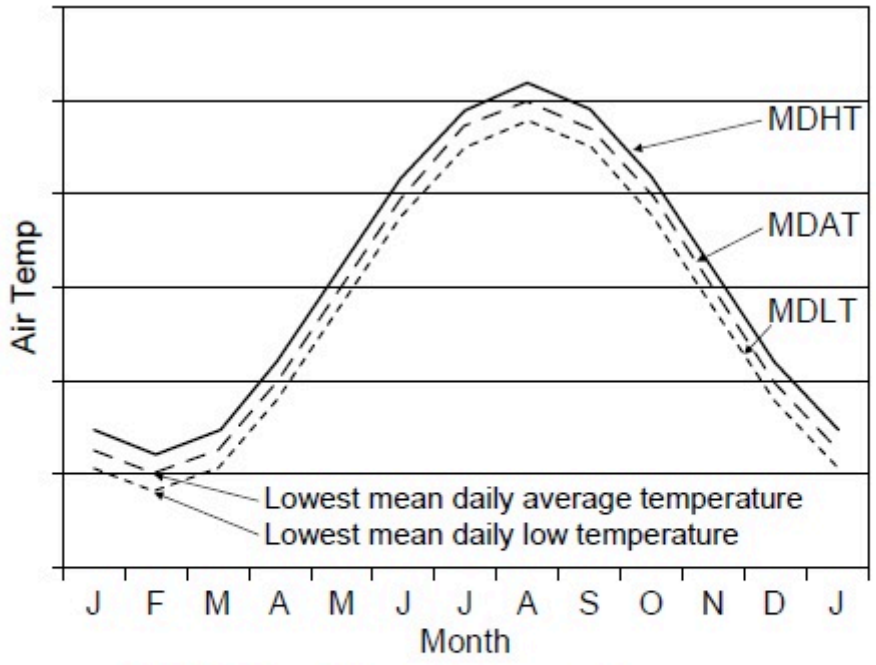
For seasonally restricted service the lowest value within the period of operation applies.

For the purpose of issuing a Polar Ship Certificate in accordance with the Polar Code, the design temperature t_D shall be no more than 13°C (23.6°F) higher than the Polar Service Temperature (PST) of the ship.

In the Polar Regions, the statistical mean over observation period is to be determined for a period of at least 10 years.

[FIGURE 2] illustrates the temperature definition.

FIGURE 2
Commonly Used Definitions of Temperatures



MDHT = Mean Daily High (or maximum) Temperature

MDAT = Mean Daily Average Temperature

MDLT = Mean Daily Low (or minimum) Temperature

3.9 Cold Cargo for Ships Other Than Liquefied Gas Carriers *(1 July 2019)*

For ships other than liquefied gas carriers, intended to be loaded with liquid cargo having a temperature below -10°C, e.g. loading from cold onshore storage tanks during winter conditions, the material grade of cargo tank boundary plating is defined in [TABLE 4] based on the following:

- t_c design minimum cargo temperature in °C (°F)
- steel grade corresponding to Class I as given in [TABLE 3]

The design minimum cargo temperature, t_c is to be specified in the loading manual.

5 Scantlings

5.1 General *(2024)*

i) The midship scantlings specified in these Rules are to apply throughout the midship 0.4L for vessels 61m (200 ft) in length and above.

ii) End scantlings are not to extend for more than 0.1L from each end of the vessel.

iii) Reduction in scantlings from the midship to the end scantlings is to be as gradual as practicable.

iv) For structures subject to high compression or bending stresses, ABS may require calculations to be submitted in support of resistance to buckling (see 3-2-1/17).

Commentary:

In general, structures meeting the requirements of Part 3 are considered gross scantlings. The wastage allowance of these scantlings is specified in 7-A1-4/35.3 TABLE 1A to 7-A1-4/35.3 TABLE 4 of the ABS *Rules for Survey After Construction (Part 7)*. There are a few exceptions where Part 3 requirements specify net scantlings.

End of Commentary

5.3 Rounding of Calculated Thickness

The required thickness is given by rounding the calculated plate thickness to the nearest half millimeter (or $^1/_{64}$ inch). For example:

For $10.75 \le t_{calc} < 11.25$ mm	the Rule required thickness is 11 mm
For $11.25 \le t_{calc} < 11.75$ mm	the Rule required thickness is 11.5 mm

5.5 Direct Analysis *(2023)*

A direct analysis is to be carried out:

i) When vessel specific requirements contained in Part 5A & 5B, Part 5C, or a Guide require direct analysis

ii) For vessels over 130 m (426 ft) in length with multiple continuous decks, large openings, or structural discontinuity within the midship 0.6*L*

iii) For all vessels over 150 m (492 ft) in length

The direct analysis is to cover material yielding and buckling. An assessment carried out in accordance with the ABS *Guide for 'SafeHull Dynamic Loading Approach' for Vessels* is considered acceptable. Other approaches which can be shown, through either satisfactory service experience or a review of the engineering principles, to meet the overall strength standards may also be considered acceptable. See Section 3-2-20 for guidance.

The extent of the model is to cover critical areas subject to high global stresses. The extent of the model is to be such that the imposed boundary conditions do not significantly affect the calculated stresses as the critical areas.

The Total Strength Assessment required for Specific Vessel Types per Part 5A & 5B or Part 5C is sufficient for meeting this requirement.

Unless specifically permitted, the results of the direct analysis cannot be used to reduce the basic scantlings obtained from other requirements in these Rules.

7 Proportions *(2024)*

To apply these Rules, vessels are generally proportioned to have:

i) $L \le L_{\max}$

ii) $B \le 0.2L, B \le C_p D_s$, to the strength deck.

where

L_{max}	=	305 m (1000 ft)	for offshore support vessels
	=	500 m (1640 ft)	for other steel vessels
C_p	=	3.0	for offshore support vessels
	=	2.0	for other steel vessels under 90 m (295 ft) in length
	=	2.5	for other steel vessels with 90 m (295 ft) in length and over

L, B, and D_s as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, 3-1-1/5, and 3-1-1/7.3, respectively.

Commentary:

For vessels that do not meet the above proportions, investigations for wave induced loads, transverse strength, and hull girder deflections, etc., may be required, and details should be submitted. See 3-2-1/2.

End of Commentary

9 Workmanship

The following requirements are to be complied with, as applicable:

i) All workmanship is to be of commercial marine quality and acceptable to the Surveyor.

ii) Welding is to be in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 4 or Chapter 5 of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)* and Section 3-2-19 and 3-7-3/1 of these Rules.

iii) Plates subjected to excessive furnacing are to undergo a satisfactory heat treatment before being worked into a hull.

11 Drydocking *(2024)*

For vessels over 228.5 m (750 ft) in length, information indicating docking arrangements is to be submitted for information and placed onboard the vessel for guidance. See also 3-2-2/3.17 and 3-2-2/7.

13 Structural Elements and Members

13.1 General

The scantling requirements of these Rules apply to structural sections, angles, channels, plates, and bars that are used in the ship construction.

13.3 Primary Supporting Members

The section modulus of primary supporting members that support frames, beams and stiffeners, is to be in accordance with the following, as applicable:

i) The member's section modulus is to include an effective width of the attached plate with one-half of the sum of the spacing on each side of the member or 33% of the unsupported span of the member, ℓ, whichever is less.

ii) For section modulus of girders and webs along hatch openings, an effective breadth of attached plate is to be of one-half of the spacing or 16.5% of the unsupported span ℓ, whichever is less.

13.5 Local Supporting Members

13.5.1 Section Modulus *(2024)*

The required section modulus is to be provided by the frame, beam or stiffener and a maximum of one member space of the plating to which it is attached.

The length of the frame, beam or stiffener, ℓ, for use in the required section modulus equations, is to be the effective bending span of the stiffener, which is to be measured based on the end connection details and arrangement, when a reduction of the span is permitted in each section of this Part. See 3-2-4/11.3 for bottom and inner bottom longitudinal, 3-2-5/3 for side frames, 3-2-7/3.1 for deck beams and longitudinals, 3-2-9/5.4 for watertight bulkhead stiffeners and 3-2-10/3.3 for deep tank bulkhead stiffeners. See also 3-2-6/7.1 for web frames, stringers and girders.

Commentary:

Higher strength steel members should be continuous in way of supporting structure of ordinary steel or of lesser higher strength steel. Where higher strength steel members are not continuous, they should have the section modulus and shear area of not less than those required for the material of the connecting supporting structure and be fitted with back-up structures to provide continuity of strength. Longitudinal stiffeners of higher strength steel included in the hull girder section modulus should be continuous in way of transverse members in accordance with 3-2-1/3.7.1(c) and 3-2-1/5.

Stiffeners and support members of higher strength steel may be acceptable with associated plating of less higher strength steel provided the offered section modulus of each structural profile at associated plate is not less than obtained from required section modules equation with Q taken corresponding to the associated plating.

Q = factor as defined in 3-2-1/5.3.

End of Commentary

13.5.2 Web Thickness

The depth to thickness ratio of the web portion of members is not to exceed the following:

Members with flange	$50C_1C_2$
Members without flange	$15C_1C_2$

where

C_1 = 0.95 (horizontal web within a tank)
= 1.0 (all other cases)

C_2 = 1.0 (ordinary strength steel)
= 0.92 (HT32)
= 0.90 (HT36)
= 0.88 (HT40)

15 Structural Design Details

15.1 General *(2024)*

Structural details are to be designed to avoid the harmful effects of stress concentrations and notches.

The proportions of built-up members are to comply with established standards for structural stability. See [13.5.2] , Appendix 3-2-A4, and the proportion requirements in each section of Rules.

Major openings such as doors, large hatches, and large vent ducts are to be avoided in the sheer strake and stringer plate within the amidships three-fifths length. Corners of openings in strength structures are to have generous radii. Compensation may be required for openings .

A booklet of standard construction details based on the above requirements is to be submitted for review.

Commentary:

The designer should consider:

i The thickness of internals in locations susceptible to rapid corrosion.

ii The design of structural details, such as noted below, against the harmful effects of stress concentrations and notches:

- Details of the ends, at the intersections of members and associated brackets.
- Shape and location of air, drainage, and lightening holes.
- Shape and reinforcement of slots and cut-outs for internals.
- Elimination or closing of weld scallops in way of butts, “softening” of bracket toes and the reduction of abrupt changes of section or structural discontinuities.
- Continuity of all higher strength steel members in way of supporting members of lesser strength. Care should be taken to provide structural continuity. Changes in scantlings are to be gradual. Strength members should not change direction abruptly. Where major longitudinal members end at transverse structural members, tapering may be required forward or aft of the transverses. Stanchions and bulkheads should be aligned to provide support and to minimize eccentric loading. Major appendages outside the hull and strength bulkheads in superstructures are to be aligned with major structural members within the hull.

iii Proportions and thickness of structural members to reduce fatigue response due to engine, propeller or wave-induced cyclic stresses, particularly for higher-strength steels.

End of Commentary

15.3 Termination of Structural Members *(2024)*

The termination of structural members is to be such that:

i) The end connections to the supporting structure are to effectively develop the bending strength and shear strength of the member being connected in such a manner as to avoid hard spots, notches and other harmful stress concentrations unless permitted elsewhere in these Rules,.

ii) Where load-bearing members are not required to be attached at their ends, special attention is to be given to the end taper by using a sniped end of not more than 30°. The local plating in way of the sniped end is to have adequate thickness to transmit the bending strength and shear strength from the snipe end to the supporting member.

iii) Where the member has a face bar or flange, it is to be sniped and tapered not more than 30°.

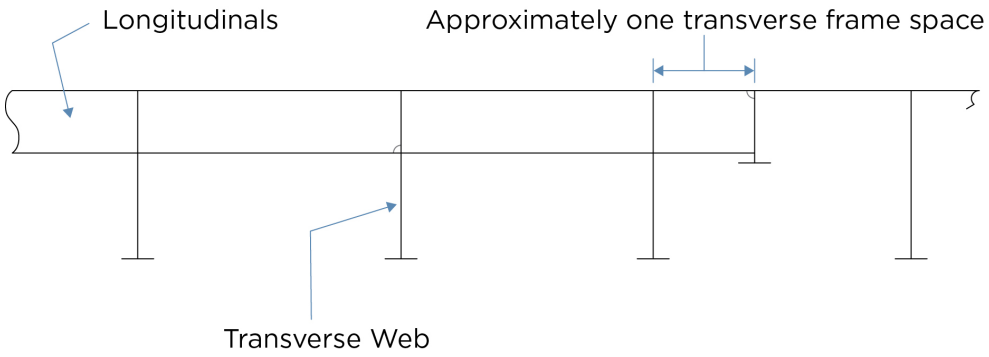
iv) The end brackets of large primary load-bearing members are to be soft-toed. Where the end bracket has a face bar it is to be sniped and tapered not more than 30°.

v) Bracket toes and sniped end members are to be kept within 25 mm (1.0 in.) of the adjacent member unless supported by another member on the opposite side of the plating. The depth of toe or sniped end is generally not to exceed 15 mm (0.60 in.).

vi) Where a longitudinal of strength deck or shell terminates without an end attachment, it is to extend into the adjacent transversely framed structure, or stop at a local transverse member fitted at about one transverse frame space (see 3-2-5/1.5) beyond the last floor or web that supports the longitudinal. See [FIGURE 3] .

vii) The end attachments of non-load bearing members may be snipe ended. The sniped end is to be not more than 30° and kept within 40 mm (1.57 in.) from the adjacent member unless it is supported by a member on the opposite side of the plating. The depth of the toe is not to exceed 15 mm (0.6 in.).

FIGURE 3
Longitudinal Extension at End *(2024)*



15.5 Fabrication *(2023)*

Structural fabrication is to be carried out in accordance with a recognized standard to the satisfaction of the attending Surveyor. If a recognized national standard or another appropriate shipbuilding and repair standard is not available, the latest version of IACS Recommendation No. 47 “Shipbuilding and repair Quality Standard” may be used. These standards are for conventional ship types and hull structures and they are not applicable to critical and highly stressed areas of the structure, which are to be reviewed and verified on an individual basis. See Appendix [5C-A1-1] "SafeHull Construction Monitoring Program".

15.7 Bolted Connections *(2021)*

Unless indicated otherwise, the structural design and fabrication of bolted connections is to meet a recognized bolting standard (AISC, API, etc.). The bolted connections, including connection type, materials and methods are to be suitable for the intended application. Workmanship of these connections is to be in accordance with [9] of the Rules.

15.9 Connection of Stiffeners and Main Supporting Members *(1 July 2025)*

Where stiffeners pass through deep supporting members without double continuous welds on both sides of the stiffener web by fitting it with a clip, lug, or collar, the shear stress in the connection between the web of the main supporting member and the stiffener is to be evaluated using an acceptable engineering approach. Acceptable approaches include:

i) 5C-3-4/27 for vessels that follow the SafeHull approach

ii) Vessels designed to Part 3 are to follow 5C-3-4/27 with the following adjustments:

- Stiffeners subject to a liquid head:

p = h N/cm^2

= 0.102 x h kgf/cm^2

= 0.44 x h lbf/in^2

- Stiffeners subject to other loads (i.e., dry cargo spaces, decks in the deckhouse, or engine room):

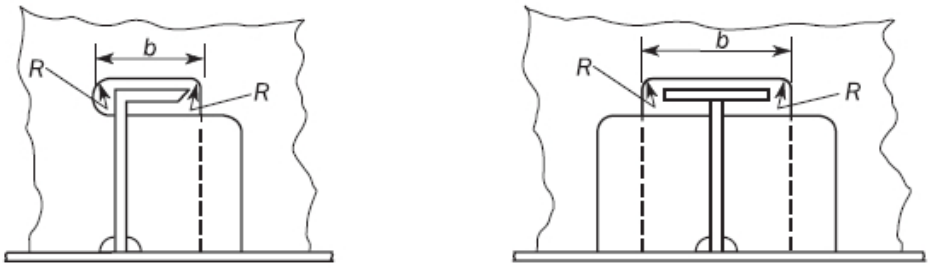
p = 0.701 x h N/cm^2
= 0.0715 x h kgf/cm^2
= 0.31 x h lbf/in^2

- h is the design head defined in Part 3
- The permissible shear stress is to be reduced by 10% to account for gross scantlings.
- The strength reduction factor S_m in 5C-3-4/27 does not need to be applied.

Cut-outs are to have rounded corners, and the corner radii, R, are to be as large as practicable, with a minimum of 20% of the breadth, b, of the cut-out or 25 mm (1 in.), whichever is greater. See 3-1-2/Figure 4. The corner radii, R, does not need to be greater than 50 mm (2 in.). Consideration is to be given to other shapes on the basis of maintaining equivalent strength and minimizing stress concentration.

Also refer to 5A-3-6/5.

FIGURE 4
Full Collar Plates



$R \geq 0.2b$ but not less than 25 mm.

17 Certification of Materials, Equipment, and Components *(2023)*

17.1 Basic Requirements

The Rules define, to varying degrees, the extent of evaluation required for materials, equipment, and their components based on the level of criticality of each of those items. There are three basic evaluation constituents:

- Design review; type/prototype testing, as applicable;
- Survey during construction and testing at the plant of manufacture; and
- Survey during installation on board the vessel and at trials.

Where design review is required by the Rules, a letter will be issued by ABS upon satisfactory review of the plans to evidence the acceptance of the design. In addition to, or independent of, design review, ABS may require survey and testing of forgings, castings, and component parts at the various manufacturers' plants, as well as survey and testing of the finished product. A certificate or report will be issued upon satisfactory completion of each survey to evidence acceptance of the forging, casting, component, or finished product. Design review, survey, and the issuance of reports or certificates constitute the certification of materials, equipment, and components.

Based on the intended service and application, some products do not require certification because they are not directly related to the scope of classification or because normal practices for their construction within the industry are considered adequate. Such products may be accepted based on the manufacturers' documentation on design and quality.

In general, surveys during installation on board the vessel and at trials are required for all items of materials, equipment, and components. This is not considered a part of the product certification process. There may be instances, however, where letters or certificates issued for items of materials, equipment, and components contain conditions which must be verified during installation, tests or trials.

17.3 Type Approval Program

Products that can be consistently manufactured to the same design and specification may be Type Approved under the ABS Type Approval Program. The ABS Type Approval Program is a voluntary option for the demonstration of the compliance of a product with the Rules or other recognized standards. It may be applied at the request of the designer or manufacturer. The ABS Type Approval Program generally covers Product Type Approval (see [1A-1-4/7.7.3] of the ABS *Rules for Conditions of Classification (Part 1A)*) but is also applicable for a more expeditious procedure towards Unit-Certification as specified in [1A-1-4/7.7.2] of the ABS *Rules for Conditions of Classification (Part 1A)*.

See the "ABS Type Approval Program" in Appendix [1A-1-A3] and [1A-1-A4] of the ABS *Rules for Conditions of Classification (Part 1A)*.

17.5 Non-mass Produced Equipment and Components

Non-mass produced critical equipment and components, such as anchors, rudders, and similar critical items are to be individually unit certified in accordance with the procedure described in [17.1] . However, consideration will be given to granting Type Approval to such machinery in the category of Recognized Quality System (RQS). The category of Product Quality Assurance (PQA) will not normally be available for all products, and such limitations will be indicated in [TABLE 5] through [TABLE 7] . In each instance where Type Approval is granted, in addition to quality assurance and quality control assessment of the manufacturing facilities, ABS will require some degree of product specific survey during manufacture.

17.7 Details of Certification of Some Representative Products

[TABLE 5] through [TABLE 7] provide abbreviated certification requirements of representative equipment and components based on the basic requirements of the Rules for equipment and components. The tables also provide the applicability of the Type Approval Program for each of these machinery items. For easy reference, the tables contain three product categories as follows:

- Hull Materials
- Equipment
- Structural Components

TABLE 5
Certification Details - Hull Materials
(1 July 2024)

	Materials	*Rule Reference*
1.	Aluminum Hull Castings	3-1-2/1.3.2, 2-5-1/1.1 , 2-5-1/1.3, 2-5-10, 2-5-A3
2.	Aluminum Hull Forgings	3-1-2/1.3.2, 2-5-1/1.1 , 2-5-1/1.3, 2-5-9, 2-5-A3
3.	Aluminum Extrusions	3-1-2/1.3.2, 2-5-1/1.1 , 2-5-1/1.3, 2-5-8, 2-5-A3
4.	Aluminum Hull Materials: Sheet, Plate, and Rolled Products	3-1-2/1.3.2, 2-5-1/1.1 , 2-5-1/1.3, 2-5-7, 2-5-A3

	Materials	*Rule Reference*
5.	Materials for Extra High Strength Quenched and Tempered Steel	3-1-2/1.3.1, 2-1-1/1.2, 2-1-8, 2-A1-1
6.	Materials for Higher-Strength Hull Structural Steel	3-1-2/1.3.1, 2-A1-1, 2-1-3
7.	Steel Materials for Low Temperature Service	3-1-2/1.3.1, 2-1-1/1.2, 2-1-4, 2-A1-1
8.	Materials for Ordinary and Higher Strength Steels with Enhanced Corrosion Resistance Properties	3-1-2/1.3.1, 2-1-1/1.2, 2-1-7, 2-A1-1/6
9.	Materials for Ordinary-Strength Hull Structural Steel	3-1-2/1.3.1, 2-A1-1, 2-1-2
10.	Materials for H47 Hull Structural Steel	ABS *Requirements for Application of Higher-Strength Hull Structural Thick Steel Plates in Container Carriers*
11.	Stainless Steel Materials for Hull Structures	5C-9-1/11.7, ABS *Requirements for Materials and Welding for Stainless Steels*
12.	Steel for Steering Equipment	3-2-14/1.3, 3-2-14/25.7, 2-1-1/1, 3-2-14/23.25
13.	Steel Hull Castings	3-1-2/1.3.1, 3-7-3/3, 2-1-1/1.2, 2-A1-1, 2-1-5, 3-2-13/13
14.	Steel Hull Forgings	3-1-2/1.3.1, 3-7-3/3, 2-1-1/1.2, 2-A1-1, 2-1-6
15.	Steel Hull Piping	3-1-2/1.3.1, 2-1-1/1.11, 2-A1-1, 2-3-12

TABLE 6
Certification Details - Equipment

	Equipment	*ABS Approval Tier*	*Rule Reference*
1.	Anchors for vessels without Ⓔ symbol	1	3-5-1/5
2.	Anchors for vessels with Ⓔ symbol	5	3-5-1/5, 2-1-1/1.1, 2-1-1/3, 2-2-1, 2-A1-1
3.	Anchor Chain for vessels without Ⓔ symbol	1	3-5-1/5
4.	Anchor Chain for vessels with Ⓔ symbol	5	3-5-1/5, 2-2-2/7.1, 2-A1-1, 2-2-2
5.	Chafing Chain	5	3-5-1/19, 2-2-2, ABS *Requirements for Certification of Offshore Mooring Chain*
6.	Chain Stopper	2	3-5-1/11
7.	Fixed Propeller Nozzles with Inner Diameter Greater than 5 meters (16.4 feet)	5	3-2-13/9
8.	Fixed Propeller Nozzles with Inner Diameter of 5 meters (16.4 feet) or Less	1	3-2-13/9
9.	Loading Instrument	2	3-2-A2/9.3
10.	Offshore Mooring Chain	5	3-5-1/17, 2-2-2/7.1, ABS *Requirements for Certification of Offshore Mooring Chain*
11.	Propulsion Improvement Devices (PID) as Hull Appendages	5	3-2-13/11

	Equipment	ABS Approval Tier	Rule Reference
12.	Onboard Computers/Software for Stability Calculations	2	3-3-1/17, 3-3-A7/11.1, 3-3-A7/15, 3-3-A7/17
13.	Winches Used for Anchoring (Vessels Under 90 m (295 ft))	4/5	3-5-1/11.3, 4-1-1/5
14.	Wire Rope	1	3-5-1/5

TABLE 7
Certification Details - Structural Components
(2025)

	Equipment	ABS Approval Tier	Rule Reference
1.	Bollard, Fairlead and Chocks	2	3-5-1/15, 3-2-7/4
2.	Doors for Access Openings	2	3-2-11/5.3
3.	Portable Industrial Module	5	3-2-A7/1.1, 7-1-17/5, ABS *Requirements for Portable Accommodation Modules* - Subsection 3/5
4.	Portlights	2	3-2-17/7.5.1(a)(b), 3-2-17/9.9.1, 3-2-17/9.9.2
5.	Rudder	5	3-2-14/1.1, 3-2-14/1.3, 3-2-14/7.3, 3-2-14/17.1, 2-1-1, 6-1-4/31, 6-1-5/41, Part 2, Chapter 1
6.	Rudder Coupling Bolts and Keys	2	3-2-14/1.1, 3-2-14/1.3, Part 2, Chapter 3
7.	Rudder Pintles	5	3-2-14/1.1, 3-2-14/1.3, Part 2, Chapter 1
8.	Rudder Stock	5	3-2-14/1.1, 3-2-14/1.4, 3-2-14/7.3, Part 2, Chapter 3
9.	Rudder Bearing Materials	2	3-2-14/1.3 and Part 2, Chapter 1
10.	Structural Fire Protection	3	3-4-1/11
11.	Watertight Doors	4/5	3-2-9/1, 3-2-9/5.1, 3-2-9/5.3 3-2-9/9.11, 3-2-16/11.7, 3-2-16/17, 3-7-1/3.5 TABLE 1
12.	Weathertight Doors	2	3-2-11-3.3, 3-2-11/3.5, 3-7-1/3.5
13.	Window Glazing	2	3-2-17/9.7.1, 3-2-17/9.7.2
14.	Windows	2	3-2-17/9.5.1, 3-2-17/9.9.2, 3-2-17/9.5.2
15	Gangways and Accommodation Ladders and Pilot Ladders	2	3-2-17/3.5

19 Foundations and Supporting Structure *(2024)*

19.1 General

Foundations for equipment, deck fittings, and other loads such as loads from container supports and fixed lashing fittings are to effectively transfer loads to the vessel supporting structures. Requirements for general

items are listed in [TABLE 8] . The requirements for additional items unique to specific vessel types are to follow the applicable requirements in Part 5A, 5B, 5C, and 5D. Materials for supporting structure are required to be tested under ABS Survey witness in accordance with Part 2, Chapter 1 of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)*. Material certificates for equipment foundations are to be reviewed by the attending ABS Surveyor.

For items not specifically addressed by the Rules, the equipment foundation is considered outside the scope of class. The loads onto the supporting structure are to be within the rated deck capacity. Where the loads exceed the rated deck capacity, the vessel supporting structures are to be evaluated using one of the following approaches except for the cases where the specific method is specified in the Rules:

i) Static beam analysis
The exact location and contact area of the foundation on the deck and the maximum static load on the foundation is to be indicated on the plans and submitted for approval. Where the foundations are not in line with the supporting underdeck structural members, headers are to be provided to transmit the loads to these members.
The stress of each underdeck structural member intended to support the foundation against the static loads is not to exceed the allowable stress specified in 3-2-20/9.1 for beam element model.
In determining the maximum bending moment and shear force, the supporting structure members may be considered fixed-ended, provided that the member is continuous over the adjacent spans or is effectively attached to a bulkhead stiffener or frame or has end connections in accordance with 3-2-7/3.7. Where this is not the case, the member is to be considered simply-supported.

ii) Finite Element Analysis in accordance with Section 3-2-20

Commentary:

A load is considered in excess of the rated deck capacity when the load's static weight divided by its contact area to the deck is in excess of ABS approved rated deck capacity.

End of Commentary

TABLE 8
Specific Foundation and Supporting Structure Requirements

Machinery Foundations	
Propulsion Engine Foundations	3-2-12/1.3 and 3.1
Boiler Foundations	3-2-12/1.3 and 3.3 & 4-4-1/19
Thrust Foundations	3-2-12/1.3, 3.1.2 and 3.5
Auxiliary Machinery Foundations including Generator Foundations	3-2-12/1.3 and 3.7
Shaft Bearings	3-2-12/1.3, 3.7 & 4-3-2/7
Steering Gear Foundations	4-3-4/21.1
Deck Fittings and Equipment	
Deck Fittings for Mooring and Towing & Mooring winches	3-5-1 & 3-2-7/4
Windlass and Chain Stopper	3-5-1/11 for non-CSR vessels; 5A-11-4/2 for CSR vessels
Single Point Mooring Equipment & Deck Fittings	3-5-2
Other	
Supporting Structures of Lifting Appliances	Lifting Appliances Guide 2-2/5.15 for non-CSR vessels;

Machinery Foundations	
	5A-11-4/4 for CSR vessels
Supporting Structures of Lifesaving Launching Appliances	6.1.1.6 of Life Saving Appliance Code for non-CSR Vessels; 5A-11-4/4 for CSR vessels
Supports of Bow Doors, Side Doors and Stern Doors	3-2-16/3
Portable Industrial Modules	3-2-A7, 5D-1-4 & 5D-2-2/1.3
Others	3-1-2/19.1

PART 3

CHAPTER 2

Hull Structures and Arrangements

CONTENTS

SECTION 1 Longitudinal Strength....64

1 General....64
1.1 Objective....64
2 Application....65
3 Longitudinal Hull Girder Strength....66
3.1 Minimum Section Modulus for Vessels Under 61 m (200 ft) in Length....66
3.3 Longitudinal Strength for Vessels 61 m (200 ft) in Length and Over....66
3.5 Wave Loads....68
3.7 Bending Strength....71
3.9 Shearing Strength for Vessels 61 m (200 ft) in Length and Over....74
5 Longitudinal Members of Higher-Strength Steels....76
5.1 Hull Girder Moment of Inertia....77
5.3 Hull Girder Section Modulus....77
5.5 Hull girder Shearing Force....78
7 Loading Guidance....78
7.1 Loading Manual....78
7.3 Allowable Stresses....78
7.5 Notation of Loading and Stability Computer Software....78
9 Section Modulus Calculation....78
9.1 Items Included in the Calculation....78
9.3 Effective Areas Included in the Calculation....79
9.5 Section Modulus to the Deck or Bottom....80
9.7 Section Modulus to the Top of Cargo Rails and/or Longitudinal Side Walkways....80
9.9 Section Modulus to the Top of Continuous Longitudinal Hatch Coamings and Above Deck Girders....81
11 Strength Decks....82
11.1 General....82
11.3 Tapering of Deck Sectional Areas....82

13 Effective Lower Decks....82
15 Longitudinal Deck Structures Inboard of Lines of Openings....82
15.1 Effectiveness....82
17 Buckling Strength....83
17.1 Vessels 90 Meters (295 feet) in Length and Greater....83
17.3 Vessels Between 61 and 90 Meters (200 and 295 Feet) in Length....83
17.5 Total Bending Moment....83

FIGURE 1 Sign Convention....70
FIGURE 2 Distribution Factor M....70
FIGURE 3 Distribution Factor F_1....71
FIGURE 4 Distribution Factor F_2....71
FIGURE 5 Shear Force Distribution....76
FIGURE 6 Effective Area of Hull Girder Members....80

SECTION 2 Shell Plating....84
1 General....84
1.1 Objective....84
1.2 General Requirements....85
3 Shell Plating Amidships....85
3.1 Vessels with No Partial SuperstructuresAbove Uppermost Continuous Deck....85
3.3 Superstructures Fitted Above Uppermost Continuous Deck (Side Plating Extended)....85
3.5 Superstructures Fitted Above Uppermost Continuous Deck (Side Plating Not Extended)....86
3.7 In Way of Comparatively Short Superstructures....86
3.9 Side Shell Plating....86
3.11 Side Fenders....88
3.13 Sheer Strake....89
3.15 Bottom Shell Plating Amidships....90
3.17 Flat Keel Plate for Vessels above 90 meters (295 feet) in Length....93
5 Shell Plating at Ends....93
5.1 Minimum Shell Plating Thickness....93
5.3 Immersed Bow Plating....94
5.5 Bottom Forward....94
5.7 Forecastle Side Plating....95
5.9 Poop Side Plating....95
5.11 Bow and Stern Thruster Tunnels....95
5.13 Special Heavy Plates....96
7 Bottom Shell Plating for Special Docking Arrangement for Vessels Over 90 m (295 ft) in Length....98
8 Moon Pools....98
8.1 General Arrangement....98

8.3 Moon Pool Bulkhead Scantlings....99
9 Compensation....99
11 Breaks....100
12 Skeg and other Appendages....100
13 Bilge Keels....100
14 Bilge Plating....104
15 Higher-strength Materials....105
15.1 General....105
15.3 Bottom Plating of Higher-strength Material....105
15.5 Side and End Plating of Higher-strength Material....106

FIGURE 1 Side Impact Plates....89
FIGURE 2 Recommended Bulwark Fitting....90
FIGURE 3A Special Heavy Plates for Single Screw Vessels....96
FIGURE 3B Special Heavy Plates for Twin Screw Vessels....97
FIGURE 4 Bilge Keel Construction....102
FIGURE 5 Bilge Keel End Design....103
FIGURE 6 Bilge Keel End Design....104

SECTION 3 Decks....107
1 General....107
1.1 Objective....107
1.3 Extent of Plating....108
3 General Requirements for Deck....108
3.1 Longitudinal Section Modulus Amidships....108
3.3 Strength Deck....108
3.5 Longitudinally Framed Decks....108
3.7 Superstructure Decks....108
3.9 Deck Transitions....109
3.11 Deck Plating....109
5 Deck Scantling Details....110
5.1 Thickness....110
5.3 Effective Lower Decks....110
5.5 Reinforcement at Openings....111
5.7 Platform Decks....111
5.9 Superstructure and Deckhouses Decks....111
5.11 Decks over Tanks....111
5.13 Watertight Flats....112
5.15 Retractable Tween Decks....112
5.17 Wheel Loading....112
7 Higher-strength Material....118
7.1 Thickness....118
7.3 Wheel Loading....118

TABLE 1 Applicable Thickness Equations....113

TABLE 2 Minimum Thickness Equations 116

FIGURE 1 Decks and Tiers Allocation..... 115
FIGURE 2 Wheel Loading Curves of “K”..... 116

SECTION 4 Bottom Structures..... 119
1 General 119
1.1 Objective..... 119
1.2 General Requirements for Bottom Structures..... 120
3 Center and Side Girders 121
3.1 Center Girder..... 121
3.3 Pipe Tunnels as an Alternative Arrangement of Center Girders..... 122
3.5 Docking Brackets for Center Girder and Side Girders... 122
3.7 Side Girders..... 122
5 Solid Floors 123
5.1 General 123
5.3 Tank-end Floors *(1997)*..... 123
5.5 Floor Stiffeners..... 123
7 Open Floors 124
7.1 General..... 124
7.3 Bottom Shell Frames and Reverse Frames..... 124
7.5 Center and Side Brackets 124
7.7 Struts 125
9 Inner-bottom Plating..... 125
9.1 Inner-bottom Plating Thickness..... 125
9.2 Inner-bottom Plating in way of Cargo Holds..... 126
9.3 Center Strakes..... 126
9.5 Inner Bottom Plating for Vessels Intended to Use Grabs 126
9.6 Optional Supplementary Requirement for Vessels Intended to Use Grabs..... 127
9.7 Wheel Loading..... 128
9.9 Under Boilers..... 128
9.11 In Way of Engine Bed Plates or Thrust Blocks..... 128
9.13 Margin Plates 128
9.15 Vessels Intended to Carry Steel Coils..... 128
11 Bottom and Inner-bottom Longitudinals..... 131
11.1 General..... 131
11.3 Bottom Longitudinals 131
11.5 Inner-bottom Longitudinals 132
12 Single Bottoms with Floors and Keelsons..... 133
12.1 General..... 133
12.3 Center Keelsons..... 133
12.5 **Side Keelsons** 134

12.7 Floors..... 135
13 Single Bottoms with Longitudinal or Transverse Frames..... 136
13.1 General..... 136
13.3 Bottom Girders and Transverses.....138
13.5 Center Girder.....139
13.7 Frames.....140
15 Fore-end Strengthening.....140
15.1 General..... 140
15.3 Extent of Strengthening.....140
15.5 Longitudinal Framing..... 140
15.7 Transverse Framing.....141
17 Higher-strength Materials..... 142
17.1 General..... 142
17.3 Inner-bottom Plating..... 142
17.5 Bottom and Inner-bottom Longitudinals.....143
17.7 Center Girders, Side Girders, and Floors.....143
19 Structural Arrangements and Details..... 143
19.1 Structural Sea Chests 143
19.3 Drainage..... 144
19.5 Manholes and Lightening Holes.....144
19.7 Air and Drainage Holes.....144
19.9 Fixed Ballast 145
21 Machinery Space.....145

TABLE 1 129
TABLE 1A Extent of Strengthening..... 141
TABLE 2 Spacing of Floors.....142

FIGURE 1 Double-bottom Solid Floors..... 124
FIGURE 2 Double-bottom Open Floors..... 125
FIGURE 2A Stowage of Steel Coils..... 130
FIGURE 2B Position of Dunnage..... 131
FIGURE 3 Longitudinal Frame..... 132
FIGURE 4 Plate Floors.....136
FIGURE 5 Round Bottom Floors with Deadrise.....137
FIGURE 6 Transverse Bottom Frames with Longitudinal Side Girders.....137
FIGURE 7 Longitudinal Frames with Transverse Webs.....138

SECTION 5 Frames 146
1 General..... 146
1.1 Objective 146
1.2 Basic Considerations.....147
1.3 Holes in Frames..... 147
1.5 End Connections..... 147

1.7 Standard and Cant Frame Spacing....147
3 Side Frames....149
3.1 Transverse Frames....149
3.3 Raised Quarter Decks....155
3.5 Fore-end Frames....155
3.7 Panting Frames....155
3.9 Side Stringers....156
3.11 Frames with Web Frames and Side Stringers....156
3.13 Panting Webs and Stringers....156
3.15 Side Frame Brackets....156
3.17 Longitudinal Frames....156
3.19 Machinery Space....158
5 Tween-Deck Frames Below and Above the Bulkhead Deck....158
5.1 General....158
5.3 Transverse Tween-deck Frames....159
5.5 Longitudinal Tween-deck Frame....160
7 Forepeak Frames....160
7.1 General....160
7.3 Frame Scantlings....160
9 After-peak Frames....161
9.1 General....161
9.3 Frame Scantlings....161
9.5 Vessels of High Power or Fine Form....162
11 Vessels Subject to Impact Loads....162

FIGURE 1 Zones of Framing....148
FIGURE 1A End Connections....148
FIGURE 1B Standard and Cant Frame Spacing....148
FIGURE 2 Side Frames....150
FIGURE 3 Side Frames....151
FIGURE 4 Side Frames....152
FIGURE 5 Transverse Side Frame....153
FIGURE 6 Transverse Side Frame....154
FIGURE 7 Tween Deck Frames....155
FIGURE 8 Type B Tween-deck Frames....157
FIGURE 9 Longitudinal Frames in Fore Peak or After Peak Tanks....158

SECTION 6 Web Frames and Side Stringers....163
1 General....163
1.1 Objective....163
1.3 Basic Consideration....164
3 Web Frames....164
3.1 Web Frames Amidships and Aft....164
3.3 Web Frames Forward....165

3.5 Proportions....167
3.7 Web Stiffeners....168
3.9 Tripping Brackets....168
3.11 Tween-deck Webs....168
5 Side Stringers....168
5.1 Side Stringers....168
5.3 Proportions....168
5.5 WebStiffeners....169
5.7 Tripping Brackets....169
7 Structural Arrangements and Details....169
7.1 Brackets of Girders, Webs, and Stringers....169
7.3 End Connections....170
9 Peak Stringers....170
9.1 Peak Stringer-plate Thickness....170
9.3 Peak Stringer-plate Breadth....171
11 Vessels Subject to Impact Loads....171

FIGURE 1 Web-frame Arrangements....166
FIGURE 2 Effective Bending Span of Girders and Webs....170

SECTION 7 Beams and Longitudinals....172
1 General....172
1.1 Objective....172
1.3 Arrangement....173
1.5 Design Head....173
3 Beams and Longitudinals....173
3.1 Strength Requirement....173
3.3 Deep Reinforced Beams....177
3.5 Beams at the Head of Web Frames....177
3.7 End Connections....177
4 Deck Fittings Support Structuresfor Vessels of More Than 500 GT....178
4.1 General....178
4.3 Design Loads....179
4.5 Supporting Structures....181
4.7 Scantlings....183
5 Container Loading....184
5.1 General....184
5.3 Strength Requirements....184
7 Higher-strength Materials....184
7.1 General....184
7.3 Longitudinals and Beams of Higher-strength Materials....184

TABLE 1 Decks Allocation....174

TABLE 2 Values of h for Beams.....176
TABLE 3 Values of f (Ordinary-strength Steel).....185

FIGURE 1A Long Superstructures.....175
FIGURE 1B Superstructure Decks.....176
FIGURE 2 Beam End Connection Located Inside the Line of Opening.....178
FIGURE 3 Beam End Connection on the Boundary of Tanks.....178
FIGURE 4 Application of Design Loads 180
FIGURE 5 Sample Arrangement.....181
FIGURE 6 Attachment Point of Mooring Line.....182
FIGURE 7 Attachment Point of Towing Line.....182

SECTION 8 Pillars, Deck Girders and Transverses 186

1 General 186
1.1 Objective.....186
1.2 Arrangements - General.....187
1.3 Container Loading.....187
1.5 Cargo Loading.....187
3 Pillars.....187
3.1 Permissible Load 187
3.3 Calculated Load.....188
3.5 Additional Pillars.....189
3.7 Pillars under the Tops of Deep Tanks.....189
3.9 Bulkhead Stiffening.....189
3.11 Attachments.....189
3.13 Stanchions in Double Bottoms and Under Tank Tops*.....189
5 Deck Girders and Transverses.....190
5.1 General.....190
5.3 Deck Girders Clear of Tanks.....190
5.5 Deck Transverses Clear of Tanks.....191
5.7 Proportions.....191
5.9 Tripping Brackets 192
5.11 End Attachments.....192
5.13 Deck Girders and Transverses in Tanks.....192
5.15 Hatch Side Girders 192
7 Hatch-end Beams 193
7.1 Hatch-end Beam Supports.....193
7.3 Weather Deck Hatch-end Beams.....193
7.5 Depth and Thickness.....193
7.7 Tripping Brackets 194
7.9 Brackets.....194
9 Higher-strength Materials.....195
9.1 General.....195

9.3 Girders and Deck Transverses....195

FIGURE 1 Deck Girders and Pillars....191
FIGURE 2 Hatch-end Beams....194

SECTION 9 Watertight Bulkheads and Doors....196
1 General....196
1.1 Objective....196
1.2 Application....197
1.3 Openings and Penetrations....197
1.5 Sluice Valves and Cocks....197
1.7 Strength Bulkheads....197
1.9 Testing....198
1.11 Plans and Particulars to be Submitted for Watertight Doors....198
1.13 Definitions....198
3 Arrangement of Watertight Bulkheads....199
3.1 Collision Bulkhead....199
3.3 After-peak Bulkhead....200
3.5 Machinery Spaces....201
3.7 Hold Bulkheads....202
3.9 Chain Lockers....202
5 Construction of Watertight Bulkheads....203
5.1 Plating....203
5.3 Stiffeners....204
5.4 Stiffener End Brackets....205
5.5 Attachments....205
5.7 Girders and Webs....208
7 Construction of Corrugated Bulkheads....209
7.1 Plating....209
7.3 Stiffeners....209
7.5 End Connections....210
9 Watertight Doors....212
9.1 General....212
9.2 Doors Used While at Sea....213
9.3 Access Doors and Hatches Normally Closed at Sea....214
9.5 Doors or Ramps Dividing Large Cargo Spaces....217
9.7 Other Openings Closed at Sea....218
9.9 Construction....218
9.11 Testing and Installation of Watertight Doors....218

TABLE 1A Thickness and Flanges of Brackets and Knees for Vessels ≥ 90 m (295 ft) in Length....206
TABLE 1B Thickness and Flanges of Brackets for Vessels < 90 m (295 ft) in Length....208

TABLE 2 Minimum Mechanical Properties for Butt-Welded Aluminum Alloys 216

FIGURE 1A Collision Bulkhead in Vessels with Bow Door 201
FIGURE 1B Reference Point for Vessels with Bulbous Bow 201
FIGURE 2 Chain Lockers Arrangement 202
FIGURE 3 Bracket Connections 206
FIGURE 4 Corrugated Bulkhead 210
FIGURE 5 Corrugated Bulkhead Upper Stool Credit 211
FIGURE 6 Corrugated Bulkhead End Connections 212

SECTION 10 Deep Tanks 222

1 General 222
1.1 Objective 222
1.2 Application 223
1.3 Arrangement 223
1.5 Construction 223
1.7 Drainage and Air Escape 223
1.9 Testing 224
3 Construction of Deep Tank Bulkheads and Tank Tops 224
3.1 Plating 224
3.3 Stiffeners 225
3.5 Tank-top Plating and Stiffeners 226
3.7 Girders and Webs 226
3.9 Corrugated Bulkheads 228
3.11 Anti-rolling Tank Bulkheads 228
5 Higher-strength Materials 228
5.1 General 228
5.3 Plating 228
5.5 Stiffeners 228
5.7 Girders and Webs 228

SECTION 11 Superstructures, Deckhouses and Helicopter Decks 230

1 General 230
1.1 Objective 230
1.2 Application 232
1.3 General Scantlings of Superstructures and Deckhouses 234
3 Exposed Bulkheads 238
3.1 General 238
3.3 Plating 238
3.5 Stiffeners 240
3.6 Swage Bulkheads 241
3.7 End Attachments 241
3.9 Deck Steps 243

3.11 Raised Quarter Deck Bulkheads....243
5 Enclosed Superstructures and Deckhouses....245
5.1 Openings in Bulkheads....245
5.3 Weathertight Doors....245
5.5 Sills of Access Openings....246
5.7 Portlights....246
5.9 Bridges and Poops....247
7 Open Superstructures....247
9 Forecastle Structures....247
10 Aluminum Superstructures and Deckhouses....247
10.1 Scantlings....247
10.3 Attachments....248
11 Helicopter Decks....248
11.1 General....248
11.2 Definitions....249
11.3 Structure....249
11.5 Material....251
11.9 Arrangements....252
11.11 Means of Escape and Access....254
11.13 Safety....255

TABLE 1 Values of a....243
TABLE 2 Values of f....243
TABLE 3 Allowable Factors of Safety Based on Y For Helicopter Decks....250

FIGURE 1 Superstructure and Deckhouse....232
FIGURE 2 233
FIGURE 3 Swage Panel....241
FIGURE 4 Lower Ends of Deckhouse Stiffeners....243
FIGURE 5 Helideck Obstacle Limitation Sector: Single Main Rotor Helicopter....253
FIGURE 6 Helideck Obstacle Limitation Sector: Single Main Rotor Helicopter for Benign Climate Conditions as Accepted by the Coastal State....254
FIGURE 7 Example of Helicopter Deck Markings....256

SECTION 12 Machinery Space and Tunnel....257
1 General....257
1.1 Objective....257
1.3 Arrangement....258
1.5 Testing of Tunnels....258
3 Machinery Foundations....259
3.1 Engine Foundations....259
3.3 Boiler Foundations....259

3.5 Thrust Foundations....259
3.7 Shaft Bearing and Auxiliary Machinery Foundations....260
5 Tunnels and Tunnel Recesses....260
5.1 Plating....260
5.3 Stiffeners....260
5.5 Beams, Pillars and Girders....260
5.7 Tunnels Through Deep Tanks....261

SECTION 13 Stems, Stern Frames, Rudder Horns, and Propeller Nozzles....262
1 General....262
1.1 Objective....262
2 Stems....263
2.1 Plate Stems....263
2.3 Cast or Forged Stems....264
2.5 Bar Stems....264
3 Stern Frames....266
3.1 Rudder Gudgeons....267
3.3 Scantlings Below the Propeller Boss....267
3.5 Stern Frames with Shoe Piece....272
3.7 Scantlings Above the Propeller Boss....272
3.9 Secondary Members....272
3.11 Shoe Pieces....273
5 Rudder Horns....274
5.1 Scantlings - Single Pintle Rudders....274
5.3 Scantlings - Two Pintle Rudders....275
5.4 Rudder Horn Castings....278
5.5 Rudder Horn Plating....278
5.7 Welding and Connection to Hull Structure....278
5.9 Floors....279
5.11 Shell Plating....279
5.13 Water Exclusion....280
7 Shaft Struts....280
7.1 V Strut....280
7.3 I Strut....280
7.5 Strut Length....281
9 Propeller Nozzles....281
9.1 Design Pressure....281
9.3 Nozzle Cylinder....282
9.5 Nozzle Section Modulus....283
9.7 Welding Requirement....285
11 Propulsion Improvement Devices (PID)....285
11.1 Application Scope....285
11.3 Plans and Documentation....285
11.5 Design and Arrangement....285
11.7 Structural End Connection....286

13 Inspection of Castings....286

TABLE 1 Coefficient c 282
TABLE 2 Coefficient ϵ 282
TABLE 3 Coefficient c_n 283
TABLE 4 Corrosion allowance t_c 283

FIGURE 1A Plate Stem.... 265
FIGURE 1B Cast/Forged Stem....265
FIGURE 1C Bar Stem....266
FIGURE 2 Rudder Gudgeon.... 267
FIGURE 3 Stern Frame....269
FIGURE 4 Bar Sternpost 272
FIGURE 5 Shoe Piece....274
FIGURE 6 Rudder Horn 276
FIGURE 7 Connection of Rudder Horn to Aft Ship Structure 278
FIGURE 8 Shaft Strut 281
FIGURE 9 Propeller Nozzle Section View 284

SECTION 14 Rudders and Steering Equipment 287

1 General.... 287
1.1 Objective....287
1.3 Application 288
1.5 Materials for Rudder, Rudder Stock and Steering Equipment 291
1.7 Expected Torque....292
1.9 Rudder Stops....292
3 Rudder Design Force 292
3.1 Rudder Blades without Cutouts 292
3.3 Rudder Blades with Cutouts 293
3.5 Rudder Blades with Twisted Leading-edge 293
5 Rudder Design Torque 298
5.1 General 298
5.3 Rudder Blades without Cutouts 298
5.5 Rudder Blades with Cutouts 299
5.7 Rudders with Twisted Leading Edge 300
7 Rudder Stocks....300
7.1 Upper Rudder Stocks 300
7.3 Lower Rudder Stocks 300
7.5 Rudder Trunk and Rudder Stock Sealing....301
9 Flange Couplings 303
9.1 General 303
9.3 Horizontal Couplings 303
9.5 Vertical Couplings 305
11 Tapered Stock Couplings 306

11.1 Coupling Taper 306
11.3 Keyed Fitting 307
11.5 Keyless Fitting 309
11.7 Locking Nut 311
13 Pintles 312
13.1 Diameter 312
13.3 Couplings 313
13.5 Threads and Nuts 314
13.7 Pintle Housing 314
13.9 Bearings 314
15 Supporting and Anti-Lifting Arrangements 315
15.1 Rudder Stock Bearing, Rudder Shaft Bearing, and Pintle Bearing 315
15.3 Rudder Carrier 317
15.5 Anti-Lifting Devices 317
17 Double Plate Rudder 318
17.1 Strength 318
17.3 Side, Top and Bottom Plating 324
17.5 Diaphragm Plates 325
17.7 Connections of Rudder Blade Structure with Solid Parts 325
17.9 Welding and Design Details 328
17.11 Watertightness 329
19 Single Plate Rudders 329
19.1 Mainpiece Diameter 329
19.3 Blade Thickness 329
19.5 Arms 329
21 Steering Nozzles 330
21.1 Application Scope 330
21.3 Design Force 330
21.5 Design Torque 332
21.7 Nozzle Stock 333
21.9 Design Pressure 333
21.11 Plate Thickness 334
21.13 Section Modulus 335
21.15 Locking Device 336
21.17 Welding Requirement 336
23 Azimuthal Thruster 336
23.1 Application Scope 336
23.3 Plans and Documents 336
23.5 Locking Device 337
23.7 Design Force 337
23.9 Design Torque 339
23.11 Design Pressure 339
23.13 Nozzle Scantlings 339
23.15 Steering Tube 340

23.17 Section Modulus 341
23.19 Thruster Nozzle Top Connections 341
23.21 Nozzle Strut 342
23.23 Direct Analysis 342
23.25 Welding and Nondestructive Testing 343
25 Azimuthing Pod 344
25.1 General 344
25.3 Application Scope 345
25.5 Plans and Documents 346
25.7 Material Requirements 346
25.9 Locking Device 347
25.11 Direct Analysis 347
25.13 Direct Analysis Strength Criteria 348
25.15 Additional Requirements 348
25.17 Structural Transition 352
25.19 Service Accessibility 352
25.21 Air and Drainage Escape 353
25.23 Watertightness 353
25.25 Welding Requirements 353

TABLE 1A Coefficient k_c for Ordinary Rudders 295
TABLE 1B Coefficient k_c for High-lift/Performance Rudders 296
TABLE 2 Coefficient k_ℓ 299
TABLE 3 Coefficient α 299
TABLE 4 Minimum Bearing Force $B_{\min}$ 312
TABLE 5 Bearing Reaction Force 317
TABLE 6 Allowable Bearing Surface Pressure 317
TABLE 7 Thickness of Side Plating and Vertical Diaphragm Plates 328
TABLE 8 Coefficient c_m 334
TABLE 9 Coefficient c_n 334
TABLE 10 Corrosion allowance t_c 335
TABLE 11 Permissible Stress Level 348

FIGURE 1 Rudder Blades with Twisted Leading-edge 294
FIGURE 1A Rudder Blade without Cutouts 297
FIGURE 1B Rudder Blade with Cutouts 298
FIGURE 2 Fillet Shoulder Radius 303
FIGURE 3 Welded Joint Between Rudder Stock and Coupling Flange 305
FIGURE 4 Tapered Couplings 307
FIGURE 4A Cone Length and Coupling Length 307
FIGURE 4B Gudgeon Outer Diameter (d_a) Measurement 310
FIGURE 4C Pintle Cone Coupling 314
FIGURE 4D Bearing Dimensions 316

FIGURE 5 319
FIGURE 6A 320
FIGURE 6B 320
FIGURE 7 322
FIGURE 8 324
FIGURE 9 Cross-section of the Connection Between Rudder Blade Structure and Rudder Stock Housing , Example with Opening in Only One Side Shown..... 327
FIGURE 9A Use of Steel Backing Bar in Way of Full Penetration Welding of Rudder Side Plating..... 329
FIGURE 10 Nozzle Geometry..... 332
FIGURE 11 An Illustration of Azimuthal Thruster 338
FIGURE 11A Example of Azimuthal Thruster Welded Connections.....344
FIGURE 12 Pod Propulsion Unit 344
FIGURE 13 Hull Supporting Structure 351
FIGURE 14 Azimuthing Pod Internal Structure Access 353

SECTION 15 Protection of Deck Openings..... 354

1 Objective..... 354
1.1 Goals.....354
1.2 Functional Requirements.....354
1.3 Compliance..... 355
2 General..... 355
3 Positions and Design Pressures 356
3.1 Positions of Deck Openings 356
3.3 Vertical Weather Design Pressures 356
3.5 Horizontal Design Pressures 360
5 Hatchway Coamings.....362
5.1 Height of Coamings.....362
5.3 Coaming Plates..... 363
5.5 Coaming Stiffening 363
5.7 Protection of Coaming Edges..... 364
5.9 Continuous Longitudinal Hatch Coamings..... 364
7 Hatchways Closed by Covers of Aluminum and Fitted with Gaskets and Clamping Devices..... 364
7.1 Strength of Aluminum Covers..... 364
8 Hatchways Closed by Portable Covers and Secured Weathertight by Tarpaulins and Battening Devices 365
8.1 Pontoon Covers 365
8.3 Wood Hatch Covers..... 366
8.5 Steel Hatch Covers 367
8.7 Bearing Surface.....368
8.9 Materials Other Than Steel..... 368
9 Hatchways Closed by Covers of Steel Fitted with Gaskets and Clamping Devices for Cargo Holds.....368
9.1 Strength of Covers 368

9.3 Local Net Plate Thickness....370
9.5 Net Scantlings of Secondary Stiffeners 372
9.7 Net Scantlings of Primary Supporting Members 373
9.9 Cargo Loads 374
9.11 Container Loads 375
9.13 Loads due to Elastic Deformations of the Vessel's Hull....378
9.15 Strength Calculations 378
9.17 Buckling Strength of Hatch Cover Structures 379
9.19 Details of Hatch Covers....382
9.21 Hatch Coaming Strength Criteria....384
9.23 Closing Arrangements....389
9.25 Corrosion Addition and Steel Renewal....393
10 Hatchways Closed by Covers of Steel Fitted with Gaskets and Clamping Devices for Spaces Other Than Cargo Holds 394
10.1 Strength of Covers....394
10.3 Other Materials....394
10.5 Means for Securing Weathertightness....394
11 Hatchways in Decks at Higher Levels....394
11.1 Hatchways in Decks at Higher Levels....394
11.3 Hatchways in Lower Decks or within Fully Enclosed Superstructures....394
13 Small Hatches on the Exposed Fore Deck 396
13.1 Strength....396
13.3 Primary Securing Devices....397
13.5 Requirements for Primary Securing....397
13.7 Secondary Devices....398
15 Other Hatchways....400
15.1 Hatchways within Open Superstructures....400
15.3 Hatchways within Deckhouses....400
17 Additional Requirements for Subdivision....401
17.1 External Opening below Damage Waterline....401
17.3 Internal Openings....401
19 Machinery Casings....401
19.1 Arrangement 401
19.3 Fiddleys, Funnels, and Ventilators....401
19.5 Casings within Open Superstructures 401
19.7 Casings within Enclosed Superstructures 401
19.9 Casings within Deckhouses....402
19.11 Exposed Casings on Superstructure Decks for Vessels Under 90 m (295 ft) in Length....402
21 Miscellaneous Openings in Freeboard and Superstructure Decks 403
21.1 Manholes and Scuttles....403
21.3 Other Openings....403
21.5 Escape Openings 403

21.7 Companionway Sills 403
21.9 Mast Openings 404
21.11 Chain Pipe Opening 404

TABLE 1A Protection of Deck Openings - Application Scope 355
TABLE 1 Minimum Design Load p_H 362
TABLE 2 Allowable Stresses 369
TABLE 3 Structural Members and Assessment Methods 379
TABLE 4 Allowable Buckling Utilization Factors 382
TABLE 7 Permissible Nominal Surface Pressure p_n 392
TABLE 8 Corrosion Additions t_S for Hatch Covers and Hatch Coamings 393
TABLE 9 Scantlings for Small Steel Hatch Covers on the Fore Deck 398

FIGURE 1 Positions 1 and 2 359
FIGURE 2 Positions 1 and 2 for an Increased Freeboard 360
FIGURE 2A Hatchways Secured Weathertight by Tarpaulins 366
FIGURE 3 Determination of Normal Stress of the Hatch Cover Plating 371
FIGURE 4 Forces due to Container Loads 376
FIGURE 5 Partial Loading of a Container Hatch Cover 377
FIGURE 6 Example of Hatch Cover Fitted with U-type Stiffeners 378
FIGURE 7 Hatch Cover Top/Bottom Plating Structures 381
FIGURE 8 Hatch Cover Webs of Primary Supporting Members 381
FIGURE 9A Labyrinth and Gutter Arrangements 384
FIGURE 9B Gap Between Panels 384
FIGURE 10 Examples for Typical Coaming Stay Configurations 387
FIGURE 11 Example for Arrangement of Coaming Plates 388
FIGURE 12 Lifting Forces at a Hatch Cover 390
FIGURE 13 Arrangement of Stiffeners 399
FIGURE 14 Example of Primary Securing Method 400

SECTION 16 Protection of Shell Openings 405
1 General 405
1.1 Objective 405
2 Cargo, Gangway, or Fueling Ports 408
2.1 Construction 408
2.3 Location 408
2.5 Watertight Subdivision Openings 409
3 Bow Doors, Inner Doors, Side Shell Doors and Stern Doors 409
3.1 General 409
3.3 Arrangement 409
5 Definitions 410
5.1 Definitions 410

7 Securing and Supporting Devices - Arrangements 411
7.1 General 411
7.3 Side Shell and Stern Doors 411
7.5 Bow Doors 412
9 Securing and Locking Arrangement 412
9.1 General 412
9.3 Operation 412
11 Tightness 413
11.1 Bow Doors 413
11.3 Inner Doors 413
11.5 Side Shell and Stern Doors 413
11.7 Testing at Watertight Door Manufacturer 413
13 Bow Door Scantlings 413
13.1 General 413
13.3 Primary Structure 413
13.5 Secondary Stiffeners 413
13.7 Plating 414
13.9 Securing and Supporting Devices – Scantlings for Bow Doors 414
13.11 Visor Door Lifting Arms and Supports 415
15 Inner Door Scantlings 415
15.1 General 415
15.3 Primary Structure 415
15.5 Securing and Supporting Devices 415
17 Side Shell Door and Stern Door Scantlings 416
17.1 General 416
17.3 Primary Structure 416
17.5 Secondary Stiffeners 416
17.7 Plating 416
17.9 Securing and Supporting Devices 416
19 Bow Door Design Loads 417
19.1 External Pressure 417
19.3 External Forces 418
19.5 Visor Door Forces, Moments and Load Cases 419
19.7 Side-Opening Door Load Cases 421
21 Inner Door Design Loads 421
21.1 External Pressure 421
21.3 Internal Pressure 422
23 Design Forces forSide Shell and Stern Doors 422
23.1 Design Forces for Primary Members 422
23.3 Design Forces for Securing or Supporting Devices of Doors Opening Inwards 422
23.5 Design Forces for Securing or Supporting Devices of Doors Opening Outwards 422
25 Allowable Stresses 423

25.1 Primary Structure and Securing and Supporting Devices ... 423
25.3 Steel Securing and Supporting Devices Bearing Stress ... 423
25.5 Tensile Stress on Threaded Bolts ... 423
27 Operating and Maintenance Manual ... 423
27.1 Manual ... 423
27.3 Operating Procedures ... 424

FIGURE 1 Location of Cargo, Gangway, or Fueling Port Openings ... 409
FIGURE 2 Bow Door Type ... 411
FIGURE 3 Example Cleat Arrangement ... 412
FIGURE 4 Example Thrust Bearing ... 415
FIGURE 5 Entry and Flare Angles ... 418
FIGURE 6 Definition of α_m and β_m ... 419
FIGURE 7 Visor Type Bow Door Design Parameters ... 420

SECTION 17 Bulwarks, Rails, Freeing Ports, Side Scuttles,Windows, Ventilators, Tank Vents and Overflows ... 425

1 General ... 425
1.1 Objective ... 425
2 Bulwarks and Guard Rails ... 426
2.1 Height on Manned Vessels ... 426
2.3 Bulwarks ... 426
2.5 Guard Rails ... 428
3 Access and Crew Protection ... 431
3.1 General ... 431
3.3 Access to Bow on Tankers ... 431
3.5 Embarkation, Disembarkation and Pilot Transfer Arrangement ... 433
5 Freeing Ports ... 434
5.1 Definitions ... 434
5.2 General ... 435
5.3 Freeing Port Area on Freeboard Deck ... 435
5.4 Freeing Port Area in a Well not Adjacent to a Trunk or Hatchways ... 436
5.5 Continuous Trunks or Hatchways ... 438
5.6 Non-continuous Trunk or Hatchway ... 438
5.7 Open Superstructures ... 439
5.8 Multiple Wells ... 440
5.9 Type ‘A’ Vessels and Type ‘B’ Vessels with Reduced Freeboard ... 441
5.10 Details of Freeing Ports ... 441
7 Side Scuttles ... 443
7.1 Location ... 443
7.3 Deadlights and Storm Covers ... 443

7.5 Construction 444
9 Windows 444
9.1 Location..... 445
9.3 Deadlight Arrangement..... 445
9.5 Construction..... 445
9.7 Glazing for Windows and Side Scuttles..... 446
9.8 Skylights 448
9.9 Testing..... 448
11 Ventilators, Tank Vents and Overflows 449
11.1 General 449
11.3 Ventilators 449
11.5 Tank Vents and Overflows 450
11.7 Ventilators, Tank Vents and Overflows on the Fore Deck 450

TABLE 1A Thickness of Bulwark Plates 427
TABLE 1B Acceptable Arrangement for Access 431
TABLE 2 Required Freeing Port Area in Bulwarks Located on the Freeboard Deck 435
TABLE 3 Required Freeing Port Area in a Well not Adjacent to a Trunk or Hatchway 436
TABLE 4 Freeing Port Area in a Well Adjacent to Continuous Trunk or Hatchway..... 438
TABLE 5 Freeing Port Area in a Well Adjacent to a Non-continuous Trunk or Hatchway 439
TABLE 6 447
TABLE 7 447
TABLE 8 760 mm (30 in.)(3) High Tank Vents and Overflows Thickness and Bracket Standards 451
TABLE 9 900 mm (35.4 in.)(2) High Ventilator Thickness and Bracket Standards..... 452

FIGURE 1 Bulwark Stanchion Offset for OSV..... 428
FIGURE 2 Guardrail Stanchion..... 429
FIGURE 3 Guardrail Stanchion..... 430
FIGURE 4 Free Flow Area in way of Non-continuous Hatchways..... 438
FIGURE 5 Freeing Ports: Multiple Wells 440
FIGURE 6 Freeing Ports: Configuration considered as One Well 441
FIGURE 7 Freeing Port Area: Distribution with Deck Sheer 442
FIGURE 8 Freeing Port Area: Distribution with little to no Deck Sheer 442

SECTION 18 Ceiling, Sparring, and Protection of Steel..... 454
1 General..... 454
1.1 Objective..... 454
3 Close Ceiling..... 455

3 <No Text>.....455
5 Corrosion Protection of Steel 455
5.1 All Spaces 455
5.3 Dedicated Salt Water Ballast Tanks and Double-side Skin Spaces.....455
5.5 Void Spaces.....456
5.7 Fuel Oil Tanks 456
5.9 Cargo Holds on Bulk Carriers (including Combination Carriers) 456
5.11 Integral Tanks for Urea Based Ammonia Solution as SCR Reductants.....457
5.13 Corrosion Protection of Cargo Tanks of Crude Oil Tankers 458

FIGURE 1 Extent of Coatings on Bulk Carriers 457

SECTION 19 Weld Design 459
1 General.....459
1.1 Objective 459
1.3 Fillet Welds 460
3 Tee Connections 460
3.1 Size of Fillet Welds.....460
3.3 Arrangement of Intermittent Welding.....461
3.5 Intermittent Welding at Ends and Intersections.....461
3.7 Thin Plating 462
5 <No Text>.....475
6 Tee Joints at Boundary Connections.....475
7 Ends of Unbracketed Stiffeners.....475
9 Reduced Weld Size.....476
9.1 General.....476
9.3 Controlled Gaps.....476
9.5 Deep Penetration Welds.....476
11 Lapped Joints.....476
11.1 General.....476
11.3 Overlapped End Connections.....476
11.5 Overlapped Seams.....477
11.7 Overlaps for Lugs and Collars.....477
11.9 Overlaps of Pipe Penetration Collars.....477
13 Plug Welds or Slot Welds 477
15 Full or Partial Penetration Corner or Tee Joints 478
17 Alternatives.....478

TABLE 1 Weld Factors for Vessels 90 m (295 ft) in Length and Greater.....463
TABLE 2 Weld Sizes and Spacing for Vessels Under 90 m (295 ft) in Length – Millimeters.....468

TABLE 2 Weld Sizes and Spacing for Vessels Under 90 m (295 ft) in Length – Inches 471

FIGURE 1 Double Continuous Welds at Ends and Intersections 462
FIGURE 2 Double Continuous Welds at Ends and Intersections 476
FIGURE 3 Slot Weld for Doubler 478

SECTION 20 Guidance on Finite Element Analysis 479
1 General 479
1.1 Submittal Items 480
3 Structural Modeling 480
3.1 Finite Element Types 480
3.3 Model Types 481
3.5 Modeling Guidance 481
5 Boundary Conditions 482
7 Loads 482
9 Acceptance Criteria 482
9.1 Allowable Stresses 482
9.3 Buckling Strength 484

TABLE 1 Finite Element Type 481
TABLE 2A Factor of Safety for Beam Element Models 483
TABLE 2B Stress Limits for Plate Element Models 483

APPENDIX 1 Calculation of Shear Stresses for Vessels Having Longitudinal Bulkheads 486
1 General 486
1.1 Objective 486
1.2 Methods of Calculation 486
3 Calculation of the Shear Flow Around Closed Sections 487
5 Calculation of m 487
7 Determination of N_i 487

APPENDIX 2 Loading Manuals and Loading Instruments 489
1 Objective 489
1.1 Goal 489
1.2 Functional Requirements 489
1.3 Compliance 490
2 General 490
2.1 Application 490
3 Definitions 490
3.1 Loading Guidance 490
3.3 Category I Vessels 490
3.5 Category II Vessels 490
5 Loading Documents 491

5.1 Loading Manual....491
5.3 Modifications....491
7 Loading Manual....491
7.1 Required Information....491
7.3 Loading Conditions....491
7.5 Language....493
9 Loading Instrument....493
9.1 Type....493
9.3 Functional Requirements and Information....493
9.5 Language....493
11 Annual Surveys....493

TABLE 1 Loading Conditions in the Loading Manual....491

APPENDIX 3 Loading Manuals and Loading Instruments: Additional Requirements for Bulk Carriers, Ore Carriers and Combination Carriers 150 Meters (492 Feet) and above in Length (L_f)....494

1 Objective....494
1.1 Goal....494
1.2 Functional Requirements....494
1.3 Compliance....495
2 Application....495
3 <No Text>....495
5 Loading Manual....495
5.1 Required Information....495
5.3 Loading Conditions....496
7 Loading Instrument....496
7.1 Required Verifications....496

TABLE 1 Loading Conditions in the Loading Manual For Bulk Carriers, Ore Carriers and Combination Carriers 150 Meters (492 Feet) and above in Length (L_f)....497
TABLE 2 Guidance on Loading/Unloading Sequences....498

APPENDIX 4 Buckling Strength of Longitudinal Strength Members for Vessels Over 61 m (200 ft) in Length....500

1 Application....500
3 Elastic Buckling Stresses....500
3.1 Elastic Buckling of Plates....500
3.3 Elastic Buckling of Longitudinals....502
5 Critical Buckling Stresses....505
5.1 Compression....505
5.3 Shear....506
7 Working Stress....506

7.1 Longitudinal Compressive Stress....506
7.3 Shear Stresses....507
9 Scantling Criteria....507
9.1 Buckling Stress....507

TABLE 1A Standard Deduction t_k for Vessels Under 90 m (295 ft) in Length....504
TABLE 1B Standard Deduction t_k for Vessels 90 m (295 ft) in Length and Above....504
TABLE 2 Number of Half Waves....505

FIGURE 1 Plating with Longitudinal/Transverse Stiffeners....501

APPENDIX 5 Guidelines for Calculating Bending Moment and Shear Force in Rudders and Rudder Stocks....509
1 Application....509
3 Spade Rudders....509
3.1 Rudder Blade....509
3.3 Lower Stock....511
3.5 Moment at Top of Upper Stock Taper....512
3.7 Bearing Reaction Forces....512
5 Rudders Supported by Shoe Piece....515
5.1 Shear Force, Bending Moment and Reaction Forces....515
7 Rudders Supported by a Horn with One Pintle....516
7.1 Shear Force, Bending Moment and Reaction Forces....516
9 Rudders Supported by a Horn Arranged with Two Pintles (Supports)....518
9.1 Shear Force, Bending Moment and Reaction Forces....518

FIGURE 1 Spade Rudder....513
FIGURE 2 Rudder Supported by Shoe Piece....516
FIGURE 3A Rudder Supported by a Horn with One Pintle....517
FIGURE 3B Rudder Horn Sectional View....518
FIGURE 4 Rudder Supported by a Horn Arranged with Two Pintles (Supports)....520

APPENDIX 6 Portable Beams and Hatch Cover Stiffeners of Variable Cross Section....521
1 Application....521

FIGURE 1 SM and I of Construction Elements....522

APPENDIX 7 Review of Portable Industrial Equipment and Modules....523
1 Objective....523
1.1 Goals....523

1.2 Functional Requirements....523
1.3 Compliance....524
2 General....524
2.1 Applicability and Types of Industrial Modules....525
2.3 Background....525
3 Submission of Data....525
5 Structural Review....525
5.1 Arrangements....525
5.3 Securing Arrangement and Securing Details....526
5.5 Weights....528
5.7 Deck Contact Area, Skids and Mounting Frames....528
5.9 Equipment Installed Over the Side Shell....528
7 Statutory....528
7.1 Ventilation....528
7.3 Doors, Windows and Hatches....529
7.5 Fire Control Plans and Lifesaving....529
9 Electrical....529
9.1 General....529
11 Mechanical, Safety Systems, and Piping....530
11.1 General....530
13 Equipment Designed for Specialized Work....530
15 Stability and Tonnage....530
17 <No Text>....530

FIGURE 1 Fitting Welded to Equipment....527
FIGURE 2 Fitting Not Welded to Equipment....527

APPENDIX 8 Buckling Strength Assessment of Ship Structural Elements....531
1 Application and Definitions....531
1.1 Application....531
1.2 Terminology and Assumptions....532
1.3 Assessment Methods and Acceptance Criteria....535
2 Slenderness Requirements....537
2.1 General....537
2.2 Stiffeners....537
2.3 Primary Supporting Members....538
3 Buckling Requirements for Hull Girder Prescriptive Analysis....538
3.1 General....539
3.2 Buckling Criteria....542
4 Buckling Requirements for Direct Strength Analysis of Hatch Covers....544
4.1 General....544
4.2 Stiffened and Unstiffened Panels....544
5 Buckling Capacity....550
5.1 General....552

5.2 Buckling Capacity of Plate Panels 552
5.3 Buckling Capacity of Column Structures 574
6 Stress Based Reference Stresses 575
6.1 Stress Based Method 575
6.2 Reference Stresses 576

TABLE 1 Slenderness Coefficients 538
TABLE 2 Load Calculation Points (LCP) Coordinates for Plate Buckling Assessment 539
TABLE 3 Definition of Coefficients *B* and e_0 555
TABLE 4 Correction Factor F_{long} 557
TABLE 5 Buckling Factor and Reduction Factor for Plane Plate Panels 559
TABLE 6 **Buckling Factor and Reduction Factor for Curved Plate Panel with** $R/t_p \leq 2500$ 563
TABLE 7 Moments of inertia 570
TABLE 8 Reduction Factors 572

FIGURE 1 Overview of Applying 3-2-A8 in Conjunction with Relevant Sections 532
FIGURE 2 Elementary Plate Panel (EPP) Definition 533
FIGURE 3 Dimensions of Typical Stiffener Cross Sections 534
FIGURE 4 Dimensions of a U-type Stiffener Cross Section 535
FIGURE 5 Illustration of Buckling Capacity and Buckling Utilization Factor 536
FIGURE 6 LCP for Plate Buckling Assessment 540
FIGURE 7 Definition of Pressure for Vertical Stiffeners 541
FIGURE 8 Plate Thickness Change Over the Width 542
FIGURE 9 Single Corrugation 544
FIGURE 10 Transverse Stiffened Bilge Plating 559
FIGURE 11 Idealization of Bulb Stiffener 566
FIGURE 12 Web Plate Idealization 572
FIGURE 13 Buckling Panel 577

PART 3

CHAPTER 2
Hull Structures and Arrangements

SECTION 1
Longitudinal Strength

1 General *(2024)*

1.1 Objective

1.1.1 Goals

The vessel structure is to be designed, constructed, operated, and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goals*
STRU 1	In the intact conditions, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU 3	Provide protection to persons onboard, the environment and required safety services.
MGMT 3	Establish procedures, plans and instructions for operations concerning the safety of the personnel, vessel, and protection of the environment. {ISM Code 7}

1.1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above stated goals, the design, construction, installation, and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Structure (STRU)	
STRU-FR1	Adequate longitudinal strength is to be provided to resist bending moments and shear forces associated with vessel loading and wave loads anticipated during the design life
STRU-FR2	Design still water bending moments in the intact condition are to be properly defined and provided to increase the safety at the design stage and reduce the risk of loading conditions during the voyage that could be critical for the longitudinal strength.
STRU-FR3	The bending moments and shear forces associated with vessel loading are to consider departure and arrival conditions and intermediate conditions.

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
STRU-FR4	The loads in the longitudinal strength assessment are to be based on a return period of 10^{-8} probability level in the North Atlantic.
STRU-FR5	Hull deflection, springing, and vibration is to be accounted for and controlled.
STRU-FR6	Stresses in way of large deck openings are to be minimized.
STRU-FR7	Strength members subject to compressive or shear stresses due to hull girder loads are to have adequate buckling strength
Safety Management (MGMT)	
MGMT-FR1	Information is to be provided to enable the vessel to operate within the design envelope.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved by ABS. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

2 Application *(2024)*

Vessels to be classed for unrestricted service are to have longitudinal strength in accordance with the requirements of this Section. Vessels, however, having one or more of the following characteristics are subject to special consideration:

i)	Length:	$L > L_{max}$, where L and L_{max} are as defined in 3-1-2/7
ii)	Proportions:	not comply with 3-1-2/7.i. & 3-1-2/7.ii.
iii)	Block Coefficient:	$C_b < 0.6$
iv)	Vessels with large deck opening	
v)	Vessels with large flare	
vi)	Carriage of heated cargoes	
vii)	Unusual type or design	

Commentary:

For vessels outside the prescribed characteristics, special consideration may include direct analysis as follows:

- For block coefficient and proportions outside the application range, a hydrodynamic study may be required to calculate the wave induced loads
- For $B/D > 4$, transverse strength analysis may be required for the primary structural members to evaluate transverse bending and racking. Loading scenarios should consider transverse forces induced by dynamic loads, transverse accelerations of the cargo, and loading conditions that maximize transverse bending.
- For vessels with large openings in the strength deck, refer to Part 5C, Chapter 5 and 6 for analysis of torsional stresses and deformation.
- For $L/B > 5$, hull girder deflection investigation should be considered. Springing may lead to fatigue damage for vessels with large L/B.

- For passenger ships L > 150 m with partly effective superstructure and/or partly effective upper parts of the hull girder, full ship FEA may be carried out to investigate the overall hull girder stiffness and calculate and assess global stresses and deformation.
- For L > 350 m, DLA/SFA should be considered.
- Bow flare slamming and the effect of whipping on longitudinal strength should be considered for vessels with large flare.
- Thermal stresses and the impact of high temperatures on material strength should be considered for cargoes heated above 80 degrees C.

End of Commentary

3 Longitudinal Hull Girder Strength

3.1 Minimum Section Modulus for Vessels Under 61 m (200 ft) in Length *(2022)*

The minimum required hull girder section modulus, SM, at amidships, is to be determined in accordance with the following equation:

$$SM = C_1 C_2 L^2 B(C_b + 0.7) \text{ m-cm}^2 \text{ (ft-in}^2\text{)}$$

where

C_1 = $30.67–0.98L$ $12 \le L < 18$ m
= $22.40–0.52L$ $18 \le L < 24$ m
= $15.20–0.22L$ $24 \le L < 35$ m
= $11.35–0.11L$ $35 \le L < 45$ m
= 6.40 $45 \le L < 61$ m
= $30.67–0.299L$ $40 \le L < 59$ ft
= $22.40–0.158L$ $59 \le L < 79$ ft
= $15.20–0.067L$ $79 \le L < 115$ ft
= $11.35–0.033L$ $115 \le L < 150$ ft
= 6.40 $150 \le L < 200$ ft

C_2 = 0.01 (0.01, 1.44×10^{-4})

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

B = breadth of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/5, in m (ft)

C_b = block coefficient, as defined in 3-1-1/13.3, but is not to be taken less than 0.6.

3.3 Longitudinal Strength for Vessels 61 m (200 ft) in Length and Over *(2022)*

Vessels of 61 m (200 ft) in length or greater are to comply with the following requirements.

3.3.1 Sign Convention of Bending Moment and Shear Force

The sign convention for bending moment and shear force is shown in [FIGURE 1] .

3.3.2 Still-water Bending Moment and Shear Force – General

Still-water bending moment and shear force calculations, determining the bending moment and hull girder shear force values along the vessel's entire length, are to be submitted together with the distribution of lightship weights for the anticipated loaded, transitional and ballasted conditions.

For bulk carriers with notation **BC-A**, **BC-B** or **BC-C** of length 150 m (492 ft) and above, see also [5C-3-A1/5] , 5C-3-3/3.1 and Section [5C-3-A5a] for hold flooded conditions.

3.3.3 Still-water Bending Moment and Shear Force *(2022)*

3.3.3(a) Design Cargo and Ballast Loading Conditions.* The calculations are to consider the effect of bunker, fresh water and consumable stores at departure and arrival. Where their amount and disposition at any stage of the voyage are considered more severe, calculations for such intermediate conditions are to be submitted in addition to those for departure and arrival conditions.

Where any ballasting/de-ballasting is intended during a voyage, calculations for the intermediate condition just before and just after ballasting and/or de-ballasting of any ballast tanks are to be submitted and, where approved, included in the loading manual for guidance.

3.3.3(b) Ballast Tanks in Cargo Loaded Conditions.* Cargo loading conditions involving partially filled peak tanks are not permitted unless the conditions indicated in [3.3.3(d)] for partially filled tanks are complied with.

3.3.3(c) Sequential Ballast Water Exchange.* The requirements of [3.3.3(b)] and [3.3.3(d)] are not applicable to sequential method for ballast water exchange. However, bending moment and shear force calculations for each de-ballasting or ballasting stage in the ballast water exchange sequence are to be included in the loading manual or ballast water management plan of any vessel that intends to employ the sequential ballast water exchange method.

3.3.3(d) Ballast Tanks in Ballast Loaded Conditions.* Ballast loading conditions involving partially filled ballast tanks (peak tanks and/or other ballast tanks) are not permitted as design conditions, unless:

i) Design stress limits are satisfied for all filling levels between empty and full, and

ii) For bulk carriers, the requirements in [5C-3-A5a] , as applicable, are complied with for all filling levels between empty and full.

For the purpose of compliance with the "all filling levels" requirement, calculations for full and empty conditions at each departure and arrival, and where required by [3.3.3] , at any intermediate condition, will be accepted. The tanks intended to be partially filled are assumed to be:

- Empty
- Full
- Partially filled at intended level

Where there are multiple tanks intended to be partially filled, all combinations of empty, full or partially filled at intended level for those tanks are subject to investigation.

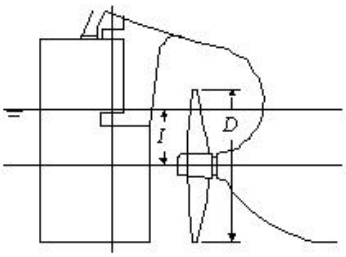
However, for conventional ore carriers with large wing water ballast tanks in cargo area, where empty or full ballast water filling levels of one or maximum two pairs of these tanks lead to the vessel's trim exceeding one of the following conditions, it is sufficient to demonstrate compliance with maximum, minimum and intended partial filling levels of these one or maximum two pairs of ballast tanks such that the ship's condition does not exceed any of these trim limits. Filling levels of all other wing ballast tanks are to be considered between empty and full. The trim conditions mentioned above are:

- Trim by stern of 3% of the vessel's length, or

- Trim by bow of 1.5% of the vessel's length, or
- Any trim that cannot maintain propeller immersion (I/D) not less than 25%, where:

I = distance from propeller centerline to the waterline

D = propeller diameter



The maximum and minimum filling levels of the above mentioned pairs of side ballast tanks are to be indicated in the loading manual.

3.5 Wave Loads

3.5.1 Wave Bending Moment Amidships *(2022)*

The wave bending moment, expressed in kN-m (tf-m, Ltf-ft), may be obtained from the following equations:

$$M_{ws} = -k_1 C_1 L^2 B(C_b + 0.7) \times 10^{-3} \quad \text{Sagging Moment}$$

$$M_{wh} = +k_2 C_1 L^2 B C_b \times 10^{-3} \quad \text{Hogging Moment}$$

where

k_1 = 110 (11.22, 1.026)

k_2 = 190 (19.37, 1.772)

C_1 = $0.044L + 3.75$ $61 \leq L \leq 90$ m

= $10.75 - \left(\frac{300 - L}{100}\right)^{1.5}$ $90 < L < 300$ m

= 10.75 $300 < L < 350$ m

= $10.75 - \left(\frac{L - 350}{150}\right)^{1.5}$ $350 \leq L \leq 500$ m

C_1 = $0.0134\,L + 3.75$ $200 \leq L < 295$ ft

= $10.75 - \left(\frac{984 - L}{328}\right)^{1.5}$ $295 \leq L \leq 984$ ft

$= 10.75 \qquad 984 < L < 1148$ ft

$= 10.75 - \left(\frac{L - 1148}{492}\right)^{1.5} \qquad 1148 \leq L \leq 1640$ ft

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

B = breadth of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/5, in m (ft)

C_b = block coefficient, as defined in 3-1-1/13.3, but is not to be taken less than 0.6

3.5.2 Envelope Curve of Wave Bending Moment

The wave bending moment along the vessel length, L, may be obtained by multiplying the midship value by the distribution factor M, given by [FIGURE 2].

3.5.3 Wave Shear Force

The envelopes of maximum shearing forces induced by waves, F_w, as shown in [FIGURE 3] and [FIGURE 4] may be obtained from the following equations:

$F_{wp} = +kF_1C_1LB(C_b + 0.7) \times 10^{-2}$ For positive shear force

$F_{wn} = -kF_2C_1LB(C_b + 0.7) \times 10^{-2}$ For negative shear force

where

F_{wp}, F_{wn} = maximum shearing force induced by wave, in kN (tf, Ltf)

C_1 = as defined in [3.5.1]

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

B = breadth of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/5, in m (ft)

C_b = block coefficient, as defined in 3-1-1/13.3, but is not to be taken less than 0.6

k = 30 (3.059, 0.2797)

F_1 = distribution factor, as shown in [FIGURE 3]

F_2 = distribution factor, as shown in [FIGURE 4]

FIGURE 1
Sign Convention

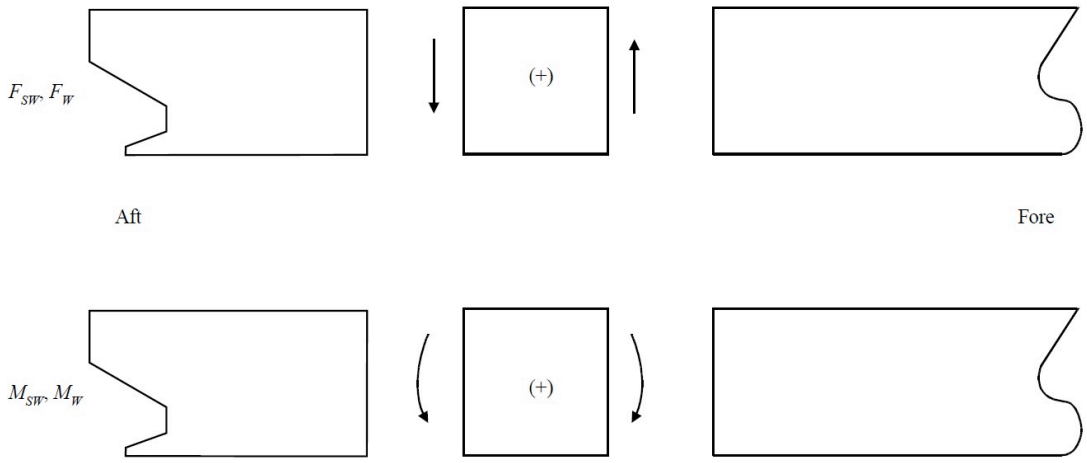


FIGURE 2
Distribution Factor M

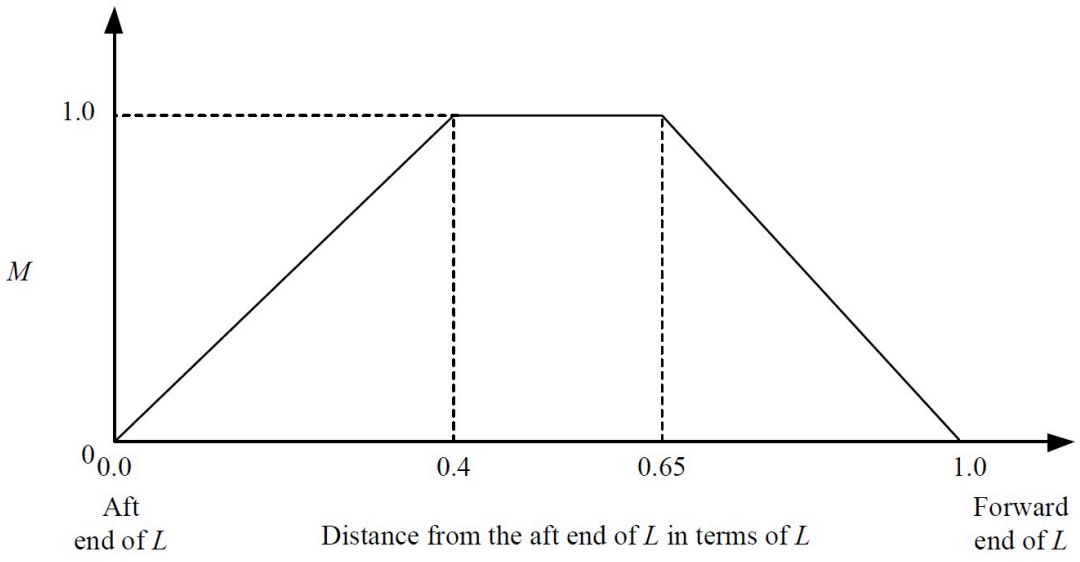


FIGURE 3
Distribution Factor F_1

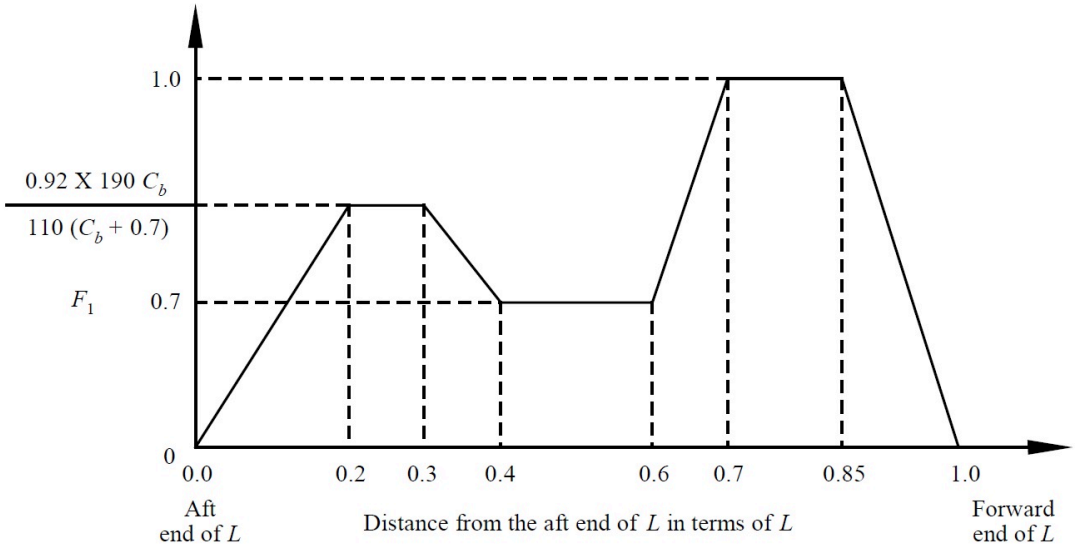
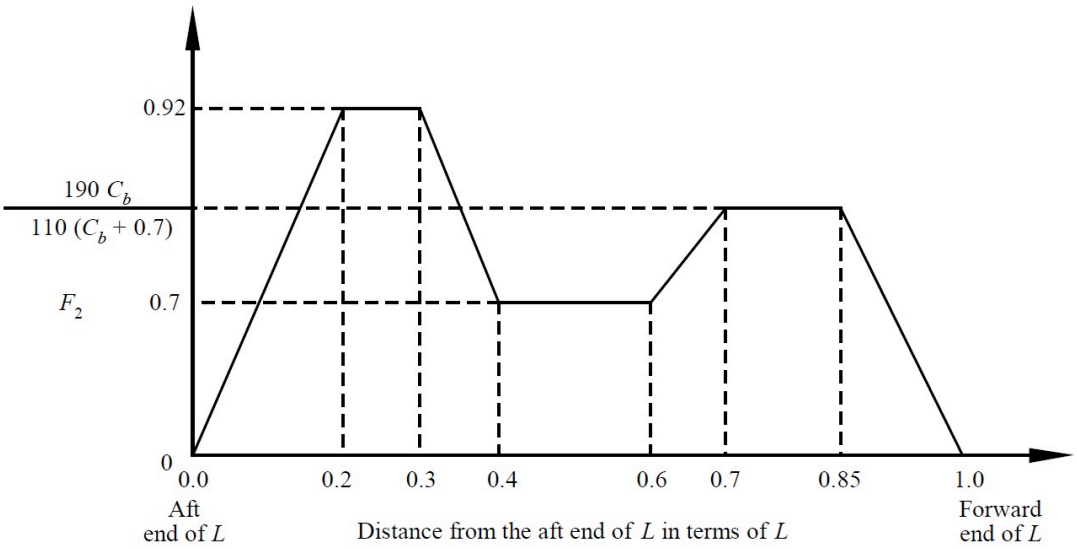


FIGURE 4
Distribution Factor F_2



3.7 Bending Strength *(2022)*

3.7.1 Hull Girder Section Modulus for Vessels 61 m (200 ft) in Length and Over *(2022)*

3.7.1(a) Section Modulus

The required hull girder section modulus for $0.4L$ amidships, is to be the greater of the values obtained from the following equation or [3.7.1(b)] :

$SM = M_t / f_p$ cm^2-m (in^2-ft)

where

M_t = total bending moment to be obtained as the maximum algebraic sum (see sign convention in [3.3.1] of still-water bending moment and wave-induced bending moment,

= $M_{sw} + M_w$

M_{sw} = still-water bending moment in accordance with [3.3] , in kN-m (tf-m, Ltf-ft)

M_w = maximum wave-induced bending moment in accordance with [3.5.1]

f_p = nominal permissible bending stress

= 17.5 kN/cm^2 (1.784 tf/cm^2, 11.33 Ltf/in^2)

3.7.1(b) Minimum Section Modulus **(2024)**

The minimum hull girder section modulus amidships is not to be less than obtained from the following equation:

$SM = C_1C_2L^2B(C_b + 0.7)$ cm^2-m (in^2-ft)

where

C_1 is as defined in [3.5.1] and $C_2, L, B,$ and C_b are as defined in [3.1]

C_2 is defined in [3.1]

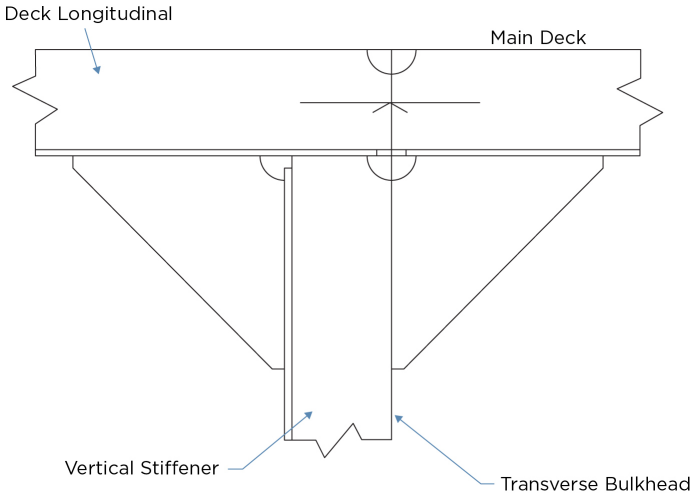
3.7.1(c) Extension of Midship Section Modulus and Continuity of Structure. **(2024)**

Where the scantlings are based on the still-water bending moment envelope curves, items included in the hull girder section modulus amidships are to be extended as necessary to meet the hull girder section modulus required at the location being considered.

i) For vessels of $L \geq 90$ meters ($L \geq 295$ feet) which have longitudinal framing, the longitudinals are to be continuous within the amidships 0.4L.
Outside 0.4L amidships, the sectional area of the longitudinals may be included in the hull-girder section modulus calculations provided the longitudinals are continuous in way of deck transverses. They may be intercostal at transverse bulkheads provided the areas of the longitudinals are effectively developed at the intercostal connections by bracket areas and fillet weld throat area.

ii) For vessels of $L < 90$ meters ($L < 295$ feet) which have longitudinal framing and the hull girder strength is such that the vessel meets the requirements without including the area of the longitudinals, ordinary strength steel longitudinals need not to be continuous. However the areas of the longitudinals are to be effectively developed at intercostal connections by brackets and weld area.
Where the area of longitudinals is to be included in the section modulus calculation the longitudinals are to be continuous in way of deck transverses. They may be intercostal at transverse bulkheads provided the areas of the longitudinals are effectively developed at the intercostal connections by bracket areas and fillet weld throat area.
High strength steel longitudinals are always required to be continuous in way of ordinary strength steel transverse members.
Ordinary-strength steel longitudinals may be intercostal at watertight floors provided the throat area of the welded connections and the end bracket load paths have an area not less than the area of the longitudinals and the brackets are arranged to minimize misalignments.

Commentary:



The above detail provides an example of an acceptable design for intercostal longitudinal stiffeners at transverse bulkheads for vessels of L < 90 meters (L < 295 feet), provided that:

i) Longitudinal stiffeners are welded directly to the transverse bulkheads with end brackets

ii) The welds between longitudinals, brackets and W.T. Bulkheads are double continuous welds

iii) Longitudinal stiffeners and brackets forward and aft of the W.T. bulkheads are properly aligned

End of Commentary

iii) For all vessels, the center girder is to extend as far forward and aft as practicable. The plates are to be continuous within the amidship 0.75L. The side girders and longitudinal bulkheads are to be continuous within the amidship 0.4L if included in the hull girder section modulus calculation.

3.7.2 Hull Girder Moment of Inertia *(2022)*

The hull girder moment of inertia, I, amidships, is to be not less than:

$$I = L \cdot SM/33.3 \text{ cm}^2\text{-m}^2 \text{ (in}^2\text{-ft}^2\text{)}$$

where

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

SM = required hull girder section modulus, in cm^2-m (in^2-ft). See [3.1] for vessels under 61 m (200 ft) in length or [3.7.1] for vessels 61 m (200 ft) in length and over.

3.7.3 Hull Girder Strength Outside of 0.4L Amidships for Vessels 61 m (200 ft) in Length and Over *(2022)*

The strength of the hull girder is to be checked at sections outside of $0.4L$ amidships. The required section modulus for the regions outside $0.4L$ amidships is to be obtained based on the total bending moment at the section considered and applying the permissible bending stress as given in [3.7.1(a)] . As a minimum, hull girder bending strength is to be checked at the following locations:

- In way of the forward end of the engine room.
- In way of the forward end of the foremost cargo hold.

- At any locations where there are significant changes in the hull cross-section.
- At any locations where there are changes in the framing system.

Continuity of structure is to be maintained throughout the length of the ship. Where significant changes in the structural arrangement occur adequate transitional structure is to be provided.

For ships with large deck openings, sections at or near to the aft and forward quarter length positions are to be checked. For such ships with cargo holds aft of the superstructure, deckhouse or engine room, strength checks of sections in way of the aft end of the aft-most holds, and the aft end of the deckhouse or engine room are to be performed.

Buckling strength of members contributing to longitudinal strength and subjected to compressive and shear stresses is to be checked in accordance with [17] , in particular in regions where changes in the framing system or significant changes in the hull cross-section occur.

3.9 Shearing Strength for Vessels 61 m (200 ft) in Length and Over *(2022)*

3.9.1 General

In calculating the nominal total shear stress, f_s, due to still-water and wave-induced loads, the maximum algebraic sum of the shearing force in still-water F_{sw} and that induced by wave F_w at the station examined is to be used. The thickness of the side shell and the longitudinal bulkhead where fitted, is to be such that the nominal total shear stress f_s, as obtained from [3.9.2] or [3.9.4] , are not greater than 11.0 kN/cm^2(1.122 tf/cm^2,7.122 Ltf/in^2).

3.9.2 Shearing Strength for Vessels without Effective Longitudinal Bulkheads

For vessels without continuous longitudinal bulkheads, the nominal total shear stress f_s in the side shell plating may be obtained from the following equation:

$$f_s = (F_{sw} + F_w)m/2t_sI \text{kN/cm}^2(\text{tf/cm}^2, \text{Ltf/in}^2)$$

where

I = moment of inertia of the hull girder at the section under consideration, in cm^4 (in^4)

m = first moment, in cm^3 (in^3), about the neutral axis, of the area of the effective longitudinal material between the horizontal level at which the shear stress is being determined and the vertical extremity of effective longitudinal material, taken at the section under consideration.

t_s = thickness of the side shell plating at the position under consideration, in cm (in.)

F_{sw} = hull girder shearing force in still-water, in kN (tf, Ltf)

F_w = F_{wp} or F_{wn}, as specified by [3.5.3] , in kN (tf, Ltf), depending upon loading.

3.9.3 Modification of Hull girder Shearing Force Peaks

The hull girder shearing force in still water, F_{sw}, to be used for calculating side shell plate shear stress may be modified to account for the loads transmitted through the double bottom structure to the side shell through the transverse bulkhead. For this modification, unless a detailed calculation is performed, the following equation may be used as guidance to determine the shear force carried by the side shell at the transverse bulkhead (see [FIGURE 5]).

$F_s = F_{sw} - F_B$ kN (tf, Ltf)

where

F_{sw} = hull girder shearing force in still water as obtained by the conventional direct integration method, in kN (tf, Ltf).

F_B = F_{BA} or F_{BF}, whichever is the lesser

F_{BA} = $(0.45–0.2\ell_A/b_A)W_A b_A/B$

F_{BF} = $(0.45 - 0.2\ell_F/b_F)W_F b_F/B$

W_A, W_F = total load (net weight or net buoyancy) in the hold immediately abaft or forward of the bulkhead in question, in kN (tf, Ltf)

ℓ_A, ℓ_F = length of the adjacent holds respectively, containing W_A and W_F, in m (ft)

b_A, b_F = breadth of the double bottom structure in the holds immediately abaft and forward of the bulkhead in question, respectively, in m (ft). For vessels having double skins with flat inner bottom, it may be measured to the inner skins.

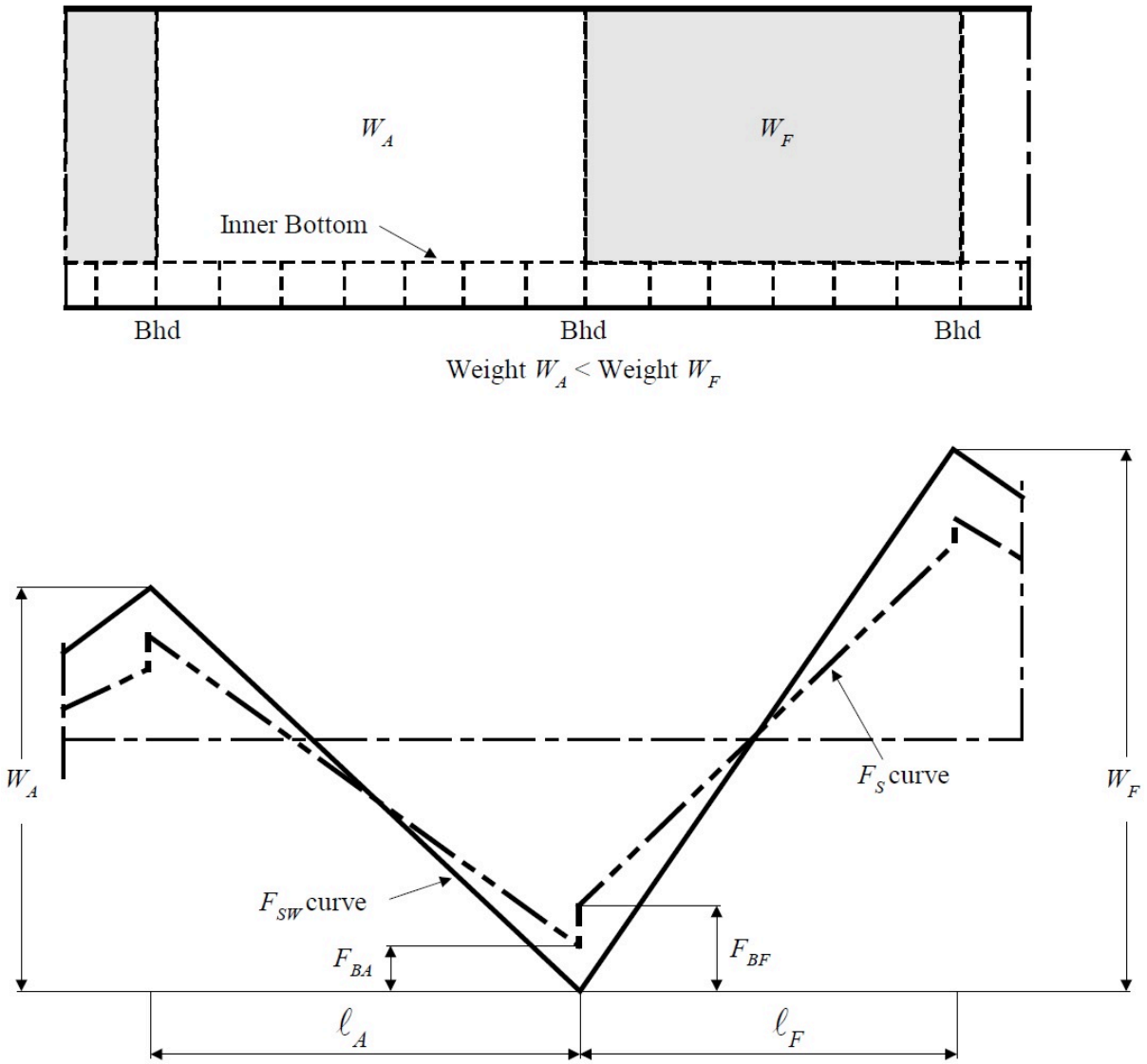
B = breadth of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/5, in m (ft)

3.9.4 Shearing Strength for Vessels with Two or Three Plane Longitudinal Bulkheads

For vessels having continuous longitudinal bulkheads, the total shear stresses in the side shell and the longitudinal bulkheads are to be calculated by an acceptable method. In determining the still-water shear force, consideration is to be given to the effects of non-uniform athwartship distribution of loads. The method described in Appendix 3-2-A1 may be used as a guide in calculating the nominal total shear stress f_s related to the shear flow in the side shell or longitudinal bulkhead plating.

Alternative methods of calculation will also be considered. Some acceptable methods are shown in 5C-1-4/5 and 5C-11-A1.

FIGURE 5
Shear Force Distribution



5 Longitudinal Members of Higher-Strength Steels

The following requirements are to be satisfied:

i) Vessels where the effective longitudinal material of either or both of upper and lower flanges of the longitudinal hull girders are constructed of steel having mechanical properties greater than those of ordinary steel (see Section [2-1-2] of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)* for ordinary steels and Section [2-1-3] for higher-strength steels), they are to have longitudinal strength in accordance with the preceding paragraphs of this Section, but the value of the hull girder section modulus and permissible shear stress may be modified as permitted by [5.3] and [5.5] .

ii) Application of higher-strength material is to be continuous over the length of the vessel to locations where the stress levels are suitable for the adjacent mild-steel structure.

iii) Higher-strength steel is to be extended to suitable locations below the strength deck and above the bottom, so that the stress levels to be satisfactory for the remaining middle steel structure.

iv) Longitudinal framing members are to be continuous throughout the required extent of higher-strength steel.

5.1 Hull Girder Moment of Inertia

The hull girder moment of inertia is to be not less than required by [3.7.2] using the mild steel section modulus obtained from [3.7.1].

5.3 Hull Girder Section Modulus *(1 July 2024)*

When either the top or the bottom flange of the hull girder, or both, is constructed of higher-strength material, the section modulus SM, as obtained from [3.1] or [3.7] may be reduced by the factor Q.

$$SM_{hts} = Q(SM)$$

where

Q = 0.78 for H32 strength steel

Q = 0.72 for H36 strength steel

Q = 0.68[1] for H40 strength steel

H32, H36, H40 = as specified in Section [2-1-3] of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)*

Notes:

1 The material factor for H40 may be taken as 0.66, provided that the hull structure is additionally verified for compliance with the requirements of:

- ABS *Guide for 'SafeHull-Dynamic Loading Approach' for Vessels*
- ABS *Guide for Spectral-Based Fatigue Analysis for Vessels*
- Appendix [A1] of the *Requirements for Application of Higher-Strength Hull Structural Thick Steel Plates in Container Carriers*

Q factors for steels having other yield points or yield strengths than listed above are to be obtained from the following formula:

$$Q = (n_y/Y)^e$$

where

n_y = 235 N/mm^2 (24 kgf/mm^2, 34000 psi)

Y = specified minimum yield strength of the material, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi), but is not to be taken as greater than $0.7U$ or 450 N/mm^2 (46 kgf/mm^2, 65000 psi), whichever is less

U = minimum tensile strength of material used, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)

e = 1.0 for $Y \leq$ 235 N/mm^2 (24 kgf/mm^2, 34000 psi)

= 0.75 for $Y >$ 235 N/mm^2 (24 kgf/mm^2, 34000 psi)

5.5 Hull girder Shearing Force

Where the side shell or longitudinal bulkhead is constructed of higher strength material, the permissible shear stresses indicated in [3.9] may be increased by the factor $1/Q$. For plate panel stability see [17].

7 Loading Guidance

7.1 Loading Manual *(2022)*

All vessels are to be provided with a loading manual and, when fitted, a loading instrument is to be in accordance with Appendix 3-2-A2.

In addition, bulk carriers, ore carriers and combination carriers 150 m (492 ft) or more in length (L_f), are to comply with the requirements in Appendix 3-2-A3.

7.3 Allowable Stresses

7.3.1 At Sea

See [3.7.1] for bending stress and [3.9.1] for shear stress for vessels with ordinary strength steel material.

For higher strength steel, the allowable stress may be increased by a factor of $1/Q$ where Q is as defined in [5.3].

7.3.2 In Port

The allowable still water in-port stress is 13.13 kN/cm^2 (1.34 tf/cm^2, 8.5 Ltf/in^2) for bending and 10 kN/cm^2 (1.025 tf/cm^2, 6.5 Ltf/in^2) for shear.

For higher strength steel, the allowable stress may be increased by a factor of $1/Q$ where Q is as defined in [5.3].

7.5 Notation of Loading and Stability Computer Software *(2024)*

Section 3-3-1/19 provides the requirements for the Class Notation **LSC** and the optional notation **LSC(DC)**. **LSC** is the notation for loading and stability computer software, and **LSC(DC)** is the notation for the loading and stability software providing damage control assessment.

9 Section Modulus Calculation

9.1 Items Included in the Calculation *(2024)*

The following items are to be included (if applicable) in the calculation of the hull girder section modulus, provided that they are continuous (see [3.7.1(c)] for details):

- Deck plating (strength deck and other effective decks)
- Shell and inner bottom plating
- Deck and bottom girders
- Plating and longitudinal stiffeners of longitudinal bulkheads. Horizontally corrugated longitudinal bulkheads can be included in the hull girder strength calculation for bending strength but not for shear strength. Vertically corrugated longitudinal bulkheads are to be excluded from the hull girder bending strength calculation but may be considered for shear strength.
- All longitudinals of deck, side, bottom and inner bottom
- Continuous longitudinal hatch coamings as described in [9.9.1]
- Continuous longitudinal cargo rails and/or walkways as described in [9.7].

Commentary:

The following members need not be considered in the calculation of hull girder Section Modulus:

- Superstructures extending less than 0.15*L*
- Vertically corrugated bulkheads
- Bulwarks and gutter plates
- Bilge keels
- Sniped or non-continuous longitudinal stiffeners
- Non-continuous hatch coaming

The following locations should be checked for the Section Modulus:

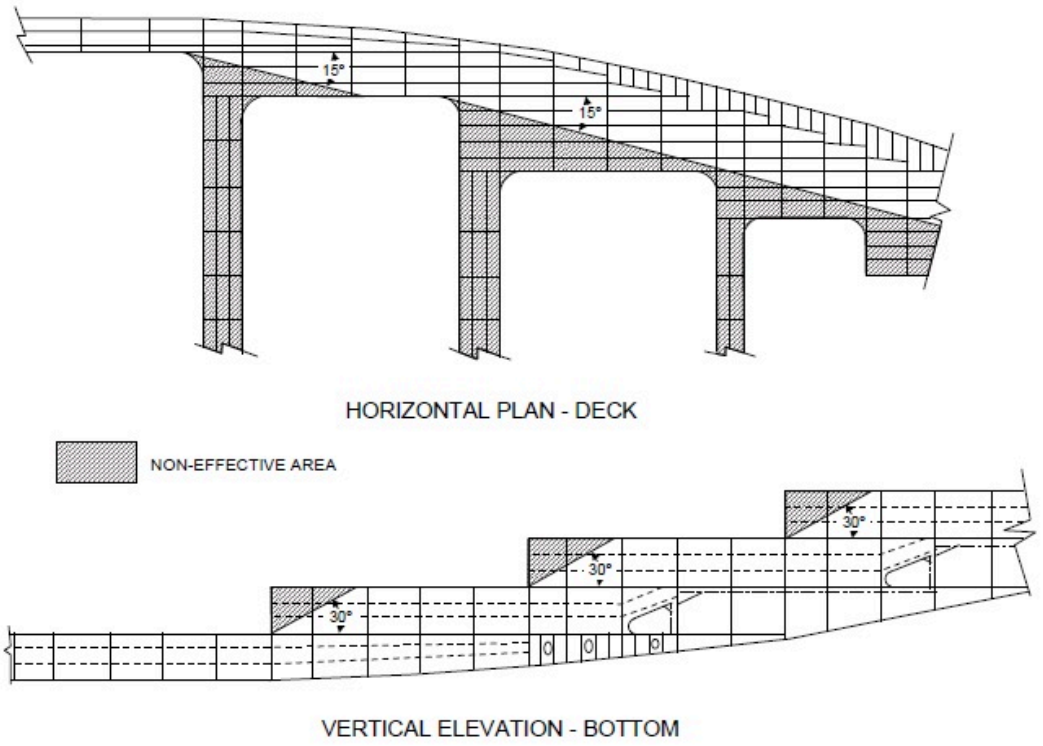
- In way of the forward end of the engine room
- In way of the forward end of the foremost cargo hold
- At any locations possessing significant changes in hull cross-section
- At any locations possessing changes in framing system
- For ships with large deck openings, locations at or near 0.25*L* and 0.75*L*
- Any other locations with longitudinal structure transitions or material changes

End of Commentary

9.3 Effective Areas Included in the Calculation

All openings are to be deducted from the sectional areas of longitudinal strength members to be used in the hull girder section modulus calculation, except that small isolated openings need not be deducted, provided that these openings and the shadow area breadths of other openings in any one transverse section do not reduce the hull girder section modulus by more than 3%. The breadth or depth of such openings is not to be greater than 1200 mm (47 in.) or 25% of the breadth or depth of the member in which it is located, whichever is less, with a maximum of 75 mm (3 in.) for scallops. The length of small isolated openings, which are not required to be deducted, is not to be greater than 2500 mm (100 in.). The shadow area of an opening is the area forward and aft of the opening enclosed by lines drawn tangential to the corners of the opening and intersecting each other to form an included angle of 30 degrees. See [FIGURE 6] .

FIGURE 6
Effective Area of Hull Girder Members



9.5 Section Modulus to the Deck or Bottom

9.5.1 Deck or Bottom

The section modulus to the deck, or bottom, is obtained by dividing the moment of inertia, I, by the distance from the neutral axis to the molded deck line at side or to the base line, respectively.

9.5.2 Transition between Higher Strength Steel and Ordinary Strength Steel

Where higher strength steel is used, the section modulus for the ordinary strength steel part of the hull-girder is obtained by dividing the moment of inertia, I, by the vertical distance from the neutral axis to the point of transition between higher strength steel and ordinary strength steel.

9.5.3 Cargo Rails, Walkways

Where continuous cargo rails and/or walkways are fitted see [9.7] .

9.7 Section Modulus to the Top of Cargo Rails and/or Longitudinal Side Walkways

9.7.1 Top of Cargo Rails

For continuous longitudinal cargo rails, extending throughout the amidship $0.4L$, directly welded to the deck, the section modulus to the top of the cargo rail is to be obtained by dividing the moment of inertia I by the distance from the neutral axis to the top of the cargo rail. This distance need not exceed y_t as given by the following equation, provided that y_t is not less than the distance to the molded deck line at side.

$$y_t = y(0.9 + 0.2x/B)\text{m(ft)}$$

where

y = distance, in m (ft), from the neutral axis to the top of the continuous coaming

x = distance, in m (ft), from the outboard edge of the top of the continuous coaming to the centerline of the vessel

B = breadth of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/5, in m (ft)

x and y are to be measured to the point giving the largest value of y_t

9.7.2 Top of Longitudinal Side Walkways

Where longitudinal side walking platforms extending throughout the amidships $0.4\,L$ are effectively supported by cargo rails and high side bulwarks, the longitudinal members of such structural configuration are to be included in the hull girder section modulus.

9.9 Section Modulus to the Top of Continuous Longitudinal Hatch Coamings and Above Deck Girders

9.9.1 *(2024)*

Where strength deck longitudinal hatch coamings of length greater than $0.14\,L$ are effectively supported under by longitudinal bulkheads or deep longitudinal girders, the coamings are to be longitudinally stiffened in accordance with 3-2-15/5.9.

The section modulus to the top of the coaming is to be obtained by dividing the moment of inertia I by the distance from the neutral axis to the deck at side plus the coaming height. This distance need not exceed y_t as given by the following equation, provided that y_t is not less than the distance to the molded deck line at side.

$$y_t = y(0.9 + 0.2x/B)\,\mathrm{m\,(ft)}$$

where

y = distance, in m (ft), from the neutral axis to the top of the continuous coaming.

x = distance, in m (ft), at the top of the hatch coaming from the outboard edge of the continuous coaming web plate to the centerline of the vessel

B = breadth of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/5, in m (ft)

x and y are to be measured to the point giving the largest value of y_t

Commentary:

The strength of longitudinal hatch coamings between multi-hatchways may be verified by FEA based on the actual openings and longitudinal coamings.

End of Commentary

9.9.2

The hull girder section modulus amidships to the top of the coamings is to be as required by [3.7.1], [3.7.2] and [9.7], but the section modulus to the deck at side, excluding the coamings, need not be determined in way of such coamings.

9.9.3

Continuous longitudinal girders on top of the strength deck are to be considered similarly. Their scantlings are also to be in accordance with Section 3-2-8.

11 Strength Decks

11.1 General

The uppermost deck to which the side shell plating extends is to be considered the strength deck for that portion of the length, except in way of short superstructures, wherein the modified requirements for the side shell (see 3-2-2/3) and superstructure deck (see 3-2-11/1.3.2) are adopted. In way of such superstructures, the deck on which the superstructures are located is to be considered the strength deck.

11.3 Tapering of Deck Sectional Areas

The tapering of deck sectional areas beyond the amidship $0.4L$, is to be in accordance with [3.7.1(c)]. The deck sectional area at $0.15L$ from the ends may be one-half of the amidships deck area. In way of a superstructure beyond the amidship $0.4L$, the strength deck area may be reduced to approximately 70% of the deck area required at that location if there were no superstructure.

13 Effective Lower Decks *(2024)*

To be considered effective, and for use in calculating the hull girder section modulus the following are to be complied with:

i) Thickness of the stringer plate (excluding cutouts in way of through frames) and the deck plating is to comply with the requirements of 3-2-3/5. The sectional areas of lower decks used in calculating the section modulus are to be obtained as described in [9.3].

ii) Deck sectional areas are to be adequate to meet the hull girder section modulus requirements at the location being considered where bending moment envelope curves are available;

iii) Where the still-water bending moment envelope curve is not submitted, or where [3.7.1(b)] governs, these areas are to be maintained throughout the midship 0.4 L and may be gradually reduced to one-half their midship value at 0.15 L from the ends.

iv) Effective lower decks are to be continuous. Where effective lower decks terminate, brackets are to be provided and are to extend forward and aft of the termination for not less than 1.0 m (3.28 ft).

15 Longitudinal Deck Structures Inboard of Lines of Openings

Where deck structures are arranged with two or more large openings abreast, the degree of effectiveness of that portion of the longitudinal structure located between the openings is to be determined in accordance with the following:

Plating and stiffening members forming these structures may be included in the hull girder section modulus calculation, provided they are substantially constructed, well supported both vertically and laterally, and developed at their ends to be effectively continuous with other longitudinal structure located forward and abaft that point.

15.1 Effectiveness

The plating and longitudinal stiffening members of longitudinal deck structures complying with the basic requirements of the foregoing paragraph, supported by longitudinal bulkheads, in which the transverse slenderness ratio ℓ/r is not greater than 60, may be considered as fully effective in the hull girder section modulus. Longitudinal deck structures, not supported by longitudinal bulkheads, but of substantial construction having a slenderness ratio ℓ/r about any axis not greater than 60, based on the span between transverse bulkheads, or other major supports, may be considered as partially effective. The effective area,

obtained as the product of the net sectional area of the longitudinal deck structure inboard of lines of hatch openings and the factor H_o, as given below, may be used in the hull girder section modulus calculations.

$$H_o = \frac{0.62}{1 + 0.38\left(\frac{A_o}{A} + \frac{Z^2 A_o}{I}\right)}$$

where

A = cross sectional area of hull girder amidships, port and starboard, excluding longitudinal deck structures inside the lines of outermost hatch openings, in cm^2 (in^2)

I = moment of inertia of hull girder amidships, port and starboard, about the horizontal neutral axis, excluding longitudinal deck structures inside the lines of outermost hatch openings, in cm^2-m^2 (in^2-ft^2)

Z = distance between the horizontal neutral axis of area A, and the centroid of area A_o, in m (ft)

A_o = total cross sectional area of the longitudinal deck structures inside the lines of outermost hatch openings, including plating, longitudinal stiffeners, and girders, port and starboard, in cm^2 (in^2)

An efficiency factor obtained by other methods of engineering analysis will be subject to special consideration.

17 Buckling Strength *(2024)*

17.1 Vessels 90 Meters (295 feet) in Length and Greater

For vessels 90 meters (295 feet) in length and greater, where the various strength members are subjected to compressive or shear stresses due to longitudinal bending, the stability of the local plate panels and the supporting members, including continuous hatch coamings, cargo rails, and walkways, are to be checked against buckling. Calculations, in accordance with Appendix 3-2-A4, are to be submitted for review.

17.3 Vessels Between 61 and 90 Meters (200 and 295 Feet) in Length

For vessels between 61 meters (200 feet) and 90 meters (295 feet) in length, the deck and bottom plate panels are to be checked against buckling due to longitudinal bending. Calculations in accordance with Appendix 3-2-A4 are to be submitted for review.

17.5 Total Bending Moment

Where still water bending moments are positive (hogging) in all operating conditions, the total bending moment, M_t, is to be taken as not less than $0.9\,M_{ws}$ for the purpose of evaluating the structural stability of the hull girder upper flange.

Where it shows that all possible conditions of loading between lightship and full load draft result in positive (hogging) still water bending moments, such as in the case of passenger vessels, the above specified minimum total bending moment may be specially considered, provided that a statistical analysis of wave induced bending moment is carried out taking into account the effect of the hull form including bow flare.

PART 3

CHAPTER 2
Hull Structures and Arrangements

SECTION 2
Shell Plating

1 General

1.1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1.1 Goals

The vessel structure is to be designed, constructed, operated and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goals*
STRU 1	In the intact condition, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU 2	Resist structural failure associated with accidental conditions
STRU 3	Provide protection to persons onboard, the environment and required safety services.
STAB 1	Have adequate watertight integrity and restoring energy to prevent capsize in an intact condition.

1.1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above stated goals, the following functional requirements apply to this section:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Structure (STRU)	
STRU-FR1	Adequate longitudinal strength is to be provided to resist bending moments and shear forces associated with vessel loading and wave loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU-FR2	Scantlings are to have sufficient strength to resist failure and excessive deformation associated with buckling and yielding when subjected to the loads throughout the service life, such as external sea loads, cargo loads, ballast water and any other liquid loads, heavy equipment loads, docking loads, and loads of loading/unloading, etc.
STRU-FR3	Internal openings to the sea are to withstand static and dynamic loads.

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
STRU-FR4	Discontinuities are to avoid stress concentrations that may lead to yielding or fatigue cracks.
STRU-FR5	Adequate yielding strength is to be provided to resist local tank loads associated with vessel loading and wave loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU-FR6	Shell thickness is to be sufficient to mitigate risks of loss structural integrity by accidental loads and damage during normal operations due to contact with fixed offshore structures or other vessels.
STRU-FR7	Shell plating at ends is to withstand the slamming and impact loads.
STRU-FR8	Adequate support is to be provided to heavy structural components (stern bossing, stern tubes, etc.)
STRU-FR9	Adequate strength is to be provided to prevent damage from the flukes of stockless anchors or other impact loads expected during normal operation.
Stability (STAB)	
STAB-FR1 (STRU)	Adequate arrangement is made in way of appendages to protect the intact hull and provide watertightness and prevent cracks propagating to the hull.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

1.2 General Requirements *(2024)*

Shell plating is to be of not less thickness than is required for purposes of longitudinal hull girder strength; including buckling strength (as applicable), nor is it to be less than is required by this Section.

The shell plating is not to be less in thickness than required by 3-2-10/3.1 for deep tanks.

i) For bottom shell plating bounding tanks having normal tank/air vent configurations, the head "h" in the formula of 3-2-10/3.1. need not be taken greater than the distance from the plate under consideration to the deck at side.

ii) In the case of unusual configurations, or where the tanks are intended to carry liquids having a specific gravity equal to or greater than 1.05, "h" is to be in accordance with 3-2-10/3.1.

3 Shell Plating Amidships

3.1 Vessels with No Partial Superstructures Above Uppermost Continuous Deck

In vessels that have no partial superstructures above the uppermost continuous deck, the thickness of the bottom and side plating is to be obtained from the appropriate equations where D_s is the molded depth, in m (ft), measured to the uppermost continuous deck.

3.3 Superstructures Fitted Above Uppermost Continuous Deck (Side Plating Extended)

Where superstructures are fitted above the uppermost continuous deck to which the side plating extends throughout the amidship $0.4L$, the thickness of the bottom and side plating is to be obtained from the appropriate equations where D_s is the molded depth, in m (ft), measured to the superstructure deck. In such cases, the sheer strake beyond the superstructure is to be proportioned from the thickness as required for the sheer strake amidships, where D_s is measured to the uppermost continuous deck.

3.5 Superstructures Fitted Above Uppermost Continuous Deck (Side Plating Not Extended)

Where superstructures are fitted above the uppermost continuous deck, to which the side plating does not extend throughout the amidship $0.4L$, the thickness of the bottom and side plating is to be obtained from the appropriate equations where D_s is the molded depth, in m (ft), measured to the uppermost continuous deck.

3.7 In Way of Comparatively Short Superstructures *(2024)*

In way of comparatively short superstructure decks, or where the superstructure deck is not designed as the strength deck, the thickness of the bottom and side plating is to be obtained from the appropriate equations where D_s is the molded depth, in m (ft), measured to the uppermost continuous deck. In such cases, the thickness of the side plating above the uppermost continuous deck is to be specially considered, but in no case is the thickness to be less than that obtained from equations 1a and 1b in 3-2-3/5 TABLE 2, but substituting the frame spacing, in mm (in.), for s_b in lieu of the deck beam spacing.

Commentary:

Shell plating thickness and geometry should gradually transition to the superstructure above the uppermost deck to reduce stress concentrations.

For side shell extending to multi-tiered superstructure decks which is stepped within amidship 0.4*L*, refer to 5C-7-2/7.3.

End of Commentary

3.9 Side Shell Plating *(2024)*

3.9.1 For Offshore Support Vessels

The minimum thickness, t, of the side shell plating throughout the amidship $0.4L$ is to be obtained from the following equations, whichever is greater:

$$t_{shell1} = (s/645)\sqrt{(L - 15.2)\,(d_s/D_s)} + 2.5\text{mm}$$

$$t_{shell1} = (s/1170)\sqrt{(L - 50)\,(d_s/D_s)} + 0.1\text{in.}$$

$$t_{shell2} = 0.035\,(L + 29) + 0.009\text{smm}$$

$$t_{shell2} = 0.00042\,(L + 95) + 0.009\text{sin.}$$

where

s = spacing of transverse frames or longitudinals, in mm (in.). For t_{shell2} only, the spacing is not to be greater than 610 mm (24 in.) or the standard frame as per 3-2-5/1.7 whichever is less

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

d_s = scantling draft, as defined in 3-1-1/9.3, in m (ft)

D_s = molded depth, in m (ft), as defined in [3.1] through [3.7]

The actual ratio of d_s/D_s is to be used in the above equations, except that the ratio is not to be taken less than 0.67.

Application of higher-strength materials for shell plating is to be in accordance with [15.5].

t is not to be taken less than 8.5 mm (0.33 in.).

3.9.2 For Other Vessels under 90 m (295 ft) in Length *(2024)*

The side shell plating is not to be less in thickness than that obtained from the following equation:

$$t = \frac{s\sqrt{h}}{268} + 2.5\text{mm}$$

$$t = \frac{s\sqrt{h}}{485} + 0.10\text{in.}$$

where

s = spacing of transverse frames or longitudinals, in mm (in.)

h = scantling depth, in m (ft), as defined in 3-1-1/7.3, but not less than 0.1 L or 1.18 d_s, whichever is greater

d_s = draft for scantlings, as defined in 3-1-1/9.3, or 0.066 L, whichever is greater

L = length of the vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1

Where the ratio D/B is greater than 0.66, the scantlings head h may be calculated as $^1/_2$ of the scantling depth in m (ft) as defined in 3-1-1/7.3, but not less than $0.1L$ or $1.18d$, whichever is the greater. Application of higher-strength materials for shell plating is to be in accordance with [15.5].

The side shell plating in way of hold frames of dry cargo vessels with typical bulk carrier configuration (sloping upper and lower wing tanks with a transversely framed single skin side shell in way of the hold) is also not to be less than that obtained from the following equation:

$$t = \sqrt{L}\text{mm}$$

$$t = 0.0218\sqrt{L}\text{in.}$$

with L as defined above.

3.9.3 For Other Vessels 90 m (295 ft) in Length and Above *(2024)*

The minimum thickness, t, of the side shell plating throughout the amidship 0.4 L, for vessels having lengths not exceeding 427 m (1400 ft), is to be obtained from the following equations:

$t = (s/645)\sqrt{(L - 15.2)(d_s/D_s)} + 2.5\text{mm}$ for $L \leq 305$ m

$t = (s/1170)\sqrt{(L - 50)(d_s/D_s)} + 0.1\text{in.}$ for $L \leq 1000$ (ft)

$t = (s/828)\sqrt{(L + 175)(d_s/D_s)} + 2.5\text{mm}$ for $305 < L \leq 427$ m

$t = (s/1500)\sqrt{(L + 574)(d_s/D_s)} + 0.1\text{in.}$ for $1000 < L \leq 1400$ (ft)

where

s = spacing of transverse frames or longitudinals, in mm(in.)

d_s = scantling draft, as defined in 3-1-1/9.3, in m(ft)

L and D_s are as defined in [3.9.1] .

The actual ratio of d/D_s is to be used in the above equations, except that the ratio is not to be taken less than 0.0433 L/D_s .

The side shell thickness amidships is to be not less than the thickness obtained by [5.1] using 610 mm (24 in.) as the frame spacing.

Application of higher-strength materials for shell plating is to be in accordance with [15.5] .

3.11 Side Fenders *(2024)*

Offshore Support Vessels of any length and other vessels under 90 m (295 ft) in length subject to impact loads during routine operations, are to comply with this subsection.

Vessels not subject to impact loads during the routine operations (typically Diving Support, Oil Spill Recovery, Pipe Lay, Heavy Lift, Cable Lay, Wind Turbine Installation Maintenance and Repair) are not required to comply with this section. Other types of vessels may also be considered subject to agreement between the shipyard and owner.

3.11.1 Fender Requirements *(2024)*

i) The minimum side shell plating thickness calculated above is to be increased by 25%, unless effective permanent fenders as described in this Section are provided to protect the structure.

ii) Continuous longitudinal fenders are to be fitted on the side shell at cargo deck and at second deck above, if deck or platform there is fitted.

iii) The fenders are to extend from the stern to a point not less than $0.02L$ forward of the section at which the full deck's breadth starts decreasing; the area defined as an impact region.

iv) Additional fenders are to also be arranged diagonally at about 45° between the foregoing fenders, as necessary, to protect the side shell from the impact.

v) Carling plates or other effective means of stiffening are to be provided so that fender loads are effectively distributed to the hull structure.

vi) Steel fenders are to be efficiently welded to the shell plating with continuous fillet welds.

Commentary:

Fenders may be either permanent fenders constructed of steel or have exchangeable hard wood or rubber profile inserts.

End of Commentary

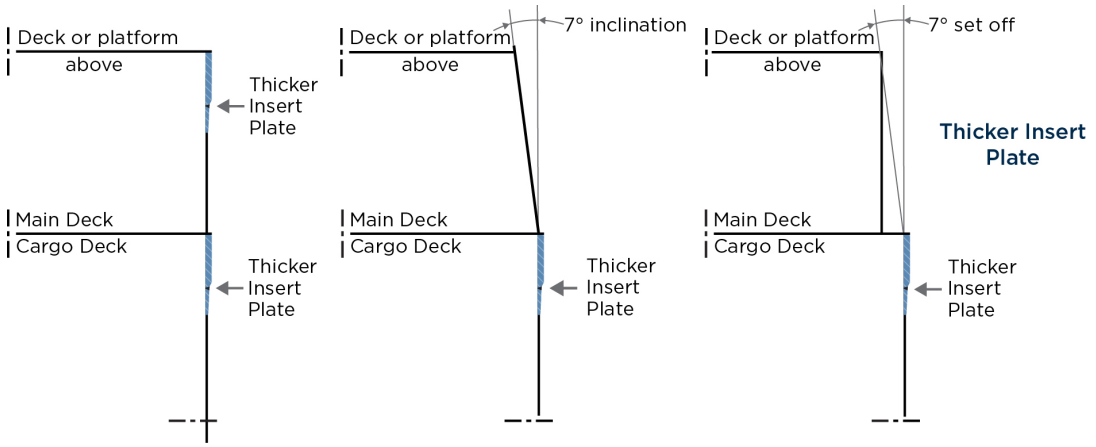
3.11.2 Alternative Requirements in Lieu of Fenders *(2024)*

Alternatively the fenders may be omitted also if the side plating is at least twice the thickness that is required by [1] , for a height of at least $0.01L$, along the level of the main deck/cargo deck and next deck or platform above. The upper plate may be omitted if the side shell is inclined 7° or set off 1:8 from the side's vertical (see [FIGURE 1*]). The thicker side plate is to be insert plate.

The strength of the side frames, webs and stringers in the impact region is to be increased by the factor 1.25 over the standard requirements. All side structural members in the impact region are to

have end connections with brackets. Scallop welds are not to be used in connections between side frames and shell plating.

FIGURE 1
Side Impact Plates *(2024)*



Commentary:

For OSVs and other steel vessels under 90 meters (295 feet) in length, doubler fenders may be considered if an insert plate is not practicable subject to the following:

i Thickness of the doubler is to be at least equal to the shell plating at that location.

ii Top of the doubler is not to be welded to top edge of the sheer strake.

iii Material grade is to be the same as that of the shell plating.

iv Fitting and welding of the doubler should not create any undercut or notch at the top edge of the sheer strake.

v The doubler should break every $0.15L$.

End of Commentary

3.13 Sheer Strake *(2024)*

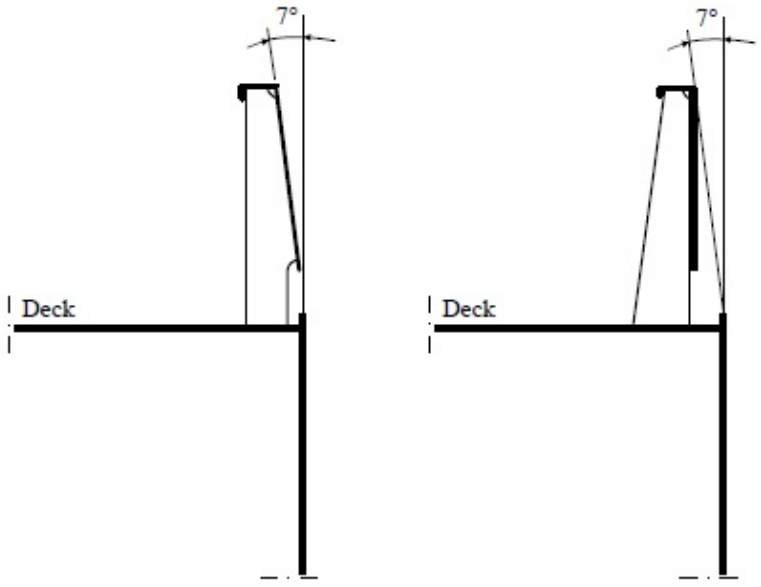
For vessels greater than 90 meters (295 feet) in length, the minimum width, b, of the sheerstrake throughout the amidship $0.4L$ is to be in accordance with Note 9 of 3-1-2/3.1 TABLE 2A .

The thickness of the sheer strake is not to be less than the thickness of the adjacent side shell plating, nor is it to be less than required by equation 1b or 2b in 3-2-3/5 TABLE 2 as appropriate from *Decks*-A of 3-2-3/5 TABLE 1. The thickness of the sheer strake is to be increased 25% in way of breaks of superstructures, but this increase need not exceed 6.5 mm (0.25 in.). Where breaks in way of the forecastle or poop are appreciably beyond the amidship $0.5L$, this requirement may be modified.

The top edge of the sheer strake is to be smooth and free of notches. Fittings and bulwarks are not to be welded to the top of the sheer strake within the amidships $0.8L$, nor in way of superstructure breaks throughout (see [FIGURE 2]).

Where fashion plates run into the sheer strake, the ends of the fashion plates are to be ground to form a smooth tangent with the edge of the sheer strake. Grinding should be in the longitudinal direction.

FIGURE 2
Recommended Bulwark Fitting



3.15 Bottom Shell Plating Amidships

The term "bottom plating amidships" refers to the bottom shell plating from the keel to the upper turn of the bilge or upper chine, extending over the amidships $0.4L$.

3.15.1 Bottom Shell Plating *(2022)*

The thickness, t, of the bottom plating amidships is not to be less than obtained from the following equations or the thickness determined by [3.15.2], whichever is greater.

Transverse Framing

$$t_{trans} = (s/519)\sqrt{(L - 19.8)\,(d_s/D_s)} + 2.5 \text{ mm} \qquad \text{for } L \leq 183 \text{ m}$$

$$t_{trans} = (s/940)\sqrt{(L - 65)\,(d_s/D_s)} + 0.1 \text{ in.} \qquad \text{for } L \leq 600 \text{ ft}$$

Longitudinal Framing

$$t_{long1} = (s/671)\sqrt{(L - 18.3)\,(d_s/D_s)} + 2.5 \text{ mm} \qquad \text{for } L \leq 122 \text{ m}$$

$$t_{long2} = (s/508)\sqrt{(L - 62.5)\,(d_s/D_s)} + 2.5 \text{ mm} \qquad \text{for } 122 \leq L \leq 305 \text{ m}$$

$$t_{long3} = (s/661)\sqrt{(L + 105)\,(d_s/D_s)} + 2.5 \text{ mm} \qquad \text{for } 305 < L \leq 427 \text{ m}$$

$$t_{long1} = (s/1215)\sqrt{(L - 60)\,(d_s/D_s)} + 0.1 \text{ in.} \qquad \text{for } L < 400 \text{ ft}$$

$t_{long2} = (s/920)\sqrt{(L-205)\,(d_s/D_s)} + 0.1$ in. for $400 \le L \le 1000$ ft

$t_{long3} = (s/1197)\sqrt{(L+344.5)\,(d_s/D_s)} + 0.1$ in. for $1000 < L \le 1400$ ft

where L, d_s, s and D_s are as defined in [3.9].

The actual ratio of d_s/D_s is to be used in the above equations, but it is not to be taken less than 0.67 for offshore support vessels and 0.0433 L/D_s for other steel vessels.

After all corrections have been made, the bottom shell thickness amidships is not to be less than the thickness obtained by [5.1] using 610 mm (24 in.) as the frame spacing.

The bottom shell plating thickness obtained from the above equations is to be multiplied by the factor R_n if the following three conditions are satisfied:

i) The actual bottom hull girder section modulus SM_A is greater than required by 3-2-1/3.7.1, at least throughout 0.4 L amidships,

ii) The required section modulus is based on the still-water bending moment calculations and

iii) Adequate buckling strength is maintained.

$R_n = 1/\sqrt{(f_p/\sigma_t)\,(1 - SM_R/SM_A) + 1}$, but is not be taken less than 0.85 ($d/D_S \ge 0.65$)

$= 1.0$ ($d/D_S \le 0.0433L/D_S$)

$=$ by linear interpolation ($0.0433L/D_S < d/D_S < 0.65$)

where

f_p = nominal permissible bending stress 17.5 kN/cm^2 (1.784 tf/cm^2, 11.33 Ltf/in^2)

σ_t = $KP_t(s/t)^2$, in kN/cm^2 (tf/cm^2, Ltf/in^2)

K = 0.5 for transverse framing and 0.34 for longitudinal framing

P_t = $(0.638H + d_s)a$ kN/cm^2 (tf/cm^2, Ltf/in^2)

a = 1.005 ×10^{-3} (1.025 ×10^{-4}, 1.984 ×10^{-4})

SM_R = required hull girder section modulus as per 3-2-1/3.7.1, in cm^2-m (in^2-ft)

SM_A = actual bottom hull girder section modulus, when it is greater than required by 3-2-1/3.7.1, in cm^2-m (in^2-ft)

SM_R/SM_A is not to be taken as less than 0.70

H = wave parameter, in m (ft)

$= (5.48L^2 + 16,045L)10^{-6} + 3.703$ m $\quad 61 \le L \le 220$ m

$= (4.5L - 0.0071L^2 + 103)10^{-2}$ m $\quad 220 < L \le 305$ m

$= 8.151$ m $\quad 305 < L \le 427$ m

$= (1.474L^2 + 16,055L)10^{-6} + 12.15$ ft $\quad 200 \le L \le 722$ ft

$= (4.5L - 0.00216L^2 + 335)10^{-2}$ ft $\quad 722 < L \le 1000$ ft

$= 26.750$ ft $\quad 1000 < L \le 1400$ ft

3.15.2 Minimum Bottom Shell Plating *(2024)*

The thickness, t_{bottom}, of the shell plating amidships below the upper turn of bilge or upper chine is not to be less than obtained from the following equations:

Transverse Framing

$t_{trmin} = s(L + 45.73)/(25L + 6082)$mm $\quad$ for $L \le 183$ m

$t_{trmin} = s(L + 150)/(25L + 19950)$in. $\quad$ for $L \le 600$ ft

where

s = frame spacing, in mm (in.), but is not to be less than that given in 3-2-5/1.7

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

Longitudinal Framing

$t_{longmin} = s(L–18.3)/(42L + 1070)$mm

$t_{longmin} = s(L - 60)/(42L + 3510)$in.

where

s = frame spacing, in mm (in.), but is not to be less than 88% of that given in 3-2-5/1.7 or 813 mm (32 in.), whichever is less

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

The minimum bottom shell plating thickness obtained from the above equations is to be multiplied by the factor R_b if the following three conditions are satisfied:

i) The actual bottom hull girder section modulus SM_A is greater than required by 3-2-1/3.7.1, at least throughout $0.4L$ amidships,

ii) The section modulus is based on the still-water bending moment calculations and

iii) Adequate buckling strength is maintained.

$R_b = \sqrt{SM_R/SM_A}$ but is not to be taken less than 0.85 ($d/D_s \geq 0.65$)

$= 1.0$ ($d/D_s \leq 0.0433L/D_s$)

$=$ by linear interpolation ($0.0433L/D_s < d/D_s < 0.65$)

where SM_R and SM_A are as defined in [3.15.1] .

For transverse framing, R_b is to be not less than the greater of:

- 0.85 or
- $1.2285 - L/533.55$ SI or MKS units ($1.2285 - L/1750$ for US units)

where L is as defined above, but is not to be taken as less than 122 m (400 ft).

3.15.3 Application of Higher-strength Materials for Bottom Shell Plating *(2024)*

Application of higher-strength materials for shell plating is to be in accordance with [15.3] .

3.17 Flat Keel Plate for Vessels above 90 meters (295 feet) in Length

The thickness of the flat keel plate for docking purposes is to be 1.5 mm (0.06 in.) greater than that required for the bottom shell plating at the location under consideration. This 1.5 mm (0.06 in.) increase in thickness is not required where the submitted docking plan specifies that all docking blocks are to be arranged clear of the flat keel plate. See 3-1-2/11 and [7] .

5 Shell Plating at Ends

5.1 Minimum Shell Plating Thickness *(2024)*

The minimum shell plating thickness *t* at ends is to be obtained from the following equations and is not to extend for more than $0.1L$ at the ends. Between the amidship $0.4L$ and the end $0.1L$ the thickness of the plating is to be gradually tapered.

$t = 0.0455L + 0.009s$ mm	L < 90 m
$t = 0.035(L + 29) + 0.009s$ mm	for 90 ≤ L ≤ 305 m
$t = (11.70 + 0.009s)\sqrt{D/35}$ mm	for 305 < L ≤ 427 m
$t = 0.000545L + 0.009s$ in.	L < 295 ft
$t = 0.00042(L + 95) + 0.009s$ in.	for 295 ≤ L ≤ 1000 ft
$t = (0.46 + 0.009s)\sqrt{D/114.8}$ in.	for 1000 < L ≤ 1400 ft

where

s = fore or aft peak frame spacing, in mm (in.) (measured parallel to the centerline for transversally framed structures), frame spacing from the stem to 0.025L aft of FP is not to exceed the standard frame and cant frame spacing as per 3-2-5/1.7

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

D = molded depth, in m (ft), as defined in 3-1-1/7.1 or 35 m (114.8 ft), whichever is greater

The shell plating thickness from the stem to 0.025L aft of FP are to be increased by a factor of 1.25 over the standard requirements for the bow slamming/impact loads and applies to side and superstructure plating defined by 3-2-11/1.1. Additionally, structural members from the stem to 0.025L aft of FP are to have end connections with brackets. Scallop welds are not to be used in connections between side frames and shell plating.

For Offshore Support Vessels with unconventional bulbous bows or unconventional bow designs (such as large stem curvature, or a bulbous bow protruding the waterline), the bow impact pressures, and bow strengthening are to be calculated as per 5C-1-4/13.7.1 and [5C-5-6/23] . For Offshore Support Vessels with unconventional large bow flare, the bowflare slamming pressures and bow strengthening are to be calculated as per 5C-1-4/13.3.1 and 5C-5-6/23.3.

Application of higher-strength materials for shell plating is to be in accordance with [15.5] .

5.3 Immersed Bow Plating *(2024)*

The thickness t of the plating below the load waterline forward of $0.16L$ from the stem is not to be less than is given by the following equation, but need not be greater than the thickness of the side shell plating amidships.

$t = 0.05(L + 20) + 0.009s$ mm	for $L \leq 305$ m
$t = (16.25 + 0.009s)\sqrt{D/35}$ mm	for $305 < L \leq 427$ m
$t = 0.0006(L + 66) + 0.009s$ in.	for $L \leq 1000$ ft
$t = (0.64 + 0.009s)\sqrt{D/114.8}$ in.	for $1000 < L \leq 1400$ ft

where

s = fore peak frame spacing, in mm (in.) (measured parallel to the centerline for transversally framed structures).

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

D = molded depth, in m (ft), as defined in 3-1-1/7.1 or 35 m (114.8 ft), whichever is greater

Application of higher-strength materials for shell plating is to be in accordance with [15.5] .

5.5 Bottom Forward *(2024)*

For vessels of 61 m (200 ft) in length and over, where the forward draft of the vessel in the ballast loading condition to be used while the vessel is in heavy weather (heavy ballast draft forward) is less than 0.04L m

(ft), the plating on the flat of bottom forward, forward of the location given in 3-2-4/15.7 TABLE 1A is to be not less than required by the equation below.

$$t = 0.0046s\sqrt{\left(0.005L_1^2 - 1.3d_f^2\right)/d_f}\text{mm}$$

$$t = 0.0026s\sqrt{\left(0.005L_1^2 - 1.3d_f^2\right)/d_f}\text{in.}$$

where

s = frame spacing, in mm (in.)

L_1 = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft), but need not be taken greater than 214 m (702 ft)

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

d_f = heavy weather ballast draft at the forward perpendicular, in m (ft)

= $d_f \times 214/L$ m ($d_f \times 702/L$ ft), where $L >$ 214 m (702 ft)

The required thickness of the flat of bottom forward plating is also to be in accordance with the requirements given by [1], [3.15], [5.1] and [5.3] as appropriate.

Applications of higher-strength materials for shell plating is to be in accordance with 3-2-2/15.3.

5.7 Forecastle Side Plating *(2024)*

See 3-2-11/1.3.1(d).

5.9 Poop Side Plating *(2024)*

See 3-2-11/1.3.1(b).

5.11 Bow and Stern Thruster Tunnels

The thickness of the tunnel plating is not to be less than required by [5.1], where s is to be taken as the standard frame spacing given by the equation in 3-2-5/1.7, except that in way of the fore and aft peaks, the standard frame spacing is not to exceed 610 mm (24 in.), nor is the thickness to be les than obtained from the following equation:

$$t = 0.008d + 3.3\text{mm}$$

$$t = 0.008d + 0.13\text{in.}$$

where

d = inside diameter of the tunnel, in mm (in.), or 968 mm (38 in.), whichever is greater

Where the outboard ends of the tunnel are provided with bars or grids, the bars or grids are to be effectively secured, but arranged so, as to allow diver's access during underwater inspection of tunnels' interior.

5.13 Special Heavy Plates *(2024)*

Special heavy plates (see [FIGURE 3A] and [FIGURE 3B]) of the thickness, t, given in the following equations, are to be introduced at the attachments to the stern frame for heel and boss plates, and in way of spectacle bossing. Heavy plates are to provide increased lateral support in the vicinity of the stern tube in vessels of fine form and high power. Thick or double plating is to be fitted around hawse pipes, of sufficient breadth to prevent damage from the flukes of stockless anchors.

FIGURE 3A
Special Heavy Plates for Single Screw Vessels *(2024)*

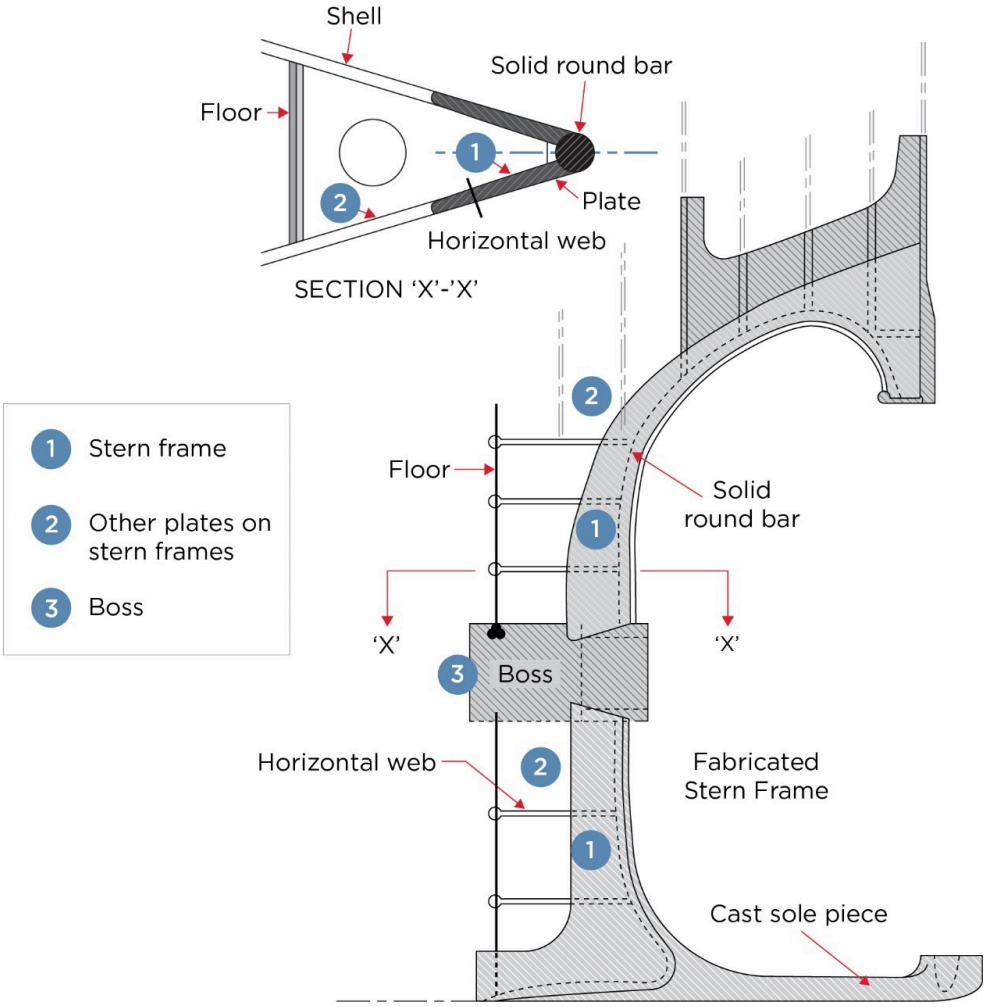
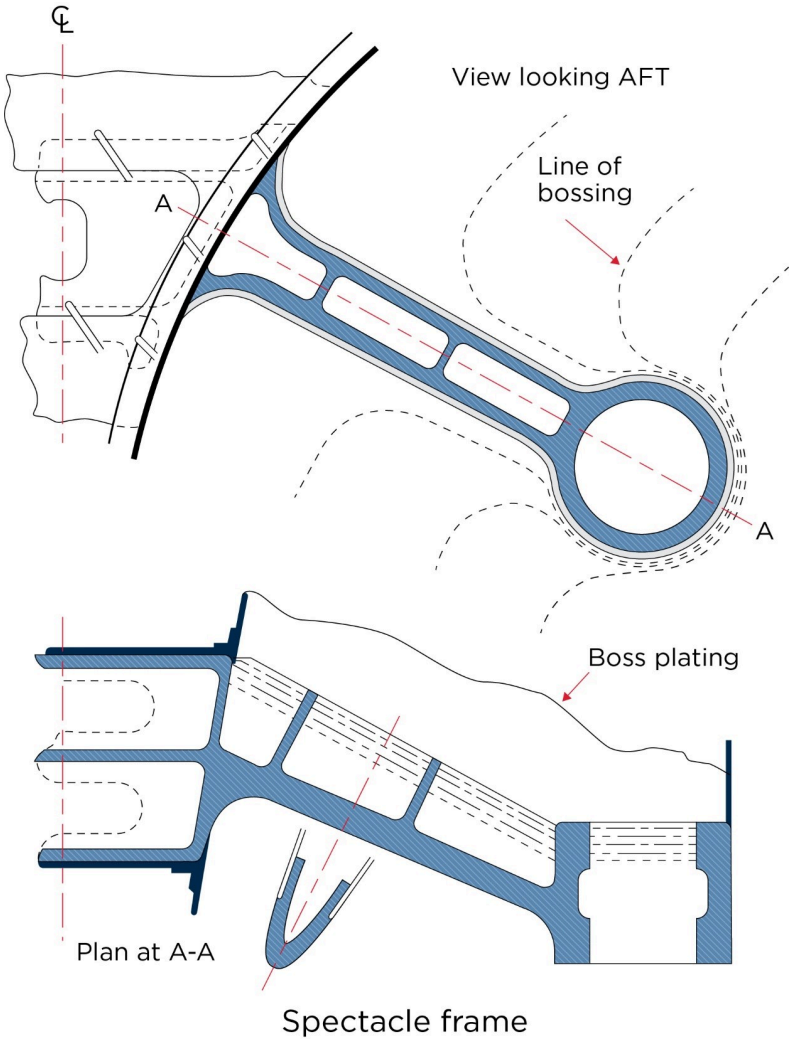


FIGURE 3B
Special Heavy Plates for Twin Screw Vessels *(2024)*



5.13.1 Boss Plating on Spectacle Frame *(2024)*

For OSVs and other Vessels under 90 m (295 ft) in Length:

$$t = 0.084(L - 8) + 0.009s \text{ mm}$$

$$t = 0.001(L - 26) + 0.009s \text{ in.}$$

For Other Vessels 90 m (295 ft) in Length and Above:

$$t = 0.088(L - 23) + 0.009s \text{ mm} \qquad \text{for } 90 < L \leq 427 \text{ m}$$

$$t = 0.00106(L - 75) + 0.009s \text{ in.} \qquad \text{for } 295 < L \leq 1400 \text{ ft}$$

where

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

s = frame spacing, in mm (in.)

5.13.2 Other Plates on Stern Frame *(2024)*

For OSVs and other Vessels under 90 m (295 ft) in Length:

$$t = 0.09(L - 5.5) + 0.009s \text{ mm}$$

$$t = 0.00108(L - 18) + 0.009s \text{ in.}$$

For Other Vessels 90 m (295 ft) in Length and Above:

$$t = 0.094(L - 16) + 0.009s \text{ mm} \qquad \text{for } 90 < L \leq 427 \text{ m}$$

$$t = 0.00113(L - 53) + 0.009s \text{ in.} \qquad \text{for } 295 < L \leq 1400 \text{ ft}$$

where

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

s = frame spacing, in mm (in.)

5.13.3 Boss and Heel Plates

The thickness of the boss and heel plating is to be at least 20% greater than the thickness of spectacle bossing obtained in [5.15.1] .

7 Bottom Shell Plating for Special Docking Arrangement for Vessels Over 90 m (295 ft) in Length *(2024)*

Where it is not intended to use keel blocks when drydocking the vessel, the increase to the keel plate thickness in [3.17] will not be required. However, the thickness of the bottom shell plating strakes in way of the docking blocks used for drydocking the vessel is to be increased by 1.5 mm (0.06 in.). In such instances, the docking arrangement is to be indicated on the structural plans submitted for approval and on the docking plan being furnished to the vessel.

8 Moon Pools

8.1 General Arrangement

The general arrangements of the moon pool are to be in accordance with the following:

i) The opening of the moon pool should be in a suitable distance from the deck edge, cargo hatch covers, superstructure breaks and the areas of structure discontinuity.

ii) In general a pipe laying moon pool is to be located near the center of the vessel to reduce the effect from vessel motion.

iii) The corner radius of the moon pool opening is not to be less than 0.125 times of the moon pool width but need not exceed 600 mm (24 in.).

iv) Free edges of the moon pool opening are to be suitably rounded in order to protect umbilical and cables.

v) Means, such as moon pool covers, are to be provided to prevent personnel from falling into the moon pool.

vi) Transverse section through the moon pool is to be included in the hull girder longitudinal strength calculation and to be in accordance with 3-2-1/3

8.3 Moon Pool Bulkhead Scantlings *(2025)*

Moon pool bulkheads are to comply with the following:

i) Bulkhead structure is to comply with requirements for side structure. The thickness of the moon pool bulkhead plating is to be not less the thickness required by [1] and [3.9] .

ii) Scantlings of moon pool bulkhead horizontal or vertical stiffeners are to be in accordance with 3-2-10/3.3 as applicable.

iii) Scantlings of moon pool bulkhead webs and girders are to be in accordance with 3-2-10/3.7 as applicable.

iv) Where the moon pool bulkhead is adjacent to liquid cargo or ballast tanks, the required plate thickness and sizes of stiffeners, webs and girders are also to comply with the deep tank requirements in 3-2-10/3.

v) Where a cofferdam is fitted, sufficient numbers of openings on the transverse or vertical webs are to be provided for inspection and maintenance.

vi) Moon pool bulkhead scantlings are to be specially considered if the bulkheads are also subject to impact loads.

Commentary:

Vessels 150 m (492 ft) in length and greater are recommended to have a hydrodynamic study carried out to evaluate impact loads. Refer to Part 3A, Chapter 5 of the ABS *Rules for Building and Classing Offshore Units* for moon pool structure. The analysis should consider sloshing.

End of Commentary

9 Compensation

Compensation is to be made where necessary for openings in the shell. Unless otherwise specifically required, openings in the shell are to have a minimum corner radius of 0.125 times the width of the opening, but not less than 150 mm (6 in.) and need not exceed a radius of 600 mm (24 in.) in the bottom shell and side shell within 0.1D above the base line and below the gunwale and 450 mm (18 in.) elsewhere in the side shell. Any minor openings which must unavoidably be cut in the plating are to be kept as small as possible and are to be circular or oval in form.

Openings for cargo, gangway, fueling ports, etc. are to be kept well clear of discontinuities or breaks in the hull girder. Local strengthening is to be made to maintain the longitudinal and transverse strength of the hull. Where port-lights are provided in the shell plating, the locations and sizes are to be clearly indicated on the midship-section drawing submitted for approval.

11 Breaks *(2024)*

Side shells of vessels having partial superstructures are to be specially strengthened in way of breaks to limit the local increase in stresses at these locations. The stringer plate thickness and the sheer strake thickness at the lower level is to be doubled or increased in thickness well beyond the break in both directions. The thickness increase is to be 25% in way of breaks in the superstructures, but the increase need not exceed 6.5 mm (0.25 in.). The side plating of the superstructure is to be increased in thickness in way of the break. The thickness of the sheer strake and the side shell plating below the sheer strake in way of the break are to be increased appropriately and are to extend well beyond the end of the superstructure in both directions in such a fashion as to provide a long gradual taper.

Where the breaks of the forecastle or poop are appreciably beyond the amidship 0.5L, these requirements may be modified. Gangways, large freeing ports and other openings in the shell or bulwarks are to be kept well clear of breaks, and any holes which must unavoidably be cut in the plating are to be kept as small as possible and are to be circular or oval in form.

Commentary:

Where breaks of the forecastle or poop are appreciably beyond the amidship, the full 25% thickness increase may not be required so long as proper transitioning is provided.

End of Commentary

12 Skeg and other Appendages *(2021)*

Vessel fitted with skegs and other permanent appendages are to comply with the following, unless otherwise specified in other sections of the Rules:

i) Thickness of the skeg plating is to be in accordance with [3.15] , and 3-2-10/3.1 for deep tanks. The thickness of shell plating in way of an appendage is to be increased by 25%. However, this increase need not exceed 6.5 mm (0.25 in.).

ii) The stiffener section modulus is to be in accordance with 3-2-4/11.3, and 3-2-10/3.3 for deep tanks.

iii) Where a closing plate prohibits the inspection of a void space or joint that is integral to the shell plating, access ports or drain plugs are to be provided in way of this space. Access arrangements with manholes are to be provided for skegs used as deep tanks.

iv) All appendages are to be attached to shell plate using double continuous fillet welds in accordance with Section 3-2-19. Where access is not feasible, one side full penetration weld with backing is to be provided.

v) Appendage structures are to be reinforced and aligned with the internal hull structural members.

vi) In vessels where significant hydrodynamic forces act on the skeg (such as escort vessels, planing vessels, etc.), the hydrodynamic loads on the skeg and supporting hull structures are to be evaluated and submitted to ABS for review.

13 Bilge Keels *(1 July 2025)*

Bilge keels where fitted, are to be attached to the shell by a ground bar. The connections of the bilge keel to the ground bar and the ground bar to the shell, are to be by double continuous fillet welds. The material of the bilge keel and ground bar is to be of the same yield stress as the material to which they are attached.

Butt welds in the bilge keel and ground bar are to be full penetration and are to be kept clear of master erection butts. Shell butts are to be flush in way of the ground bar, and the crown of the shell butt weld is to be gradually reduced until the butt weld is flush with the plate surface in way of the ground bar. The ground bar butts are to be flush in way of the bilge keel.

Scallops and cutouts are not to be made in the bilge keel except the following. Where desired, a crack arresting hole, at least 25 mm (1 in.) in diameter, is to be drilled in each bilge keel butt weld as close as practicable to the fillet weld of the bilge keel to the ground bar, but not in the heat affected zone of the fillet weld.

The ends of the bilge keel are to be suitably tapered and are to terminate on an internal stiffening member. The tensile properties of bilge keels and ground bar are to be the same as required for the bottom shell plating.

Additional requirements for ships with length above 150 m (492 ft):

i) The thickness of the ground bar is not to be less than the thickness of the bilge strake or 14 mm, whichever is less.

ii) The ground bar and bilge keel end is to be tapered or rounded. Tapering is to be gradual with a minimum ratio of 3:1, see items (a) and (d) in [FIGURE 5] and [FIGURE 6] . Rounded ends are to be as shown in item (c) of [FIGURE 5] . Cut-outs on the bilge keel web, within zone 'A' (see item (b) of [FIGURE 5]) are not permitted.

iii) The end of the bilge keel web is to be at least 50 mm (2 in.) and not greater than 100 mm (4 in.) from the end of ground bar, see item (a) of [FIGURE 5] .

iv) Ends of the bilge keel and ground bar are to be supported by either transverse or longitudinal members inside the hull, as follows:

- Transverse support members are to be fitted between the end of the bilge keel web and the end of the ground bar, close to the end of the bilge keel web, see items (a), (b) and (c) of [FIGURE 5] .
- A longitudinal stiffener, if fitted, is to be fitted in line with the bilge keel web. It is to extend to at least the nearest transverse member forward and after of zone 'A'. See item (e) of [FIGURE 6] .

v) Refer to [FIGURE 4] for typical bilge keel construction.

Alternative arrangements of bilge keel will be specially considered subject to proven design practice and supporting calculation indicating low stress concentration.

Commentary:

In general, both the bilge keel and the ground bar are to be continuous.

For vessels over 150 m (492 ft) with bilge keels greater than 600 mm (24 in.) in depth and single web or closed construction form, investigation of yielding, buckling and fatigue strength should be considered. Refer to 3B-2-3/2.19 of the *Offshore Rules*.

End of Commentary

FIGURE 4
Bilge Keel Construction *(2024)*

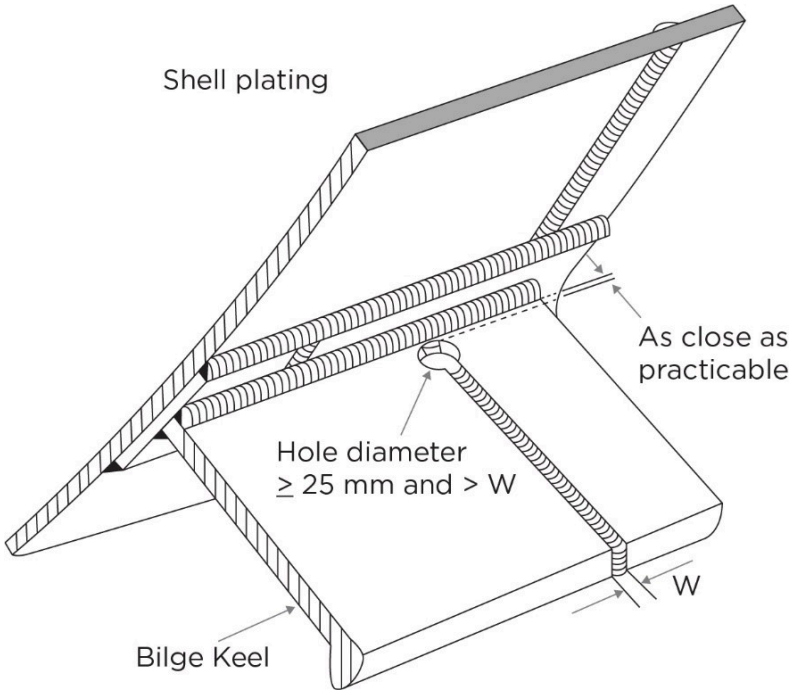


FIGURE 5
Bilge Keel End Design *(2024)*

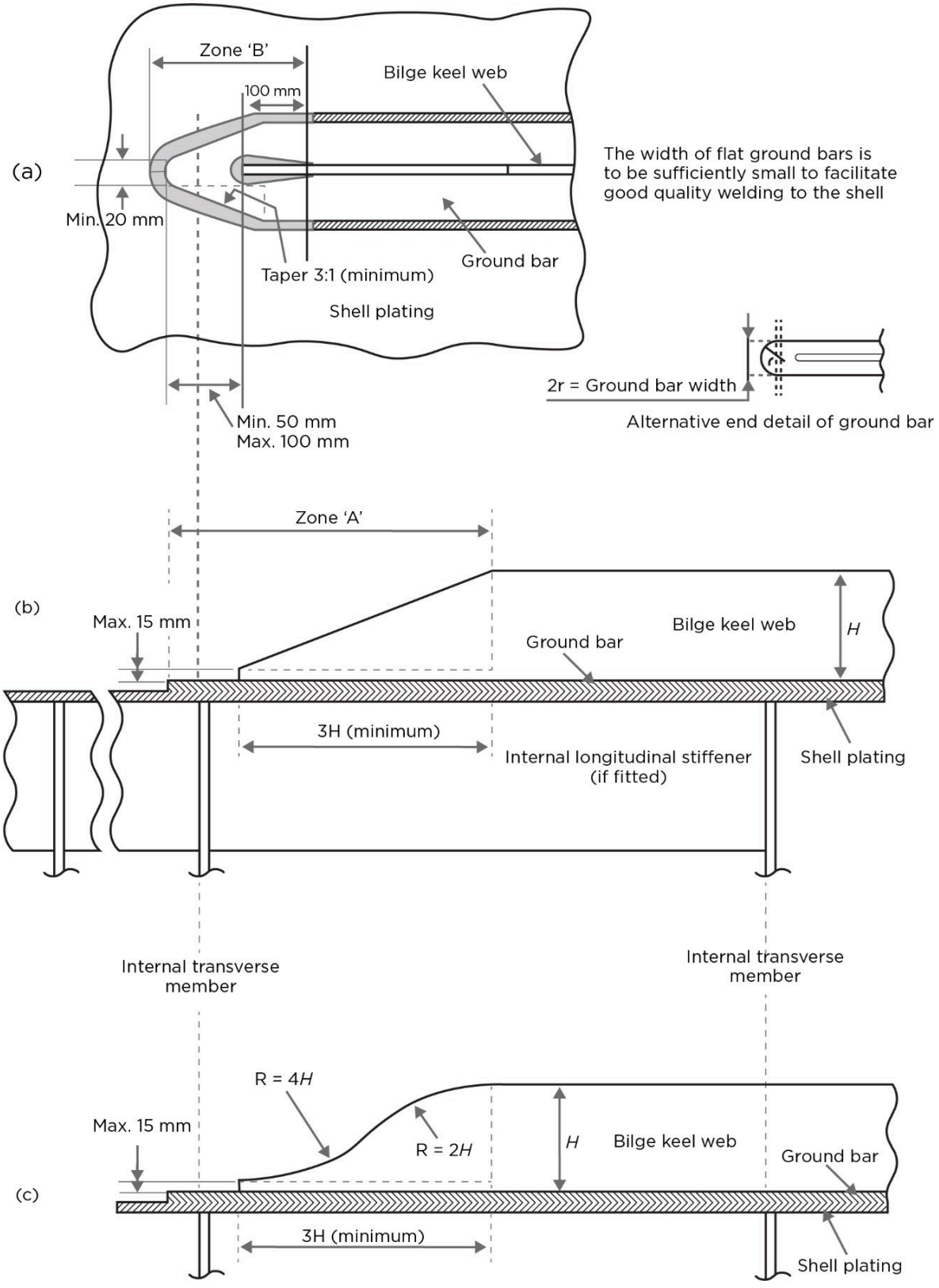
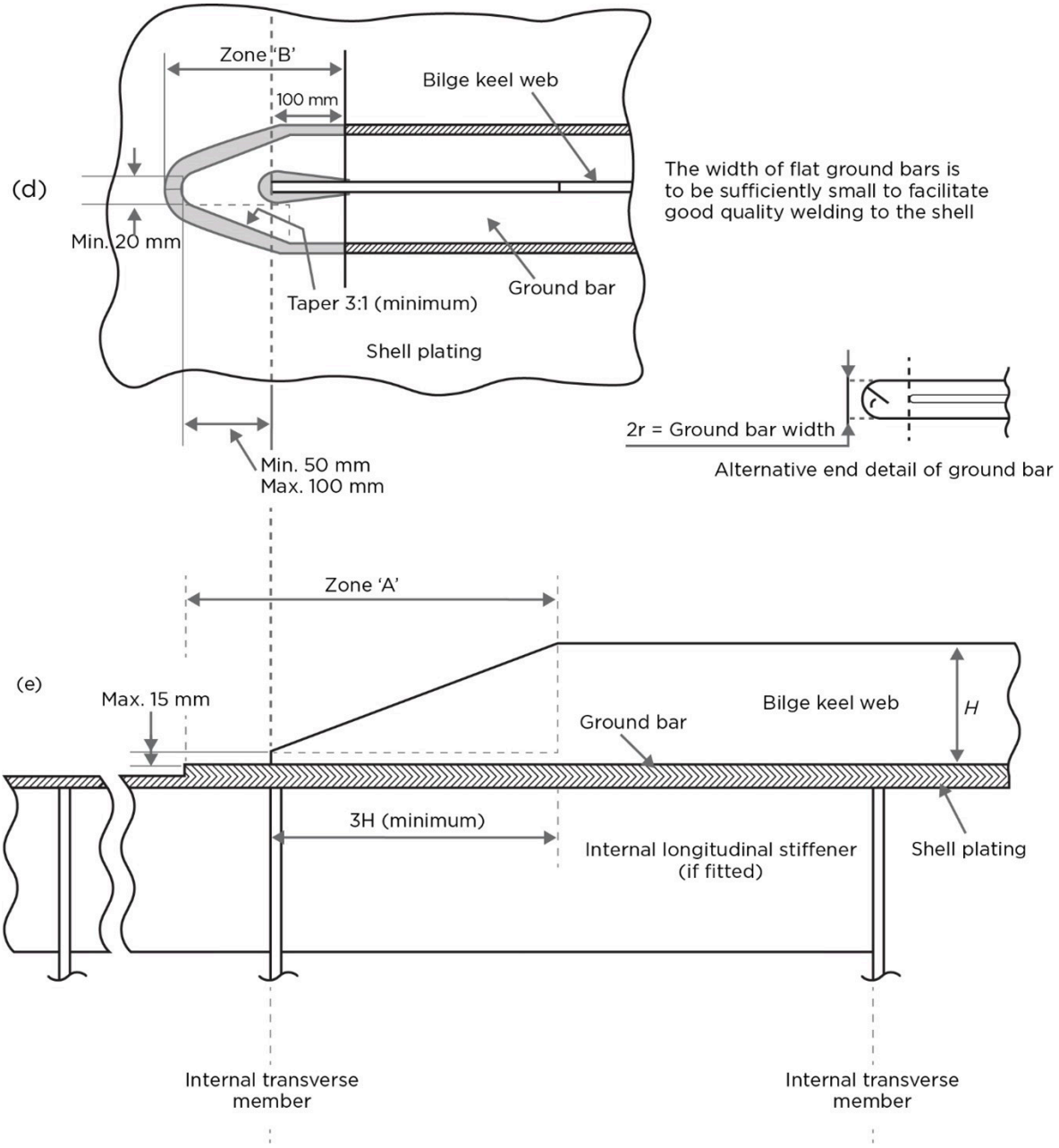


FIGURE 6
Bilge Keel End Design *(2024)*



14 Bilge Plating

The bilge plate is to be longitudinally stiffened. The thickness of the bilge plate is to be not less than required in [1] and [3], adjusted for spacing of the bilge longitudinals or frames and the material factors. Where girth spacing of bilge longitudinals is greater than that of the adjacent bottom plating, the spacing is to be modified by the following equation in calculations of minimum required thickness.

s = k_{r1} s_g mm (in.), but not to be taken less than the spacing of the longitudinals of the adjacent bottom plating

where

s_g = girth spacing of bilge longitudinals, in mm (in.)

k_{r1} = $(1 – 0.5s_g/R)^2$ but not less than 0.55

R = radius of bilge, in mm (in.)

Bilge keels are not to be considered as longitudinal stiffening members unless they are continuous and effectively developed.

In no case is the thickness of the bilge plate to be less than that of the adjacent bottom plating.

15 Higher-strength Materials

15.1 General *(2024)*

Applications of higher-strength materials for shell plating are to take into consideration the suitable extension of the higher-strength material above and below the bottom and deck, respectively, as required by 3-2-1/5.1. Calculations to show adequate provision against buckling are to be submitted. Care is to be taken against the adoption of reduced thickness of material that might be subject to damage during normal operation. The thickness of the bottom and side shell plating, where constructed of higher-strength materials, is to be not less than required for the purpose of longitudinal hull girder strength; nor is the thickness to be less than required by the foregoing paragraphs of this Section when modified as indicated in [15.3] and [15.5] .

High strength steel members are to be continuous at the intersection with members of lesser strength.

Commentary:

The thickness of higher-strength steel may be reduced based on consideration of the material factor, shear, buckling and proper transitioning.

End of Commentary

15.3 Bottom Plating of Higher-strength Material *(1 July 2025)*

Bottom shell plating where constructed of higher-strength material is to be not less in thickness than obtained from the following equation:

$$t_{hts} = (t_{ms} - C)Q + C$$

where

t_{hts} = thickness of higher-strength material, in mm (in.)

t_{ms} = thickness, in mm (in.), of ordinary-strength steel, as required by the preceding paragraphs of this section.

The requirements $t_{\min}$ in [3.15.2] are to be used in the above equation with the factor $0.92/\sqrt{Q}$ substituted for Q. The value of $0.92/\sqrt{Q}$ is not to be less than 1.00.

C = 4.3 mm (0.17 in.)

Q = as defined in 3-2-1/5.3

Where the bottom shell plating is constructed of higher-strength material applications are to be accompanied by submission of calculations in support of adequate strength against buckling.

Commentary:

This formula may lead to a higher required thickness for higher-strength material. This is to provide additional buckling capacity to handle the higher working stress from hull girder loads.

End of Commentary

15.5 Side and End Plating of Higher-strength Material *(2024)*

Side-shell plating and end plating where constructed of higher-strength material are to be not less in thickness than obtained from the following equation:

$$t_{hts} = [t_{ms} - C][(Q + 2\sqrt{Q})/3] + C$$

t_{hts}, t_{ms}, C and Q are as defined in [15.3]

Where the side shell plating is constructed of higher-strength material applications are to be accompanied by submission of calculations in support of adequate strength against buckling.

PART 3

CHAPTER 2
Hull Structures and Arrangements

SECTION 3
Decks

1 General

1.1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1.1 Goals

The vessel structure is to be designed, constructed, operated and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goal*
STRU 1	in the intact condition, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU 3	Provide protection to persons onboard, the environment and required safety services.
STAB 1	have adequate watertight integrity and restoring energy to prevent capsize in an intact condition.

The goals in the cross-referenced Rules are also to be met.

1.1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above stated goals, the design, construction, installation, and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Structure (STRU)	
STRU-FR1	Scantlings are to have sufficient strength to resist failure and excessive deformation associated with buckling and yielding when subjected to the loads anticipated throughout the service life, including hull girder loads, deck cargo loads, green water loads, hydrostatic loads (tank and watertight boundaries), etc.
STRU-FR2	The design of the termination of structural members is to prevent yielding or fatigue cracks.

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
STRU-FR3	The workmanship is to avoid discontinuities, misalignment and other harmful details that may lead to failure in service.
STRU-FR4	Scantlings are to be maintained so that the structure will continue to satisfy all Goals and Functional Requirements.
STRU-FR5	Adequate longitudinal strength is to be provided to resist bending moments and shear forces associated with vessel loading and wave loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU-FR6	Proportions of structural members are to be sufficient to prevent buckling of structural members.
Stability (STAB)	
STAB-FR2	Suitable tightness of tanks and decks are to be provided.

The goals and functional requirements in cross-referenced Rules are to be met.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

1.3 Extent of Plating

All exposed decks, portions of decks forming the crowns of machinery spaces and the boundaries of tanks or steps in bulkheads are to be plated. Decks in other locations are to be plated, as necessary, for strength or watertightness.

3 General Requirements for Deck *(2024)*

3.1 Longitudinal Section Modulus Amidships

The required longitudinal hull girder section modulus amidships is obtained from the equations given in 3-2-1/3.7.1 and 3-2-1/5.3

3.3 Strength Deck

For the definition of the strength deck for calculation purposes, see 3-2-1/11.1.

3.5 Longitudinally Framed Decks *(2024)*

Where the beams of the strength deck and other decks are fitted longitudinally and are continuous within the 0.4L amidships region in accordance with Section 3-2-7, the sectional area of the longitudinals may be included in the hull girder section-modulus calculation.

Outside 0.4L amidships, 3-2-1/3.7.1(c).i.

For vessels with L < 90 meters (295 feet), 3-2-1/3.7.1(c).ii.

3.7 Superstructure Decks *(2025)*

Superstructure decks which are comparatively short (0.1L or less in length) or which are not designed as the strength deck (see 3-2-2/3.7 and [3.3]) are to comply with the requirements of3-2-11/1.3.

3.9 Deck Transitions *(2024)*

Where the effective areas in the same deck change, as in way of partial superstructures or over discontinuous decks, care is to be taken to extend the heavier plating well into the section of the vessel in which the lesser requirements apply, to obtain a good transition from one arrangement to the other. Partial decks within the hull are to be tapered off to the side shell or longitudinal bulkheads by means of long brackets.

Commentary:

Where effective decks change in level, the change should be accomplished by a very gradually sloping section, or the deck material at each level is to be effectively overlapped and thoroughly connected together by longitudinal plate diaphragms or webs of sufficient shear area to transmit the hull girder bending forces between the two levels of strength decks.

End of Commentary

3.11 Deck Plating *(2024)*

The following requirements are to be complied with:

i) Deck plating is to be of not less thickness than is required for purposes of longitudinal hull girder strength. The thickness of the stringer plate is to be increased 25% in way of breaks of superstructures, but this increase need not exceed 6.5 mm (0.25 in.).

ii) This requirement may be modified where the breaks of poop or forecastle are appreciably beyond the midship $0.5L$. The required deck area is to be maintained throughout the amidship $0.4L$ of the vessel and is to be suitably extended into superstructures located at or near the amidship $0.4L$. From these locations to the ends of the vessel, the deck area contributing to the hull girder strength may be gradually reduced in accordance with 3-2-1/11.3.

iii) Where a superstructure of or greater than $0.4L$ is located on the strength deck the superstructure deck is to be considered as the strength deck for the application of hull-girder strength requirements. The required area of the strength deck plating clear of the superstructure is to be extended a suitable distance into both ends of the superstructure to provide an effective transition of hull girder strength between the two strength decks. Where there are numerous openings in the side shell of the superstructure, such as a row of windows, the reduction in shear area of the superstructure side shell may reduce the effectiveness of the superstructure deck as a strength deck.

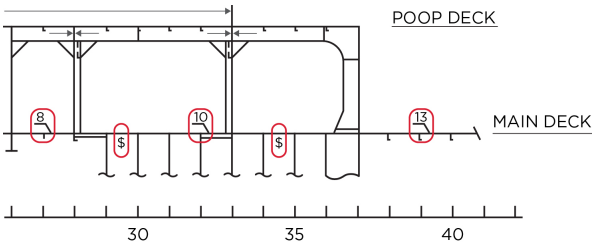
iv) Outside $0.6L$ the required strength deck area is to be extended into poop and forecastles by a suitable distance to provide effective structural transition of the hull-girder strength.

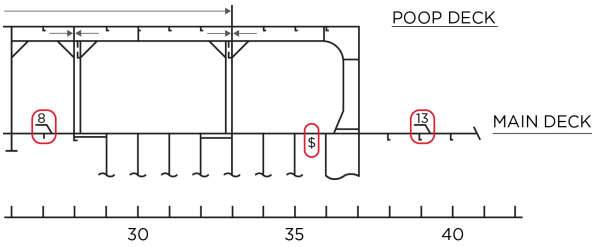
v) Where bending moment envelope curves are used to determine the required hull girder section modulus, the foregoing requirements for deck area may be modified in accordance with 3-2-1/11.3. Where so modified, the strength deck area is to be maintained as required in the preceding requirements to provide adequate structural continuity. The thickness of the deck plating is also not to be less than given in [5.1].

Commentary:

1 Buckling strength of transversely framed plating is significantly lower than that of longitudinally framed plating. Special attention should be paid to those areas where there is change in the framing system; the buckling strength may need to be confirmed.

2 Example of suitable extension of strength deck into superstructures





End of Commentary

5 Deck Scantling Details

5.1 Thickness *(2024)*

The thickness of deck plating is to be not less than obtained from the applicable equations specified in [TABLE 1] . The required thickness is not to be less than 5.0 mm (0.20 in.), except for enclosed non-strength deck plating where the thickness is not to be less than 4.5 mm (0.18 in.).

In addition, the plating thickness of a deck on which cargo is carried is to be obtained from the following equations:

$$t = \frac{s\sqrt{h}}{254} + 1.5\text{mm}$$

$$t = \frac{s\sqrt{h}}{460} + 0.06\text{in.}$$

where

t = thickness, in mm (in.)

s = beam or longitudinal spacing, in mm (in.)

p = uniform loading, in kN/m^2 (kgf/m^2, lbf/ft^2)

h = height, in m (ft), as follows:

= 3.66 m (12 ft) for an exposed deck intended to carry deck cargoes when uniform loading p does not exceed 25.66 kN/m^2 (2617 kgf/m^2, 536 lbf/ft^2)

= p/7.01 m (p/715 m, p/44.7 ft) for an exposed deck intended to carry deck cargoes when load p exceeds 25.66 kN/m^2 (2617 kgf/m^2, 536 lbf/ft^2)

= h_{cs}, in m (ft), the cargo space height at side for lower decks intended to carry cargoes. Where the cargo load differs from 7.01 kN/m^3 (715 kgf/m^3, 44.7 lbf/ft^3) multiplied by the cargo space height, the height is to be proportionately adjusted.

5.3 Effective Lower Decks *(2024)*

For use as an effective lower deck in calculating the hull girder section modulus, 3-2-1/13 is to be complied with. The thickness of the plating is to be not less than obtained according to, [TABLE 1] appropriate to the depth D_S and the deck's stringer plate is to be connected to the shell. In no case is the plating to be less than obtained from I or J in [TABLE 1] , as appropriate.

5.5 Reinforcement at Openings

5.5.1 Openings in Strength Decks *(2024)*

Unless otherwise specifically required, openings in the strength deck are to have a minimum corner radius of 0.125 times the width of the opening, but need not exceed 600 mm (24 in.). Hull girder section modulus is to be examined in accordance with 3-2-1/9.3.

Additionally, the minimum radius in way of narrow deck transverse ligaments between adjacent openings having the same width is not to be less than 150 mm (6 in.).

Commentary:

Strength deck access manholes located within 0.6L amidship should be circular or ellipsoidal in shape. If a quadrangular shape (having four sides) is proposed, fine mesh FEA may need to be performed to confirm the proposed structural detail and opening corner radius.

End of Commentary

5.5.2 Openings in Effective Decks *(2024)*

In other effective decks, the radius is to be 0.1 times the width of the opening, but need not exceed 450 mm (18 in.). At the corners of hatchways or other openings in other decks, generous radii are to be provided.

5.5.3 In Way of Machinery Space

In way of the machinery spaces, special attention is to be paid to the maintenance of lateral stiffness by means of webs and heavy pillars in way of deck opening and casings. Pillars are to extend down to the double bottom and are to be fitted in line with each other.

5.7 Platform Decks

Lower decks which are not considered to be effective for longitudinal strength are termed platform decks. The plating thickness is not to be less than obtained from equations I or J of [TABLE 1] as appropriate.

5.9 Superstructure and Deckhouses Decks *(2024)*

Decks of superstructures having lengths greater than 0.1L are to also comply with the requirements of 3-2-1/11.1.

Where decks of superstructures are of 0.1L or less in length the stringer plate may be the thickness of the side plating and the remainder of the deck plating is to meet the hull girder section modulus requirements of Section 3-2-1 if they are located within the 0.4L amidships. The thickness of the plating is to be obtained from [TABLE 1] line H. At the forward and aft 0.1L ends is to be obtained from [TABLE 1] forecastle and poop deck plating, respectively.

For forecastle structure see also 3-2-11/9.

The top plating of deckhouses is to be as required by equation 5 in [TABLE 2] . In addition, deckhouses located within 0.4L amidships and having lengths over 0.1L are to have plating meeting the hull girder requirements of Section 3-2-1, and the side plating of such deckhouses is to be not less than obtained from equation 5 in [TABLE 2] .

5.11 Decks over Tanks

For decks over tanks see 3-2-10/3.5.

5.13 Watertight Flats

The thickness of watertight flats over tunnels, or watertight flats forming recesses or steps in bulkheads, is to be not less than the thickness required for the plating of ordinary bulkheads at the same level, plus 1 mm (0.04 in.).

5.15 Retractable Tween Decks *(2024)*

The thickness of retractable tween deck plating is not to be less than required by equation 6 of [TABLE 2] . The edges of the deck panels are to be stiffened to provide the necessary rigidity.

The beams and girders, in association with the plating to which they are attached, are to have section modulus, SM, not less than obtained from the following equation.

$$SM = kchs\ell^2 \quad \text{cm}^3 \ (\text{in}^3)$$

where

k = 7.8 (0.0041)

c = 0.81 for the section modulus to the flange or face bar

= 1.00 for the section modulus to the deck plating

h = $p/7.04$ m ($p/715$ m, $p/45$ ft)

p = uniform loading, in kN/m^2 (kgf/m^2, lbf/ft^2)

s = spacing of the beam or girder, in m (ft)

ℓ = unsupported length of the beam or girder, in m (ft)

The depth of beams and girders is not to be less than 4% of the unsupported length.

Commentary:

Alternative designs with stiffness equivalent to the specified depth/length ratio and the required section modulus may be considered provided that the calculated results are submitted to ABS for review.

End of Commentary

When retractable decks are intended for the operation or stowage of vehicles having rubber tires, the thickness of the deck plating is to be not less than required by 3-2-15/11.3.2. The retractable decks are to be secured against movement and effectively supported by the hull structure.

5.17 Wheel Loading *(2024)*

Where provision is to be made for the operation or stowage of vehicles having rubber tires, and after all other requirements are met, the thickness of the plating of an effective lower deck (see [5.3]) is not to be less than obtained from the following equation:

$$t = kKn\sqrt{CW} \quad \text{mm (in.)}$$

where

k = 8.05 (25.2, 1.0)

K = $[21.99 + 0.316(a/s)^2 – 5.328(a/s) + 2.6(a/s)(b/s) – 0.895(b/s)^2 – 7.624(b/s)]10^{-2}$, derived from the curves indicated in [FIGURE 2]

n = 1.0 for $\ell/s \geq 2.0$ and 0.85 for $\ell/s = 1.0$,

= $0.85 + 0.15(\ell/s – 1.0)$ for $1.0 < \ell/s < 2.0$

C = 1.5 for wheel loads of vehicles stowed at sea and 1.1 for vehicles operating in port

W = static wheel load, in kN (tf, Ltf)

a = wheel imprint dimension, in mm (in.), parallel to the longer edge, ℓ, of the plate panel

b = wheel imprint dimension, in mm (in.), perpendicular to the longer edge, ℓ, of the plate panel

s = spacing of deck beams or deck longitudinals, in mm (in.)

ℓ = length of the plate panel, in mm (in.)

The strength deck plating thickness for wheel loading is not to be less than:

$$t = 1.1kKn\sqrt{CW}\,\text{mm(in.)}$$

The platform deck plating thickness for wheel loading is not to be less than:

$$t = 0.9kKn\sqrt{CW}\,\text{mm (in.)}$$

Where the wheels are close together, consideration is to be given to the use of a combined imprint and load. Where the intended operation is such, that only the larger dimension of the wheel imprint is perpendicular to the longer edge of the plate panel, then b above may be taken as the larger wheel imprint dimension, while a is to be the lesser dimension.

TABLE 1
Applicable Thickness Equations
(2025)

Decks (See [FIGURE 1])	*Minimum Thickness Equation in [TABLE 2]*
A. Strength Deck or Long Superstructure Decks Outside Line of Openings	
1. With Transverse Beams	1a and 1b(note 1)
2. With Longitudinal Beams	2a and 2b(note 1)
B. Exposed Strength Deck within Line of Openings	3(note 2)
C. Enclosed Strength Deck or Long Superstructure Decks within Line of Openings	5
D. Effective Lower Decks	
1. Second Deck:	
a. D_s > 15.2 m (50 ft)	1a
b. 15.2 m (50 ft) ≥ D_s ≥ 12.8 m (42 ft)	2a

Decks (See [FIGURE 1])	*Minimum Thickness Equation in [TABLE 2]*
c. D_s < 12.8 m (42 ft)	3
2. Third Deck:	
a. D_s > 17.7 m (58 ft)	1a
b. 17.7 m (58 ft) ≥ D_s ≥ 13.4 m (44 ft)	2a
c. 13.4 m (44 ft) ≥ D_s ≥ 9.8 m (32 ft)	3
d. D_s < 9.8 m (32 ft)	4
E. Exposed Forecastle Decks	
1. L > 122 m (400 ft)	2a
2. L ≤ 122 m (400 ft)	3
F. Exposed Poop Decks	
1. L > 100 m (330 ft)	3
2. L ≤ 100 m (330 ft)	5
G. Exposed Decks Above Poop/Forecastle Decks	4
H. Long Deckhouse Tops and other Enclosed Decks	5
I. Platform Decks in Enclosed Cargo Spaces	6
J. Enclosed decks in Accommodation spaces	7

Notes:

1 In small vessels under 61 meters (200 feet) in length, where the required area for longitudinal strength ([3-2-1/3.1]) is relatively small, and the deck area of the stringer plate and the strake alongside openings may be disregarded, the plating thickness is to be not less than that obtained from the equations in 1b and 5.

2 Equation 3 applies amidships. At the forward and aft ends, plating is to be as required for the exposed forecastle and poop deck

Commentary:

Where the platform decks (I) and enclosed decks (J) are subjected to hull girder bending, consideration should be given to the structural stability of deck supporting members.

End of Commentary

FIGURE 1
Decks and Tiers Allocation *(2024)*

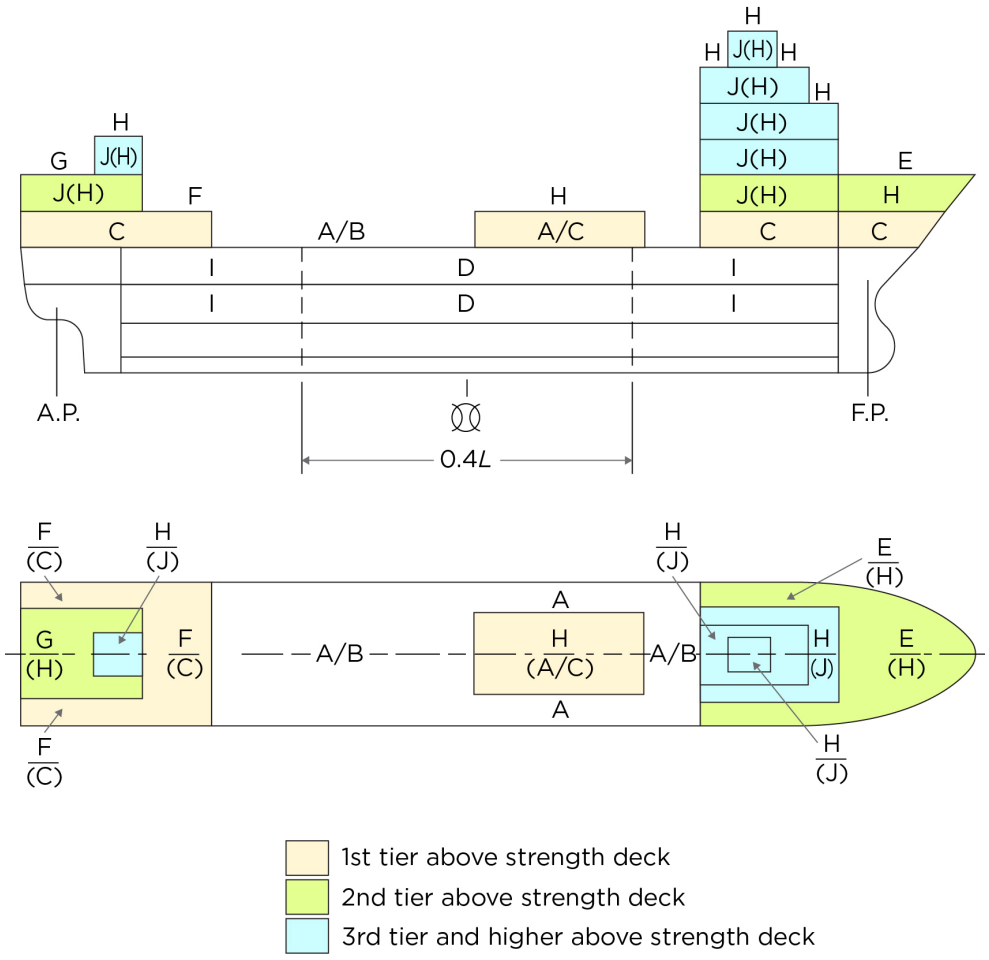


FIGURE 2
Wheel Loading Curves of "K"

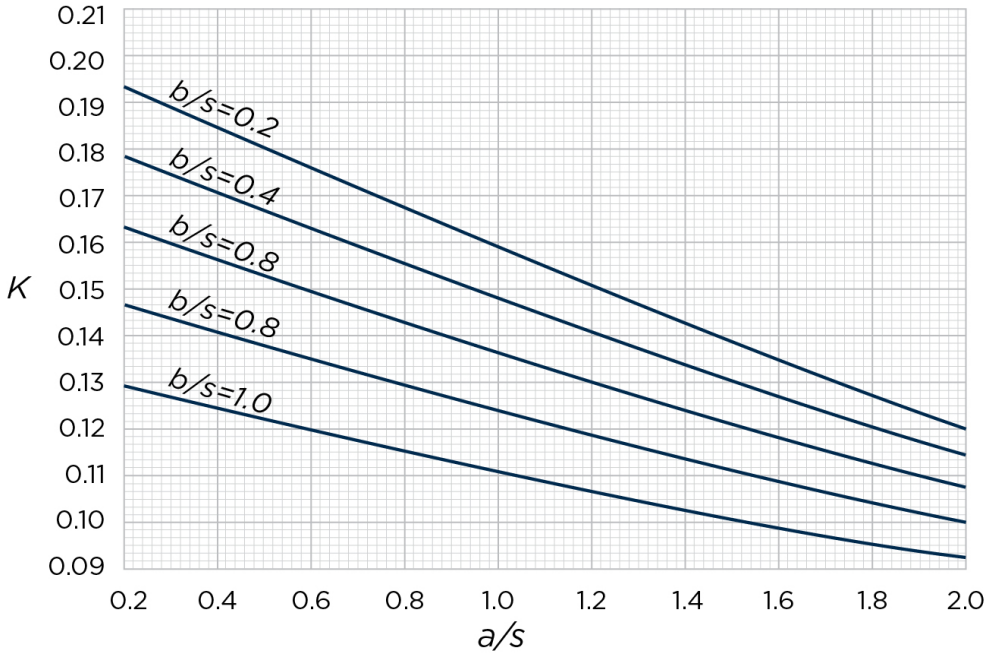


TABLE 2
Minimum Thickness Equations
(2024)

Equation Number	*Equation*	
1a[notes 1, 2]	$t = 0.01s_b + 2.3$ mm $t = 0.0066s_b + 4.9$ mm $t = 0.01s_b + 0.09$ in. $t = 0.0066s_b + 0.192$ in.	for $s_b \le 760$ mm for $s_b > 760$ mm for $s_b \le 30$ in. for $s_b > 30$ in.
1b[notes 1, 3]	$t = \frac{s_b(L + 45.73)}{25L + 6082}$ mm $t = \frac{s_b(L + 150)}{25L + 19950}$ in.	
2a[notes 1, 2]	$t = 0.009s_b + 2.4$ mm $t = 0.006s_b + 4.7$ mm $t = 0.009s_b + 0.095$ in. $t = 0.006s_b + 0.185$ in.	for $s_b \le 760$ mm for $s_b > 760$ mm for $s_b \le 30$ in. for $s_b > 30$ in.
2b[notes 1, 3]	$t = \frac{s_b(L + 48.76)}{26L + 8681}$ mm $t = \frac{24.38s_b}{1615.4 - 1.1L}$ mm $t = \frac{s_b(L + 160)}{26L + 28482}$ in.	for $L \le 183$ m for $183 < L \le 427$ m for $L \le 600$ ft

Equation Number	*Equation*	
	$t = \frac{80 s_b}{5300 - 1.1L}$ in.	for 600 < L ≤ 1400 ft
3	$t = 0.01 s_b + 0.9$ mm $t = 0.0067 s_b + 3.4$ mm $t = 0.01 s_b + 0.035$ in. $t = 0.0067 s_b + 0.134$ in.	for $s_b \leq 760$ mm for $s_b > 760$ mm for $s_b \leq 30$ in. for $s_b > 30$ in.
4	$t = 0.01 s_b + 0.25$ mm $t = 0.0043 s_b + 4.6$ mm $t = 0.01 s_b + 0.01$ in. $t = 0.0043 s_b + 0.181$ in.	for $s_b \leq 760$ mm for $s_b > 760$ mm for $s_b \leq 30$ in. for $s_b > 30$ in.
5	$t = 0.009 s_b + 0.8$ mm $t = 0.0039 s_b + 4.3$ mm $t = 0.009 s_b + 0.032$ in. $t = 0.0039 s_b + 0.17$ in.	for $s_b \leq 760$ mm for $s_b > 760$ mm for $s_b \leq 30$ in. for $s_b > 30$ in.
6	$t = K s_b \sqrt{h} + a$ mm (in.) but not less than 5.0 mm (0.20 in.) K = 0.00394 (0.00218) a = 1.5 mm (0.06 in.) h = tween deck height in m (ft) When a design load is specified, h is to be taken as p/n where p is the specified design load in kN/m^2 (kgf/m^2, lbf/ft^2) and n is defined as 7.01 (715, 44.7)	
7	$t = 0.0058 s_b + 1.0$ mm $t = 0.0058 s_b + 0.04$ in. but not less than 4.5 mm (0.18 in.)	

L = scantling length of the vessel as defined in 3-1-1/3.1 in m (ft) s_b = spacing of deck beams, in mm (in.)

Notes:

1 Within steel superstructures or deckhouse, the plating thickness may be reduced by 1 mm (0.04 in.).

2 To extend over $0.8L$ amidships, beyond which the thickness forward and aft is not to be less than required for forecastle and poop deck plating respectively.

3 To extend over $0.4L$ amidships and tapered beyond in a manner the same as in 3-2-1/11.3.

Commentary:

Vessels designed on still-water bending moment envelope curves may receive special consideration by ABS.

End of Commentary

7 Higher-strength Material

7.1 Thickness *(2024)*

The thickness of deck plating for longitudinal framed decks, where constructed of higher-strength material, is to be not less than required for longitudinal strength, nor is it to be less than obtained from the following equations, whichever is greater:

$$t_{hts1} = (t_{ms1} - 4.3)Q + 4.3\text{mm}$$

$$t_{hts2} = (0.92/\sqrt{Q})(t_{ms2} - 4.3) + 4.3\text{mm}$$

$$t_{hts1} = (t_{ms1} - 0.17)Q + 0.17\text{in.}$$

$$t_{hts2} = (0.92/\sqrt{Q})(t_{ms2} - 0.17) + 0.17\text{in.}$$

where

t_{ms1} = thickness of ordinary-strength steel, in mm (in.), as required by these Rules for longitudinally framed deck, except for equation 2b

t_{ms2} = thickness of ordinary-strength steel, in mm (in.), as obtained from [TABLE 2] , equation 2b and for transversely framed deck

Q = as defined in 3-2-1/5.3, however the factor $0.92/\sqrt{Q}$ is not to be less than 1.0

Commentary:

In general, proposed applications of higher-strength material for decks are to be accompanied by submission of calculations in support of adequate strength against buckling. Care is to be taken to avoid reducing the thickness of the material such that it may be subject to damage during normal operation.

End of Commentary

7.3 Wheel Loading

Where decks or flats are constructed of higher-strength material and provision is made for the operation or stowage of vehicles having rubber tires, the thickness of plating is to be not less than obtained from the following equation:

$$t_{hts} = t_{ms}\sqrt{q}\text{mm (in.)}$$

where

t_{ms} = thickness of ordinary-strength steel, as obtained from [5.17]

q = $235/Y$ N/mm^2 ($24/Y$ kgf/mm^2, $34{,}000/Y$ lbs/in^2)

Y = specified minimum yield point or yield strength, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, lbs/in^2), as defined in [2-1-1/13] of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)* for the higher-strength material or 0.72 of the specified minimum tensile strength, whichever is the lesser

1 General *(2024)*

1.1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1.1 Goal

Vessels covered in this section are to be designed, constructed, operated and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goals*
STRU 1	in the intact condition, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU 3	Provide protection to persons onboard, the environment and required safety services.
STAB 1	have adequate watertight integrity and restoring energy to prevent capsize in an intact condition.
STAB 5	to be able to remove accumulated liquids to mitigate the effects of flooding.
MGMT 5.1	design and construct vessel, machinery, and electrical systems to facilitate safe access, ease of inspection, survey, and maintenance.

1.1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above stated goals, the design, construction, installation, and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Structure (STRU)	
STRU-FR1	Adequate longitudinal strength is to be provided to resist bending moments and shear forces associated with vessel loading and wave loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU-FR2	Scantlings are to have sufficient strength to resist failure and excessive deformation associated with buckling and yielding when subjected to the loads throughout the service

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
	life, such as external sea loads, cargo loads, ballast water and any other liquid loads, heavy equipment loads, docking loads, and loads of loading/unloading (use of grabs).
STRU-FR3	The structure is to be of sufficient strength to prevent fatigue damage throughout the anticipated design life.
STRU-FR4	Adequate free ventilation in structures together with the vents are to be provided to keep the pressure in tanks within the designed limits for the designed environmental conditions and loading conditions including loading/unloading liquids.
STRU-FR5	The hull structure is to have sufficient rigidity to resist main engine normal vibration induced loading.
Stability (STAB)	
STAB-FR1	Suitable tightness of tanks is to provided.
STAB-FR2	Adequate drainage and drain holes in structures are to be provided for free drainage.
Safety Management (MGMT)	
MGMT-FR1	Satisfactory arrangements are to be provided for safe access for operation, inspection, and maintenance.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

1.2 General Requirements for Bottom Structures *(2024)*

The following general requirements are to be complied with, as applicable:

i) Bottom structures are to have the strength of not less than that required for longitudinal hull girder strength including buckling strength (as applicable) required in Section [3-2-1] . Bottom structures are to have the strength of not less than that required for longitudinal hull girder strength including buckling strength (as applicable) required in Section [3-2-1] .

ii) Inner bottoms are to be fitted between the peaks or as near thereto as practicable in vessels of ordinary design of 500 GT or over. For vessels other than tankers, the depth of the double bottom measured along the center line parallel to the molded keel line is to be not less than $B/20$, but not less than 0.76 m (2.5 ft) and need not exceed 2 m (6.6 ft) .

iii) Where, for specific reasons, the inner bottom must be omitted and the level of safety for bottom damage is justified, the arrangements are to be clearly indicated on the plans submitted for approval. A double bottom need not be fitted in way of deep tanks, provided the safety of the vessel in the event of bottom damage is not thereby impaired. It is recommended that the double bottom be arranged to protect the bilges as much as possible and that it be extended to the sides of the vessel.

Commentary:

For vessels other than tankers, where the required double bottom is not fitted, the safety level for bottom damage should be demonstrated by compliance with the bottom damage standard in Regulation II-1/9.8 of SOLAS in association with the interpretation by IMO Res. MSC.429(98).

For oil tankers, the bottom protection of cargo oil tanks and cargo pump room should comply with Regulation Annex I/19 and 22 of MARPOL respectively (see 5C-1-1/5.1 or [5C-2-1/5]). The vessel should also comply with Regulation Annex I/28 of MARPOL for damage stability.

For chemical carriers, the vessels should comply with Section [5C-9-2] for location of cargo tanks and survivability requirements.

For liquefied gas carriers, the vessels should comply with Section [5C-8-2] for location of cargo tanks and survivability requirements.

End of Commentary

iv) Bottom structure in way of deep tanks is to have not less strength than is required by [3-2-10/3.3] for deep tank bulkheads. The structures in way of tanks carrying heavy liquids are to be adequate for the loads imposed on them.

v) Double bottom structures (transverse floors, longitudinal keelsons, etc.) in way of tanks carrying heavy liquid cargoes (S.G. more than 1.05), concentrated loads, or uniformly distributed loads greater than 25.66 kN/m^2 (2617 kgf/m^2, 536 lbf/ft^2) are to be evaluated for buckling strength

vi) For bottom shell longitudinals bounding tanks having normal tank/air vent configurations in order to avoid accidental overpressure, the head "*h*" need not be greater than the distance from the longitudinal under consideration to the deck at side. In the case of unusual configurations or where the tanks are intended to carry liquids having a specific gravity equal to or greater than 1.05, "*h* is to be in accordance with [3-2-10/3.3] .

vii) When assessing the tank internal pressure, the head from the bottom longitudinals to two-thirds of the distance from the top of the tank to the top of overflow can be further reduced due to external pressure corresponding to 0.25ds (ds = minimum draft at light ballast condition). In addition, the modified bottom longitudinal scantlings can be applied up to the upper turn of the bilge, but not more than the required depth of the double bottom. The bottom and side longitudinals, with modified section modulus, are to meet all other Rule requirements.

3 Center and Side Girders

3.1 Center Girder *(2024)*

A center girder is to extend as far forward and aft as practicable. The plate is to be continuous within the amidship $0.75L$ and have a minimal number of cut-outs.

Manholes may be cut in every frame space outside the amidship $0.75L$. Elsewhere, the minimum practical number of manholes for adequate access and ventilation may be provided, but the depth of the manholes is not to exceed one-third the depth of the center girder. Compensation for the manholes within the amidship $0.75L$ is to be provided.

For vessels under 90 meters (295 feet) in length, manholes may be cut in every frame space outside the midships three-quarters length; they may be cut in alternate frames spaces within the midships three-quarters length.

3.1.1 General *(2022)*

The depth of center girder is to comply with the double bottom depth below ([1.2.ii.]). where applicable.

Center girder plates are to be of the thickness given by the following equations, between the peak bulkheads. In peaks, the center girder plates are to be of the thickness of the peak floors. Where longitudinal framing is adopted, the center girder plate is to be suitably stiffened between floors and docking brackets provided in accordance with [3.5] .

Where the arrangements, such as double skins or lower wing tanks, effectively reduce the unsupported breadth of the double bottom, the depth of the center girder may be reduced by substituting for B, the distance between the sloping plating of wing tanks at the inner bottom

plating level, or the distance between the inner skins. Where the distance is taken less than $0.9B$, an engineering analysis of the double bottom structure is required.

Where the length of the cargo hold is greater than $1.2B$, or exceeds $0.25L$, or where the vessel is intended to carry heavy cargoes on double bottom, the thickness and depth of center girder plates are to be determined based on the results of direct structural calculations.

3.1.1(a) Thickness Amidships **(2022)**

$t = 0.056L + 5.5\text{mm}$

$t = 0.00067L + 0.22\text{in.}$

3.1.1(b) Thickness at Ends

85% of the thickness required amidships

3.1.1(c) Depth (for Vessels other than Offshore Support Vessels) **(2022)**

$d_{DB} = 32B + 190\sqrt{d}$ mm for $L \leq 427$ m

$d_{DB} = 0.384B + 4.13\sqrt{d}$ in. for $L \leq 1400$ ft

where

t = thickness of plating, in mm (in.)

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

d_{DB} = depth of double bottom, in mm (in.)

d = molded draft of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/9, in m (ft)

B = breadth of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/5, in m (ft)

3.3 Pipe Tunnels as an Alternative Arrangement of Center Girders

A pipe tunnel, or tunnels, may be substituted for the center girder provided that the thickness of the sides of the pipe tunnel(s) is not less than is required for tank-end floors. The construction arrangement and details of pipe tunnels are to be clearly shown on the plans submitted for approval.

3.5 Docking Brackets for Center Girder and Side Girders

Docking brackets are to be provided on the girders when the spacing of the floors exceeds 2.4 m (8 ft), unless calculations are submitted to verify that the girders provide sufficient stiffness and strength for docking loads. Where the docking arrangement is such that the side girders or bulkheads are subject to docking loads, such arrangement is to be indicated on the submitted structural plan, and docking brackets are to be fitted on those members where the spacing of floors exceeds the foregoing limit.

3.7 Side Girders

Amidships and aft, side girders of the thickness obtained from the equation of [5] are to be so arranged that the distance from the center girder to the first side girder, the distance between the girders, and the distance from the outboard girder to the center of the margin plate does not exceed 4.57 m (15 ft). At the fore end, they are to be arranged as required by [15.5] or [15.7] as appropriate. Additional full or half-depth girders are to be fitted beneath the inner bottom in way of machinery and thrust seatings and beneath wide-spaced pillars.

Where the bottom and inner bottom are both longitudinally framed, this requirement may be accordingly modified.

5 Solid Floors

5.1 General *(2024)*

Solid floors (see [FIGURE 1]) of the thickness obtained from the following equations (and [5.5] where applicable), are to be fitted on every frame (600 mm to 800 mm) under machinery, under the outer ends of bulkhead stiffener brackets and at the forward end (see [15.5] or [15.7] as appropriate). For machinery spaces other than engine rooms and for generators installed in engine room, alternate spacing of the floors in way of machinery may be considered based on detailed structural analysis. Elsewhere, they may have a maximum spacing of 3.66 m (12 ft) in association with intermediate open floors (see [7]), or longitudinal framing of the bottom and/or inner bottom plating. With the latter, the floors are to have stiffeners and/or brackets supporting each longitudinal or an equivalent arrangement is to be provided.

Where boilers are mounted on the tank top, the floors and intercostals in way of the boilers are to have an additional 1.5 mm (0.06 in.) added to their thickness after all other requirements have been satisfied.

$t = 0.036L + 4.7 + c$ mm for $L \leq 427$ m

$t = 0.00043L + 0.185 + c$ in. for $L \leq 1400$ ft

where

t = thickness, in mm (in.), but need not exceed 14 mm (0.55 in.) when floors are fitted at every frame and the buckling strength is proven adequate

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

c = 1.5 mm (0.06 in.) for floors where the bottom shell and inner bottom are longitudinally framed

= 0 mm (0 in.) for side girders and brackets, and for floors where the bottom shell and inner bottom are transversely framed

Commentary:

Thickness increase of the plating is not necessary if the bottom of the boiler is well insulated and no heat radiates to the structural member.

End of Commentary

5.3 Tank-end Floors *(1997)*

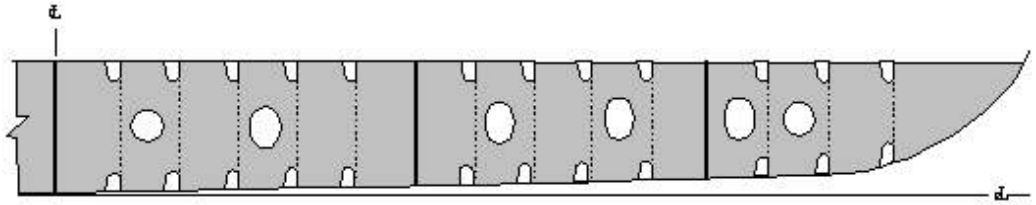
Tank-end floor thickness is to be not less than required for deep tank bulkhead plating or [5.1] , whichever is greater.

5.5 Floor Stiffeners

Stiffeners spaced not more than 1.53 m (5 ft) apart are to be fitted on every solid floor. Where the depth of the double bottom exceeds 0.915 m (3 ft), stiffeners on tank-end floors are to be of the sizes required for stiffeners on deep-tank bulkheads and their spacing is not to exceed 915 mm (36 in.). Stiffeners may be

omitted on non-tight floors with transverse framing, provided the thickness of the floor plate is increased 10% above the thickness obtained from [5.1] .

FIGURE 1
Double-bottom Solid Floors



7 Open Floors

7.1 General

Where solid floors are not fitted on every frame, open floors are to be fitted at each frame between the solid floors as permitted by [5.1] .

7.3 Bottom Shell Frames and Reverse Frames *(2024)*

Each frame and reverse frame similar to that shown in [FIGURE 2] , in association with the plating to which it is attached, is to have a section modulus SM as obtained from the following equation:

$$SM = 7.8chs\ell^2 \text{cm}^3$$

$$SM = 0.0041chs\ell^2 \text{in}^3$$

where

s = spacing of frames, in m (ft)

c = 1.0 without struts

= 0.5 with struts in accordance with [7.7]

h = d_s in m (ft), as defined in 3-1-1/9.3 or 0.67 D_s in m (ft), as defined in 3-1-1/7.3), whichever is greater. For reverse frames without struts, the distance may be measured from the top of the inner bottom. In way of deep tanks, h is the greatest distance from the middle of ℓ to a point located at two-thirds of the distance from the top of the tank to the top of the overflow; a point located above the top of the tank at a distance not less than given in column (e) of 3-2-7/3.1 TABLE 2, appropriate to the vessel's length, whichever is greatest.

ℓ = the greatest distance, in m (ft), between the connecting brackets or intercostals, as shown in [FIGURE 2] . Where effective struts are fitted and the tank top is intended to be uniformly loaded with cargo, ℓ may be taken as 85% of the distance between supports, as determined above.

7.5 Center and Side Brackets

Where fitted, center and side brackets are to overlap the frames and reverse frames for a distance equal to $0.05B$ (see [FIGURE 2]); they are to be of the thickness required for solid floors in the same location (see [5.1] equation with $c = 0$) and are to be flanged or stiffened on their outer edges.

7.7 Struts

Struts fitted on open floor bottom structures are to comply with the following:

i) Struts are not to be of hollow sections in way of tanks;

ii) Struts are to be located at the mid-point of the spans of the bottom/inner bottom stiffeners, where fitted;

iii) Struts are not to be fitted in way where cargo is discharged by grabs, or heavy liquid cargoes are carried, or in the bottom forward slamming area;

The permissible load W_a for struts is to be determined in accordance with 3-2-8/3.1. The calculated load W is to be determined by:

$W = nphs$ kN (tf, Ltf)

where

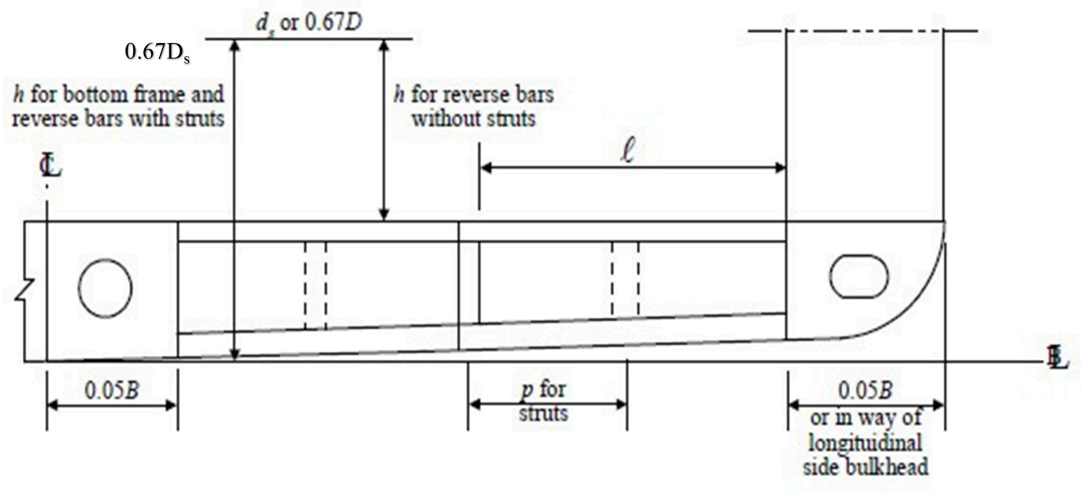
n = 10.5 (1.07, 0.03)

p = distance, in m (ft.), between center of the struts.

s, h are as defined in [7.3] .

Struts are to be positioned so as to divide the span into approximately equal intervals.

FIGURE 2
Double-bottom Open Floors *(2024)*



9 Inner-bottom Plating

9.1 Inner-bottom Plating Thickness *(2024)*

Inner-bottom plating thickness is not to be less than obtained from the following equation or as required by 3-2-10/3.5, or by 3-2-1/17, whichever is the greatest:

$$t = 0.037L + 0.009s - c \text{mm}$$

$$t = 0.000444L + 0.009s - c \text{in.}$$

where

L	=	scantling length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)	
s	=	frame spacing, in mm (in.)	
c	=	c_1	for vessels under 90 m (295 ft) in length
	=	c_2	for vessels 90 m (295 ft) in length and above
c_1	=	–1.5 mm (–0.06 in.)	in engine space
	=	0.5 mm (0.02 in.)	elsewhere
c_2	=	0.5 mm (0.02 in.)	with transverse framing
	=	1.5 mm (0.06 in.)	with longitudinal framing

9.2 Inner-bottom Plating in way of Cargo Holds *(2024)*

In addition to the requirements in [9.1] , the plating thickness of inner bottom on which cargo is carried is not to be less than obtained from the following equations:

$$t = (S\sqrt{h})/254 + 1.5\text{mm}$$

$$t = (S\sqrt{h})/460 + 0.06\text{in.}$$

where

t	=	thickness, in mm (in.)
s	=	beam or longitudinal spacing, in mm (in.)
p	=	uniform loading, in kN/m^2 (kgf/m^2, lbf/ft^2)
h	=	height, in m (ft), as follows:
	=	h_{cs}, in m (ft), the cargo space height at side for double bottoms intended to carry cargoes. Where the cargo load p differs from 7.01 kN/m^3 (715 kgf/m^3, 44.7 lbf/ft^3) multiplied by the cargo space height, the height is to be proportionately adjusted.

9.3 Center Strakes

Center strakes are to have a thickness determined from [9.1] . In way of pipe tunnels, an increase in the thickness of the inner bottom may be required.

9.5 Inner Bottom Plating for Vessels Intended to Use Grabs

For vessels regularly engaged in cargo handling by grabs or similar mechanical appliances, it is recommended that flush inner-bottom plating is to be adopted throughout the cargo space.

The thickness of the inner bottom plating is not to be taken less than t_{g1}, obtained from the following equation:

$$t_{g1} = (0.037L + 0.009s)\sqrt{Q} + 5.5 \text{ mm}$$

$$= (0.000444L + 0.009s)\sqrt{Q} + 0.217 \text{ in.}$$

where

L = length of vessel, in m (ft), as defined in 3-1-1/3.1

s = spacing of inner bottom longitudinals, in mm (in.)

Q is as defined in 3-2-1/5.3.

The thickness of sloping bulkhead plating of lower wing tanks and lower stool plating of transverse bulkheads within a vertical extent of 1.5 m (5 ft) above the inner bottom is not to be taken less than t_{g1} with the actual spacing of the sloping bulkhead and stool stiffeners.

If the vessel is designed to discharge its cargo by a means other than by grabs, or similar mechanical appliances, which would negate the t_{g1} inner bottom thickness requirement, it is to be recorded in the vessel's Loading Manual that grabs, or similar mechanical appliances, are not to be used to discharge cargo.

9.6 Optional Supplementary Requirement for Vessels Intended to Use Grabs *(2024)*

Where the vessel is intended to use a specific weight of grab, the thickness of inner bottom plating may be obtained from the following equation:

$$t_{g2} = k_3\sqrt{W_g \cdot s \cdot Q/s_e} + 2.0 \text{ mm}$$

$$= k_3\sqrt{W_g \cdot s \cdot Q/s_e} + 0.08 \text{ in.}$$

where

k_3 = 4.56 (0.181) where W_g is in tonnes (L tons)

W_g = unladen grab weight (mass), in tonnes (L tons)

s = spacing of inner bottom longitudinals, in mm (in.)

s_e = 1000 mm (39.37 in.) where $W_g \leq 20$ tonnes (19.684 Ltons)

= $1000 + \sqrt{(k_4 W_g - 31.2)10^3 - W_g^2/k_5}$ mm where $W_g > 20$ tonnes

$= 39.37[1 + (\sqrt{k_4 W_g - 31.2)10^3 - W_g^2/k_5})/1000]$in. where $W_g > 19.684$ Ltons

k_4 = 1.58 (1.605) where W_g is in tonnes (Ltons)

k_5 = 1.0 (0.969) where W_g is in tonnes (Ltons)

Q is as defined in 3-2-1/5.3.

The unladen grab weight (mass) used in determining the inner bottom thickness, t_{g2}, is to be recorded in the vessel's Loading Manual. This does not negate the use of heavier grabs, but the owner and operators are to be made aware of the increased risk of local damage and possible early renewal of inner bottom plating if heavier grabs are used regularly to discharge cargo. The optional notation **GRAB [XX tonnes]** placed after the appropriate classification notation in the *Record* will signify that the vessel's inner-bottom has been designed for a specific grab weight, in metric tons.

9.7 Wheel Loading

Where provision is to be made for the operation or stowage of vehicles having rubber tires, and after all other requirements are met, the thickness of the inner bottom plating is to be not less than obtained from 3-2-3/5.17.

9.9 Under Boilers *(2024)*

Refer to 3-2-12/3.3.

9.11 In Way of Engine Bed Plates or Thrust Blocks *(2024)*

Refer to 3-2-12/3.1 and 3-2-12/3.5.

9.13 Margin Plates

Where margin plates are approximately vertical, the plates amidships are to extend for the full depth of the double bottom with a thickness not less than obtained from the equation in [9.1] plus 2.0 mm (0.08 in.). Where approximately horizontal, margin plates may be of the thickness required for tank-top plating at that location.

9.15 Vessels Intended to Carry Steel Coils *(2019)*

Where the vessel is intended to carry steel coils in holds, inner bottom plating thickness and section modulus, SM, of the inner bottom longitudinals are to be not less than that obtained from the following equations.

9.15.1 Inner Bottom Plating *(2024)*

$$t = 6.5\sqrt{a\phi W_1 Q} + 2.0\text{mm}$$

$$= 0.26\sqrt{a\phi W_1 Q} + 0.08\text{in.}$$

where

a = 1.25 (within 0.4 L amidships)

= 1.25 or $1 + 0.568 k_v \alpha_o$, whichever is greater, (beyond 0.4 L amidships)

α_o = acceleration factor

= $k_o(2.4/L^{1/2} + 34/L - 600/L^2)$ for L in m

= $k_o(4.347/L^{1/2} + 111.55/L - 6458/L^2)$ for L in ft

k_o = $0.86 + 0.048V - 0.47C_b$

C_b = block coefficient as defined in 3-1-1/13.3

V = 75% of the design speed, V_d, in knots. V is not to be taken less than 10 knots. V_d is defined in 3-2-14/3.

k_v = $\left[1 + 0.65(5.3 - 45/L)^2(x/L - 0.45)^2\right]^{1/2}$ for L in m

= $\left[1 + 0.65(5.3 - 147.6/L)^2(x/L - 0.45)^2\right]^{1/2}$ for L in ft

W_1 = Wmn_1/n

W = weight (mass) of one steel coil, in tonnes (L tons)

n_1 = number of tiers of steel coils

n = number of dunnages supporting one steel coil

m = parameter as given in [TABLE 1], as a function of n and ℓ/s_f

β = parameter as given in [TABLE 1], as a function of n and ℓ/s_f

ℓ = length of one steel coil, in m (ft)

s_f = floor spacing at the location being consideration, in m (ft)

ϕ = $\dfrac{\alpha\delta - \delta^2 - 0.25\alpha^2(1-\beta)^2}{\alpha\beta(1 + 2\alpha\delta)}$

δ = $0.5\left[\sqrt{1 + 2\alpha^2 + \alpha^4(1-\beta)^2} - 1\right]/\alpha$

α = aspect ratio of the inner bottom plating panel, (between floors and longitudinal stiffeners); α is not to be taken more than 3.0 .

Q = as defined in 3-2-1/5.5

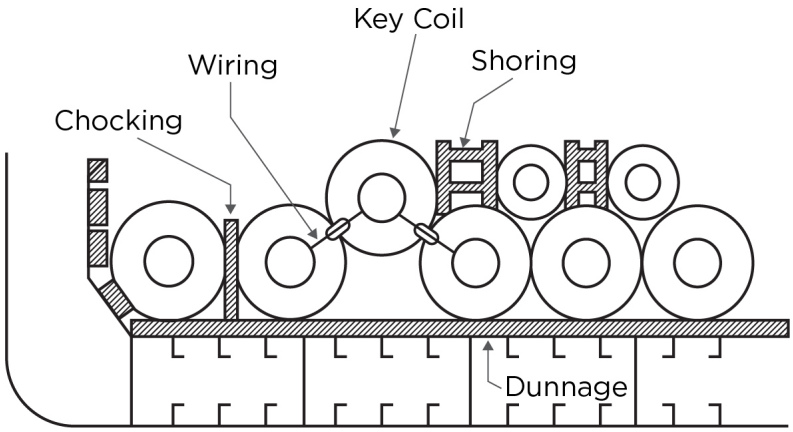
The above equation is applicable for normal loading arrangements where steel coils are stowed on dunnage laid athwartships, with the steel coils' axes in fore-and-aft direction and the inner bottom is longitudinally framed (see [FIGURE 2A]). Other loading arrangements of steel coils will be specially considered.

TABLE 1

n	ℓ/s_f	m	β
2	$0.83 \le \ell/s_f$	2	$0.5\ell/s_f$
2	$0.60 \le \ell/s_f < 0.83$	3	$1.2\ell/s_f$
2	$0.42 \le \ell/s_f < 0.60$	4	$1.65\ell/s_f$
2	$0.30 \le \ell/s_f < 0.42$	5	$2.35\ell/s_f$
3	$0.83 \le \ell/s_f$	3	$0.65\ell/s_f$
3	$0.65 \le \ell/s_f < 0.83$	4	$1.2\ell/s_f$

n	ℓ/s_f	m	β
3	$0.52 \le \ell/s_f < 0.65$	5	$1.53\ell/s_f$
4	$0.83 \le \ell/s_f$	4	$0.75\ell/s_f$
4	$0.65 \le \ell/s_f < 0.83$	5	$1.2\ell/s_f$

FIGURE 2A
Stowage of Steel Coils *(2024)*



9.15.2 Inner Bottom Longitudinals *(2024)*

$SM = M/f_b \text{cm}^3 \left(\text{in}^3\right)$

where

M = maximum bending moment at the longitudinal, in kgf-cm (lbf-in), obtained with the assumption that the longitudinal is a fixed-fixed beam at floors. The longitudinal should be loaded with concentrated loads $P = 0.8aWn_1/n$ at the position of dunnages, where W, a, n_1, n are as defined in [9.15.1] (see [FIGURE 2B]). The span of the longitudinal is to be defined in [11.3] .

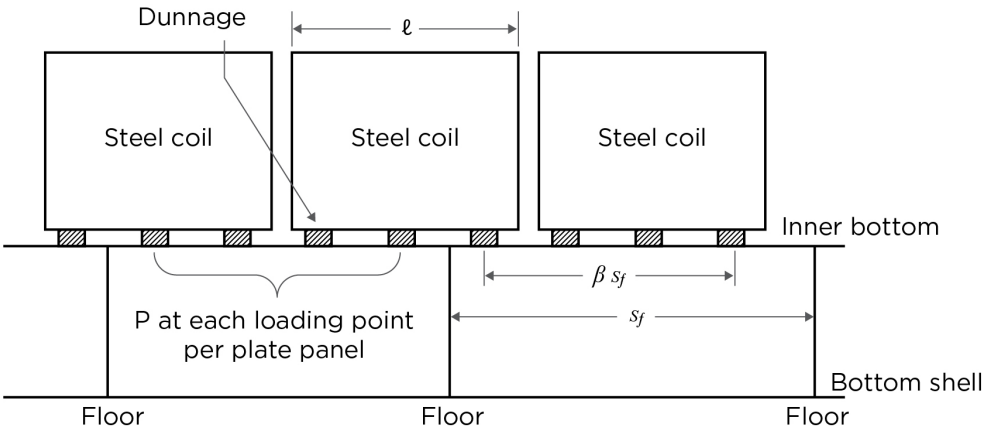
f_b = $1330/Q\,(18840/Q)$ for longitudinal frames (within 0.4 L amidships)

= $1530/Q\,(21675/Q)$ for longitudinal frames (within 0.2 L from the ends of L)

between 0.3 L and 0.2 L from the ends of L, f_b is to be obtained by linear interpolation

Q = as defined in 3-2-1/5.3

FIGURE 2B
Position of Dunnage *(2024)*



11 Bottom and Inner-bottom Longitudinals

11.1 General

Bottom and inner-bottom longitudinals for vessels of more than 90 meters (295 feet) in length are to be continuous [see 3-2-1/3.7.1(c)] or attached at their ends to effectively develop their sectional area and their resistance to bending.

11.3 Bottom Longitudinals *(2024)*

Each bottom longitudinal frame similar to that shown in [FIGURE 3] , in association with the plating to which it is attached, is to have a section modulus SM not less than that obtained from the following equation:

$$SM = 7.8chs\ell^2 \text{cm}^3$$

$$SM = 0.0041chs\ell^2 \text{in}^3$$

where

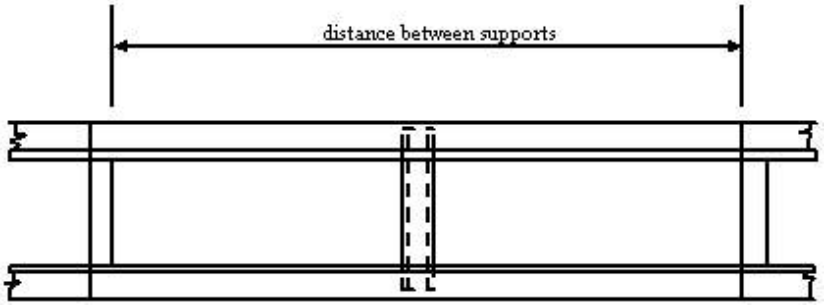
c = 1.3 without struts
= 0.715 with effective struts

h = d_s in m (ft), as defined in 3-1-1/9.3, or 0.67 D_s in m (ft), as defined in 3-1-1/7.3, whichever is greater.

s = spacing of longitudinals, in m (ft)

ℓ = distance, in m (ft), between the supports, but is not to be taken as less than 1.83 m (6 ft) without struts or 2.44 m (8 ft) with struts. Where effective struts are fitted and the tank top is intended to be uniformly loaded with cargo, ℓ is not to be taken as less than 85% of the distance between supports subject to above minimum.

FIGURE 3
Longitudinal Frame



The section modulus SM of the bottom longitudinals is not to be less than obtained from the above equations multiplied by the factor R_ℓ where,

i) The actual bottom hull girder section modulus SM_A is greater than required by 3-2-1/3.7.1, at least throughout $0.4L$ amidships,

ii) Still-water bending moment calculations are submitted, and

iii) Adequate buckling strength is maintained.

$R_\ell = n/[n + f_p(1–SM_R/SM_A)]$ but is not to be taken less than 0.69

where

n = 8.278 (0.852, 5.36)

f_p = 17.5 kN/cm^2 (1.784 tf/cm^2, 11.33 Ltf/in^2)

SM_R = required hull girder section modulus required by 3-2-1/3.7.1, in cm^2-m (in^2-ft)

SM_A = actual bottom hull girder section modulus, in cm^2-m (in^2-ft)

Bottom longitudinals, with this modified section modulus, are to meet all other Rule requirements including side longitudinals in 3-2-5/3.17.

11.5 Inner-bottom Longitudinals *(2024)*

Inner-bottom longitudinals are to have values of SM at least 85% of that required in [11.3] for the bottom longitudinals.

In way of tanks, inner-bottom longitudinals are also to have strength not less than that required by Section 3-2-10. In cargo holds where the inner bottom is intended to carry cargo, the section modulus of inner-bottom longitudinals, in association with the platingto which it is attached, is not to be less than that obtained from the following equations in addition to the above requirements:

$SM = 7.8chs\ell^2\text{cm}^3$

$SM = 0.0041chs\ell^2\text{in}^3$

where

c = c_1 for vessels under 90 m (295 ft) in length

= c_2 for vessels 90 m (295 ft) in length and above

c_1 = 0.60 for transverse beams

= $1/(1.709 - 0.651k)$ for longitudinals

c_2 = 0.54 for transverse beams between longitudinal bulkheads

= 0.585 for other transverse beams.

= $1/(1.709 - 0.651k)$ for longitudinals.

k = SM_RY/I_A

SM_R = required hull girder section modulus amidships in 3-2-1/3.7.1 or 3-2-1/5.3, whichever is applicable, in cm^2-m (in^2-ft)

Y = distance, in m (ft), from the neutral axis to the inner bottom longitudinal considered, always to be taken positive

I_A = hull girder moment of inertia of the vessel amidships, in cm^2-m^2 (in^2-ft^2)

The values of I_A and Y are to be those obtained using the area of the longitudinal beams given by the above equation.

s = spacing of beams, in m (ft.)

ℓ = distance, in m (ft), from the beam knee to the nearest line of support or between supports, whichever is greater.

p = cargo uniform loading, in kN/m^2 (kgf/m^2, lbf/ft^2)

h = height, in m (ft), as follows:

= h_{cs}, in m (ft), the cargo space height at side for double bottoms intended to carry cargoes. Where the cargo load p differs from 7.01 kN/m^3 (715 kgf/m^3, 44.7 lbf/ft^3) multiplied by the cargo space height, the height is to be proportionately adjusted.

12 Single Bottoms with Floors and Keelsons *(2022)*

12.1 General

For vessels under 90 m (295 ft) in length, where double bottom construction is not required by [1.2] or is not applied, single bottom construction is to be in accordance with this Subsection or [13], as may be applicable.

12.3 Center Keelsons

Single-bottom vessels are to have center keelsons formed of continuous or intercostal center girder plates with horizontal top plates. The thickness of the keelson and the area of the horizontal top plate are to be not less than that obtained from the following equations. Vessels less than 30.5 m (100 ft) in length will be subject to special consideration. Tapering of the horizontal top plate area at the ends is not normally considered for vessels less than 30.5 m (100 ft) in length. The keelsons are to extend as far forward and aft as practicable.

12.3.1 Center-girder Plate Thickness Amidships

$t = 0.063L + 5$ mm

$t = 0.00075L + 0.2$ in.

12.3.2 Center-girder Plates Thickness at Ends

t = 85% of center keelson thickness amidships

12.3.3 Horizontal Top-plate Area Amidships

$A = 0.168L^{3/2} - 8$ cm^2

$A = 0.0044L^{3/2} - 1.25$ in^2

12.3.4 Horizontal Top-Plate Area at Ends [L ≥ 30.5 m (100 ft)]

$A = 0.127L^{3/2} - 1$ cm^2

$A = 0.0033L^{3/2} - 0.15$ in^2

where

t = thickness of center-girder plate, in mm (in.)

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

A = area of horizontal top plate, in cm^2 (in^2)

12.5 Side Keelsons

Side keelsons are to be arranged so that there are not more than 2.13 m (7 ft) from the center keelson to the inner side keelson, from keelson to keelson and from the outer keelson to the lower turn of bilge. Forward of the midship one-half length, the spacing of keelsons on the flat of floor is not to exceed 915 mm (36 in.). Side keelsons are to be formed of continuous rider plates on top of the floors. They are to be connected to the shell plating by intercostal plates. The intercostal plates are to be attached to the floor plates. In the engine space, the intercostal plates are to be of not less thickness than the center girder plates. The scantlings of the side keelsons are to be obtained from the following equations but need not exceed [12.3], if that be less.

12.5.1 Side Keelson and Intercostal Thickness Amidships

$t = 0.063L + 4$ mm

$t = 0.00075L + 0.16$ in.

12.5.2 Side Keelson and Intercostal Thickness at Ends

t = 85% of center thickness amidships

12.5.3 Side Keelson and Intercostal, Horizontal Top Plate Area Amidships

$A = 0.038L^{3/2} + 17$ cm^2

$A = 0.001L^{3/2} + 2.6$ in^2

12.5.4 Side Keelson and Intercostal, Horizontal Top Plate Area at Ends

$A = 0.025L^{3/2} + 20$ cm^2

$A = 0.00065L^{3/2} + 3.1$ in^2

t, L and A are as defined in [12.3].

12.7 Floors

12.7.1 Section Modulus

With transverse framing, a floor as shown in [FIGURE 4] is to be fitted on every frame and is to be of the scantlings necessary to obtain a section modulus, *SM,* not less than that obtained from the following equation:

$$SM = 7.8chs\ell^2 \text{ cm}^3$$

$$SM = 0.0041chs\ell^2 \text{ in}^3$$

where

c = 0.55

h = draft, d_s, in m (ft), as defined in section 3-1-1/9.3, but not to be less than 0.66D or 0.066L, whichever is greater.

s = floor spacing, in m (ft)

ℓ = span, in m (ft). Where brackets are fitted in accordance with 3-1-2/15.1 and are supported by bulkheads, inner bottom or side shell, the length, ℓ, may be measured as permitted therein.

The section modulus may be calculated at the centerline of the vessel, provided the rise of floor is such that the depth at the toe of brackets is not less than one-half of the depth at the centerline. The above requirements are limited to cargo holds where cargoes of specific gravity 0.715 or less are uniformly loaded. In way of engine room and in the forward 0.2L, the floor face bar area is to be doubled.

12.7.2 Depth

The minimum depth of floors at centerline is not to be less than that obtained from the following equation:

$$h_f = 62.5\ell \text{ mm}$$

$$h_f = 0.75\ell \text{ in.}$$

where

h_f = floor depth, in mm (in.)

ℓ = unsupported span of floors, in m (ft). Where brackets are fitted in accordance with 3-1-2/15.1, the length, ℓ, may be measured as permitted therein.

12.7.3 Thickness

The minimum thickness of floors is not to be less than that obtained from the following equation:

$$t = 0.01h_f + 3 \text{ mm}$$

$$t = 0.01h_f + 0.12 \text{ in.}$$

where

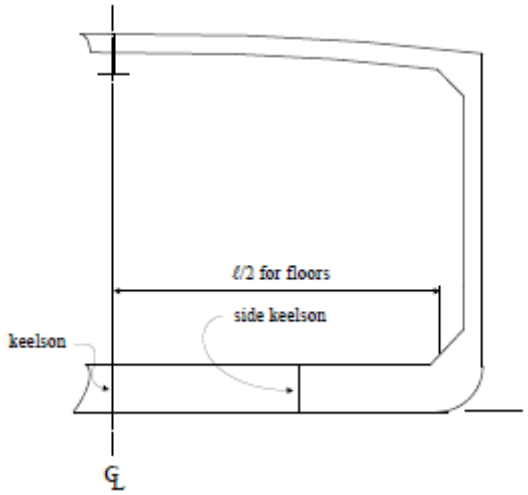
t = floor thickness, in mm (in.)

h = floor depth, in mm (in.)

f

Floors under engine girders are to be not less in thickness than the thickness required for keelsons.

FIGURE 4
Plate Floors



13 Single Bottoms with Longitudinal or Transverse Frames

13.1 General

Where longitudinal frames supported by bottom transverses or transverse frames supported by longitudinal girders and bottom transverses are proposed for a vessel not complying with SOLAS, the construction is to be in accordance with this Subsection. Frames are not to have less strength than is required for watertight bulkhead stiffeners or girders in the same location in association with head to the bulkhead deck. In way of deep tanks, frames are not to have less strength than is required for stiffeners or girders on deep tank bulkheads. See [FIGURE 5] , [FIGURE 6] and [FIGURE 7] .

FIGURE 5
Round Bottom Floors with Deadrise *(2024)*

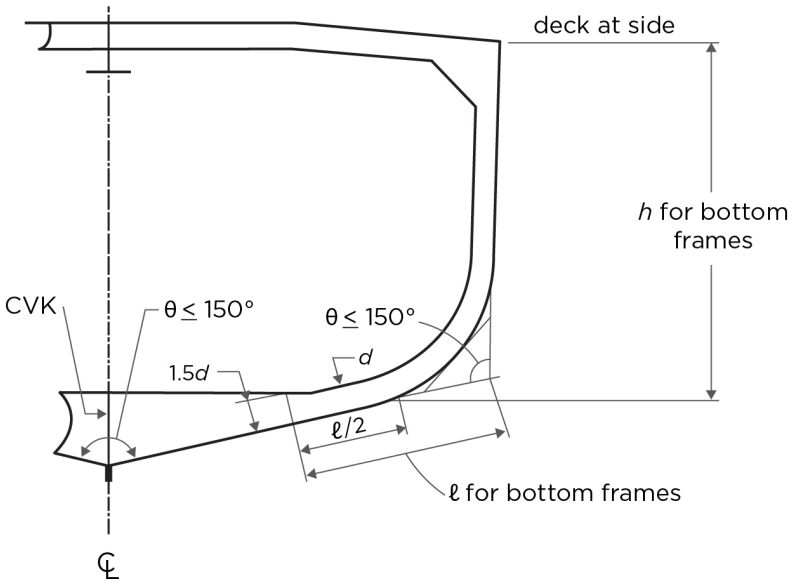


FIGURE 6
Transverse Bottom Frames with Longitudinal Side Girders

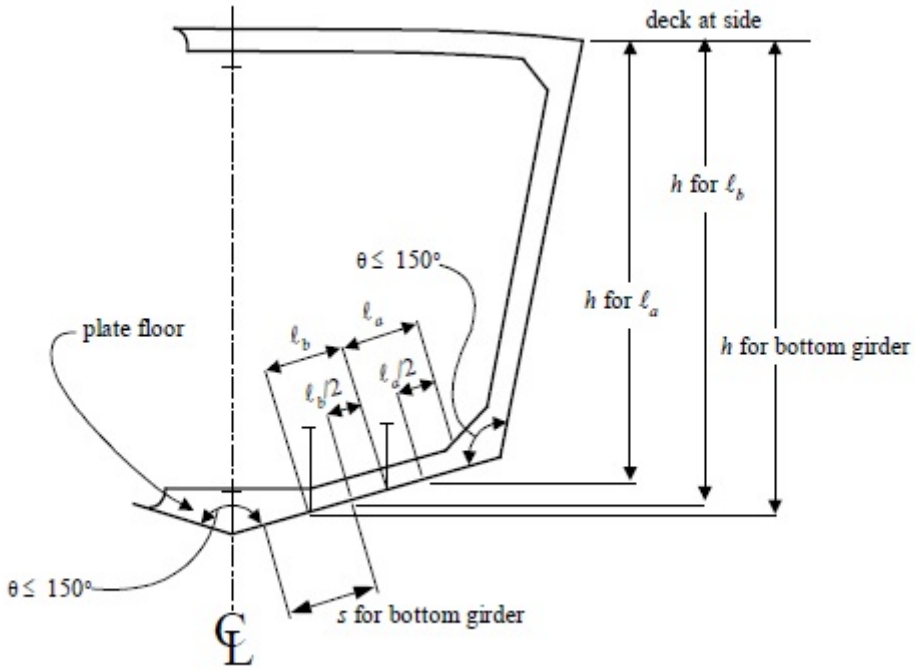
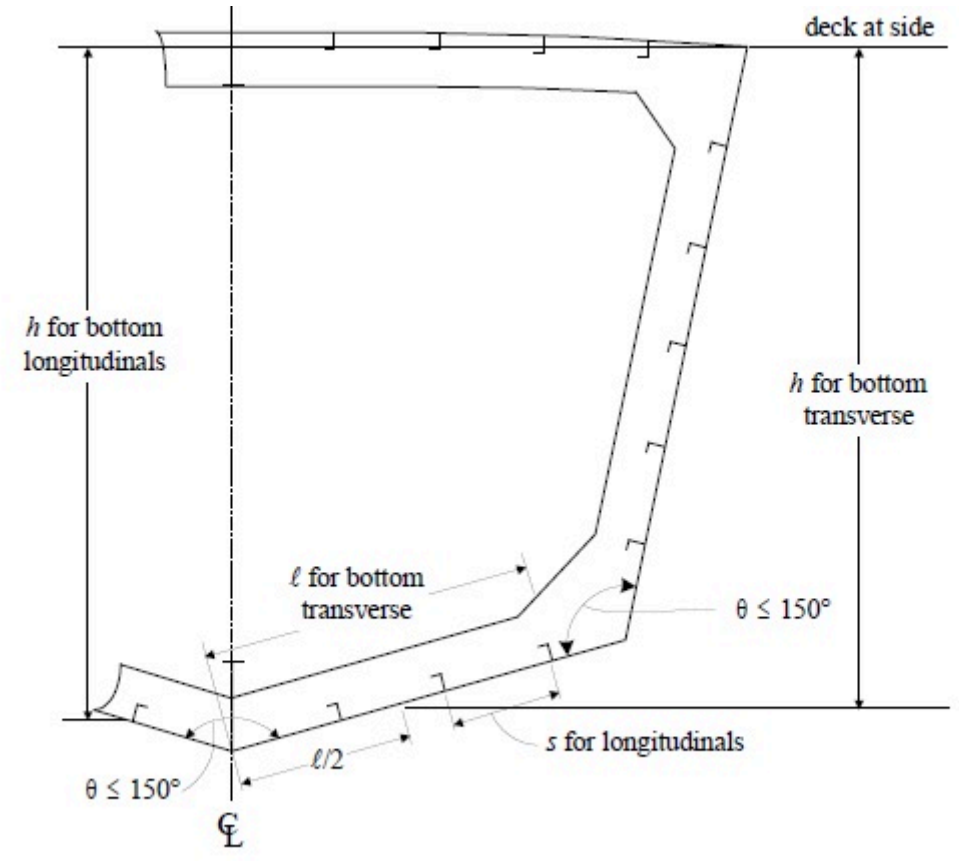


FIGURE 7
Longitudinal Frames with Transverse Webs



13.3 Bottom Girders and Transverses

13.3.1 Section Modulus

The section modulus, SM, of each bottom girder and transverse, where intended as a primary supporting member, in association with the plating to which it is attached, is not to be less than that obtained from the following equation:

$$SM = 7.8chs\ell^2 \text{cm}^3$$

$$SM = 0.0041chs\ell^2 \text{in}^3$$

where

c = 0.915

h = vertical distance, in m (ft), from the center of area supported to the deck at side

s = spacing, in m (ft)

ℓ = unsupported span, in m (ft).

Tripping brackets are to be fitted at intervals of about 3 m (10 ft) and stiffeners are to be fitted as may be required.

13.3.2 Depth

The minimum depth of the girder or transverse is to be not less than 2.5 times the depth of the cutouts for bottom frames, unless effective compensation for cutouts is provided, nor less than that obtained from the following equation:

$$h_w = 145\ell \text{mm}$$

$$h_w = 1.75\ell \text{in.}$$

where

h_w = girder or transverse depth, in mm (in.)

ℓ is defined in [13.3.1].

13.3.3 Thickness

The minimum thickness of the web is to be not less than that obtained from the following equation:

$$t = 0.01h_w + 3\text{mm}$$

$$t = 0.01h_w + 0.12\text{in.}$$

where

t = floor thickness, in mm (in.)

h_w is as given in [13.3.2].

13.3.4 Non-prismatic Members *(2024)*

Where the cross sectional properties of the member is not constant throughout the length of the girders or transverses, a beam analysis with varied cross section properties may be performed for the strength with particular attention being paid to the shearing forces at the ends.

13.5 Center Girder *(2024)*

A center girder is to be fitted, complying with [13.3]; however, alternative arrangements that provide suitable support for docking will be considered.

Commentary:

The center girder not only supports the docking loads, but also contributes to hull girder longitudinal strength and the strength of bottom grillage structures. Proposed alternative arrangements should address all these factors.

End of Commentary

13.7 Frames

The section modulus, *SM*, of each bottom frame to the chine or upper turn of bilge, in association with the plating to which it is attached, is not to be less than that obtained from the following equation:

$$SM = C_f chs\ell^2 \text{cm}^3 \ (\text{in}^3)$$

where

C_f	=	7.8 (0.0041)	for SM in cm^3 (in^3)
c	=	0.80	for transverse frames clear of tanks
	=	1.00	for longitudinal frames clear of tanks, and in way of tanks
	=	1.00	for transverse frames in way of tanks
s	=	frame spacing in, m (ft)	
ℓ	=	unsupported span, in m (ft)	
h	=	vertical distance, in m (ft), from the middle of ℓ to the deck at side. In way of a deep tank, h is the greatest of the distances, in m (ft), from the middle of ℓ to a point located at two-thirds of the distance from the top of the tank to the top of the overflow, a point located above the top of the tank not less than 0.01 L + 0.15 m (0.01 L + 0.5 ft) or 0.46 m (1.5 ft), whichever is greatest.	

L is as defined in 3-1-1/3.

15 Fore-end Strengthening

15.1 General *(2022)*

For all OSVs and other vessels 61 m (200 ft) in length and over, where the heavy weather ballast draft forward is less than $0.04L$ m (ft), strengthening of the flat of bottom forward is to be in accordance with [15.3], [15.5], [15.7] and 3-2-2/5.5. Information on the heavy weather ballast draft forward used for the required fore-end strengthening is to be indicated on the shell expansion plan submitted for approval, as well as furnished to the vessel for the Master's guidance.

15.3 Extent of Strengthening *(2024)*

The flat of bottom forward is defined as being forward of the locations indicated in [TABLE 1A]. Aft of these locations, a suitable transition is to be obtained between the increased scantlings and structural arrangements of the flat of bottom forward and the structure aft of the locations given in [TABLE 1A].

15.5 Longitudinal Framing *(2024)*

When longitudinal framing is used for the bottom and inner bottom, longitudinals and side girders are to be continued as far forward as practicable at not more than their amidship spacing. The section modulus of flat bottom longitudinals forward of the location indicated in [TABLE 1A] is to be not less than required by the following equation, nor less than required by [11.3].

$$SM = 8.47(0.005L^2 – 1.3d_f^2)s\ell^2/d_f \text{cm}^3$$

$$SM = 0.0044(0.005L^2 – 1.3d_f^2)s\ell^2/d_f \text{in}^3$$

where

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft), but need not be taken as greater than 214 m (702 ft)

d_f = heavy weather ballast draft at the forward perpendicular, in m (ft)

= $d_f \times 214/L$ m ($d_f \times 702/L$ ft), where L > 214 m (702 ft)

s = spacing of longitudinals, in m (ft)

ℓ = distance between floors, in m (ft)

The spacing of floors in the forward $0.25L$ is not to be greater than that given in [TABLE 2] , nor greater than the spacing amidships.

15.7 Transverse Framing

15.7.1 Offshore Support Vessels

Where the heavy weather ballast draft forward is less than $0.04L$ m (ft.), solid floors are to be fitted on every frame, and additional full-depth and half-depth side girders are to be introduced so, that the spacing of full-depth girders forward of the location in [TABLE 1A] does not exceed 2.44 m (8 ft) and that the spacing of alternating half and full-depth girders forward of the location in [TABLE 1A] does not exceed 1.22 m (4 ft).

TABLE 1A
Extent of Strengthening

C_b	*Location Forward of Amidships*
$0.6 \le C_b < 0.8$	$0.25(C_b + 0.4)L$
$C_b \ge 0.8$	$0.30L$

C_b is the block coefficient as defined in 3-1-1/13.3.

Where the draft forward is 0.04L m (ft) or more, the arrangement of solid floors and side girders may be in accordance with [3.7] and [5] .

15.7.2 Other Steel Vessels *(2024)*

Where the heavy ballast draft forward is less than 0.04L m (ft), solid floors are to be fitted on every frame, and additional full-depth and half-depth side girders are to be introduced so that the spacing of full-depth girders forward of the location in [TABLE 1A] does not exceed 2.13 m (7 ft) and that the spacing of alternating half and full-depth girders forward of the location in [TABLE 1A] does not exceed 1.07 m (3.5 ft). Where the heavy ballast draft forward is 0.04L m (ft) or more, the arrangement of side girders and solid floors may be in accordance with [3.7] and [5] .

TABLE 2
Spacing of Floors

d_f (1, 3)	C_b	*From* $0.25L$ *to* $0.3L$ *from amidships*	*Forward of* $0.3L$ *from amidships*
$0.02L$ and less	0.60 or less	$3s$ (2)	$2s$ (2)
	greater than 0.60	$3s$ (2)	$3s$ (2)
$0.035L$	all values	$3s$ (2)	$3s$ (2)
$0.04L$ and more	all values	As required elsewhere in the Rules	

Notes:

1 d_f is the heavy ballast draft, in m (ft), at the forward perpendicular and C_b is the block coefficient at the summer load waterline, based on L as defined in 3-1-1/3.1.

2 s is the spacing of transverse side frames, or the spacing of longitudinally framed side shell.

3 For values of d_f between $0.02L$, $0.035L$ and $0.04L$ m (ft.), the floor spacing may be obtained by interpolation.

17 Higher-strength Materials

17.1 General *(2022)*

Applications of higher-strength materials for bottom structures are to meet the requirements of this Section, but may be modified as permitted by the following paragraphs. Care is to be taken to avoid reducing thickness of material such as might be subject to damage during normal operation. Longitudinal framing members are to be of essentially the same material as the plating they support.

Proposed applications of higher-strength material for bottom structures are to be accompanied by submission of calculations in support of adequate strength of longitudinals and plating against buckling.

17.3 Inner-bottom Plating *(2024)*

Inner-bottom plating, where constructed of higher-strength material and where longitudinally framed, is to be not less in thickness than required by [9.1] or 3-2-10/3.5 as modified by the following equation.

$$t_{hts} = [t_{ms} – C][(Q + 2\sqrt{Q})/3] + C$$

where

t_{hts} = thickness of higher-strength material, in mm (in.)

t_{ms} = thickness of mild steel, as required by [9.1] or 3-2-10/3.5, in mm (in.), increased where required by [9.1] for no ceiling

C = 3 mm (0.12 in.)

= 5 mm (0.20 in.) where the plating is required by [9.1] to be increased for no ceiling

Q = as defined in 3-2-1/5.3

The thickness of inner-bottom plating, where transversely framed is to be a thickness not less than that modified in equation above. In addition, it is to be not less than the thickness for buckling strength as required by 3-2-1/17, where applicable.

Where cargo is handled by grabs, or similar mechanical appliances, the recommendations of [9.5] are applicable to t_{hts}.

17.5 Bottom and Inner-bottom Longitudinals

The section modulus of bottom and inner-bottom longitudinals, where constructed of higher-strength material and in association with the higher-strength plating to which they are attached, is to be determined as indicated in [11.3] and [11.5], except that the value may be reduced by the factor Q as defined in 3-2-1/5.3.

17.7 Center Girders, Side Girders, and Floors

Center girders, side girders, and floors, where constructed of higher-strength materials, are to comply with the requirements of [3] or [5] but may be modified, as permitted, by the following equation.

$$t_{hts} = [t_{ms} - 3]\left[(Q + 2\sqrt{Q})/3\right] + 3\text{mm}$$

$$t_{hts} = [t_{ms} - 0.12]\left[(Q + 2\sqrt{Q})/3\right] + 0.12\text{in.}$$

where t_{hts}, t_{ms}, are as defined in [17.3] and Q is as defined in 3-2-1/5.3.

19 Structural Arrangements and Details

19.1 Structural Sea Chests *(2024)*

In addition to the requirements of [1] and [9], where the inner-bottom or the double-bottom structure form part of a sea chest, the thickness of the plating is to be not less than:

$t = 0.0455L + 0.009s\text{mm}$ for $L < 90\text{m}$
$t = 0.035(L + 29) + 0.009s\text{mm}$ for $90 \le L \le 305\text{m}$
$t = (11.70 + 0.009s)\sqrt{D/35}\text{mm}$ for $305 < L \le 427\text{m}$
$t = 0.000545L + 0.009s\text{in.}$ for $L < 295\text{ft}$
$t = 0.00042(L + 95) + 0.009s\text{in.}$ for $295 \le L \le 1000\text{ft}$
$t = (0.46 + 0.009s)\sqrt{D/114.8}\text{in.}$ for $1000 < L \le 1400\text{ft}$

where

s = the maximum unsupported width of sea chest plating, in mm (in.)
L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)
D = molded depth, in m (ft), as defined in 3-1-1/7.1 or 35 m (114.8 ft), whichever is greater

The thickness need not exceed that required in 3-2-2/3.9 for side shell and 3-2-2/3.15 for bottom shell, as appropriate.

Where connections between shell and grating employ welding joints with lug plates instead of hinge joints, a partial or full penetration weld is required. Stiffeners attached to the shell in way of sea chest openings are to be connected at their ends.

19.3 Drainage *(2024)*

Drain wells are to be provided for draining water that may accumulate on the inner bottom and are to be so arranged as to comply with 4-6-4/5. For such purpose, small wells may be constructed in the double bottom, but are not to extend downward more than necessary. For vessels other than tankers, the vertical distance from the bottom of such a drain well to a plane coinciding with the keel line is not be less than 0.5h (h is the required depth of the double bottom specified in [1.2.ii.]) or 500 mm (19.7 in.), whichever is greater, or equivalent protection is to be shown by demonstrating that the ship is capable of withstanding bottom damages as specified in Regulation II-1/9.8 of SOLAS.

Commentary:

- For vessels other than tankers, the requirements of small wells in double bottom are based on SOLAS Reg.II-1/9.3.1. For other wells (e.g., for lubricating oil under main engines), SOLAS Reg. II-1/9.3.2 should be complied with.
- For oil tankers, it should comply with the requirements of MARPOL Annex I/Reg.19.5 for suction wells in cargo tanks and MARPOL Annex I/Reg.22 in association with the Interpretation 49.3 for bilge wells in a cargo pump-room, where applicable.
- For liquified gas carriers, suction wells in cargo tanks should comply with the requirements of Chapter 2, 2.4.3 of the IGC Code.
- For chemical carriers, suction wells in cargo tanks should comply with the requirements of Chapter 2, 2.6.2 of the IBC Code.

End of Commentary

Plating forming drain wells, except for those in the engine room, is to be at least 2.5 mm (0.10 in.) greater than is otherwise required at that location unless corrosion-resistant material is used or special protective coatings are applied. Steel striking plates or other approved arrangements are to be provided in way of sounding pipes to prevent damage by the sounding rods.

19.5 Manholes and Lightening Holes *(2024)*

Manholes and lightening holes are to be cut in all non-tight members, except in way of widely spaced pillars and those aligned with bulkhead vertical web brackets above, to provide accessibility and ventilation. The proposed locations and sizes of holes are to be indicated on the plans submitted for approval. For oil tankers of 500 gross tonnage and over and bulk carriers of 20,000 gross tonnage and over, the access to and within spaces in and forward of the cargo area are to be provided in accordance with Regulation II-1/3-6 of SOLAS. For liquefied gas carriers, chemical carriers or offshore support vessels to which IMO Res.A.673(16) as amended is to be applied, the requirements of [5C-8-3/5] , [5C-9-3/4] or 5D-2-3/3 are to be complied with. respectively. for access to spaces in the cargo area.

Manholes in tank tops are to be provided for free ventilation and ready access to all parts of the double bottom. Care is to be taken in locating the manholes to avoid the possibility of interconnection of the main subdivision compartments through the double bottom, insofar as practicable.

Covers are to be of steel or equivalent material, and where no ceiling is fitted in the cargo holds, they are to be effectively protected from damage by the cargo.

19.7 Air and Drainage Holes *(2024)*

Air and drainage holes are to be cut in all parts of the structure to provide free escape of air to the vents and free drainage of liquids to the suction pipes.

Commentary:

It is recommended that air notches have a radius of not less than 25 mm (1 in.) and drainage scallops a radius of not less than 35 mm (1.4 in.)

End of Commentary

19.9 Fixed Ballast

See 7-A1-4/25 of the ABS *Rules for Survey After Construction (Part 7)* for requirements for fixed ballast.

21 Machinery Space *(2024)*

See Section 3-2-12 for structures in machinery space.

1 General

1.1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1.1 Goal

Vessels covered in this section are to be designed, constructed, operated and maintained to:

Goal No .	*Goal*
STRU 1	in the intact condition, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU 3	provide protection to persons onboard, the environment and required safety services.
STAB 1	have adequate watertight integrity and restoring energy to prevent capsize in an intact condition.

1.1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above stated goals, the design, construction, installation, and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Structure (STRU)	
STRU FR1	Scantlings are to have sufficient strength to resist failure and excessive deformation associated with buckling and yielding when subjected to the loads anticipated throughout the service life, such as external sea loads, cargo loads, ballast water and any other liquid loads.
STRU FR2	Prevent fatique damage throughout the anticipated design life.
Stability (STAB)	
STAB FR1	Suitable tightness of watertight boundaries is to be provided.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

1.2 Basic Considerations

The required sizes and arrangements of frames are to be in accordance with this Section and as shown in [FIGURE 1] . The equations apply to vessels which have well-rounded lines, normal sheer and bulkhead support not less effective than that specified in Section 3-2-9. Additional stiffness will be required where bulkhead support is less effective, where sheer is excessive or where flat surface areas are large. Frames are not to have less strength than is required for bulkhead stiffeners in the same location in association with heads to the bulkhead deck, and in way of deep tanks they are not to have less strength than is required for stiffeners on deep-tank bulkheads in the same location. Framing sections are to have sufficient thickness and depth in relation to the spans between supports.

1.3 Holes in Frames *(2024)*

The calculated section modulus for frames is based upon the intact section being used. Where it is proposed to cut holes in the outstanding flanges or large openings in the webs of any frame, the net section is to be used in determining the section modulus for the frame, in association with the plating to which it is attached.

Commentary:

Drain holes should not be located in way of high stressed areas of the frame, such as the areas in way of bracket toes. Closely spaced scallops or drain holes (i.e., where the distance between scallops/drain holes is less than twice the width of the holes) should not be fitted within 20% of the frame span measured from the end of the frame.

End of Commentary

1.5 End Connections *(2024)*

At the ends of un-bracketed frames, both the web and the flange are to be welded to the supporting member. At bracketed end connections, continuity of strength is to be maintained at the connection to the bracket and at the connection of the bracket to the supporting member. Welding is to be in accordance with 3-2-19/3 TABLE 1. Where longitudinal frames are not continuous at bulkheads, end connections are to effectively develop their sectional area and resistance to bending. Where a structural member is terminated, structural continuity is to be maintained by a suitable back-up structure, fitted in way of the end connection of frames, or the end connection is to be effectively extended by a bracket or flat bar to an adjacent beam, stiffener, etc. See [FIGURE 1A] .

1.7 Standard and Cant Frame Spacing *(2024)*

The standard frame spacing, S, amidships for vessels with transverse framing, is to be obtained from the following equations. The spacing of cant frames is not to exceed the standard frame spacing. See [FIGURE 1B] .

$S = 2.08L + 438$ mm for $L \leq 270$ m

$S = 1000$ mm for $270 < L \leq 427$ m

$S = 0.025L + 17.25$ in. for $L \leq 890$ ft

$S = 39.5$ in. for $890 < L \leq 1400$ ft

where

S = standard frame spacing, in mm (ft)

L = scantling length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

FIGURE 1
Zones of Framing

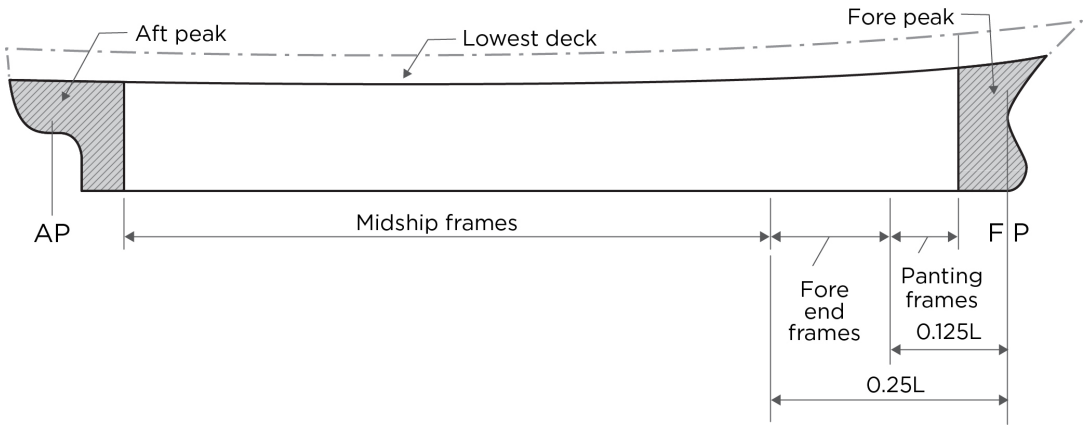


FIGURE 1A
End Connections *(2024)*

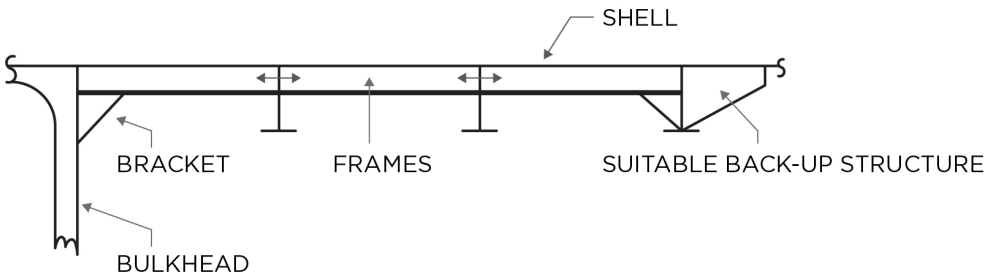
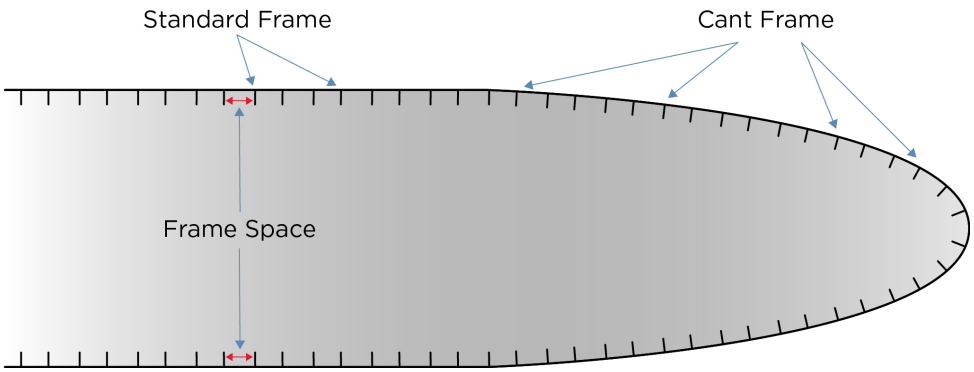


FIGURE 1B
Standard and Cant Frame Spacing *(2024)*



3 Side Frames

3.1 Transverse Frames

3.1.1 Strength Requirement for All OSVs and Other Vessels 90 m (295 ft) in Length and Over *(2024)*

The section modulus SM (*see Note 1*) of each transverse frame located between $0.25L$ aft of the FP and the aft peak bulkhead and below the lowest deck is to be obtained from the following equation, where ℓ is the span in (ft.) as shown in [3.1] between the toes of brackets. The value of ℓ for use with the equation is not to be less than 2.1 m (7 ft).

$$SM = s\ell^2(h + bh_1/C_1)(C_2 + C_3/\ell^3)Q \text{cm}^3 \left(\text{in}^3\right)$$

where

C_1 = 30 (100)

C_2 = 7 (0.0037)

C_3 = 45 (0.8)

s = frame spacing, in m (ft)

h = vertical distance, in m (ft), from the middle of ℓ to the scantling draft line or 0.4ℓ whichever is greater

b = horizontal distance, in m (ft), from the outside of the frames to the first row of deck supports

h_1 = $h_{FB} + h_{C1} + h_{C2} + h_{C3} + \ldots h_{Cn} + h_E + 0.5(h_{P1} + h_{P2} + \ldots h_{Pm})$ (*see Note 2*)

h_{FB} = vertical distance, in m (ft), from the deck at the top of the frame to the bulkhead or freeboard deck

$h_{Ci} \ldots h_{Cn}$ = heights of cargo spaces above the bulkhead/freeboard deck. Where the cargo load differs from 7.01 kN/m^3 (715 kgf/m^3, 44.7 lbf/ft^3) multiplied by the tween deck height in m (ft), the height of that tween deck is to be proportionately adjusted in calculating h_1.

h_E = 3.66 m (12 ft) for an exposed deck intended to carry deck cargoes when uniform loading p does not exceed 25.66 kN/m^2 (2617 kgf/m^2, 536 lbf/ft^2)

= p/7.01 m (p/715 m, p/44.7 ft) for an exposed deck intended to carry deck cargoes when load p exceeds 25.66 kN/m^2 (2617 kgf/m^2, 536 lbf/ft^2)

= 0.0 m, if the exposed deck has no cargo loads

p = uniform cargo load, in kN/m^2 (kgf/m^2, lbf/ft^2)

$h_{Pi} \ldots h_{Pm}$ = heights of accommodation spaces

In cases where there is no exposed deck intended to carry deck cargo located above the frames, the sum $h_{C1} + h_{C2} + h_{C3} + \ldots h_{Cn} + 0.5(h_{P1} + h_{P2} + \ldots h_{Pm})$ is not to be taken as less than 2.44 m (8 ft).

Q is as defined in 3-2-1/5.3.

Notes:

1 Where a frame is subject to special heavy vertical loads, such as may occur at the ends of deep transverse girders which in turn support deck girders, the section modulus is to be suitably increased in proportion to the extra load carried as indicated in this Subparagraph.

2 Where the decks are supported by longitudinal beams in association with wide-spaced deep transverse beams, the value of h_1 for the normal frames between the deep beams may be taken as equal to zero; for the frames in way of the deep beams, the value of h_1 is to be multiplied by the number of frame spaces between the deep transverse beams.

FIGURE 2
Side Frames

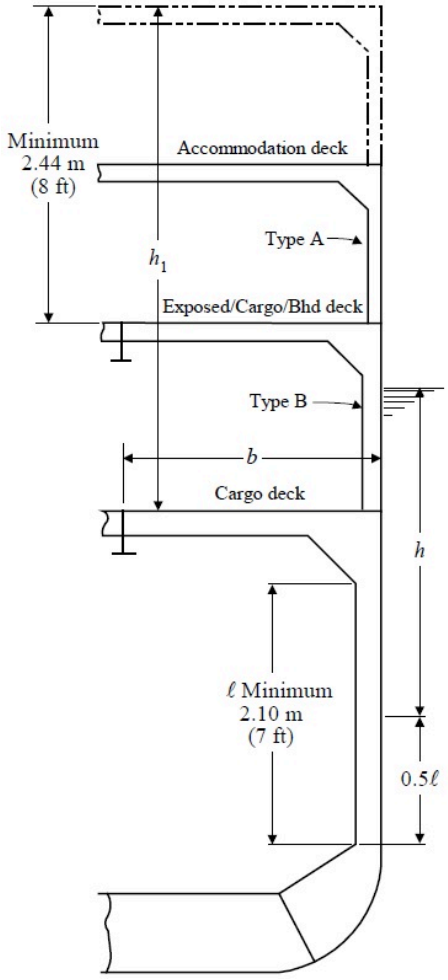


FIGURE 3
Side Frames

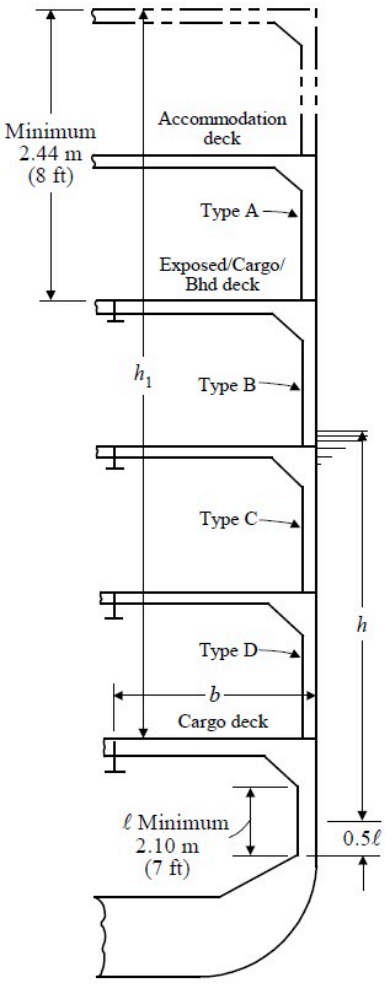
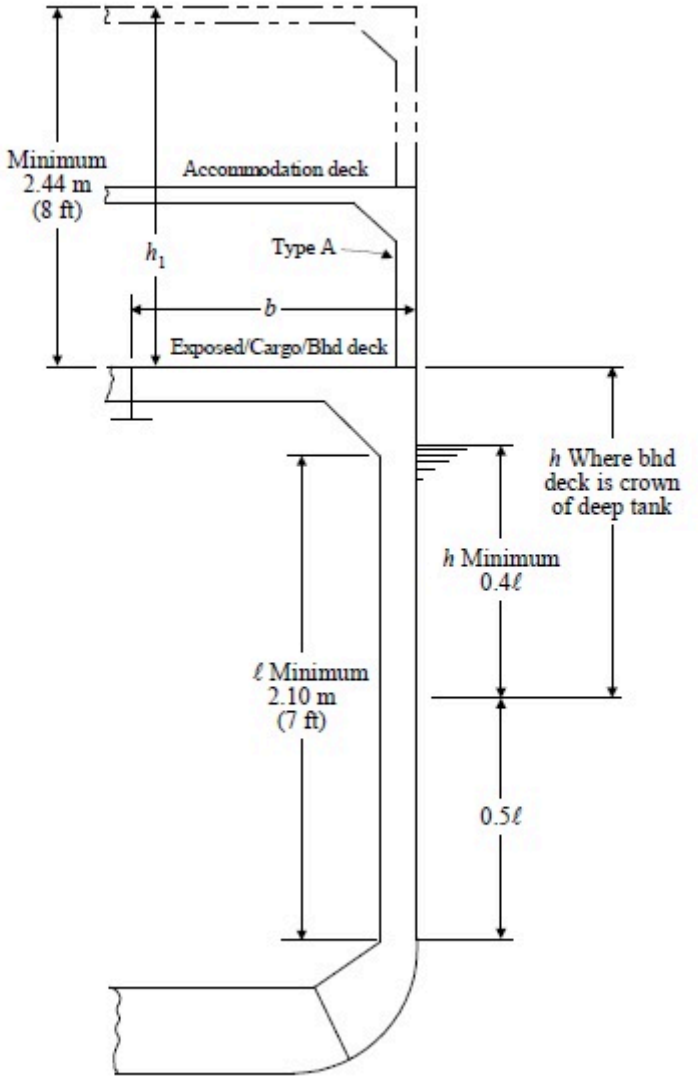


FIGURE 4
Side Frames



3.1.2 Strength Requirement for Vessels under 90 m (295 ft) in Length *(2024)*

The section modulus, SM, of each transverse side frame located between $0.25L$ aft of the FP and the aft peak bulkhead other than tween deck frames above the chine or upper turn of bilge, in association with the plating to which the frame is attached, is not to be less than that obtained from the following equation. See [FIGURE 5] to [FIGURE 7].

$$SM = C_1 chs\ell^2 Q \text{cm}^3 \left(\text{in}^3\right)$$

where

C_1 = 7.8 (0.0041)

c = 0.915 for frames having no tween decks above

= $0.90 + 5.8/\ell^3(0.90 + 205/\ell^3)$ for frames having tween decks above

s = frame spacing, in m (ft)

ℓ = straight-line unsupported span, in m (ft). Where brackets are fitted in accordance with 3-1-2/15.1.iii.) and are supported by decks or inner bottoms, the length ℓ may be measured as permitted therein. Where tween decks are located above the frame, ℓ is to be taken as the length between the toes of the brackets, except where beam knees are fitted on alternate frames, ℓ is to be increased by one half the depth of the beam knees. ℓ is not to be taken less than 2.1 m (7.0 ft).

h = on frames having no tween decks above, the vertical distance, in m (ft), from the mid length of the frame to the freeboard deck at side, but not less than $0.02L + 0.46$ m ($0.02L + 1.5$ ft).

= on frames having tween decks above, the vertical distance, in m (ft), from the middle of ℓ to the load line or 0.4ℓ, whichever is greater, plus $bh_1/33(bh_1/100)$.

b = horizontal distance, in m (ft), from the outside of the frames to the first row of deck beam supports.

h_1 = vertical distance, in m (ft), from the deck at the top of the frame to the bulkhead or freeboard deck plus the height of all cargo tween deck spaces above the bulkhead or freeboard deck plus one-half the height of all passenger spaces above the bulkhead or freeboard deck, or plus 2.44 m (8 ft), if that is greater. Where the cargo load differs from 715 kgf/m^3 (45 lbf/ft^3), the height of that tween deck is to be adjusted accordingly in calculating h_1.

Q is as defined in 3-2-1/5.3.

FIGURE 5
Transverse Side Frame

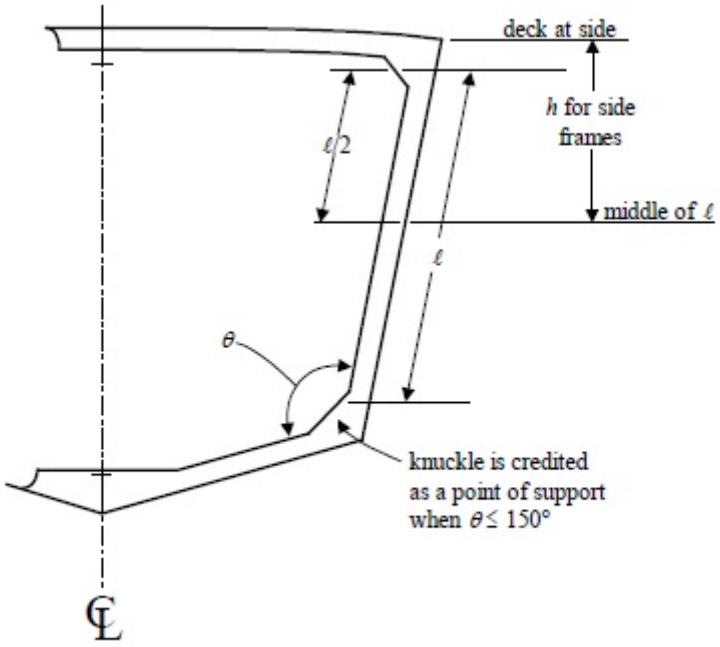


FIGURE 6
Transverse Side Frame

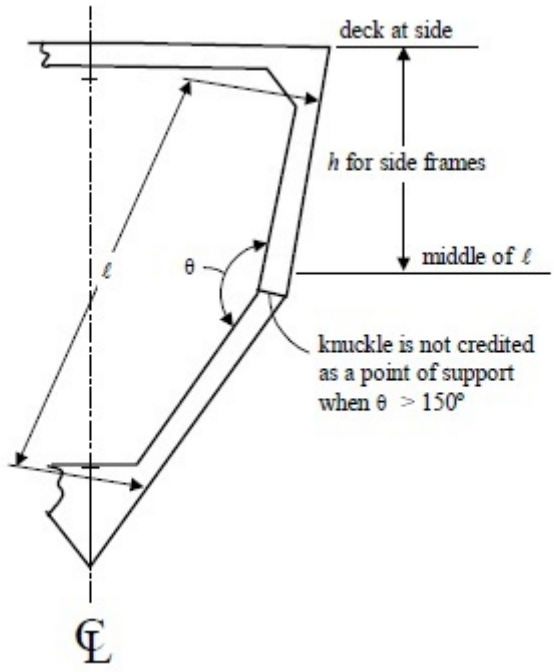
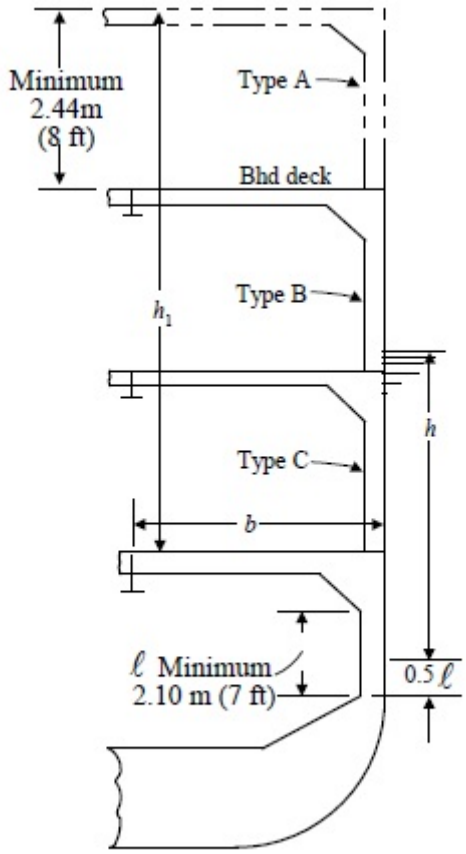


FIGURE 7
Tween Deck Frames *(2022)*



3.3 Raised Quarter Decks

In way of raised quarter decks, ℓ is to be the corresponding midship span in way of the freeboard deck plus one-half the height of the raised quarter deck, and the other factors are to be those obtained for midship frames in way of the freeboard deck.

3.5 Fore-end Frames *(2024)*

Each fore-end frame between $0.75L$ and $0.875L$ measured from the AP is to have a section modulus obtained from [3.1], where ℓ is to be the corresponding midship span plus one-half the sheer at $0.125L$ from the FP; the other factors are to be those obtained for midship frames adjusted for spacing if required. Where there is no sheer, no increase in length is required. In deep tanks, the unsupported span of frames is not to exceed 3.66 m (12 ft)

3.7 Panting Frames *(2024)*

Each panting frame between a point located at 0.875L forward of the AP and the forepeak bulkhead in vessels which have panting arrangements as per [3.13] is to have a section modulus as obtained from [3.1], where ℓ is to be the corresponding midship span plus the sheer in m (ft) at $0.125L$ from the FP. In vessels having normal sheer the other factors in [3.1] are to be the same as those used for midship frames, adjusted for spacing if required. Where there is no sheer, the value of SM in [3.1] is to be at least 25% greater than obtained for corresponding midship frames, adjusted for spacing. Where the sheer is less than normal, the increase is to be proportionate. Panting frames are to have depths not less than 1/20th of the actual span.

3.9 Side Stringers

Where stringers are fitted in accordance with this paragraph, the SM of the frames in [3.1], [3.3], and [3.5] above may be reduced 20% where ℓ exceeds 2.75 m (9 ft) and the stringers are arranged so, that there is not more than 2.1 m (7 ft) of unbroken span at any part of the girth of the side framing. Stringers are to be at least as deep as the frames and are to have continuous face plates (see also 3-2-6/1).

3.11 Frames with Web Frames and Side Stringers

Where frames are supported by a system of web frames and side stringers of the sizes and arrangement obtained from Section 3-2-6, the section modulus of the frames is to be determined in accordance with [3.1], [3.5], and [3.7], but the length ℓ may be taken as the distance from the toe of the bracket to the lowest stringer plus 0.15 m (0.5 ft) but not less than 2.1 m (7 ft).

3.13 Panting Webs and Stringers

Abaft the forepeak and forward of the after peak, panting arrangements are to be provided so as to meet the effects of sheer and flatness of the hull form. Web frames are to be fitted at a gradually increasing spacing aft of the forepeak bulkhead and it is recommended that the first frame abaft the forepeak bulkhead be increased in size. Narrow stringers, similar to those described in [3.9], are to be fitted in this area in line with the stringers in the forepeak. At the after end, where due to the shape of the vessel the frames have longer unsupported span than the normal midship frames, stringers or frames of increased size is required.

3.15 Side Frame Brackets

Brackets connecting side frames to the inner bottom margin plates are to be flanged (or edge stiffened) and of not less thickness than the frame web thickness plus 2 mm (0.08 in.) The thickness is also not to be less than required by 3-2-9/5.5 TABLE 1A or 3-2-9/5.5 TABLE 1B. Where the double bottom is longitudinally framed, flanged brackets are to be fitted inside the double bottom in line with the side frame brackets and extending to the outboard inner bottom and shell longitudinals.

3.17 Longitudinal Frames *(2024)*

The section modulus SM of each longitudinal side frame below the bulkhead deck is to be not less than obtained from the following equation:

$$SM = 7.8chs\ell^2Q\text{cm}^3$$

$$SM = 0.0041chs\ell^2Q\text{in}^3$$

where

s = spacing of longitudinal frames, in m (ft)

c = c_1 for vessels under 90 m (295 ft) in length

= c_2 for steel vessels 90 m (295 ft) in length and above

c_1 = 0.915

c_2 = 0.95

h = h_1 for vessels under 90 m (295 ft) in length

= h_2 for steel vessels 90 m (295 ft) in length and above

h_1 = vertical distance, in m (ft), from the frame to the freeboard deck at side, but not less than $0.02L$ + 0.46 m ($0.02L$ + 1.5 ft)

h_2 = above $0.5D$ from the keel, the vertical distance, in m (ft), from the longitudinal frame to the bulkhead or freeboard deck, but is not to be taken as less than 2.1 m (7.0 ft).

= at and below $0.5D$ from the keel, 0.75 times the vertical distance, in m (ft), from the longitudinal frame to the bulkhead or freeboard deck, but not less than $0.5D_s$.

ℓ = the unsupported span, in m (ft)

Q is as defined in 3-2-1/5.3.

Longitudinal frames forward of $0.125L$ measured from FP are to have the section modulus of at least 25% greater than obtained by the equation above. Where the side shell extends above the bulkhead deck by a height of not less than one standard height of superstructure, longitudinal frames under bulkhead deck are also to comply with the requirements of [5.5] for Type B tween-deck frames. See [FIGURE 8].

Longitudinal frames in fore peak or after peak tanks are also to comply with [7] and [9], respectively. See [FIGURE 9]

Longitudinal frames of superstructure are also to comply with requirements 3-2-11/3.5

In addition, longitudinal frames contributing to the hull girder longitudinal strength are to comply with the requirements in Section 3-2-1 including buckling strength where applicable.

FIGURE 8
Type B Tween-deck Frames *(2024)*

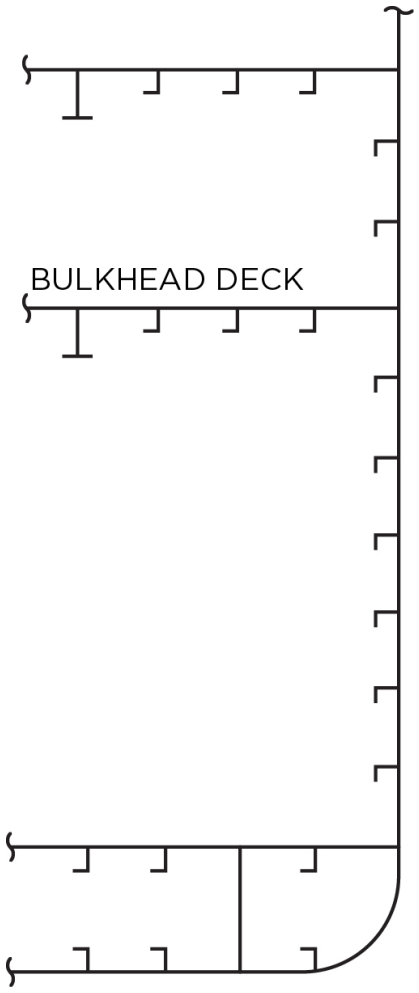
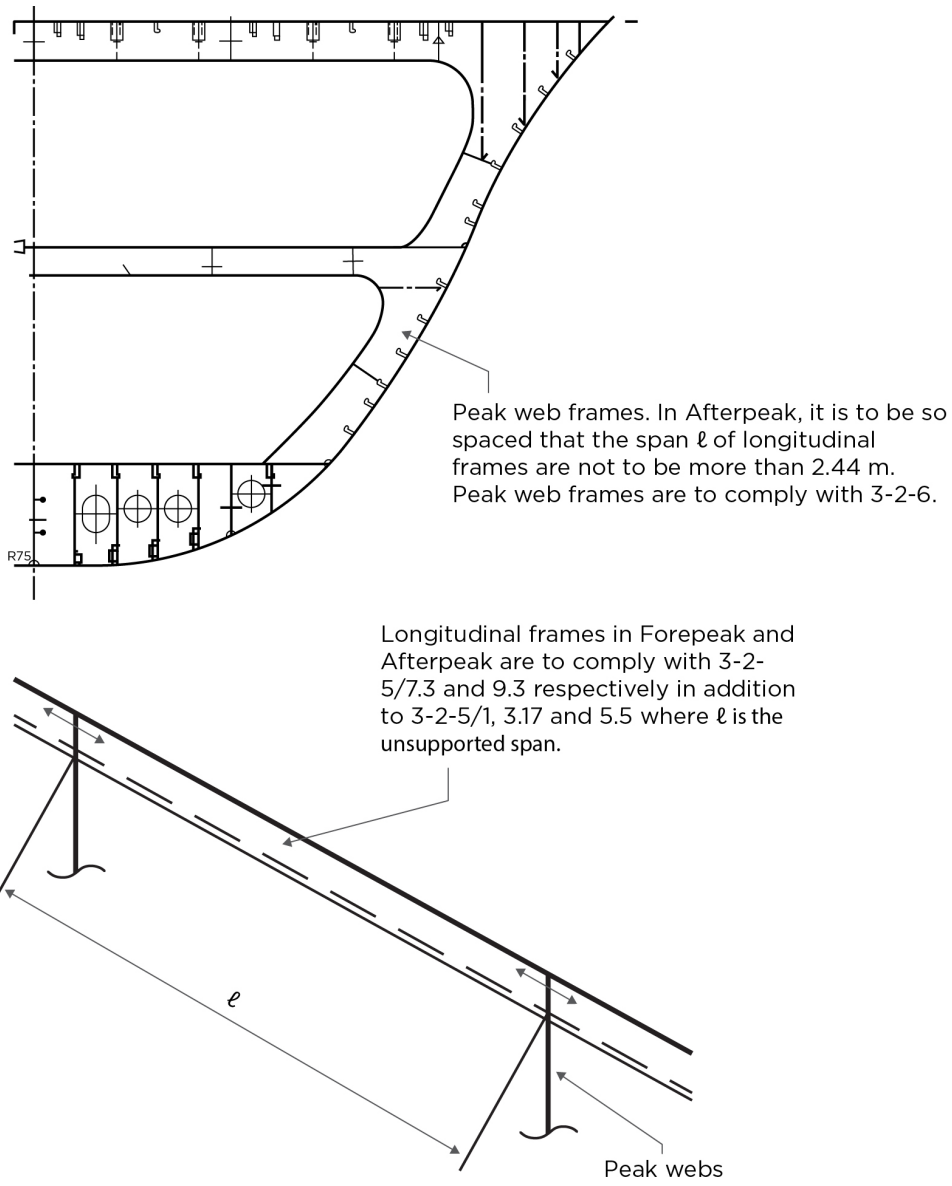


FIGURE 9
Longitudinal Frames in Fore Peak or After Peak Tanks *(2024)*



3.19 Machinery Space

Care is to be taken to provide sufficient transverse strength and stiffness in the machinery space by means of webs and heavy pillars in way of deck openings and casings.

5 Tween-Deck Frames Below and Above the Bulkhead Deck

5.1 General

The size of tween-deck framing is dependent upon the standard of main framing, arrangement of bulkhead support, requirements of special loading, etc. In the design of the framing, it is to provide continuity in the framing from the bottom to the top of the hull; the standard is also contingent upon the maintenance of general transverse stiffness by means of partial bulkheads in line with the main bulkheads, or by the extension of deep frames at regular intervals to the tops of superstructures. Care is to be taken that the strength and stiffness of the framing at the ends of the vessel are proportioned to the actual unsupported length of the frame. Panting

arrangements, comprised of webs and stringers, are to be provided in way of the forecastle side plating to meet the effects of flare, if applicable.

5.3 Transverse Tween-deck Frames *(2024)*

The section modulus SM of each transverse tween-deck frame is to be obtained from the following equation:

$$SM = (7 + 45/\ell^3)s\ell^2KQ\text{cm}^3$$

$$SM = (0.0037 + 0.8/\ell^3)s\ell^2KQ\text{in}^3$$

where

ℓ = tween deck height or unsupported span along the frame length, whichever is greater, in m (ft)

s = spacing of the frames, in m (ft)

K = factor appropriate to the length of vessel and type of tween decks, A, B, C, or D, as shown in [3.1].
All tween-deck frames above the bulkhead deck are Type A, except for those forward of $0.125L$ from the stem, which are to be type B.
Below the bulkhead deck; they are to be not less than required by the foregoing equations. In general, below the bulkhead deck and forward of the forepeak bulkhead, tween-deck frames are also not to be less than required by [7].

Type A	$K = 0.022L–0.47$	for $L \leq 427$ m
	$K = 0.022L–1.54$	for $L \leq 1400$ ft
Type B	$K = 0.034L–0.56$	for $L \leq 427$ m
	$K = 0.034L–1.84$	for $L \leq 1400$ ft
Type C	$K = 0.036L–0.09$	for $L \leq 180$ m
	$K = 0.031L + 0.83$	for $180 < L \leq 427$ m
	$K = 0.036L–0.29$	for $L \leq 590$ ft
	$K = 0.031L + 2.8$	for $590 < L \leq 1400$ ft
Type D	$K = 0.029L + 1.78$	for $L \leq 427$ m
	$K = 0.029L + 5.84$	for $L \leq 1400$ ft

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1 but need not be taken as greater than 305 m (1000 ft).

Q is as defined in 3-2-1/5.3.

When the decks above the tween-deck frames considered are carrying loads in excess of the following:

- For enclosed decks: 7.01 kN/m^3 (715 kgf/m^3, 44.7 lbf/ft^3),
- For an exposed deck: 25.66 kN/m^2 (2617 kgf/m^2, 536 lbf/ft^2)

the section modulus of the tween-deck frames is also to meet the requirements of [3.1] .

5.5 Longitudinal Tween-deck Frame *(2024)*

Longitudinal tween-deck frames are to be in accordance with [3.17] . The section modulus of each longitudinal tween-deck frame forward of $0.125L$ measured from FP, is to be not less than required by [5.3] for transverse frames in the same location, taking ℓ as the unsupported span along the frame's length. Particular attention is to be given to the buckling strength of the longitudinal tween-deck frames adjacent to the strength deck where scantling reductions are being considered for the use of higher-strength steel. See also 3-2-1/17 and Appendix 3-2-A4.

7 Forepeak Frames

7.1 General

Forepeak frames are to be connected to deep floors of not less thickness than that obtained from 3-2-4/5.1 for floors with transverse framing, but the thickness need not exceed 14.0 mm (0.56 in.), provided the stiffeners are not spaced more than 1.22 m (4 ft). The floors are to extend as high as necessary to give lateral stiffness to the structure and are to be stiffened on their upper edges. Care is to be taken in arranging the framing and floors such, as to avoid wide areas of unsupported plating adjacent to the stem. Angle ties are to be fitted across the tops of the floors and across all tiers of beams or struts to prevent vertical or lateral movement. Breast hooks are to be arranged at regular intervals at and between the stringers, extending throughout the entire range of forward drafts, as well as above and below the maximum and minimum forward draft waterlines. In general, the frames above the lowest deck are to be as required by [7.3] , but in vessels with large flare or varying sheers on different decks accompanied with lengthened frames; stringers and webs or more robust frames are to be provided in this region.

7.3 Frame Scantlings

The section modulus SM of frames is to be obtained from the following, as applicable, for three different systems of construction.

7.3.1 Beams or Struts on Every Frame without Stringer Plates *(2024)*

Where beams or struts are fitted on every frame in tiers of not more than 1.52 m (5 ft) apart, the section modulus SM of the frames is not to be less than determined by the equation in [7.3.2] , nor is the section modulus to be less than obtained from the following equation, where ℓ is the length, in m (ft), of the longest actual span of the peak frame from the toe of the lowest deck beam knee to the top of the floor.

$$SM = (C_1 L - C_2)(C_3 + C_4/\ell^3)\ell^2 Q \text{cm}^3 \left(\text{in}^3\right)$$

where

C_1 = 0.025 (0.085)

C_2 = 0.44 (5)

C_3 = 7 (0.0037)

C_4 = 45 (0.8)

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

Q is as defined in 3-2-1/5.3.

Struts and beams, where fitted, are generally to be equivalent to channels having an area approximately the same as the forepeak frames.

7.3.2 Beams on Alternate Frames *(2024)*

In vessels where beams are fitted on alternate frames, in conjunction with flanged stringer plates of the sizes given in 3-2-6/9, are fitted in tiers at intervals of not more than 2.10 m (7 ft) apart, and the distance from the lowest tier to the top of the floor is not more than 1.83 m (6 ft), the section modulus SM of the peak frames are to be obtained from the following equation.

$$SM = (3.7sL–9.0)\,Q \quad \text{cm}^3 \quad \text{for} L \leq 427\text{m}$$

$$SM = (0.021sL–0.55)\,Q \quad \text{in}^3 \quad \text{for} L \leq 1400\text{ft}$$

where

s = frame spacing, in m (ft)

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

Q is as defined in 3-2-1/5.3.

7.3.3 No Beams or Struts Fitted

Where no beams or struts are fitted, the section modulus of frames is not to be less than that obtained from the equation in [7.3.2] nor is the section modulus to be less than twice that obtained from the equation in [7.3.1] in association with a length ℓ as defined in [7.3.1] .

7.3.4 Struts and Beams

Struts and beams, where fitted, are to be equivalent to channels having an area approximately the same as the forepeak frames.

9 After-peak Frames

9.1 General

After-peak frames are to be efficiently connected to deep floors of not less thickness than obtained from 3-2-4/5.1 for floors with transverse framing, but need not exceed 14.0 mm (0.56 in.), provided the floors are suitably stiffened. The floors are to extend as high as necessary to give lateral stiffness to the structure and are to be properly stiffened with flanges. Angle ties are to be fitted across the floors and tiers of beams or struts as required to prevent vertical or lateral movement.

9.3 Frame Scantlings *(2024)*

The section modulus SM of of each after-peak frame is to be obtained from the following equation, in association with deep floors, tiers of beams, stringers, or struts arranged so that there are not more than 2.44 m (8 ft) between supports at any part of the girth of the frame.

$$SM = (2.79sL–36)\,Q \quad \text{cm}^3 \quad \text{for} L \leq 427\text{m}$$

$$SM = (0.016sL\text{–}2.2)\,Q \quad \text{in}^3 \qquad \text{for} L \leq 1400\text{ft}$$

where

s = frame spacing, in m (ft)

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

9.5 Vessels of High Power or Fine Form

For vessels of high power or fine form, a number of plate floors extending to the lowest deck or flat and suitably supported longitudinally, web frames in the tween decks or other stiffening arrangements may be required in addition to the requirements of [9.1] and [9.3] .

11 Vessels Subject to Impact Loads *(2024)*

Offshore Support Vessels of any length and other vessels under 90 m (295 ft) in length subject to impact loads during routine operations, side frames in the impact region are to have a section modulus of 25% greater than that obtained above. All side structural members in the impact region are to have end connections with brackets and adequate double continuous fillet welds at the ends. Scallop welds are not to be used in connections between side frames and shell plating.

Vessel subject to impact loads during the routine operations, refer to 3-2-2/3.11.1.

1 General

1.1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1.1 Goal

Vessel structures covered in this section are to be designed, constructed, operated and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goals*
STRU 1	In the intact condition, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU 3	Provide protection to persons onboard, the environment and required safety services.
STAB 1	Have adequate watertight integrity and restoring energy to prevent capsize in an intact condition.
MAT 1	The selected materials' physical, mechanical, and chemical properties are to meet the design requirements appropriate for the application, operating conditions, and environment.

1.1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above stated goals, the design, construction, installation, and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Structure (STRU)	
STRU-FR1	Scantlings are to have sufficient strength to resist failure and excessive deformation associated with buckling and yielding when subjected to the loads anticipated throughout the service life, such as external sea loads, cargo loads, ballast water and any other liquid loads.

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
STRU-FR2	Scantlings are to be maintained so that the structure will continue to satisfy all Goals and Functional Requirements.
STRU-FR3	Proportions of structural members are to be sufficient to prevent buckling of structural members.
STRU-FR4	The termination of structural members is to be designed to avoid stress concentrations that may lead to yielding or fatigue cracks.
STRU-F5	The workmanship is to avoid discontinuities, misalignment and other harmful details that may lead to failure in service.
Materials (MAT)	
MAT- FR1	Materials are to have corrosion and wear resistance appropriate for the operating environment and service life.
Stability (STAB)	
STAB-FR1	Suitable tightness of watertight boundaries is to be provided.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

1.3 Basic Consideration *(2024)*

Web frames and, in the case of transverse framing, side stringers, similar to those shown in [FIGURE 1] , where fitted in association with transverse or longitudinal frames of the sizes specified in 3-2-5/3.11 or 3-2-5/3.17, are to be of the sizes as required by this Section. For webs in machinery spaces, see also 3-2-5/3.19.

Web frames and side stringers are to have not less strength than would be required for similar members on watertight bulkheads, and in way of deep tanks, they are to be at least as effective as would be required for similar members on deep-tank bulkheads.

Commentary:

It is recommended that webs and stringers be spaced not more than approximately 3 m (10 ft) apart.

End of Commentary

3 Web Frames

The requirements in the following Paragraphs are to be complied with, as applicable.

3.1 Web Frames Amidships and Aft *(2024)*

3.1.1 *(2024)*

Each web frame is to have a section modulus SM not less than obtained from the following equation:

$$SM = 4.74cs\ell^2(h + bh_1/45K)\text{cm}^3$$

$$SM = 0.0025cs\ell^2(h + bh_1/150K)\text{in}^3$$

where

c = 1.5

s = spacing of the web frames, in m (ft.)

ℓ = span, in m (ft), measured from the line of the inner bottom extended to the side of the vessel to the deck at the top of the web frames. Where effective brackets are fitted, the length ℓ may be modified as outlined in [7.1]

h = vertical distance, in m (ft), from the middle of ℓ to the scantling draft line. The value of h is not to be less than 0.5ℓ

h_1 = $h_{FB} + h_{C1} + h_{C2} + h_{C3} + \ldots h_{Cn} + h_E + 0.5(h_{P1} + h_{P2} + \ldots h_{Pm})$

h_{FB} = vertical distance, in m (ft), from the deck at the top of the web frame to the bulkhead or freeboard deck

$h_{Ci} \ldots h_{Cn}$ = heights of cargo spaces above the bulkhead/freeboard deck. Where the cargo load differs from 7.01 kN/m^3 (715 kgf/m^3, 44.7 lbf/ft^3) multiplied by the tween-deck height in m (ft), the height of that tween-deck is to be proportionately adjusted in calculating h_1.

h_E = 3.66 m (12 ft) for an exposed deck intended to carry deck cargoes when uniform loading p does not exceed 25.66 kN/m^2 (2617 kgf/m^2, 536 lbf/ft^2), where p is the uniform cargo load, in KN/m^2 (kgf/m^2, lbf/ft^2)

= p/7.01 m (p/715 m, p/44.7 ft) for an exposed deck intended to carry deck cargoes when load p exceeds 25.66 kN/m^2 (2617 kgf/m^2, 536 lbf/ft^2)

= 0.0 m, if the exposed deck has no cargo loads

p = uniform cargo load, in kN/m^2(kgf/m^2,lbf/ft^2)

$h_{Pi} \ldots h_{Pm}$ = heights of passenger spaces

In case where there is no deck intended to carry deck cargo or passenger deck above the web frames, the sum $h_{C1} + h_{C2} + h_{C3} + \ldots h_{Cn} + 0.5\,(h_{P1} + h_{P2} + \ldots h_{Pm})$ shall not be taken less than 2.44 m (8 ft).

b = horizontal distance, in m (ft), from the outside of the frame to the first row of deck supports

K = 1.0, where the deck is longitudinally framed and a deck transverse is fitted in way of each web frame

= number of transverse frame spaces between web frames where the deck is transversely framed

3.3 Web Frames Forward *(2024)*

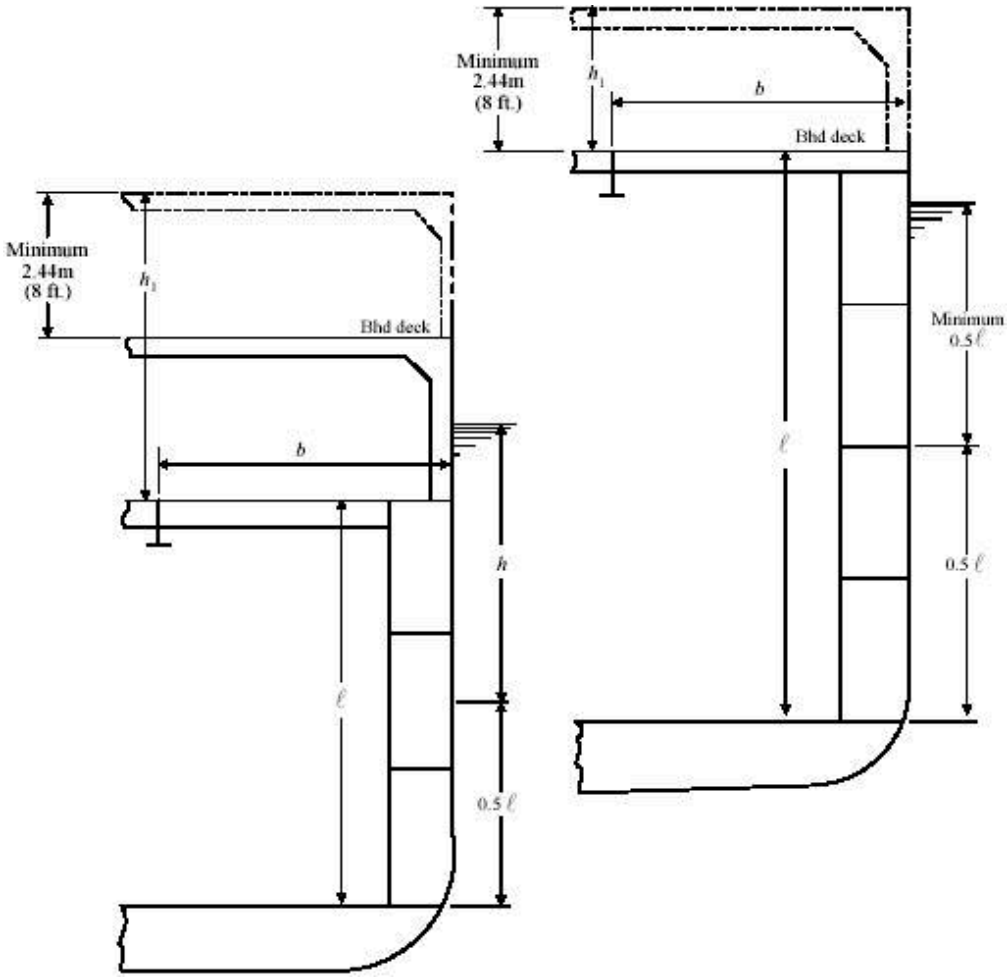
3.3.1 *(2024)*

Web frames forward of amidships are to have a section modulus SM in accordance with [3.1]. Where there is no sheer, the value of SM for the webs forward of 0.875 L from the AP is to be increased 25%. Where the sheer is less than normal, the increase is to be proportionate.

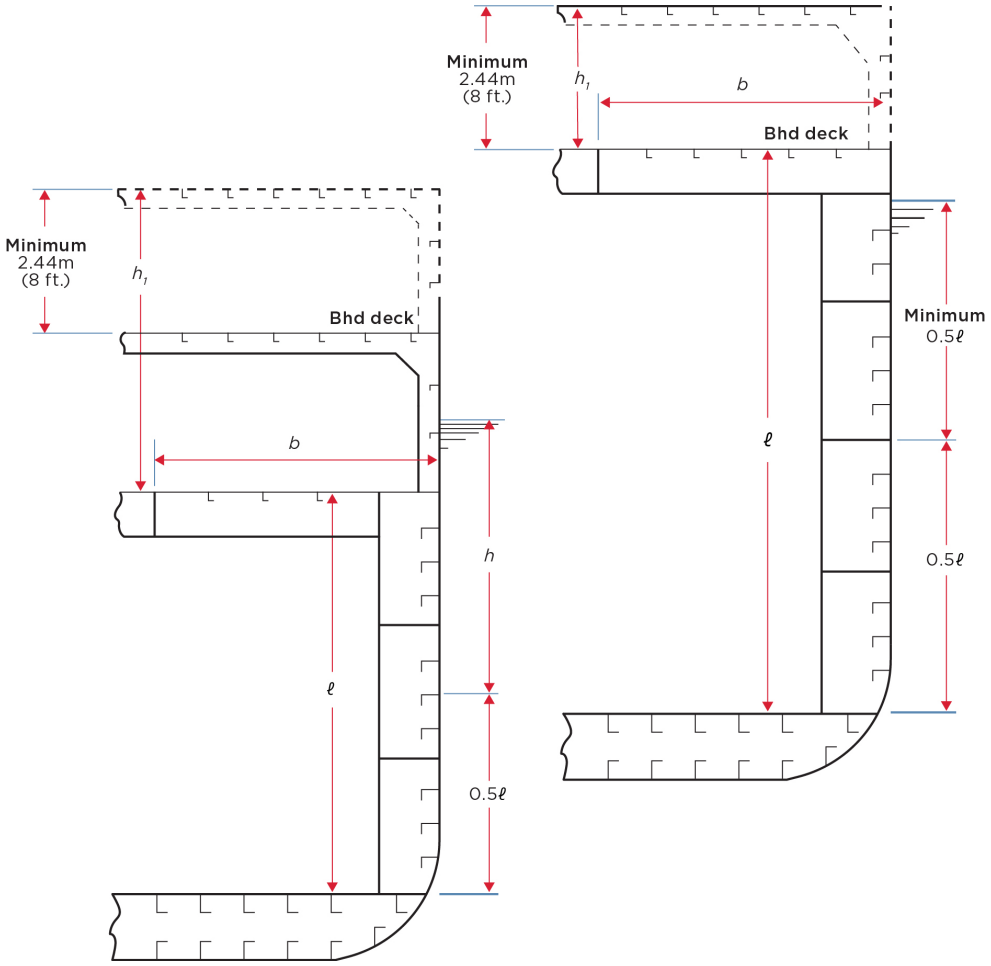
3.3.2 *(2024)*

FIGURE 1
Web-frame Arrangements *(2024)*

(a) Transversely framed vessel



(b) Longitudinally framed vessel



3.5 Proportions *(2024)*

3.5.1 *(2024)*

The following requirements are to be complied with:

i) Webs are to have a depth of not less than 0.125ℓ (1.5 in. per ft of span ℓ) .

ii) The depth is not to be less than 3 times the depth of the slots for vessels 90 meters (295 feet) in length and greater or 2.5 times the depth of the slots for vessels less than 90 meters (295 feet) in length, or the slots are to be fitted with filler plates.

iii) The thickness is not to be less than 1 mm per 100 mm (0.01 in. per in.) of depth plus 3.5 mm (0.14 in.), but this need not exceed 14 mm (0.56 in.) for vessels 90 meters (295 feet) in length and greater, or 11.5 mm (0.45 in.) for vessels less than 90 meters (295 feet) in length.

iv) Where the webs are in close proximity to boilers, the thicknesses of the webs, face bars, flanges, etc., are to be increased 1.5 mm (0.06 in.) for vessels less than 90 meters (295 feet) in length.

Commentary:

For item i) above, where the offered inertia of girders or webs is greater than the required inertia calculated with the required depth and thickness above, the offered depth may be acceptable.

If slots are closed by clips or collars, the proportion requirements based on depth of the slots do not need to be met.

Thickness increase of the plating is not necessary if the bottom of the boiler is well insulated and no heat radiates to the structural member.

End of Commentary

3.7 Web Stiffeners *(2024)*

Where the shell is longitudinally framed, web stiffeners attached to the longitudinal frames and extending to the full depth of the web frame are to be fitted at least at alternate longitudinal frames.

Other stiffening arrangements may be considered based on the structural stability of the web plates.

3.9 Tripping Brackets

Tripping brackets are to be fitted at intervals of about 3 m (10 ft) and near the change of section. Where the breadth of the flanges on either side of the web exceeds 200 mm (8 in.), tripping brackets are to be arranged to support the flange.

3.11 Tween-deck Webs

Tween-deck webs are to be fitted below the bulkhead deck over the web frames below, to provide continuity of transverse strength above the main webs below and in machinery space.

5 Side Stringers

5.1 Side Stringers *(2024)*

Each side stringer is to have a section modulus SM not less than obtained from the following equation:

$$SM = 4.74chs\ell^2 \text{cm}^3$$

$$SM = 0.0025chs\ell^2 \text{in}^3$$

where

c = 1.50

= 1.85 in the forepeak for vessels 61 m (200 ft) or greater in length.

h = vertical distance, in m (ft), from the middle of s to the scantling draft line, or to two-thirds of the distance from the keel to the bulkhead deck, or 1.8 m (6 ft), whichever is greater.
For stringers above the lowest deck, h is not taken less than K as given in 3-2-5/5.3

s = sum of the half lengths, in m (ft), (on each side of the stringer) of the frames supported

ℓ = span, in m (ft), between web frames, or between web frame and bulkhead; where brackets are fitted, the length ℓ may be modified as per [7.1] below

5.3 Proportions *(2024)*

The following requirements are to be complied with:

i) Stringers are to have a depth of not less than 0.125ℓ (1.5 in. per ft of span ℓ) plus one-quarter of the depth of the slot for the frames, but need not exceed the depth of the web frames to which they are attached.

ii) The depth is not to be less than 3* times the depth of the slots or the slots are to be fitted with filler plates and the thickness is not to be less than that determined by the equation in [9.1] .

iii) Where the stringers are in close proximity to boilers, the thickness of the stringer plates, face bars, flanges, etc. are to be increased 1.5 mm (0.06 in.) above the normal requirements.

Note: * For vessels under 90 meters (295 feet) in length, 3 times is reduced to 2.5 times.

Commentary:

Thickness increase of the plating is not necessary if the bottom of the boiler is well insulated and no heat radiates to the structural member.

End of Commentary

5.5 Web Stiffeners *(2024)*

Web stiffeners attached to the frame and extending the full depth of the stringer are to be fitted on alternate transverse frames. Other stiffening arrangement may be considered based on the structural stability of the web plates.

5.7 Tripping Brackets

The arrangement of tripping brackets is to be in accordance with [3.9] .

7 Structural Arrangements and Details

7.1 Brackets of Girders, Webs, and Stringers *(2024)*

7.1.1 *(2024)*

Where brackets are fitted having thickness not less than the girder or web plates, the value for l, as defined in this Section, Section 3-2-8, Section 3-2-9, and Section 3-2-10, may be modified in accordance with the following.

i) Where the face area on the bracket is not less than one-half that on the girder or web and the face plate or flange on the girder or web is carried to the bulkhead or base, the length ℓ may be measured to a point 150 mm (6 in.) on to the bracket. See 3-2-6/FIGURE 2.

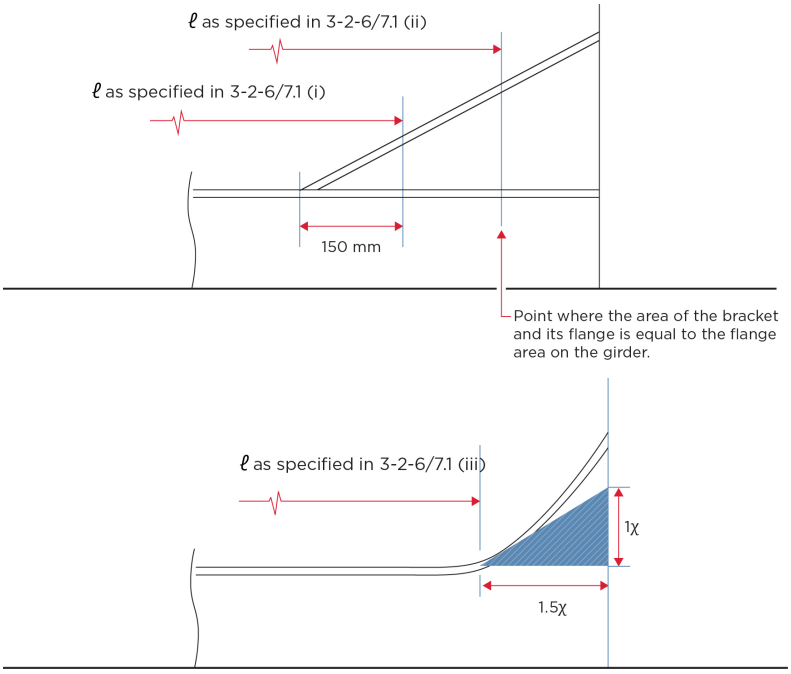
ii) Where the face area on the bracket is less than one-half that on the girder or web and the face plate or flange on the girder or web is carried to the bulkhead or base, ℓ may be measured to a point where the area of the bracket and its flange, outside the line of the girder or web, is equal to the flange area on the girder. See 3-2-6/FIGURE 2.

iii) Where the face plate or flange area of the girder or web is carried along the face of the bracket, which may be curved for the purpose, ℓ may be measured to the point of the bracket.See 3-2-6/FIGURE 2.

iv) Brackets are not to be considered effective beyond the point where the arm on the girder or web is 1.5 times the length of the arm on the bulkhead or base. See 3-2-6/FIGURE 2.

v) In no case, is the allowance in ℓ at either end to exceed one-quarter of the overall length of the girder or web.

FIGURE 2
Effective Bending Span of Girders and Webs *(2024)*



7.3 End Connections *(2024)*

The following end connection requirements are to be complied with, as applicable:

i) End connections of all girders, webs and stringers are to be balanced by effective supporting members on the opposite side (backing supporting members) of bulkheads, tank tops, etc., and their attachments are to be effectively welded.

ii) The throat area of the welded end connections is to develop the strength of the member being attached.

iii) End connections of side stringers are to be for the full depth of the web plate. Where the stringers are the same depth as the web frame, the standing flanges of the side stringers are to be attached.

9 Peak Stringers

9.1 Peak Stringer-plate Thickness *(2024)*

The thickness of the peak stringer located in the fore and aft peak regions in 3-2-5/1 FIGURE 1 is not to be less than that obtained from the following equation.

$t = C_1 L + C_2$ mm (in) for $L \leq 200$ (655) m (ft)

$t = C_3 L + C_4$ mm (in) for $200 < L \leq 427$ (1400) m (ft)

where

C_1 = 0.014 (0.00017)

C_2 = 7.2 (0.28)

C_3 = 0.007 (0.00008)

C_4 = 8.6 (0.34)

t = plate thickness, in mm (in.).

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft.)

9.3 Peak Stringer-plate Breadth *(2024)*

The breadth of the peak stringer located in the fore and aft peak regions shown in 3-2-5/1 FIGURE 1 is not to be less than obtained from the following equation.

$b = C_1 L + C_2$ mm (in) for $L \leq 100$ (330) m (ft)

$b = C_3 L + C_4$ mm (in) for 100 (330) $< L \leq 427$ (1400) m (ft)

where

C_1 = 8.15 (0.098)

C_2 = 6 (0.25)

C_3 = 2.22 (0.027)

C_4 = 600 (23.5)

b = breadth of peak stringer-plate, in mm (in.)

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft.)

Where beams or struts are not fitted on every frame, the edge of the stringer is to be adequately stiffened by an 85 mm (31/2 in.) flange or face bar.

For vessels between 61 meters (200 feet) and 90 meters (295 feet) in length, alternative designs meeting the requirements of side stringers in [5] may be accepted.

11 Vessels Subject to Impact Loads *(2024)*

Offshore Support Vessels of any length and other vessels under 90 m (295 ft) in length subject to impact loads during routine operations, web frames and side stringers in the impact region are to have a section modulus 25% greater than that of regular requirement. All side structural members in the impact region are to have adequate double continuous fillet weld and end connections with brackets to comply with the requirements in Section 3-2-19. Scallop welds are not to be used in connections between side frames and shell plating.

For vessels subject to impact loads during routine operations, refer to 3-2-2/3.11.1

1 General

1.1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1.1 Goal

The vessel structure are to be designed, constructed, operated, and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goals*
STRU 1	in the intact condition, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU 3	provide protection to persons onboard, the environment and required safety services.

1.1.2 Functional Requirements

In order to achieve the above stated goal, the design, construction, installation and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Structure (STRU)	
STRU-FR1	Scantlings are to have sufficient strength to resist failure and excessive deformation associated with buckling and yielding when subjected to the loads anticipated such as deck cargo loads and etc. throughout the service life.
STRU-FR2	Avoid stress concentrations that may lead to yielding or fatigue cracks.
STRU-FR3	Avoid discontinuities, misalignment so that the structure will continue to satisfy all Goals and Functional Requirements.

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
STRU-FR4	Scantlings are to be maintained so that the structure will continue to satisfy all Goals and Functional Requirements.
STRU-FR5	The termination of structural members is to be designed to avoid stress concentrations that may lead to yielding or fatigue cracks.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved, refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

1.3 Arrangement *(2024)*

Deck longitudinals are to be fitted, supported by deck transverses. Longitudinals and deck transverses are to have adequate structural stability. Alternatively, transverse beams are to be fitted on every frame for transverse stiffening system. Beams, transverses, and girders are to have adequate structural stability.

1.5 Design Head *(2024)*

Decks are to be designed at least to the scantling heads specified in this Section. If the deck structure is not designed to the requirements in this section, a note indicating the restricted deck loading will be entered in the *Record*.

3 Beams and Longitudinals

3.1 Strength Requirement *(2024)*

Each beam and longitudinal, in association with the plating to which it is attached, is to have a section modulus SM as obtained from the following equation:

$$SM = 7.8chs\ell^2 \text{cm}^3$$

$$SM = 0.0041chs\ell^2 \text{in}^3$$

where

c	=	c_1	for vessels under 90 m (295 ft) in length
	=	c_2	for steel vessels 90 m (295 ft) or greater in length
c_1	=	1.00	for transverse or longitudinal beams at the tops of tank, with deep tank h
	=	$1/(1.709 - 0.651\,k)$	for longitudinal beams of strength decks and effective lower decks
	=	0.60	for all other transverse beams
	=	0.70	for all other longitudinal beams
c_2	=	0.540	for transverse beams between longitudinal bulkheads
	=	0.585	for beams between longitudinal deck girders. For longitudinal beams of platform decks and between hatches at all decks
	=	0.90	for beams at deep-tank tops supported at one or both ends at the shell or on longitudinal bulkheads

= $1/(1.709–0.651k)$ for longitudinal beams of strength decks and of effective lower decks

k = SM_RY/I_A

SM_R = required hull girder section modulus amidships in 3-2-1/3.7.1 or 3-2-1/5.3, whichever is applicable, in cm^2- m ($in.^2$-ft.)

Y = distance, in m (ft), from the neutral axis to the deck being considered, always to be taken positive

I_A = hull girder moment of inertia of the vessel amidships, in cm^2-m^2 ($in.^2$-$ft.^2$)
The values of I_A and Y are to be those obtained using the area of the longitudinal beams given by the above equation.

s = spacing of beams, in m (ft.)

ℓ = distance, in m (ft), from the inner edge of the beam knee to the nearest line of girder support or between girder supports, whichever is greater. Under the top of deep tanks and in way of bulkhead recesses, the supports are to be arranged to limit the span to not exceeding 4.8 m (16 ft)

p = uniform loading, in kN/m^2 (kgf/m^2, lbf/ft^2)

h = height, in m (ft), as follows:

= 3.66 m (12 ft) for an exposed deck intended to carry deck cargoes when uniform loading p does not exceed 25.66 kN/m^2 (2617 kgf/m^2, 536 lbf/ft^2)

= p/7.01 m (p/715 m, p/44.7 ft) for an exposed deck intended to carry deck cargoes when uniform loading p exceeds 25.66 kN/m^2 (2617 kgf/m^2, 536 lbf/ft^2)

= h_{cs}, in m (ft), the cargo space height at side for lower decks intended to carry cargoes. Where the cargo load differs from 7.01 kN/m^3 (715 kgf/m3, 44.7 lbf/ft^3), multiply by the cargo space height, the height is to be proportionately adjusted.

= for bulkhead recesses and tunnel flats it is the height, in m (ft), to the bulkhead deck at the centerline; where that height is less than 6.1 m (20 ft), the value of h is to be taken as 0.8 times the actual height plus 1.22 m (4 ft).

Elsewhere, the value of h may be taken from the appropriate column of [TABLE 1] and [TABLE 2], as follows.

TABLE 1
Decks Allocation
(2024)

Weather decks and decks covered only by houses:		***Column***
Freeboard decks having no continuous decks below		a
Freeboard decks having decks below		b
Forecastle decks (first tier above freeboard deck)	See Note 1	c
Forecastle decks (second tier and higher above freeboard deck)		d
Bridge decks (first tier above freeboard deck)		c
Bridge decks (second tier and higher above freeboard deck)		d
Short bridges, with length not exceeding 0.1L (first tier above freeboard deck)		d
Poop decks (first tier above freeboard deck)		d

Weather decks and decks covered only by houses:		*Column*
Poop decks (second tier and higher above freeboard deck)		e
Long superstructures forward of midship half-length (first tier above freeboard deck)	See 3-2-7/Figure 1A	b
Long superstructures abaft midship half-length forward and forward of midship $^{3}/_{5}$ length aft (first tier above freeboard deck)	See 3-2-7/Figure 1A	c
Long superstructures abaft midship 3/5 length (first tier above freeboard deck)	See 3-2-7/Figure 1A	d
Superstructure decks extending forward of amidships' 0.5*L* (second tier above freeboard deck)	See 3-2-7/Figure 1B	c
Superstructure decks amidships (second tier above freeboard deck)	See 3-2-7/Figure 1B	d
Superstructure decks containing only accommodation spaces (third tier and higher above freeboard deck)		f
Lower decks and decks within superstructures:		
Decks below freeboard decks		c
Freeboard decks		c
Superstructure decks	See 3-2-7/Figure 1B	d
Accommodation decks		f
Decks to which side shell plating does not extend, tops of houses, etc.:		
First tier above freeboard deck		d
Second tier above freeboard deck	See Note 2	e (f)
Third and higher tiers above freeboard deck	See Note 2	f (g)

Notes:

1 See also 3-2-11/9.

2 Where decks to which the side shell does not extend and are generally used only as the shelter against weather, the value of h may be reduced as given in brackets.

3 Buckling strength of the plating and framing of all decks is to be considered where they are part of the hull girder for vessels over 61 m (200 ft) in length.

FIGURE 1A
Long Superstructures *(2024)*

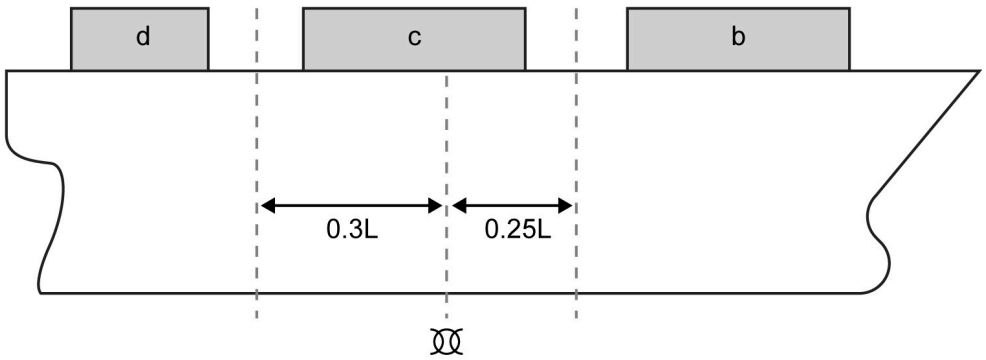
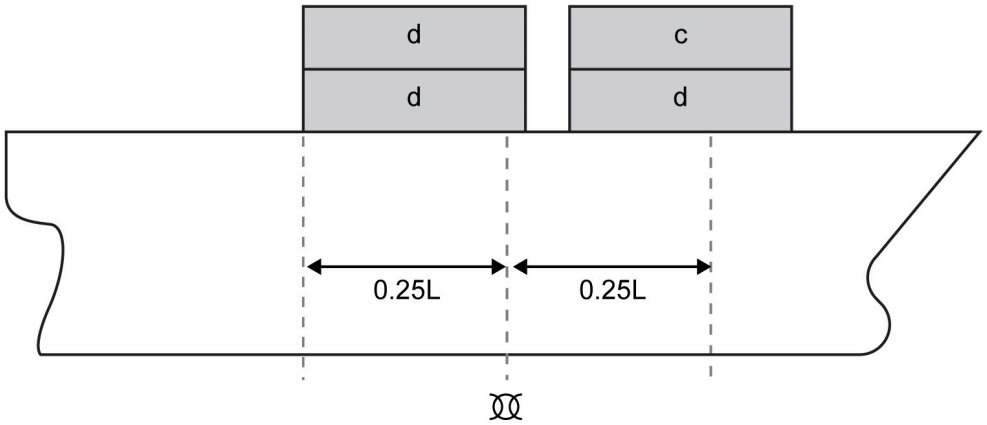


FIGURE 1B
Superstructure Decks *(2024)*



Where the beams and longitudinal are in a deep tank boundary, 3-2-10/3 is also to be met.

Commentary:

- See ICLL Annex I/Regulation 3 for the definition of forecastle, bridge, poop, superstructure.
- Long superstructure is a superstructure the length of which exceeds 0.1L other than the forecastle or poop.

End of Commentary

TABLE 2
Values of h for Beams

L in Meters	*a*	*b*	*c*	*d*	*e*	*f*	*g*
30	1.36	1.06	0.91	0.60	0.45	0.30	–
40	1.56	1.26	1.01	0.70	0.55	0.40	–
50	1.76	1.46	1.11	0.80	0.65	0.50	–
60	1.96	1.66	1.21	0.90	0.75	0.60	0.46
70	2.16	1.86	1.31	1.00	0.85	0.70	0.46
80	2.36	2.06	1.41	1.10	0.95	0.80	0.46
90	2.56	2.26	1.51	1.20	1.05	0.90	0.46
100	2.76	2.29	1.69	1.30	1.15	0.91	0.46
110	2.90	2.29	1.90	1.44	1.15	0.91	0.46
120	2.90	2.29	1.98	1.64	1.27	0.91	0.46
122 and above	2.90	2.29	1.98	1.68	1.30	0.91	0.46

L in Feet	*a*	*b*	*c*	*d*	*e*	*f*	*g*
100	4.50	3.50	3.00	2.00	1.50	1.00	–
125	5.00	4.00	3.25	2.25	1.75	1.25	–
150	5.50	4.50	3.50	2.50	2.00	1.50	–

L in Feet	*a*	*b*	*c*	*d*	*e*	*f*	*g*
175	6.00	5.00	3.75	2.75	2.25	1.75	–
200	6.50	5.50	4.00	3.00	2.50	2.00	1.50
225	7.00	6.00	4.25	3.25	2.75	2.25	1.50
250	7.50	6.50	4.50	3.50	3.00	2.50	1.50
275	8.00	7.00	4.75	3.75	3.25	2.75	1.50
300	8.50	7.50	5.00	4.00	3.50	3.00	1.50
325	9.00	7.50	5.50	4.25	3.75	3.00	1.50
350	9.50	7.50	6.00	4.50	3.75	3.00	1.50
375	9.50	7.50	6.50	5.00	4.00	3.00	1.50
400 and above	9.50	7.50	6.50	5.50	4.25	3.00	1.50

Values of h for an intermediate length of vessel are to be obtained by interpolation.

3.3 Deep Reinforced Beams *(2024)*

Deep reinforced beams are to be arranged in way of concentrated loads such as the ends of deckhouses, in way of masts, windlasses, A-frames, rollers, hooks, bollards, winches, auxiliary machinery, etc. Proper alignment of fittings and supporting hull structure is to be verified.

3.5 Beams at the Head of Web Frames

Beams of increased strength and stiffness are to be provided at the head of web frames.

3.7 End Connections *(2024)*

At the ends of unbracketed beams or longitudinals, located inside the line of openings or near the periphery of platform decks; both the web and flange are to be welded to the supporting member (see [FIGURE 2] for example). At beam knees or at other bracketed end connections continuity of strength of the beam or longitudinal is to be maintained at the connection to the bracket and at the connection of the bracket to the supporting member.

Welding is to be in accordance with 3-2-19/3 TABLE 1 and the fillet weld throat area of the connection of the beam or longitudinal to the bracket and of the bracket to the supporting structure is to develop the strength of the beam or longitudinal.

Deck longitudinals outside the line of openings are to be continuous or bracketed at the nearest transverse bulkheads such as to effectively develop their sectional area and resistance to bending. However; non continuous longitudinals cannot be included into hull girder section modulus calculation [see also 3-2-1/3.7.1(c)].

Where beams or longitudinals are on, or terminate on, the boundaries of tanks or watertight compartments, structural continuity is to be maintained by suitable back-up structure in way of the end connection, or the end connection is to be effectively extended by a bracket or flat bar to an adjacent stiffener (see [FIGURE 3] for example).

FIGURE 2
Beam End Connection Located Inside the Line of Opening *(2024)*

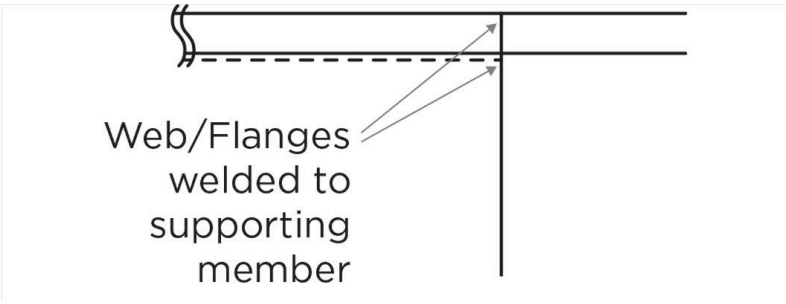
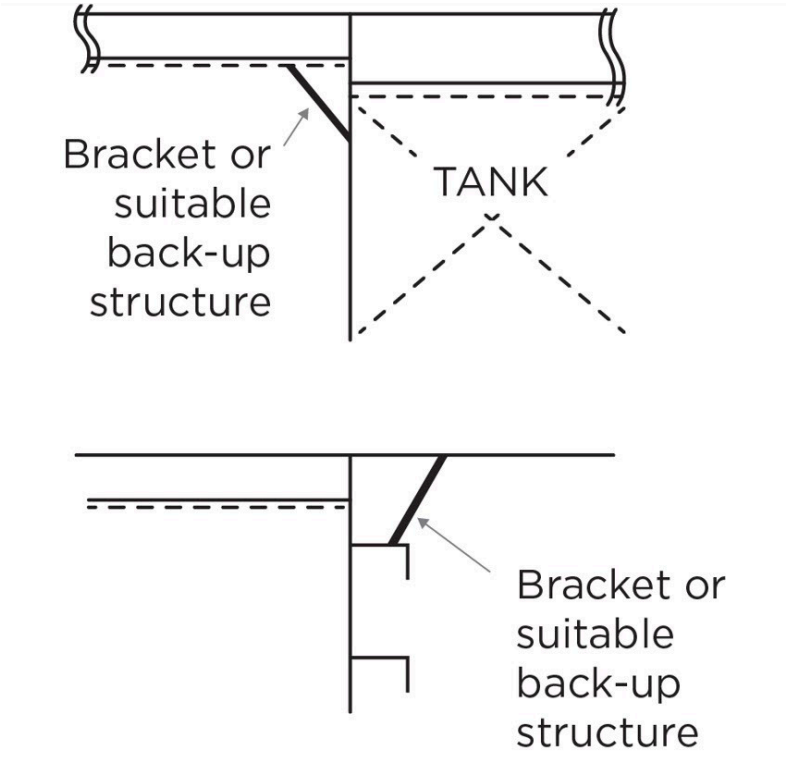


FIGURE 3
Beam End Connection on the Boundary of Tanks *(2024)*



4 Deck Fittings Support Structures for Vessels of More Than 500 GT *(1 July 2018)*

4.1 General *(1 July 2018)*

The strength of supporting hull structures in way of shipboard fittings used for mooring and/or towing operations as well as supporting hull structures of winches and capstans at the bow, sides and stern, are to comply with the requirements of this Section, where towing operations are defined as follows:

4.1.1 Normal Towing *(1 July 2018)*

Normal towing is the towing operations necessary for maneuvering in ports and sheltered waters associated with the normal operations of the vessel.

4.1.2 Other Towing *(1 July 2018)*

For vessels not subject to SOLAS Regulation II-1/3-4 Paragraph 1 but fitted with equipment for towing by another vessel or a tug (e.g., such as to assist the vessel in case of emergency as given in SOLAS Regulation II-1/3-4 Paragraph 2), the requirements designated as 'other towing' are to be applied to design and construction of those shipboard fittings and supporting hull structures.

The requirements of this section do not apply to design and construction of shipboard fittings and supporting hull structures used for special towing services, as follows:

- *Escort Towing.* Towing service, in particular, for laden oil tankers or LNG carriers, required in specific estuaries. Its main purpose is to control the vessel in case of failures of the propulsion or steering system. Reference should be made to local escort requirements and guidance given by, for example, the Oil Companies International Marine Forum (OCIMF).
- *Canal Transit Towing.* Towing service for vessels transiting canals (e.g., the Panama Canal). Reference should be made to local canal transit requirements.
- *Emergency Towing for Tankers.* Towing service to assist tankers in case of emergency. For the emergency towing arrangements, vessels subject to SOLAS regulation II-1/3-4 Paragraph 1 are to comply with that regulation and resolution MSC.35(63) as amended.

Shipboard fittings, such as cleats, chocks, bitts, bollards, towing pad eyes, etc., for mooring and/or towing, winches and capstans are to be located on stiffeners and/or girders, which are part of the deck construction such, as to facilitate efficient distribution of the mooring and/or towing loads. The same attention is to be paid to the structural arrangements and strength of supporting structures of the recessed bitts, if fitted. Other arrangements may be accepted (for chocks in bulwarks, etc.) provided the strength is confirmed adequate for the intended service.

The requirements in this subsection are to be applied in conjunction with the requirements for mooring and towing equipment contained in Section 3-5-1.

4.3 Design Loads *(2022)*

Unless greater safe working load (SWL) and/or safe towing load (TOW) of shipboard fittings is specified by the applicant (see [4.3.3]), the minimum design load to be used is the greater values obtained from [4.3.1] or [4.3.2] , whichever is applicable: For shipboard fittings intended to be used for both mooring and towing services, 3-2-7/4.3.1 and 3-2-7/4.3.2 apply to mooring and towing services, respectively.

4.3.1 Mooring Operations *(1 July 2018)*

The minimum design load for shipboard fittings for mooring operations is the applicable value obtained from [4.3.1(a)] or [4.3.1(b)] :

4.3.1(a) Mooring Line Force.

The minimum design load applied to supporting hull structures for shipboard fittings is to be 1.15 times the ship design minimum breaking load of the mooring lines according to 3-5-1/9.3 for each equipment number (EN). EN is the corresponding value used for determination of the vessel's equipment. (See Notes 1 and 2 in [4.3.1(b)])

4.3.1(b) Mooring Winch and Capstan Force.

The minimum design load applied to supporting hull structures for winches is to be 1.25 times the intended maximum brake holding load, where the maximum brake holding load is to be assumed not less than 80% of the ship design minimum breaking load of the mooring lines according to 3-5-1/9.3. See Notes 1 and 2. For supporting hull structures of capstans, 1.25 times the maximum hauling-in force is to be taken as the design load.

Notes:

1 If not otherwise specified by Section 3-5-1, side projected area including that of deck cargoes as given by the ship nominal capacity condition is to be taken into account for selection of mooring lines and the loads applied to shipboard fittings and supporting hull structures. The nominal capacity condition is defined as the theoretical condition where the maximum possible deck cargoes are included in the ship arrangement in their respective positions. For container ships, the nominal capacity condition represents the theoretical condition where the maximum possible number of containers is included in the ship arrangement in their respective positions.

2 The increase of the line design break force for synthetic ropes according to 3-5-1/9.7 needs not to be taken into account for the loads applied to shipboard fittings and supporting hull structures.

4.3.2 Towing Operations *(1 July 2018)*

The minimum design load for shipboard fittings for towing operations is the applicable value obtained from the following:

4.3.2(a) Normal towing operations.

1.25 times the intended maximum towing load (e.g., static bollard pull) as indicated on the towing and mooring arrangements plan.

4.3.2(b) Other towing service. ***(2022)***

The ship design minimum breaking load of the tow lines according to 3-5-1/19.7 TABLE 3 for each equipment number (EN). EN is the corresponding value used for determination of the vessel's equipment. (See Notes 1 and 2)

Notes:

1 Side projected area including that of deck cargoes as given by the ship nominal capacity condition is to be taken into account for selection of towing lines and the loads applied to shipboard fittings and supporting hull structures. The nominal capacity condition is defined in [4.3.1(b)] , Note 1

2 The increase of the line design break force for synthetic ropes according to 3-5-1/9.7 needs not to be taken into account for the loads applied to shipboard fittings and supporting hull structures.

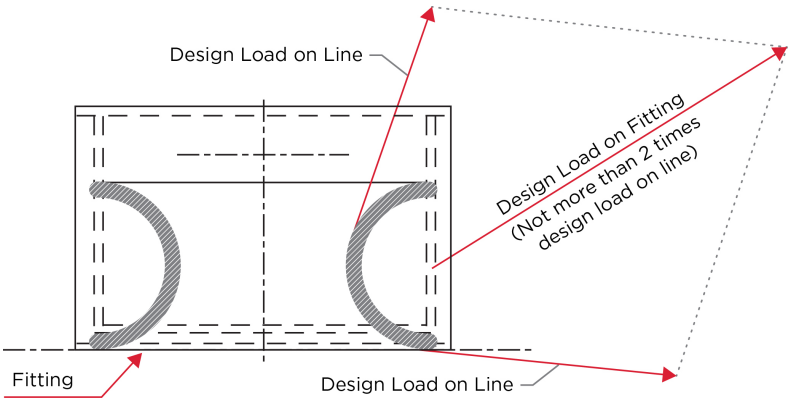
4.3.2(c) All towing operations. ***(1 July 2018)***

For fittings intended to be used for, both, normal and other towing operations, the greater of the design loads according to [4.3.2(a)] and [4.3.2(b)] .

4.3.3 Application of Design Loads *(1 July 2018)*

The design load is to be applied to fittings in all directions that may occur by taking into account the arrangement shown on the towing and mooring arrangements plan. Where the towing line takes a turn at a fitting, the total design load applied to the fitting is equal to the resultant of the design loads acting on the line, see [FIGURE 1] below. However, in no case does the design load applied to the fitting need to be greater than twice the design load on the line.

FIGURE 4
Application of Design Loads *(2024)*



When a specific SWL is applied for a shipboard fitting at the request of the applicant, by which the design load will be greater than the above minimum values, the strength of the supporting hull structures is to be designed for an increased load in accordance with the appropriate SWL.design load relationship given by 3-2-7/4.3 and 3-5-1/15.3.1.

When a safe towing load, TOW, greater than that determined according to 3-5-1/15.3.2 is requested by the applicant, the design load is to be increased in accordance with the appropriate TOW/design load relationship given by 3-2-7/4.3 and 3-5-1/15.3.2.

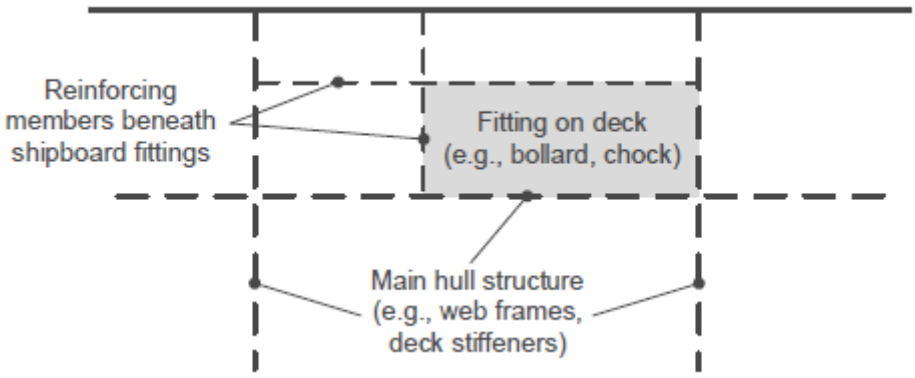
4.5 Supporting Structures

4.5.1 Arrangement and Applied Design Load *(2022)*

The design load applied to supporting hull structures for mooring operations and towing operations is to be in accordance with [4.3.1] and [4.3.2] , respectively.

The arrangement of reinforced members beneath shipboard fittings, winches, and capstans is to consider any variation of direction (horizontally and vertically) of the mooring forces acting upon the shipboard fittings, see [FIGURE 2] for a sample arrangement. Proper alignment of fitting and supporting hull structure is to be verified.

FIGURE 5
Sample Arrangement *(1 July 2018)*



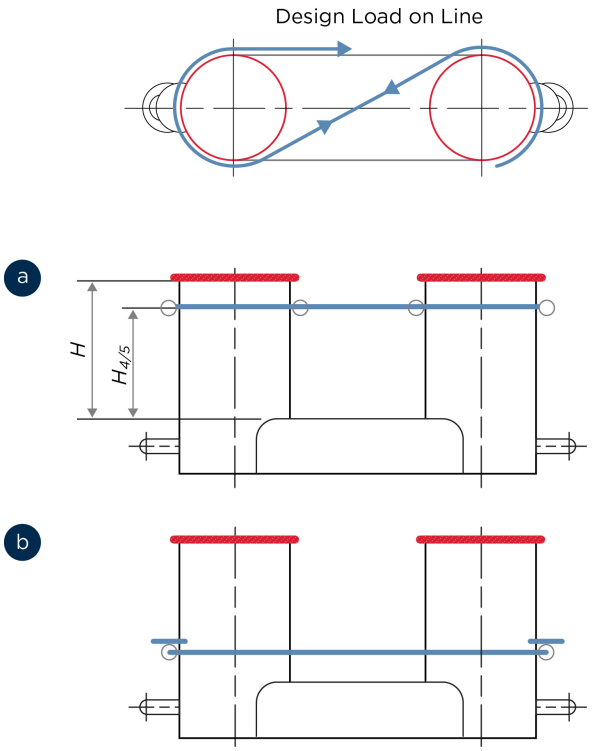
4.5.2 Line Forces *(1 July 2018)*

The acting point of the mooring and/or towing force on shipboard fittings is to be taken at the attachment point of a mooring line or a towing line, as applicable and as described below.

4.5.2(a) Mooring operations. **(1 July 2018)**

The acting point of the mooring force on shipboard fittings is to be taken at the attachment point of a mooring line or at a change in its direction. For bollards and bitts the attachment point of the mooring line is to be taken 4/5 of the tube height above the base, see a) in [FIGURE 3] below. If fins are fitted to the bollard tubes to keep the mooring line as low as possible, the attachment point of the mooring line may be taken at the location of the fins, see b) in [FIGURE 3] below.

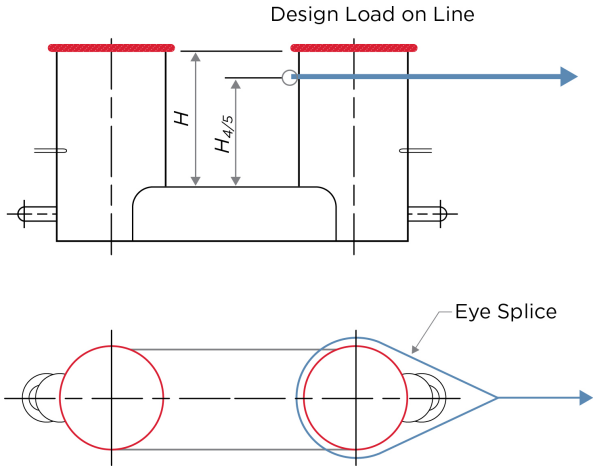
FIGURE 6
Attachment Point of Mooring Line *(2024)*



4.5.2(b) Towing operations. ***(1 July 2018)***

The acting point of the towing force on shipboard fittings is to be taken at the attachment point of a towing line or at a change in its direction. For bollards and bitts the attachment point of the towing line is to be taken not less than 4/5 of the tube height above the base, see [FIGURE 4] below.

FIGURE 7
Attachment Point of Towing Line *(2024)*



4.5.3 Allowable stresses

Allowable stresses under the design load conditions as specified in [4.3] are as follows:

4.5.3(a) For strength assessment by means of beam theory or grillage analysis ***(2022)***

- Normal stress: 100% of the specified minimum yield point of the material

- Shearing stress: 60% of the specified minimum yield point of the material

Normal stress is the sum of bending stress and axial stress with the corresponding shearing stress acting perpendicular to the normal stress. No stress concentration factors being taken into account.

4.5.3(b) For strength assessment by means of finite element analysis: (2022)

- Von Mises stress: 100% of the specified minimum yield point of the material

For strength assessment by means of finite element analysis, the mesh is to be fine enough to represent the geometry as realistically as possible. The ratio of element length to width is not to exceed 3. Girders are to be modelled using shell or plane stress elements. Symmetric girder flanges may be modelled by beam or truss elements. The element height of girder webs is not to exceed one-third of the web height. In way of small openings in girder webs, the web thickness is to be reduced to a mean thickness over the web height. Large openings are to be modelled. Stiffeners may be modelled by using shell, plane stress, or beam elements. The mesh size of stiffeners is to be fine enough to obtain proper bending stress. If flat bars are modeled using shell or plane stress elements, dummy rod elements are to be modelled at the free edge of the flat bars and the stresses of the dummy elements are to be evaluated. Stresses are to be read from the center of the individual element. For shell elements the stresses are to be evaluated at the mid plane of the element.

4.7 Scantlings

4.7.1 Net Scantlings *(1 July 2018)*

The net minimum scantlings of the supporting hull structure are to comply with the requirements given in [4.5] . The net thicknesses, t_{net} , are the member thicknesses necessary to obtain the above required minimum net scantlings. The required gross thicknesses are obtained by adding the total corrosion additions, t_c, given in [4.7.2] and, where applicable, the wear allowance, t_w, given in [4.7.3] to t_{net} .

4.7.2 Corrosion Addition *(1 July 2024)*

The total corrosion addition, t_c, is not to be less than the following values:

1) Ships covered by Parts 5A and 5B: t_c, total corrosion addition to be as defined in these rules.

2) Other Ships:

- For the supporting hull structure, 2.0 mm (0.08 in.).
- For pedestals and foundations on deck which are not part of a fitting according to an accepted industry standard, 2.0 mm (0.08 in.).
- For shipboard fittings not selected from an accepted industry standard, 2.0 mm (0.08 in.).

4.7.3 Wear Allowance *(2024)*

In addition to the corrosion addition given in [4.7.2] the wear allowance, t_w, for shipboard fittings not selected from an accepted industry standard is not to be less than 1.0 mm (0.04 in.), added to surfaces which are intended to regularly contact the line.

Commentary:

The requirements of 3-2-7/4 are from IACS UR A2, Rev. 5.

End of Commentary

5 Container Loading

5.1 General

Where the vessel is to carry cargo or specialist equipment in containers intended for periodic or temporary installation on board, the exact locations of the container pads and the maximum total static load on the pads are to be indicated on the plans submitted for approval. Where the pads are not in line with the supporting structures, headers are to be provided to transmit the loads to these members. This requirement does not apply to containerized offshore supplies when carried on dedicated cargo decks.

5.3 Strength Requirements

Each member intended to support containers is to have a section modulus, SM, in cm^3 (in^3), not less than obtained from the following equation.

$$SM = M/f$$

where

M = maximum bending moment due to maximum static container loading, in kN-cm, (tf - cm, Ltf- in.).

f = permissible maximum bending stress, as given in [TABLE 3] .

In determining the maximum bending moment, members may be considered fixed-ended, provided that the member is continuous over the adjacent spans or is effectively attached to a bulkhead stiffener or frame or has end connections in accordance with [3.7] . Where this is not the case, the member is to be considered simply-supported. Where weather deck containers are supported by pedestals, the section modulus required by [3] , with h equal to the distance between the deck and the underside of the container, but not greater than 50% of the value given in [TABLE 2] , is to be added to the above required section modulus.

7 Higher-strength Materials

7.1 General *(2024)*

In general, proposed applications of higher-strength materials for deck longitudinals and beams are to accompanied by submission of calculations in support of adequate strength against calculations are to be submitted to show adequate provision against buckling.

Higher strength steel longitudinal beams are to be continuous in way of transverse members of ordinary strength steel or of lesser strength higher strength steel in accordance with 3-2-1/3.7.1(c), 3-2-1/5 and 3-2-3/3.5.

7.3 Longitudinals and Beams of Higher-strength Materials

Each longitudinal or beam of higher-strength material, in association with the higher-strength plating to which it is attached, is to have a section modulus SM_{hts} not less than obtained from the following equation.

$$SM_{hts} = 7.8chs\ell^2Q \quad \text{cm}^3$$

$$SM_{hts} = 0.0041chs\ell^2Q \quad \text{in}^3$$

where c, h, s and ℓ are as defined in [3] and Q is as defined in 3-2-1/5.3.

TABLE 3
Values of f (Ordinary-strength Steel)

	kN/cm^2	tf/cm^2	Ltf/in^2
Effective longitudinal members	12.36	1.26	8
Transverse members and longitudinal members inside the line of openings	13.90	1.42	9

The net sectional area of the web of the member, in cm^2 (in^2), including effective brackets where applicable, is to be not less than obtained from the following equation:

$$A = F/q$$

F = shearing force at the point under consideration, in kN, (tf, Ltf)

q = allowable average shear stress in the web, not to exceed 10.35 kN/cm^2 (1.055 tf/cm^2, 6.7 Ltf/in^2)

PART 3

CHAPTER 2
Hull Structures and Arrangements

SECTION 8
Pillars, Deck Girders and Transverses

1 General

1.1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1.1 Goal

The vessel structures covered in this section are to be designed, constructed, operated, and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goals*
STRU 1	In the intact condition, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU 3	Provide protection to persons onboard, the environment and required safety services.
MAT 1	The selected materials' physical, mechanical, and chemical properties are to meet the design requirements appropriate for the application, operating conditions, and environment.

1.1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above stated goals, the design, construction, installation, and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Structure (STRU)	
STRU-FR1	Scantlings are to have sufficient strength to resist failure and excessive deformation associated with buckling and yielding when subjected to the loads anticipated throughout the service life, such as deck cargo loads, hydrostatic loads (tanks and watertight boundaries), green water loads, and the weight of the superstructure supported by pillars, deck girders and transverses.
STRU-FR2	Scantlings are to be maintained so that the structure will continue to satisfy all Goals and Functional Requirements.

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
STRU-FR3	The termination of structural members is to be designed to avoid stress concentrations that may lead to yielding or fatigue cracks.
STRU-FR4	The wormanship is to avoid discontinuities, misalignment and other harmful details that may lead to failure in service.
Materials (MAT)	
MAT-FR1	Materials are to have corrosion and wear resistance appropriate for the operating environment and service life.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

1.2 Arrangements - General

All pillars are to be aligned vertically or, in case of misalignment, an arrangement is to be provided for transmitting their loads to the supports below. The lowest pillars are to be fitted in line with a double-bottom girder or floor, or as close thereto as practicable. The seating under them is to be of ample strength and is to provide effective distribution of the load. Lightening holes are to be omitted in floors and girders directly under those pillars.

Where longitudinal beams are used on more than one deck, the transverses on the uppermost continuous deck and decks below, as well as on long superstructures and deck houses, are to be fitted at the same vertical plane.

Special attention is to be paid to provide support in the form of bulkheads or deep webs at the ends and corners of deckhouses, in machinery spaces, at ends of partial superstructures and under heavy concentrated weights. For forecastle decks, see also 3-2-11/9.

1.3 Container Loading

Where it is intended to carry containers, the structure is to comply with 3-2-7/5.

1.5 Cargo Loading *(2024)*

Where it is intended to carry cargoes, the load is to be considered in accordance with [3.3] .

3 Pillars

3.1 Permissible Load

The permissible load W_a of a pillar or strut obtained from the following equation is to be equal to or greater than the calculated load W as determined in accordance with 3-2-4/7.7, [3.3] , [3.5] or [3.7] as applicable.

$$W_a = (k - n\ell/r)A \text{ kN (tf, Ltf)}$$

where

k	=	12.09 (1.232, 7.83)	ordinary strength steel
	=	16.11 (1.643, 10.43)	HT32 strength steel
	=	18.12 (1.848, 11.73)	HT36 strength steel

= 19.13 (1.951, 12.38) HT40 strength steel

ℓ = unsupported span of the pillar or strut, in m (ft), measured from the top of the inner bottom, deck or other structure on which the pillar is based, to the underside of the beam or girder supported.

r = least radius of gyration, in cm (in.)

A = cross sectional area of strut, in cm^2 (in^2)

n = 4.44 (0.452, 0.345) ordinary strength steel

= 7.47 (0.762, 0.581) HT32 strength steel

= 9.00 (0.918, 0.699) HT36 strength steel

= 9.76 (0.996, 0.758) HT40 strength steel

The foregoing equations apply where ℓ/r, with ℓ and r in the same units, is less than 130.

3.3 Calculated Load *(2024)*

The calculated load W for a specific pillar is to be obtained from the following equation:

$$W = nbhs \text{kN}(\text{tf}, \text{Ltf})$$

where

n = 7.01 (0.712, 0.0199)

b = mean breadth of the area supported, in m (ft)

s = mean length of the area supported, in m (ft)

h = height above the area supported when there is no cargo space and/or cargo carried on or above the freeboard deck, in m (ft)

= for pillars spaced not more than two frame spaces: the distance from the deck supported to a point located 3.80 m (12.5 ft) above the freeboard deck.

= for widely-spaced pillars: the distance from the deck supported to a point 2.44 m (8 ft) above the freeboard deck, except for pillars located immediately below the freeboard deck, for which the value of h is not to be less than given in 3-2-7/3.1 TABLE 2, Column a. In measuring the distance from the deck supported to the specified height above the freeboard deck, the height for any tween-decks devoted to passenger or crew accommodation may be taken as the height given in 3-2-7/3 for bridge-deck beams.

= the height for any pillar under the first superstructure deck above the freeboard deck is not to be less than 2.44 m (8 ft).

= the height for any pillar is not to be less than the height given in 3-2-7/3 for the beams at the top of the pillar plus the sum of the heights given in the same paragraph for the beams of all complete decks and one-half the heights given for all partial superstructures above

= the height for pillars under bulkhead recesses or the tops of tunnels is not to be less than the distance from the recess or tunnel top to the bulkhead deck at the centerline.

Where the cargo load exceeds $h \times 7.01$ kN/m^2 the heads given above for cargo spaces below the freeboard deck are to be increased by the factor of cargo load kN/m^2/[$h \times 7.01$ kN/m^2] ($h \times 44.7$ lbf/ft^2).

3.5 Additional Pillars

Additional pillars which are not directly in line with those above, or which are not on the lines of the girders, but which support the loads from above or the deck girders through a system of supplementary fore and aft or transverse girders, such as at hatch ends where the pillars are fitted only on the centerline, are to have the load W, for use with the equation proportionate to the actual loads transmitted to the pillars through the system of girders with modifications to the design value of h as described in [3.3].

3.7 Pillars under the Tops of Deep Tanks *(2024)*

Pillars under the tops of deep tanks are to be of solid cross section (pipes and tubing not allowed) and are not to be less than that required by [3.1] and [3.3], nor are they to have less section area than cW cm^2 (in.^{2}) where W and c are obtained as follows:

$W = nbhs$ kN (tf, Ltf)

where

n = 10.5 (1.07, 0.03)

b = breadth of the area of the top of the tank supported by the pillar, in m (ft)

s = length of the area of the top of the tank supported by the pillar, in m (ft)

h = height, as required by 3-2-7/3.1, for beams at the top of tanks, in m (ft)

c = 0.1035 (1.015, 0.16) ordinary strength steel

= 0.0776 (0.761, 0.12) HT32 strength steel

= 0.069 (0.677, 0.107) HT36 strength steel

= 0.0655 (0.643, 0.102) HT40 strength steel

3.9 Bulkhead Stiffening

Bulkheads which support girders, or pillars and longitudinal bulkheads which are fitted in lieu of girders are to be specially stiffened in such a manner as to provide supports not less effective than required for stanchions or pillars.

3.11 Attachments *(2024)*

Widely-spaced tubular or solid section pillars are to solidly bear at top and bottom and are to be attached by partial or full penetration welds properly proportioned to the size of the pillar.

The attachments of stanchions or pillars under bulkhead recesses, tunnel tops or deep-tank tops subject to tension loads are to be developed to provide sufficient welding to withstand the tension load.

3.13 Stanchions in Double Bottoms and Under Tank Tops* *(2024)*

Stanchions in double bottoms and under the tops of deep tanks are to be solid in cross section. Stanchions under the tops of deep tanks are not to be less than required by [3.1] and [3.3], nor are they to have less section area than cW cm^2 (in^2) as required by [3.7].

Note: * This kind of structure is mostly seen for vessels under 90 meters (295 feet) in length. Requirements in this section are applied as applicable.

5 Deck Girders and Transverses

5.1 General

Girders and transverses of the sizes required by 3-2-8/5.3 through 3-2-8/5.15 are to be fitted to support the beams. In way of bulkhead recesses and the tops of tanks, they are to be arranged so, that the unsupported span of the beams does not exceed 4.8 m (16 ft). Additional girders are to be fitted under masts, king posts, deck machinery or other heavy concentrated loads. In way of deck girders or deep beams, the deck plating is to be of sufficient thickness and suitably stiffened to be considered an effective part of the girder.

5.3 Deck Girders Clear of Tanks

Each deck girder clear of tanks, similar to that shown in [FIGURE 1] , is to have a section modulus SM as obtained from the following equation:

$$SM = 4.74cbh\ell^2 \text{ cm}^3$$

$$SM = 0.0025cbh\ell^2 \text{ in}^3$$

where

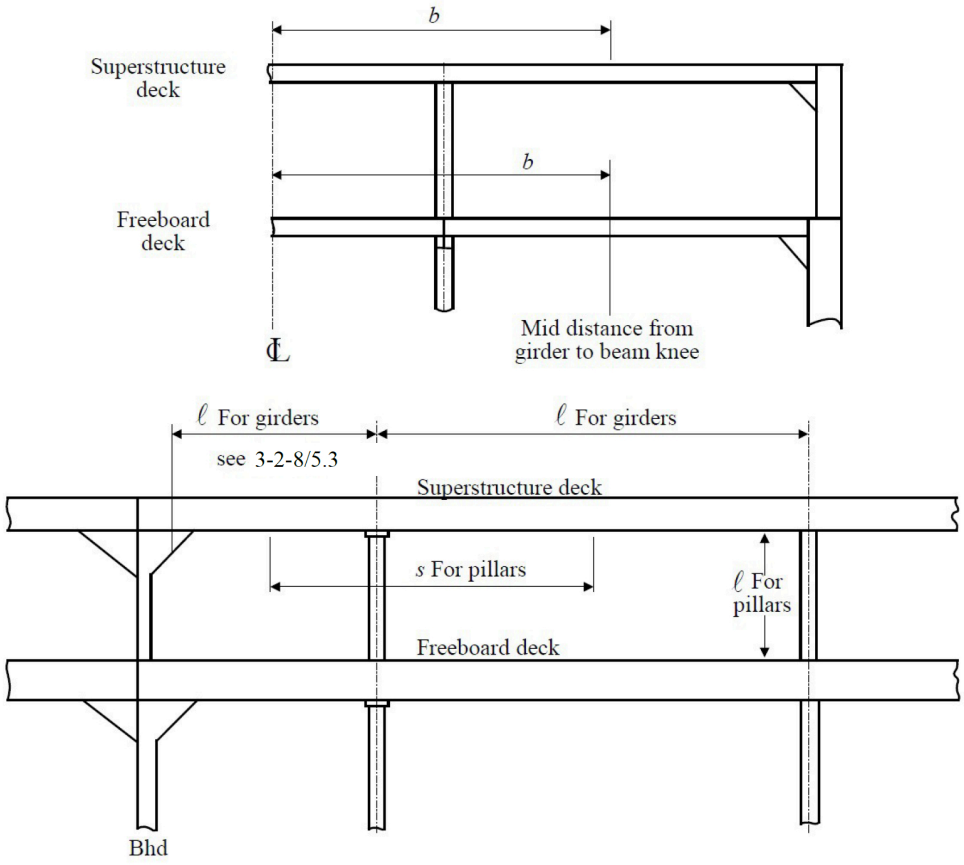
c = 1.0

b = mean breadth of the area of deck supported, in m (ft)

h = height, as required by 3-2-7/3.1, for the beams supported, in m (ft)

ℓ = span between centers of supporting pillars, or between pillar and bulkhead, in m (ft). Where an effective bracket, in accordance with 3-2-6/7.1 is fitted at the bulkhead, the length ℓ may be modified.

FIGURE 1
Deck Girders and Pillars *(2024)*



5.5 Deck Transverses Clear of Tanks

Each deck transverse supporting longitudinal deck beams is to have a section modulus SM as obtained from the equations in [5.3] ,where

c = 1.0

b = spacing of deck transverses, in m (ft)

h = height, as required by 3-2-7/3.1, for the beams supported, in m (ft)

ℓ = span between supporting girders or bulkheads, or between girder and side frame, in m (ft). Where an effective bracket is fitted at the side frame or bulkhead, the length ℓ may be modified. See 3-2-6/7.1.

5.7 Proportions *(2024)*

The following requirements are to be complied with:

i) Girders and transverses are to have a depth of not less than 0.0583ℓ (0.7 in. per ft of span ℓ).

ii) The depth is also not to be less than 3 times the depth of the cutouts for the beams or longitudinals for vessels 90 meters (295 feet) in length and greater or 2.5 times the depth of the cutouts for the beams or longitudinals for vessels less than 90 meters (295 feet) in length, unless effective compensation is provided for the cutouts.

iii) The thickness is not to be less than 1 mm per 100 mm (0.01 in. per in.) of depth plus 4 mm (0.16 in.).

iv) For vessels 90 meters (295 feet) in length and greater, the thickness is not to be less than 8.5 mm (0.34 in.) where the face area is 38.7 cm^2 (6 in^2) or less, 10 mm with 64.5 cm^2 (0.40 in. with 10 in^2), 12.5 mm with 129 cm^2 (0.50 in. with 20 in^2) and 15 mm with 193.5 cm^2 (0.60 in. with 30 in^2) or over.

v) The thickness for intermediate area is to be obtained by interpolation.

Commentary:

Alternative designs with stiffness equivalent to the specified depth/length ratio and the required section modulus may be considered, provided that the calculated results are submitted for review.

End of Commentary

5.9 Tripping Brackets

Tripping brackets are to be fitted at intervals of about 3 m (10 ft) and near any change of section. Where the breadth of the flange on either side of the web exceeds 200 mm (8 in.), tripping brackets are to be arranged to support the flange. Additional supports are to be provided for the flanges where their breadth exceeds 400 mm (16 in.).

5.11 End Attachments

The ends of deck girders and transverses are to be effectively attached by welding in which the fillet weld throat area develops the strength of the member being attached.

5.13 Deck Girders and Transverses in Tanks

Deck girders and transverses in tanks are to be obtained in the same manner as given in [5.3], except that the value of c is to be equal to 1.5 and the minimum depth of the girder is to be 0.0833ℓ (1 in. per ft of span ℓ). The minimum thickness, sizes and arrangements of the stiffeners, tripping brackets and end connections are to be the same as given in [5.7], [5.9], and [5.11].

5.15 Hatch Side Girders *(2024)*

Scantlings for hatch side girders supporting transverse deck beams or supporting hatch covers are to be obtained in the same manner as deck girders (3-2-8/5.3 through 3-2-8/5.13).

Commentary:

Where deep coamings are fitted above a deck, such as at weather decks, the girder below deck may be modified so as to obtain a combined section modulus including the coaming and the horizontal coaming stiffener, of at least 35% greater than that required by [5.3].

End of Commentary

Where hatch side girders are not continuous under deck beyond the hatchways to the nearest bulkheads, brackets extending for at least two frame spaces beyond the ends of the hatchways are to be fitted. Where hatch side girders are continuous beyond the hatchways, care is to be taken in proportioning their scantlings beyond the hatchway. Where the hatch side coaming is extended beyond the hatchway, it is not to be connected to the end bulkheads of superstructures or deckhouses.

Gusset plates are to be fitted at hatchway corners, arranged so as to effectively tie the flanges of the side coamings and extension pieces or continuous girders and the hatch-end beam flanges both beyond and in the hatchway.

7 Hatch-end Beams

7.1 Hatch-end Beam Supports

Each hatch-end beam, similar to that shown in [FIGURE 2] , which is supported by a centerline pillar but without a pillar at the hatchway corner, is to have a section modulus SM not less than obtained from the following equations:

7.1.1 Where Deck Hatch-side Girders are Fitted Fore and Aft beyond the Hatchways

$$SM = K(AB + CD)h\ell \text{ cm}^3$$

$$SM = 5.267K(AB + CD)h\ell 10^{-4} \text{ in}^3$$

7.1.2 Where Girders are not Fitted on the Line of the Hatch Side Beyond the Hatchway

$$SM = KABh\ell \text{ cm}^3$$

$$SM = 5.267KABh\ell 10^{-4} \text{ in}^3$$

where

A = length of the hatchway, in m (ft)

B = distance from the centerline to the midpoint between the hatch side and the line of the toes of the beam knees, in m (ft)

C = distance from a point midway between the centerline and the line of the hatch side to the midpoint between the hatch side and the line of the toes of the beam knees, in m (ft). Where no girder is fitted on the centerline beyond the hatchway, C is equal to B

D = distance from the hatch-end beam to the adjacent hold bulkhead, in m (ft)

h = height for the beams of the deck under consideration, as given in 3-2-7/3.1, in m (ft)

ℓ = distance from the toe of the beam knee to the centerline plus 0.305 m (1 ft), in m (ft)

K = $2.20 + 1.29(F/N)$ when $F/N \leq 0.6$

= $4.28–2.17(F/N)$ when $F/N > 0.6$

N = one-half the breadth of the vessel in way of the hatch-end beam, in m (ft)

F = distance from the side of the vessel to the hatch side girder, in m (ft)

7.3 Weather Deck Hatch-end Beams *(2024)*

Commentary:

Weather deck hatch-end beams with deep coamings above deck throughout the width of the hatch may have the flange area reduced from a point well within the line of the hatch side girder to approximately 50% of the required area at the centerline. In such cases, it is recommended that athwartship brackets be fitted above deck at the ends of the hatch-end coaming.

End of Commentary

7.5 Depth and Thickness

The depth and thickness of hatch-end beams are to be similar to those required for deck girders by [5.7] .

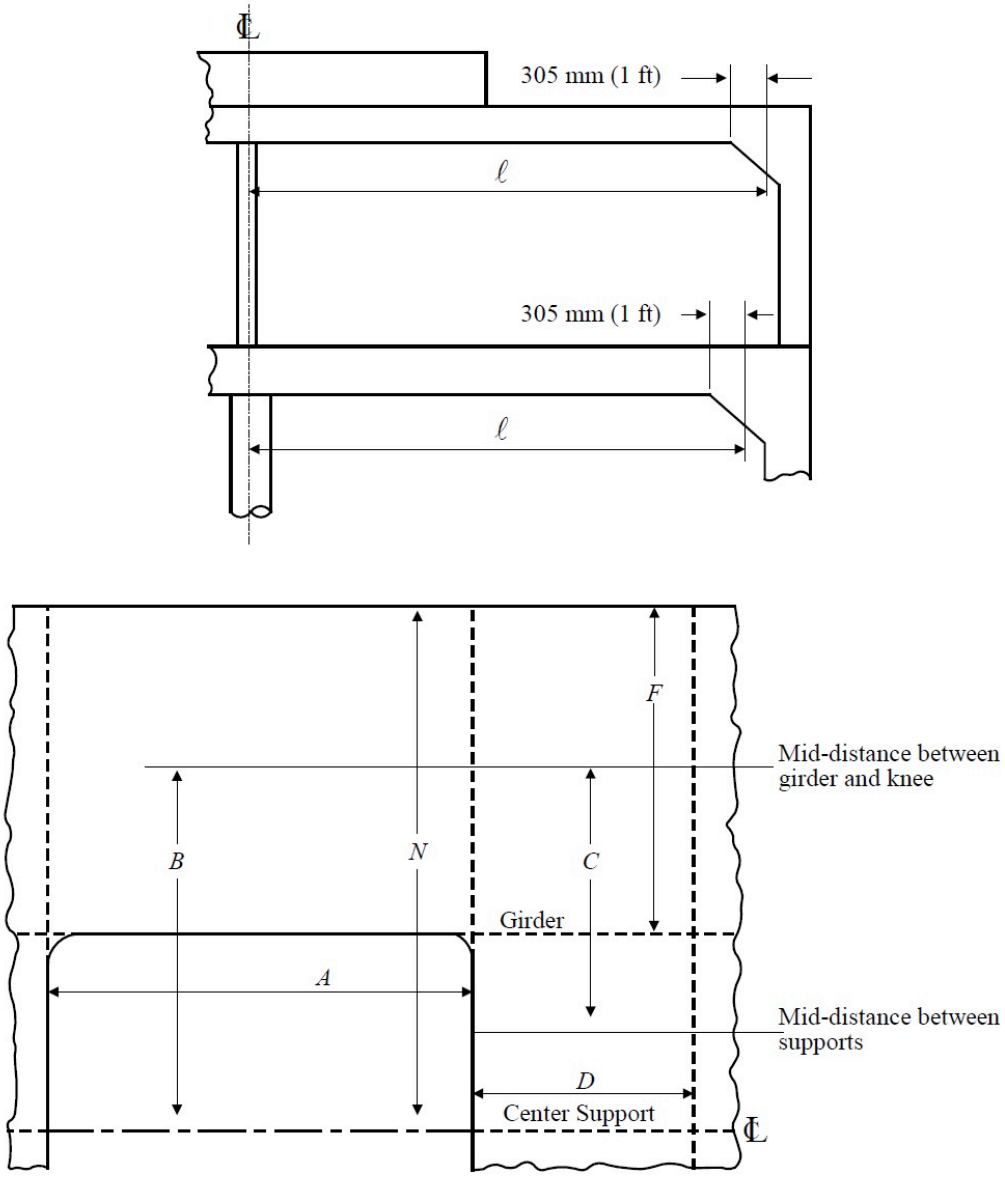
7.7 Tripping Brackets

The arrangement of tripping brackets is to be in accordance with [5.9] .

7.9 Brackets

Brackets at the ends of hatch-end beams are to be generally as described in 3-2-6/7.1. Where brackets are not fitted, the length ℓ is to be measured to the side of the vessel and the face plates or flanges on the beams are to be attached to the shell by heavy horizontal brackets extending to the adjacent frame.

FIGURE 2
Hatch-end Beams



9 Higher-strength Materials

9.1 General *(2024)*

Applications of higher-strength materials for deck girders and deck transverses are to meet the requirements of this Section, as modified by the following paragraphs. Calculations are to be submitted to show adequate resistance to buckling.

Higher strength steel deck girders contributing to longitudinal strength are to be continuous in way of transverse members of ordinary strength steel or of lesser strength higher strength steel.

9.3 Girders and Deck Transverses

Each girder and deck transverse of higher-strength material, in association with the higher-strength plating to which they are attached, are to comply with the requirements of the appropriate preceding paragraphs of this Section and is to have a section modulus SM_{hts} not less than obtained from the following equation:

$$SM_{hts} = SM(Q)$$

where

SM = required section modulus in ordinary-strength material as determined elsewhere in this Section

Q = as defined in 3-2-1/5

PART 3

CHAPTER 2
Hull Structures and Arrangements

SECTION 9
Watertight Bulkheads and Doors

1 General

1.1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1.1 Goals

The vessel structure is to be designed, constructed, operated, and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goals*
STAB 1	have adequate watertight integrity and restoring energy to prevent capsize in an intact condition.
STAB 2	have adequate subdivision and stability to provide survivability to damage or accidental conditions.
STRU 1	in the intact condition, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU 2	resist structural failure associated with accidental conditions.
STRU 3	provide protection to persons onboard, the environment and required safety services.

1.1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above stated goals, the design, construction, installation, and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Structure (STRU)	
STRU-FR1	Be equipped with closing appliances of adequate strength for hull openings
STRU-FR2	Scantlings are to have sufficient strength to resist failure and excessive deformation associated with buckling and yielding when subjected to loads in the flooded condition.
STRU-FR3	Proportions of structural members are to be sufficient to prevent buckling.

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
STRU-FR4	The termination of structural members is to be designed to avoid stress concentrations that may lead to yielding or fatigue cracks.
STRU-FR5	The workmanship is to avoid discontinuities, misalignment and other harmful details that may lead to failure in service.
Stability (STAB)	
STAB-FR1	Where penetrations are carried through watertight bulkheads and internal decks, arrangements are to be made to maintain the watertight integrity of the bulkheads.
STAB-FR2	Enable the openings/penetrations through watertight boundaries to be closed rapidly.
STAB-FR3	Suitable tightness of bulkheads is to be provided.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

1.2 Application *(1 July 2022)*

All vessels are to be provided with strength and watertight bulkheads in accordance with this Section. In all cases, the plans submitted are to clearly show the location and extent of the bulkheads. Bulkheads which are deep tank boundaries are to have scantlings which comply with Section 3-2-10.

1.3 Openings and Penetrations *(2024)*

The number of openings in watertight subdivisions is to be kept to a minimum, compatible with the design and proper working of the vessel. Where penetrations of watertight bulkheads and internal decks (see 3-2-15/17.3) are necessary for access, piping, ventilation, electrical cables, etc., arrangements are to be made to maintain the watertight integrity.

Commentary:

Relaxation in the watertightness of openings above the freeboard deck may be considered, provided it is demonstrated that any progressive flooding can be easily controlled and that the safety of the vessel is not impaired.

End of Commentary

Ventilation penetrations through watertight subdivision bulkheads are to be avoided. However where unavoidable, either the ventilation ducting is to satisfy watertight bulkhead requirements or watertight closing appliances are to be installed at the penetrations. For ventilation penetrations below the bulkhead deck or below damage equilibrium waterlines, the closing appliances are to be operable from the bridge. Where the penetration is located above the bulkhead deck and damage waterline, local manual controls may be provided at the closing appliances, on one or both sides of the bulkhead, so that the controls will be accessible in the prescribed flooded conditions.

1.5 Sluice Valves and Cocks

No valve or cock for sluicing purposes is to be fitted on a collision bulkhead. Where fitted on other watertight bulkheads, sluice valves or cocks are to comply with the requirements of 4-6-2/9.7.4.

1.7 Strength Bulkheads

All vessels are to have suitable arrangements to provide effective transverse strength and stiffness of the hull. This may be accomplished by fitting transverse bulkheads extending to the strength deck. In vessels

of specific type, equivalent transverse strength may be obtained by fitting partial bulkheads, deep webs or combinations of these, to maintain effective transverse continuity of structure.

1.9 Testing *(2024)*

Requirements for testing are contained in Part 3, Chapter 7. For watertight doors, also see [9.11] .

1.11 Plans and Particulars to be Submitted for Watertight Doors *(1 July 2022)*

1.11.1 Door Construction

i) General Arrangement

- ***a)*** Door Assembly
- ***b)*** Frame Assembly

ii) Scantlings Arrangement Details

iii) Details of welded construction, as applicable

1.11.2 Door Systems and Appurtenances

i) Securing Devices

ii) Sealing Arrangements

iii) Hydraulic System Arrangements, as applicable

iv) Controls, Alarms, and Monitoring Arrangements, as applicable

1.11.3 Data

i) Prototype test procedure, measurements, and data

ii) Door Rating

- ***a)*** Type
- ***b)*** Class
- ***c)*** Size
- ***d)*** Opening Hand
- ***e)*** Pressure Head
- ***f)*** Fire Endurance Rating, as applicable

iii) Other limiting parameters

1.11.4 Material Specifications

The material specification or material grade for door panel, panel stiffness, door frame, tracks, gaskets and all attachments are to be specified on the drawings.

1.13 Definitions *(1 July 2022)*

1.13.1 Watertight

Capable of preventing the passage of water in any direction under a design head. The design head for any part of a structure shall be determined by reference to its location relative to the bulkhead deck or freeboard deck, as applicable, or to the most unfavorable equilibrium/intermediate waterplane, in accordance with the applicable subdivision and damage stability regulations, whichever is the greater. A watertight door is thus one that will maintain the watertight integrity of the subdivision bulkhead in which it is located.

1.13.2 Equilibrium Waterplane

The waterplane in still water when, taking account of flooding due to an assumed damage, the weight and buoyancy forces acting on a vessel are in balance. This relates to the final condition when no further flooding takes place or after cross flooding is completed.

1.13.3 Intermediate Waterplane

The waterplane in still water, which represents the instantaneous floating position of a vessel at some intermediate stage between commencement and completion of flooding when, taking account of the assumed instantaneous state of flooding, the weight and buoyancy forces acting on a vessel are in balance.

1.13.4 Sliding Door or Rolling Door

A door having a horizontal or vertical motion generally parallel to the plane of the door.

1.13.5 Hinged Door

A door having a pivoting motion about one vertical or horizontal edge.

3 Arrangement of Watertight Bulkheads

3.1 Collision Bulkhead

3.1.1 General *(2024)*

A collision bulkhead is to be fitted on all vessels and be watertight up to the freeboard deck. It is to be intact, without openings, except as permitted in 4-6-2/9.7.3. It is to extend at least to the freeboard deck and in general, to be in one plane, however, the bulkhead may have steps or recesses provided they are within the limits prescribed in [3.1.2] .

In the case of vessels having long superstructures at the fore end, it is to be extended weathertight to the first superstructure deck above the freeboard deck. This extension need not be fitted directly over the bulkhead below, provided that the location of the extension meets the requirements in [3.1.2] and the part of the deck which forms the step or recess is made effectively weathertight.

Commentary:

Where bow-doors are fitted and sloping loading ramps form part of the extension of a collision bulkhead, the part of the ramps that are more than 2.3 m (7.5 ft) above the freeboard deck may extend forward of the limit below. [FIGURE 1B] .

End of Commentary

3.1.2 Location *(2024)*

The collision bulkhead is to be located at any point not less than $0.05L_r$ or 10 m (32.8 ft), whichever is less, abaft of the reference point. On vessels having 500 or more gross tonnage, except as specially permitted, it is not to be further than $0.08L_r$ or $0.05L_r + 3$ m (9.84 ft), whichever is greater, from the reference point.

Commentary:

If the location of the collision bulkhead, wholly or partially, is not within the range prescribed by 3-2-9/3.1.2 above, such deviation may be accepted on a case-by-case basis provided:

- It can be demonstrated that in a fully loaded condition, to the summer draft and on an even keel, all intact and damage stability criteria are satisfied with the space(s) forward of the collision bulkhead being flooded.
- Essential equipment (per 4-8-1/7.3.3) is not installed in the compartments being flooded.
- The acceptance is with the concurrence of the flag Administration

End of Commentary

3.1.3 Reference Point *(2024)*

The reference point in determining the location of the collision bulkhead is the forward end of L_r. In the case of vessels having any part of the underwater body, such as bulbous bow, extending forward of the forward end of L_r, the reference point located at a distance x forward of the forward end of L_r is to be used. The distance $x$is the least of the following:

i) Half the distance between the forward end of L_r and the extreme forward end of the extension, $p/2$

ii) $0.015L_r$ or

iii) 3 m (9.84 ft.). See [FIGURE 1A] .

L_r = (for passenger vessels) length between perpendiculars at the deepest subdivision load line. The forward end of L_r is to coincide with the fore side of stem on the waterline on which L_r is measured.

L_r = (for other vessels) L_f as defined in 3-1-1/3.3.

3.3 After-peak Bulkhead *(2024)*

An after-peak bulkhead is to be fitted in all screw vessels arranged to enclose the shaft tubes in a watertight compartment. The bulkhead is to extend to the freeboard deck, or efficient partial bulkheads or deep transverse webs are to extend to the freeboard deck.

Commentary:

The requirement to enclose the shaft tubes in a watertight compartment may be specially considered where this arrangement is impracticable, provided it does not adversely affect the watertight integrity of the hull.

Refer to IACS UI SC 93 interpretation of SOLAS Chapter II-1 Regulation 12.

The after peak bulkhead may not be required where azimuthal thrusters and/or azimuthing pods having no shaft tubes are the means of main propulsion.

End of Commentary

FIGURE 1A
Collision Bulkhead in Vessels with Bow Door *(2024)*

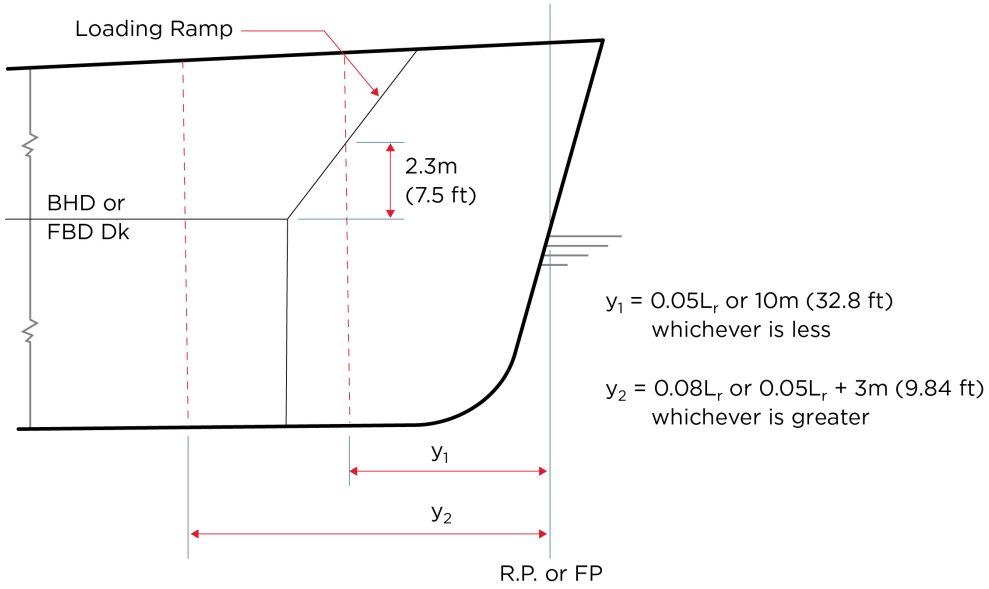
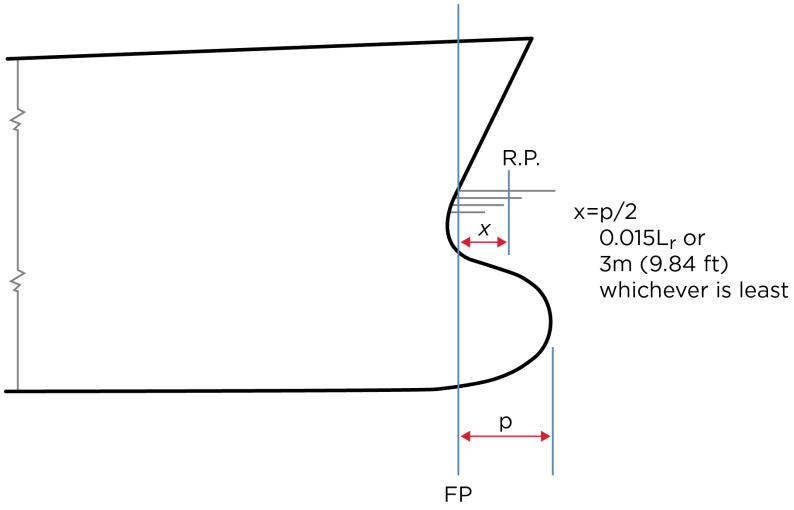


FIGURE 1B
Reference Point for Vessels with Bulbous Bow *(2024)*



3.5 Machinery Spaces

Machinery spaces are to be enclosed by watertight bulkheads which extend to the freeboard deck. In those cases where the length of the machinery space is unusually large in association with a small freeboard, the attention of designers is called to the desirability of extending the bulkheads to a deck above the freeboard deck, the fitting of an intermediate bulkhead, or the inclusion of a watertight deck over the machinery space which, in association with tight casings, might confine the amount of flooding in the event of damage in way of the machinery space. See 3-3-1/3.3.

3.7 Hold Bulkheads

3.7.1 General

In addition to the foregoing required watertight bulkheads, the number and arrangement of cargo space bulkheads are to satisfy the subdivision and damage stability requirements in 3-3-1/3.3. Review procedures for this requirement are indicated in 3-3-1/5.

3.7.2 Carriage of Water Ballast and Liquid Cargoes in Cargo Holds *(2024)*

Where a cargo hold is intended to be used for the carriage of water ballast or liquid cargoes, unless otherwise an operational restriction, the hold is to be completely filled and the scantlings of the inner bottom, side structure, transverse bulkheads, deck and hatch covers are also to be in accordance with Section 3-2-10. The hatch cover and securing devices are to be suitable for the internal loading. See 3-2-15/9.

Commentary:

Special consideration may be given to the scantlings of cargo holds partially filled with water ballast or liquid cargoes. Full particulars should be submitted.

End of Commentary

3.9 Chain Lockers *(2024)*

i) Chain lockers and chain pipes are to be made watertight up to the weather deck. The arrangements are to be such that accidental flooding of the chain locker cannot result in damage to auxiliaries or equipment necessary for the proper operation of the vessel, nor in progressive flooding into other spaces. Bulkheads between separate chain lockers not forming a part of subdivision bulkhead (see [FIGURE 2] A below) or bulkheads which form a common boundary of chain lockers (see [FIGURE 2] B below), need not be watertight.

ii) Where means of access into chain lockers are provided, they are to be closed by a watertight manhole cover secured by closely spaced bolts. Closely spaced bolts mean bolt spacing not exceeding 5 times bolt nominal diameter. Doors are not permitted.

iii) Where a means of access to chain lockers is located below the weather deck, the access cover and its securing arrangements are to be in accordance with recognized standards (such as ISO 5894), or equivalent for watertight manhole covers. Butterfly nuts and/or hinged bolts are prohibited as the securing mechanism for the access cover.

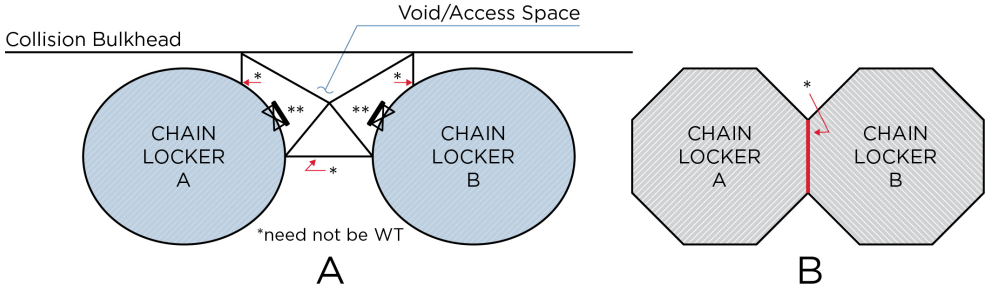
iv) For closure of chain pipes, see 3-2-15/21.11.

Commentary:

The arrangements on vessels that are not subject to the International Convention on Load Lines or its Protocol may be specially considered with respect to the safety of the vessel and the requirements of the flag Administration.

End of Commentary

FIGURE 2
Chain Lockers Arrangement *(2024)*



5 Construction of Watertight Bulkheads

5.1 Plating *(1 July 2022)*

Watertight bulkhead plating is to be of the thickness obtained from the following equation:

$t = sk\sqrt{qh}/c + 1.5$ mm but not less than 6 mm or $s/200 + 2.5$ mm, whichever is greater

$t = sk\sqrt{qh}/c + 0.06$ in. but not less than 0.24 in. or $s/200 + 0.10$ in., whichever is greater

where

t = thickness, in mm (in.).

s = spacing of stiffeners, in mm (in.)

k = $(3.075\sqrt{\alpha} - 2.077)/(\alpha + 0.272)$ where $1 \le \alpha \le 2$

= 1.0 where $\alpha > 2$

α = aspect ratio of the panel (longer edge/shorter edge)

q = $235/Y$ N/mm^2 ($24/Y$ kgf/mm^2, $34,000/Y$ lbs/in^2)

Y = specified minimum yield point or yield strength, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, lbs/in^2), as defined in [2-1-1/13] of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)* for the higher-strength material or 0.72 of the specified minimum tensile strength, whichever is the lesser

h = distance from the lower edge of the plate, in m (ft), to the bulkhead deck at center, if freeboard and bulkhead decks coincide

= not less than the distance from the lower edge of the plate, in m (ft), to the designated freeboard deck at center when freeboard deck is lower than the bulkhead deck (refer to 3-1-1/15.1).

c = 254 (254, 460) for collision bulkhead below freeboard or bulkhead deck

= 290 (290, 525) for other watertight bulkhead

The plating of after-peak bulkheads below the lowest flat is not to be less than required for solid floors in the after peak space. See 3-2-5/9.

For vessels under 30.5 m (100 ft) in length, the following deductions may be made to the thicknesses obtained from the above equation for mild steel only.

L meters	*Deduction mm*	*L feet*	*Deduction in.*
24.40 to 30.50	0.25	80 to 100	0.01
21.35 to 24.40	0.50	70 to 80	0.02
18.30 to 21.35	0.75	60 to 70	0.03
Under 18.30	1.00	Under 60	0.04

Non-tight transverse strength bulkhead plating is to be similar to that required for watertight bulkheads. Other non-tight strength bulkheads plating is to be not less than s/150, or 4 mm (0.16 in.), whichever is greater. The section modulus of non-watertight bulkhead stiffeners is to be not less than one-half of that required by [5.3] .

5.3 Stiffeners *(2024)*

The following requirements are be complied with:

i) Each stiffener, in association with the plating to which it is attached, is to have a section modulus SM not less than obtained from the following equation:

$SM = 7.8kchs\ell^2$ cm^3

$SM = 0.0041kchs\ell^2$ in^3

where

k = 1.00 for stiffeners on watertight bulkheads

= 1.25 for stiffeners on collision bulkheads located below the freeboard deck

c = 0.30 for stiffeners having effective bracket attachments at both ends of their spans

= 0.43 for stiffeners having effective brackets at one end and supported by clip connections or by girders or webs at the other end

= 0.56 for stiffeners having clip connections at both ends, or clip connections at one end and supported by girders or webs at the other end, and for stiffeners in the uppermost tween decks having no end attachments

= 0.60 for other stiffeners having no end attachments and for stiffeners between girders or webs

For vessels under 46 meters (150 feet) in length, the above values for c may be 0.29, 0.38, 0.46 and 0.58, respectively, and *h* may be taken as the distance in meters or in feet from the middle of ℓ to the bulkhead deck at center in every case. For vessels between 46 and 65.5 meters (150 and 215 feet), intermediate values for c may be obtained by interpolation.

s = spacing of the stiffeners, in m (ft.)

ℓ = distance between the heels of the end attachments; where horizontal girders are fitted, ℓ is the distance from the heel of the end attachment to the first girder, or the distance between the horizontal girders, in m (ft)

h = distance from the middle of ℓ, in m (ft), to the bulkhead deck at center if freeboard and bulkhead decks coincide

= not less than the distance from the middle of ℓ, in m (ft), to the designated freeboard deck at center, when freeboard deck is lower than the bulkhead deck (see 3-1-1/13.1)

= where the distance indicated above is less than 6.1 m (20 ft), *h* is to be taken as 0.8 times the distance plus 1.22 m (4 ft)

= For passenger vessels, *h* is to be taken as not less than the distance to the margin line.

For an effective bracket, for the application of the above values of c, see [5.4].

ii) For higher-strength steel stiffeners attached to the higher-strength steel plating, its section modulus (SM_{hs}) is not to be less than obtained from the following equation, provided that all other strength criteria are satisfied:

$SM_{hs} = Q\,(SM)$ cm^3 (in^3)

where

SM = stiffener section modulus as defined in the above;

Q = as defined in 3-2-1/5.3

5.4 Stiffener End Brackets *(2024)*

Where end brackets are provided and taking into account [5.3.i.]), they are to have scantlings not less than shown in [TABLE 1A] for vessels 90 meters (295 feet) or greater in length or [TABLE 1B] for vessels less than 90 meters (295 feet) in length. As effective brackets for the application of the values of c in [5.3.i.]), the bracket is to extend onto the stiffener for a distance at least one-eighth of the length ℓ of the stiffener.

Commentary:

Where the length of an effective bracket exceeds one-eighth of the length ℓ of the stiffener, a reduction in ℓ may be taken in accordance with [FIGURE 3] .

Where the length of the bracket is greater than 1.5 times web depth of stiffener but less than one-eighth of the length ℓ of the stiffener, a reduction in ℓ may be taken in accordance with [FIGURE 3] .

Refer to the Commentary in 3-2-10/3.3 for guidance on sniped ends.

End of Commentary

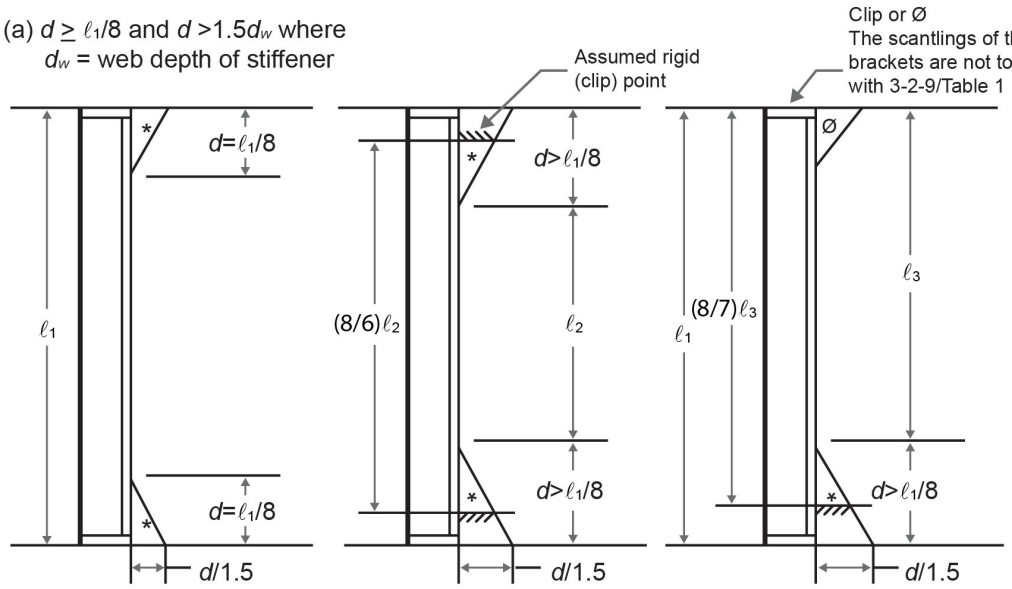
The short arm of the effective bracket is to be not less than $^2/_3$ of the longer arm. In cases where the short arm is less than $^2/_3$ of the longer arm, the effective length of the bracket is to be 1.5 times of the short arm as shown in [FIGURE 3] .

5.5 Attachments *(2024)*

Lower brackets to inner bottoms are to extend over the transverse frame or floor adjacent to the bulkhead or are to be attached to transmit the loads to the inner bottom longitudinals effectively. Where stiffeners cross horizontal girders, they are to be attached to transmit the loads on the stiffeners effectively to the horizontal girders.

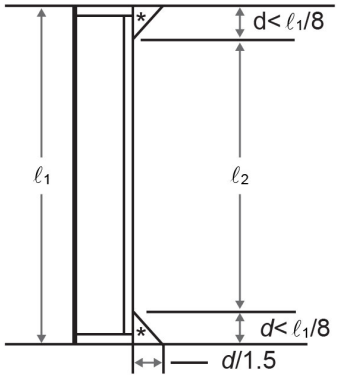
FIGURE 3
Bracket Connections

(a) $d \geq \ell_1/8$ and $d > 1.5 d_w$ where
d_w = web depth of stiffener



c=0.30 $\ell=\ell_1$	c=0.30 c=0.56	$\ell=(8/6)\ell_2$ or $\ell=\ell_2+(d/4) \times 2$	c=0.43 c=0.56	$\ell=(8/7)\ell_3$ or $\ell=\ell_3+(d/4)$

(b) $1.5 d_w < d < \ell_1/8$ where d_w=web depth of stiffener



c=0.56 $\ell=\ell_2+(d/4) \times 2$

Notes:
- d = length of bracket arm
- The scantlings of the brackets are to comply with 3-2-9/Table 1A & 1B

TABLE 1A
Thickness and Flanges of Brackets and Knees for Vessels ≥ 90 m (295 ft) in Length

Millimeters			
Depth of Longer Arm	*Thickness*		*Width of Flange*
	Plain	*Flanged*	
150	6.5		
175	7.0		

Inches			
Depth of Longer Arm	*Thickness*		*Width of Flange*
	Plain	*Flanged*	
6.0	0.26		
7.5	0.28		

Millimeters				*Inches*			
Depth of Longer Arm	*Thickness*		*Width of Flange*	*Depth of Longer Arm*	*Thickness*		*Width of Flange*
	Plain	*Flanged*			*Plain*	*Flanged*	
200	7.0	6.5	30	9.0	0.30	0.26	1 ¼
225	7.5	6.5	30	10.5	0.32	0.26	1 ¼
250	8.0	6.5	30	12.0	0.32	0.28	1 ½
275	8.0	7.0	35	13.5	0.36	0.28	1 ½
300	8.5	7.0	35	15.0	0.38	0.30	1 ¾
325	9.0	7.0	40	16.5	0.40	0.30	1 ¾
350	9.0	7.5	40	18.0	0.42	0.32	2
375	9.5	7.5	45	19.5	0.44	0.32	2
400	10.0	7.5	45	21.0	0.46	0.34	2 ¼
425	10.0	8.0	45	22.5	0.48	0.34	2 ¼
450	10.5	8.0	50	24.0	0.50	0.36	2 ½
475	11.0	8.0	50	25.5	0.52	0.36	2 ½
500	11.0	8.5	55	27.0	0.54	0.38	2 ¾
525	11.5	8.5	55	28.5	0.56	0.38	2 ¾
550	12.0	8.5	55	30.0	0.58	0.40	3
600	12.5	9.0	60	33.0		0.42	3 ¼
650	13.0	9.5	65	36.0		0.44	3 ½
700	14.0	9.5	70	39.0		0.46	3 ¾
750	14.5	10.0	75	42.0		0.48	4
800		10.5	80	45.0		0.50	4 ¼
850		10.5	85				
900		11.0	90				
950		11.5	90				
1000		11.5	95				
1050		12.0	100				
1100		12.5	105				
1150		12.5	110				
1200		13.0	110				

Note: The thickness of brackets is to be suitably increased in cases where the depth at throat is less than 70% that of the arm of bracket or knee.

TABLE 1B
Thickness and Flanges of Brackets for Vessels < 90 m (295 ft) in Length

Metric

Length of Face f, mm	*Thickness, mm*		*Width of Flange, mm*
	Plain	*Flanged*	
Not exceeding 305	5.0	—	—
Over 305 to 455	6.5	5.0	38
Over 455 to 660	8.0	6.5	50
Over 660 to 915	9.5	8.0	63
Over 915 to 1370	11.0	9.5	75

Inch

Length of Face f, in.	*Thickness, in.*		*Width of Flange, in.*
	Plain	*Flanged*	
Not exceeding 12	$^3/_{16}$	—	—
Over 12 to 18	$^1/_4$	$^3/_{16}$	$1^1/_2$
Over 18 to 26	$^5/_{16}$	$^1/_4$	2
Over 26 to 36	$^3/_8$	$^5/_{16}$	$2^1/_2$
Over 36 to 54	$^7/_{16}$	$^3/_8$	3

5.7 Girders and Webs

5.7.1 Strength Requirements

Each girder and web which supports bulkhead stiffeners is to have section modulus SM not less than obtained from the following equation:

$$SM = 4.74kchs\ell^2 \quad \text{cm}^3$$

$$SM = 0.0025kchs\ell^2 \quad \text{in}^3$$

where

k = 1.00 for girders and webs on watertight bulkheads
= 1.25 for girders and webs on collision bulkheads

c = 1.00

h = as defined in [5.3] , measured from the middle of s for girders and from the middle of ℓ for webs.

s = sum of half lengths (on each side of girder or web) of the stiffeners supported, in m (ft)

ℓ = span measured between the heels of the end attachments, in m (ft).Where brackets are fitted, the length ℓ may be modified as indicated in 3-2-6/7.1.

5.7.2 Proportions

Girders and webs are to have depths not less than 0.0832ℓ (1 in. per ft of span ℓ) plus one-quarter of the depth of the slots for the stiffeners; the thickness is not to be less than 1 mm per 100 mm (0.01 in. per in.) of depth plus 3 mm (0.12 in.) but need not exceed 11.5 mm (0.46 in.).

5.7.3 Tripping Brackets

Tripping brackets are to be fitted at intervals of about 3 m (10 ft), and near any change of section. Where the width of the face flange exceeds 200 mm (8 in.) on either side of the girder or web, tripping brackets are to be arranged to support the flange.

7 Construction of Corrugated Bulkheads

7.1 Plating *(2024)*

The plating of corrugated bulkheads is to be of the thickness required by [5.1] with the following modification. The spacing to be used is the greater of dimensions a or c, as indicated in [FIGURE 4] . The angle φ is to be 45 degrees or more. Where upper and lower stools are provided to support the bulkheads, the plating of the stools is also to be of the thickness required by [5.1] .

The thickness and material properties of the stool top and/or bottom and the attached stool side plating is to be sufficient to meet the bulkhead stiffness requirements for the corrugation flanges.

7.3 Stiffeners

The section modulus SM for a corrugated bulkhead is to be not less than obtained from the following equation:

$SM = 7.8chs\ell^2$ cm^3

$SM = 0.0041chs\ell^2$ in^3

where

c = 0.56

h = as defined in [5.3]

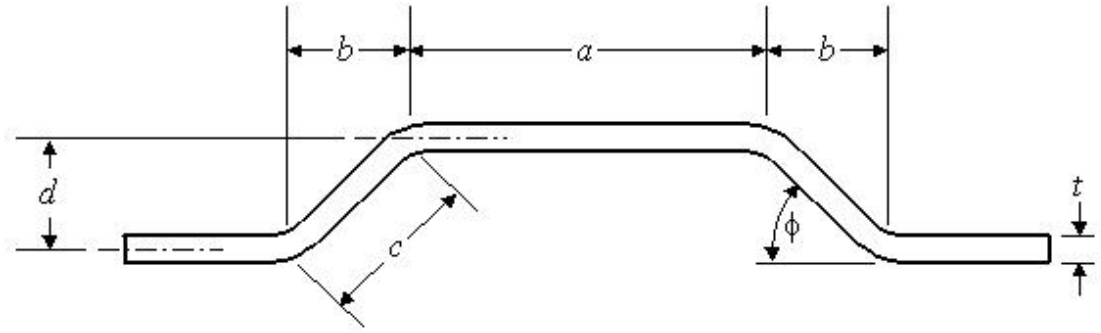
s = $a + b$ (See [FIGURE4])

ℓ = distance between supporting members, in m (ft), both for vertical and horizontal corrugations. Where applicable, the distance ℓ may be measured between the upper and lower stools except, that the credit for upper stools of rectangular cross section is not to exceed twice the width of the cross section ("$2 \times b$" in [FIGURE 6]) and trapezoidal cross section is not to exceed twice the width of the mid-segment ("$b' + b$" in [FIGURE 6])

The developed section modulus SM_A may be obtained from the following equation, where a, t and d are as indicated in [FIGURE 4] .

$$SM_A = td^2/6 + (adt/2)$$

FIGURE 4
Corrugated Bulkhead



7.5 End Connections *(2024)*

The structural arrangements and size of welding at the ends of corrugations are to be designed to develop the required strength of corrugated stiffeners. Joints within 10% of the depth of corrugation from the outer surface of corrugation, d_1, are to have double continuous welds with fillet size w not less than 0.7 times the thickness of bulkhead plating or penetration welds of equal strength.See [FIGURE 5] and 3-2-19/15.

Where no stools are fitted for the vertically corrugated bulkhead, the following requirements are to be complied with:

i) The corrugation webs are to be supported by brackets, beams, diaphragms or girders.

ii) The corrugation flanges are to be in line with the supporting floors. Scallops and cut-outs in the supporting members aligned with corrugation flanges and webs are to be closed by insert collar plates. Alternatives to closing the scallops and cut-outs may be accepted provided that adequate strength to the supporting members is verified by special review.

iii) The thickness and material properties of the floors in line with the corrugation flanges are to be at least equal to those provided for the corrugation flanges.

iv) Reinforcement may be required for access openings in supporting floors, girders, beams, and transverses.

Commentary:

Alternatives to closing the scallops and cut-outs may be accepted provided that adequate strength of the supporting members is verified by special review.

Calculations or Finite Element analysis may be submitted to justify the design of the supporting structure in way of the connection. Finite Element Analysis is to comply with Section 3-2-20.

End of Commentary

FIGURE 5
Corrugated Bulkhead Upper Stool Credit

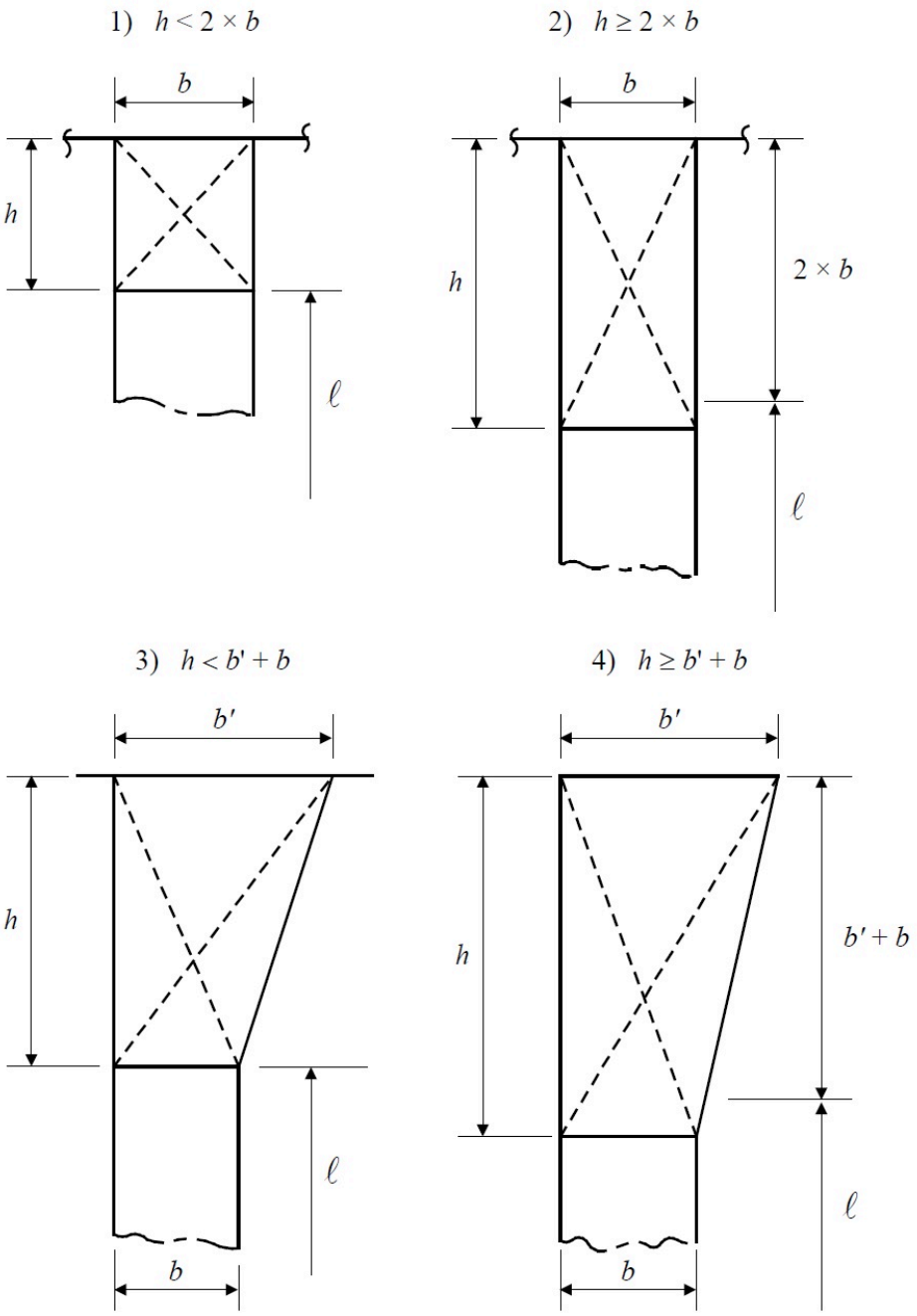
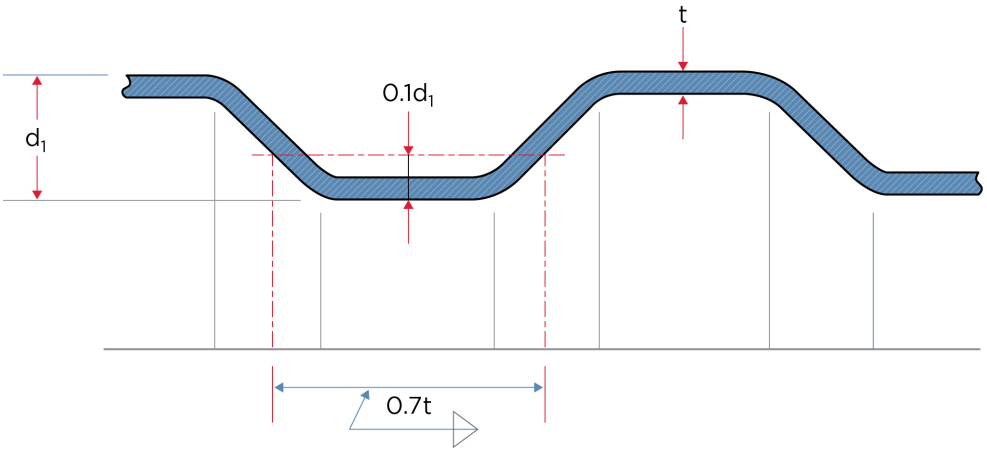


FIGURE 6
Corrugated Bulkhead End Connections *(2024)*



9 Watertight Doors *(2024)*

Commentary:

The requirements in 3-2-9/9 are based on IACS Unified Interpretation (UI) SC 156.

End of Commentary

9.1 General *(2024)*

9.1.1 Definitions *(2024)*

i) *Watertight*
Capable of preventing the passage of water in any direction under a design head. The design head for any part of a structure is to be determined by reference to its location relative to the bulkhead deck or freeboard deck, as applicable, or to the most unfavorable equilibrium/ intermediate waterplane, in accordance with the applicable subdivision and damage stability regulations, whichever is the greater. A watertight door is thus one that will maintain the watertight integrity of the subdivision bulkhead in which it is located.

ii) *Equilibrium Waterplane*
The waterplane in still water when, taking account of flooding due to an assumed damage, the weight and buoyancy forces acting on a vessel are in balance. This relates to the final condition when no further flooding takes place or after cross flooding is completed.

iii) *Intermediate Waterplane*
The waterplane in still water, which represents the instantaneous floating position of a vessel at some intermediate stage between commencement and completion of flooding when, taking account of the assumed instantaneous state of flooding, the weight and buoyancy forces acting on a vessel are in balance.

iv) *Sliding Door or Rolling Door*
A door having a horizontal or vertical motion generally parallel to the plane of the door.

v) *Hinged Door*
A door having a pivoting motion about one vertical or horizontal edge.

Commentary:

Vessels not required to carry out damage stability calculations should use the "*h*" defined in [5] instead of the equilibrium/intermediate waterplane.

End of Commentary

9.1.2 Plans and Particulars to be Submitted *(2024)*

9.1.2(a) Door Construction

i) General Arrangement

- ***a)*** Door Assembly
- ***b)*** Frame Assembly

ii) Scantling Details

iii) Welding details

9.1.2(b) Door Systems and Appurtenances

i) Securing Devices

ii) Sealing Arrangements

iii) Hydraulics System Arrangements as applicable

iv) Controls, Alarms, and Monitoring Arrangements as applicable

9.1.2(c) Data

i) Proto type test procedure, measurements, and data

ii) Door Rating

- ***a)*** Type
- ***b)*** Fire Class (A or B) if applicable
- ***c)*** Size
- ***d)*** Opening Hand
- ***e)*** Pressure Head
- ***f)*** Fire Endurance Rating as applicable

iii) Other limiting parameters

9.1.2(d) Material Specifications

The material specification or material grade for door panel, panel stiffness, door frame, tracks, and all attachments are to be specified on the drawings.

All doors, except those which are to be permanently closed at sea, are to be capable of being opened and closed by hand (and by power, where applicable) locally from both sides of the doors, with the ship listed to either side. For passenger ships, the angle of list at which operation by hand is to be possible is 15 degrees. For cargo ships, the angle of list at which operation by hand is to be possible is 30 degrees.

For Bow, Stern and Side Shell Doors, refer to Section 3-2-16.

9.2 Doors Used While at Sea *(2024)*

Doors that are used while at sea are to be sliding watertight doors. For control and monitoring system of doors, see [4-9-8/1.3] .

For vessels less than 80 m (262.4 ft) in length (L_f as defined in 3-1-1/3.3), hinged quick-acting doors operable from both sides of the door are permitted above a deck where the molded line at its lowest point at side is at least 2.14 m (7 ft) above the deepest load line. Hinged quick-acting doors operable from both sides are also permitted in way of inboard compartments that are not within the assumed extent of damage that may be applicable to the vessel.

9.3 Access Doors and Hatches Normally Closed at Sea

9.3.1 General Requirements *(2024)*

i) Access doors and hatches located in watertight bulkheads (see 3-2-15/17.3) and normally closed at sea may be constructed as hinged type fitted with gaskets and dogs spaced and designed to maintain watertightness. For the control and monitoring system of doors, see [4-9-8/1.5] . A notice is to be permanently affixed on both sides of each closing appliance to the effect that it is to be kept closed while at sea.

ii) The primary securing devices of such doors are to be of a single action type (e.g., all door dogs are in closed/opened position simultaneously by a manually-operated single handle, central locking device or equivalent). Dogs (twist tightening handles) with wedges are not acceptable.

iii) Additionally, where a vessel is a Type A ship over 150 m (492 ft) in length or a Type B ship over 100 m (328 ft) in length with a freeboard less than that based on Table B in Regulation 28 of the International Convention on Load Lines 1966, the final waterline after flooding with the sinkage, heel and trim accounted for is to be below the lower edge of those openings through which progressive down-flooding may take place, unless the doors are remotely operated. However, watertight doors separating a main machinery space from the steering gear compartment may be a hinged, type provided that the sill of such doors is above the summer load waterline.

The requirements in the following [9.3.2] and [9.3.3] apply to offshore support vessels.

9.3.2 Additional Requirements for Steel Access Doors and Hatches in Watertight Bulkheads *(2024)*

Where hinged steel doors or hatches are fitted, the thickness of the plating is to be not less than required by [5.1] nor less than the surrounding bulkhead plating. The maximum allowable stress and deflection under the design head h and the minimum plate thickness are as follows.

Maximum allowable stress	$0.8Y$, and not exceeding the critical buckling strength in compression
Maximum allowable deflection	0.0056ℓ
Plate thickness	$0.01s$, but not less than 6 mm (0.24 in.)

where Y and s are as defined in [5.1] .

Commentary:

Stiffeners, whenever possible, should be aligned with contact points of dogs/hinges.

End of Commentary

9.3.2(a)

The effective depth of the door panel stiffeners is not to be less than 0.04ℓ . Stiffeners, whenever possible, are to be aligned with contact points of dogs/hinges All stiffeners are to be welded to the door panel edge stiffener. Each stiffener in association with the plating to which it is attached is to have section modulus SM not less than obtained from the following equation:

$$SM = 7.8hs\ell^2 \text{ cm}^3$$

$$SM = 0.0041hs\ell^2 \text{ in}^3$$

where

h = distance, in m (ft), from the middle of ℓ to the freeboard deck at center

s = spacing of the stiffeners, in m (ft)

ℓ = unsupported length of the stiffener, in m (ft)

9.3.2(b) Securing Arrangements.

i) Arrangement and spacing are to be determined with due attention to the water-tightness, the type and the size of the door or hatch, as well as the stiffness of the door/hatch edges between the securing devices. For hinged watertight doors and for all watertight hatch covers, the securing devices are to be of adequate strength to carry the total load on the door or cover corresponding to the head to the bulkhead deck or freeboard deck and not exceeding the stress level given in 3-2-9/9.3.2.

ii) The sealing pressure between door/hatch cover and coaming sufficient to keep water-tightness is to be maintained by the securing devices. This packing line pressure is to be at least 5 N/mm^2 (0.51 kgf/mm^2, 725 lbs/in^2) under the design head h applied from the opposite side to the door/hatch opening direction.

iii) The door/hatch edge stiffness is to be sufficient to maintain adequate sealing pressure between securing devices without distortion. The moment of inertia, I, of edge elements is not to be less than:

$I = c_i p a^4$ cm^4 (in^4)

where

c_i = 6 (58.8, 0.000218)

p = sealing line pressure, in N/mm derived from design head design pressure corresponding to the head to the bulkhead or freeboard deck h, plus 5 N/mm^2 (0.51 kgf/mm^2, 725 lbs/in^2)

a = spacing, in m, of securing devices.

The seals and arrangement of the securing devices are to be such that in the secured position, with the seal compressed to the manufacturer's requirements, there is to be complete peripheral steel to steel contact between the doors and hatch cover edge structure and the bulkhead frame around the opening.

9.3.3 Strength Requirements for Aluminum Access Doors and Hatches in Watertight Bulkheads *(2024)*

Watertight access doors/hatches are to withstand the water pressure to which they may be subjected to and tested for that pressure before installing on board. The doors, which may be required to be opened at sea, are to be of the sliding type. All other doors/hatches may be constructed hinged and fitted with gaskets and dogs spaced and designed to be watertight. The maximum allowable stress and deflection under the design head h and the minimum plate thickness are as follows.

- Maximum allowable stress — $0.235U$, where U is the minimum ultimate strength of the material.
- Maximum allowable deflection — 0.0022ℓ
- Plate thickness — is not to be less in thickness than $0.9Q_o\%$ of the spacing of stiffeners or $5.4Q_o$ mm ($0.22Q_o$ in.), whichever is greater.

9.3.3(a) Plating

Plating is to be of the thickness obtained from the following equations.

For $h \leq 18m(59ft)$

$$t_{al} = \frac{0.9\left(Q_o + \sqrt{Q_o}\right)}{2}\{s[(h+6.1)/1830] + 3.05\}\text{mm}$$

$$t_{al} = \frac{0.9\left(Q_o + \sqrt{Q_o}\right)}{2}\{s[(h+20)/6000] + 0.12\}\text{in.}$$

For $h > 18m(59ft)$

$$t_{al} = \frac{0.9\left(Q_o + \sqrt{Q_o}\right)}{2}\{s[(h+21.5)/3000] + 3.05\}\text{mm}$$

$$t_{al} = \frac{0.9\left(Q_o + \sqrt{Q_o}\right)}{2}\{s[(h+70.5)/9850] + 0.12\}\text{in.}$$

where

t_{al} = thickness, in mm (in.)

h = distance, in m (ft), from lower edge of the door/hatch plate to the bulkhead or freeboard deck at center

s = spacing of stiffeners, in mm (in.)

Q_o = material factor obtained as below:

= $635/(\sigma_y + \sigma_u)$ SI Units

= $65/(\sigma_y + \sigma_u)$ MKS Units

= $92000/(\sigma_y + \sigma_u)$ US Units

σ_u = minimum ultimate strength of the welded aluminum alloy under consideration, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, lbs/in^2), in accordance with the table below

σ_y = minimum yield strength of the welded aluminum alloy under consideration, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, lbs/in^2), in accordance with the table below

TABLE 2
Minimum Mechanical Properties for Butt-Welded Aluminum Alloys

Alloy	*Ultimate Tensile Strength (σ_u) N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, lbs/in^2)*	*Yield Strength (σ_y)[3] N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, lbs/in^2)*
5083[1]	275 (28.1, 40000)	125 (12.7, 18000)
5086[1]	240 (24.6, 35000)	95 (9.85, 14000)
5454[1]	215 (21.8, 31000)	85 (8.45, 12000)
5456[1]	290 (29.5, 42000)	130 (13.4, 19000)
6061-T6[2]	165 (16.9, 24000)	105 (10.6, 15000)

Notes:

1 All tempers

2 Values when welded with 4043, 5183, 5356 or 5556 filler wire.

3 For other alloys refer to Aluminum Association's *Aluminum Construction Manual.*

9.3.3(b) Stiffeners. (2024)

Commentary:

Whenever possible, the door panel stiffeners should be aligned with dogs/hinges contact points.

End of Commentary

All stiffeners are to be welded to the door panel edge stiffener. The effective depth of the stiffener is to be not less than 0.065 of its unsupported length. Each stiffener, in association with the plating to which it is attached, is to have a section modulus SM as obtained from the following equations.

$$SM_{al} = 0.9Q_o(4.74hs\ell^2) \text{ cm}^3$$

$$SM_{al} = 0.9Q_o(0.00246hs\ell^2) \text{ in}^3$$

where

Q_o = material factor, as obtained in [9.3.3(a)]

h = distance, in m (ft), from the middle of stiffener to the bulkhead or freeboard deck at center; where that distance is less than 6.1 m (20 ft), h is to be taken as 0.8 times the distance plus 1.22 m (4 ft)

s = spacing of the stiffeners, in m (ft)

ℓ = span of the stiffener, in m (ft)

9.3.3(c) Securing Arrangements.

Securing arrangement and scantlings are to be equivalent to those described in [9.3.2(b)] above.

9.5 Doors or Ramps Dividing Large Cargo Spaces

Watertight doors or ramps (see 3-2-15/17.3) of satisfactory construction may be fitted to internally subdivide large cargo spaces provided it is demonstrated to ABS that such doors or ramps are essential.

These doors or ramps may be hinged, rolling or sliding doors or ramps, but are not to be remotely controlled.

Such doors or ramps may be approved on condition that the shipboard personnel close them before the voyage commences and they are kept closed during navigation. The time of opening such doors or ramps in port and of closing them before the vessel leaves port is to be recorded and entered in the logbook. Doors or ramps accessible during the voyage are to be fitted with a device preventing unauthorized opening.

9.7 Other Openings Closed at Sea *(2024)*

Closing appliances which are to be kept permanently closed at sea, to maintain the watertight integrity of internal openings in watertight bulkheads and decks (see 3-2-15/17.3), are to be provided with a permanently affixed notice stating, that they are to be kept closed while at sea. Manholes fitted with closely bolted covers need not be so marked.

9.9 Construction

Watertight doors and securing devices are to be of strength equivalent to that of the subdivision bulkheads in which they are fitted, in accordance with [5] . Door frames are to be carefully fitted the bulkheads. Where liners are required, the material is to be not readily injured by heat or by deterioration. Sliding doors are to be carefully fitted to the frames.

Where stiffeners are cut in way of watertight doors, the openings are to be framed and bracketed to maintain the full strength of the bulkheads, without taking the strength of the door frames into consideration.

9.9.1 Fire Doors *(1 July 2022)*

Watertight doors may also serve as fire doors but need not be fire-tested if fitted on cargo ships or if fitted below the bulkhead deck on passenger ships. However, such doors fitted above the bulkhead deck on passenger ships are to be tested to the FTP Code in accordance with the fire rating of the division they are fitted in. If it is not practicable to be of self-closing type, means of indication on the bridge showing whether these doors are open or closed and a notice stating "To be kept closed at sea" can be alternative of the self-closing. Where a watertight door is located adjacent to a fire door, both doors are to be capable of independent operation, remotely if required by SOLAS ll-1/13.8.1 to 13.8.3 and from both sides of each door.

9.11 Testing and Installation of Watertight Doors *(2024)*

The following tests and inspections for watertight doors required by ABS under [1] .

9.11.1 Materials *(1 July 2022)*

9.11.1(a) General **(2024)**

Materials are to be suitable for the intended service conditions. They are to be good of quality, free of injurious defects and are to exhibit satisfactory formability and weldability characteristics.

The manufacturer is solely responsible for the certification, testing and compliance of materials unless ABS attendance and certification of materials is requested or required by contract for a specific project. In such cases the facilities are to be ABS approved, the tests are to be witnessed by the ABS Surveyor, and full compliance to the material specification is to be verified by ABS.

Gasket materials, as applicable, will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer's certified material test reports in accordance with design review by ABS.

9.11.1(b) Certification **(2024)**

Unless specified otherwise, materials used in the construction of equipment and components are not required to be manufactured at steel works approved by ABS in accordance with the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)*. Tests are not required to be conducted in the presence of an ABS Surveyor.

Materials are to be furnished with certificates issued by the mill or the material manufacturer, indicating, as a minimum and as applicable, the material specification, grade, process of

manufacture, heat treatment details, mechanical and chemical properties, identification numbers, and test results. Acceptance will be based on manufacturer's documentation which is to be made available upon request and on satisfactory performance after installation.

9.11.1(c) Identification of Materials **(2024)**

The manufacturer is to adopt a system for the identification of ingots, slabs, finished plates, shapes, castings and forgings to enable the material to be traced to its original heat; and the Surveyor is to be given sufficient documentation and means for verifying the traceability of the material.

9.11.1(d) Other Standards **(2024)**

Materials, test specimens and mechanical testing procedures having characteristics differing from those prescribed herein may be approved upon application, with due regard being given to the design criteria, the established practices in the country in which the material is produced and the purpose for which the material is intended.

9.11.1(e) Materials Containing Asbestos

Installation of materials which contain asbestos is prohibited.

9.11.2 Welded Fabrication *(1 July 2022)*

All welded fabrication is to be conducted in accordance with Section [2-4-1] of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)*.

9.11.3 Type Tests Conducted at the Plant of Manufacturer *(1 July 2022)*

Type tests are to be conducted on the first watetrtight door in the series. Doors may be considered as part of a series providing all materials, scantlings, fittings, closing devices, etc., are the same. The size range for the series is to be specified by the manufacturer and to be agreed upon by ABS. Large, medium, and small doors are to be tested and applied to the whole series.

9.11.3(a) Testing Requirements **(2024)**

Doors which become immersed by an equilibrium or intermediate waterplane, are to be subjected to a hydrostatic pressure test. The hydrostatic test(s) are to be conducted in accordance with a test procedure that are reviewed and approved by ABS Engineering. Hydrostatic test(s) of those doors first in a series are to be witnessed by an ABS Surveyor.

For large doors intended for use in the watertight subdivision boundaries of cargo spaces, structural analysis may be accepted in lieu of pressure testing subject to ABS review. Where gasket seals are utilized for such doors, a prototype pressure test is be carried out to verify that the gasket material under the compression is able to withstand any deflection indicated in the structural analysis.

Doors above the freeboard or bulkhead deck, which are not immersed by an equilibrium or intermediate waterplane but become intermittently immersed at angles of heel in the required range of positive stability beyond the equilibrium position, are to be hose tested.

For doors on passenger ships which are used at sea or which become submerged by the equilibrium or intermediate waterplane, a prototype test is to be conducted, on each side of the door, to confirm the satisfactory closing of the door against a force equivalent to a water height of at least 1 m above the sill on the centerline of the door.

Pressure testing requirements are as follows: the head of water used for the test is to correspond at least to the head measured from the lower edge of the door opening, at the location in which the door is to be fitted in the vessel, to:

i) The bulkhead deck or freeboard deck, as applicable, or

ii) The most unfavorable damage waterplane, if that is greater.

Testing may be carried out at the manufacturer or other shore based testing facility prior to installation in the ship.

Commentary:

Large Doors are doors that are used for vehicles or equipment. Doors used for access of personnel are not considered large for application of this requirement.

End of Commentary

9.11.3(b) Leakage Criteria

The following acceptable leakage criteria should apply as follows:

i) Doors with gaskets: No leakage

ii) Doors with metallic sealing: Max leakage 1 liter/min.

Limited leakage may be accepted for pressure tests on large doors located in cargo spaces employing gasket seals or guillotine doors located in conveyor tunnels, in accordance with the following:

Leakage rate (liter/min) = $(P + 4.572) \bullet h^3/6568$

where: P = perimeter of door opening (meters) h = test head of water (meters)

In the case of doors where the water head taken for the determination of the scantling does not exceed 6.10 m, the leakage rate may be taken equal to 0.375 liter/min if this value is greater than that calculated by the stated formula.

For doors on passenger ships which are used at sea or which become submerged by the equilibrium or intermediate waterplane, a prototype test is to be conducted, on each side of the door, to check the satisfactory closing of the door against a force equivalent to a water height of at least 1 m above the sill on the centerline of the door.

9.11.3(c) Shipboard Installation Tests **(2024)**

All watertight doors are to be subject to a hose test in accordance with Section 3-7-1 after installation in a ship. Hose testing is to be carried out from each side of a door unless, for a specific application, exposure to floodwater is anticipated only from one side. Where a hose test is not practicable because of possible damage to machinery, electrical equipment insulation or outfitting items, other means of testing such as an ultrasonic leak test or an equivalent test may be used in lieu of a hose test. Watertight doors are to fitted in accordance with all requirements relating to their mode of operation, location, provision of controls, and means of indication, as required in Section [4-9-8] . All watertight doors, except those which are to be permanently closed at sea, are to be capable of being opened and closed locally from both sides of the door with the ship listed to either side.

9.11.4 Tests On Board *(1 July 2022)*

All watertight doors shall be subject to a hose test in accordance with Section 3-7-1 after installation in a vessel. Hose testing is to be carried out from each side of a door unless, for a specific application, exposure to floodwater is anticipated only from one side. Where a hose test is not practicable because of possible damage to machinery, electrical equipment insulation or outfitting items, it may be replaced by means such as an ultrasonic leak test or an equivalent test.

9.11.5 Certification of Watertight Doors *(1 July 2022)*

Each watertight door required to be certified by Section 3-2-9 is:

i) To have its design approved by ABS; for which purpose, plans and data as required by [1.11] are to be submitted to ABS for approval, and watertight door(s) of the same type is to have been satisfactorily type tested per [9.11.3] .

ii) To be surveyed during its construction for compliance with the design approved, along with, but not limited to, material and non-destructive tests, welded fabrication, type tests as indicated in 3-2-9/9.11, all to be carried out to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

SECTION 10
Deep Tanks

1 General

1.1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1.1 Goals

The vessel structure is to be designed, constructed, operated, and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goals*
STRU 1	In the intact condition, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the anticipated environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads.
STRU 2	Provide protection to persons on board, the environment and required safety services.
SAFE 1	Promote the occupational health and safety of personnel onboard.

1.1.2 Functional Requirement

To achieve the above stated goals, the design, construction, installation, and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Structure (STRU)	
STRU-FR1	Scantlings are to have sufficient strength to resist failure and excessive deformation associated with buckling and yielding when subjected to the loads induced by hydrostatic pressure due to ship motions, accidental overflow, sloshing and tank testing.
STRU-FR2	Suitable tightness of bulkheads is to be provided.
STRU-FR3	Proportions of structural members are to be sufficient to prevent buckling.
STRU-FR4	The termination of structural members is to be designed to avoid stress concentrations that may lead to yielding or fatigue cracks.

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
STRU-FR5	The workmanship is to avoid discontinuities, misalignment and other harmful details that may lead to failure in service.
Safety of Personnel (SAFE)	
SAFE-FR1	Provide adequate means to drain tanks.
SAFE-FR2	Provide adequate free ventilation to maintain tank pressure within the designed limits including loading/unloading.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

1.2 Application

This Section applies to all deep tanks where the requirements exceed those of Section 3-2-9.

1.3 Arrangement *(2024)*

The arrangement of all deep tanks, together with their intended content, liquid density and the height of the overflow or vent pipes, are to be clearly indicated on the tank plan submitted. Any oil tanks and all other tanks that carry flammable liquids are not to be arranged forward of the collision bulkhead. Fuel oil tanks of any volume are not to be used for ballast water. For tank protection requirements and the optional **POT** notation refer to 4-6-4/17.

Tanks for fresh water or fuel oil, passive anti-rolling tanks or those that are not intended to be kept entirely filled in service are to have divisions or deep swashes to minimize the sloshing and dynamic stress on the structure. For fuel oil tank arrangements, see 4-6-4/13.5.

Commentary:

Where the length of the tanks exceeds 0.1L or the breadth exceeds 0.6B, divisions or deep swashes should be fitted, unless calculations are submitted showing that no resonance due to sloshing will occur in service.

End of Commentary

1.5 Construction *(2024)*

The boundary bulkheads of all deep tanks are to be constructed in accordance with the requirements of this Section.

Commentary:

Longitudinal/transverse tight divisions, which are fitted between two tanks which are to be entirely filled or empty in service, may be of the scantlings required for watertight bulkheads by Section 3-2-9. In such cases the tanks are to be provided with feed tanks or deep hatches fitted with inspection plugs, in order to ensure, that the tanks on both sides of the bulkhead are kept full in service.

End of Commentary

1.7 Drainage and Air Escape

Limber and air holes are to be cut in all parts of the structure to take free drainage to the suction pipes and the escape of air to the vents without entrapments. Efficient arrangements are to be made for draining the spaces above deep tanks.

1.9 Testing

Requirements for testing are contained in Part 3, Chapter 7.

3 Construction of Deep Tank Bulkheads and Tank Tops

Where the specific gravity of the liquid exceeds 1.05, the design head, h, in this Section is to be increased by the ratio of the specific gravity/1.05.

3.1 Plating *(2022)*

Plating is to be of thickness obtained from the following equation:

$t_{sh\min} = (sk\sqrt{qh}/C_1) + C_2$ mm (in.) but not less than 6.5 (0.25) mm (in.) or $(s/150 + C_2)$ mm (in.), whichever is greater

where

C_1 = 254 (460)

C_2 = 2.5 (0.10)

t = thickness, in mm (in.)

s = stiffener spacing, in mm (in.)

k = $(3.075\sqrt{\alpha} – 2.077)/(\alpha + 0.272)$ where $1 \le \alpha \le 2$

= 1.0 where $\alpha > 2$

α = aspect ratio of the panel (longer edge/shorter edge)

q = $235/Y$ N/mm^2 ($24/Y$ kgf/mm^2, $34,000/Y$ lbs/in^{2}psi)

Y = specified minimum yield point or yield strength, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, lbs/in^2), as defined in [2-1-1/13] of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)*, for the higher-strength material or 0.72 of the specified minimum tensile strength, whichever is the lesser

h = the greatest of the following distances, in m (ft), from the lower edge of the plate to:

- a point located two-thirds of the distance from the top of the tank to the top of the overflow
- a point located above the top of the tank at a distance not less than given in column (e) of 3-2-7/3.1 TABLE 2, appropriate to the vessel's length
- the load line
- a point located at two-thirds of the distance to the bulkhead or freeboard deck
- for vessels under 90 m in length, a point located above the top of the tank, not less than the greater of $0.01L$ + 0.15 m (0.5 ft), where L is as defined in 3-1-1/3, or 0.46 m (1.5 ft)

h is also not to be less than h_1 or h_0 where rupture disks or spill valves are fitted (e.g. mud tanks, methanol tanks, etc.), as obtained below:

$h_1 = \rho h_t + h_a$ m (ft)

$h_0 = (2/3)(\rho h_s + 9.95P_s)$ m (P_s in bar)

$= (2/3)(\rho h_s + 9.75P_s)$ m (P_s in kgf/cm^2)

$= (2/3)(\rho h_s + 2.25P_s)$ ft (P_s in lbf/in^2)

where

ρ = 1.0 where the specific gravity of liquid is 1.05 or less

= specific gravity of liquid where it is in excess of 1.05

(The provisions under 3-2-10/3 need not be applied in addition hereto)

h_t = head from the center of the supported area or lower edge of the plating to the deck at side or, where such is fitted, to the top of the trunk deck at side for tanks within trunk

h_a = $9.95p_v(9.75p_v, 2.25p_v)$

p_v = pressure/vacuum valve pressure setting, in bar (kgf/cm^2, lbf/in^2)

h_s = head to the spill valve or rupture disc, where fitted, in m (ft)

P_s = relieving pressure of spill valve or rupture disc, where fitted, in bar (kgf/cm^2, lbf/in^2)

3.3 Stiffeners *(2024)*

Each stiffener, in association with the plating to which it is attached, is to have section modulus SM not less than that obtained from the following equation:

$SM = 7.8chs\ell^2$ cm^3

$SM = 0.0041chs\ell^2$ in^3

where

c = 0.594 for stiffeners having effective bracket attachments at both ends.

= 0.747 for stiffeners having effective bracket attachment at one end and supported by clip connections or by girders or webs at the other end.

= 0.900 for stiffeners having clip attachments to decks or flats at both ends or having such attachments at one end with the other end supported by horizontal girders

= 1.00 for stiffeners supported at both ends by horizontal girders

s = spacing of the stiffeners, in m (ft)

h = greatest of the following distances, in m (ft), from the middle of ℓ to:

- a point located at two-thirds of the distance from the top of the tank to the top of the overflow
- a point located above the top of the tank a distance not less than given in column (e) of 3-2-7/3.1 TABLE 1, appropriate to the vessel's length
- the load line

- a point located at two-thirds of the distance to the bulkhead or freeboard deck

ℓ = distance between the heels of the end attachments; where girders and webs are fitted, ℓ is the distance from the heel of the end attachment to the first girder, or the distance between the horizontal girders, in m (ft)

An effective bracket for the application of this value of c is to have scantlings not less effective than that shown in 3-2-9/5.5 TABLE 1A or 3-2-9/5.5 TABLE 1B and is to extend onto the stiffener for a distance at least one-eighth of the length ℓ of the stiffener.

Commentary:

Where the length of an effective bracket exceeds one-eighth of the length ℓ of the stiffener, a reduction in ℓ may be taken in accordance with 3-2-9/5.5 FIGURE 3 in association with the c factor for deep tank.

Where the length of the bracket is greater than 1.5 times web depth of stiffener but less than one-eighth of the length ℓ of the stiffener, a reduction in ℓ may be taken in accordance with 3-2-9/5.5 FIGURE 3 in association with the c factor for deep tank.

End of Commentary

The short arm of the bracket is to be not less than $^2/_3$ of the longer arm, as far as possible. In cases where the short arm is less than this, the effective length of the bracket is to be measured as shown in 3-2-9/5.5 FIGURE 3. Where the length of an effective bracket exceeds $\ell/8$, a reduction in ℓ may be taken in accordance with 3-2-9/5.5 FIGURE 3.

Stiffeners are to be effectively connected to adjacent structures to avoid hard spots, notches and stress concentrations.

Commentary:

Stiffeners fitted on deep tank bulkheads should be provided with effective end supports, such as bracket attachments and clip connections. However, stiffeners with sniped ends may be accepted subject to the following:

1 The construction detail makes it impossible to fit effective end attachments;

2 The unsupported stiffener length does not exceed approximately 1000 mm (39 in.);

3 A full return weld is applied to the sniped end;

4 Shell stiffener which are load bearing members are not considered in this manner;

5 The stiffener is not located in a region of a tank subject to sloshing;

6 The section modulus of the stiffener is at least 1.5 times the requirement for a stiffener with clip connections in the same location ;

7 The shear strength of the plating is sufficient to support the sniped end.

End of Commentary

3.5 Tank-top Plating and Stiffeners

Tops of tanks are to have plating 1 mm (0.04 in.) thicker than would be required for vertical plating at the same level; the thickness is not to be less than required for deck plating in the tank's location. Beams, girders and pillars are to be as required by Sections 3-2-7 and 3-2-8.

3.7 Girders and Webs

3.7.1 Strength Requirements *(2024)*

Each girder and web which supports frames, or beams or stiffeners in deep tanks is to have section modulus SM as required by Sections 3-2-6 and 3-2-8 or as required by this paragraph, whichever is

greater. Those which support bulkhead stiffeners are to be as required by this paragraph. The section modulus SM is to be not less than obtained from the following equation.

$$SM = 4.74chs\ell^2 \text{ cm}^3$$

$$SM = 0.0025chs\ell^2 \text{ in}^3$$

where

c = 1.50

h = vertical distance, in m (ft), from the middle of s for girders and from the middle of ℓ for webs to the heights as defined in [3.1]

s = sum of half lengths (on each side of girder or web) of the frames or stiffeners supported, in m (ft)

ℓ = span measured between the heels of the end of the attachments, in m (ft). Where effective brackets are fitted, ℓ may be modified as indicated in 3-2-6/7.1.

Where efficient struts are fitted across tanks connecting girders on each side of the tanks and spaced not more than four times the depth of the girder, the value for the section modulus SM for each girder may be one-half that given above.

3.7.2 Proportions *(2024)*

The following requirements are to be complied with:

i) Girders, except deck girders (see 3-2-8/5.13), and webs are to have depths not less than 0.145ℓ where no struts or ties are fitted, and 0.0833ℓ where struts are fitted, plus one-quarter of the depth of the slots for the frames or stiffeners.

ii) The depth is not to be less than 3 times the depth of the slots for vessels 90 meters (295 feet) in length and greater or 2.5 times the depth of the slots for vessels less than 90 meters (295 feet) in length, unless effective compensation is provided for stiffener cutouts.

iii) The thickness is not to be less than 1% of the depth plus 3 mm (0.12 in.) but need not exceed 11.5 mm (0.46 in.).

Commentary:

For item i) above, where the offered inertia of girders and webs is greater than the required inertia calculated with the required depth and thickness of flange above, the offered depth may be acceptable. The required inertia is to be calculated based on the required section modulus *SM* (3-2-10/3.7.1) for mild steel and on the required depth (3-2-10/3-7-2i)).

If slots are closed by lug or collar plates, the proportion requirements based on depth of the slots do not need to be met.

End of Commentary

3.7.3 Tripping Brackets

Tripping brackets are to be fitted at intervals of about 3 m (10 ft) and near the change of section. Where the width of the face flange exceeds 200 mm (8 in.) on either side of the girder or web, tripping brackets are to be arranged to support the flange.

3.9 Corrugated Bulkheads

Where corrugated bulkheads are used as deep-tank boundaries, the scantlings are to be developed from 3-2-9/7. The plating thickness t and value of SM are to be as required by [3.1] and [3.3] respectively with $c = 0.90$.

3.11 Anti-rolling Tank Bulkheads

Where anti-rolling tanks are provided, the required scantlings are to be calculated from the above Paragraphs 3-2-10/3.1 through 3-2-10/3.9 based on h measured to the point located above tank bottom as follows:

$h = B(0.259 + 0.966h_z/B)$ m (ft)

where

B = breadth of the vessel, in m (ft), as defined in 3-1-1/5

h_z = height of the tank at side, in m (ft)

This head is to be applied on tank structure within 0.25B from the vessel's side. For the remainder head as in [3.1] and [3.3] is to be applied.

5 Higher-strength Materials

5.1 General *(2024)*

Applications of higher-strength materials for deep-tank structures are to meet the requirements of this Section, as modified as permitted by the following paragraphs. Calculations are to be submitted to show adequate provision to resist buckling.

5.3 Plating

Deep-tank plating of higher-strength material is to be of not less thickness than obtained by [3.1].

5.5 Stiffeners *(2024)*

Each stiffener of higher-strength material, in association with the higher-strength plating to which it is attached, is to have section modulus SM_{hts} not less than obtained from the following equation:

$SM_{hts} = 7.8chs\ell^2Q$ cm^3

$SM_{hts} = 0.0041chs\ell^2Q$ in^3

where c, h, s and ℓ are as defined in [3.1] and Q is as defined in 3-2-1/5.3.

5.7 Girders and Webs *(2024)*

Each girder and web of higher-strength material, in association with the plating to which they are attached, is to comply with the requirements of the relevant preceding paragraphs of this section and is to have a section modulus SM_{hts} not less than that obtained from the following equation (and 3-2-6 and 3-2-8 where applicable):

$SM_{hts} = SM(Q)$

where

SM = required section modulus in ordinary-strength material as determined elsewhere in this section

Q = as defined in 3-2-1/5.3

PART 3

CHAPTER 2
Hull Structures and Arrangements

SECTION 11
Superstructures, Deckhouses and Helicopter Decks

1 General *(2024)*

1.1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1.1 Goals

The vessel structure is to be designed, constructed, operated and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goal*
STRU 1	In the intact condition, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU 2	Resist structural failure associated with accidental conditions.
STRU 3	Provide protection to persons onboard, the environment and required safety services.
STAB 1	Have adequate watertight integrity and restoring energy to prevent capsize in an intact condition.
SAFE 1	Promote the occupational health and safety of personnel onboard.
FIR 1	Prevent the occurrence of fire and explosion (SOLAS II-1/Reg 2.1.1).
FIR 2	Reduce the risk to life caused by fire (SOLAS II-2/Reg 2.1.2).
EER 1	Provide means of escape so that persons on board can safety and swiftly escape to a protected place of refuge, master station, or embarkment station (SOLAS II-2/Reg 13.1).
OTH SG5	Enable safe helicopter operation.
MGMT 3	Establish procedures, plans and instructions for operations concerning the safety of the personnel, vessel and protection of the environment. (ISM Code 7)
MAT 3	The fabrication and welding process is to be capable of producing products that meets the specified quality and property requirements.

1.1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above stated goals, the design, construction, installation, and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Safety Management (MGMT)	
MGMT-FR1	Operation manuals and training are to be provided for the guidance of crew for helicopter operations.
Safety of Personnel (SAFE)	
SAFE-FR1	Helidecks are to be designed and provided with means to prevent falls from the helideck.
Escape, Evacuation, & Rescue (EER)	
EER-FR1	Helidecks are to be designed with main and emergency personnel access route to safety.
Fire Safety (FIR)	
FIR-FR1	Fire-fighting appliances are to be provided to adequately protect the vessel from the fire hazards associated with helicopter operations.
FIR-FR2	Refueling, hanger facilities and operations are to provide the necessary measures to protect the ship from the fire hazards associated with helicopter operations.
Structure (STRU)	
STRU-FR1	Scantlings of Superstructures, Deckhouses and Helicopter Decks are to have sufficient strength to resist failure and excessive deformation associated with buckling and yielding when subjected to the loads anticipated throughout the service life, including hull girder loads, green water loads, environmental loads and helicopter loads.
STRU-FR2	The design of the termination of structural members is to prevent yielding or fatigue cracks.
STRU-FR3	The design of structure is to avoid discontinuities, misalignment, and other harmful details that may lead to failure in service.
STRU-FR4	Scantlings of superstructure and deckhouse are to have sufficient strength to resist failure and excessive deformation associated with buckling and yielding when subjected to the loads anticipated throughout the service life, including hull girder loads, green water loads and environmental loads.
Stability (STAB)	
STAB-FR1	All openings in the exposed bulkheads of enclosed superstructures and deckhouses are to be provided with efficient means of closing so that in any sea conditions water will not penetrate the vessel.
STAB-FR2	Access openings used at sea are to be capable of being opened without allowing ingress of water on deck.
Materials (MAT)	
MAT-FR1	Welded minimum yielding strength is to be considered in the design of aluminum superstructures and deckhouse.
Other Systems – Special Service (OTH)	
OTH-FR1	Adequate marking and lighting are to be provided for helicopter operations.

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
OTH-FR2	The helideck is to be of sufficient size and located so as to provide a clear take-off and approach to enable the largest helicopter using the helideck to operate under the most severe conditions anticipated for helicopter operations.
OTH-FR3	Helicopter decks and supporting structures are to be designed with adequate strength to withstand static load and emergency landing load from helicopters, loads resulting from the motions of the vessel, and environmental load.
OTH-FR4	The helideck structure is to be adequate to protect the vessel from fire hazards associated with helicopter operations.

The goals and functional requirements in the cross-referenced Rules are to be met.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

1.2 Application *(2024)*

1.2.1 Definitions

1.2.1(a) Superstructure

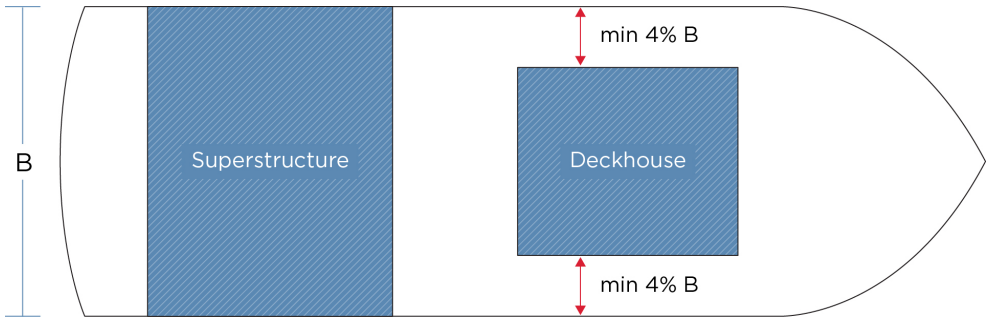
A superstructure is a decked structure on the freeboard deck, extending from side to side of the ship or with the side plating not being inboard of the shell plating more than 4% of the breadth (B). A superstructure may be a poop, a raised quarterdeck, a bridge, a forecastle, or a full superstructure. See 3-2-11/Figure 1.

The length of a superstructure is the mean length of the part of the superstructure which lies within the freeboard length (L_f).

1.2.1(b) Deckhouse

A deckhouse is an enclosed structure above the freeboard deck having side plating set inboard of the hull's side-shell plating more than 4% of the breadth, B, of the vessel. See 3-2-11/Figure 1.

FIGURE 1
Superstructure and Deckhouse



1.2.1(c) Enclosed and open Superstructure

i) An enclosed superstructure is a superstructure with:

a) Enclosing bulkheads of efficient construction, in compliance with the requirements of this section.

b) Access openings, if any, in these bulkheads fitted with doors complying with the requirements of this Part

c) All front, side and aft openings in sides or ends of the superstructure are fitted with efficient weathertight means of closing.

ii) An open superstructure is a superstructure that is not enclosed.

1.2.1(d) Bridge

A bridge is a superstructure or deckhouse which does not extend to either the forward or after perpendicular from which navigation and ship control is performed.

1.2.1(e) Poop

A poop is a superstructure which extends from the after perpendicular forward to a point which is aft of the forward perpendicular. The poop may originate from a point aft of the after perpendicular.

A poop is not to be regarded as enclosed unless access is provided for the crew to reach machinery and other working spaces inside the superstructure by alternative means which are available at all times when bulkhead openings are closed.

1.2.1(f) Forecastle

A forecastle is a superstructure which extends from the forward perpendicular aft to a point which is forward of the after perpendicular. The forecastle may originate from a point forward of the forward perpendicular.

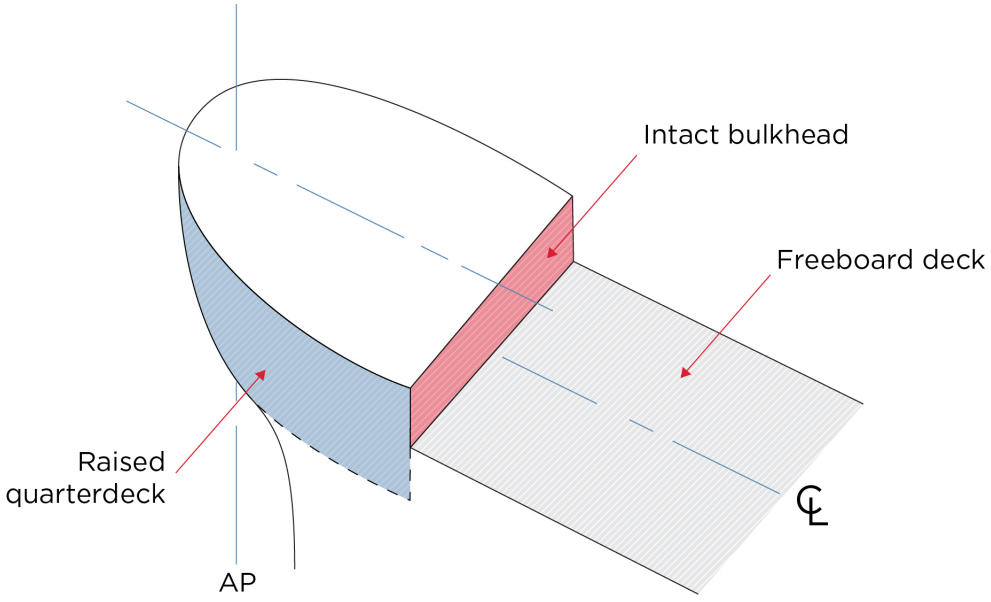
1.2.1(g) Full superstructure

A full superstructure is a superstructure which, as a minimum, extends from the forward to the after perpendicular.

1.2.1(h) Raised quarterdeck

A raised quarterdeck is a superstructure which extends forward from the after bulkhead, generally has a height less than a normal superstructure, and has an intact front bulkhead (sidescuttles of non-opening type fitted with efficient deadlights and bolted manhole covers). See 3-2-11/Figure 2. Where the forward bulkhead is not intact due to doors and access openings, the superstructure is then considered as a poop.

FIGURE 2



1.2.2 General

Vessels to be classed as unrestricted service are to have superstructures and deckhouses in accordance with the requirements of this Section. Helicopter decks, where provided, are to meet the requirements of [11] .

Commentary:

The designer should consider vibration and noise during the design of the superstructure and deckhouse. Reference can be made to ABS *Guidance Notes on Ship Vibration*. An optional notation related to vibration of machinery, equipment, and related local structures is available in the ABS *Guide for Vibration of Machinery Equipment and Related Structures*.

End of Commentary

1.3 General Scantlings of Superstructures and Deckhouses

1.3.1 Side Plating *(2024)*

Side plating of superstructures and the 1st tier deckhouses on the freeboard deck are to in accordance with the following paragraphs.

Between amidships 0.4L and 0.1L from each end, the thickness of the plating is to be gradually tapered. (Beyond 0.1L from each end, the thickness of the plating is to be gradually increased to that required within the amidship 0.4L length.)

Offshore Support Vessels of any length and other vessels under 90 m (295 ft) in length subject to impact loads during routine operations, are to comply with 3-2-2/3.11 as applicable.

1.3.1(a) Superstructure within the Amidships 0.4L **(2024)**

Side plating of superstructures within the amidships 0.4L of the vessel is to be obtained as follows:

i) Where superstructures are fitted above the uppermost continuous deck to which the side plating extends throughout the amidship 0.4L, the thickness of the side plating is to be obtained from the equations below where D_s is the molded depth, in m (ft), measured to the superstructure deck. In such cases, the sheer strake beyond the superstructure is to be proportioned from the thickness as required for the sheer strake amidships, where D_s is measured to the uppermost continuous deck.

ii) Where superstructures are fitted above the uppermost continuous deck, to which the side plating does not extend throughout the amidship 0.4L, the thickness of the side plating is to be obtained from the equations below where D_s is the molded depth, in m (ft), measured to the uppermost continuous deck.

a) For Vessels Under 90 m (295 ft) in Length the side plating of superstructures within the amidships 0.4L of the vessel is not to be less than:

$$t = \frac{s\sqrt{h}}{268} + 2.5\text{mm}$$

$$t = \frac{s\sqrt{h}}{485} + 0.10\text{in.}$$

where

s = spacing of transverse frames or longitudinals, in mm (in.)

h = D_s in m (ft) is the molded depth defined in 3-2-11/1.3.1, but not less than 0.1L or 1.18 d_s , whichever is greater

d_s = draft for scantlings, as defined in 3-1-1/9.3, or 0.066L, whichever is greater

L = length of the vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1

b) For Vessels 90 m (295 ft) in Length and Above the side plating of superstructures within the amidships 0.4L of the vessel is not to be less than obtained from the following equations, whichever is the greater:

$$t = (s/645)\sqrt{(L - 15.2)(d_s/D_s)} + 2.5\text{mm} \quad \text{for} 90 \le L \le 305\text{m}$$
$$t = (s/1170)\sqrt{(L - 50)(d_s/D_s)} + 0.1\text{in.} \quad \text{for} 295 \le L \le 1000(\text{ft})$$
$$t = 0.035(L + 29) + 5.4\text{mm} \quad \text{for} 90 \le L \le 305\text{m}$$
$$t = 0.00042(L + 95) + 0.216\text{in.} \quad \text{for} 295 \le L \le 1000\text{ft}$$
$$t = (s/828)\sqrt{(L + 175)(d_s/D_s)} + 2.5\text{mm} \quad \text{for} 305 < L \le 427\text{m}$$
$$t = (s/1500)\sqrt{(L + 574)(d_s/D_s)} + 0.1\text{in.} \quad \text{for} 1000 < L \le 1400(\text{ft})$$
$$t = (11.7 + 5.4)(D/35)^{0.5} \quad \text{for} 305 < L \le 427\text{m}$$
$$t = (0.46 + 0.216)(D/114.8)^{0.5} \quad \text{for} 1000 < L \le 1400\text{ft}$$

L and s are as defined in 3-2-11/1.3.1(a)ii)a).

d_s = draft for scantlings, as defined in 3-1-1/9.3, in m (ft)

D_s = molded depth, in m (ft), as defined in 3-2-11/1.3.1(a)i) or 3-2-11/1.3.1(a)ii)

D = molded depth, in m (ft), as defined in 3-1-1/7.1 or 35 m (114.8 ft), whichever is greater

The actual ratio of d_s / D_s is to be used in the above equations, except that the ratio is not to be taken less than 0.0433 L/D_s.

Applications of higher-strength materials for shell plating is to be in accordance with 3-2-2/15.5.

1.3.1(b) Superstructures and Deckhouses at the After 0.1L End **(2024)**

For superstructures and deckhouses at the after 0.1L end, the plating is not to be less than the thickness obtained from the equation below:

$$t = 0.0315(L + 150) + 0.006(s - S)\,\text{mm} \quad L \ge 90\text{m}$$
$$t = 0.00038(L + 493) + 0.006(s - S)\,\text{in.} \quad L \ge 295\text{ft}$$
$$t = 0.0296(L + 39.5) + 0.006s\text{mm} \quad L < 90\text{m}$$
$$t = 0.00035(L + 132.9) + 0.006s\text{in.} \quad L < 295\text{ft}$$

where:

s = spacing of longitudinal or transverse frames, in mm (in.), (measured parallel to the centerline for transversally framed structures)

S = standard frame spacing, in mm (in.), given by the equation in 3-2-5/1.7 except that in way of the aft peak, the standard frame spacing is not to exceed 610 mm (24 in.)

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft), but need not be taken more than 305 m (1000 ft)

Applications of higher-strength materials for shell plating is to be in accordance with 3-2-2/15.5.

1.3.1(c) Superstructures at the Forward End, from the Stem to 0.025L Aft of FP **(2024)**

For superstructures at the forward end, from the stem to 0.025L aft of FP, the plating thickness is not to be less than obtained from the equations below.

$$t = 0.0455L + 0.009s \text{mm} \qquad L < 90\text{m}$$
$$t = 0.035\,(L + 29) + 0.009s \text{mm} \qquad \text{for} 90 \le L \le 305\text{m}$$
$$t = (11.70 + 0.009s)\,(D/35)^{0.5}\,\text{mm} \qquad \text{for} 305 \le L \le 427\text{m}$$
$$t = 0.000545L + 0.009s \text{in.} \qquad L < 295ft$$
$$t = 0.00042\,(L + 95) + 0.009s \text{in.} \qquad \text{for} 295 \le L \le 1000\text{ft}$$
$$t = (0.46 + 0.009s)\,(D/114.8)^{0.5}\,\text{in.} \qquad \text{for} 1000 \le L \le 1400\text{ft}$$

where

s = fore or aft peak frame spacing, in mm (in.) (measured parallel to the centerline for transversally framed structures), frame spacing from the stem to 0.025L aft of FP is not to exceed the standard frame and cant frame spacing as per 3-2-5/1.7.

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

D = molded depth, in m (ft), as defined in 3-1-1/7.1 or 35 m (114.8 ft), whichever is greater

Applications of higher-strength materials for shell plating is to be in accordance with 3-2-2/15.5.

1.3.1(d) Superstructures between 0.025L to 0.1L Aft of FP and Deckhouses from the Stem to 0.1L Aft of FP (2024)

For superstructures between 0.025L to 0.1L aft of FP and deckhouses from the stem to 0.1L aft of FP, the plating thickness is not to be less than obtained from the equations below:

$$t = 0.05\,(L + 76) + 0.006\,(s–S)\,\text{mm} \qquad L < 106.5\text{m}$$
$$t = 0.035\,(L + 154) + 0.006\,(s–S)\,\text{mm} \qquad L \ge 106.5\text{m}$$
$$t = 0.0006\,(L + 250) + 0.006\,(s–S)\,\text{in.} \qquad L < 350\text{ft}$$
$$t = 0.00042\,(L + 505) + 0.006\,(s–S)\,\text{in.} \qquad L \ge 350\text{ft}$$

where

s = spacing of longitudinal or transverse frames, in mm (in.), (measured parallel to the centerline for transversally framed structures)

S = standard frame spacing, in mm (in.), given by the equation in 3-2-5/1.7 except that in way of the fore peak, the standard frame spacing is not to exceed 610 mm (24 in.)

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft), but need not be taken more than 305 m (1000 ft)

Applications of higher-strength materials for shell plating is to be in accordance with 3-2-2/15.5.

1.3.2 Superstructures and Deckhouses Decks *(2024)*

See 3-2-3/5.9.

1.3.3 Frames *(2024)*

Frames are to be of the sizes obtained from 3-2-5/5.

Frames of superstructures are to in accordance with [3.5] and with the following paragraphs.

Web frames or partial bulkheads are to be fitted at the ends and sides of large superstructures or deckhouses over main bulkheads and elsewhere to give effective transverse rigidity to provide resistance to racking the structure.

1.3.3(a) Longitudinal Frames **(2024)**

The section modulus, *SM*, of each longitudinal frame is to be not less than obtained from the following equation.

The section modulus of each longitudinal frame forward of 0.125*L* measured from FP, is to be not less than required by [1.3.3(b)] for transverse frames in the same location, taking ℓ as the unsupported span along the frame's length.

Attention is to be given to the buckling strength of the longitudinal frames adjacent to the strength deck where scantling reductions are being considered for the use of higher-strength steel. See also 3-2-1/17 and Appendix 3-2-A4.

$$SM = 7.8chs\ell^2 Q \text{cm}^3 \quad SM = 0.0041chs\ell^2 Q \text{in}^3$$

where

s	=	spacing of longitudinal frames, in m (ft)	
c	=	0.915	for vessels under 90 m (295 ft) in length
	=	0.95	for steel vessels 90 m (295 ft) in length and above
h	=	0.02*L* + 0.46 m (0.02*L* + 1.5 ft)	for vessels under 90 m (295 ft) in length
	=	2.1 m (7.0 ft)	for steel vessels 90 m (295 ft) in length and above
ℓ	=	unsupported span, in m (ft)	

Q is as defined in 3-2-1/5.3.

1.3.3(b) Transverse Frames **(2024)**

The section modulus *SM* of each transverse frame is to be obtained from the following equation:

$$SM = \left(7 + 45/\ell^3\right) s\ell^2 KQ \text{cm}^3 \quad SM = \left(0.0037 + 0.8/\ell^3\right) s\ell^2 KQ \text{in}^3$$

ℓ	=	tween deck height or unsupported span along the frame length, whichever is greater, in m (ft)		
s	=	spacing of the frames, in m (ft)		
K	=	Aft of 0.125*L* from the stem	K = 0.022*L* – 0.47	for *L* ≤ 427 m
			K = 0.022*L* – 1.54	for *L* ≤ 1400 ft
		0.125*L* from the stem	K = 0.034*L* – 0.56	for *L* ≤ 427 m

$$K = 0.034L - 1.84 \qquad \text{for } L \leq 1400 \text{ ft}$$

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, but need not be taken as greater than 305 m (1000 ft)

Q is as defined in 3-2-1/5.3.

When the decks above the frames considered are carrying loads in excess of the following:

- For enclosed decks: 7.01 kN/m^3 (715 kgf/m^3, 44.7 lbf/ft^3),
- For an exposed deck: 25.66 kN/m^2 (2617 kgf/m^2, 536 lbf/ft^2)

the section modulus of the tween-deck frames is also to meet the requirements of 3-2-5/3.1.

1.3.4 Breaks in Continuity

Breaks in the continuity of superstructures are to be strengthened (see 3-2-2/11). The arrangements in such areas are to be clearly shown on the plans submitted for approval.

3 Exposed Bulkheads *(2024)*

Commentary:

The requirements in 3-2-11/3 are based on IACS Unified Requirements (UR) S3.

End of Commentary

3.1 General *(2024)*

The scantlings of the exposed bulkheads of superstructures and deckhouses are to be in accordance with the following paragraphs, except that the requirements for house side stiffeners need not exceed the requirements of [1.3.3] for the side frames, directly below the deck on which the house is located, taking into account spacing and span.

In general, the first or lowest tier is that located on the freeboard deck or the actual lower deck from which the loadline can be assigned in accordance with the ICLL. Deckhouses or superstructure situated on a deck at least one standard superstructure above the freeboard deck or the lowest exposed deck may be considered the second tier. Higher tiers are defined in a likewise manner. A standard superstructure height is that defined in the *International Convention on Load Lines, 1966.*

The requirements of [1.3.1] and Section 3-2-2 apply in addition to those of this Subsection for exposed side of superstructures or deckhouses when this side is part of the side shell.

Commentary:

Bulkhead scantlings and sills of access openings of deckhouses which do not protect any openings in the freeboard deck, in the superstructure deck, in the top of a lowest tier deckhouse or which are not machinery casings, provided they do not contain accommodations or do not protect equipment essential to the operation of the vessel may be subject of technical assessment, which is to be submitted for ABS review. Such assessments are to consider particulars of the vessels and service restrictions, if any, location and arrangement of the deckhouse, and environmental loads and conditions.

End of Commentary

3.3 Plating

3.3.1 For All Vessels

The plating is to be not less in thickness than obtained from the following equation:

$t = 3s\sqrt{h}$ mm

$t = s\sqrt{h}/50$ in.

where s and h are as defined in [3.5] ; when determining h, y is to be measured to the middle of the plate.

3.3.2 Minimum Thicknesses Requirements *(1 July 2024)*

For exposed bulkheads on the lowest tier of a deckhouse or superstructure and for all exposed bulkheads of deckhouses situated completely or partially on a forecastle deck, the minimum required thickness is to be as follows:

For front bulkheads of OSVs:

$t = 6.0 + 0.01L_2$ mm, but not less than 7.5 mm

$t = 0.24 + 0.00012L_2$ in., but not less than 0.3 in.

For side and end bulkheads of OSVs:

$t = 5.0 + 0.01L_2$ mm, but not less than 6.5 mm

$t = 0.2 + 0.00012L_2$ in., but not less than 0.26 in.

For lowest tier bulkheads of towing vessels:

$t = 5.0 + 0.01L_2$ mm, but not less than 6.5 mm; and not less than 6.0 mm for vessels less than 61 m

$t = 0.2 + 0.00012L_2$ in., but not less than 0.26 in.; and not less than 0.25 in. for vessels less than 200 ft

For lowest tier bulkheads of all other vessels:

$t = 5.0 + 0.01L_2$ mm, but not less than 6.5 mm, for vessels with $L_2 \geq$ 65 m

$t = 5.0$ mm for unprotected front of vessels with $L_2 <$ 65 m

$t = 4.0$ mm for sides, after end and protected front of vessels with $L_2 <$ 65 m

$t = 0.2 + 0.00012L_2$ in., but not less than 0.26 in., for vessels with $L_2 \geq$ 213 ft

$t = 0.2$ in. for unprotected front of vessels with $L_2 <$ 213 ft

$t = 0.16$ in. for sides, after end and protected front of vessels with $L_2 <$ 213 ft

For other tier bulkheads of all vessels, the thickness is not to be less than:

$t = 4.0 + 0.01L_2$ mm, but not less than 5.0 mm, for vessels with $L_2 \geq$ 65 m

$t = 4.0$ mm for vessels with $L_2 <$ 65 m

$t = 0.16 + 0.00012L_2$ in., but not less than 0.2 in., for vessels with $L_2 \geq$ 213 ft

$t = 0.16$ in. for vessels with $L_2 <$ 213 ft

where L_2 is defined in [3.5] .

3.5 Stiffeners *(1 July 2022)*

Each stiffener, in association with the plating to which it is attached, is to have section modulus SM not less than obtained from the following equation:

$$SM = 3.5s\ell^2 h \text{ cm}^3$$

$$SM = 0.00185s\ell^2 h \text{ in}^3$$

where

s = spacing of stiffeners, in m (ft.)

ℓ = tween deck height, in m (ft.)

h = $a[(bf)–y]c$, the design head, in m (ft).

= for unprotected front bulkheads on the lowest tier, and for all unprotected front bulkheads of a deckhouse situated completely or partially on a forecastle deck, h is not to be taken less than the following:

- 3 m (9.8 ft) for vessel length L not greater than 50 m (164 ft);
- 2.5 + L/100 m (8.2 + L/100 ft) for vessel length L greater than 50 m (164 ft) and less than 250 m (820 ft);
- 5 m (16.4 ft) for vessel length L not less than 250 m (820 ft)

= for all other bulkheads up to the 3rd tier, the minimum value of h is not to be less than one half the value for unprotected front bulkheads on the lowest tier. For bulkheads on the 4th tier and above, the minimum value of h is not to be less than 1.25 m (4 ft).

a = coefficient given in [TABLE 1]

b = $1.0 + \left[\frac{(x/L) - 0.45}{C_b + 0.2}\right]^2$ where $x/L \leq 0.45$

= $1.0 + 1.5\left[\frac{(x/L) - 0.45}{C_b + 0.2}\right]^2$ where $x/L > 0.45$

C_b = block coefficient, as defined in 3-1-1/13.3, not to be taken as less than 0.6 nor greater than 0.8. For aft end bulkheads forward of amidships C_b may be taken as 0.8.

x = distance, in m (ft), between the after perpendicular and the bulkhead being considered. Deckhouse side bulkheads are to be divided into equal parts not exceeding $0.15L$ in length and x is to be measured from the after perpendicular to the center of each part considered.

L, L_2 = length of vessel, in m (ft), but L_2 need not be taken as greater than 300 m (984 ft)

f = value determined from [TABLE 2], in m (ft).

y = vertical distance, in m (ft), from the summer load waterline to the midpoint of the stiffener span

c = $(0.3 + 0.7b_1/B_1)$ but is not to be taken as less than 1.0 for exposed machinery casing bulkheads. In no case is b_1/B_1 to be taken as less than 0.25.

b_1 = breadth of deckhouse at the position being considered, in m (ft)

B_1 = actual breadth of the vessel at the freeboard deck at the position being considered, in m (ft)

The stiffening is to be arranged so that mullion stiffeners are continuous between decks, with horizontal stiffeners intercostal between the mullion stiffeners. The front, end and side stiffeners are to be in alignment with the stiffeners of the deck below.

3.5.1 For Superstructures and Deckhouses Located at Forward Part of Offshore Support Vessels *(2024)*

The non-dimensional ratio of tween deck height to mullion stiffener depth is to not exceed 18 for front mullions and 30 for side mullions.

Where flat bars are used as mullion stiffeners, tripping hazards are to be considered and flat bars are to have a depth to thickness ratio not greater than 15.

Alternative arrangements may be acceptable by ABS providing that they can be shown to be equivalent in strength and stiffness to the above requirements.

3.6 Swage Bulkheads *(1 July 2020)*

Exposed bulkheads in steel superstructures and deckhouses shorter than $0.1L$ in length and whose sides are not in line with the vessel's sides may be constructed of swage panels.

Swages are triangular-shaped recesses pressed into plates to form stiffeners (see 3-2-11/Figure 3).

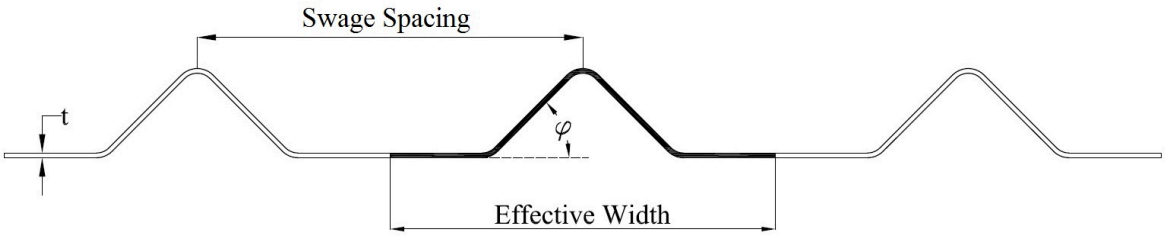
The scantlings of the exposed swage panel bulkheads of superstructures and deckhouses are to be in accordance with the following paragraphs, except that the requirements for house side swages need not exceed the requirements of Section 3-2-5 for the side frames directly below the deck on which the house is located.

The swage panel plating thickness is to satisfy the requirements in [3.3], where s is to be taken as the spacing of swages.

The effective width of the swage (see 3-2-11/Figure 3) is to be taken as the sum of one-half of the spacing on either side of the swage centerline. The section modulus of the swage, including the flat portion of the plates on either side of the swage within the effective width, is to satisfy the requirements in [3.5], where s is to be taken as the effective width of the swage. If the flat plate thickness varies, the mean flat plate thickness over the effective width is to be used.

Swages are to be oriented vertically. The swage angle, φ, is to be between 40 and 70 degrees.

FIGURE 3
Swage Panel



3.7 End Attachments

The following requirements are to be complied as applicable:

3.7.1 For Offshore Support Vessels *(2024)*

i) The end attachments of the stiffener webs are to be designed to prevent stress concentration.

ii) The upper and lower ends of all lowest tier bulkhead stiffeners, of all bulkhead stiffeners of the tiers on the forecastle deck and of all unprotected front bulkhead stiffeners are to be effectively attached.

iii) The end attachments are to be formed by end brackets, by welding all around flanges and webs to the deck plating or by lapping the stiffener onto the deck beam with the throat area of the weld not less than 80 % of the area of the member being attached.

iv) Where only the webs are welded on 3rd and higher tiers, the flange or face bar is to be sniped not more than 30°.

v) The upper and lower ends of all 2nd tier unprotected front bulkhead stiffener webs are to be efficiently welded.

Alternatively the lower ends of deckhouse stiffeners may be supported by strong vertical flat bar attached to the web frame and/or stiffener flanges (refer to [FIGURE 1] below) provided the structural integrity of the deck/bulkhead connection is not impaired. The vertical flat bars are to have a depth to thickness not greater than 10.

3.7.2 For Other Steel Vessels *(2024)*

The upper and lower ends of all lowest tier bulkhead stiffener webs and the 2nd tier unprotected front bulkhead stiffener webs are to be efficiently welded. The end attachments of stiffener web are to be supported by the deck/beams to prevent stress concentration.

The scantlings of stiffeners having other types of end connection are to be specially considered. The alternative type of connection in 3-2-11/3.7.1 is acceptable for other vessels.

3.7.3 For Swage Bulkheads on All Vessels *(1 July 2020)*

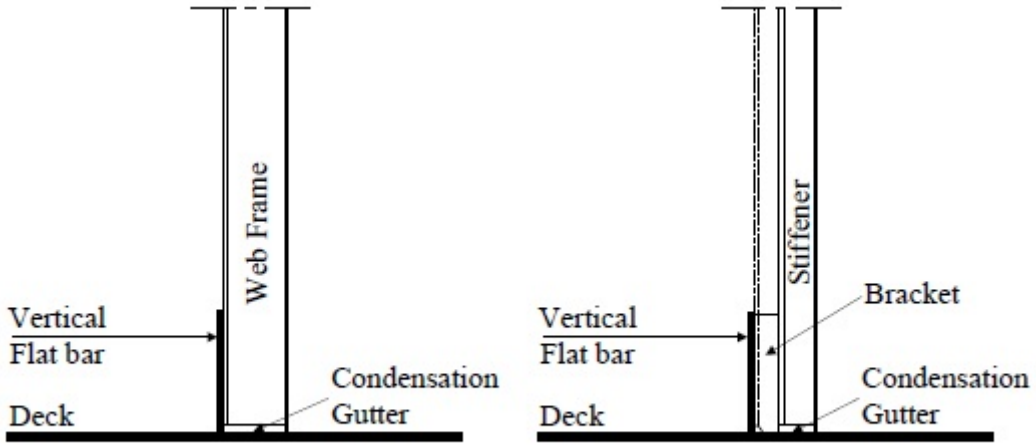
The upper and lower edges of swage panels are to be continuously welded to the deck plating. The flat plating of swage panels is to be aligned with deck girders, deck transverses, or bulkheads. The bottom ends of swages of all lowest tier bulkheads and the 2nd tier unprotected front bulkhead are to be adequately supported by underdeck stiffeners, brackets, or carlings to prevent stress concentrations.

Special attention is to be paid to connections between horizontal deck stiffeners, deck girders, or deck transverses and swage panels to enable effective load transfer and to minimize stress concentrations.

Large cutouts for doors, windows, pipes, and ventilation ducts are not to be positioned directly across the swages. Appropriate carlings are to be fitted at the edges of such cutouts to enable effective load transfer to the adjacent structure of the bulkhead.

The scantlings of swage panels having other types of end connections are to be specially considered.

FIGURE 4
Lower Ends of Deckhouse Stiffeners



3.9 Deck Steps *(1 July 2022)*

The vertical part of steps in exposed forecastle decks is to have plating of not less thickness than required for unprotected front bulkheads or aft bulkheads as applicable. The sizes of stiffeners are to be assessed on the basis of the length of the vessel, the actual height of the deck step and the arrangement of the structure.

3.11 Raised Quarter Deck Bulkheads

Raised quarter deck bulkheads are to have plating of not less thickness than required for bridge-front bulkheads. The sizes of stiffeners are to be specially considered on the basis of the length of the vessel, the actual height of the raised quarter deck and the arrangement of the structure.

TABLE 1
Values of a

Bulkhead Location	*SI Units and MKS Units*	*US Units*
Unprotected front, lowest tier	$2.0 + L_2/120$	$2.0 + L_2/393.6$
Unprotected front, 2nd tier	$1.0 + L_2/120$	$1.0 + L_2/393.6$
Unprotected front, 3rd tier	$0.5 + L_2/150$	$0.5 + L_2/492$
Protected front, all tiers	$0.5 + L_2/150$	$0.5 + L_2/492$
Sides, all tiers	$0.5 + L_2/150$	$0.5 + L_2/492$
Aft ends, aft of amidships, all tiers	$0.7 + (L_2/1000) – 0.8x/L$	$0.7 + (L_2/3280) – 0.8x/L$
Aft ends, forward of amidships, all tiers	$0.5 + (L_2/1000) – 0.4x/L$	$0.5 + (L_2/3280) – 0.4x/L$

TABLE 2
Values of f

Intermediate values of f may be obtained by interpolation

SI and MKS Units	
L, m	f, m
24	1.24
40	2.57
60	4.07
80	5.41
90	6.00
100	6.61
120	7.68
140	8.65
160	9.39
180	9.88
200	10.27
220	10.57
240	10.78
260	10.93
280	11.01
300 and greater	11.03

US Units	
L, ft	f, ft
79	4.09
130	8.34
200	13.6
250	17.0
295	19.8
300	20.1
350	22.9
400	25.5
450	27.9
500	30.1
550	31.5
600	32.6
650	33.6
700	34.4
750	35.0
800	35.5
850	35.8
900	36.1
984 and greater	36.2

Note: The above table is based on the following equations:

L	f
SI Units and MKS Units	
$L \leq 150$ m	$(L/10)(e^{-L/300})-[1-(L/150)^2]$
$150 < L < 300$ m	$(L/10)(e^{-L/300})$
$L \geq 300$ m	11.03
US Units	

L	f
$L \leq 492$ ft	$(L/10)(e^{-L/984})-[3.28-(L/272)^2]$
$492 < L < 984$ ft	$(L/10)(e^{-L/984})$
$L \geq 984$ ft	36.2

5 Enclosed Superstructures and Deckhouses

5.1 Openings in Bulkheads *(1 July 2025)*

All openings in the exposed bulkheads of enclosed superstructures and deckhouses are to be provided with efficient means of closing so that in any sea condition water will not penetrate the vessel. Opening and closing appliances are to be framed and stiffened so that when closed the whole structure is equivalent in strength to the unpierced bulkhead.

Commentary:

Doors should be designed to the same head (h) as the unpierced bulkhead. Doors may not need to have the same thickness as the bulkhead, especially if the stiffening arrangement is different. Refer to 3-2-11/5.3 for the minimum thickness of doors.

End of Commentary

5.3 Weathertight Doors *(1 July 2025)*

Doors for access openings into enclosed superstructures and deckhouses are to be made either of steel, aluminum or fiber reinforced plastic (if in compliance with statutory regulations and operational requirements) and are to be permanently attached to the bulkhead.

Scantlings for door panels and stiffeners or swages are to be obtained from [3.3] & [3.5] or [3.6] based on the design head of the bulkhead where the door is located. The minimum thickness for doors in exposed bulkheads is 4 mm (0.16 in.). This minimum thickness is to be applied to panels of doors located on exposed bulkheads of superstructure and deckhouses at and below Position 2 and to doors located on the exposed front bulkhead at all levels. The doors are to be provided with gaskets and clamping devices, or other equivalent arrangements and the doors are to be so arranged that they can be operated from both sides of the bulkhead.

Doors located above Position 2 (refer to 3-2-15/3.1) of superstructure and deckhouses are to have strength comparable to adjacent bulkheads and may be of joiner-type construction (e.g., thin gauge steel sheeting surrounding a mineral wool core), provided they are verified to be weathertight to the satisfaction of the attending Surveyor.

Superstructure and deckhouse doors located above Position 2 and located 18 m (60 ft) or higher above the deepest waterline may be accepted based on the following conditions:

i) Doors are to be capable of withstanding a wind speed of 100 knots (51.5 m/s), and

ii) The weathertightness test and securing arrangements of doors are to be to the satisfaction of the attending Surveyor.

Provided the above requirements are met, the specified minimum head pressure and thickness requirements of [3] may be omitted.

In the case that the superstructure/deckhouse exposed doors above Position 2 but located less than 18 m above the deepest waterline are not weathertight nor have strength compatible with adjacent bulkheads, these doors are to be considered as openings through which the progressive downflooding takes place in the damage stability calculation. If the door provides access to or protects against downflooding to a space

that is considered buoyant in the stability calculations the door is to be considered a downflooding point as indicated. This will be determined on a case-by-case basis.

Marine doors rated for the same design head as the bulkhead where they are located and which are designed and built to industry standards (the current versions of ASTM F1069, JIS F 2318, and BSI Standards BSMA 39) are considered acceptable as meeting requirements in this Section.

Doors are to open outwards and those in side bulkheads are to be hinged on the forward side.

5.3.1 Aluminum Doors

Aluminum doors are to have scantlings in accordance with [10.1] . The ends of all stiffeners are to be attached to the door edge stiffeners.

5.3.2 Initial Installation Testing *(2024)*

For initial installation testing, the requirements of item No. 2 in 3-7-1/3.5.7 TABLE 1 apply.

Superstructure and deckhouse weathertight doors in Position 1 (refer to 3-2-15/3.1) are to be tested the same as superstructure end bulkheads (refer to 3-7-1/3.5.7 TABLE 1) to confirm that the tightness can be maintained in any sea condition.

Superstructure and deckhouse weathertight doors in Position 2 (refer to 3-2-15/3.1) are to be tested to the satisfaction of the attending Surveyor (such as chalk testing or hose testing (refer to 3-7-1/3.5.4(c)).

5.5 Sills of Access Openings *(2024)*

Except as otherwise provided in these Rules, the height of the sills of access openings in external bulkheads of enclosed superstructures and deckhouses located on and below Position 2 is to be as follows:

Position 1	***Position 2***
For vessels equal to or over 24 meters (79 feet) and under 90 meters (295 feet) in length	
380 mm (15 in.)	380 mm (15 in.)
For vessels under 24 meters (79 feet) in length [(1,2)]	
380 mm (15 in.)	300 mm (12 in.)

Notes:

1 Sill heights may be reduced on vessels which have freeboard in excess of the minimum geometric freeboard and/or a superstructure deck with height of deck in excess of the standard height of a superstructure.

2 For vessels with $L < 24$ m (79 ft), the sill height should be as indicated above, unless otherwise specifically requested by flag Administration.

For companionway sills see 3-2-15/21.7.

5.7 Portlights

Portlights in the end bulkheads of enclosed superstructures and deckhouses are to be of substantial construction and provided with efficient inside deadlights. Also see 3-2-17/7.

5.9 Bridges and Poops

A bridge or poop is not regarded as enclosed unless an alternate means of access is provided for the crew from any point on the exposed portion of the uppermost continuous deck to reach the machinery space or other working spaces within these superstructures when the bulkhead openings are closed.

7 Open Superstructures *(2024)*

Superstructures and deckhouses with openings which do not fully comply with [5] , are to be considered as open superstructures.

Commentary:

For open superstructure forming wells, see 3-2-17/5.7 for provision for freeing ports.

End of Commentary

9 Forecastle Structures

Vessels subject to wave impact load over the forecastle, the following requirements are to be complied with:

i) Exposed forecastle structures on vessels with minimum freeboard are to be supported by girders in association with deep beams and web frames, preferably arranged in complete transverse belts and supported by lines of pillars extending continuously down into the structure below.

ii) Beams and girders are to be arranged, where practicable, to limit the spans to about 3 m (10 ft).

iii) Main structural intersections are to be carefully developed with special attention given to pillar head and heel connections, and to the avoidance of stress concentrations.

iv) Pillars are to be provided as required by 3-2-8/3.1 except that generally the diameter of pillars is not to be less than 200 mm (8 in.) for vessels possibly subjected to green water on the deck.

10 Aluminum Superstructures and Deckhouses

10.1 Scantlings

Where deckhouses are constructed of aluminum alloys, the required plate thickness and stiffener section modulus, SM, are first to be determined as required for mild steel superstructures and deckhouses, and are then to be increased by the material factor, $(235/Y_{aw})^{0.50}$ or $235/Y_{aw}$, as indicated below.

For all deck and bulkhead plating and stiffeners, the required thickness and section modulus for aluminum alloy plate and shapes are obtained from the following equations:

- Plating:
  $t_{al} = t_s(Y_s/Y_{aw})^{0.50}$ mm (in.)
- Stiffeners:
  $SM_{al} = Y_s/Y_{aw} SM \text{scm}^3$ (in^3)

where

t_{al} = minimum thickness of aluminum plate

t_s = required plate thickness for steel obtained from [1.3] and [3]

SM_{al} = minimum section modulus of aluminum stiffeners

SM_s = minimum section modulus of steel stiffeners, as determined from 3-2-7/3 and 3-2-8/5 for deck stiffeners and [3.5] for bulkhead stiffeners

Y_s = 235 N/mm^2 (24 kgf/mm^2, 34,000 lbs/in^2)

Y_{aw} = minimum yield strength of the welded aluminum alloy under consideration at 0.20% offset in a 254 mm (10 in.) gauge length, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, lbs/in^2), obtained from 3-2-9/9.3.3(a) TABLE 2

In addition, the aluminum stiffeners are to have a depth not less than that given below:

$$d_{al} = 3SM_s d_s / SM_{al}$$

where

d_{al} = minimum required depth for aluminum stiffeners

d_s = minimum required depth for steel stiffeners; not to be less than 100 mm (3.94 in.) depth for fronts and 80 mm (3.15 in.) for sides and ends

10.3 Attachments *(2022)*

Stiffeners on bulkheads are to be attached to the deck plating at their upper and lower ends by welding all around and are not to be sniped. Suitable means (such as transition joints) are to be taken to avoid direct contact of faying surfaces of aluminum to steel.

11 Helicopter Decks *(2024)*

11.1 General *(2024)*

Helicopter decks, where provided, are to meet the following structural and safety requirements. Attention is to be paid to various international and governmental regulations and guides regarding the operational and design requirements for helicopters landing on ships. See also Section [1A-1-5] of the ABS *Rules for Conditions of Classification (Part 1A)* and 4-6-4/3.9.2 and 4-6-6/9 of these Rules.

Commentary:

The ABS *Guide for the Class Notation Helicopter Decks and Facilities (HELIDK and HELIDK(SRF))* may be referred to for recommendations to assess the adequacy of helicopter decks and facilities. The notations **HELIDK** and **HELIDK(SRF)** are optional.

End of Commentary

Plans showing the arrangement, scantlings and details of the helicopter deck are to be submitted. The arrangement plan is to show the overall size of the helicopter deck and the designated landing area. If the arrangement provides for the securing of a helicopter or helicopters to the deck, the predetermined position(s) selected to accommodate the secured helicopter, in addition to the locations of deck fittings for securing the helicopter, are to be shown. The type of helicopter anticipated to use the facility is to be specified and calculations for appropriate loading conditions are to be submitted.

11.2 Definitions *(2024)*

11.2.1 Helicopter Length

The overall length of a helicopter (D) is the largest dimension of the helicopter when rotor(s) are turning measured from the forward position of the main rotor tip path plane to the most rearward position of the tail rotor path plane or helicopter structure.

11.3 Structure

Scantlings of helicopter decks and supporting structure are to be determined on the basis of the following loading conditions, whichever is greater, in association with the allowable factors of safety shown in [TABLE 3] . Plastic design considerations may be applied for deck plating and stiffeners.

Scantlings of helicopter decks and supporting structures are to be such that the resulting stress in members does not exceed:

$$Y/F_s$$

where

Y = specified minimum yield point or yield strength of the material

F_s = factor of safety, as given in [TABLE 3]

11.3.1 Overall Distributed Loading

A minimum distributed loading of 2.01 kN/m^2 (205 kgf/m^2, 42 lbf/ft^2) is to be taken over the entire helicopter deck.

11.3.2 Helicopter Landing Impact Loading

A load of not less than 75% of the helicopter maximum take-off weight is to be taken on each of two square areas, 0.3 m × 0.3 m (1 ft × 1 ft). Alternatively, the manufacturer's recommended wheel impact loading will be considered. The deck is to be considered for helicopter landings at any location within the designated landing area. The structural weight of the helicopter deck is to be added to the helicopter impact loading when considering girders, stanchions, truss supports, etc. Where the upper deck of a superstructure or deckhouse is used as a helicopter deck and the spaces below are normally manned (quarters, bridge, control room, etc.), the impact loading is to be multiplied by a factor of 1.15.

11.3.3 Stowed Helicopter Loading

If provisions are made to accommodate helicopters secured to the deck in a predetermined position, the structure is to be considered for a local loading equal to the manufacturer's recommended wheel loading at maximum take-off weight, multiplied by a dynamic amplification factor based on the predicted motions of the vessel for this condition, as may be applicable for the vessel under consideration.

In addition to the helicopter load, a uniformly distributed loading of 490 N/m^2 (50 kgf/m^2, 10.5 lbf/ft^2), representing wet snow or ice, is to be considered, if applicable. For the girders, stanchions, truss supports, etc., the structural weight of the helicopter deck is also to be considered.

11.3.4 Loading due to Motions of Vessel:

The structure supporting helicopter decks is to withstand the loads resulting from the motions of the vessel.

11.3.5 Special Landing Gear:

Helicopters fitted with landing gear other than wheels will be specially considered.

11.3.6 Environmental Loading

Calculations are to consider anticipated wind and wave impact loading on helicopter decks and their supporting structures.

11.3.7 Bolted Connections

Where bolted connections are used, calculations are to be carried out in accordance with a recognized standard and submitted for review. Metallic isolation arrangement is to be provided where galvanic potential exists between different materials. The degree of fixity of structural components incorporating bolted connections is to be properly considered in the helideck structural assessment. Where fully fixed connection is considered, the bolted connection is to be designed with enough stiffness to account for the full transfer of moment and prevent relative rotation of the structural components.

TABLE 3
Allowable Factors of Safety Based on Y For Helicopter Decks

Y = specified minimum yield point or yield strength of the material as defined in [2-1-1/13] of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)*

	Plating	***Beams***	***Girders, Stanchions, Truss Supports, etc. (See Note 3)***
Overall Distributed Loading	1.67	1.67	1.67
Helicopter Landing Impact Loading	*(See Note 1)* *1.00* [(2)]	1.00	1.10
Stowed Helicopter Loading	1.00	1.10	1.25

Notes:

1 The minimum plate thickness t is generally not to be less than obtained from the following:

Beam spacing	t		Beam spacing	t
460 mm	4.0 mm		18 in.	0.16 in.
610 mm	5.0 mm		24 in.	0.20 in.
760 mm	6.0 mm		30 in.	0.24 in.

2 Alternatively, ultimate state limit methods may be considered.

3 For members subjected to axial compression, the factor of safety is to be based on the yield stress or critical buckling stress, whichever is less.

4 The minimum plate thickness for materials other than steel will be specially considered.

11.5 Material *(2024)*

In general, the construction of helicopter decks is to be of steel or another material with an equivalent ability to retain structural capacity in a fire. If the helicopter deck forms the deck head of a deckhouse or superstructure, it is to be insulated to A-60 class standard. Flag concurrence is required to satisfy SOLAS Ch. II-2/18 for the aluminum construction of a helicopter deck.

Where aluminum decks are used for helicopter decks above superstructures or deckhouses, the following arrangement is considered to have the equivalent fire integrity to steel, when tested in accordance with the listed below fire test. See 5D-4-4/2.9 for vessels engaged in fire fighting operations on offshore installations.

In addition, for the arrangement to be considered to have equivalent fire integrity to steel helideck, an aluminum helicopter deck which is located 1m (3.25 ft) or less above superstructure or deckhouses, a water spray system in accordance with 4-7-2/5.3.7 giving coverage to aluminum structure underneath the helicopter deck is to be provided.

11.5.1 Fire Test Procedures *(2022)*

i) Size of prototype helicopter deck is 7.6 m × 7.6 m (24.9 ft × 24.9 ft) with structural equivalence to the final product arrangement.

ii) If an aluminum gutter is incorporated in the test, the aluminum gutter is to be placed at least on one side of the sample helideck panel.

iii) Testing of the helicopter deck with the proposed sealant should be done without any topcoats or painting on the helicopter deck surface.

iv) The static loads simulating actual helicopter weight are to be present on the helicopter deck.

v) An initial 284 liters (75 gallons) of fuel is to be poured over the helicopter deck area to a set fuel depth of 4-6 mm (0.16-0.24 in.). For the first 15 minutes, fuel is to be supplied at a rate of 147.6 liters per minute (39 gallons per minute) such that the deck is filled with fuel for the full 15 minutes. The depth of the fuel pool is to be limited to 4-6 mm (0.16-0.24 in.). After the first 15 minutes, no additional fuel is supplied, and the fire is allowed to burn until all fuel on the helicopter deck is consumed.

11.5.2 Fire Test Acceptance

The acceptance criteria are as follows (visual observations of the deck and sealing):

i) The helideck panel is not to collapse or be deformed between girders.

ii) The helideck panel support girders is not to collapse or be deformed.

iii) No fuel leakage is to occur in panel joints.

iv) No flames below deck or burn-through is to occur.

v) If an aluminum gutter is incorporated, no damage to the gutter is to be observed.

11.5.3 Other Arrangements of Helideck

If the aluminum helicopter deck does not meet the requirements of [11.7.1] and [11.7.2], and where the flag Administration has no specific requirements, the following conditions are to be satisfied:

i) There are to be no openings in the superstructure or deckhouse top directly below the helicopter deck.

ii) There are to be no openings in the exterior bulkheads directly below the helicopter decks.

iii) All windows/portlights in the exterior bulkheads directly below the helicopter decks are to be fitted with steel shutters.

iv) The helicopter deck is to be insulated to A-0 class if it is located 1m (3.25 ft) or less above the top of the superstructure or deckhouse top.

v) The superstructure or deckhouse top and exterior bulkhead, including penetrations, except windows/portlights, is to be constructed as A-0 class divisions.

11.9 Arrangements

The following requirements are to be applied to helicopter decks on offshore support vessels.

11.9.1 Size *(2024)*

The helicopter deck is to be of sufficient size to contain a circle of a diameter equal to at least the length *D* (see [11.2.1]) of the largest helicopter intended to use the facility. The helicopter deck is to have an approach/departure sector of at least 210° free of obstructions, as shown in [FIGURE 5] . Objects the function of which requires that they be located on the helideck within approach/departure sector should be limited to landing nets (where required) and certain lighting system and should not exceed the surface of the landing area by more than 0.025 m. For single main rotor helicopters, within 150° limited obstacle sector out to a distance of 0.12*D*, measured from the point of origin of the limited obstacle sector, objects should not exceed a height of 0.25 m above deck. Beyond that arc, out to a distance of an additional 0.21*D*, the maximum obstacle height is limited to a gradient of one unit vertically for each two units horizontally originating at a height of 0.05*D* above the level of the helideck (see [FIGURE 5]).

For benign climates as determined by the coastal State, taking into account of the type of helicopter used, the conditions of wind, turbulence, sea state, water temperature and icing conditions, the helicopter deck is to be of sufficient size to contain a circle of a diameter not less than 0.83*D*. The helicopter deck is to have an approach/departure sector of at least 210° free of obstructions, as shown in [FIGURE 6] . Objects the function of which requires that they be located on the helideck within approach/departure sector should be limited to landing nets (where required) and certain lighting system and should not exceed the surface of the landing area by more than 0.025 m. For single main rotor helicopters, within 0.415*D* to 0.5*D* objects should not exceed a height of 0.25 m. Within 150° limited obstacle sector out to a distance of 0.12*D*, measured from the point of origin of the limited obstacle sector, objects should not exceed a height of 0.05m above deck. Beyond that arc, out to a distance of an additional 0.21*D*, the maximum obstacle height is limited to a gradient of one unit vertically for each two units horizontally originating at a height of 0.05*D* above the level of the helideck (see [FIGURE 6]).

11.9.2 Surface

The helicopter deck is to have a skid-resistant surface.

11.9.3 Grating Type Construction

Where the helicopter deck is constructed in the form of grating, the under deck should be such that the ground effect is maintained.

11.9.4 Drainage

The helicopter deck is to have drainage facilities to prevent the collection of liquids and prevent liquids from spreading to or falling on other parts of the vessel.

11.9.5 Projections

The helicopter deck is to be free of projections except that landing lights or other essential projections may be installed around the periphery of the deck provided they do not rise more than 150 mm (6 in.) above the level of the helicopter deck.

11.9.6 Tie Downs

The helicopter deck is to have recessed tie-down points for securing a helicopter.

FIGURE 5
Helideck Obstacle Limitation Sector: Single Main Rotor Helicopter

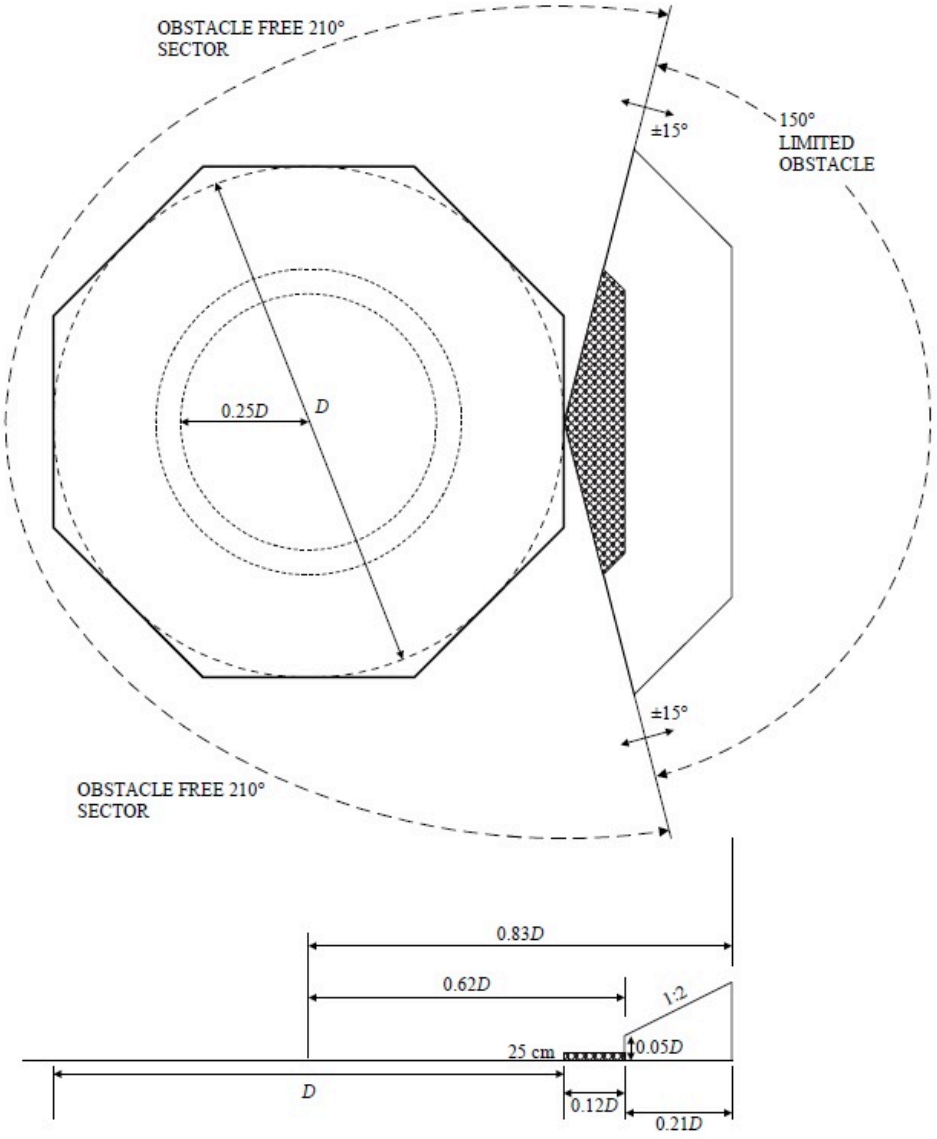
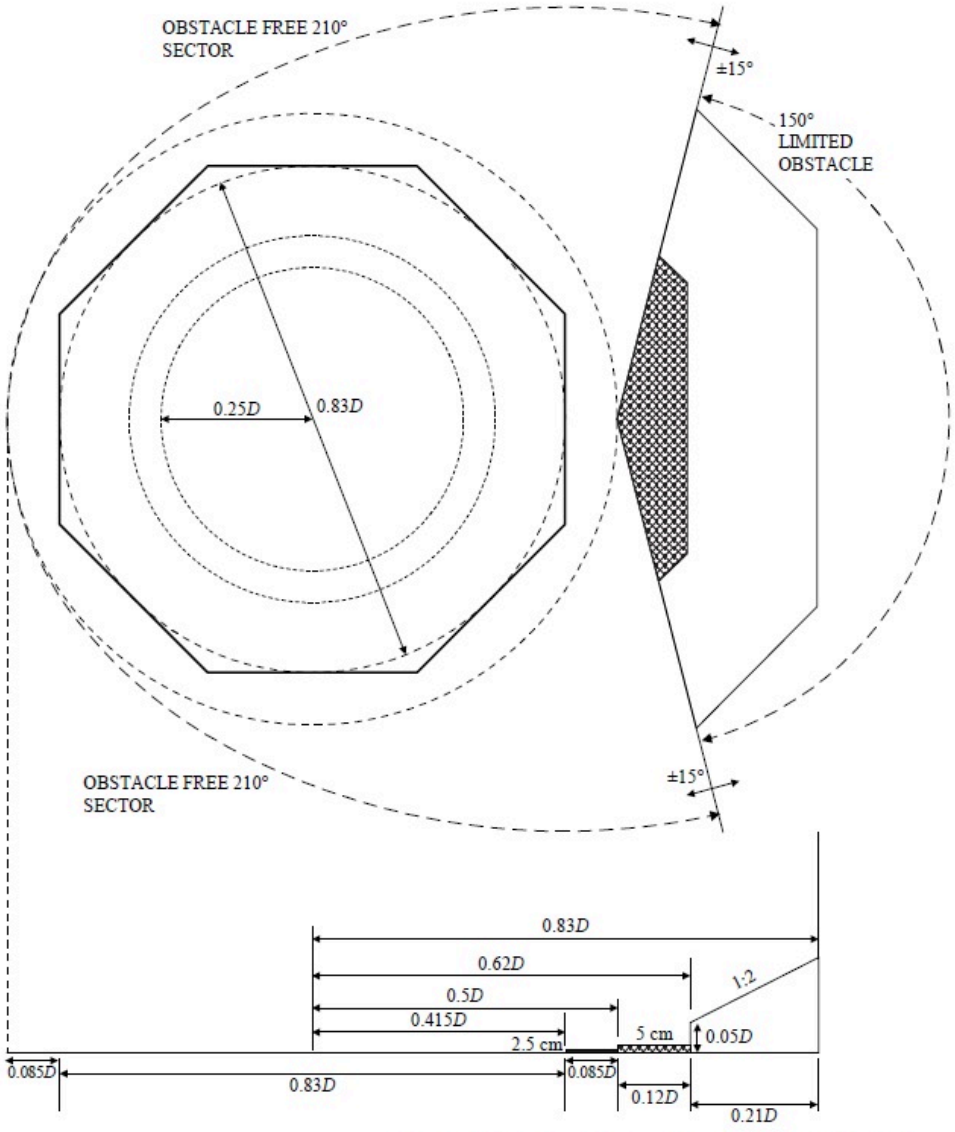


FIGURE 6
Helideck Obstacle Limitation Sector: Single Main Rotor Helicopter for Benign Climate Conditions as Accepted by the Coastal State



Note: Heights of 2.5 cm and 5 cm high shaded areas are not to scale.

11.11 Means of Escape and Access

The helicopter deck is to be provided with both a main and an emergency means of escape and access for fire fighting and rescue personnel. These means are to be located as far apart from each other as is practicable and preferably on opposite sides of the helicopter deck.

Aluminum access/egress platforms and stairways leading to and from the aluminum helideck are acceptable, provided the following conditions are satisfied:

i) Conditions in [11.7] are complied with.

ii) Acceptance from the flag Administration.

iii) The firefighting equipment, which includes the hose reel, portable fire extinguishers, fixed foam system, is to provide coverage for the access/egress platforms and stairways. The capacity of the fixed foam system is to be increased to include the additional areas of protection for the aluminum access/egress platforms and stairways

iv) Where the helideck is also used as a firefighting station, the aluminum access/egress platforms and stairways are to meet the L3 fire integrity test, or equivalent as per 3-4-A1/9 TABLE 1.

v) Where alternative means of fire protection (such as deluge system) are provided (typically along stairways or access under the helideck), and the arrangement and locations of the firefighting equipment, required in *i*) above are also available at or cover the access/egress route, the L3 performance test will not be necessary.

vi) Where the helideck is fitted with a refueling station, there is to be sufficient distance from the refueling station to at least one of the stairs, such that the aluminum stairs are not impacted by the fire at the refueling station.

In case of a fire outside the helideck area, access platforms and stairways are not to be considered part of an escape route.

11.13 Safety

11.13.1 Safety Net

For personnel protection, a safety net is to be provided around the periphery of the helicopter deck, except where structural protection exists. The net should be inclined upwards at an angle of 10° and outwards from below the edge of the helideck to a horizontal distance of 1.5 m and is not to rise above the edge of the deck.

11.13.2 Visual Aids *(2024)*

Coastal States may have specific requirements for visual aids that are to be incorporated into the design. Those requirements are to be specified in the documentations submitted to ABS. Where the Coastal State has no requirements, the following requirements for wind indicator, markings and lights are to be complied with:

A wind direction indicator located in an unobstructed area readily visible to helicopters approaching the helicopter deck is to be provided. Vessels on which night helicopter operations take place are to have provisions to illuminate the wind direction indicator.

11.13.3 Markings *(2024)*

The helicopter deck is to be marked (refer to [FIGURE 7]) in a contrasting color as follows:

i) The perimeter with a continuous line of 300 mm (11.811 in.) in width

ii) Vessel identification

iii) Aiming circles, taking into account deck configuration, helicopter type and operational requirements

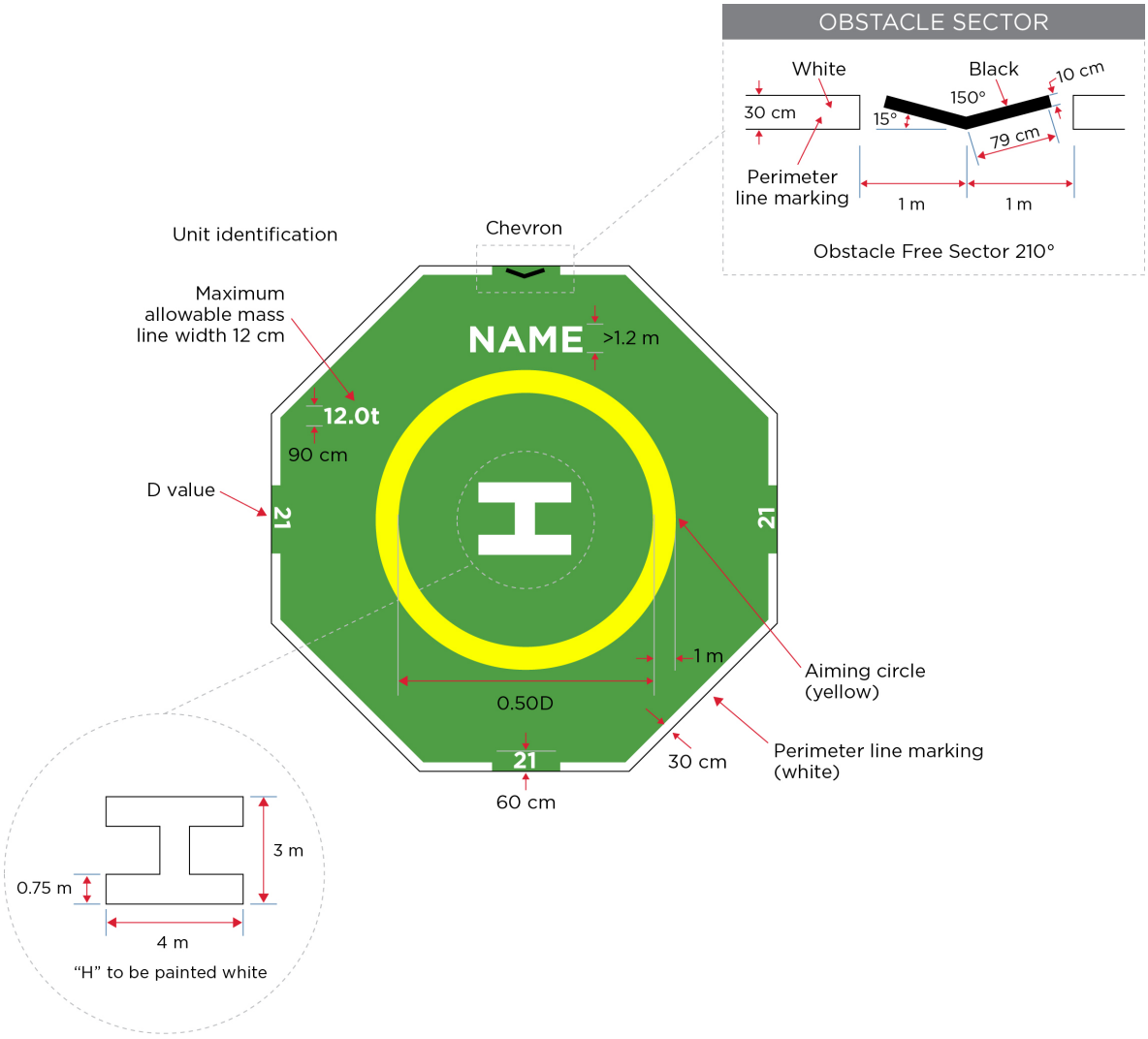
iv) A white "**H**" 4 m (13.15 ft) high, 3 m (9.85 ft) wide, with a stroke width of 0.75 m (2.45 ft), located at the center of the landing area

11.13.4 Lights

Each helicopter deck is to be fitted with green lights visible omni-directionally from on or above the landing area. These lights is to be equally spaced at intervals of not more than 3 m (9'-10") around the perimeter of the deck.

Helicopter deck floodlights, where fitted, is to be located so as to avoid glare to pilots. The arrangement and aiming of floodlights is to be such that helicopter deck markings are illuminated and that shadows are kept to a minimum.

FIGURE 7
Example of Helicopter Deck Markings *(2024)*



1 General

1.1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1.1 Goals

The vessel structure is to be designed, constructed, operated and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goal*
STRU 1	In the intact conditions, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU3	Provide protection to persons onboard, the environment and required safety services.
MGMT 5.1	Design and construct vessel, machinery, and electrical systems to facilitate safe access, ease of inspection, survey, and maintenance..

The goals in the cross-referenced Rules are also to be met.

1.1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above stated goals, the design, construction, installation, and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Structure (STRU)	
STRU-FR1	Scantlings are to have sufficient strength to resist failure and excessive deformation associated with buckling and yielding when subjected to the loads anticipated throughout the service life, including hydrostatic loads (tank and watertight boundaries), load from machinery and shafting, etc.
STRU-FR2	Suitable tightness of tanks and decks are to be provided.
STRU-FR3	The design of the termination of structural members is to prevent yielding or fatigue cracks.

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
STRU-FR4	Scantlings are to be maintained so that the structure will continue to satisfy all Goals and Functional Requirements
STRU-FR5	Bolted connections are to be designed to properly transmit load between structural elements.
STRU-FR6	The foundations for main propulsion units, reduction gears, shaft and thrust bearings, and the structure supporting those foundations are to be adequate in strength and rigidity, to maintain required alignment under all anticipated conditions of loading.
STRU-FR7	All parts of the machinery, shafting, etc. are to be efficiently supported and the adjacent structure is to be adequately stiffened.
Safety Management (MGMT)	
MGMT-FR1	Satisfactory arrangements are to be provided for safe access for operation, inspection and maintenance

The goals and functional requirements in cross-referenced Rules are to be met.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved, refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

1.3 Arrangement *(2024)*

In view of the effect upon the structure of the necessary openings in the machinery space, the difficulty of securing adequate support for the decks, of maintaining the stiffness of sides and bottom and of distributing the weight of the machinery, special attention is directed to the need for arranging, in the early stages of design, for the provision of plated through beams and such casing and pillar supports as are required to secure structural efficiency. Careful attention to these features in design and construction is to be regarded as of the utmost importance.

i) All parts of the machinery, shafting, etc., are to be efficiently supported and the adjacent structure is to be adequately stiffened.

ii) In twin-screw vessels it is necessary to make additions to the strength of the structure and the area of attachments, in proportion to the weight, power and dimensions of the machinery, especially where engines are relatively high in proportion to the width of the bed plate.

iii) The height and approximate weight of engines are to be stated upon the bolting plan, which is to be approved before the bottom construction is commenced. The foundations for main propulsion units, reduction gears, shaft and thrust bearings, and the structure supporting those foundations to be adequate in strength and rigidity, to maintain required alignment under all anticipated conditions of loading.

iv) The foundations and their supporting structures are to be to satisfaction of each manufacturer for main propulsion units, reduction gears, and thrust bearings. (See 4-3-2/7.3).

1.5 Testing of Tunnels

Requirements for testing are contained in Part 3, Chapter 7.

3 Machinery Foundations

3.1 Engine Foundations

3.1.1 Single Bottom Vessels

In vessels with single bottoms, the engines are to be seated on thick plates laid across the top of deep floors or upon heavy foundation girders efficiently bracketed and stiffened. Intercostal plates are to be fitted between the floors beneath the lines of bolting to distribute the weight effectively through the bottom structure to the shell. Seat plates are to be of thickness and width appropriate to the holding-down bolts and are to be effectively attached to girders and intercostals.

3.1.2 Double Bottom Vessels *(2024)*

In vessels with double bottoms, the engines are to be seated directly upon thick inner-bottom plating or upon thick seat plates on top of heavy foundations arranged to distribute the weight effectively. The thickness of the inner bottom plating is to be at least 19.0 mm (0.75 in.) in way of engine bed plates or thrust blocks which are bolted directly to the inner bottom. This thickness may be required to be increased according to the size and power of the engine(s). Holding-down bolts are to pass through angle flanges of sufficient breadth to take the nuts.

Additional intercostal girders are to be fitted within the double bottom, to provide satisfactory distribution of the weight and the rigidity of the structure.

For vessels of less than 90 meters (295 feet) in length, inner-bottom plating thickness is to be sufficient against the worst case scenario of the anticipated loads and vibrations.

3.3 Boiler Foundations *(2024)*

Boilers, if provided, are to be supported by deep saddle-type floors or by transverse or fore-and-aft girders arranged to distribute the weight effectively. Where they are supported by transverse saddles or girders, the floors in way of boilers are to be suitably increased in thickness and specially stiffened (refer to 3-2-4/5). Boilers are to be installed such as to provide accessibility and proper ventilation being clear of tank tops, bunker walls, etc., as required by 4-4-1/19.3. The thickness of adjacent material is to be increased where the clear space is unavoidably sparse. The available clearance is to be indicated on the plans submitted for approval.

Commentary:

The requirement for bottom clearance under boilers is applicable to those boilers which are installed on the engine room floors or inner bottom plates and not applicable if the boiler is located on tween decks in machinery spaces.

The required increase of adjacent material (e.g., double bottom structures) where the clear space is unavoidably sparse is, in general, 1.5 mm (0.06 in.) in thickness in light of the effect of heat corrosion.

Thickness increase of the plating is not necessary if the bottom of the furnace is well insulated and no heat radiates to the structural member.

End of Commentary

3.5 Thrust Foundations *(2024)*

Thrust blocks are to be bolted to efficient foundations extending well beyond the thrust blocks and arranged to distribute the loads effectively into the adjacent structure. The thickness of the inner bottom plating in way of thrust blocks which are bolted directly to the inner bottom is to be as required by [3.1.2] .

Commentary:

Consideration should be given to fitting effectively attached extra intercostal girders in way of the foundations to the satisfaction of each manufacturer.

End of Commentary

3.7 Shaft Bearing and Auxiliary Machinery Foundations

Foundations of the shaft bearings are to be strong, stiff and integrated into surrounding structure. Auxiliary machinery foundations are to be proportioned to the weight supported.

5 Tunnels and Tunnel Recesses

5.1 Plating *(2024)*

The plating of flat sides of shaft or other watertight tunnels is to be of the thickness as obtained from 3-2-9/5.1 for watertight bulkheads; but the lowest strake of the plating is to be increased 1 mm (0.04 in.). Flat plating on the tops of tunnels or tunnel recesses is to be of the thickness required for watertight bulkhead plating at the same level, where unsheathed in way of hatches, the thickness is to be increased 2 mm (0.08 in.).

Where the top of the tunnel or recess forms a part of a deck, the thickness is to be not less than required for the plating of watertight bulkheads at the same level plus 1 mm (0.04 in.) nor less than would be required for the deck plating in the same location.

Curved plating may be of the thickness required for watertight bulkhead plating at the same level in association using stiffener spacing of 150 mm (6 in.) less than actually adopted. Crown plating in way of hatches is to be increased at least 2.5 mm (0.10 in.) or is to be protected by wood sheathing of not less than 50 mm (2 in.) thick.

5.3 Stiffeners *(2024)*

Stiffeners are not to be spaced more than 915 mm (36 in.) apart and each stiffener, in association with the plating to which it is attached, is to have a section modulus SM not less than obtained from the following equation:

$$SM = 4.42hs\ell^2 \text{ cm}^3$$

$$SM = 0.0023hs\ell^2 \text{ in}^3$$

where

h = distance, in m (ft), from the middle of ℓ to the bulkhead deck at center

s = spacing of stiffeners, in m (ft)

ℓ = distance, in m (ft), between the top and bottom supporting members without brackets

The ends of stiffeners are to be welded to the top and bottom supporting members. Where masts, stanchions, etc., are supported by tunnels, local strengthening is to be provided proportional to the weight carried.

5.5 Beams, Pillars and Girders

Beams, pillars and girders under the tops of tunnels, or tunnel recesses are to be as required for similar members on bulkhead recesses.

5.7 Tunnels Through Deep Tanks

Where tunnels pass through deep tanks, the thickness of the plating and the size of the stiffeners in way of the tanks is not to be less than required for deep-tank bulkheads. Tunnels of circular form are to have plating of not less thickness t than obtained from the following equation:

$$t = 0.1345dh + 9 \text{ mm}$$

$$t = 0.000492dh + 0.36 \text{ in.}$$

where

d = diameter of the tunnel, in m (ft)

h = distance, in m (ft), from the bottom of the tunnel to the highest point of the following:

- the load line
- the highest level to which the tank contents may rise in service conditions
- a point located at a distance two-thirds D, as defined in 3-1-1/7.1, above the baseline
- a point located two-thirds of the test head above the top of the tank

SECTION 13
Stems, Stern Frames, Rudder Horns, and Propeller Nozzles

1 General *(2024)*

1.1 Objective

1.1.1 Goals

The vessel structure is to be designed, constructed, operated and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goal*
STRU 1	In the intact condition, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU 3	Provide protection to persons onboard, the environment and required safety services.
MAT 2	The manufacturing process is to be capable of producing products to meet the specified quality and property requirements.
MAT 3	The fabrication and welding process is to be capable of producing products that meets the specified quality and property requirements.

The goals in the cross-referenced Rules are also to be met.

1.1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above stated goals, the design, construction, installation, and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Structure (STRU)	
STRU-FR1	Scantlings are to have sufficient strength to resist failure and excessive deformation associated with buckling and yielding when subjected to the loads anticipated throughout

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
	the service life, including bow impact load, slamming load, hydrodynamic lift and drag loads, vibration, load from rudders, propellers, and propulsion improvement devices.
STRU-FR2	The design of the termination of structural members is to be such as to prevent yielding or fatigue cracks.
STRU-FR3	The workmanship is to avoid discontinuities, misalignment and other harmful details that may lead to failure in service.
STRU-FR4	Scantlings are to be maintained so that the structure will continue to satisfy all Goals and Functional Requirements throughout the expected service life.
STRU-FR5	Sufficient structural strength is to be provided to resist cracking, buckling, fatigue damage, deformation, erosion due to cavitation, corrosion, or vibration from propeller forces which would impair the structural integrity of the ship.
STRU-FR6	The foundations and the supporting structures for shaft and propulsion improvement devices are to be adequate in strength and rigidity.
STRU-FR7	Fabrication is to be of sufficient quality (welding, structural tolerances, alignment, defects) so that the finished product performs in accordance with the design assumptions.

The goals and functional requirements in cross-referenced Rules are to be met.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

2 Stems

Depending on size and design of the vessel stems may be made of bent and welded steel plates, of formed cast or forged steel, or of steel bar.

2.1 Plate Stems *(2024)*

Plate stems, where used, are not to be less in thickness than required by the following equations, in the draft change zone (between the minimum draft and the maximum draft). See [FIGURE 1A] .

$$t = 1.5 + (L/12)\sqrt{q}\,\text{mm} \qquad L \leq 245\ \text{m}$$

$$t = 1.5 + 20.5\sqrt{q}\,\text{mm} \qquad 245 < L \leq 305\ \text{m}$$

$$t = 0.06 + (L/1000)\sqrt{q}\,\text{in.} \qquad L \leq 800\ \text{ft}$$

$$t = 0.06 + 0.8\sqrt{q}\,\text{in.} \qquad 800 < L \leq 1000\ \text{ft}$$

where

q = $235/Y$ N/mm^2 ($24/Y$ kgf/mm^2 , $34000/Y$ psi)

Y = specified minimum yield point or yield strength, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2,psi), as defined in [2-1-1/13] of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)*, for the higher-strength material or 72% of the specified minimum tensile strength, whichever is the lesser.

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

Above and below the draft change zone, the thickness may taper to the thickness of the shell at ends at the freeboard deck and to the thickness of the flat-plate keel at the forefoot, respectively.

2.3 Cast or Forged Stems *(2024)*

Cast or forged stems as shown in [FIGURE 1B] of special shape are to be proportioned to provide strength at least equivalent to that of a plate stem, and all joints and connections are to be at least that effective.

2.5 Bar Stems *(2024)*

Bar stems as shown in [FIGURE 1C] are to have thickness and width not less than obtained from the following equations:

$t = 0.625L + 6.35$ mm

$t = 0.0075L + 0.25$ in.

$w = 1.25L + 90$ mm

$w = 0.015L + 3.5$ in.

where

t = thickness, in mm (in.)

w = width, in mm (in.)

L = length of vessel, in m (ft), as defined in 3-1-1/3.1

Commentary:

In general, the thickness of the bar stem should also not be less than twice the adjoining shell thickness.

End of Commentary

This thickness and width is to be maintained between the keel and scantling draft line. Above the scantling draft line they may be gradually reduced until the section area at the freeboard deck is 0.7 of that obtained from the above equations.

Thicknesses and widths other than given above are acceptable, provided the section moduli and moments of inertia about the longitudinal axis are not less than calculated from above, nor is proportion of *w/t* more than 5.5.

FIGURE 1A
Plate Stem *(2024)*

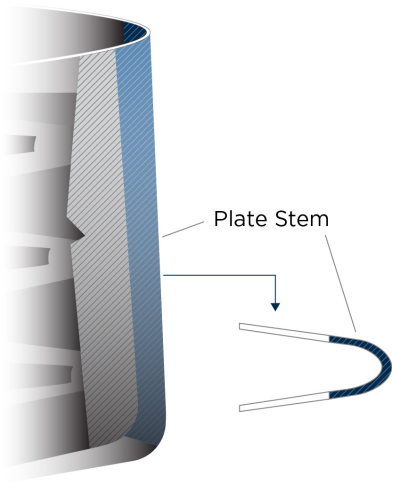


FIGURE 1B
Cast/Forged Stem *(2024)*

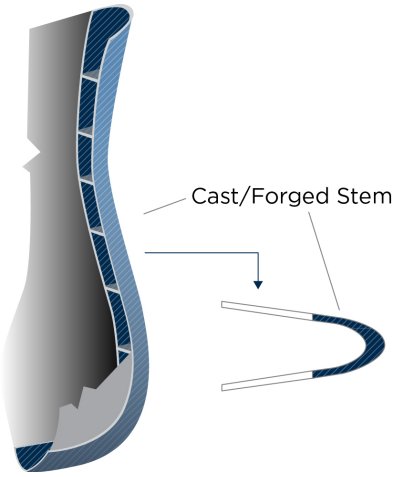
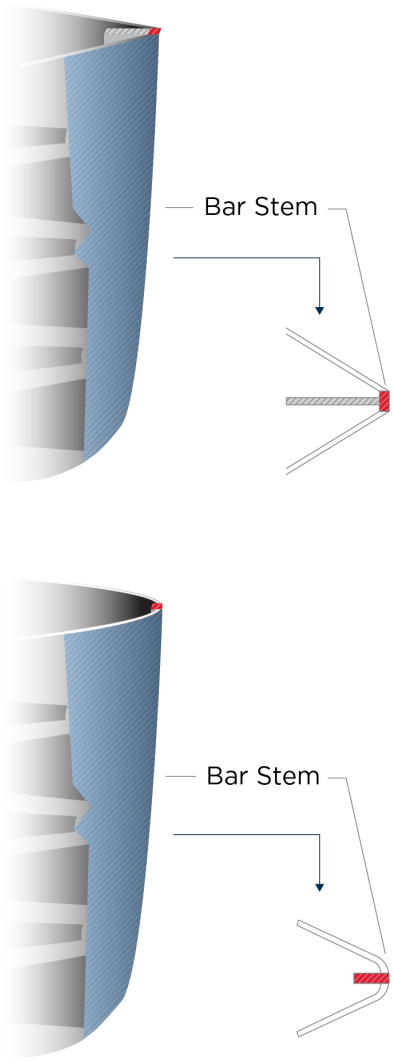


FIGURE 1C
Bar Stem *(2024)*



3 Stern Frames *(2024)*

Stern frames may be fabricated from steel plates or made of cast steel. For applicable material specifications and steel grades, see 3-1-2/1.3.1 and 3-1-2/3.1 TABLE 2A. The scantlings are to comply with [3.3] and [3.5] .

Cast stern frames and shoe pieces are to be manufactured from special grade material per [2-1-5/7.3] .

Commentary:

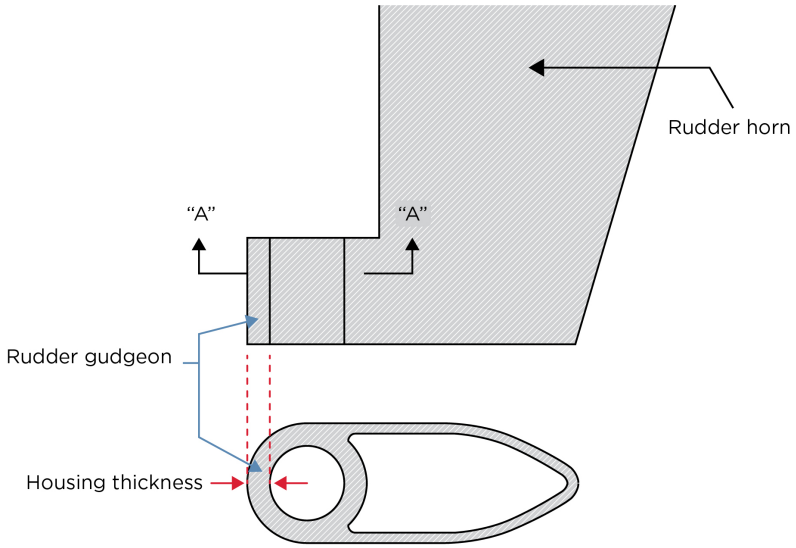
Stern frames of other material or construction may be specially considered by ABS. Consideration should be given to provide measures against cavitation erosion.

End of Commentary

3.1 Rudder Gudgeons *(2024)*

Rudder gudgeons are to be an integral part of the stern frame. The bearing length of the pintle is to be between 1.0 and 1.2 times the pintle diameter (refer to 3-2-14/13.7). The thickness of the pintle housing is not to be less than 25% of the pintle diameter. See the figure below:

FIGURE 2
Rudder Gudgeon *(2024)*



3.3 Scantlings Below the Propeller Boss

Except as modified in [3.5] , the scantlings of stern frames of single screw vessels are to be in accordance with the following, as applicable:

3.3.1 Fabricated Stern Frame *(2024)*

The thickness t, width w, length ℓ, and $tw^2\sqrt{1+(2\ell/w)^2}$ respectively for fabricated stern frames are to be not less than those given by the following equations:

$t = 0.225\sqrt{L}$ cm		$t = \sqrt{L}/20.5$ in.	
$w = 5\sqrt{L}$ cm	$L < 81$ m	$w = 1.09\sqrt{L}$ in.	$L < 265$ ft
$w = 45$ cm	$L \geq 81$ m	$w = 17.7$ in.	$L \geq 265$ ft
$\ell = 4\sqrt{L}$cm	$L < 90$m	$\ell = 0.87\sqrt{L}$in.	$L < 295$ft

$$tw^2\sqrt{1+(2\ell/w)^2} \geq C_f L^{1.5} L \geq 90\text{m}\,(295\text{ft})$$

where

t = thickness of side plating, in cm (in.) (See [FIGURE 1])

w = width of stern frame, in cm (in.) (See [FIGURE 1])

ℓ = length of stern frame, in cm (in.) (See [FIGURE 1])

L = length of vessel, in m (ft), as defined in 3-1-1/3.1

C_f = 9.6 (9.6, 0.1)

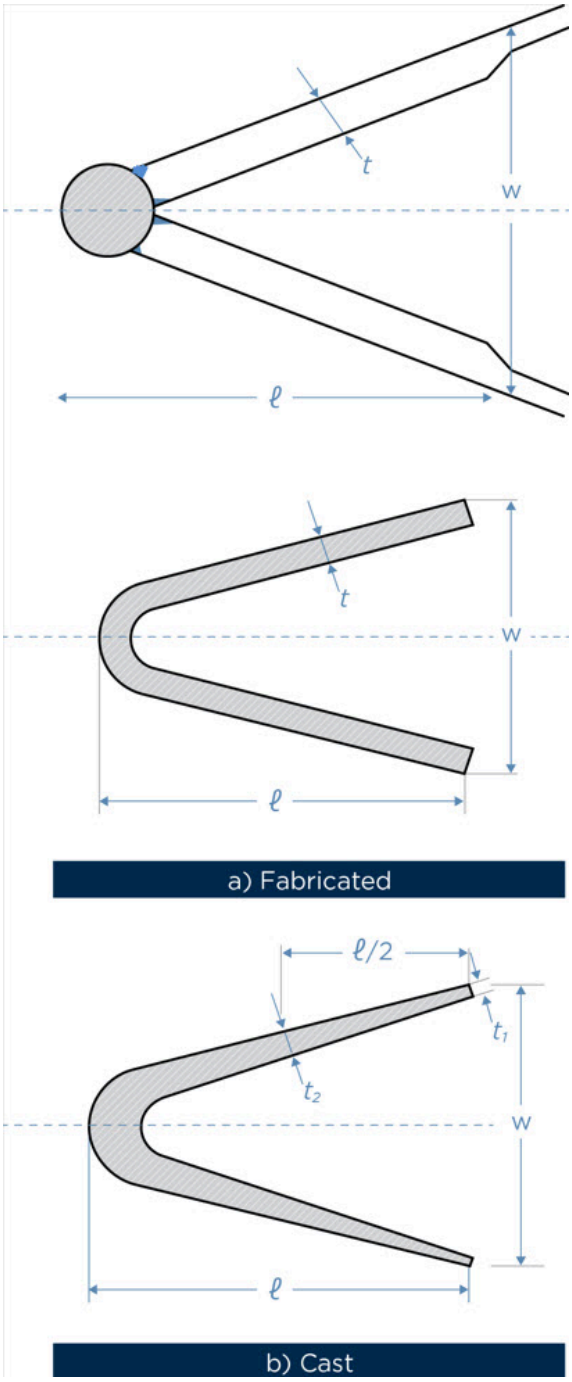
Commentary:

For vessels under 90 meters (295 feet), widths and lengths other than given above may be acceptable, provided the section modulus, *SM*, about the longitudinal axis is not less than:

$$SM = 1.60L^{1.5}\text{cm}^3 SM = 0.0164L^{1.5}\text{in}^3$$

End of Commentary

FIGURE 3
Stern Frame *(2024)*



3.3.2 Cast Stern Frame *(2024)*

The thicknesses t_1, t_2, width w, length ℓ, and $\frac{(t_1 + t_2)}{2} w^2 \sqrt{1 + (2\ell/w)^2}$ for cast stern frames are to be not less than given by the following equations:

$t_1 = 0.3\sqrt{L}$ cm but not less than 2.5 cm

$t_1 = \sqrt{L}/15.3$ in. but not less than 1.0 in.

$t_2 = 1.25t_1$

$w = 5\sqrt{L}$ cm	$L < 81$ m	$w = 1.09\sqrt{L}$ in.	$L < 265$ ft
$w = 45$ cm	$L \geq 81$ m	$w = 17.7$ in.	$L \geq 265$ ft
$\ell = 4\sqrt{L}$ cm	$L < 90$ m	$\ell = 0.87\sqrt{L}$ in.	$L < 295$ ft

$$\left(\frac{t_1 + t_2}{2}\right) w^2 \sqrt{1 + (2\ell/w)^2} \geq C_c L^{1.5} L \geq 90\text{m}\,(265\text{ft})$$

where

w, ℓ, L = as defined in [3.3.1]

t_1 = thickness of casting at end (See [FIGURE 1])

t_2 = thickness of casting at mid-length (See [FIGURE 1])

C_c = 8.4 (8.4, 0.086)

Commentary:

For vessels under 90 meters (295 feet), widths and lengths other than given above may be acceptable, provided the section modulus, *SM*, about the longitudinal axis is not less than:

$SM = 1.60L^{1.5}K_g\text{cm}^3 SM = 0.0164L^{1.5}K_g\text{in}^3$

$K_g =$ cast stern frame material factor defined in 3-2-14/1.5

End of Commentary

The thickness in way of butt welding to the shell plating may be tapered below t_1. The length of taper is to be at least three times the offset.

The castings are to be cored out to avoid large masses of thick material likely to contain defects and to maintain a relatively uniform section throughout. In way of changes in section a smooth curvature or radii are to be provided.

3.3.3 Bar Sternposts *(2024)*

Bar sternposts as shown in the figure below without propeller bosses are to have thicknesses and widths not less than that obtained from the following equations:

$t = 0.73L + 10$ mm

$t = 0.0088L + 0.39$ in.

$b = 1.283L + 87.4$ mm

$b = 0.0154L + 3.44$ in.

where

t = thickness, in mm (in.)

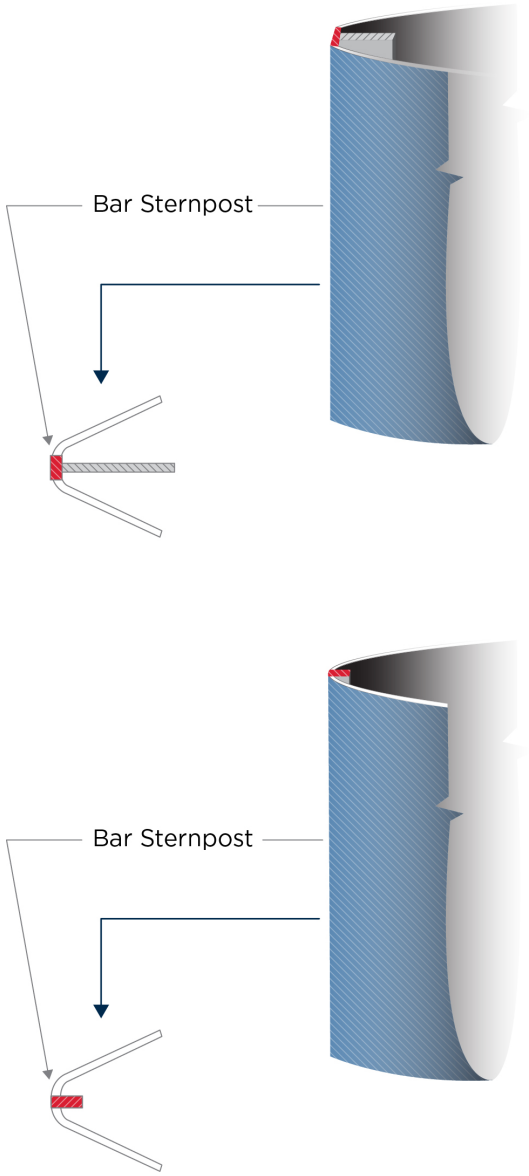
b = width, in mm (in.)

L = length of vessel, in m (ft), as defined in 3-1-1/3.1

Above the bottom shell plating, sternposts may be gradually reduced until the areas at their heads are half the areas obtained from the above equations.

Thickness or width less than given above are acceptable, provided the section modulus and moment of inertia about the longitudinal axis are not less than those of a plate having the minimum thickness and width given above, and with *b/t* not more than 4.0.

FIGURE 4
Bar Sternpost *(2024)*



3.5 Stern Frames with Shoe Piece

The scantlings below the boss of stern frames with shoe pieces are to be gradually increased to provide strength and stiffness in proportion to those of shoe pieces.

3.7 Scantlings Above the Propeller Boss

Above the propeller boss, the scantlings are to be in accordance with [3.3] except that in the upper part of the propeller aperture, where the hull form is full and centerline supports are provided, the thickness may be reduced to 0.8 of the requirements in [3.3] , subject to the same minimum for a cast steel stern frame.

3.9 Secondary Members

Where round bars are used at the after edge of stern frames, their scantlings and connection details are to be such as will accomplish acceptable welding.

Ribs or horizontal brackets of thickness not less than 0.8 t or 0.8 t_1 are to be provided at suitable intervals. Where t or t_1 is reduced in accordance with [3.7] , a proportionate reduction in the thickness of ribs or horizontal brackets may be made.

3.11 Shoe Pieces *(2024)*

The shoe-piece is to be sloped to avoid pressure from the keel blocks when docking and is to extend at least two frame spaces forward of the forward edge of the propeller boss.

The equivalent stress σ_e in the shoe piece at any section is not to exceed $115/K_g$ N/mm^2 ($11.7/K_g$ kgf/mm^2, $16700/K_g$ psi) and is to be obtained from the following equation:

$$\sigma_e = n\sqrt{\sigma_b^2 + 3\tau^2}\ \text{N/mm}^2\text{(kgf/mm}^2\text{, lbs/in}^2\text{)(psi)}$$

where

n = 1000 (1000, 2240)

K_g = shoe-piece material factor as defined in 3-2-14/1.5

σ_b = bending stress = $0.5C_R\ell/Z_v$

C_R = rudder force, as defined in 3-2-14/3

ℓ = horizontal distance between centerline of rudder stock and the section of the stern frame shoe piece under consideration, in m (in.) (see [FIGURE 2])

Z_v = section modulus of shoe piece about the vertical axis at the particular section under consideration, in cm^3 (in^3)

τ = shear stress = $0.5C_R/A_s$.

A_s = effective shear area in the transverse direction at the section of the shoe piece under consideration in, mm^2 (in^2)

In addition, shoe piece width is to be approximately twice the depth, and vertical and horizontal section modulus and sectional area are in no case to be less than required by the following equations.

Z_z = $k_zC_R\ell K_g$ cm^3 (in^3)

Z_y = $0.5Z_z$ cm^3 (in^3)

A_s = $k_aC_RK_g$ mm^2 (in^2)

where

Z_z = minimum required section modulus of shoe piece about the vertical axis at the particular section under consideration

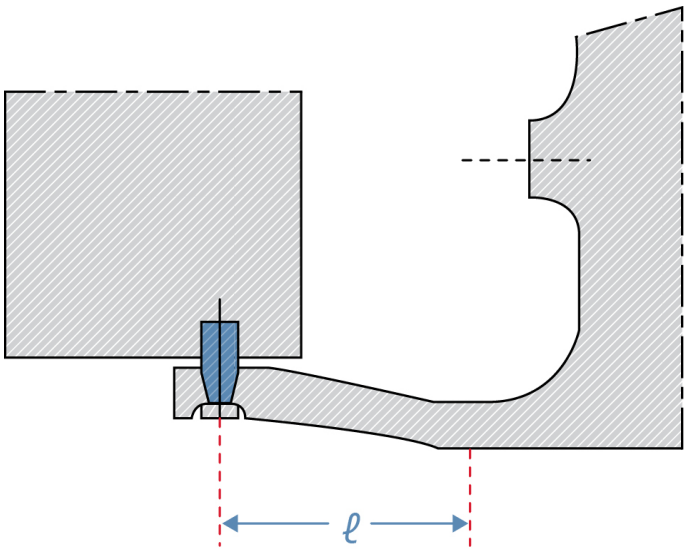
Z_y = minimum required section modulus of shoe piece about the transverse horizontal axis at the particular section under consideration

A_s = effective shear area in the transverse direction at the section of the shoe piece under consideration, in mm^2 (in^2)

k_z = 6.25 (61.3, 0.0967)

k_a = 10.4 (102, 0.161)

FIGURE 5
Shoe Piece *(2024)*



ℓ = horizontal distance between CL of rudder stock and the section of the stern frame shoe piece under consideration

5 Rudder Horns

5.1 Scantlings - Single Pintle Rudders

The strength of the rudder horn is to be based on the most critical location at any point up to and in way of the connection into the hull. At no section is the equivalent stress σ_e in the rudder horn to exceed $120/K_h$ N/mm^2 ($12.2/K_h$ kgf/mm^2, $17400/K_h$ lbs/in^2) where σ_e is obtained from the following equation:

$$\sigma_e = n\sqrt{\sigma_b^2 + 3\left(\tau^2 + \tau_T^2\right)} \text{ N/mm}^2 \text{ (kgf/mm}^2\text{, lbs/in}^2\text{)}$$

where

n = 1000 (1000, 2240)

σ_b = bending stress = $C_R \ell_a \ell_v / (\ell_p SM)$

τ = shear stress due to bending = $C_R \ell_a / (\ell_p A_h)$

τ_T = shear stress due to torque = $0.5 C_R \ell_a \ell_h / (\ell_p a t)$

C_R = rudder force, as defined in 3-2-14/3

ℓ_a = vertical distance, in m (ft), from the center of the neck bearing to the centroid of A (see [FIGURE 3] a)

ℓ_p = vertical distance, in m (ft), from the center of the neck bearing to the center of the pintle bearing (see [FIGURE 3] a)

ℓ_v = vertical distance, in m (in.), from the center of the pintle bearing to the section of the rudder horn being considered (see [FIGURE 3] a)

ℓ_h = horizontal distance in, mm (in.), from the center of the pintle bearing to the center of area of the horizontal plane of the rudder horn at the section of the rudder horn being considered (see [FIGURE 3] a)

SM = section modulus of the rudder horn about the longitudinal axis, in cm^3 (in^3), at the section of the rudder horn being considered

A_h = effective shear area of the rudder horn in the transverse direction at the section being considered, in mm^2 (in^2)

a = area, in mm^2 (in^2), enclosed by the outside lines of the rudder horn at the section of the rudder horn being considered

t = minimum wall thickness of the rudder horn, in mm (in.), at the section being considered

K_h = rudder horn material factor as defined in 3-2-14/1.5

K_h = K as defined in 3-2-14/1.5 for castings and forgings

= 1.0 for ordinary strength hull steel plate

= Q as defined in 3-2-1/5.3 for higher strength steel plate

In addition to meeting the above maximum equivalent stress criteria, the shear stress is not to be greater than τ indicated in the following equation.

$\tau = 48/K_h$ N/mm^2 ($4.9/K_h$ kgf/mm^2, $6960/K_h$ lbs/in^2)

Also, the section modulus about the longitudinal horizontal axis is not to be less than given in the following equation:

$SM = n_z C_R(\ell_a/\ell_p)\ell_v K_h$ cm^3 (in^3)

$n_z = 14.9$ (146.4, 0.230)

Webs extending down into the horn as far as practicable are to be fitted and effectively connected to the plate floors in the after peak. At the shell, the change in section of the horn is to be as gradual as possible. Smooth curvature or radii are to be provided at abrupt changes of section where stress concentrations occur.

5.3 Scantlings - Two Pintle Rudders

The strength of the rudder horn is to meet the requirements for single pintle horns given in [5.1] above, with the following modified definitions of lever arm and component stresses.

ℓ_a = vertical distance, in m (ft), from the center of the upper pintle to the centroid of A (see [FIGURE 3] b)

ℓ_p = vertical distance, in m (ft), from the center of the upper pintle bearing to the center of the lower pintle bearing (see [FIGURE 3] b)

ℓ_v = vertical distance, in m (in.), from the center of the lower pintle bearing to the section of the rudder horn being considered up to the entry of the horn into the shell plating (see [FIGURE 3] b)

ℓ_h = horizontal distance, in mm (in.), from the center of the lower gudgeon to the center of area of the horizontal plane of the rudder horn at the section of the rudder horn being considered (see [FIGURE 3] b)

σ_b = bending stress

= $C_R\ell_a\ell_v/(\ell_p SM)$ between the upper and lower pintle gudgeons

= $C_R(\ell_v + \ell_a – \ell_p)/SM$ in SI or MKS units, above the upper pintle gudgeon

= $C_R\left[\ell_v + 12(\ell_a – \ell_p)\right]/SM$ in U.S. units, above the upper pintle gudgeon

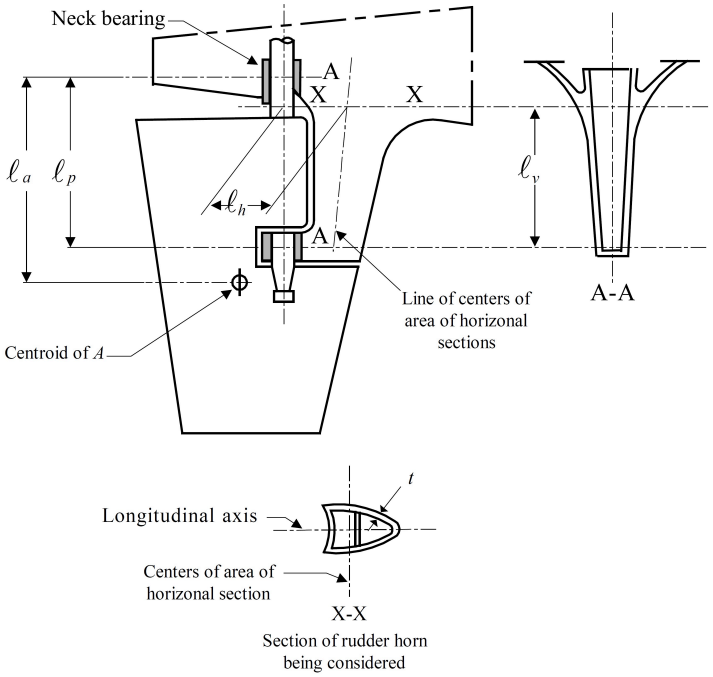
τ = shear stress due to bending = $C_R\ell_a/(\ell_p A_h)$ between the upper and lower pintle gudgeons

= C_R/A_h above the upper gudgeon

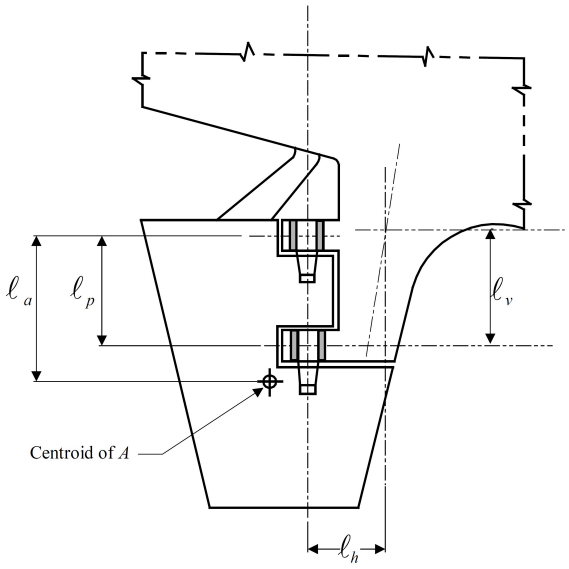
τ_T = shear stress due to torque = $0.5C_R\ell_a\ell_h/(\ell_p at)$ between the upper and lower pintle gudgeons

= $0.5C_R\ell_h/(at)$ above the upper gudgeon

FIGURE 6
Rudder Horn

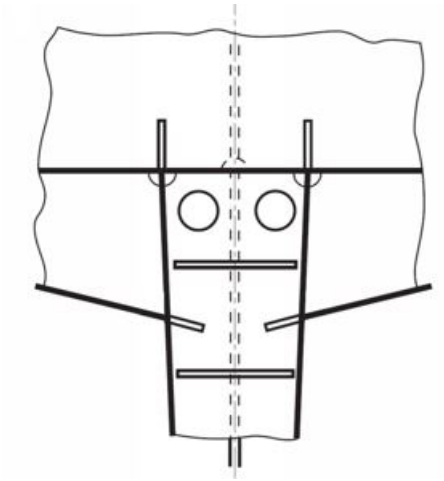


a) Single Pintle



b) Two Pintles

FIGURE 7
Connection of Rudder Horn to Aft Ship Structure



5.4 Rudder Horn Castings *(2024)*

Cast rudder horns are to be manufactured from special grade material according to [2-1-5/7.3] .

5.5 Rudder Horn Plating *(2024)*

The thickness of the rudder horn side plating is not to be less than:

$t = 2.4\sqrt{Lk}$ mm

$t = 0.522\sqrt{Lk}$ in.

Where

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1;

k = K as defined in 3-2-14/1.5 for castings

= 1.0 for ordinary strength hull steel plate

= Q as defined in 3-2-1/5.3 for higher strength steel plate

5.7 Welding and Connection to Hull Structure

The following requirements are to apply:

i) The rudder horn plating is to be effectively connected to the aft ship structure (e.g., by connecting the plating to side shell and transverse/longitudinal girders) in order to achieve a proper transmission of forces, see [FIGURE 4] . When the connection between the rudder horn and the hull structure is designed as a curved transition into the hull plating, special consideration should be given to the effectiveness of the rudder horn plate in bending and to the stresses in the transverse web plates

ii) Where the rudder horn does not have curved transitions into the shell plating, brackets or stringer are to be fitted internally in horn, in line with outside shell plate, as shown in [FIGURE 4] .

iii) Transverse webs of the rudder horn are to be led into the hull up to the next deck or flat in a sufficient number.

iv) Strengthened plate floors are to be fitted in line with the transverse webs in order to achieve a sufficient connection with the hull.

v) Where a centerline bulkhead (wash-bulkhead) is fitted in the after peak, it is to be connected to the rudder horn.

vi) Scallops are to be avoided in way of the connection between shell plating and transverse webs in line with the aft face of the rudder horn and the webs in the rudder horn

vii) The weld at the connection between the rudder horn plating and the side shell is to be full penetration. The welding radius is to be as large as practicable and may be obtained by grinding.

5.9 Floors *(2024)*

Heavy plate floors are to be fitted both in way of the after face of the horn and aligned with the webs required by [5.1] and [5.3] . They are to be carried up to the first deck or flat above, if possible.

$t = 0.035L + 8.5$ mm

$t = 0.0042L + 0.33$ in

where

t = thickness of the heavy plate floors, in mm (in)

L = length of the vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

Commentary:

Heavy plate floors should extend up to the first deck or flat above, if possible.

End of Commentary

5.11 Shell Plating *(2024)*

Heavy shell plates are to be fitted in way of the heavy plate floors required by [5.9] .

The thickness of the heavy shell plates is not to be less than:

For OSVs and other Vessels under 90 m (295 ft) in Length:

$$t = 0.09\,(L - 5.5) + 0.009s \text{mm}$$
$$t = 0.00108\,(L - 18) + 0.009s \text{in.}$$

For Other Vessels 90 m (295 ft) in Length and Above

$$t = 0.094\,(L - 16) + 0.009s \text{mm} \qquad \text{for} 90 < L \leq 427 \text{m}$$
$$t = 0.00113\,(L - 53) + 0.009s \text{in.} \qquad \text{for} 295 < L \leq 1400 \text{ft}$$

where

L = length of the vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

s = frame spacing, in mm (in.)

Above the heavy floors, the heavy shell plates may be gradually reduced in thickness.

5.13 Water Exclusion

Rudder horns are to be provided with means for draining water, except where rudder horns are filled with an approved waterproof material, or equivalent.

7 Shaft Struts

Tail-shaft (propeller-shaft) struts, where provided, may be of the V or I type. The thickness of the strut barrel or boss is to be at least one-fourth the diameter of the tail shaft. The length of the strut barrel or boss is to be adequate to accommodate the required length of propeller-end bearings. The following equations are for struts having streamlined cross-sectional shapes.

7.1 V Strut *(2024)*

The moment of inertia, I, and Section Modulus, SM, of each strut arm is not to be less than that obtained from the following equations:

$I = 0.0044d^4$ mm^4 (in^4)

$SM = 0.024d^3$ mm^3 (in^3)

where

d = required diameter of ABS Grade 2 tail shaft, in mm (in.)

Commentary:

Where the included angle is less than 45°, the foregoing scantlings should be specially considered.

End of Commentary

7.3 I Strut

The moment of inertia, I, and Section Modulus, SM, of the strut arm is not to be less than that obtained from the following equations:

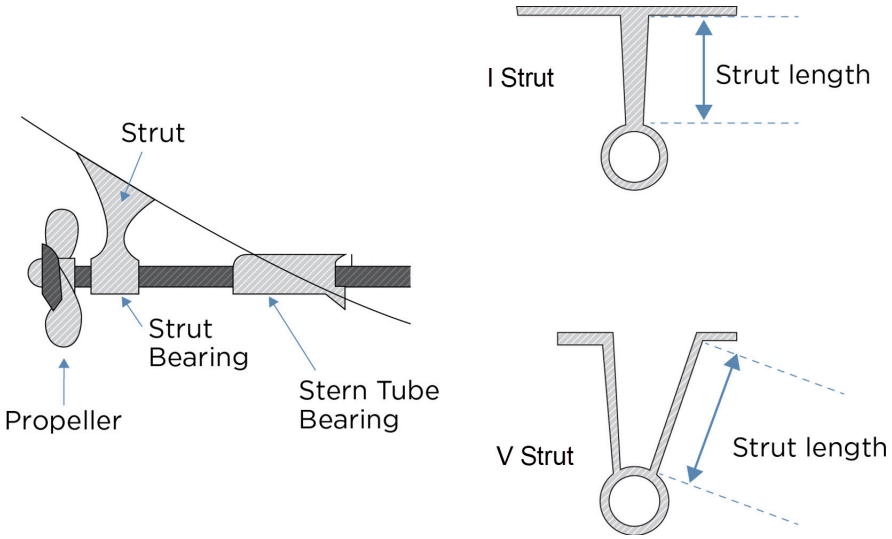
$I = 0.018d^4$ mm^4 (in^4)

$SM = 0.068d^3$ mm^3 (in^3)

where

d = required diameter of ABS Grade 2 tail shaft, in mm (in.)

FIGURE 8
Shaft Strut *(2024)*



7.5 Strut Length

The length of the longer leg of a V strut or the leg of an I strut, measured from the outside perimeter of the strut barrel or boss to the outside of the shell plating, is not to exceed 10.6 times the diameter of the tail shaft. Where this length is exceeded, the width and thickness of the strut are to be increased, and the strut design will be given special consideration.

9 Propeller Nozzles *(2024)*

The requirements in this Subsection are applicable for propeller nozzles with inner diameter d of 5 meters (16.4 feet) or less.

Commentary:

Nozzles with larger inner diameters are subject to special consideration by ABS, and all supporting documents and calculations should be submitted for review.

End of Commentary

9.1 Design Pressure

The design pressure of the nozzle is to be obtained from the following:

$$p_d = 10^{-6} \cdot c \cdot \epsilon \cdot \left(\frac{N}{A_p}\right) \text{N/mm}^2(\text{kgf/mm}^2, \text{lbs/in}^2)(\text{psi})$$

where

c = coefficient as indicated in [TABLE 1]

ϵ = coefficient as indicated in [TABLE 2] , but not to be taken less than 10

N = maximum shaft power, in kW (hp)

A_p = propeller disc area

$= \quad D^2 \frac{\pi}{4}$, in m^2 (ft^2)

D = propeller diameter, in m (ft)

TABLE 1
Coefficient c

Propeller Zone (see [FIGURE 9])	c		
	p_d *in N/mm²*	p_d *in kgf/mm²*	p_d *in lbs/in²*
2	10.0	1.02	11620
1 & 3	5.0	0.51	5810
4	3.5	0.36	4067

TABLE 2
Coefficient ϵ

	p_d *in N/mm²*	p_d *in kgf/mm²*	p_d *in lbs/in²*
ϵ	$21 - 0.02\left(\frac{N}{A_p}\right)$	$21 - 0.02\left(\frac{N}{A_p}\right)$	$21 - 0.16\left(\frac{N}{A_p}\right)$

9.3 Nozzle Cylinder

9.3.1 Shell Plate Thickness

The thickness of the nozzle shell plating, in mm (in.), is not to be less than:

$t = t_o + t_c$, but not to be taken less than 7.5 (0.3) mm (in.)

where

t_o = thickness obtained from the following formula:

$= \quad c_n \cdot S_p \cdot \sqrt{P_d} K_n$ mm (in.)

c_n = coefficient as indicated in [TABLE 3]

S_p = spacing of ring webs, in mm (in.)

p_d = nozzle design pressure in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi), as defined in [9.1]

t_c = corrosion allowance determined by [TABLE 4]

K_n = nozzle material factor as defined in 3-2-14/1.5

TABLE 3
Coefficient c_n

	p_d *in N/mm²*	p_d *in kgf/mm²*	p_d *in lbs/in²*
c_n	0.158	0.495	0.0132

TABLE 4
Corrosion allowance t_c

Value of t_o	*t_c mm (in.)*
If $t_o \le 10.0(0.4)$	1.5 (0.06)
If $t_o > 10.0(0.4)$	the lesser of b_1, b_2
where $b_1 = 3.0(0.12)$ mm (in.)	
$b_2 = \left(\frac{t_o}{\sqrt{1/K_n}} + 5\right) \times 10^{-1}$ mm or $b_2 = \left(\frac{t_o}{\sqrt{1/K_n}} + 0.2\right) \times 10^{-1}$ in.	

9.3.2 Internal Diaphragm Thickness

Thickness of nozzle internal ring web is not to be less than the required nozzle shell plating for Zone 3 (see [TABLE 1] and [FIGURE 5] for reference).

9.5 Nozzle Section Modulus *(2025)*

The section modulus of propeller nozzle cross section around its neutral axis is not to be less than:

$$SM = d^2 b V_d^2 Q n \text{ cm}^3 \text{ (in}^3\text{)}$$

where

d = nozzle inner diameter, m (ft)

b = nozzle length, m (ft)

V_d = design speed in ahead condition, in knots, as defined in 3-2-14/3.1

Q = reduction factor conditional on material type

= 1.0 for ordinary strength steel

= 0.78 for H32 strength steel

= 0.72 for H36 strength steel

= 0.68 for H40 strength steel

Commentary:

Q factor for steel having yield strength other than above is to be specially considered by ABS.

The typical nozzle profile section is unsymmetrical. For this type of section, the principal axes are not perpendicular. This is to be considered to determine the axis corresponding to the minimum inertia of the section. When the plating of inner shell and outer shell are made of different materials, the requirement is to be calculated for each material.

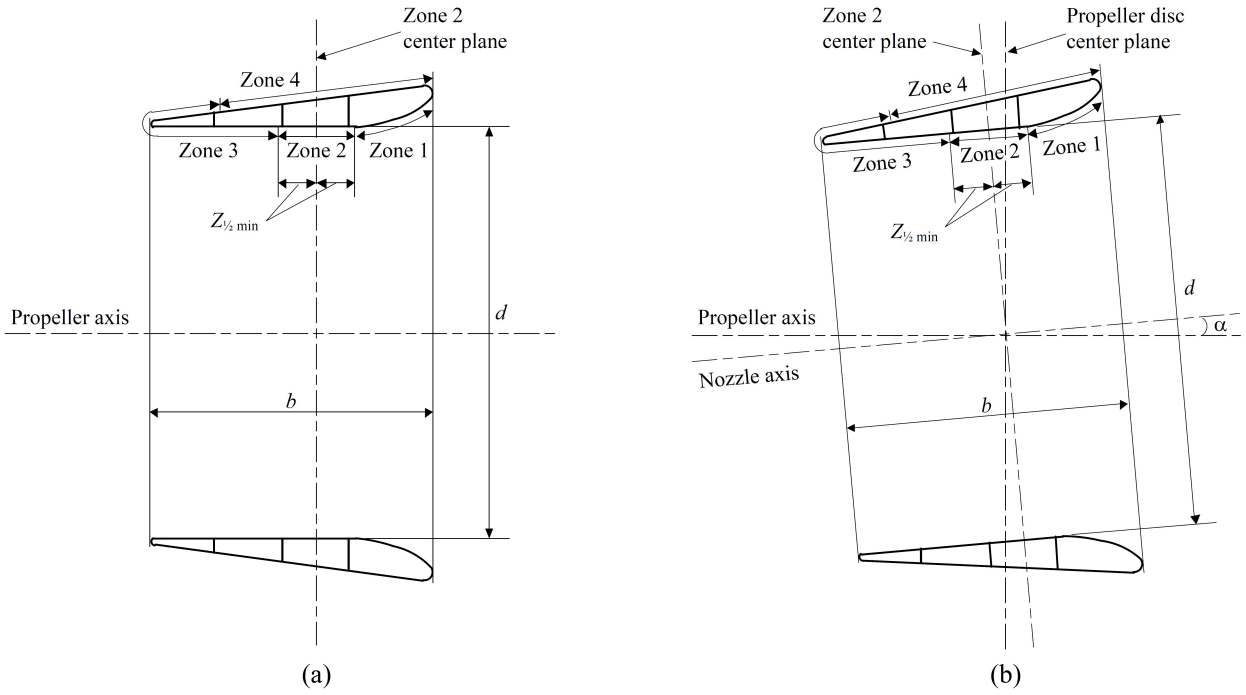
End of Commentary

n = nozzle type coefficient

= 0.7 (0.0012) for fixed nozzles

= 1.0 (0.0017) for azimuth nozzles

FIGURE 9
Propeller Nozzle Section View



b = nozzle length

d = nozzle inner diameter

Zone 1 zone of nozzle inner skin from nozzle leading edge to the fore end of Zone 2

Zone 2 zone of nozzle inner skin in way of propeller tips with two ring webs within the zone

$z_{½min}$ = The minimum length on each side of Zone 2 center plane is to be:

= $\frac{b}{8}$ where Zone 2 center plane and propeller disc center plane coincide as shown in [FIGURE 5] (a);

= $\frac{b}{8}\cos\alpha + \frac{d}{2}\tan\alpha$ where α is the tilt angle between the Zone 2 and propeller disc center planes, as shown in [FIGURE 5] (b);

Zone 3	zone of nozzle inner and outer skin covering the tail vicinity, from aft end of Zones 2 to the aft end of Zone 4
Zone 4	zone of nozzle outer skin from the leading edge to the fore end of Zone 3

9.7 Welding Requirement *(2024)*

The inner and outer nozzle shell plating is to be welded to the internal stiffening ring webs with double continuous welds except the outer shell plating when inaccessible for welding. Plug/slot welding is prohibited for the inner shell, but may be acceptable for the outer shell plating, provided that the nozzle ring web spacing is not greater than 350 mm (13.8 in.).

11 Propulsion Improvement Devices (PID) *(1 July 2025)*

11.1 Application Scope *(1 July 2025)*

The requirements in this Subsection are applicable to the connection of the Propulsion Improvement Devices (PID) to the hull. Types of PIDs include wake equalizing and flow separation alleviating devices (such as spoilers, wake equalizer, stern tunnels, pre-swirl fins, stators, and pre-swirl ducts) and post swirl devices (such as rudder thrust fins, post swirl stators, and rudder bulbs) that are permanently affixed to the hull structure.

11.3 Plans and Documentation *(1 July 2025)*

The following plans and details are to be submitted for approval, while the calculations are to be submitted for reference:

i) Drawings and plans covering the detailed design of the end connections and attachment to the hull structure;

ii) Information on material properties and welding details, such as scantlings of the welded connection and welding detail and size;

iii) Calculations to validate the design of the supporting foundations interior to the vessel.

11.5 Design and Arrangement *(1 July 2025)*

The following requirements are to be complied with for the types of propulsion improvement devices outlined in [11.1] :

Commentary:

Devices of novel concept may be specially considered by ABS. All related drawings and documents should be submitted.

End of Commentary

i) The structural materials are to be compatible with the mechanical and chemical properties of the hull strake to which it is attached. Examples of such design considerations are to have adequate structural strength for load bearing/transferring and acceptable galvanic potential between materials to reduce the risk of galvanic corrosion.

ii) PID end connections are to have a suitable transition for the particular application and to be effectively terminated in way of internal stiffening members.

iii) The strength and fatigue of the connection of the PID to the hull are to be within the limits of these Rules or other acceptable standards when subjected to vibration, hydrodynamic lift and drag loads in both the ahead and astern conditions. Certain types of PID (such as rudder bulbs or other such design elements) need only be checked for strength.

11.7 Structural End Connection

Welded end connections of device structural component to the hull are to be designed and constructed in accordance with the following:

i) Welding at the connection is to be full penetration and is to be in accordance with [2-4-1] of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)* and Section 3-2-19, as applicable

ii) Nondestructive volumetric and surface examinations are to be performed on the welds of the connection plates and the shell penetration. 100% Magnetic Testing (MT) and at least 10% Ultrasonic Testing (UT) is to be carried out on the welds of the connection plates and the shell penetration.

13 Inspection of Castings *(2025)*

The location of radiographic or other subsurface inspections of large stern-frame and rudder-horn castings is to be in accordance with [2-1-5/13.11] and Part 2, Appendix 6 and indicated on inspection plans, and to be agreed with the attending Surveyor.

SECTION 14
Rudders and Steering Equipment

1 General

1.1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1.1 Goals

The vessel structures covered in this section are to be designed, constructed, operated and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goal*
STRU 1	In the intact condition, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU 3	Provide protection to persons onboard, the environment and required safety services.
MAT 1	The selected materials' physical, mechanical, and chemical properties are to meet the design requirements appropriate for the application, operating conditions, and environment.
PROP 4	Provide means to maneuver the vessel.
PROP 5	Provide redundancy and/or reliability to maintain maneuverability.
MGMT 5.1	Design and construct vessel, machinery, and electrical systems to facilitate safe access, ease of inspection, survey, and maintenance.

1.1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above stated goals, the design, construction, installation, and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Structure (STRU)	
STRU-FR1	Scantlings are to have sufficient strength to resist failure and excessive deformation associated with buckling and yielding when subjected to the loads anticipated throughout

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
	the service life, such as external sea loads, operational loads in ahead/astern conditions and vibration.
STRU-FR2	Scantlings are to be maintained so that the structure will continue to satisfy all Goals and Functional Requirements.
STRU-FR3	The termination of structural members is to be designed to avoid stress concentrations that may lead to yielding or fatigue cracks.
STRU-FR4	Welded connections are to have sufficient strength to resist failure and fatigue damage.
STRU-FR5	The workmanship is to avoid discontinuities, misalignment and other harmful details that may lead to failure in service.
STRU-FR6	Protective devices to avoid exceeding operational limitations is to be provided
STRU-FR7	Effective locking of parts that may come loose due to vibration and/or dynamic loads is to be provided.
Materials (MAT)	
MAT-FR1	Materials are to have corrosion and wear resistance appropriate for the operating environment and service life.
MAT-FR2	Galvanic corrosion due to dissimilar materials is to be avoided.
MAT-FR3	Welded connections are to be free from defects and discontinuities.
Safety Management (MGMT)	
MGMT-FR1	Satisfactory arrangements are to be provided for safe access for operation, inspection, and maintenance.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

1.3 Application *(2024)*

Requirements specified in this Section are applicable to:

1.3.1

Ordinary profile rudders described in [TABLE 1A] with rudder operating angle range from –35° to +35°.

1.3.2

High-lift rudders described in [TABLE 1B] , the rudder operating angle of which might exceed 35° on each side at maximum design speed.

1.3.3 *(2024)*

Steering equipment other than rudders, such as steering nozzles, azimuthal thruster and azimuthing pod identified in [21] , [23] , and [25] , respectively.

Rudders and other steering equipment provided on Ice Classed vessels are subject to additional requirements specified in Part 6, Chapter 1 for the specified ice class.

Commentary:

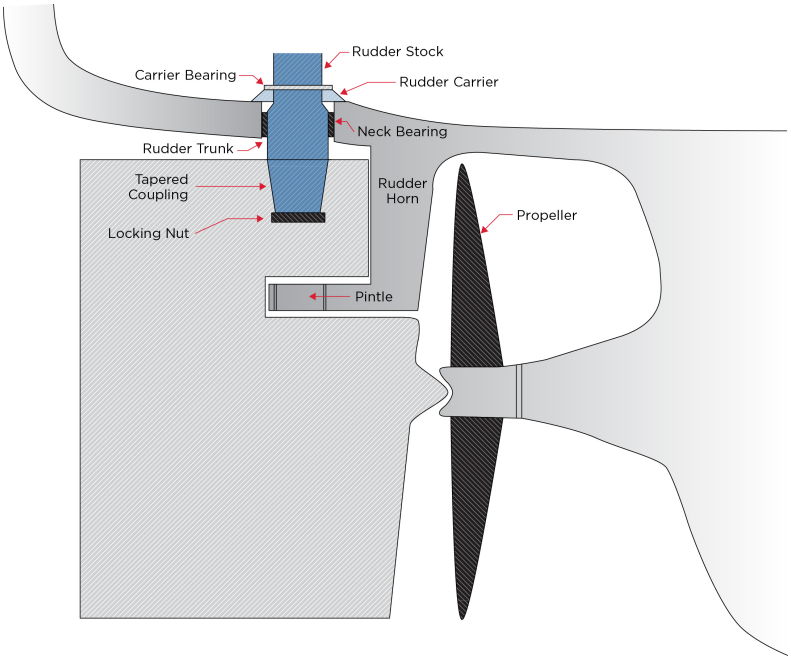
Rudders not covered in [TABLE 1A] nor in [TABLE 1B] are subject to special consideration, provided that all the required calculations are prepared and submitted for review in full compliance with the requirements in this Section. Where direct analyses is used to justify an alternative design, they are to take into consideration all relevant modes of failure, on a case-by-case basis. These failure modes may include yielding, fatigue, buckling, and fracture. Possible damages caused by cavitation and vibration are also to be considered. Validation by laboratory tests or full scale tests may be required for alternative design approaches.

The IACS Technical Background file for UR S10 may be referred to for more information.

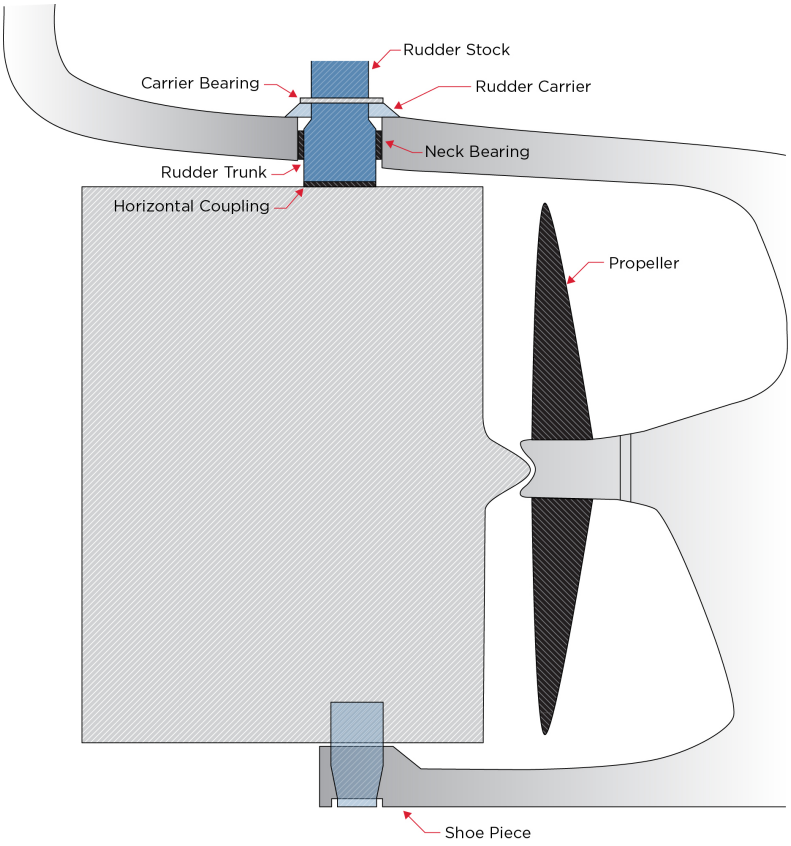
End of Commentary

Typical examples of rudder arrangements are:

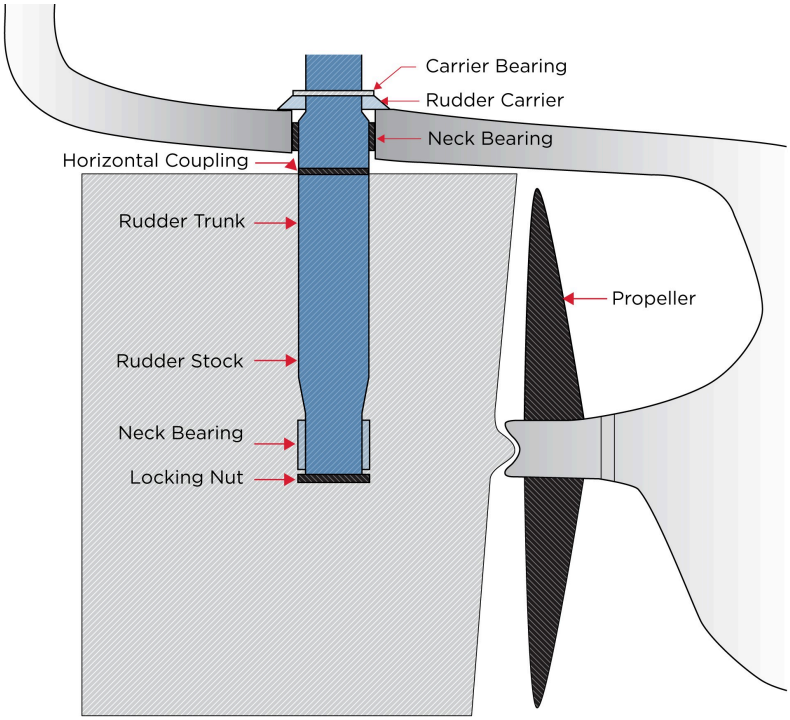
Semi Spade Rudder *(2024)*



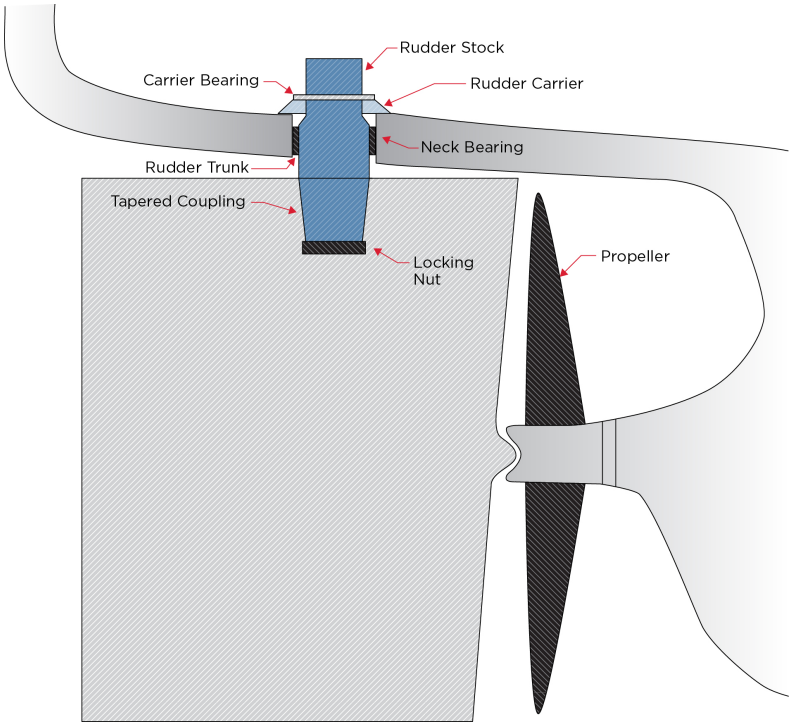
Shoe Supported Rudder *(2024)*



Spade Rudder with Embedded Trunk *(2024)*



Spade Rudder *(2024)*



1.5 Materials for Rudder, Rudder Stock and Steering Equipment

Rudder stocks, pintles, coupling bolts, keys and other steering equipment components described in this Section are to be of steel, in accordance with the requirements of Part 2, Chapter 1, 3-1-2/3.1 TABLE 2A and 3-1-2/3.1 TABLE 2B, and particularly:

i) The Surveyor need not witness material tests for coupling bolts and keys.

ii) The surfaces of rudder stocks in way of exposed bearings are to be of noncorrosive material.

iii) Material properties of dissimilar parts and components in direct contact with each other are to be submitted for review of compatibilities, such as galvanic potential.

iv) Material factors of castings and forgings used for the shoe piece (K_g), horn (K_h), stock (K_s), bolts (K_b), coupling flange (K_f), pintles (K_p), and nozzles (K_n) are to be obtained for their respective material from the following equation:

$K = (n_y/Y)^e$

where

n_y = 235 N/mm^2 (24 kgf/mm^2, 34000 psi)

Y = specified minimum yield strength of the material, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi), but is not to be taken as greater than $0.7U$ or 450 N/mm^2 (46 kgf/mm^2, 65000 psi) whichever is less

U = minimum tensile strength of material used, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)

e = 1.0 for $Y \leq 235$ N/mm^2 (24 kgf/mm^2, 34000 psi)

= 0.75 for $Y > 235$ N/mm^2 (24 kgf/mm^2, 34000 psi)

1.7 Expected Torque *(2024)*

The torque considered necessary to operate the rudder, in accordance with 4-3-4/21.7.ii.) is to be indicated on the submitted rudder or steering gear plan (see 4-3-4/1.11).

Commentary:

Note that the above expected operating torque is not the design torque, Q_R, indicated in [5.3] for rudder scantlings. The design torque is intended for the design of rudders and should not be directly compared with the torque expected during the sea trials or the rated torque of steering gear (see 4-3-4/1.11).

End of Commentary

1.9 Rudder Stops

Structural rudder stops are to be fitted. Each structural stop as well as its attachment is to withstand the rudder design force applied at stop's location. Where adequate positive mechanical stops are provided within the steering gear in accordance with 4-3-4/5.11, structural stops are not required.

3 Rudder Design Force *(2022)*

Rudder force, C_R, upon which rudder scantlings are to be based, is to be obtained from the equation described either in [3.1] or [3.3] as applicable. For vessels under 90 meters (295 feet) in length, where for ordinary rudders the rudder angle, ϕ, exceeds 35°, the rudder force, C_R, is to be increased by a factor of 1.74 sin (ϕ).

3.1 Rudder Blades without Cutouts *(1 July 2024)*

Where the rudder profile can be defined by a single quadrilateral, the rudder force, C_R, upon which rudder scantlings are to be based, is to be obtained from the following equation:

$C_R = nk_R k_c k_\ell A V_R^2$ kN (tf, Ltf)

where

n = 0.132 (0.0135, 0.00123)

k_R = $(b^2/A_t + 2)/3$ but not taken more than 1.33

b = mean height of rudder area, in m (ft), as determined from [FIGURE 1A]

A_t = sum of rudder blade area, A, and the area of rudder post or rudder horn within the extension of rudder profile, in m^2 (ft^2)

A = total projected area of rudder blade, as illustrated in [FIGURE 1A] in m^2 (ft^2)
For steering nozzles, A is not to be taken less than 1.35 times the projected area of the nozzle.

k_c = coefficient depending on rudder cross section (profile type) as indicated in [TABLE 1A] and [TABLE 1B] . For profile types differing from those in [TABLE 1A] and [TABLE 1B] , k_c is subject to special consideration.

k_ℓ = coefficient as specified in [TABLE 2]

V_R = vessel speed, in knots

= for ahead condition V_R equals V_d or $V_{\min}$, whichever is greater

= for astern condition V_R equals V_a, or $0.5V_d$ or $0.5V_{\min}$, whichever is greater

V_d = design speed, in knots, with vessel running ahead at the maximum continuous rated shaft rpm and at the summer load waterline

V_a = maximum astern speed as defined in SOLAS Regulation II-1/3.15, in knots

$V_{\min}$ = $(V_d + 20)/3$

Where there are any appendages such as rudder bulb fitted on the rudder, its effective areas are to be included in the area of the rudder blade if significant.

3.3 Rudder Blades with Cutouts

This paragraph applies to rudders with cutouts (semi-spade rudders), such that the whole blade area cannot be adequately defined by a single quadrilateral. See [FIGURE 1B] . Equations derived in this paragraph are based on a cutout blade with two quadrilaterals. Where more quadrilaterals are needed to define the rudder shape, similar rules apply.

The total rudder force described in [3.1] is applicable for rudders with cutout(s), with A being the summation of sub-quadrilaterals that make up the whole area of the rudder blade. Rudder force distribution over each quadrilateral is to be obtained from the following equations:

$C_{R1} = C_R A_1/A$ kN (tf, Ltf)

$C_{R2} = C_R A_2/A$ kN (tf, Ltf)

where

C_R and A are as defined in [3.1] .

A_1 and A_2 are as described in [FIGURE 1B] .

3.5 Rudder Blades with Twisted Leading-edge *(2024)*

This kind of rudder has the leading edge twisted horizontally on the top and bottom of the section that is an extension of the center of the propeller shaft. For the purpose of calculating design force, twisted rudders are distinguished in four categories:

Category	*Description*
1	The leading edge of twisted upper and lower blades not lineup to each other (See 3-2-14/Figure 1(a) below)
2	The projected leading edge of twisted upper and lower blades form a straight line (See 3-2-14/Figure 1(b) below)
3	Rudder with twisted leading-edge combined with tail edge flap or fins
4	The twisted leading edge has a smooth continuous wavy contour (no deflector) (See 3-2-14/Figure 1(c) below) or the rudder has multiple section profile types

FIGURE 1
Rudder Blades with Twisted Leading-edge *(2024)*



Design force for rudder with twisted leading edge is obtained according to the following criteria:

i) For Category 1 rudders as indicated in the above table, design force over upper and lower rudder blades are obtained from the following equations respectively:

$C_{R1} = nk_Rk_ck_\ell A_1V_R^2$ kN (tf, Ltf) for twisted upper rudder blade;

$C_{R2} = nk_Rk_ck_\ell A_2V_R^2$ kN (tf, Ltf) for twisted lower rudder blade;

$C_R = C_{R1} + C_{R2}$ kN (tf, Ltf) overall design force;

ii) For Categories 2, 3, and 4, the rudder design force indicated in [3.1] is applicable, that is: $C_R = nk_Rk_ck_\ell AV_R^2$ kN (tf, Ltf)

where
n, k_R, k_c, k_ℓ, A and V_R are as defined in [3.1] , (for rudder has multiple section profile types, A is the whole projected areas).
A_1 and A_2 are the projected areas of upper and lower blades separated at the deflector cross section, respectively. Where the effective projected area of rudder bulb (if present) forward of rudder leading edge is significant and needs to be counted, the proportioned bulb effective areas are added to A_1 and A_2 accordingly
Values of k_c for ahead and astern conditions are determined from one of the methods below as applicable, if the type of basic rudder profile is not provided:

a) k_c is taken from [TABLE 1A] for twisted rudders of Categories 1 & 2;

b) k_c is taken from [TABLE 1B] for twisted rudders of Category 3;

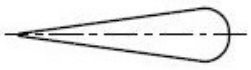
c) k_c is subjected to special considerations for twisted rudders of Category 4;

Commentary:

Shipyard/rudder manufacturers' submitted k_c obtained from testing data or calculations may be accepted subject to ABS review of all the supporting documents;

End of Commentary

TABLE 1A
Coefficient k_c for Ordinary Rudders

	Profile Type	k_c	
		Ahead Condition	*Astern Condition*
1	Single plate 	1.0	1.0
2	NACA - OO GÖttingen 	1.1	0.80
3	Flat side 	1.1	0.90
4	Mixed (e.g., HSVA)	1.21	0.90

	Profile Type	k_c	
		Ahead Condition	*Astern Condition*
			
5	Hollow 	1.35	0.90
6	Twisted rudder of Cat. 1 & 2 	1.21 (if not provided)	0.90 (if not provided)

TABLE 1B
Coefficient k_c for High-lift/Performance Rudders
(2021)

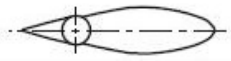
	Profile Type	k_c	
		Ahead Condition	*Astern Condition*
1	Fish tail (e.g., Schilling high-lift rudder) 	1.4	0.8
2	Flap rudder (or Twisted rudder of Cat. 3) 	1.7	1.3
3	Rudder with steering nozzle 	1.9	1.5

FIGURE 1A
Rudder Blade without Cutouts

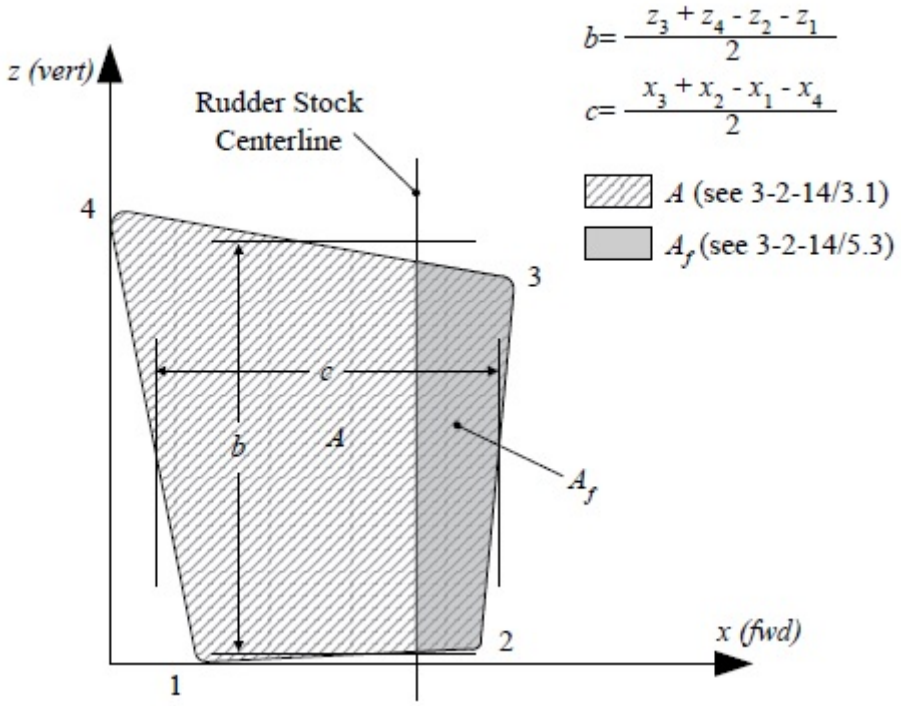
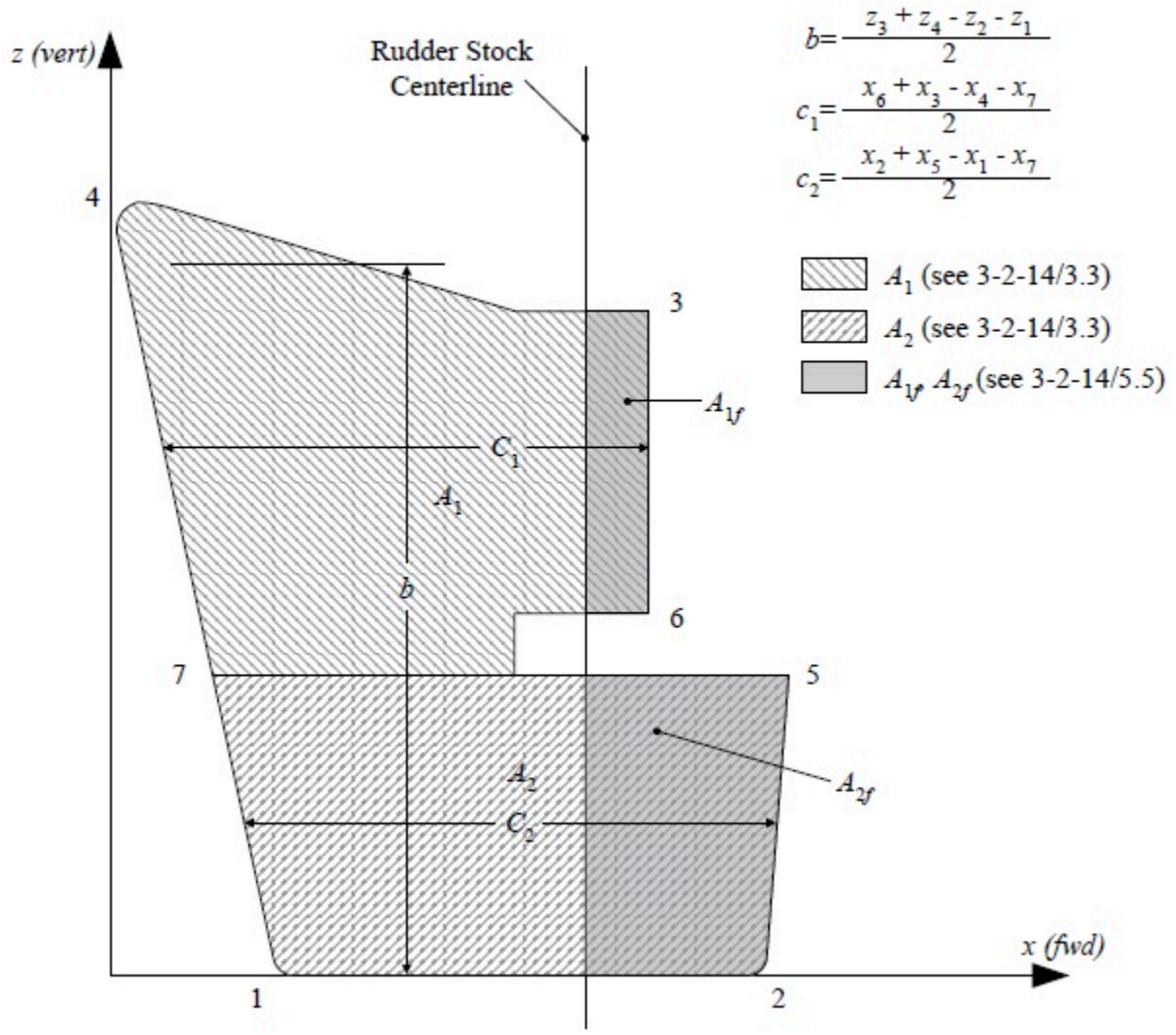


FIGURE 1B
Rudder Blade with Cutouts



5 Rudder Design Torque *(2024)*

5.1 General

The rudder design torque, Q_R, for rudder scantling calculations, is to be in accordance with [5.3] or [5.5] as applicable.

5.3 Rudder Blades without Cutouts

Rudder torque, Q_R, is to be determined from the following equation for both ahead and astern conditions:

$Q_R = C_{RF}$ kN-m (tf-m, Ltf-ft)

where

C_R = rudder force as calculated in [3.1]

r = $c(\alpha–k)$ but not less than $0.1c$ for ahead condition

c = mean breadth of rudder area as shown in [FIGURE 1A] , in m (ft)

α = coefficient as indicated in [TABLE 3]

k = A_f/A

A_f = area of rudder blade situated forward of the rudder stock centerline, in m^2 (ft^2), as shown in [FIGURE 1A]

A = whole rudder area as described in [3.1]

Where there are any appendages such as rudder bulb fitted on the rudder, effective areas are to be included in the area of the rudder blade if significant.

TABLE 2
Coefficient k_ℓ

Rudder / Propeller Layout	k_ℓ
Rudders outside propeller jet	0.8
Rudders behind a fixed propeller nozzle	1.15
Steerring nozzles and Azimuthing Thrusters	1.15
All others	1.0

TABLE 3
Coefficient α

Rudder Position or High-lift	α		
	Ahead Condition	*Astern Condition*	
Located behind a fixed structure, such as a rudder horn	0.25	0.55	
Not located behind a fixed structure	0.33	0.75 (hollow profile)	0.66 (non-hollow)
High-Lift Rudders (see [TABLE 1B])	Special consideration (0.40 if unknown)	Special consideration	

5.5 Rudder Blades with Cutouts

This paragraph refers to rudder blades with cutouts (semi-spade rudders) as defined in [3.3] . Equations derived in this paragraph are based on a cutout blade with two quadrilaterals. Where more quadrilaterals are needed to define the rudder shape, similar rules apply.

Total rudder torque, Q_R, in ahead and astern conditions is to be obtained from the following equation:

$Q_R = C_{R1}r_1 + C_{R2}r_2$ kN-m (tf-m, Ltf-ft)

but not to be taken less than $Q_{R\min}$ in the ahead condition

where

$Q_{R\min}$ = $0.1C_R(A_1c_1 + A_2c_2)/A$

r_1 = $c_1(\alpha - k_1)$ m (ft.)

r_2 = $c_2(\alpha - k_2)$ m (ft.)

c_1, c_2 = mean breadth of partial area A_1, A_2, from [FIGURE 1B]

α = coefficient as indicated in [TABLE 3]

k_1, k_2 = $A_{1f}/A_1, A_{2f}/A_2$ where A_{1f}, A_{2f} = area of rudder blade situated forward of the centerline of the rudder stock for each part of the rudder, as shown in [TABLE 1B]

$C_R, C_{R1}, C_{R2}, A_1, A_2$ are as defined in [3.3] .

5.7 Rudders with Twisted Leading Edge

Rudder torque, Q_R, indicated in [5.3] is applicable for rudders with twisted leading edge, where C_R is obtained from [3.5] .

7 Rudder Stocks

7.1 Upper Rudder Stocks *(2024)*

The upper stock is that part of the rudder stock above the neck bearing or above the top pintle, as applicable. (See 3-2-A5/3 FIGURE 1, 3-2-A5/5.1 FIGURE 2 and 3 for reference.)

At the upper bearing or tiller, the upper stock diameter is not to be less than obtained from the following equation:

$S = N_u\sqrt[3]{Q_R K_s}$ mm (in.)

where

N_u = 42.0 (89.9, 2.39)

Q_R = total rudder torque, as defined in [5] , in kN-m (tf-m, Ltf-ft)

K_s = material factor for upper rudder stock, as defined in [1.3]

7.3 Lower Rudder Stocks *(1 July 2024)*

In determining lower rudder stock scantlings, values of rudder design force and torque calculated in [3] and [5] are to be used. Bending moments and shear forces, as well as the reaction forces are to be determined by direct calculation and are to be submitted for review. For rudders supported by shoe pieces or rudder

horns, these structures are to be included in the calculation model to account for support of the rudder body. Guidance for calculation of these values is given in Appendix 3-2-A5.

The lower rudder stock diameter is not to be less than obtained from the following equation:

$$S_\ell = S\sqrt[6]{1 + (4/3)\,(M/Q_R)^2} \text{ mm (in.)}$$

where

S = upper stock required diameter from [7.1] , in mm (in.)

M = bending moment at the section of the rudder stock considered, in kN-m (tf-m, Ltf-ft)

Q_R = rudder torque from [5] , in kN-m (tf-m, Ltf-ft)

Above the neck bearing, a gradual transition is to be provided where there is a change in the diameter of the rudder stock.

The equivalent stress of bending and torsion, σ_c to be assessed from the aforementioned direct calculation in the transition is not to exceed $118/K$ N/mm^2 ($12.0/K$ kgf/mm^2, $17100/K$ lbs/in^2).

$$\sigma_c = \sqrt{\sigma_b^2 + 3\tau^2} \text{ N/mm}^2 \text{ (kgf/mm}^2\text{, lbs/in}^2\text{)}$$

where

K = material factor as defined in [1.3]

σ_b = $10.2 \times 10^6 M/S_t^3$ for SI and MKS units

= $270 \times 10^3 M/S_t^3$ for US units

τ = $5.1 \times 10^6 Q_R/S_t^3$ for SI and MKS units

= $135 \times 10^3 Q_R/S_t^3$ for US units

For a spade rudder with trunk extending inside the rudder, the rudder stock scantlings are to be checked against the two cases defined in 3-2-A5/3.1.3.

7.5 Rudder Trunk and Rudder Stock Sealing *(1 July 2024)*

The requirements in 3-2-14/7.5 iii), iv) and v) apply to trunk configurations which extend below the stern frame and arranged in such a way that the trunk is stressed by forces due to rudder action.

i) In rudder trunks which are open to the sea, a seal or stuffing box is to be fitted above the deepest load waterline, to prevent water from entering the steering gear compartment and the lubricant from being washed away from the rudder carrier.

ii) Where the top of the rudder trunk is below the waterline at scantling draft (without trim), two separate watertight seals/stuffing boxes are to be provided.

iii) *Materials.* The steel used for the rudder trunk is to be of weldable quality, with a carbon content not exceeding 0.23% on ladle analysis or a carbon equivalent (Ceq) not exceeding 0.41%. Plating

materials for rudder trunks are not to be of lower grades than corresponding to class II as defined in 3-1-2/3.1 TABLE 1. Rudder trunks comprising of materials other than steel are to be specially approved.

iv) *Scantlings.* The scantlings of the trunk are to be such that the equivalent stress due to bending and shear does not exceed $0.35\sigma_F$, and the bending stress on the welded rudder trunk is to be in compliance with the following formula:

$\sigma \leq 80/k$ N/mm^2

$\sigma \leq 8.17/k$ kgf/mm^2

$\sigma \leq 11,600/k$ psi

where

σ = bending stress in the rudder trunk

k = K as defined in [1.3] for castings

= 1.0 for ordinary strength hull steel plate

= Q as defined in 3-2-1/5.3 for higher strength steel plate

k is not to be taken less than 0.7

σ_F = specified minimum yield strength of the material used, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)

For calculation of bending stress, the span to be considered is the distance between the mid-height of the lower rudder stock bearing and the point where the trunk is clamped into the shell or the bottom of the skeg.

v) *Welding at the Connection to the Hull.* The weld at the connection between the rudder trunk and the shell or the bottom of the skeg is to be full penetration and a fillet shoulder is to be provided in way of the weld. For rudder trunks extending below shell or skeg, the fillet shoulder radius r, in mm (in.) (see [FIGURE 2]) is to be as large as practicable and to comply with the formulae:

$r = 0.1S_\ell/k$

without being less than:

$r =$ 60 mm when $\sigma \geq 40/k\text{N/mm}^2$

$=$ 60 mm when $\sigma \geq 4.09/k\text{kgf/mm}^2$

$=$ 2.4 in. when $\sigma \geq 5800/k\text{psi}$

$r =$ 30 mm when $\sigma < 40/k\text{N/mm}^2$

$=$ 30 mm when $\sigma < 4.09/k\text{kgf/mm}^2$

$=$ 1.2 in. when $\sigma < 5800/k\text{psi}$

where

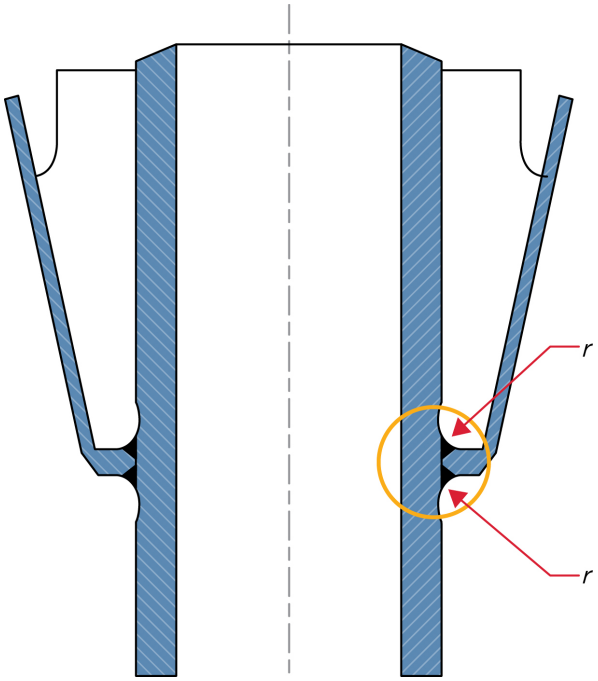
S_ℓ = rudder stock diameter axis defined in [7.3]

σ = bending stress in the rudder trunk in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)

k = material factor as defined in [7.5iv.])

The radius may be obtained by grinding. If disk grinding is carried out, score marks are to be avoided in the direction of the weld. The radius is to be checked with a template for accuracy. A minimum of four profiles are to be checked. A report is to be submitted to the Surveyor.

FIGURE 2
Fillet Shoulder Radius



9 Flange Couplings

9.1 General *(2024)*

Rudder flange couplings are to comply with the following requirements:

i) Couplings are to be supported by an ample body of metal worked out from the rudder stock. Couplings welded to the rudder stock are to be in accordance with [9.3.3] and [9.5.3] .

ii) The smallest distance from the edge of the bolt holes to the edge of the flange is not to be less than two-thirds of the bolt diameter.

iii) Coupling bolts are to be fitted bolts.

iv) Suitable means are to be provided for locking the nuts in place.

In addition to the above, rudder flange couplings are to meet the type-specific requirements in [9.3] (horizontal couplings) or [9.5] (vertical couplings) as applicable.

9.3 Horizontal Couplings

9.3.1 Coupling Bolts *(2024)*

There are to be at least six coupling bolts in horizontal couplings, and the diameter, d_b, of each bolt is not to be less than obtained by the following equation:

$$d_b = 0.62\sqrt{d_s^3 k_b/(nrK_s)} \text{ mm (in.)}$$

where

d_s = required rudder stock diameter, S ([7.1]) or S_ℓ ([7.3]) as applicable, in way of the coupling

n = total number of bolts in the horizontal coupling

r = mean distance of the bolt axes from the center of the bolt system, in mm (in.), (mathematical average of the bolt axes distances from the axis of the stock)

K_b = material factor for bolts, as defined in [1.3]

K_s = material factor for stock, as defined in [1.3]

9.3.2 Coupling Flange

Coupling flange thickness is not to be less than the greater of the following equations:

$$t_f = d_{bt}\sqrt{K_f/K_b} \text{ mm (in.)}$$

$$t_f = 0.9d_{bt} \text{ mm (in.)}$$

where

d_{bt} = calculated bolt diameter calculated as per [9.3.1] based on a number of bolts not exceeding eight (8)

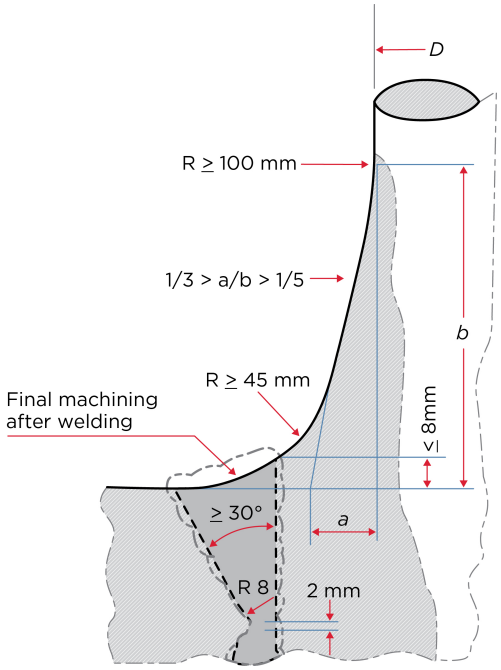
K_f = material factor for flange, as defined in [1.3]

K_b = material factor of bolts, as defined in [1.3]

9.3.3 Joint between Rudder Stock and Coupling Flange

The welded joint between the rudder stock and the flange is to be made in accordance with [FIGURE 3] or equivalent.

FIGURE 3
Welded Joint Between Rudder Stock and Coupling Flange



9.5 Vertical Couplings

9.5.1 Coupling Bolts

There are to be at least eight coupling bolts in vertical couplings and the diameter of each bolt is not to be less than obtained from the following equation:

$$d_b = 0.81 d_s \sqrt{K_b / (nK_s)} \text{ mm (in.)}$$

where

n = total number of bolts in the vertical coupling, which is not to be less than 8

d_s, K_b, K_s as defined in [9.3].

In addition, the first moment of area, m, of the bolts about the center of the coupling is not to be less than given by the following equation:

$$m = 0.00043 d_s^3 \text{ mm}^3 \text{ (in}^3\text{)}$$

where

d_s = diameter, in mm (in.), as defined in [9.3]

9.5.2 Coupling Flange

Coupling flange thickness, t_f, is not to be less than d_b as defined in [9.5.1].

9.5.3 Joint between Rudder Stock and Coupling Flange

The welded joint between the rudder stock and the flange is to be made in accordance with [FIGURE 3] or equivalent.

11 Tapered Stock Couplings

11.1 Coupling Taper *(1 July 2021)*

Tapered stock couplings are to comply with the following general requirements in addition to type-specific requirements given in [11.3] or [11.5] as applicable:

i) Tapered stocks, as shown in [FIGURE 4], are to be effectively secured to the rudder casting by a nut on the end.

ii) The cone shapes are to fit exactly.

iii) The coupling length (ℓ) in the casting as shown in [FIGURE 4A] is generally not to be less than 1.5 times the stock diameter (d_o) as shown in [FIGURE 4].

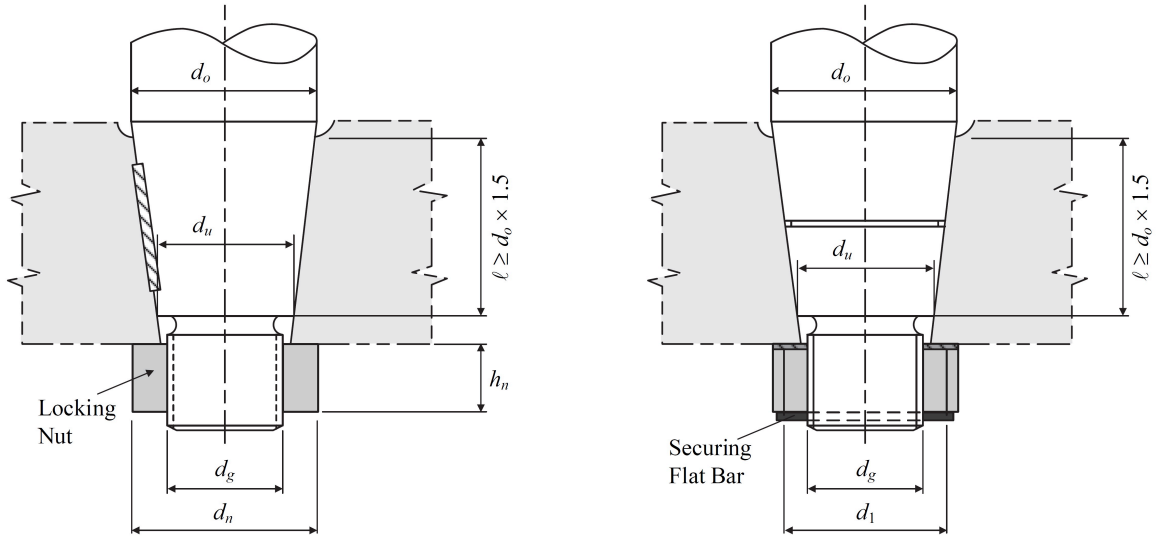
iv) The taper on diameter (c) is to be 1/12 to 1/8 for keyed taper couplings and 1/20 to 1/12 for couplings with hydraulic mounting/dismounting arrangements, as shown in the following table. The cone length (ℓ_c) is defined in [FIGURE 4A].

v) Where mounting with an oil injection and hydraulic nut, the push-up oil pressure and the push-up length are to be specially considered upon submission of calculations.

vi) Means of effective sealing are to be provided to protect against sea water ingress.

Type of Coupling Assembly	$c = \frac{d_0 - d_u}{\ell_c}$
Without hydraulic mounting/dismounting	$1/12 \le c \le 1/8$
With hydraulic mounting/dismounting	$1/20 \le c \le 1/12$

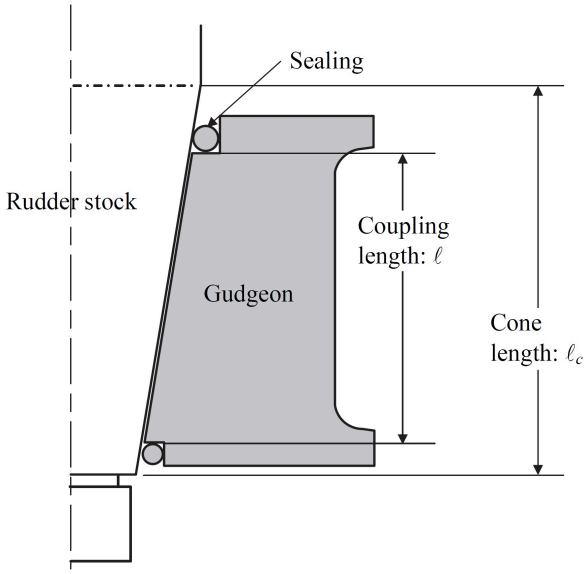
FIGURE 4
Tapered Couplings *(1 July 2021)*



a) Keyed Fitting

b) Keyless Fitting

FIGURE 4A
Cone Length and Coupling Length *(1 July 2021)*



11.3 Keyed Fitting *(2024)*

Where the stock is keyed, the key is to be fitted in accordance with the following:

i) The top of the keyway is to be located well below the top of the rudder.

Commentary:

To achieve this requirement, sufficient material should remain between the keyway and the top of the rudder to avoid damage due to the accidental movement of the rudder. See [15.5] .

End of Commentary

ii) Torsional strength of the key equivalent to that of the required upper stock is to be provided.

iii) For the couplings between stock and rudder the effective shear area* of the key is not to be less than:

$$a_s = \frac{17.55 Q_F}{d_k \sigma_{F1}} \text{ cm}^2$$

$$a_s = \frac{21.06 Q_F}{d_k \sigma_{F1}} \text{ in}^2$$

where

Q_F = design yield moment of rudder stock, in N-m (kgf-m, lbf-ft)

= $0.02664 \frac{d_t^3}{k}$ N-m

= $0.002717 \frac{d_t^3}{k}$ kgf-m

= $321.9838 \frac{d_t^3}{k}$ lbf-ft

Where the actual rudder stock diameter d_{ta} is greater than the calculated diameter d_t, the diameter d_{ta} is to be used. However, d_{ta} applied to the above formula need not be taken greater than $1.145 d_t$.

d_t = stock diameter, in mm (in.), according to [7.1]

k = material factor for stock as given in [1.3]

d_k = mean diameter of the conical part of the rudder stock, in mm (in.), at the key

σ_{F1} = minimum yield stress of the key material, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)

The effective bearing area* of the key (after deducting the rounded edges) between key and rudder stock or cone coupling is not to be less than:

$$a_k = \frac{5 Q_F}{d_k \sigma_{F2}} \text{ cm}^2$$

$$a_k = \frac{6 Q_F}{d_k \sigma_{F2}} \text{ in}^2$$

where

σ_{F2} = minimum yield stress of the key, stock or coupling material, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi), whichever is less.

iv) For keys of higher strength materials than that for the keyway, shear and bearing areas of keys and keyways may be based on the respective material properties of the keys and the keyways, provided that compatibilities in mechanical properties of both components are fully considered. In no case, is the bearing stress of the key on the keyway to exceed 0.9 of the specified minimum yield strength of the keyway material.

Commentary:

In general, the key material is to be at least of equal strength to the keyway material.

End of Commentary

v) *Push up.* It is to be proved that 50% of the design yield moment is solely transmitted by friction in the cone couplings. This can be done by calculating the required push-up pressure and push-up length according to [11.5v.]) and [11.5vi.]) for a torsional moment $Q_F^{'} = 0.5Q_F$.

vi) Where a key is fitted to the coupling between stock and rudder and it is considered that the entire rudder torque is transmitted by the key at the couplings, the requirement of 3-2-14/11.3v) need not be applied provided that the actual shear area and the effective surface area of the key are more than twice of that required by 3-2-14/11.3iii).

Commentary:

* The effective shear/bearing area is to be the gross area reduced by any area removed by saw cuts, set screw holes, chamfer, etc., and is to exclude the portion of the key in way of spooning of the keyway.

End of Commentary

11.5 Keyless Fitting *(1 July 2024)*

Hydraulic and shrink fit keyless couplings are to be fitted in accordance with the following:

i) Detailed preloading stress calculations and fitting instructions are to be submitted;

ii) Prior to applying hydraulic pressure, at least 75% of theoretical contact area of rudder stock and rudder bore is to be achieved in an evenly distributed manner;

iii) The upper edge of the upper main piece bore is to have a slight radius;

iv) *Push-up Pressure*. The push-up pressure is not to be less than the greater of the two following values:

$$p_{req1} = \frac{2Q_F}{d_m^2 \ell \pi \mu_o} 10^3 \text{N/mm}^2 (\text{kgf/mm}^2)$$

$$p_{req1} = \frac{24Q_F}{d_m^2 \ell \pi \mu_o} \text{ psi}$$

$$p_{req2} = \frac{6M_c}{d_m \ell^2} 10^3 \text{N/mm}^2 (\text{kgf/mm}^2)$$

$$p_{req2} = \frac{72M_c}{d_m \ell^2} \text{ psi}$$

where

Q_F = design yield moment of rudder stock, as defined in [11.3iii.])

d_m = mean cone diameter, in mm (in.)

ℓ = coupling length, in mm (in.)

μ_o = frictional coefficient, equal to 0.15

M_c = bending moment in rudder stock at the top of the cone coupling (e.g., in case of spade rudders), in N-m (kgf-m, lbf-ft)

For spade rudder with trunk extending inside the rudder, the coupling is to be checked against the two cases defined in 3-2-A5/3.1.3.
It has to be proved by the designer that the push-up pressure does not exceed the permissible surface pressure in the cone. The permissible surface pressure is to be determined by the following formula:

$$p_{perm} = \frac{0.95Y_G\left(1-\alpha^2\right)}{\sqrt{3+\alpha^4}} - p_b \text{N/mm}^2(\text{kgf/mm}^2, \text{psi})$$

where

p_b = $\frac{3.5M_c}{d_m\ell^2}\, 10^3 \text{N/mm}^2(\text{kg/mm}^2)$

p_b = $\frac{42M_c}{d_m\ell^2}$ psi

Y_G = specified minimum yield strength of the material of the gudgeon or stock, whichever is smaller, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)

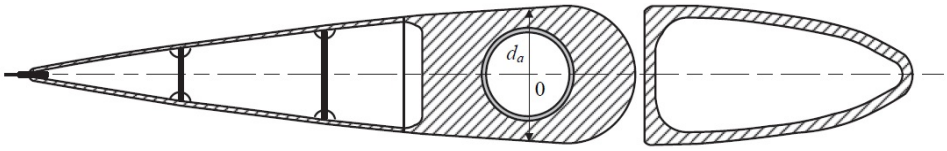
α = d_m/d_a

d_m = mean cone diameter, in mm (in.)

d_a = outer diameter of the gudgeon, in mm (in.) as shown in 3-2-14/FIGURE 4B (The least diameter is to be considered)

The outer diameter of the gudgeon in mm (in.) is not to be less than $1.25d_0$, with d_0 defined in [FIGURE 4] .

FIGURE 4B
Gudgeon Outer Diameter (d_a) Measurement *(1 July 2021)*



v) *Push-up Length.* The push-up length $\Delta\ell$, in mm (in.), $\Delta\ell$ is to comply with the following formula:

$\Delta\ell_1 \le \Delta\ell \le \Delta\ell_2$

where

$\Delta\ell_1$ = $\frac{P_{req}d_m}{E\left(\frac{1-\alpha^2}{2}\right)c} + \frac{0.8R_{tm}}{c}$ mm(in.)

$\Delta\ell_2$ = $\frac{P_{perm}d_m}{E\left(\frac{1-\alpha^2}{2}\right)c} + \frac{0.8R_m}{c}$ mm(in.)

R_{tm} = mean roughness, in mm (in.) taken equal to 0.01 mm (0.0000394 in.)

c = taper on diameter according to [11.1iv.])

Y_G = specified minimum yield strength of the material of the gudgeon, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)

E = Young's modulus of the material of the gudgeon, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)

Y_G, α, and d_m are as defined in [11.5v.]).

Commentary:

In case of hydraulic pressure connections the required push-up force P_e for the cone may be determined by the following formula:

$$P_e = p_{req} d_m \pi \ell \left(\frac{c}{2} + 0.02\right) \text{N}(\text{kgf}, \text{lbf})$$

The value 0.02 is a reference for the friction coefficient using oil pressure. It varies and depends on the mechanical treatment and roughness of the details to be fixed. Where due to the fitting procedure a partial push-up effect caused by the rudder weight is given, this may be taken into account when fixing the required push-up length, subject to approval.

End of Commentary

vi) *Couplings with Special Arrangements for Mounting and Dismounting the Couplings.* Where the stock diameter exceeds 200 mm (8 in.), the press fit is recommended to be effected by a hydraulic pressure connection. In such cases the cone is to be more slender, $c \approx 1:12$ to $\approx 1:20$. In case of hydraulic pressure connections the nut is to be effectively secured against the rudder stock or the pintle. For the safe transmission of the torsional moment by the coupling between rudder stock and rudder body the push-up pressure and the push-up length are to be determined according to [11.5v.]) and [11.5vi.]), respectively.

vii) The locking nut is to be fitted in accordance with [11.7] .

11.7 Locking Nut *(2022)*

Dimensions of the securing nut, as shown in [FIGURE 4] , are to be proportioned in accordance with the following and the nut is to be fitted with an effective locking device.

Height	$h_n \geq 0.6 d_g$
Outer diameter of nut	$d_n \geq 1.2 d_u$ or $1.5 d_g$ whichever is greater
External thread diameter	$d_g \geq 0.65 d_o$

In the case of a hydraulic pressure secured nut, a securing device such as a securing flat bar is to be provided [see [9.1iv.]]. Calculations proving the effectiveness of the securing device are to be submitted.

A securing flat bar will be regarded as an effective securing device for the nut, if its shear area, in mm^2 (in^2), is not less than:

$$A_S = \frac{P_S \cdot \sqrt{3}}{\sigma_F} \text{mm}^2(\text{in}^2)$$

where

P_s = shear force, in N (kgf, lbf)

$$= \frac{P_e}{2} \mu_1 \left(\frac{d_1}{d_g} - 0.6\right)$$

P_e = push-up force, in N (kgf, lbf), as defined in [11.5.v.]

μ_1 = frictional coefficient between nut and rudder body, normally $\mu_1 = 0.3$

d_1 = mean diameter of the frictional area between nut and rudder body, in mm (in.)

d_g = external thread diameter of the nut, in mm (in.)

σ_F = specified minimum yield stress of the securing flat bar material, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)

13 Pintles

13.1 Diameter *(2024)*

The diameter of the pintles is not to be less than obtained from the following equation.

$d_p = k_1\sqrt{BK_p}$ mm (in.)

where

k_1 = 11.1 (34.7, 1.38)

B = bearing force, in kN (tf, Ltf), from submitted direct calculation but not to be taken less than $B_{\min}$ as specified in [TABLE 4] ;

TABLE 4
Minimum Bearing Force $B_{\min}$

Pintle Type		$B_{\min}$
Conventional two pintle rudder		$0.5C_R$
3-2-A5/7.1 FIGURE 3A	lower pintle	$0.5C_R$
3-2-A5/7.1 FIGURE 3A	main pintle	$C_R\ell_a/\ell_p$ *
3-2-13/5 FIGURE 6	main pintle	$C_R\ell_a/\ell_p$ *
	upper pintle	$0.25C_R$

* $B_{\min} = C_R$ where $\ell_a/\ell_p \geq 1$

ℓ_a/ℓ_b as described in 3-2-13/5 FIGURE 6

K_p = material factor for the pintle, as defined in [1.3]

13.3 Couplings *(2024)*

13.3.1 Tapering *(2024)*

Pintles assembled with use of a locking nut are to have a conical attachment to the gudgeons with a taper not greater than:

1:8 – 1:12 for keyed and other manually assembled pintles with locking nut.

1:12 – 1:20 for pintles mounted with oil injection and hydraulic nut.

13.3.2 Push-up Pressure *(1 July 2024)*

The required push-up pressure for pintles in case of dry fitting, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi), is to be determined by p_{req1} as given below.

The required push-up pressure for pintles in case of oil injection fitting, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi), is to be determined by the maximum pressure of p_{req1} and p_{req2} as given below.

$$p_{req1} = \frac{0.4Bd_o}{d_m^2\ell}\ \mathrm{N/mm^2(kgf/mm^2)}$$

$$p_{req2} = \frac{6M_{bp}}{d_m^2\ell}\ 10^3\mathrm{N/mm^2(kgf/mm^2)}$$

$$p_{req2} = \frac{72M_{bp}}{d_m^2\ell}\ \mathrm{psi}$$

where

B = supporting force in the pintle, in N (kgf, lbf), (e.g., as that calculated according to 3-2-A5/7.1 for rudders supported by a horn with one pintle)

d_o = actual pintle diameter excluding the liner, in mm (in.), see 3-2-14/Figure 4C.

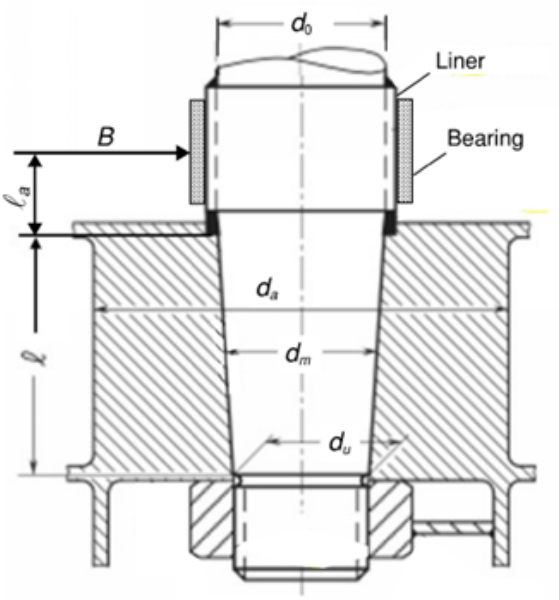
d_m = mean cone diameter, in mm (in.)

M_{bp} = bending moment in the pintle cone coupling to be determined by:
$M_{bp} = B\ell_a/1000$ N-m (kgf-m)
$M_{bp} = B\ell_a/12$ lbf-ft

ℓ = cone length, in mm (in.)

ℓ_a = length between middle of pintle-bearing and top of contact surface between cone coupling and pintle in mm (in), see 3-2-14/Figure 4C

FIGURE 4C
Pintle Cone Coupling *(1 July 2024)*



13.3.3 Push-up Length *(1 July 2024)*

The required push-up length, $\Delta\ell_1$, is to be calculated similarly as in [11.5vi.]), using the required push-up pressure as defined in 3-2-14/13.3.2 above, and properties for the pintle.

13.5 Threads and Nuts *(2024)*

Threads and nuts are to be in accordance with [11.7] .

13.7 Pintle Housing *(2024)*

13.7.1 Length *(2024)*

The length of the pintle housing in the gudgeon is not to be less than the pintle diameter, D_p where D_p is to be measured on the outside of liners.

13.7.2 Thickness *(2024)*

The thickness of the pintle housing is not to be less than 25% of the actual pintle diameter (refer 3-2-13/3.1).

13.9 Bearings *(2024)*

For rudders on horns with two pintles, as shown in 3-2-13/3.3.1 FIGURE 3b, calculations are to include pintle bearing forces with the vessel running ahead at the maximum continuous rated shaft rpm and at the lightest operating draft.

For rudders supported by a shoe piece and pintle assembled without the use of a nut (refer to 3-2-A5/5.1 FIGURE 2), a cylindrical attachment may be accepted as simply supported on the condition that the pintle bearing clearance allows enough space for angular inclination under the associated rudder design force.

The bearing pressure is to be in accordance with [15.1] .

Special consideration is to be given to metal bearings and unique rudder types.

Inspection plates are to be provided for the examination of pintles and securing arrangements unless alternate means, such as an inspection port, are provided.

15 Supporting and Anti-Lifting Arrangements

15.1 Rudder Stock Bearing, Rudder Shaft Bearing, and Pintle Bearing *(2024)*

Bearing surfaces for rudder stocks, shafts and pintles are to meet the following requirements:

15.1.1 Bearing Surfaces *(2024)*

The projected area of the bearing surface ($A_b = d_\ell \ell_b$) is not to be less than $A_{b\min}$ (see [FIGURE 4C]).

where

d_ℓ = outer diameter of the liner, in mm (in.)

ℓ_b = bearing length, in mm (in.)

$A_{b\min}$ = $k_1 \frac{P}{p_a}$ $\text{mm}^2(\text{in}^2)$

k_1 = 1000 (2240)

P = bearing reaction force, in kN (tf, Ltf), as specified in [TABLE 5]

p_a = allowable surface pressure as indicated in [TABLE 6] depending on bearing material, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)

15.1.2 Bearing Dimensions *(2024)*

The length/diameter ratio (ℓ_b/d_ℓ) of the projected area of bearing surface is not to be greater than 1.2*:

The bearing length L_p of the pintle, in mm (in.), is to be such that:

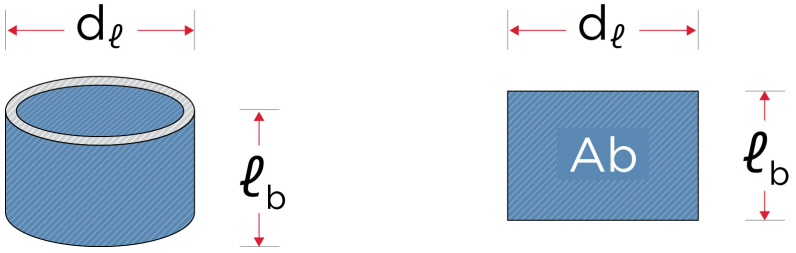
$$D_p \le L_p \le 1.2D_p$$

where

D_p = actual pintle diameter, in mm (in.), measured on the outside of liners

Note: * Request for bearing arrangement of length/diameter ratio greater than 1.2 is subject to special consideration provided that calculations are submitted to show acceptable clearance at both ends of the bearing.

FIGURE 4D
Bearing Dimensions *(2024)*



15.1.3 Bearing Clearance

i) The clearance for metal bearings is not to be less than $d_i/1000 + 1.0$ mm ($d_i/1000 + 0.04$ in.) on the diameter, where d_i is the inner diameter of the bushing, in mm (in.).

ii) The clearance for non-metallic bearings is to be specially determined considering the material's swelling and thermal expansion properties. This clearance in general is not to be taken less than 1.5 mm (0.06 in.) on diameter*.

Note: * Request of clearance less than 1.5 mm (0.06 in.) for non-metallic bearings is subject to special considerations provided that documented evidence, such as manufacturer's recommendation on acceptable clearance, expansion allowance and satisfactory service history with reduced clearances, are submitted for review.

15.1.4 Bearing Pressure

Bearing pressure is to be accordance with [TABLE 6] , as applicable.

15.1.5 Bearing Material

Where stainless steel or wear-resistant steel is used for liners or bearings, the material properties including chemical composition of both components are to be submitted for review for an approved combination.

15.1.6 Liners and Bushes *(1 July 2024)*

i) *Rudder Stock Bearings*. Liners and bushes are to be fitted in way of bearings. For rudder stocks and pintles having diameter less than 200 mm (7.87 in.), provision of liners in way of bushes is optional. If a liner is not provided, the rudder stock diameter is to be increased 7 mm (0.28 in.). The minimum thickness of liners and bushes is to be equal to:
$t_{min} = 8$ mm (0.31 in.) for metallic materials and synthetic material
$t_{min} = 22$ mm (0.87 in.) for lignum material

ii) *Pintle Bearings*
The thickness of any liner or bush is neither to be less than:
$t = k_1\sqrt{B}$ mm (in.)
where

B = bearing force, in N (kgf, lbf)

k_1 = 0.01 (0.0313, 0.000830)

nor than the minimum thickness defined in [15.1.5i.])

Bearings are to be restrained from turning by keying or similar arrangements.

If the Class Notation **UWILD** is requested, means and access are to be provided to determine the condition and clearance of the rudder bearing, in accordance with [7-A1-1/3.5.2] .

Commentary:

The use of resin chock material to position pintle and neck bearings may be considered acceptable subject to the following:

i The maximum bearing pressure must not exceed manufacturer's specification, or the values for maximum permissible bearing stress for rudder neck bearing and pintle bushings as provided in the ABS Rules.

ii Installation must comply with manufacturer's recommendations.

iii Details of proposed installation is to be submitted for approval. Vertical movement of the resin chock is to be prevented. Rotating stoppers are also to be provided for resin chock (axial grooves may be permitted for this purpose).

End of Commentary

15.3 Rudder Carrier

i) The weight of the rudder assembly is to be supported by a rudder carrier mounted on the hull structure designed for that purpose.

ii) At least half of the rudder carrier's holding-down bolts are to be fitted bolts. Alternative means of preventing horizontal movement of the rudder carrier may be considered.

iii) The bearing part is to be well lubricated by dripping oil, automatic grease feeding, or a similar method.

iv) Hull structures in way of the rudder carrier are to be suitably strengthened.

15.5 Anti-Lifting Devices

Means are to be provided to prevent accidental unshipping or undue movement of the rudder which may cause damage to the steering gear. There are to be at least two bolts in the joint of the anti-lifting ring.

TABLE 5
Bearing Reaction Force

Bearing Type	P, *Bearing Reaction Force* *kN (tf, Ltf)*
Pintle bearings	$P = B$ as defined in [13]
Other bearings	*Calculation of* P is to be submitted. Guidelines for calculation can be found in Appendix 3-2-A5

TABLE 6
Allowable Bearing Surface Pressure
(1 July 2021)

Bearing Material	p_a		
	N/mm²	*kgf/mm²*	*psi*
lignum vitae	2.5	0.25	360
white metal, oil lubricated	4.5	0.46	650
synthetic material with hardness greater than 60 Shore D(1)	5.5(2)	0.56	800
steel(3) and bronze and hot-pressed bronze-graphite materials	7.0	0.71	1000
aluminum-bronzes and manganese-bronzes(4)	9.0	0.92	1290
advanced synthetic compositions incorporating solid lubricant(4)	10.0	1.02	1430

Notes:

1 Indentation hardness test at 23°C (73.4°F) and with 50% moisture, according to a recognized standard. Synthetic bearing materials to be of approved type.

2 Higher values than given in the table may be taken if they are verified by tests, but in no case more than 10 N/mm^2 (1.02 kgf/mm^2, 1450 psi).

3 Stainless and wear-resistant steel in an approved combination with stock liner.

4 Material test certificates are to be submitted to support the review.

17 Double Plate Rudder

17.1 Strength

Rudder section modulus and web area are to be such that stresses indicated in the following Subparagraphs are not exceeded.

In calculating the section modulus of the rudder, the effective width of side plating is to be taken as not greater than twice the extreme athwartship dimension of the rudder in way of horizontal section being considered. Bolted cover plates on access or inspection openings to pintles or nuts are not to be considered effective in determining the section modulus of the rudder. For a cover plate to be considered effective, it is to be closed using a full penetration weld and confirmed suitable by non-destructive testing method. Smooth curvature or radii are to be provided at abrupt changes in section where stress concentrations occur, including in way of openings and cover plates.

Moments, shear forces and reaction forces are to be obtained by direct calculation, which is to be submitted. Guidance for calculation of these values is given in Appendix 3-2-A5.

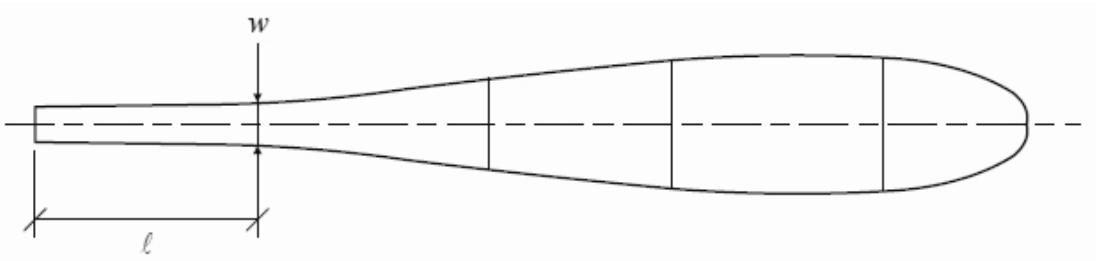
17.1.1 Spade Rudders and Rudders with Horns *(2024)*

For spade rudders and rudders with horns, the section modulus at the bottom of the rudder is not to be less than one-third the required section modulus of the rudder at the top of the rudder or at the center of the lowest pintle.

Special attention is to be paid in design and construction of rudders with slender foil sections in the vicinity of their trailing edge (e.g., hollow foil sections, fishtail foil sections). Where the width of the rudder blade at the aftermost vertical diaphragm, w, is equal or less than $^1/_6$ of the trailing edge length measured between the diaphragm and the trailing edge, ℓ, finite element vibration analysis

and trailing edge vortex shedding analysis of the rudder blade are also to be submitted for review. See 3-2-14/Figure 5

FIGURE 5



17.1.2 Spade Rudders with Embedded Rudder Trunk *(1 July 2025)*

Spade rudders with an embedded rudder trunk see ([FIGURE 6A]) are to have a trailing edge with dimensions that satisfy the following requirements:

i) For a rudder trailing edge having a monotonous transition to an end with a finite thickness or diameter (see [FIGURE 6]), the thickness or diameter of the rounded end, t_e, is to satisfy the following requirements:

For $b \times (c_r + c_t)/2 \geq 70$ m^2 (753 ft^2), t_e is not to exceed:

$t_e = 43\alpha^{-0.36} c_t^{0.5} - 3.5 c_t$ mm

$t_e = 0.93\alpha^{-0.36} c_t^{0.5} - 0.042 c_t$ in.

For $b \times (c_r + c_t)/2 < 70$ m^2 (753 ft^2), the minimum value of t_e is to satisfy:

$t_e = 15.2\alpha^{-0.36} V_d - 3.5 c_t$ mm

$t_e = 0.6\alpha^{-0.36} V_d - 0.042 c_t$ in.

where

b = mean height of rudder area, as determined from [FIGURE 6B] , in m (ft)

c_r = root chord length, as determined from [FIGURE 6B] , in m (ft)

c_t = tip chord length, as determined from [FIGURE 6B] , in m (ft)

t_e = rudder trailing edge thickness or diameter of rounded end, as determined from [FIGURE 6B] , in mm (in.)

α = rudder trailing edge angle, as determined from [FIGURE 6B] , in degrees

V_d = as defined in [3.1] , in knots

FIGURE 6A *(2024)*

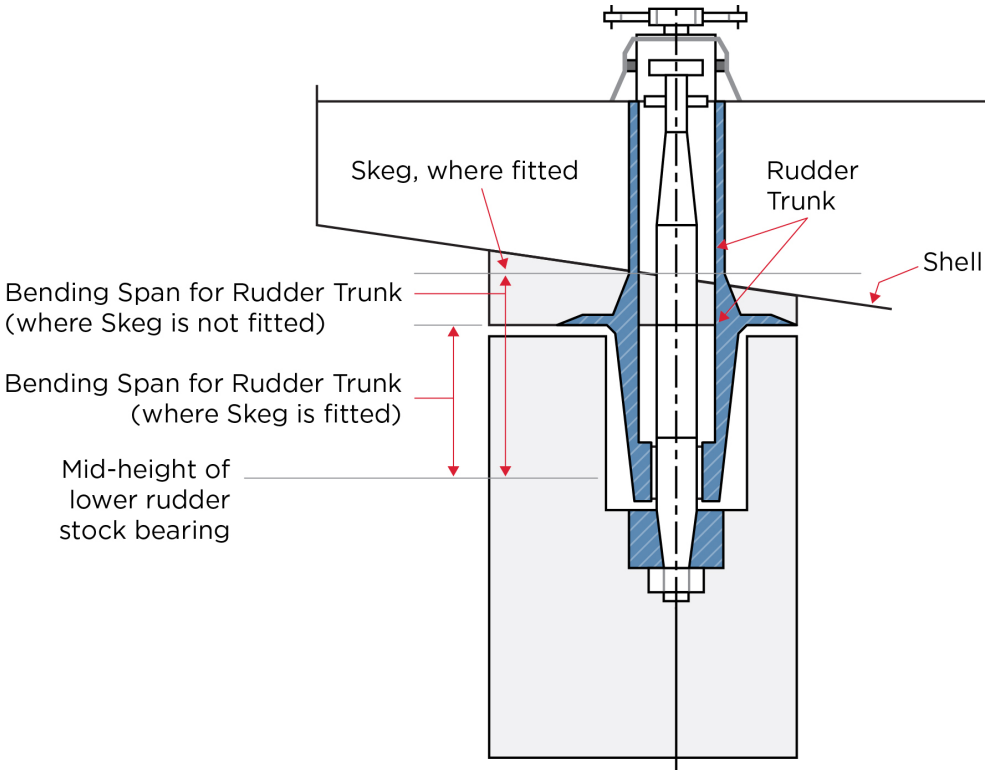
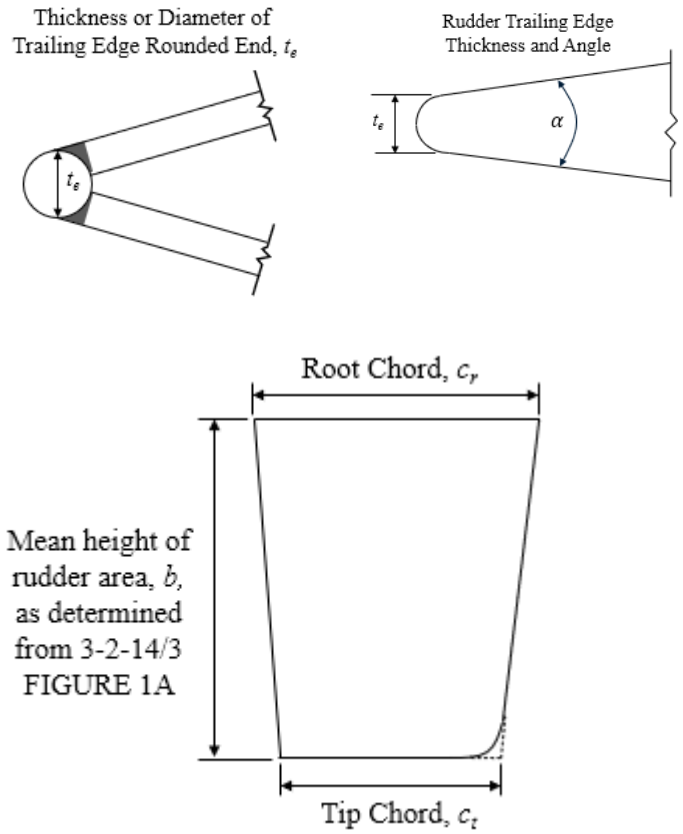


FIGURE 6B *(1 July 2021)*

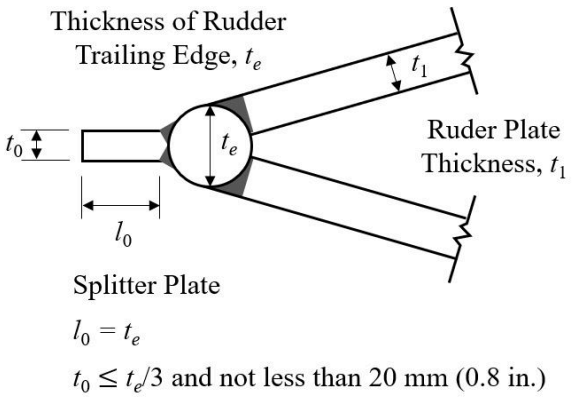


ii) For a rudder trailing edge with a flat splitter plate (see [FIGURE 7]), the extension of the splitter plate beyond the weld to rudder, ℓ_0, is to be the same as the trailing edge thickness, as determined from [FIGURE 7] . The thickness of the splitter plate, t_0, is to satisfy: $t_0 \le t_e/3$, and not to be less than 20 mm (0.8 in.)
where

t_0 = thickness of splitter plate, as determined from 3-2-14/Figure 7, in mm (in.)

t_e = rudder trailing edge thickness or diameter of rounded end, as determined from 3-2-14/Figure 7, in mm (in.)

FIGURE 7 *(2024)*



Commentary:

Edge serrations (i.e., a sawtooth shaped edge) may be added to the splitter plate as an extension beyond the required length, ℓ_0, to mitigate the effect of trailing edge vortex shedding.

End of Commentary

iii) For a vessel with a rudder trailing edge different from 3-2-14/17.1 i) and ii), a vibration analysis is to be carried out to verify that the natural frequencies of the rudder vibration modes that are susceptible to the adverse effect of rudder trailing edge vortex shedding are at least ±20% away from the rudder trailing edge vortex shedding frequency at the vessel speed range between 0.6 V_d and V_d, where V_d is the design speed as defined in [3.1]. When the natural frequency of the rudder is calculated by analysis, the validation of the analysis method by a hammer test of the submerged rudder is to be carried out and results submitted to ABS Engineering for review.

Commentary:

Surveyor witnessing of the hammer test is not required.

End of Commentary

For a rudder trailing edge as described in 3-2-14/17.1 i) , the trailing edge vortex shedding frequency, f_s, in Hz at a given vessel speed, V, in knots can be calculated using the following equation:

$$f_s = \frac{109 - 0.088\alpha^2}{1 + 0.0034/(t_e/c_t) - 0.14/(t_e/c_t)^{0.2}} \times \frac{V}{t_e} \quad \text{in SI units}$$

$$f_s = \frac{4.29 - 0.0035\alpha^2}{1 + 0.0034/(t_e/c_t) - 0.14/(t_e/c_t)^{0.2}} \times \frac{V}{t_e} \quad \text{in US customary units}$$

where t_e, c_t, and α are defined in 3-2-14/17.1 i), and t_e and c_t use the same units (mm (in.)). Alternatively, the rudder trailing edge vortex shedding frequency can be determined through a detailed numerical analysis or a sea trial. Detailed numerical analysis is to cover a range of vessel speeds, rudder turning angles, and rudder foil shapes at several elevations to assess the variation of the rudder trailing edge vortex shedding frequency. The applied analysis method is to be properly calibrated based on sea trials, test results, or independent verification by ABS.

17.1.3 Clear of Rudder Recess Sections *(1 July 2019)*

Allowable stresses for determining the rudder strength clear of rudder recess sections (cutouts) where [17.1.2] applies are as follows:

Bending stress	$\sigma_b = K_\sigma / Q$	N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)
Shear stress	$\tau = K_\tau / Q$	N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)
Equivalent stress	$\sigma_e = \sqrt{\sigma_b^2 + 3\tau^2} = K_e / Q$	N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)

where

	SI units	***MKS units***	***US units***
K_σ	110	11.2	15,900
K_τ	50	5.1	7,300
K_e	120	12.2	17,400

Q = 1.0 for ordinary strength hull steel

= as defined in 3-2-1/5.3 for higher strength steel plate

17.1.4 In Way of Rudder Recess Sections *(1 July 2019)*

Allowable stresses for determining the rudder strength in way of the recess sections (cutouts) for the rudder horn pintle on semi-spade rudders (see [FIGURE 8]) are as follows:

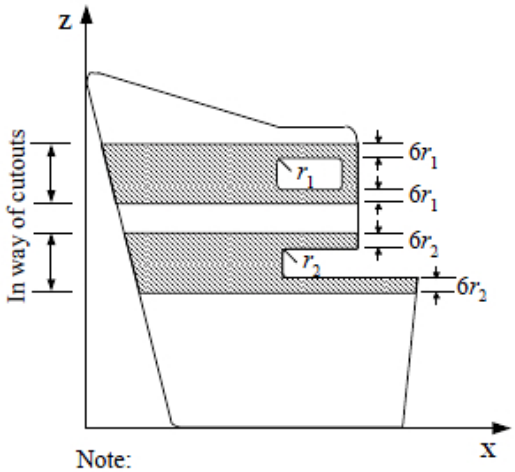
Bending stress	$\sigma_b = K_\sigma$	N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)
Shear stress	$\tau = K_\tau$	N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)
Equivalent stress	$\sigma_e = \sqrt{\sigma_b^2 + 3\tau^2} = K_e$	N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)

where

	SI units	*MKS units*	*US units*
K_σ	75	7.65	10,900
K_τ	50	5.1	7,300
K_e	100	10.2	14,500

Note:
The stresses in [17.1.2] apply equally to high tensile and ordinary steels.

FIGURE 8



Note:
r_1 = corner radius of rudder plate in way of portable bolted inspection hole
r_2 = corner radius of rudder plate

17.3 Side, Top and Bottom Plating *(1 July 2024)*

The thickness of the rudder side or bottom plating is to be not less than obtained from the following equations, whichever is greater:

$$t = 0.0055s\beta\sqrt{k_1 d_s + (k_2 C_R/A)} \times \sqrt{Q} + k_3 \text{ mm (in.)}$$

$t = sk/c_1(qd_s)^{0.5} + c_2$ mm (in.) but not less than 6.5 mm (0.25 in.) or ($s/150 + c_2$) mm (in.), whichever is the greater

where

Q = 1.0 for ordinary strength hull steel
= as defined in 3-2-1/5.3 for higher strength steel plate

k_1 = 1.0 (1.0, 0.305)

k_2 = 0.1 (0.981, 10.7)

k_3 = 2.5 (2.5, 0.1)

d_s = scantling draft of the ship, in m (ft)

C_R = rudder force according to [3] , in kN (tf, Ltf)

A = rudder area, in m^2 (ft^2)

β = $\sqrt{1.1 - 0.5(s/b)^2}$ maximum 1.0 for $b/s \geq 2.5$

s = smaller unsupported dimension of plating, in mm (in.)

b = greater unsupported dimension of plating, in mm (in.)

c_1 = 254 (460)

c_2 = 4.5 (0.18)

q = $235/Y$ N/mm^2 ($24/Y$ kgf/mm^2, $34{,}000/Y$ lbs/in^{2}psi)

k = $\left(3.075\,(\alpha)^{0.5} - 2.077\right) / (\alpha + 0.272)$ where $1 \le \alpha \le 2$

= 1.0 where $\alpha > 2$

α = b/s

The rudder side plating in way of the solid part is to be of increased thickness per [17.7] .

17.5 Diaphragm Plates

Vertical and horizontal diaphragms are to be fitted within the rudder, effectively attached to each other and to the side plating. Vertical diaphragms are to be spaced approximately 1.5 times the spacing of the horizontal diaphragms.

The thickness of diaphragm plates is not to be less than 70% of the required rudder side plate thickness or 8 mm (0.31 in.), whichever is greater. Openings in diaphragms are to have generous radii and the effects of openings are to be considered in the strength assessment as required in [17.1] .

The diaphragm plating in way of the solid part is to be of increased thickness for vertical and horizontal diaphragm plates per [17.7] .

17.7 Connections of Rudder Blade Structure with Solid Parts *(2024)*

Solid parts in forged or cast steel, which house the rudder stock or the pintle, are to be provided with protrusions, except where not required as indicated below.

These protrusions are not required when the diaphragm plate thickness is less than:

- 10 mm (0.375 in.) for diaphragm plates welded to the solid part on which the lower pintle of a semi-spade rudder is housed and for vertical diaphragm plates welded to the solid part of the rudder stock coupling of spade rudders.
- 20 mm (0.75 in.) for other diaphragm plates.

The solid parts are to be connected to the rudder structure by means of two horizontal diaphragm plates and two vertical diaphragm plates.

The section modulus, w_s, of the cross-section of the structure of the rudder blade formed by vertical diaphragm plates and rudder plating ([FIGURE 9]), which is connected with the solid part where the rudder stock is housed is to be not less than:

$$w_s = c_s S_\ell^3 \left(\frac{H_E - H_X}{H_E}\right)^2 \frac{Q}{K_s}\, 10^{-4}\text{cm}^3$$

$$w_s = c_s S_\ell^3 \left(\frac{H_E - H_X}{H_E}\right)^2 \frac{Q}{K_s}\, 10^{-1}\text{in}^3$$

where

c_s = coefficient, to be taken equal to:

= 1.0 if there is no opening in the rudder plating or if such openings are closed by a full penetration welded plate

= 1.5 if there is an opening in the considered cross-section of the rudder

S_ℓ = rudder stock diameter, in mm (in.)

H_E = vertical distance between the lower edge of the rudder blade and the upper edge of the solid part, in m (ft)

H_X = vertical distance between the considered cross-section and the upper edge of the solid part as indicated in [FIGURE 9] , in m (ft)

Q = material factor for the rudder blade plating as given in [17.1]

K_s = material factor for the rudder stock as given in [1.3]

The actual section modulus of the cross-section of the structure of the rudder blade is to be calculated with respect to the symmetrical axis of the rudder.

The breadth of the rudder plating to be considered for the calculation of section modulus is to be not greater than:

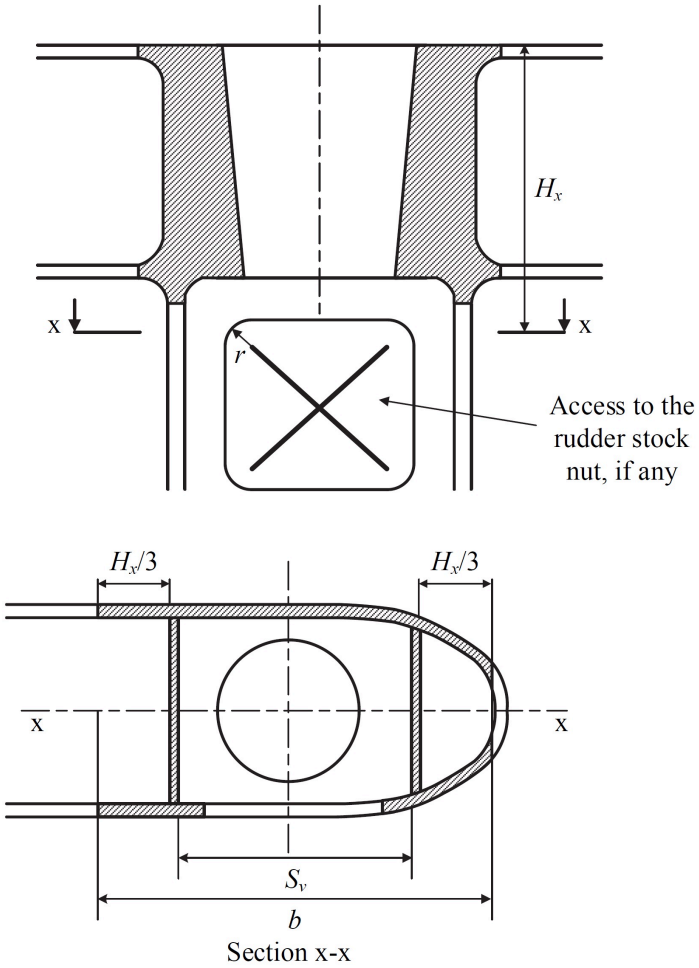
$b = s_v + 2H_X/3$ m (ft)

where

s_v = spacing between the two vertical diaphragm, in m (ft) (see [FIGURE 9])

Where openings for access to the rudder stock nut are not closed by a full penetration welded plate, they are to be deducted.

FIGURE 9
Cross-section of the Connection Between Rudder Blade Structure and Rudder Stock Housing , Example with Opening in Only One Side Shown *(1 July 2021)*



The thickness of the horizontal diaphragm plates connected to the solid parts, in mm (in.), as well as that of the rudder blade plating between these diaphragms, is to be not less than the greater of the following values:

$t_H = 1.2t$ mm (in.)

$t_H = 0.045 d_S^2 / s_H$ mm (in.)

where

t = defined in [17.3]

d_S = diameter, in mm (in.), to be taken equal to:

= S_ℓ as per [7.3] , for the solid part housing the rudder stock

= d_p as per [13.1] , for the solid part housing the pintle

s_H = spacing between the two horizontal diaphragm plates, in mm (in.)

The increased thickness of the horizontal diaphragms is to extend fore and aft of the solid part at least to the next vertical diaphragm.

The thickness of the vertical diaphragm plates welded to the solid part where the rudder stock is housed as well as the thickness of the rudder side plating under this solid part is to be not less than the values obtained, in mm (in.), from [TABLE 7] .

The increased thickness of vertical diaphragm plates is to extend below the solid piece at least to the next horizontal diaphragm.

TABLE 7
Thickness of Side Plating and Vertical Diaphragm Plates

Type of Rudder	*Thickness of Vertical Diaphragm Plates, in mm (in.)*		*Thickness of Rudder Plating, in mm (in.)*	
	Rudder Blade without Opening	*Rudder Blade with Opening*	*Rudder Blade without Opening*	*Area with Opening*
Rudder supported by sole piece	$1.2t$	$1.6t$	$1.2t$	$1.4t$
Semi-spade and spade rudders	$1.4t$	$2.0t$	$1.3t$	$1.6t$

t = thickness of the rudder plating, in mm (in.), as defined in [17.3]

17.9 Welding and Design Details *(1 July 2024)*

i) Slot-welding is to be limited to the extent practicable. Slot welding is not to be used in areas with large in-plane stresses transversely to the slots or in way of cut-out areas of semi-spade rudders.

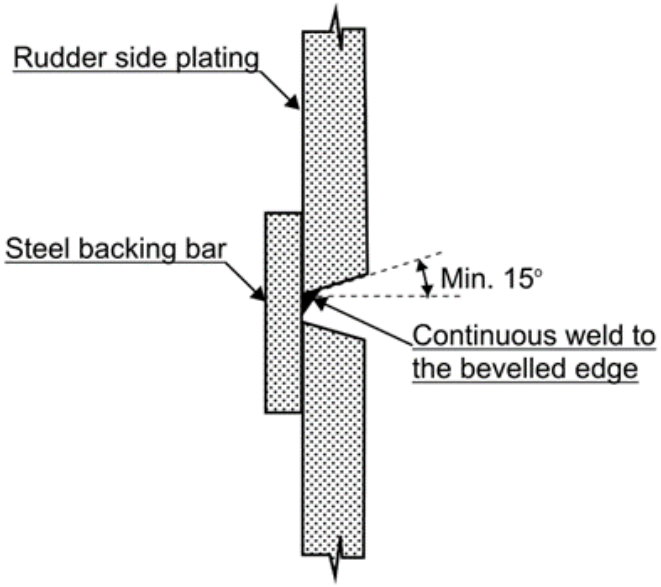
ii) When slot welding is applied, the length of slots is to be minimum 75 mm (3 in.) with breadth of $2t$, where t is the rudder plate thickness, in mm (in.). The distance between ends of slots is not to be more than 125 mm (5 in.). The slots are to be fillet welded around the edges and filled with a suitable compound (e.g., epoxy putty). Slots are not to be filled with weld.

iii) Groove welds with structural backing/backing bar (continuous type slot weld) may be used for double-plate rudder welding. In that case, the root gap is to be between 6 to 10 mm (0.25 to 0.375 in.) and the bevel angle is to be at least 15°.

iv) In way of the rudder horn recess of semi-spade rudders the radii in the rudder plating except in way of solid part in cast steel are not to be less than 5 times the plate thickness, but in no case less than 100 mm (4 in.). Welding in side plate are to be avoided in or at the end of the radii. Edges of side plate and weld adjacent to radii are to be ground smooth.

v) Welds in the rudder side plating subjected to siginificant stresses from rudder bending and welds between plates and heavy pieces (solid parts in forged or cast steel or very thick plating) are to be made as full penetration welds. In way of highly stressed areas (e.g., cut-out of semispade rudder and upper part of spade rudder), cast or welding on ribs is to be arranged. Two sided full penetration welding is normally to be arranged. Where back welding is impossible welding is to be performed against ceramic backing bars or equivalent. Steel backing bars may be used and are to be fitted with continuous weld on one side to the bevelled edge, see 3-2-14/Figure 9A. The bevel angle is to be at least 15° for one sided welding.

FIGURE 9A
Use of Steel Backing Bar in Way of Full Penetration Welding of Rudder Side Plating *(1 July 2024)*



17.11 Watertightness

The rudder is to be watertight and is to be tested in accordance with Section 3-7-1.

19 Single Plate Rudders

19.1 Mainpiece Diameter

The mainpiece diameter is calculated according to [7.3] . For spade rudders, the lower third is allowed to be tapered down to 0.75 times stock diameter at the bottom of the rudder.

19.3 Blade Thickness

The blade thickness is not to be less than obtained from the following equation:

$$t_b = 0.0015 s V_R + 2.5 \quad \text{mm}$$

$$t_b = 0.0015 s V_R + 0.1 \quad \text{in.}$$

where

s = spacing of stiffening arms, in mm (in.), not to exceed 1000 mm (39 in.)

V_R = speed, as defined in [3]

19.5 Arms

The thickness of the arms is not to be less than the blade thickness obtained in [19.3] . The section modulus of each set of arms about the axis of the rudder stock is not to be less than obtained from the following equation:

$$SM = 0.0005sC_1^2V_R^2Q\text{cm}^3$$

$$SM = 0.0000719sC_1^2V_R^2Q\text{in}^3$$

where

C_1 = horizontal distance from the aft edge of the rudder to the centerline of the rudder stock, in m (ft)

Q = 1.0 for ordinary strength hull steel

= as defined in 3-2-1/5.3 for higher strength steel plate

s, V_R are as defined in section [21.3] .

21 Steering Nozzles

21.1 Application Scope *(2024)*

Requirements in this Subsection are applicable to conventional steering nozzles, as illustrated in [FIGURE 10] , that have the following parameters:

i) The inner diameter is of 5 meters (16.4 feet) or less.

ii) Maximum operating angle at the design speed is not more than 35° on each side.

Nozzles with above features provided on Ice Classed vessels are subject to additional requirements specified in Part 6, Chapter 1, as applicable.

Steering nozzles outside of the application scope are subject to special consideration with all supporting documents and calculations submitted to ABS for review. The submitted documents and calculations are to include, but not limited to, the items listed in the following:

i) The drawings and plans of steering nozzle with indications of design operating angles and the torque considered necessary to operate the steering nozzle at the design operating angle

ii) The calculated steering nozzle section modulus

iii) The calculated maximum water induced pressure of the nozzle under design speed (both ahead and astern conditions) and at the design operating angle, and

iv) The calculated maximum shear and bending of nozzle support structure under design speed (both ahead and astern conditions) and at the design operating angle

21.3 Design Force

The design force, C_R, for steering nozzles is to be obtained from the following equation:

$$C_R = nk_Rk_ck_\ell A_tV_R^2 = C_{R1} + C_{R2} \text{ kN (tf, Ltf)}$$

$$C_{R1} = nk_Rk_ck_\ell A_{eq}V_R^2 \text{ kN (tf, Ltf)}$$

$$C_{R2} = nk_Rk_ck_\ell \left(A_{po} + A_{mf}\right)V_R^2 \text{ kN (tf, Ltf)}$$

where

C_{R1} = Design force associated with the turning movement of the nozzle

C_{R2} = Design force associated with the turning movement of nozzle post, movable flap, if present

k_R = $(d_m^2/A_t + 2)/3$ but not taken more than 2

d_m = mean external diameter of the nozzle, in m (ft)

= $0.5(d_f + d_a)$

d_f, d_a = fore and aft nozzle external diameters as shown in [FIGURE 10] , in m (ft)

A_t = $A_{eq} + A_{po} + A_{mf}$, in m^2 (ft^2)

A_{eq} = nominal projected area of nozzle cylinder, not to be taken less than $1.35 d_m b$

b = nozzle length in m (ft)

A_{po} = projected area of nozzle post or horn within the extension of nozzle profile as applicable

A_{mf} = projected area of movable flap if present

= $d_a b_{mf}$

A = $A_{eq} + A_{mf}$, in m^2 (ft^2)

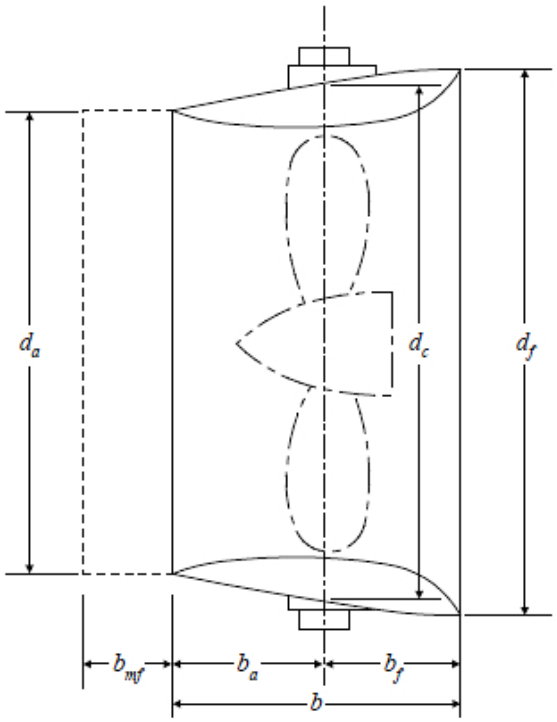
k_c = 1.9 for ahead condition

= 1.5 for astern condition

k_ℓ = 1.15, as specified in [TABLE 2]

n, V_R are as defined in [3.1] .

FIGURE 10
Nozzle Geometry



21.5 Design Torque

Design torque, Q_R, for steering nozzle is to be determined from the following equation for both ahead and astern conditions:

$Q_R = C_R r$ kN-m (tf-m, Ltf-ft)

where

r = $(\alpha - k)\ell$, but not less than 0.1ℓ for ahead condition

ℓ = b without flap, in m (ft)

= $b + b_{mf}$ if flap present

k = A_f/A

A_f = $A_{eq}b_f/\ell$, in m^2 (ft^2)

d_c = nozzle diameter at the section intersecting with nozzle stock axis;

α is as defined in [TABLE 3].

A, C_R are as defined in [21.3].

21.7 Nozzle Stock

21.7.1 Upper Stock

The upper stock is that part of the nozzle stock above the neck bearing.

At the upper bearing or tiller, the upper stock diameter is not to be less than obtained from the following equation:

$$S = N_u \sqrt[3]{Q_R K_s} \text{ mm (in.)}$$

where

N_u = 42.0 (823.9, 2.39)

Q_R = as defined in [21.5]

K_s = material factor for nozzle stock, as defined in [1.3]

21.7.2 Lower Stock

In determining lower stock diameters, values of nozzle design force and torque calculated in [21.3] and [21.5] are to be used. Bending moments and shear forces, as well as the reaction forces are to be determined by direct calculation and are to be submitted for review. For nozzles supported by shoe pieces, these structures are to be included in the calculation. Calculation guidance for these values is given in Appendix 3-2-A5.

The lower nozzle stock diameter is not to be less than obtained from the following equation:

$$S_\ell = S \sqrt[6]{1 + 4/3\,(M/Q_R)^2} \text{ mm (in.)}$$

where

S = required upper stock diameter from [21.7.1] , in mm (in.)

M = bending moment at the cross section of the nozzle stock considered, in kN-m (tf-m, Ltf-ft)

Q_R = design torque obtained from [21.5] , in kN-m (tf-m, Ltf-ft)

Where there is a change in stock diameter above the neck bearing, a gradual transition is to be provided.

21.9 Design Pressure

The design pressure of the nozzle is to be obtained from the following:

$$p_s = c_s c_m \frac{C_{R1}}{2A_{eq}} \text{ N/mm}^2 \text{ (kgf/mm}^2\text{, psi)}$$

c_s = 0.001 (0.0001, 0.145)

c_m = as indicated in [TABLE 8]

C_{R1}, A_{eq} as defined in [21.3]

p_d as defined in 3-2-13/9.1

TABLE 8
Coefficient c_m

Propeller Zone (see 3-2-13/Figure 4)	c_m		
	p_s *in N/mm²*	p_s *in kgf/mm²*	p_s *in psi*
2	0.35	3.6×10^{-2}	4.067×10^{2}
1 & 3	0.5	5.1×10^{-2}	5.81×10^{2}
4	1.0	1.02×10^{-1}	11.62×10^{2}

21.11 Plate Thickness

21.11.1 Nozzle Shell

The thickness of the nozzle shell plating, in mm (in.), is not to be less than:

$t = t_o + t_c$ mm (in.), but not to be taken less than 7.5 mm (0.3 in.)

where

t_o = thickness obtained from the following formula:

= $c_n \cdot S_p \cdot \sqrt{pK_n}$ mm (in.)

c_n = coefficient as indicated in [TABLE 9]

S_p = spacing of ring webs, in mm (in.)

p = design pressure, in N/mm² (kgf/mm², psi), as defined in [21.9]

t_c = corrosion allowance determined by [TABLE 10]

K_n = nozzle material factor as defined in [1.3]

TABLE 9
Coefficient c_n
(2024)

	p in N/mm²	*p in kgf/mm²*	*p in lbs/in²*
c_n	0.158	0.495	0.0132

TABLE 10
Corrosion allowance t_c
(2024)

Value of t_o	$t_c mm\ (in.)$
If $t_o \leq 10.0(0.4)$	1.5 (0.06)
If $t_o > 10.0(0.4)$	the lesser of b_1 , b_2
where	
$b_1 = 3.0\ (0.12)$ mm (in.)	
$b_2 = \left(\frac{t_o}{\sqrt{1/K_n}} + 5\right) \times 10^{-1}\text{mm or} b_2 = \left(\frac{t_o}{\sqrt{1/K_n}} + 0.2\right) \times 10^{-1}\text{in.}$	

21.11.2 Internal Diaphragm

Thickness of nozzle internal ring web is not to be less than the required nozzle shell plating for Zone 3 as illustrated in 3-2-13/5 FIGURE 7.

21.11.3 Movable Flap

Nozzle movable flap plate thickness, if present, is to comply with the following:

i) For double-plate movable flap, requirements in [17] are to be satisfied as applicable;

ii) For single-plate movable flap, requirements in [19] are to be satisfied as applicable;

21.13 Section Modulus *(2024)*

The section modulus of steering nozzle is not to be less than obtained from the following formula:

$$SM = d^2 b V_d^2 Q \text{cm}^3 SM = 0.0017\ \left(d^2 b V_d^2 Q\right)\ \left(\text{in}^3\right)$$

where

d = nozzle inner diameter, m (ft)

b = nozzle length, m (ft)

V_d = design speed in ahead condition, in knots, as defined in [3.1]

Q = reduction factor conditional on material type

= 1.0 for ordinary strength steel

= 0.78 for H32 strength steel

= 0.72 for H36 strength steel

= 0.68 for H40 strength steel

Commentary:

Q factor for steel having yield strength other than the above will be specially considered by ABS.

End of Commentary

21.15 Locking Device

A mechanical locking device is to be provided:

i) To prevent the steering nozzle from rotating beyond the maximum operating angle at design speed

ii) To prevent steering nozzle from rotating toward undesired directions in the event of accident or damage

21.17 Welding Requirement

Steering nozzle welding procedures are to comply with 3-2-13/9.7.

23 Azimuthal Thruster

23.1 Application Scope

The requirements of 3-2-14/23 are applicable to Azimuthal Thrusters (also referred as integrated nozzle propellers), as illustrated in [FIGURE11] , that have the following parameters:

i) Azimuthal thrusters designed for propulsion and maneuvering

ii) The inner diameter of thruster's nozzle is of 5 meters (16.5 feet) or less.

Azimuthal thrusters with above features provided on Ice Classed vessels are subject to additional requirements specified in Part 6, Chapter 1, as applicable.

Azimuthal thrusters outside of the above application scope are subject to special consideration with all supporting documents and calculations submitted to ABS for review. The submitted documents and calculations include, but are not limited to, the following items:

i) The drawings and plans of the thruster with indications of design operating angles and the torque considered necessary to operate the thruster at the design operating angle,

ii) The calculated thruster section modulus

iii) The calculated maximum water induced pressure of the thruster under design speed (both ahead and astern conditions) and at the design operating angle, and

iv) The calculated maximum shear and bending of thruster support structure under design speed (both ahead and astern conditions) and at the design operating angle.

23.3 Plans and Documents

The following structural components related plans and documents are to be submitted to ABS as applicable:

i) Overall arrangement of the thruster unit

ii) Detailed nozzle drawing with nozzle profile type indicated

iii) Detailed plans of thruster connection, bolted or welded, to the hull

iv) Nozzle strut drawings including details of the connections to the propeller gear housing and the nozzle duct

v) Material list and properties of all structure components

vi) Manufacturer specified/calculated maximum load on the unit for crash stop condition

Note: For specific requirements of machinery components, see Part 4 as applicable.

23.5 Locking Device

A locking device is to be provided to prevent the azimuthal thruster from rotating toward undesired directions in the event of accident or damage.

23.7 Design Force

The design force, C_R, for azimuthal thrusters is the maximum load for crash stop condition ([23.1]) or as obtained from the following equation, whichever is greater:

$$C_R = nk_Rk_ck_\ell AV_R^2 = C_{R1} + C_{R2} \text{ kN (tf, Ltf)}$$

$$C_{R1} = nk_Rk_ck_\ell A_{eq}V_R^2 \text{ kN (tf, Ltf)}$$

$$C_{R2} = nk_Rk_ck_\ell A_{tb}V_R^2 \text{ kN (tf, Ltf)}$$

where

C_{R1} = Design force associated with the turning movement of the nozzle

C_{R2} = Design force associated with the turning movement of nozzle post, movable flap, if present;

k_R = $(d_m^2/A + 2)/3$ but not taken more than 1.33

d_m = mean external diameter of the nozzle, in m (ft)

= $0.5(d_f + d_a)$

d_f, d_a = fore and aft nozzle external diameters as shown in [FIGURE11] (a), in m (ft)

b = nozzle length as shown in [FIGURE11] (a), in m (ft)

A = $A_{eq} + A_{tb}$, in m^2 (ft^2)

A_{eq} = equivalent nominal area of nozzle cylinder, not to be taken less than $1.35d_mb$, in m^2 (ft^2)

A_{tb} = effective projected areas of the azimuthal thruster components forward of the nozzle, in m^2 (ft^2)

d_o = outer diameter of steering tube as shown in [FIGURE11] (a), in m (ft)

k_c = 1.9 for ahead condition

= 1.5 for astern condition.

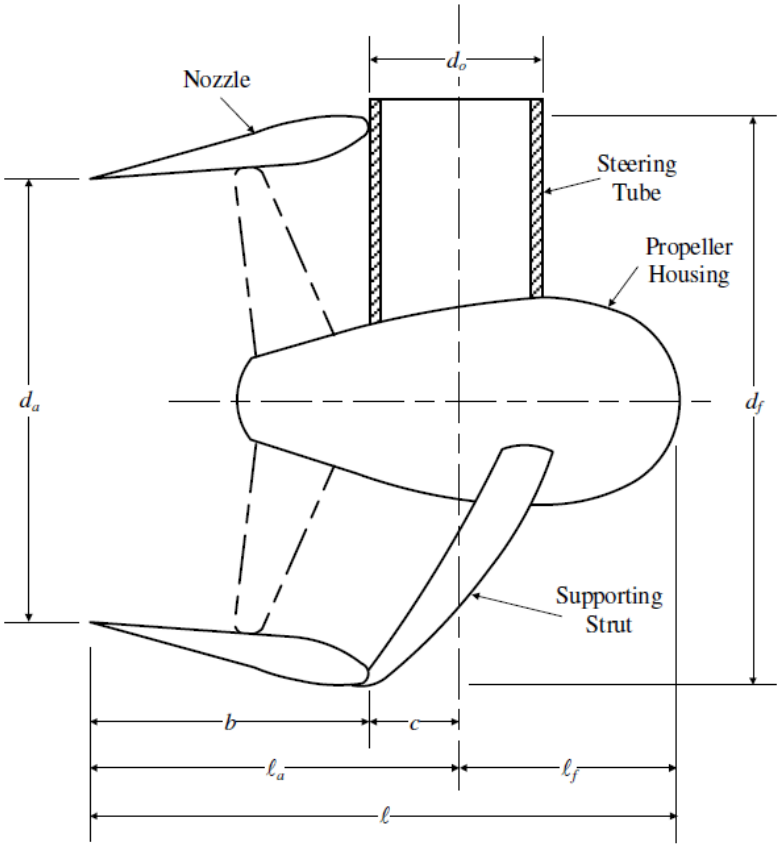
k_ℓ = 1.15, as specified in [TABLE 2]

n, V_R are as defined in [3.1] .

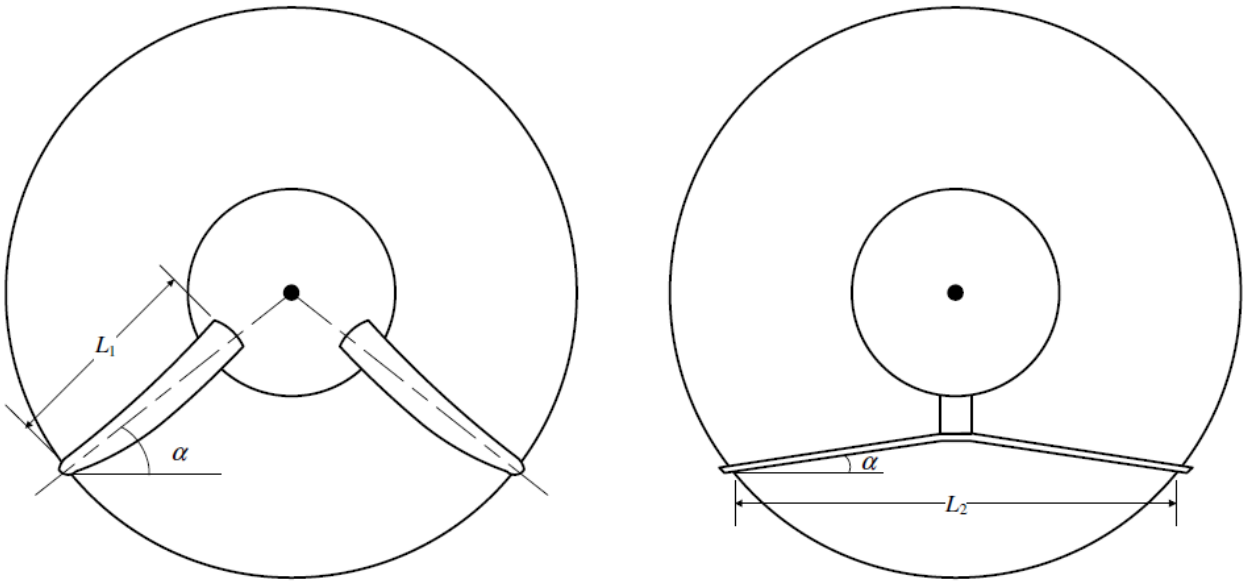
Note:

* Effective projected areas forward of the azimuthal thruster nozzle are the parts that actually contribute to generate lift force as the thruster turns. For example, for a torpedo shaped component, the projected profile area is to be proportionally reduced in order to be taken as the effective projected area. If this resultant effective projected area is too small to compare with the overall effective projected area, it may be discounted.

FIGURE 11
An Illustration of Azimuthal Thruster



(a) Side View



(b) Looking Aft (c)

23.9 Design Torque

Design torque, Q_R, for azimuthal thruster is to be determined from the following equation for both ahead and astern conditions:

$Q_R = C_R r$ kN-m (tf-m, Ltf-ft)

where

r = $(\alpha - k)\ell$, but not less than 0.1ℓ for ahead condition

ℓ = length of azimuthal thruster, in m (ft)

k = A_f/A

A_f = effective projected area of azimuthal thrust unit forward of steering centerline (within the extent length of ℓ_f), not to be taken less than $0.5A_{tb}$, in m^2 (ft^2)

α is as defined in [TABLE 3].

C_R and A are as defined in [23.7].

23.11 Design Pressure

The design pressure of the nozzle is to be obtained from the following:

$p = p_d + p_s$ N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)

where

$$p_s = c_s c_m \frac{C_{R1}}{2A_{eq}} \text{ N/mm}^2 (\text{kgf/mm}^2, \text{psi})$$

p_d, c_s and c_m are as defined in [21.9].

C_{R1}, A_{eq} are as defined in [23.7].

23.13 Nozzle Scantlings

23.13.1 Nozzle Shell

The thickness of the nozzle shell plating, in mm (in.), is not to be less than the following:

$t = t_o + t_c$ mm (in.), but not to be taken less than 7.5 mm (0.3 in.)

where

t_o = $c_n \cdot S_p \cdot \sqrt{p} K_n$ mm (in.)

c_n = coefficient as indicated in [TABLE 9]

S_p = nozzle ring web spacing, in mm (in.)

p = design pressure as defined in [23.11]

t_c = corrosion allowance determined by [TABLE 10]

K_n = nozzle material factor as defined in [1.5]

23.13.2 Internal Diaphragm *(2024)*

Thickness of nozzle internal ring webs and diaphragms are not to be less than:

$t = t_o + t_c$,but not to be taken less than 7.5 mm (0.3 in.)

where

t_o = thickness obtained from the following formula:

= $c_n \cdot S_p \cdot \sqrt{p_d} K_n$ mm (in.)

c_n = 0.158 (p_d in N/mm^2), 0.495 (p_d in kgf/mm^2), 0.1032 (p_d in lbs/in^2)

S_p = spacing of ring webs, in mm (in.)

p_d = nozzle design pressure in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi):

p_d = $10^{-6} \cdot c \cdot \epsilon \cdot \left(\frac{N}{A_p}\right)$ N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, lbs/in^2)(psi)

t_c = corrosion allowance determined by [TABLE 10] 3-2-14/Table 10

K_n = nozzle material factor as defined in [1.5]

c = 5 (p_d in N/mm^2), 0.51 (p_d in kgf/mm^2), 5810 (p_d in lbs/in^2)

ϵ = 21-0.02(N/A_p) (p_d in N/mm^2), 21-0.02(N/A_p) (p_d in kgf/mm^2), 21-0.16(N/A_p) (p_d in lbs/in^2), but not to be taken less than 10

N = maximum shaft power, in kW (hp)

A_p = propeller disc area

= $D^2 \frac{\pi}{4}$, in m^2 (ft^2)

D = propeller diameter, in m (ft)

23.15 Steering Tube *(2020)*

The steering tube of the azimuthal thruster is to have scantlings of at least the same strength against bending moment and shear force as an equivalent stock with diameter calculated in accordance with [7] .

where

Q_R is replaced by the design torque as defined in [23.9]

K_s is replaced by material factor of the steering tube

M is the bending moment calculated at the section of the steering tube under consideration taking into account the Thruster Force in addition to the Design Force as defined in [23.7] .

23.17 Section Modulus *(2024)*

The section modulus of azimuthal thruster nozzle is not to be less than obtained from the following formula:

$$SM = 1.1\left(d^2bV_d^2Q\right)\text{cm}^3 SM = 0.00187\left(d^2bV_d^2Q\right)\text{in}^3$$

where

d = nozzle inner diameter, m (ft)

b = nozzle length, m (ft)

V_d = design speed in ahead condition, in knots, as defined in [3.1]

Q = reduction factor conditional on material type

= 1.0 for ordinary strength steel

= 0.78 for H32 strength steel

= 0.72 for H36 strength steel

= 0.68 for H40 strength steel

Commentary:

Q factor for steel having yield strength other than the above will be specially considered by ABS.

End of Commentary

23.19 Thruster Nozzle Top Connections *(2024)*

The structure where nozzle top and the steering tube are connected is to comply with the following requirements as applicable.

23.19.1 Welded Connection

Refer to [23.25.2] .

23.19.2 Bolted Connection *(2024)*

The following are to be complied with:

i) Flange couplings are to be supported by an ample body of metal worked out from both sides, which provide the structural continuity to bear the anticipated loads. The arrangement of the flange and couplings is to be in accordance with a recognized standard. Otherwise, a stress analysis is to be submitted to verify that the stress level within the flanges is not greater than 80% of the yield strength.

ii) Flange thickness is to comply with [9.3.2] or [9.5.2] , as applicable.

iii) The coupling bolts are to be fitted bolts and are to meet the scantling requirements specified in [9.3.1] or [9.5.1] , as applicable. Alternatively, a combination of holding down bolts together with shear elements may be considered, provided the holding down capacity and shearing capacity is equivalent to that of fitted bolts.

iv) Effective means are to be fitted for locking the nuts in place.

v) The smallest distance from the edge of the bolt holes to the edge of the flange is not to be less than two-thirds of the bolt diameter.

23.21 Nozzle Strut

23.21.1 General

i) Structural transitions of struts connected to nozzle and propeller housings are to avoid abrupt changes and the fillet radius is not to be less than 75 mm (3 in.) unless the stress in the radius area is verified to be acceptable by direct analysis.

ii) The width and thickness of strut plating are to have a gradual transition for smooth load carrying.

iii) Material properties of the nozzle strut and the structure components it is in direct contact with are to be compatible [see [1.3iii.])].

23.21.2 Plate Thickness

The minimum plate thickness of the strut is not to be less than obtained from the following:

$$t = \sqrt{\frac{3F_{eqv}L_{eqv}}{2b_{avg}\sigma_F}}$$ mm (in.), but not to be taken less than 7.5 mm (0.3 in.)

where

F_{eqv} = equivalent load perpendicular to strut applied at ½ L, in kN (tf, Ltf)

= pA_{eqv}, where α is greater than 15° [see [FIGURE11] (b)]

= W_p weight of transmission shaft, gear, and bearings, in kN (tf, Ltf), where α is less than or equal to 15° [see [FIGURE11] (c)]

A_{eqv} = equivalent area of nozzle supporting strut, in m^2 (ft^2)

= $L_1 b_{avg}$, as illustrated in [FIGURE11] (b)

= $L_2 b_{avg}$, as illustrated in [FIGURE11] (c)

L_{eqv} = equivalent length of nozzle supporting strut, in m (ft)

= L_1, as illustrated in [FIGURE11] (b)

= L_2, as illustrated in [FIGURE11] (c)

b_{avg} = average width of nozzle strut plate, in m (ft)

σ_F = minimum yield stress of the local material, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)

p is as defined in [23.11] .

23.23 Direct Analysis

Direct calculations may be accepted in lieu of applying prescriptive formulas presented in [3-2-14/23.7 to 3-2-14/23.21] , provided that the following are complied with and satisfied:

23.23.1 Additional Information to Submit

Where the design is based on direct calculations such as FEM, the full analysis is to be submitted for review including:

i) Software used;

ii) FE model;

iii) Loading conditions and load cases including but not limited to normal, heavy duty, and crash stop;

iv) Applied loads and boundary conditions;

v) Stress and deflection results, and

vi) Any other data and information associated with the analysis;

23.23.2 Acceptance Criteria

The results of analysis are to verify the following:

i) The maximum nominal stress does not exceed 50% of the yield strength. For the crash stop load case, the maximum local stress in the nozzle and its connection does not exceed 80% of the yield strength;

ii) The relative radial displacement, s_{rel}, between nozzle inner shell and propeller tip does not exceed the following:
$s_{rel} = 0.1 s_{cl}$ mm (in.)
where

s_{cl} = design clearance (the smallest distance) between nozzle inner shell and propeller tip without any loads applied

23.25 Welding and Nondestructive Testing *(2025)*

The following general requirements are to be complied with:

i) Welding on azimuthal thruster is to be in accordance with Section [2-4-1] of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)* and Section 3-2-19 as applicable.

ii) The required extent of NDT is to be indicated on the drawings and plans.

iii) NDT is to be performed in accordance with the ABS *Requirements for Nondestructive Testing* where applicable and any additional requirements specified by the manufacturer.

23.25.1 Nozzle Welding

i) Integrated nozzle welding details are to comply with 3-2-13/9.7.

ii) Volumetric and surface examination are to be performed on weldments of the inner and outer shell plating, as well as the internal ring web welds as appropriate.

23.25.2 Connection Welding *(2024)*

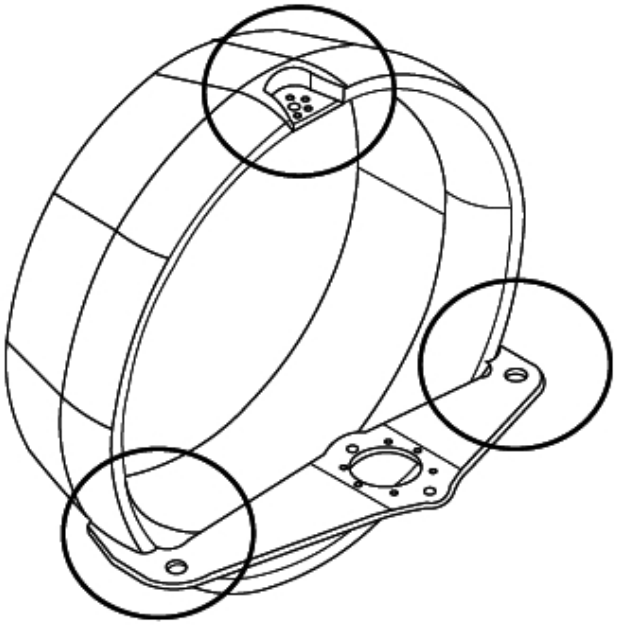
Where the connections between the nozzle and hull/steering tube, strut and nozzle/propeller housing are welded (see 3-2-14/Figure 11A and [FIGURE11]), the following requirements are to be complied with:

i) Scantlings of the welded connection and welding type/size are to be specially considered and detailed stress analysis may be required to be submitted.

ii) Welding at the portion of the thruster assembly that penetrates the hull is to be of full penetration and in accordance with Section [2-4-1] of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)* and Section 3-2-19, as applicable.

iii) Volumetric or surface examination is to be performed on the welds of brackets and the shell penetration.

FIGURE 11A
Example of Azimuthal Thruster Welded Connections *(2024)*



25 Azimuthing Pod

25.1 General *(2024)*

The requirements of [25] apply to the scantlings of the hull supports, strut, pod body, and pod fin if present. The requirements for steering unit, bearings, and other mechanical and electrical parts are provided in Part 4.

A general illustration of azimuthing pod unit is given in [FIGURE 12], which consists of the following parts:

i) Slewing ring

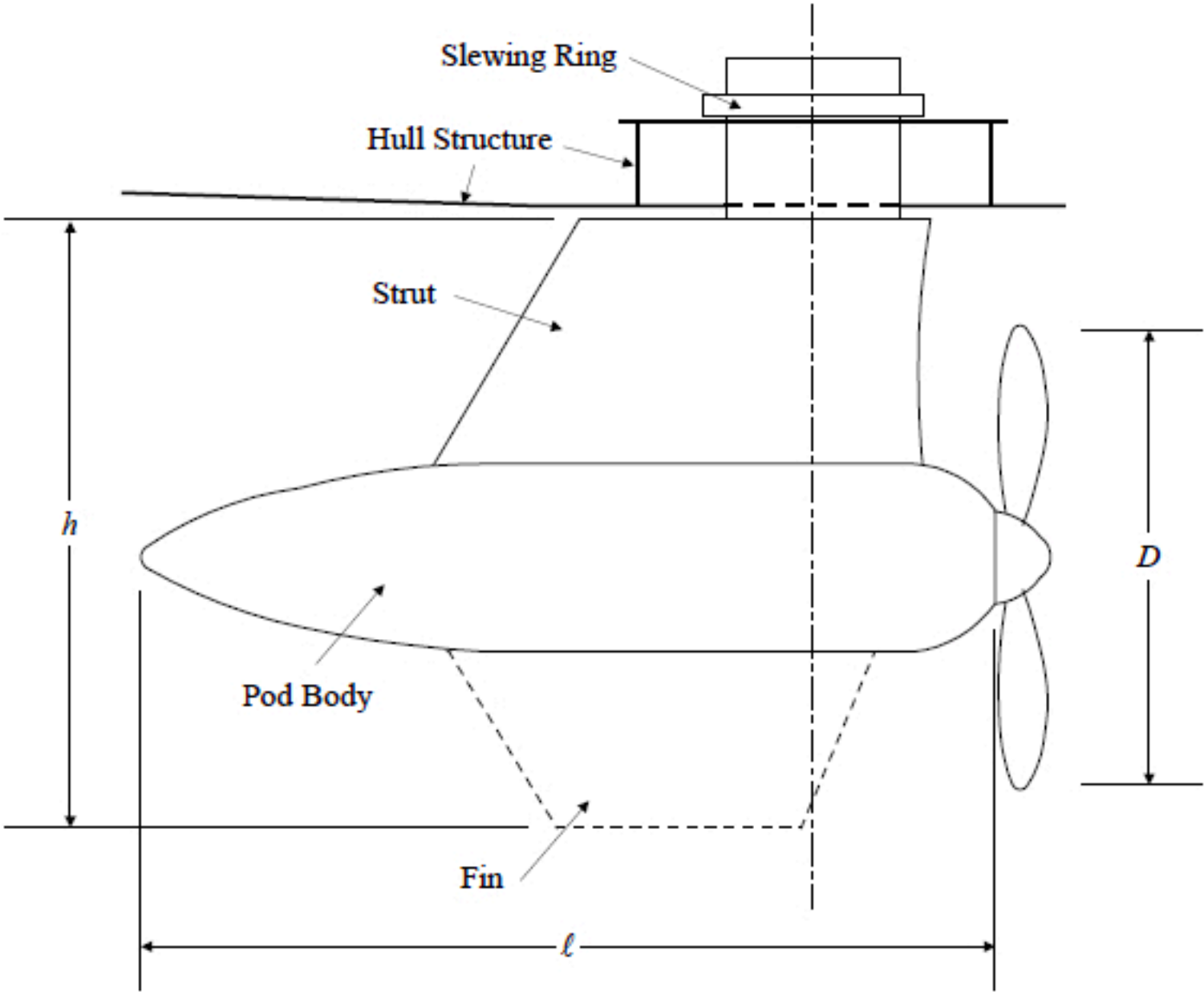
ii) Hull supporting structure

iii) Strut

iv) Pod body

v) Fin (if present)

FIGURE 12
Pod Propulsion Unit



25.3 Application Scope *(2024)*

Requirements hereafter apply to azimuthing pod units possessing the following characteristics:

i) Azimuthing pods powered by electric propulsion motors.

ii) Maximum operating angle at the design speed is not greater than 35° on each side

Azimuthing pods provided on Ice Classed vessels are subject to additional requirements specified in Part 6, Chapter 1, as applicable.

Azimuthing pods with features and specifications outside of the application scope are subject to special considerations with all supporting documents and calculations submitted to ABS for review. Plans and documents specified in [25.5] are to be submitted to ABS in the early design stage.

25.5 Plans and Documents

The following plans and documents are to be submitted to ABS:

i) System description including a block diagram showing how the various components are functionally related

ii) Ship's maneuvering capability in the specified operating conditions

iii) Material grades, chemical and mechanical properties and welding specifications

iv) Nondestructive Testing (NDT) procedures for propulsion shaft, slewing ring bearings, gears, and couplings

v) Arrangement and scantlings in way of the pod unit and the hull supporting structure integration with the maximum loads on the structure marked

vi) Arrangements and scantlings of strut, pod body, fin (if present), and bearing mounting, also showing internal structures and assembly

vii) Drawings of detailed structural connection between structural components (i.e., bolted connections)

viii) Design loads for azimuthing pod, hull supporting structure, and propeller under all the specified design operating conditions

ix) Rated power, revolutions, and thrust

x) Power transmitted at the maximum torque condition

xi) Vibration analysis covering all operating speeds as specified in 4-3-8/1.7.3

xii) Maximum transient thrust, torque and other forces and moments experienced during all foreseeable operating modes permitted by the steering and propulsor drive control systems

xiii) Details of steering securing/locking (as specified in [25.9]) and details of propeller shaft

xiv) Drawings of bearing arrangements with calculations of maximum bearing pressure and bearing lifetime calculation

xv) Manufacturer’s limits on the seating flatness of the slewing ring

xvi) Thruster force calculations and predicted polar plots

xvii) Calculations of maximum hydrodynamic response to ship motions and accelerations, slamming, and pod/hull interaction for all the anticipated seagoing and operating conditions

xviii) Design loads for both the pod structure and propeller together with podded propulsion unit design operating modes

xix) The maximum anticipated loads calculated according to [25.11]

xx) Fatigue analysis for local structure connections may be required

xxi) Supporting calculations for the interface between the hull structure and the podded propulsion unit (a finite element calculation would be considered an appropriate method)

xxii) Drawings of access and closing arrangements for pod unit inspection and maintenance

Note: For specific requirements of machinery components, refer to Part 4 as applicable

25.7 Material Requirements *(2023)*

Azimuthing pod units are to be of steels manufactured, tested, and certificated in accordance with ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)* and [23.25] , as applicable.

Steels of specified tensile strength greater than 1040 N/mm^2 (106.1 kgf/mm^2,150,839 psi) or hardness of greater than 34 HRC are not to be used for pod fasteners at risk of coming in contacting with seawater.

Material factors for local structures/components are to be obtained according to 3-2-14/1.3.iv).

The Surveyor need not witness material tests for holding down bolts used for the attachment of the slewing ring to the hull supporting structure (slewing ring seating), coupling bolts used for joining sections of struts, and for bolts attaching the strut to the slewing bearing.The surface of the strut in way of bearings that are exposed to seawater is to be of corrosion-resistant material. Dissimilar metallic parts and components in direct contact are to be protected from galvanic corrosion. Details of the corrosion protection arrangements are to be submitted for review.

25.9 Locking Device

A locking device is to be provided and designed to meet the following:

i) To immeditaely prevent azimuthing pod from rotating beyond 35 degrees or the manufacturer's declared steering angle limit, whichever is smaller, in the event of steering system control failure during any operating mode

ii) To prevent azimuthing pod from rotating toward undesired directions in the event of accident or damage

iii) To keep each pod unit's slewing mechanism in its center (neutral) position in the event of steering system failure where more than one pod units are installed

iv) To keep the pod in position at the vessel's maneuvering speed of not less than 7 knots

25.11 Direct Analysis

The scantlings of the azimuth propulsion system and the associated hull supports are to be determined by the maximum pressure and loads obtained through direct calculations. The maximum anticipated service loads are to be determined by recognized acceptable methods, which include at least the following:

i) Gravity and buoyancy

ii) Forces of lift, drag, and thrust

iii) Maximum combined heave and pitch motions in way of hull and azimuthing pod interface

iv) Pod operates at maximum angle on each side while the ship travels at design speed

v) Maximum loads calculated for the crash stop obtained through a 180° rotation of the pod.

vi) Maximum loads calculated for the possible orientations of the system greater than the maximum angle at the relevant speed

vii) Any maneuvering conditions that are likely to give rise to high mean or vibratory loadings induced by the podded propulsion unit.

viii) Stern slamming pressure at speeds of 0 and 5 knots for all wave heights, following sea to beam sea.

ix) Rapid acceleration and deceleration maneuvers demands per the ship's operating manual.

x) Vessel travelling ahead on a steady course under design oceangoing conditions while the azimuthing pod operates at its the maximum rated output.

Hydrodynamic analysis is to be carried out such that the structural response under the most severe load combination does not exceed the normal operational requirements of the propulsion or steering system.

Finite element analysis is to be carried out to evaluate the structural design. The FE model developed for use with the stress criteria in [TABLE 11] is to be discussed and agreed upon with ABS before the analysis is commenced.

25.13 Direct Analysis Strength Criteria

The maximum stress on the strut, pod body, and hull structure obtained from the direct analysis according to [25.11] is to satisfy the strength checking criteria described in 3-2-14/25.13 TABLE 11.

Structure components showing localized stress concentration that is greater than the allowable stress indicated in 3-2-14/25.13 TABLE 11 may be accepted on a case by case basis, depending on the location and scale of the localized stress, as well as the type of analysis or modeling criteria used.

TABLE 11
Permissible Stress Level

Operating Condition	*Flow Angle*	*% of Material Yield Strength* σ_F (2)
Normal	±5°	40
Heavy Duty	±15°	60
Sea Trial	Note 1	80
Crash/Accidental Load	0	90

Notes:

1 The smaller one of ±35° or the manufacturer's declared steering angle limit. See also 4-3-4/21.7.

2 σ_F = minimum specified yield strength of local material

25.15 Additional Requirements

The following verifications may be required by ABS on a case-by-case basis. Such a possible case where higher strength material is used so that plate thickness, structure stiffness, and connection wellness may be further verified.

25.15.1 Pod Strut

The pod strut is to have scantlings that meet the following requirements. Similar requirements also apply to the scantlings for pod fin, as applicable.

25.15.1(a) Strut Shell Plating. The plating thickness is not to be less than obtained from the following:

$$t = 0.0055 s \beta \sqrt{k_1 d_{max} + k_2 p_{max}} \times \sqrt{K} + k_3 \text{ mm (in.)}$$

where

s = smaller unsupported dimension of plating, in mm (in.)

β = $\sqrt{1.1 - 0.5\,(s/b)^2}$ maximum 1.0 for $b/s \geq 2.5$

b = greater unsupported dimension of plating, in mm (in.)

k_1 = 1.0 (1.0, 0.305)

k_2 = 0.1 (0.981, 10.7)

k_3 = 2.5 (2.5, 0.1)

d_{max} = vessel's maximum permissible draft in m (ft), but not be taken less than 6.1 m (20 ft)

p_{max} = maximum pressure obtained from direct calculation, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)

K = plating material factor as defined in [1.3], as applicable

= 1.0 for ordinary strength steel plate

25.15.1(b) Strut Strength. Strut section modulus and web area are to be such that stresses indicated in [25.13], as applicable, are not exceeded.

25.15.1(c) Strut Diaphragm. Strut internal diaphragms are to be fitted such that:

i) Vertical and horizontal diaphragms of strut are to be effectively attached to each other and to the shell plating. In addition, the vertical diaphragms are to be spaced approximately 1.5 times the spacing of horizontal diaphragms.

ii) The thickness of strut internal diaphragm is not to be less than 70% of the required shell plate thickness or 8 mm (0.31 in.), whichever is greater.

iii) Openings in strut diaphragms are not to exceed one half their depths.

iv) Where diaphragms are inaccessible for welding, they are to be fitted with flat bars connecting to the side plating by continuous welds or by 75 mm (3 in.) slot welds spaced at 150 mm (6 in.) centers. The slots are to be fillet welded around the edges and filled with a suitable compound.

25.15.2 Pod Body

The minimum scantlings of the pod structure are not to be less than obtained from the following.

25.15.2(a) Pod Shell Plating. The shell plate thickness of the pod body is not to be less than the greatest indicated below:

t_1 = $2.7r\sqrt{k_1 d_{max} + k_2 p_{max}} \times \sqrt{K} + k_3$ mm (in.), or

t_2 = $sk_0\frac{\sqrt{(Kh)}}{c_f} + t_o$ mm (in.), or

t_3 = 6.5 (0.25) mm (in.), or

t_4 = $s/150 + t_o$ mm (in.)

where

r = mean radius of pod body

k_0 = $(3.075\sqrt{\alpha} - 2.077)/(\alpha + 0.272)$ for $1 \le \alpha \le 2$

= 1.0 for $\alpha > 2$

α = aspect ratio of the panel (longer edge/shorter edge)

h = distances, in m (ft), from the lower edge of the plate to the summer load line;

c_f = 254 (460)

t_o = 2.5 (0.1)

k_1, k_2, k_3, d, p_{max}, K as defined in [25.15.1(a)].

25.15.2(b) Pod Webs. The thickness of primary webs is not to be less than 70% of the adjacent shell plating or 10 mm, whichever is the greater.

25.15.2(c) Pod Stiffeners. The properties of the secondary stiffening are not to be less than obtained from the following formula:

$$SM = 7.8hs\ell^2Q\text{cm}^3 SM = 0.0041hs\ell^2Q\text{in}^3$$

where

s = spacing of the stiffeners, in m (ft)

h = the maximum of the following values in, m (ft)

dmax as defined in [25.15.1]

for vessels under 90 m (295 ft) in length vertical distance, in m (ft), from the stiffener to the freeboard deck at side, but not less than 0.02L + 0.46 m (0.02L + 1.5 ft)

for vessels of 90 m (295 ft) and above 0.75 times the vertical distance, in m (ft), from the stiffener to the bulkhead or freeboard deck, but not less than 0.5Ds

ℓ = unsupported span, in m (in.).

Q = reduction factor conditional on material type

= 1.0 for ordinary strength steel

= 0.78 for H32 strength steel

= 0.72 for H36 strength steel

= 0.68 for H40 strength steel

Commentary:

Q factor for steel having yield strength other than the above will be specially considered by ABS.

End of Commentary

Commentary:

In lieu of prescriptive requirements provided in 3-2-14/25.15.2(c), consideration can be given to direct calculations / FEM analysis developed by the manufacturer in accordance with 3-2-2/20.

End of Commentary

25.15.3 Hull Support *(2024)*

Hull supporting structure, as illustrated in [FIGURE13], in way of azimuthing pod unit is to comply with the following:

i) Hull girders connecting the slewing ring and the ordinary hull girders and floors are to be radially arranged for even transmission of loads and moments from the pod to the rest of the hull structure without unwarranted deflection.

ii) Hull seating for the slew ring is to be sufficiently stiffened so that the flexure is within the manufacturer's specifications for the bearing.

iii) The minimum thickness for the girders of hull support is to be not less than:

$t = 0.85\,(0.056L + 5.5)$ mm$t = 0.85\,(0.00067L + 0.22)$ in.

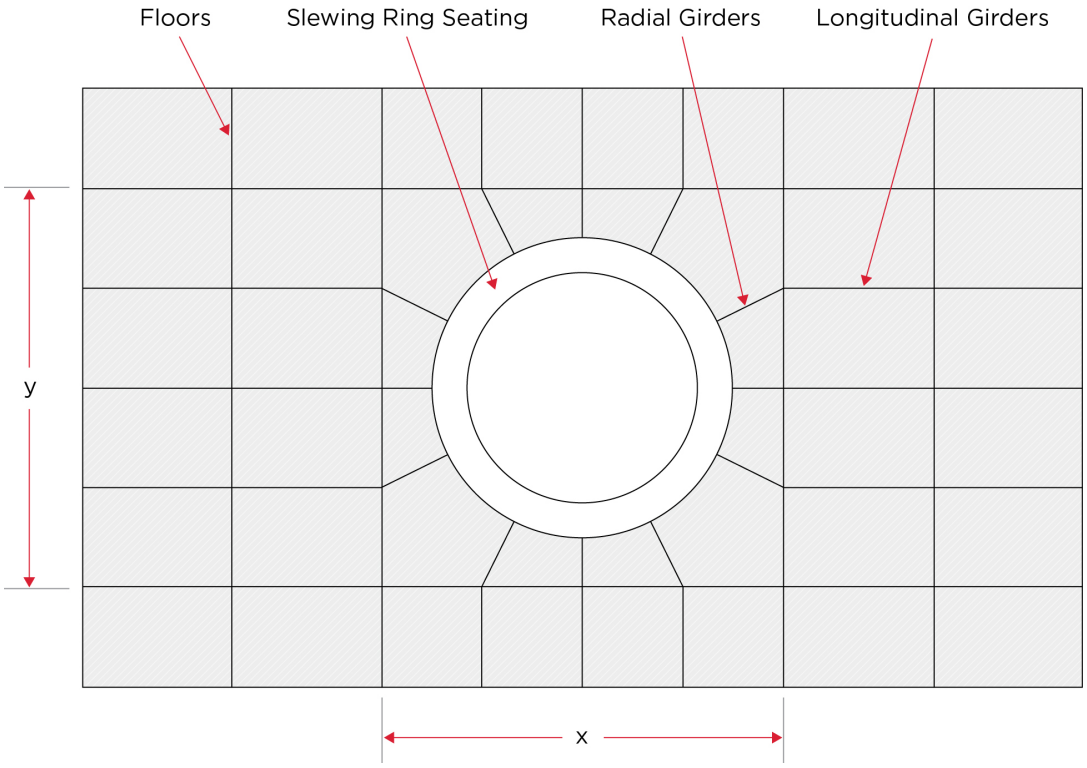
where

L = length of vessel, in m (ft), as defined in 3-1-1/3.1

iv) Plate buckling of hull primary support members is to below the ideal elastic deformation limit of the material

v) Shell plating thickness in way of hull primary support structure is to be at least 50% thicker than as required for the adjacent shell plating.

FIGURE 13
Hull Supporting Structure



25.15.4 Slewing Bearing

Calculations of bearing stress are to be submitted for review and the equivalent stresses are to be lower than 80% of the yield strength of the bearing ring seating.

25.15.5 Connections *(2023)*

For an azimuthing pod fitted with a nozzle as illustrated in [FIGURE11] (c), the connections are to be evaluated according to [23.19.1] and/or [23.19.2] , as applicable.

Stress calculations for the connection of the nozzle to the hull or pod body are to be submitted for review, and the equivalent stresses are to be lower than 80% of the yield strength of the bearing ring seating.

The flange connection of propeller nozzle with pod body or hull is to comply with the following:

i) The attachments (base) of flange connection are to be supported by an ample body of metal worked out from both parts that are to be coupled together.

ii) The smallest distance from the edge of the bolt holes to the edge of the flange is not to be less than two-thirds of the bolt diameter.

iii) Coupling bolts are to be fitted bolts. Alternatively, a combination of holding down bolts together with shear elements may be considered, provided the holding down capacity and shearing capacity is equivalent to that of fitted bolts.

iv) The nuts are to be effectively locked in place.

25.15.6 Pod Web

The thickness of primary webs is not to be less than 70% of the adjacent shell plating or 10 mm (0.4 in.), whichever is the greater.

25.17 Structural Transition

The structural transitions of azimuthing pods are to avoid abrupt changes as much as practical. Structural transitions are to be smooth and gradual in way of the:

i) Strut from upper mounting with steering unit to the lower section

ii) Connection of strut and pod body with fillet radius not less than 75 mm (3 in.)

25.19 Service Accessibility

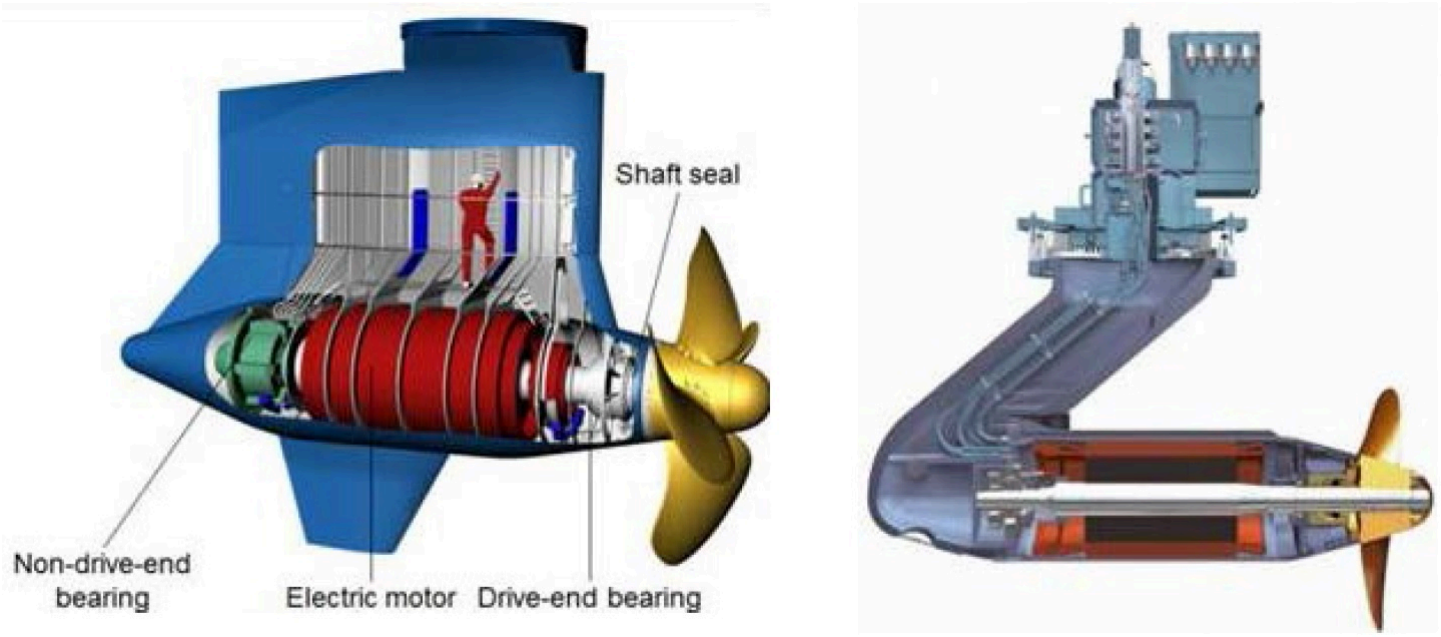
Azimuthing pod internal structures and parts including webs, frames, shafts, bearings, and seal arrangements are to be accessible for surveys and examinations in accordance with Section 3-7-1 as applicable. The design is to provide means for internal inspection as indicated in the following:

i) For units, as illustrated in [FIGURE 14] (a) and alike, the internal structure and components are such as to allow direct access for survey and examination, or

ii) For compact version of azimuthing pods, as illustrated in [FIGURE 14] (b) and alike, the unit is designed to be readily removable for survey or to have a sufficient number of access openings for boroscopic internal inspection.

Where the design of the service access arrangement is different from those indicated in *i*) and *ii)* above, it is subject to special consideration.

FIGURE 14
Azimuthing Pod Internal Structure Access



(a) (b)

25.21 Air and Drainage Escape

Limber and air holes are to be cut in all parts of pod internal structure as required for drainage, free flow to the section pipes and the escape of air to vents.

25.23 Watertightness

Azimuthing pods are to be of watertight and are to be tested in accordance with 3-7-1/3.5.7 TABLE 1, as applicable.

25.25 Welding Requirements

Welding is to be in accordance with Section [2-4-1] of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)* and Section 3-2-19.

Where inaccessible for welding inside the pod, webs, frames, and diaphragms are to be fitted with flat bars and the side plating is to be connected to these flat bars by continuous welds or by 75 mm (3 in.) slot welds spaced at 150 mm (6 in.) centers. The slots are to be fillet welded around the edges and filled with a suitable compound.

SECTION 15
Protection of Deck Openings

1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1 Goals

Vessels covered in this section are to be designed, constructed, operated and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goal*
STRU 1	in the intact condition, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU 3	Provide protection to persons onboard, the environment and required safety services.
STRU 3.1	maintain mechanical properties during extreme temperatures.
STAB 1	have adequate watertight integrity and restoring energy to prevent capsize in an intact condition.
STAB 2	have adequate subdivision and stability to provide survivability to damage or accidental conditions.

1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above stated goals, the design, construction, installation, and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Structure (STRU)	
STRU-FR1	Adequate longitudinal strength is to be provided to resist bending moments and shear forces associated with vessel loading and wave loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU-FR2	Scantlings are to have sufficient strength to resist failure and excessive deformation associated with buckling and yielding when subjected to the loads throughout the service life, such as external sea loads, cargo loads, and ballast water loads.

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
STRU-FR3	The structure is to be of sufficient strength to prevent fatigue damage throughout the anticipated design life.
Stability (STAB)	
STAB-FR1	Suitable tightness of tanks is to be provided.
STAB-FR2	Suitable means are to be provided to protect deck openings to maintain the vessel with adequate stability and buoyancy in intact and damage conditions.

1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

2 General *(2024)*

All openings in decks are to be framed to provide efficient support and attachment to the ends of the half beams. The following requirements relate to vessels having minimum freeboards. For decks above the first deck above the freeboard deck (second and higher tiers above the freeboard deck), the heights of the coamings and the effectiveness of the closing arrangements may be modified. The arrangements and details for all hatchways are to be submitted for approval.

The protection of deck openings is to be provided in accordance with this section. The applicable requirements are listed in the table below for each type of protection of deck openings.

TABLE 1A
Protection of Deck Openings - Application Scope
(2024)

Type of Protection for Deck Openings	*Applicable Requirements*
Cargo hatchways closed by covers fitted with gaskets and clamping devices for ships except bulk carriers, self-unloading bulk carriers, ore carriers and combination carriers	3-2-15/9
Cargo hatchways on position 1 closed by covers of steel fitted with gaskets and clamping devices for non-CSR bulk carriers, self-unloading bulk carriers, ore carriers and combination carriers	5C-3-4/19 or 5C-4-2/13 as applicable
Hatchways closed by covers of steel and fitted with gaskets and clamping devices for spaces other than cargo holds	3-2-15/10 for covers; 3-2-15/5 for coamings
Hatchways closed by covers of aluminum and fitted with gaskets and clamping devices for spaces other than cargo holds	3-2-15/7 for covers; 3-2-15/5 for coamings
Hatchways closed by portable pontoon covers made of steel and secured weathertight by tarpaulins and battening devices	3-2-15/8 except 3-2-15/8.3 and 3-2-15/8.5 for covers and securing devices; 3-2-15/5 for coamings

Type of Protection for Deck Openings	*Applicable Requirements*
Hatchways closed by portable covers made of steel and secured weathertight by tarpaulins and battening devices	3-2-15/8 except 3-2-15/8.1.1 and 3-2-15/8.3 for covers and securing devices; 3-2-15/5 for coamings
Hatchways closed by portable covers made of wood and secured weathertight by tarpaulins and battening devices	3-2-15/8 except 3-2-15/8.1.1 and 3-2-15/8.5 for covers and securing devices; 3-2-15/5 for coamings
Small hatches on the exposed fore decks located within the forward 0.25*L*	3-2-15/5.1, 3-2-15/5.3 and 3-2-15/13
Hatchways without gaskets located on higher decks	3-2-15/11.1 and 3-2-15/9
Hatchways in lower decks or within fully enclosed structures	3-2-15/11.3 and 3-2-15/15.3
Machinery casings	3-2-15/19
Manholes and scuttles etc.in freeboard or superstructure decks	3-2-15/21
Chain pipe opening, mast opening	3-2-15/21

Note:
For external openings below damage waterline and internal openings in watertight divisions required by damage stability analysis, see [17] for subdivision requirements.

3 Positions and Design Pressures

3.1 Positions of Deck Openings

For the purpose of the Rules, two positions of deck openings are defined as follows.

Position 1 Upon exposed freeboard and raised quarter decks, and upon exposed superstructure decks situated forward of a point located $L_f/4$ from the forward end of L_f.

Position 2 Upon exposed superstructure decks situated abaft $L_f/4$ from the forward end of L_f and located at least one standard height of superstructure above the freeboard deck. Upon exposed superstructures decks situated forward of a point located $L_f/4$ from the forward end of L_f and located at least two standards heights of superstructure above the freeboard deck.

3.3 Vertical Weather Design Pressures

The design pressures are not to be taken as less than the following. Values at intermediate lengths are to be determined by interpolation. The design vertical weather pressures need not be combined with cargo loads specified in [9.9] and [9.11].

3.3.1 Cargo Hatch Covers in Position 1 *(2024)*

For ships of 100 m (328 ft) in length and above:

$p_V = p_0 + (p_{FP} - p_0)(0.25 - x/L_f)/0.25$ kN/m^2 (tf/m^2, Ltf/ft^2)

In no case is p_V to be less than p_0:

For a position 1 hatchway located at least one superstructure standard height higher than the freeboard deck:

$$\begin{aligned} p_V &= 34.3 \text{ kN/m}^2 \\ &= 3.5 \text{ tf/m}^2 \\ &= 0.32 \text{ Ltf/ft}^2 \end{aligned}$$

For ships less than 100 m (328 ft) in length:

$p_V = R\{15.8 + (L_f/N)[1 - (5/3)(x/L_f)] - 3.6x/L_f\}$ kN/m^2 (tf/m^2, Ltf/ft^2)

In no case is p_V to be less than:

$$\begin{aligned} p_V &= 1.2897(0.15L_f + 11.6) \text{ kN/m}^2 \\ &= 0.1316(0.15L_f + 11.6) \text{ tf/m}^2 \\ &= 0.0121(0.0457L_f + 11.6) \text{ Ltf/ft}^2 \end{aligned}$$

For a position 1 hatchway located at least one superstructure standard height higher than the freeboard deck:

$$\begin{aligned} p_V &= 1.2897(0.15L_f + 11.6) \text{ kN/m}^2 \\ &= 0.1316(0.15L_f + 11.6) \text{ tf/m}^2 \\ &= 0.0121(0.0457L_f + 11.6) \text{ Ltf/ft}^2 \end{aligned}$$

where

p_0 = 34.3 (3.5, 0.32) kN/m^2 (tf/m^2, Ltf/ft^2)

p_{FP} = pressure at the forward perpendicular

= $49.0 + a_V(L_f - 100)\text{kN/m}^2$ for L_f in meters

= $5 + a_V(L_f - 100)\text{tf/m}^2$ for L_f in meters

= $0.457 + a_V(L_f - 328)\text{Ltf-ft}^2$ for L_f in feet

a_V = 0.0726 (0.0074, 0.000206) kN/m^3 (tf/m^3, Ltf/ft^3), for type B freeboard ships

= 0.356 (0.0363, 0.00101) kN/m^3 (tf/m^3, Ltf/ft^3), for ships with reduced freeboard

L_f = freeboard length, in m (ft), as defined in 3-1-1/3.3, but is not to be taken as greater than 340 m (1115 ft)

x = distance, in m (ft), from the mid length of the hatch cover under examination to the forward end of L_f

R = 1.0 (0.102, 0.00932)

N = 3 (3, 9.84)

3.3.2 Cargo Hatch Covers in Position 2

Where vessel's L_f is 100 m (328 ft) and greater the design pressures are as follows:

p_V = 25.51 kN/m^2
= 2.6 tf/m^2
= 0.24 Ltf/ft^2

Upon exposed superstructure deck located at least one superstructure standard height higher than the lowest Position 2 deck:

p_V = 20.60 kN/m^2
= 2.1 tf/m^2
= 0.19 Ltf/ft^2

Where vessel's L_f is less than 100 m the design pressures are as follows:

p_V = $25.5–0.142(100–L_f)$ kN/m^2
= $2.6 – 0.0145(100–L_f)$ tf/m^2
= $0.238 – 0.00041(328–L_f)$ Ltf/ft^2

In [FIGURE 1] , the positions 1 and 2 are illustrated for an example ship. Where an increased freeboard is assigned, the design pressures for hatch covers on the actual freeboard deck may be as required for a superstructure deck, provided the summer freeboard is such that the resulting draft will not be greater than that corresponding to the minimum freeboard calculated from an assumed freeboard deck situated at a distance at least equal to the standard superstructure height h_N below the actual freeboard deck, see [FIGURE 2] .

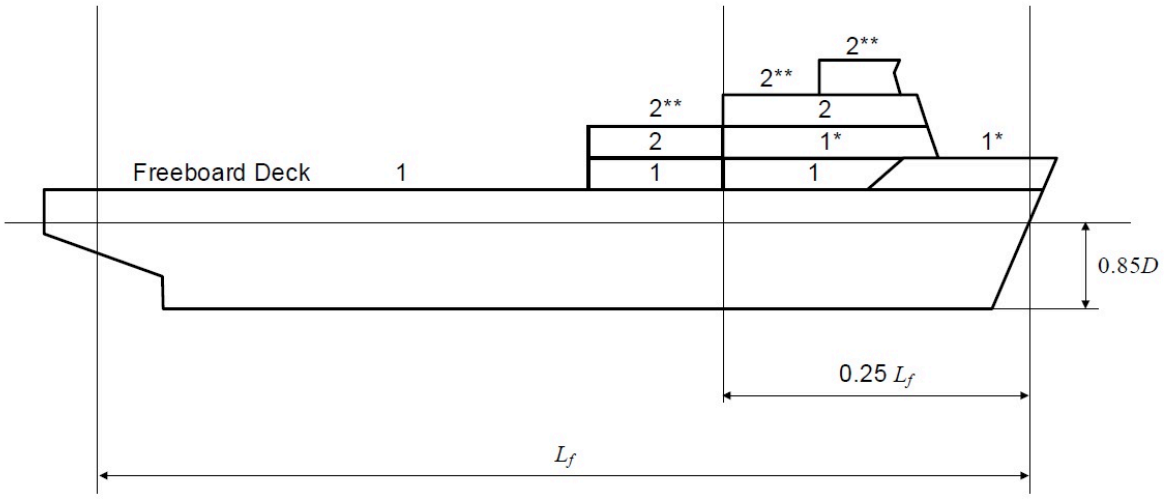
h_N = $(1.05 + 0.01L_f)$ m

where 1.8 m $\leq h_N \leq$ 2.3 m

h_N = $3.281(1.05 + 0.0031L_f)$ ft

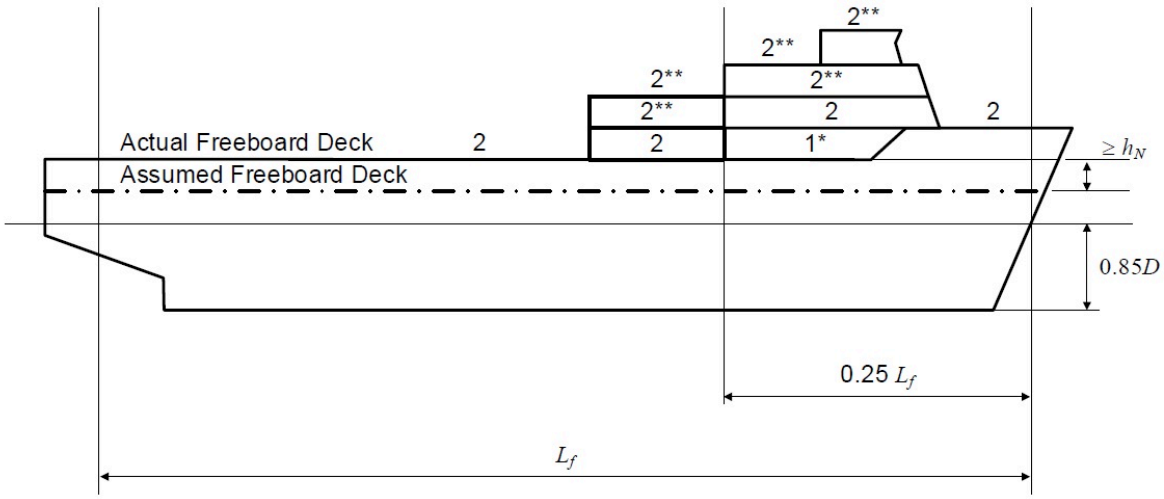
where 5.91 ft $\leq h_N \leq$ 7.55 ft

FIGURE 1
Positions 1 and 2



* reduced load upon exposed superstructure decks located at least one superstructure standard height above the freeboard deck
** reduced load upon exposed superstructure decks of vessels with L_f > 100m (328 ft) located at least one superstructure standard height above the lowest Position 2 deck

FIGURE 2
Positions 1 and 2 for an Increased Freeboard



* reduced load upon exposed superstructure decks located at least one superstructure standard height above the freeboard deck
** reduced load upon exposed superstructure decks of vessels with L_f > 100m (328 ft) located at least one superstructure standard height above the lowest Position 2 deck

3.5 Horizontal Design Pressures *(1 July 2018)*

The horizontal weather design pressure for determining the scantlings of outer edge girders (skirt plates) of weather deck hatch covers and of hatch coamings is:

$$p_H = a_H c_H R(b_H c_L f - z) \text{ kN/m}^2 \text{ (tf/m}^2\text{, Ltf/ft}^2\text{)}$$

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
f &= 0.04L + 4.1 && \text{for } L < 90 \text{ m} \\
&= 10.75 - \left(\frac{300 - L}{100}\right)^{1.5} && \text{for } 90 \text{ m} \le L < 300 \text{ m} \\
&= 10.75 && \text{for } 300 \text{ m} \le L < 350 \text{ m} \\
&= 10.75 - \left(\frac{L - 350}{150}\right)^{1.5} && \text{for } 350 \text{ m} \le L \le 500 \text{ m} \\
&= 0.0122L + 4.1 && \text{for } L < 295 \text{ ft} \\
&= 10.75 - \left(\frac{300 - 0.3048L}{100}\right)^{1.5} && \text{for } 295 \text{ ft} \le L < 984 \text{ ft} \\
&= 10.75 && \text{for } 984 \text{ ft} \le L < 1148 \text{ ft} \\
&= 10.75 - \left(\frac{0.3048L - 350}{150}\right)^{1.5} && \text{for } 1148 \text{ ft} \le L \le 1640 \text{ ft}
\end{aligned}
$$

c_L = $\sqrt{0.011L}$ for L < 90 m

= 1 for L ≥ 90 m

= $\sqrt{0.00336L}$ for L < 295 ft

= 1 for L ≥ 295 ft

b_H = $1.0 + \left(\frac{\frac{x'}{L} - 0.45}{C_b + 0.2}\right)^2$ for $\frac{x'}{L}$ < 0.45

= $1.0 + 1.5\left(\frac{\frac{x'}{L} - 0.45}{C_b + 0.2}\right)^2$ for $\frac{x'}{L}$ ≥ 0.45

a_H = $20 + \frac{e_H L_1}{12}$ for unprotected front coamings and hatch cover skirt plates

= $10 + \frac{e_H L_1}{12}$ for unprotected front coamings and hatch cover skirt plates, where the distance from the actual freeboard deck to the summer load line exceeds the minimum non-corrected tabular freeboard by at least one standard superstructure height h_N

= $5 + \frac{e_H L_1}{15}$ for side and protected front coamings and hatch cover skirt plates

= $7 + \frac{e_H L_1}{100} - 8 \cdot \frac{x'}{L}$ for aft ends of coamings and aft hatch cover skirt plates abaft amidships

= $5 + \frac{e_H L_1}{100} - 4 \cdot \frac{x'}{L}$ for aft ends of coamings and aft hatch cover skirt plates forward of amidships

L_1 = L, need not be taken greater than 300 m (984 ft)

C_b = block coefficient, as defined in 3-1-1/13.3, where $0.6 \le C_b \le 0.8$. When determining scantlings of aft ends of coamings and aft hatch cover skirt plates forward of amidships, C_b need not be taken less than 0.8.

x' = distance, in m (ft), between the transverse coaming or hatch cover skirt plate considered and aft end of the length L. When determining side coamings or side hatch cover skirt plates, the side is to be subdivided into parts of approximately equal length, not exceeding $0.15L$ each, and x' is to be taken as the distance between aft end of the length L and the center of each part considered.

z = vertical distance, in m (ft), from the summer load line to the midpoint of stiffener span, or to the middle of the plate field

c_H = $0.3 + 0.7\frac{b'}{B'}$, where b'/B' is not to be taken less than 0.25

b' = breadth of coaming, in m (ft), at the position considered

B' = actual maximum breadth of ship, in m (ft), on the exposed weather deck at the position considered.

e_H = 1 (1, 0.3048)

R = 1 (0.102, 0.0093) , as defined in [3.3.1]

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft)

The design load p_H is not to be taken less than the minimum values given in [TABLE 1] .

TABLE 1
Minimum Design Load p_H

L *in m (ft)*	p_H *in kN/m² (tf/m², Ltf/ft²) for*	
	Unprotected Fronts	*Elsewhere*
≤ 50 (164)	30 (3.06, 0.279)	15 (1.53, 0.139)
> 50 (164) < 250 (820)	$R\left(25+\frac{e_H L}{10}\right)$	$R\left(12.5+\frac{e_H L}{20}\right)$
≥ 250 (820)	50 (5.1, 0.465)	25 (2.55, 0.232)

The horizontal weather design load need not be included in the direct strength calculation of the hatch cover, unless it is utilized for the design of substructures of horizontal supports according to the requirements of [9.23.2(c)] .

5 Hatchway Coamings

5.1 Height of Coamings

The height of coamings of hatchways is to be at least:

600 mm (23.5 in.) if in Position 1

450 mm (17.5 in.) if in Position 2

Where hatch covers are made of steel or other equivalent material and made tight by means of gaskets and clamping devices, these heights may be reduced, or the coamings omitted entirely, provided that the safety of the vessel is not thereby impaired in any sea condition.

5.1.1 For Vessels Under 24 Meters (79 Feet) in Length *(2024)*

The heights above deck of coamings of hatchways secured weathertight by tarpaulins and battening devices are to be at least:

450 mm (17.5 in.) if in Position 1

300 mm (12.0 in.) if in Position 2

Where hatch covers are made of steel or other equivalent material and made tight by means of gaskets and clamping devices, these heights may be reduced or the coamings omitted entirely, provided that the safety of the vessel is not thereby impaired in any sea conditions. Sealing arrangements are to be weathertight if coaming is fitted, and watertight for flush covers.

Notes:

1 Coaming heights may be reduced on vessels which have freeboard in excess of the minimum geometric freeboard and/or a superstructure deck with height of deck in excess of the standard height of a superstructure.

2 The coaming height is to be not less than above, unless otherwise specifically requested by flag Administration.

5.3 Coaming Plates *(2022)*

Where [9] is not applicable, coaming plates, where installed, are not to be less in thickness than that obtained from the following equation:

$t = 0.05L + 7\text{mm} t = 0.0006L + 0.27\text{in.}$

where

t = thickness, in mm (in.)

L = length of vessel, in m (ft), as defined in 3-1-1/3, but need not exceed 76 m (250 ft)

5.5 Coaming Stiffening *(2024)*

Except as noted below or where [9] is not applicable, coaming stiffening is to comply with the following:

i) Horizontal stiffeners are to be fitted on coamings in Position 1 at not more than 254 mm (10 in.) below the upper edge of the coaming.*

ii) The breadth of the stiffener's web is not to be less than 175 mm (7 in.) and thickness to fulfill 3-1-2/13.5 requirements.*

iii) Brackets or stays are to be fitted from the horizontal stiffener to the deck at intervals not exceeding 3 m (10 ft).*

iv) All exposed coamings other than those in Position 1 and which are 760 mm (30 in.) or more in height are to be similarly supported.*

v) Where the height of any exposed coaming exceeds 915 mm (36 in.), the arrangement of the stiffeners and brackets or stays is to be so as to provide equivalent support and stiffness.*

vi) Where coamings are protected, the arrangement of the stiffeners and brackets or stays may be modified.

vii) Where chocks are provided on the coaming to limit the horizontal movement of the hatch cover, the strength of the coaming and deck structure is to be adequate to withstand the load on these chocks. Similar consideration is to be given to pads supporting any weights located on hatch covers, if applicable.

Note:

* Small hatches as specified in [13] need not comply with these requirements. (See the strength requirements for small hatches in [13.1])

5.5.1 Coaming Stiffening for Vessels Under 90 Meters (295 Feet) in Length *(2024)*

The requirements of 3-2-15/5.5 may be modified as follows:

i) Horizontal stiffeners are to be fitted on coamings 450 mm (17.5 in.) or greater in height. *

ii) The breadth of the stiffener's web is not to be less than that obtained from the following equation, but need not exceed 175 mm (7 in.):*
$b = 1.67L + 50\text{mm} b = 0.02L + 2\text{in.}$
where

b = breadth, in mm (in.)

L = length of vessel, in m (ft), as defined in 3-1-1/3

Commentary:

For small hatches such as access hatches, maintenance hatches, or engine room hatches, where vertical brackets or stays are not required to be provided, the horizontal stiffener required by 3-2-15/5.5 need not be fitted.

End of Commentary

5.7 Protection of Coaming Edges

Heavy convex moldings are to be fitted at the upper edges of all exposed coamings of hatches sealed by tarpaulins and battens, as protection against chafing as well as damage to the coaming. The lower edge of the coaming is to be flanged or provided with other suitable protection against damage unless the spaces served by the hatchway are intended exclusively for specialized cargoes such as containers.

5.9 Continuous Longitudinal Hatch Coamings *(2024)*

Where strength deck longitudinal hatch coamings of length greater than $0.14L$ are effectively supported by longitudinal bulkheads or deep girders as indicated in 3-2-1/9.9.1, they are in general to be longitudinally stiffened. The coaming thickness is to be not less than required by 3-2-3/5 TABLE 2, equation 2b, and the longitudinal stiffeners not less than required by 3-2-7/3.1 for strength deck longitudinal beams; where s is the spacing of the stiffeners, ℓ is the distance between coaming brackets and h is as given in column b of 3-2-7/3.1 TABLE 2. The coamings are also to comply with hull girder strength requirements in 3-2-1/9.9.1 and buckling requirements in 3-2-1/17 where applicable.

Commentary:

Where the hatch side coaming is extended beyond the hatchway and connected to the end bulkheads of superstructures or deckhouses, the connection may be subject to fatigue damage. It is recommended that an analysis be carried out in this area.

Where longitudinal stiffening of the coaming is impractical, the coaming may be vertically stiffened provided the coaming complies with the following:

- The coaming plate thickness should be not less than that required by 3-2-3/5 TABLE 2, equation 1b or [9.21] , whichever is greater.
- The coaming vertical stiffeners and stays should have a strength not lower than that required by [9.21] considering the actual boundary conditions of coaming stiffeners and stays.
- The coamings should comply with the hull grider strength requirements in 3-2-1/9.9.1 and buckling requirements in 3-2-1/17.

End of Commentary

7 Hatchways Closed by Covers of Aluminum and Fitted with Gaskets and Clamping Devices *(1 July 2018)*

7.1 Strength of Aluminum Covers *(2024)*

Explosion bonding is to be used for joining aluminum to steel. Such joints are to be protected to prevent galvanic corrosion. In addition, when one or both sides of aluminum to dissimilar metal joints are exposed to the weather, sea water or wet spaces, a minimum of 0.5 mm (0.02 in.) of plastic insulation shall be installed between faying surfaces and extend beyond the edge of the joint. Non-welded oil stops and stop waters are to be a plastic insulation tape or equivalent, which would provide a corrosion resistant system. Aluminum faying surfaces exposed to the weather, sea water or other corrosive environments are to be coated to minimize crevice corrosion in way of the faying surfaces.

Aluminum covers are not allowed on cargo decks. Where weathertight covers are of aluminum alloy, the maximum allowable stress, deflection and top plate thickness under the design loads calculated according to [3.3], are as follows:

- Maximum allowable stress — the product of the maximum stress thus calculated and the factor of 4.25 is not to exceed the minimum ultimate strength of the material.
- Maximum allowable deflection — 0.0028 times the span
- Top plate thickness — not less than $0.99Q_o$% of the spacing of stiffeners or $5.4Q_o$ mm ($0.22Q_o$ in.), if that be greater.

Q_o is the material factor as in 3-2-9/9.3.3, but is not to be taken less than 1.11

8 Hatchways Closed by Portable Covers and Secured Weathertight by Tarpaulins and Battening Devices

8.1 Pontoon Covers

8.1.1 Scantlings

Where steel pontoon covers are used in place of portable beams and covers, the maximum allowable stress and deflection under the design pressures in [3.3] , and the minimum required top plate thickness are as follows.

Maximum allowable stress	$0.68Y$
Maximum allowable deflection	0.0044 times the span
Top plate thickness	$0.01s$, but not less than 6 mm (0.24 in.)

where

Y = specified minimum upper yield point strength of the materials, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)

s = stiffener spacing

Covers are to be assumed to be simply supported.

Where the cross section of hatch cover stiffeners is not constant along the span,Appendix 3-2-A6 may be used to determine required scantlings.

8.1.2 Cleats

Cleats are to be set to fit the taper of the wedges. They are to be at least 65 mm (2.5 in.) wide and spaced not more than 600 mm (23.5 in.) center to center. The cleats along each side or end are to be not more than 150 mm (6 in.) from the hatch corners.

8.1.3 Wedges *(2024)*

Wedges are to be of tough wood or other equivalent material; they are to have a taper of not more than 1 in 6 and are to be not less than 13.0 mm (0.50 in.) thick at the toes.

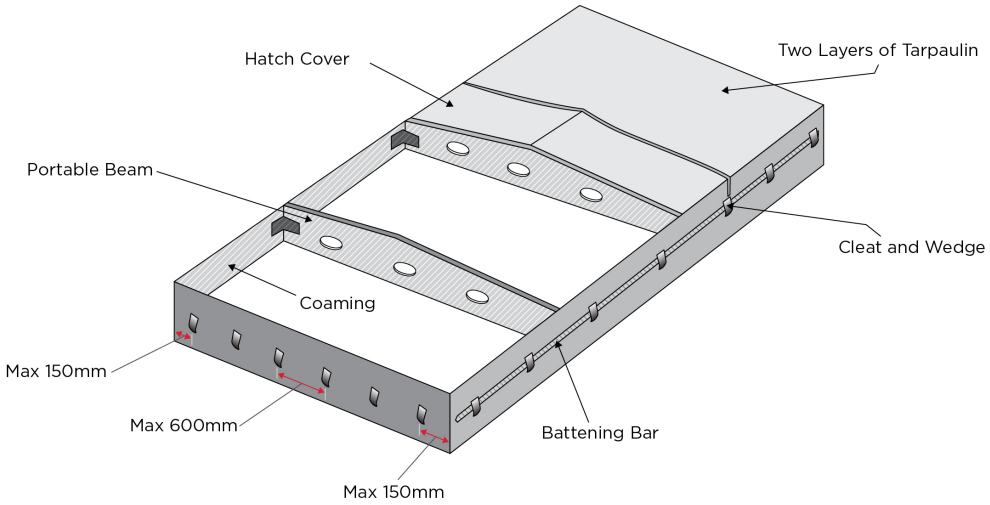
8.1.4 Battening Bars

Battening bars are to be provided for properly securing the tarpaulins; they are to have a width of 64 mm (2.5 in.) and a thickness of not less than 9.5 mm (0.375 in.).

8.1.5 Tarpaulins *(2024)*

At least two layers of tarpaulins thoroughly waterproofed and of ample strength are to be provided for each exposed hatchway. See the figure below. The material is to be guaranteed free from jute and is to be of an approved type. Synthetic fabrics which have been demonstrated to be equivalent will be subject to ABS assessment and approval.

FIGURE 2A
Hatchways Secured Weathertight by Tarpaulins *(2024)*



8.1.6 Security of Hatch Covers *(2024)*

For all hatchways in Position 1 or 2, steel bars or other equivalent means are to be provided in order to efficiently and independently secure each section of hatch covers after the tarpaulins are battened down. Hatch covers of more than 1.5 m (4.9 ft) in length are to be secured by at least two such securing appliances.

Commentary:

See IACS Unified Interpretation LL40 Rev.2 for equivalent means to steel bars and protection of tarpaulins from damage by securing devices.

End of Commentary

8.3 Wood Hatch Covers

8.3.1 Hatch Boards

Wood hatch covers on exposed hatchways are to have a finished thickness not less than 60 mm (2.375 in.), where the span is not more than 1.5 m (4.9 ft). The wood is to be of satisfactory quality,

straight-grained, reasonably free from knots, sap and shakes, and is to be examined before being coated. Hatch rests are to be beveled where necessary, so as to provide a solid bearing surface.

8.3.2 Portable Beams

Where portable beams for supporting wood hatch boards are made of steel, the maximum allowable stress and deflection under the design loads in [3.3] are as follows.

Maximum allowable stress	$0.68Y$
Maximum allowable deflection	0.0044 times the span

where Y is as defined in [8.1.1].

Where the cross section of portable beams is not constant along the span, Appendix 3-2-A6 may be used to determine required beam scantlings.

8.3.3 Closing/Securing Arrangements

Closing arrangements are to be in accordance with [8.1.2] through [8.1.6].

8.3.4 Carriers and Sockets

Carriers or sockets for portable beams are to be of substantial construction, and are to provide means for the efficient fitting and securing of the beams. Where rolling types of beams are used, the arrangements are to ensure that the beams remain properly in position when the hatchway is closed. The bearing surface is not to be less than 75 mm (3 in.) in width measured along the axis of the beam unless the carriers are of an interlocking type with the beam ends. Carriers for beams are to extend to the deck level or the coamings are to be fitted with stiffeners or external brackets in way of each beam.

8.5 Steel Hatch Covers

8.5.1 Scantlings

Where steel hatch covers are fitted on portable beams in place of wooden hatch boards, the maximum allowable stress and deflection under the design loads in [3.3] are as follows.

Maximum allowable stress	$0.8Y$, and not exceed the critical buckling strength in compression
Maximum allowable deflection	0.0056 times the span
Top plate thickness	$0.01s$, but not less than 6 mm (0.24 in.)

where Y is as defined in [8.1.1].

Covers are to be assumed to be simply supported.

Portable beams are to be in accordance with [8.3.2].

8.5.2 Closing Arrangements

Closing arrangements are to be in accordance with [8.1.2] through [8.1.6].

8.7 Bearing Surface

The width of each bearing surface for hatchway covers is to be at least 65 mm (2.5 in.).

8.9 Materials Other Than Steel *(2024)*

The strength and stiffness of covers made of materials other than steel are to be equivalent to those of steel. The details showing the equivalence are to be submitted for approval by ABS.

9 Hatchways Closed by Covers of Steel Fitted with Gaskets and Clamping Devices for Cargo Holds *(2024)*

These requirements apply to all ships except bulk carriers (including self-unloading bulk carriers), ore carriers and combination carriers and are for all cargo hatch covers and coamings on exposed decks. Non-CSR Bulk carriers, ore carriers and combination carriers are to comply with the requirements of [5C-3-4/19] .

9.1 Strength of Covers

9.1.1 Stresses *(1 July 2024)*

All hatch cover structural members are to comply with the following formulae:

$\sigma_{vm} \leq \sigma_a$ N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi) for shell elements in general.

$\sigma_{axial} \leq \sigma_a$ N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi) for rod or beam elements in general.

where

σ_a = allowable stress in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi) as defined in Table 2, where Y is specified minimum yield strength, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi), of the material.

σ_{vm} = von Mises stress, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi) to be taken as follows:

$$\sigma_{vm} = \sqrt{\sigma_x^2 - \sigma_x\sigma_y + \sigma_y^2 + 3\tau^2}$$

σ_{axial} = axial stress, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi), in rod or beam elements

σ_x = normal stress in x-direction, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)

σ_y = normal stress in y-direction, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)

τ = shear stress in the x-y plane, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)

Indices x and y are coordinates of a two-dimensional Cartesian system in the plane of the considered structural element.

In case of FEM calculations using shell or plane strain elements, the stresses are to be read from the center of the individual element. It is to be observed that, in particular, at flanges of unsymmetrical girders, the evaluation of stress from element center may lead to non-conservative results. Thus, a sufficiently fine mesh is to be applied in these cases or, the stress at the element edges is not to exceed the allowable stress. Where shell elements are used, the stresses are to be evaluated at the mid plane of the element.

Stress concentrations are to be assessed where needed to the satisfaction of ABS.

TABLE 2
Allowable Stresses
(1 July 2024)

Member of	*Subject to*	σ_a/Y
Hatch Cover Structure	External pressure as defined in 3-2-15/3.3	0.80
	Other loads as defined in 3-2-15/3.5, 3-2-15/9.9, 3-2-15/9.11 and 3-2-15/9.13	0.90 for static-dynamic load case 0.72 for static load case

9.1.2 Deflection

The maximum vertical deflection of primary supporting members due to the vertical design load according to [3.3] is:

$$\delta_{v\max} = 0.0056\ell_g$$

where

ℓ_g = greatest span of primary supporting members

Where hatch covers are arranged for carrying containers and mixed stowage is allowed (i.e., a 40-foot container stowed on top of two 20-foot containers, particular attention is to be paid to the deflections of hatch covers. Further the possible contact of deflected hatch covers within hold cargo has to be observed.

9.1.3 Material *(2024)*

Hatch covers and coamings are to be made of material in accordance with 3-1-2/3.1 TABLE 1 applying Class I requirements for top plate, bottom plate and primary supporting members.

The strength and stiffness of covers made of materials other than steel is to be equivalent to those of steel. Details are to be submitted to ABS for approval.

9.1.4 General Requirements

Primary supporting members and secondary stiffeners of hatch covers are to be continuous over the breadth and length of hatch covers, as far as practical. When this is impractical, sniped end connections are not to be used and appropriate arrangements are to be adopted to ensure sufficient load carrying capacity.

The spacing of primary supporting members parallel to the direction of secondary stiffeners is not to exceed $^1/_3$ of the span of primary supporting members. When strength calculation is carried out by FE analysis using plane strain or shell elements, this requirement can be waived.

Secondary stiffeners of hatch coamings are to be continuous over the breadth and length of hatch coamings.

9.1.5 Net Scantling Approach *(1 July 2024)*

Unless otherwise quoted, the thicknesses t of the following sections are net thicknesses.

The net thicknesses are the member thicknesses necessary to obtain the minimum net scantlings required by 3-2-15/9.1 through 3-2-15/9.17 and [9.21] .

The required gross thicknesses are obtained by adding corrosion additions, t_S, given in [TABLE 8] .

Strength calculations using FEM are to be performed with net scantlings.

9.3 Local Net Plate Thickness *(2024)*

The local net plate thickness t of the hatch cover top plating is not to be less than that obtained from the following equation:

$$t = 15.8F_p s\sqrt{\frac{p}{0.95Y}}\,\text{mm}$$

$$t = 23.64F_p s\sqrt{\frac{p}{0.95Y}}\,\text{in.}$$

but not less than 1% of the spacing of the stiffener or 6 mm (0.24 in.) if that be greater.

where

F_p = factor for combined membrane and bending response

= 1.5 in general

= $2.375\frac{\sigma}{Y}$ for $\frac{\sigma}{0.8Y} \geq 0.8$ for the attached plate flange of primary supporting members

s = stiffener spacing, in m (ft)

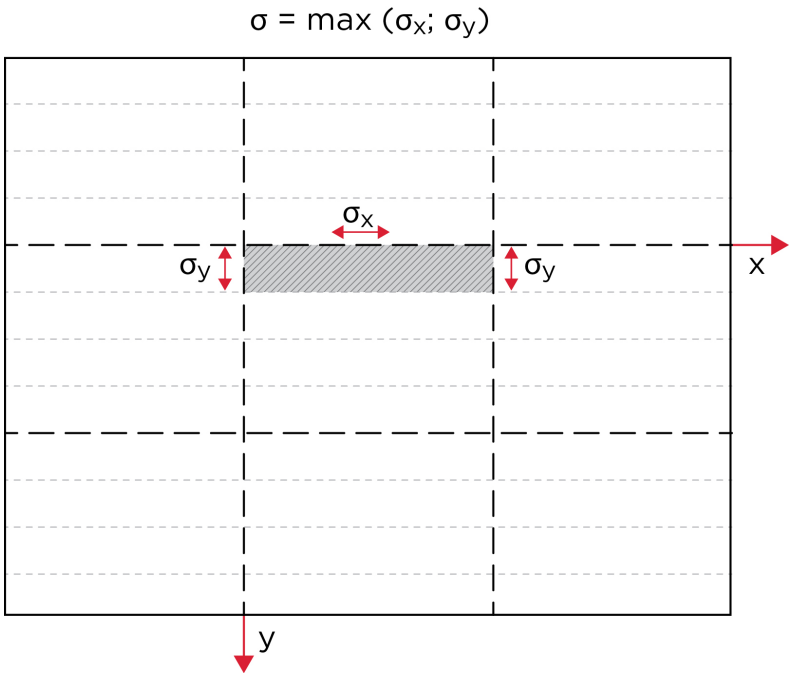
p = pressure p_V and p_L, as defined in [3.3] and [9.9.1] , in kN/m^2 (tf/m^2, Ltf/ft^2)

σ = maximum normal stress of hatch cover top plating, determined according to [FIGURE 3] , N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)

Y is as defined in [9.1]

For flange plates under compression sufficient buckling strength according to [9.17] is to be demonstrated.

FIGURE 3
Determination of Normal Stress of the Hatch Cover Plating
(2024)



9.3.1 Local Gross Plate Thickness of Hatch Covers for Wheel Loading *(2024)*

The local gross plate thickness of hatch covers subject to wheel loading is to be not less than that required by3-2-3/5.17.

Where the hatch cover is subject to other load as well, the hatch cover is to comply with the applicable requirement in [9] .

9.3.2 Lower Plating of Double Skin Hatch Covers and Box Girders *(2024)*

The thickness to fulfill the strength requirements is to be obtained from the calculation according to [9.15] under consideration of permissible stresses according to [9.1.1] . When the lower plating is taken into account as a strength member of the hatch cover, the net thickness, in mm (in.), of lower plating is to be taken not less than 5 mm (0.20 in.).

When project cargo is intended to be carried on a hatch cover, the net thickness is not to be less than:

$t = 6.5s$ mm

$= 0.078s$ in.

where s is as defined in 3-2-15/9.3

Project cargo means especially large or bulky cargo lashed to the hatch cover. Examples are parts of cranes or wind power stations, turbines, etc. Cargoes that can be considered as uniformly distributed over the hatch cover (e.g., timber, pipes or steel coils) need not to be considered as project cargo.

Commentary:

Where the lower plating is not designed as a strength member of the hatch cover, the hatch cover may be considered as a single skin hatch cover without lower plating. Particular attention should be paid to the buckling strength of web plates of primary supporting members, which should satisfy the requirements in 3-2-15/9.17.1.

End of Commentary

9.5 Net Scantlings of Secondary Stiffeners *(1 July 2024)*

The net section modulus Z and net shear area A_s of uniformly loaded hatch cover stiffeners constrained at both ends are not to be less than:

$$Z = \frac{104}{Y} s_s \ell_s^2 p \quad \text{cm}^3, \text{ for design load according to [3.3]}$$

$$= \frac{2793}{Y} s_s \ell_s^2 p \quad \text{in}^3$$

$$Z = \frac{93}{Y} s_s \ell_s^2 p \quad \text{cm}^3, \text{ for design load according to [9.9.1]}$$

$$= \frac{2498}{Y} s_s \ell_s^2 p \quad \text{in}^3$$

$$A_s = \frac{10.8 s_s \ell_s p}{Y} \quad \text{cm}^2, \text{ for design load according to [3.3]}$$

$$= \frac{2418 s_s \ell_s p}{Y} \quad \text{in}^2$$

$$A_s = \frac{9.6 s_s \ell_s p}{Y} \quad \text{cm}^2, \text{ for design load according to [9.9.1]}$$

$$= \frac{2149 s_s \ell_s p}{Y} \quad \text{in}^2$$

where

ℓ_s = secondary stiffener span, to be taken as the spacing of primary supporting members or the distance between a primary supporting member and the edge support, in m (ft)

s_s = secondary stiffener spacing in m (ft)

Y is as defined in [9.1]

p is as defined in [9.3]

For secondary stiffeners of lower plating of double skin hatch covers, requirements mentioned above are not applied due to the absence of lateral loads.

The net thickness, in mm (in.), of the stiffener (except U-type/trapeze stiffeners) web is to be taken not less than 4 mm (0.16 in.).

The net section modulus of the secondary stiffeners is to be determined based on an attached plate width assumed equal to the stiffener spacing.

Stiffeners parallel to primary supporting members are to be continuous at crossing primary supporting member and may be regarded for calculating the cross sectional properties of primary supporting members. It is to be verified that the combined stress of those stiffeners induced by the bending of primary supporting members and lateral pressures does not exceed the permissible stresses according to [9.1.1] . The requirements of this paragraph are not applied to stiffeners of lower plating of double skin hatch covers if the lower plating is not considered as strength member.

For hatch cover stiffeners under compression sufficient safety against lateral and torsional buckling according to 3-2-15/9.17.1 is to be verified.

For hatch covers subject to wheel loading or point loads, stiffener scantlings are to be determined under consideration of the permissible stresses according to [9.1.1] .

9.7 Net Scantlings of Primary Supporting Members

9.7.1 Primary Supporting Members *(1 July 2024)*

Scantlings of primary supporting members are obtained from calculations according to [9.15] under consideration of permissible stresses according to [9.1.1] .

For all components of primary supporting members sufficient safety against buckling is to be verified according to [9.17].

The net thickness of webs of primary supporting members is not to be less than:

$t = 6.5s$ mm

$= 0.078s$ in.

but not less than 5 mm (0.20 in.)

where s is the stiffener spacing in m

9.7.2 Edge Girders (Skirt Plates)

Scantlings of edge girders are obtained from the calculations according to [9.15] under consideration of permissible stresses according to [9.1.1] .

The net thickness of the outer edge girders exposed to wash of sea is not to be less than the largest of the following values:

$$t = 15.8s\sqrt{\frac{p_H}{0.95Y}}\,\text{mm}$$

$$t = 8.5s\text{mm}$$

$$t = 23.652s\sqrt{\frac{p_H}{0.95Y}}\,\text{in.}$$

$$t = 0.102s\text{in.}$$

but not less than 5 mm (0.20 in.)

where

p_H is as defined in [3.5] .

Y is as defined in [9.1] .

s is as defined in [9.3] .

The stiffness of edge girders is to be sufficient to maintain adequate sealing pressure between securing devices. The moment of inertia of edge girders is not to be less than:

$I = uqs_{SD}^4$ cm^4 (in^4)

where

u = 6 (58.842, 7.693 · 10^{-3})

q = packing line pressure, in N/mm (kgf/mm, lbf/in). Minimum 5 N/mm (0.51 kgf/mm, 28.55 lbf/in)

s_{SD} = spacing of securing devices, in m (ft)

9.9 Cargo Loads

9.9.1 Distributed Loads *(2024)*

The load on hatch covers due to cargo loads p_L resulting from heave and pitch (i.e., ship in the upright condition) is to be determined according to the following formula:

$p_L = p_C(1 + a_a)$ kN/m^2 (tf/m^2, Ltf/ft^2)

where

p_C = uniform cargo load, in kN/m^2 (tf/m^2, Ltf/ft^2)

a_a = vertical acceleration addition

= $F_D m_D$

F_D = $0.11 \dfrac{v_0}{\sqrt{e_H L}}$

m_D = $m_0 - 5(m_0 - 1)\dfrac{x'}{L}$ for $0 \le \dfrac{x'}{L} \le 0.2$

= 1.0 for $0.2 < \dfrac{x'}{L} \le 0.7$

= $1 + \dfrac{m_0 + 1}{0.3}\left[\dfrac{x'}{L} - 0.7\right]$ for $0.7 < \dfrac{x'}{L} \le 1.0$

m_0 = $1.5 + F_D$

v_0 = maximum speed at summer load line draft, in knots. v_0 is not to be taken less than $\sqrt{e_H L}$

e_H = 1 (1,0.3048)

x' = longitudinal coordinate of midpoint of assessed structural member measured from aft end of the length L, in m (ft)

L is as defined in 3-1-1/3.1.

9.9.2 Point Loads

The loads due to a concentrated force P_S, except for container load, resulting from heave and pitch (i.e., ship in the upright condition) is to be determined as follows:

$P_P = P_S(1 + a_a)$ kN (tf, Ltf)

where

P_S = single force, in kN (tf, Ltf)

a_a is as defined in [9.9.1].

9.11 Container Loads

9.11.1 General *(1 July 2024)*

Where containers are stowed on hatch covers the load applied at each corner of a container stack and resulting from heave and pitch (i.e., ship in the upright condition) is to be determined as follows:

$$P = \frac{M}{4} \cdot (1 + a_a)\text{kN}(\text{tf}, \text{Ltf})$$

where

M = maximum designed mass of container stack, in kN (tf, Ltf)

a_a is as defined in [9.9.1].

The loads applied at each corner of a container stack resulting from heave, pitch, and the vessel's rolling motion are to be considered are to be determined as follows, see also [FIGURE 4]:

$$A_z = \frac{M}{2} \cdot (1 + a_a) \cdot \left(0.45 - 0.42\frac{h_m}{b}\right) \text{kN}(\text{tf}, \text{Ltf})$$

$$B_z = \frac{M}{2} \cdot (1 + a_a) \cdot \left(0.45 + 0.42\frac{h_m}{b}\right) \text{kN}(\text{tf}, \text{Ltf})$$

$B_y = 0.24465M$ kN (tf, Ltf)

where

A_z, B_z = support forces in z-direction at the forward and aft stack corners

B_y = support force in y-direction at the forward and aft stack corners

M = maximum designed weight of container stack, in kN (tf, Ltf)

$= \sum W_i$

h_m = designed height of center of gravity of stack above hatch cover top, in m (ft), may be calculated as weighted mean value of the stack, where the center of gravity of each tier is taken to be located at the center of each container

$= \sum (z_i W_i) / M$

Wi = weight of ith container, in kN (tf,Ltf)

Zi = distance from hatch cover top to the center of ith container, in m (ft)

b = distance between midpoints of foot points, in m (ft)

a_a is as defined in [9.9.1].

Values of A_z and B_z applied for the assessment of hatch cover strength are to be shown in the drawings of the hatch covers.

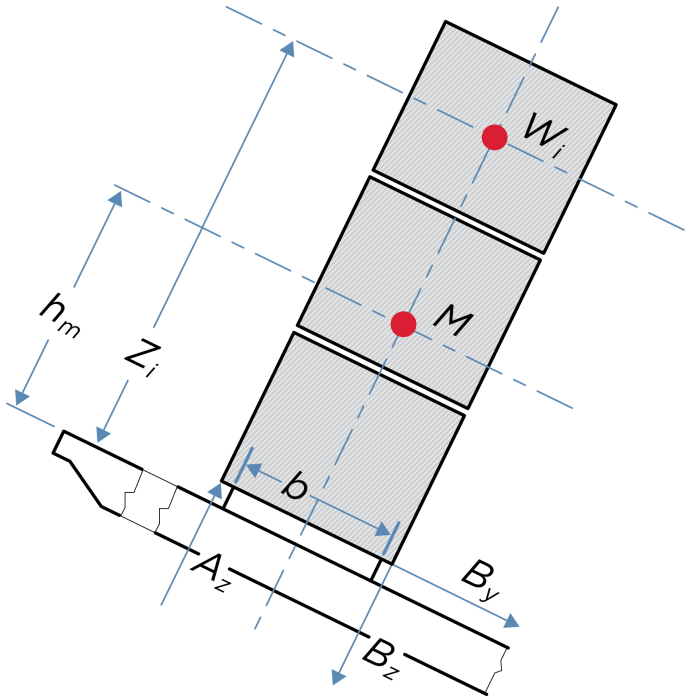
Commentary:

It is recommended that container loads as calculated above are considered as the limit for foot point loads of container stacks in the calculations of cargo securing (container lashing).

End of commentary

In the case of mixed stowage (20-foot and 40-foot container combined stack), the foot point forces at the fore and aft end of the hatch cover are not to be higher than those resulting from the design stack weight for 40- foot containers, and the foot point forces at the middle of the cover are not to be higher than resulting from the design stack weight for 20-foot containers.

FIGURE 4
Forces due to Container Loads



9.11.2 Load Cases with Partial Loading

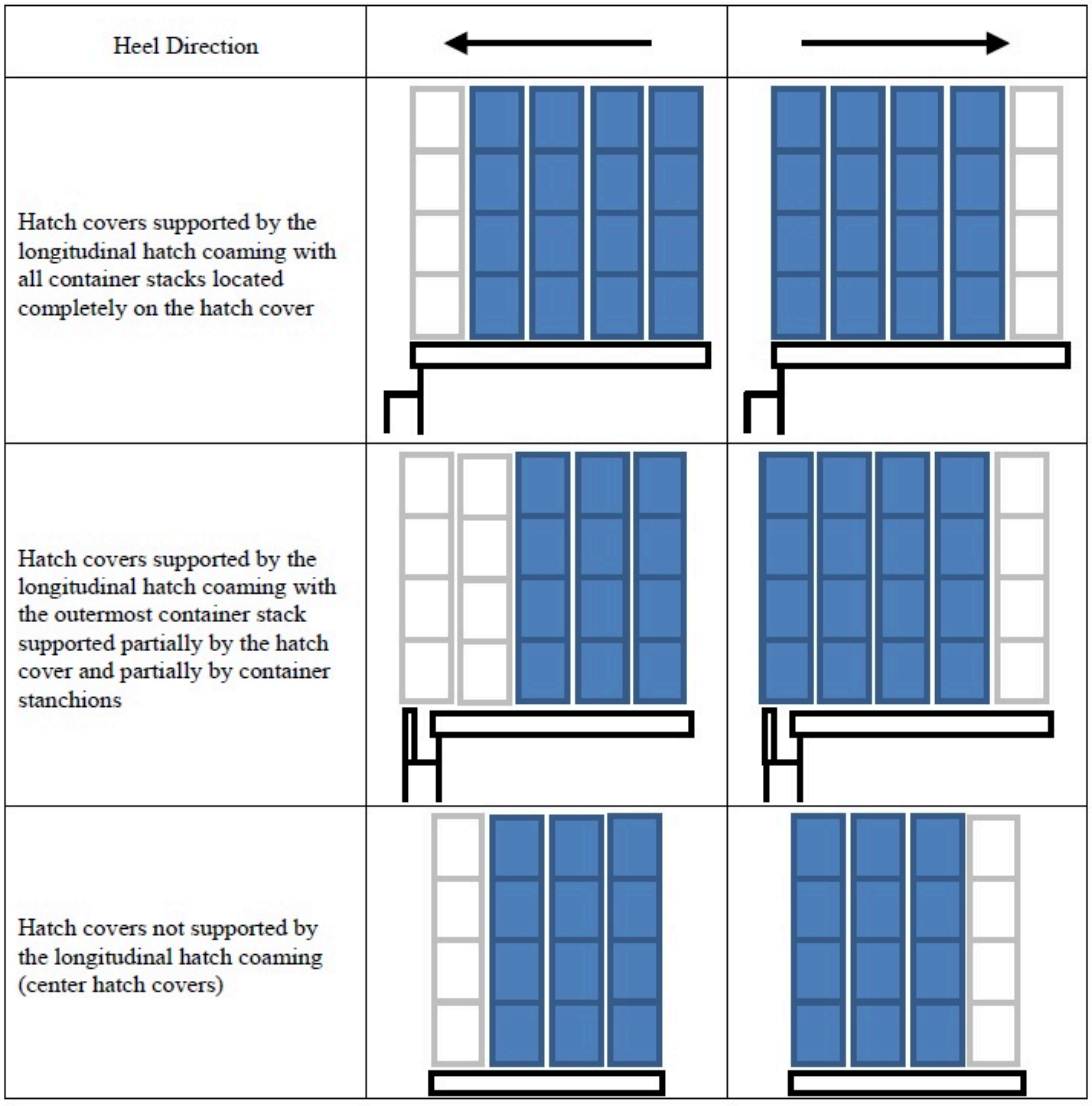
The load cases contained in [9.11.1] are also to be considered for partial non homogeneous loading which may occur in practice (e.g., where specified container stack places are empty). For each hatch cover, the heel directions, as shown in [FIGURE 5] , are to be considered.

The load case “partial loading of container hatch covers” can be evaluated using a simplified approach, where the hatch cover is loaded without the outermost stacks that are located completely on the hatch cover. If there are additional stacks that are supported partially by the hatch cover and partially by container stanchions then the loads from these stacks are also to be neglected, see [FIGURE 5] .

In addition, the case where only the stack places supported partially by the hatch cover and partially by container stanchions are left empty is to be assessed in order to consider the maximum loads in the vertical hatch cover supports.

Depending on the specific loading arrangements it may be necessary to consider additional partial load cases where more or different container stacks are left empty.

FIGURE 5
Partial Loading of a Container Hatch Cover



9.13 Loads due to Elastic Deformations of the Vessel's Hull

Hatch covers, which in addition to the loads according to [3.3] to [3.5] and [9.9] to [9.11] are loaded in the vessel's transverse direction by forces due to elastic deformations of the vessel's hull, are to be designed such that the sum of stresses does not exceed the permissible values given in [9.1.1] .

9.15 Strength Calculations *(1 July 2024)*

The stresses in hatch covers are to be determined by FE analysis.

The stress calculation model in 3-2-15/9.15.1 is to be used for yielding and buckling strength assessments in accordance with 3-2-15/9.1 and 3-2-15/9.17, respectively.

The net scantlings as defined in 3-2-15/9.1.5 are to be used.

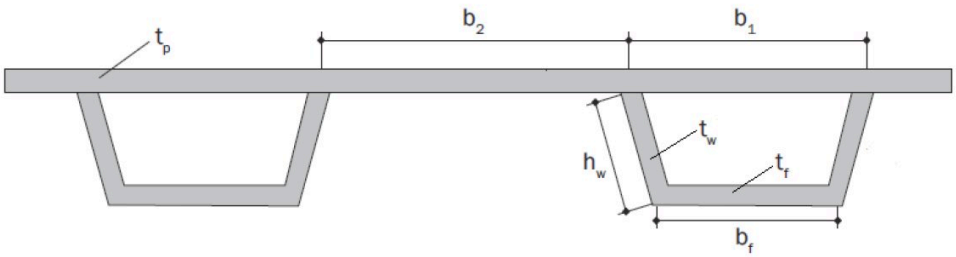
9.15.1 General Requirements for FEM Calculations *(1 July 2024)*

For the strength assessments of hatch covers by means of FE analysis, the hatch cover geometry is to be idealized as realistically as possible. In no case, is element width to be larger than stiffener spacing. In way of force transfer points and cutouts, the mesh is to be refined where applicable. The ratio of element length to width is not to exceed 3.

The element size along the height of webs of primary supporting member is not to exceed one-third of the web height. Stiffeners, which support plates subjected to lateral pressure loads, are to be included in the FE model idealization. Stiffeners may be modelled by using beam elements, or shell/plate elements. Buckling stiffeners may be disregarded for the stress calculation.

Hatch covers fitted with U-type stiffeners as shown in 3-2-15/9.15.1 FIGURE 6 are to be assessed by means of FE analysis.The geometry of the U-type stiffeners is to be accurately modelled using shell/plate elements. Nodal points are to be properly placed on the intersections between the webs of a U-type stiffener and the hatch cover plate, and between the webs and flange of the U-type stiffener.

FIGURE 6
Example of Hatch Cover Fitted with U-type Stiffeners *(1 July 2024)*



Wherever applicable the following boundary conditions are to be applied to the FE model:

i) Boundary nodes in way of a bearing pad on the hatch coamings are to be fixed against displacement in the direction perpendicular to the pad.

ii) Lifting stoppers are to be fixed against displacements in the direction determined by the stoppers.

iii) For a folding type hatch cover, the FE nodes connected through a hinge are to have the same translational displacement in the direction perpendicular to the hatch cover top plating.

9.17 Buckling Strength of Hatch Cover Structures

9.17.1 General *(1 July 2024)*

Buckling strength of all hatch cover structures is to be checked. Buckling assessments are to be performed in compliance with the requirements in Appendix 3-2-A8 for the conditions specified in 3-2-15/9.17.2 and 3-2-15/9.17.3.

The net scantlings as defined in 3-2-15/9.1.5 are to be used for buckling check.

9.17.2 Slenderness Requirements *(1 July 2024)*

The slenderness requirements are to be in accordance with those specified in 3-2-A8/2. The slenderness requirements need not be applied to the lower boundary of double skin hatch covers unless the cargo hold is designed for carriage of ballast or liquid cargo.

The breadth of the primary supporting member flange is to be not less than 40% of their depth for laterally unsupported spans greater than 3.0 m. Tripping brackets attached to the flange may be considered as a lateral support for primary supporting members.

9.17.3 Buckling Requirements *(1 July 2024)*

Unless otherwise specified, the symbols used in this section are defined in Appendix 3-2-A8.

9.17.3(a) Application

These requirements apply to the buckling assessment of hatch cover structures subjected to compressive and shear stresses and lateral pressures. The buckling assessment is to be performed for the following structural elements:

i) Stiffened and unstiffened panels, including curved panels and panels stiffened with U-type stiffeners.

ii) Web panels of primary supporting members in way of openings.

The buckling strength assessment of coaming parts is to be done according to the individual Society's rules.

For rule application, the panel types and assessment methods, the applied lateral pressure and stresses, safety factors and buckling check criteria are defined in 3-2-15/9.17.3(b), 3-2-15/9.17.3(c), 3-2-15/9.17.3(d) and 3-2-15/9.17.3(e), respectively. The procedure and detailed requirements for buckling assessment are given in 3-2-A8/4, including idealization of irregular plate panels, definition of reference stresses and buckling criteria.

9.17.3(b) Panel types and assessment methods

The plate panel of a hatch cover structure is to be modelled as stiffened panel (SP) or unstiffened panel (UP) as defined in 3-2-A8/4.2. Assessment Method A (-A) and Method B (-B) as defined in 3-2-A8/1.3 are to be used in accordance with 3-2-15/9.17.3 Table 3, 3-2-15/Figure 7 and 3-2-15/Figure 8. For a web panel with opening, the procedure for opening should be used for its buckling assessment.

For a hatch cover fitted with U-type stiffeners, the additional buckling assessment requirements specific for panels with U-type stiffeners in 3-2-A8/5.2.5 are also to be followed.

TABLE 3
Structural Members and Assessment Methods

Structural Elements	*Assessment Methods*[1] [2]	*Normal Panel Definition*
Hatch cover top/bottom plating structures, see 3-2-15/Figure 7		
Hatch cover top/bottom plating	SP-A	Length: between transverse girders Width: between longitudinal girders
Irregularly stiffened panels	UP-B	Plate between local stiffeners/PSM
Hatch cover web panels of primary supporting members, see 3-2-15/Figure 8		
Web of transverse/longitudinal girder (single skin type)	UP-B	Plate between local stiffeners/face plate/PSM
Web of transverse/longitudinal girder (double skin type)	SP-B[3]	Length: between PSM Width: full web depth
Web panel with opening	Procedure for opening	Plate between local stiffeners/face plate/PSM
Irregularly stiffened panels	UP-B	Plate between local stiffeners/face plate/PSM

Notes:

1 SP and UP stand for stiffened and unstiffened panel, respectively.

2 A and B stand for Method A and Method B, respectively.

3 In case that the buckling carlings/brackets are irregularly arranged in the web of transverse/longitudinal girder, UP-B method may be used.

FIGURE 7
Hatch Cover Top/Bottom Plating Structures

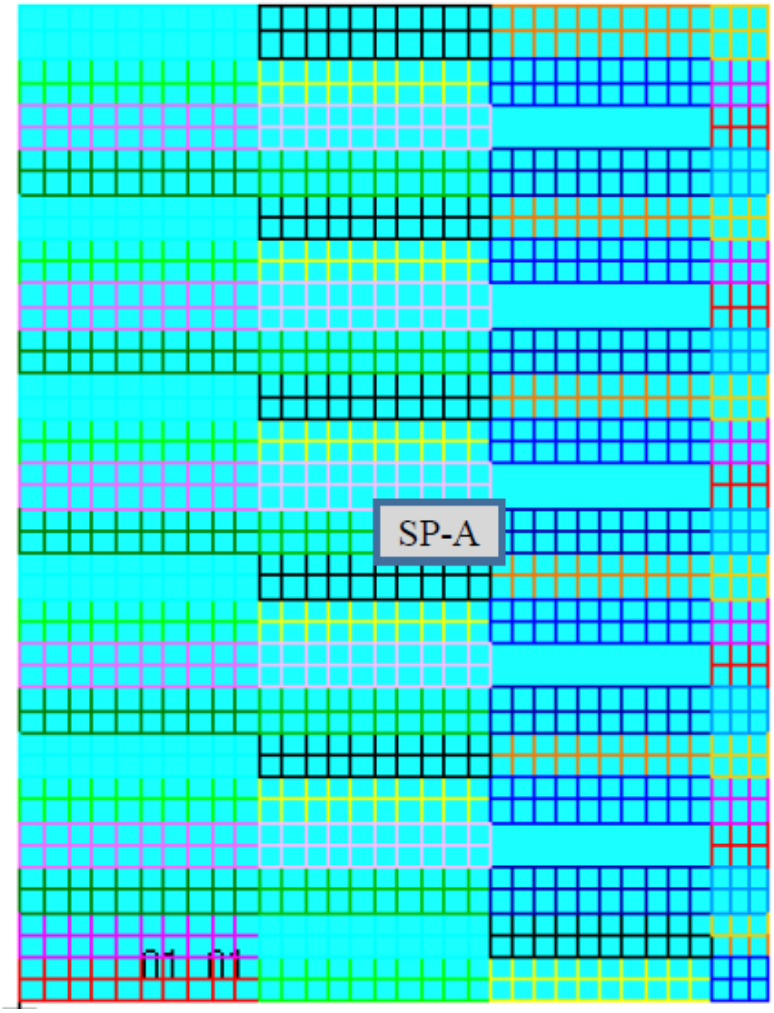
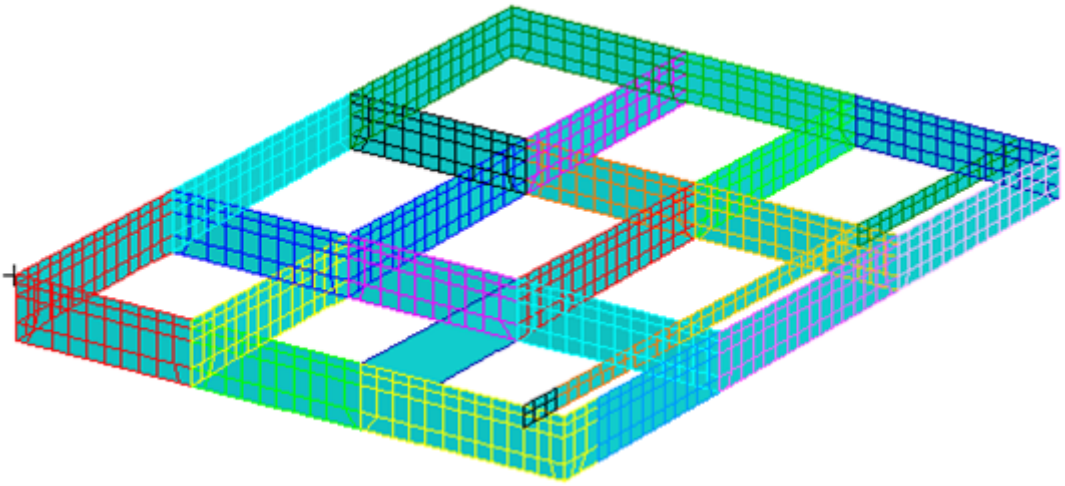


FIGURE 8
Hatch Cover Webs of Primary Supporting Members



9.17.3(c) Applied lateral pressure and stresses

The buckling assessment of hatch covers is based on the lateral pressure as defined in 3-2-15/3.3 and 3-2-15/3.5, and stresses obtained from FE analysis, refer to 3-2-15/9.15.

9.17.3(d) Safety factors

For all hatch cover structural members, safety factor S=1.0 is to be applied to both of the plating and stiffener buckling capacity formulas as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.2 and 3-2-A8/5.2.3, respectively.

9.17.3(e) Buckling acceptance criteria

A structural member is considered to have an acceptable buckling strength if it satisfies the following criterion:

$$\eta_{act} \leq \eta_{all}$$

where,

η_{act} = Buckling utilisation factor based on the applied stress, as defined in 3-2-A8/1.3.2b and 3-2-A8/4, and calculated per 3-2-A8/5.

η_{all} = Allowable buckling utilisation factor, taken as given in 3-2-15/9.17.3 Table 4.

TABLE 4
Allowable Buckling Utilization Factors

Structural Component	***Subject to***	η_{all}
Plates and stiffeners Web of PSM	External pressure, as defined in 3-2-15/3.3	0.80
	Other loads as defined in 3-2-15/3.5, 3-2-15/9.9, 3-2-15/9.11 and 3-2-15/9.13	0.90 for static+dynamic load case 0.72 for static load case

9.19 Details of Hatch Covers

9.19.1 Container Foundations on Hatch Covers

The substructures of container foundations are to be designed for cargo and container loads according to [3.3] through [3.5] and [9.9] through [9.11] applying the permissible stresses according to [9.1.1] .

9.19.2 Weathertightness

9.19.2(a) Packing Material (General). The packing material is to be suitable for all expected service conditions of the ship and is to be compatible with the cargoes to be transported. The packing material is to be selected with regard to dimensions and elasticity in such a way that expected deformations can be carried. Forces are to be carried by the steel structure only.

The packing is to be compressed so as to give the necessary tightness effect for all expected operating conditions. Special consideration is to be given to the packing arrangement in ships with large relative movements between hatch covers and coamings or between hatch cover sections.

9.19.2(b) Dispensation of Weathertight Gaskets. *(2024)*

For hatch covers of cargo holds solely for the transport of containers, upon request by the owners and subject to compliance with the following conditions the fitting of weathertight gaskets according to [9.19.2(a)] may be dispensed with:

- The hatchway coamings is to be not less than 600 mm (23.622 in.) in height.
- The exposed deck on which the hatch covers are located is situated above a depth $H(x)$. $H(x)$ is to be shown to comply with the following criteria:
  $H(x) \geq d + f_b + h\text{m (ft)}$
  where

f_b = minimum required freeboard for the vessel, in m (ft)

h = 4.6 m (15.09 ft) for $\frac{x}{L_f} \leq 0.75$

= 6.9 m (22.64 ft) for $\frac{x}{L_f} > 0.75$

L is as defined in 3-1-1/3.1.
L_f is as defined in 3-1-1/3.3.
d is as defined in 3-1-1/9.

- Labyrinths, gutter bars or equivalents are to be fitted proximate to the edges of each panel in way of the coamings. The clear profile of these openings is to be kept as small as possible. See examples of labyrinth and gutter arrangements in [FIGURE 9A].
- Where a hatch is covered by several hatch cover panels the clear opening of the gap in between the panels is to be not wider than 50 mm. (2.0 in.) See [FIGURE 9B].
- The labyrinths and gaps between hatch cover panels are to be considered as unprotected openings with respect to the requirements of intact and damage stability calculations.
- The efficient drainage of cargo holds and necessary fire-fighting systems are to be provided (see 4-6-4/5.5 and 4-7-2/7).

Commentary:

Where carbon dioxide fire-extinguishing is used for fixed gas fire-extinguishing systems, Section 2 of IMO MSC/Circ. 1087 Guidelines for Partially Weathertight Hatchway Covers On Board Containerships should be referred to for the increase of carbon dioxide fire-extinguishing media.

End of Commentary

- Bilge alarms are to be provided in each hold fitted with non-weathertight covers (see 4-6-4/5.5.13).
- Furthermore, Section 3, Stowage and Segregation of Cargo Transport Units Containers Containing Dangerous Goods, of IMO MSC/Circ.1087 Guidelines for Partially Weathertight Hatchway Covers On Board Containerships is to be referred to concerning the stowage and segregation of containers containing dangerous goods.

FIGURE 9A
Labyrinth and Gutter Arrangements *(2024)*

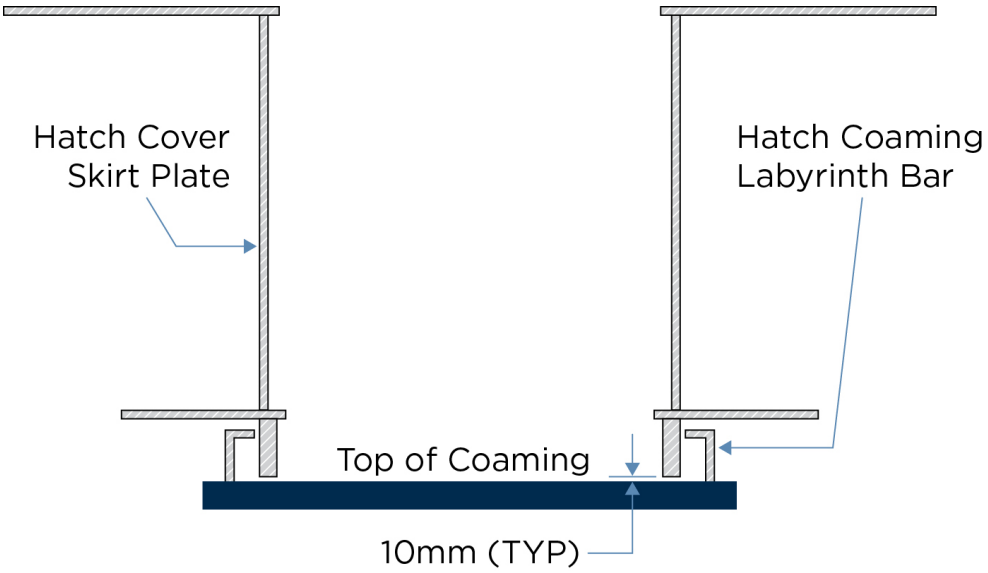
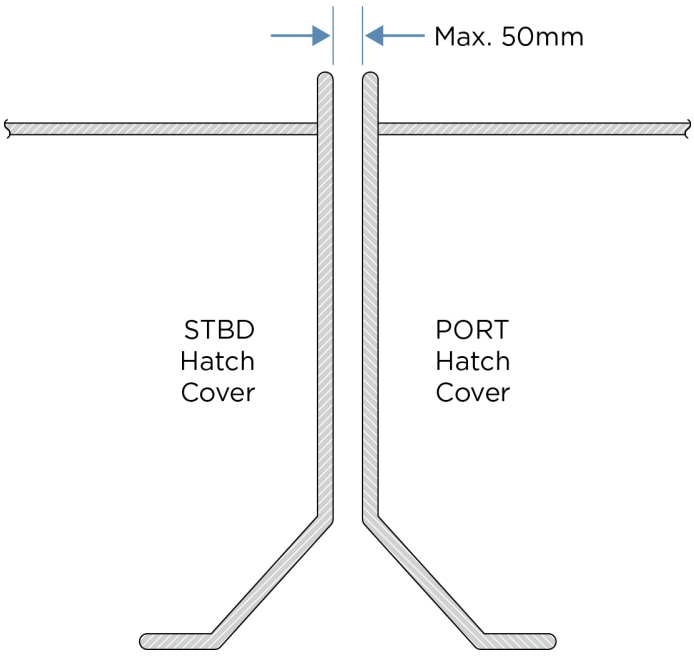


FIGURE 9B
Gap Between Panels *(2024)*



9.19.2(c) Drainage Arrangements. Cross-joints of multi-panel covers are to be provided with efficient drainage arrangements.

9.21 Hatch Coaming Strength Criteria

9.21.1 Local Net Plate Thickness of Coamings

The net thickness of weather deck hatch coamings is not to be less than the larger of the following values:

$$t = 14.2s\sqrt{\frac{P_H}{0.95Y}}\,\text{mm}$$

$$= 21.26s\sqrt{\frac{P_H}{0.95Y}}\,\text{in.}$$

$$\text{but not less than} 6 + \frac{L_1}{100}\quad \text{mm} (0.236 + \frac{1.2L_1}{10000}\quad \text{in.})$$

where

L_1 = L, need not be taken greater than 300 m (958 ft)

s is as defined in [9.3].

p_H is as defined in [3.5].

Y is as defined in [9.1.1].

Longitudinal strength aspects are to be observed.

9.21.2 Net Scantlings of Secondary Stiffeners of Coamings *(2024)*

The stiffeners is to be continuous at the coaming stays. For stiffeners with both ends constraint the elastic net section modulus Z and net shear area A_S calculated on the basis of net thickness, is not to be less than:

$$Z = \frac{83}{Y}\,s\ell_s^2 P_H \text{cm}^3$$

$$= \frac{2230}{Y}\,s\ell_s^2 P_H \text{in}^3$$

$$A_S = \frac{10s\ell_s P_H}{Y}\,\text{cm}^2$$

$$= \frac{2240s\ell_s P_H}{Y}\,\text{in}^2$$

where

ℓ_s = secondary stiffener span to be taken as the spacing of coaming stays, in m (ft)

s is as defined in [9.3].

p_H is as defined in [3.5].

Y is as defined in [9.1.1].

For sniped stiffeners of coaming at hatch corners section modulus and shear area at the fixed support have to be increased by 35%. The gross thickness of the coaming plate at the sniped stiffener end shall not be less than:

$$t = 19.6\sqrt{\frac{P_H s\,(\ell - 0.5s)}{Y}}\,\text{mm}$$

$$= 29.32\sqrt{\frac{P_H s\,(\ell - 0.5s)}{Y}}\,\text{in.}$$

where

s is as defined in [9.3] .

p_H is as defined in [3.5] .

Y is as defined in [9.1.1] .

9.21.3 Coaming Stays

Coaming stays are to be designed for the loads transmitted through them and permissible stresses according to [9.1] .

9.21.3(a) Coaming Stay Section Modulus. **(2024)**

At the connection with deck, the net section modulus Z, in cm^3 (in^3) of the coaming stays designed as beams with flanges (as shown in [FIGURE 10] a and [FIGURE 10] b) is not to be less than:

$$Z = \frac{526}{Y}\,e_s h_s^2 p_H \text{cm}^3$$

$$= \frac{14138}{Y}\,e_s h_s^2 p_H \text{in}^3$$

where

e_s = spacing of coaming stays, in m (ft)

h_s = height of coaming stays, in m (ft)

p_H is as defined in [3.5] .

Y is as defined in [9.1.1] .

Coaming stays are to be supported by appropriate substructures. Face plates may only be included in the calculation if an appropriate substructure is provided and welding ensures an adequate joint.

9.21.3(b) Web Thickness of Coaming Stays. **(1 July 2024)**

At the connection with deck, the gross thickness t_w, in mm (in.), of the coaming stays designed as beams with flanges (as shown in 3-2-15/Figure 10 a and 3-2-15/Figure 10 b) are not to be less than:

$$t_w = \frac{2}{y} \cdot \frac{e_s h_s P_H}{h_w} + t_s \text{mm}$$

$$= \frac{373.34}{Y} \cdot \frac{e_s h_s P_H}{h_w} + t_s \text{in.}$$

where

h_w = web height of coaming stay at its lower end, in m (ft)

t_s = corrosion addition according to [9.25] , in mm (in.)

e_s and h_s are as defined in [9.21.3(a)] .

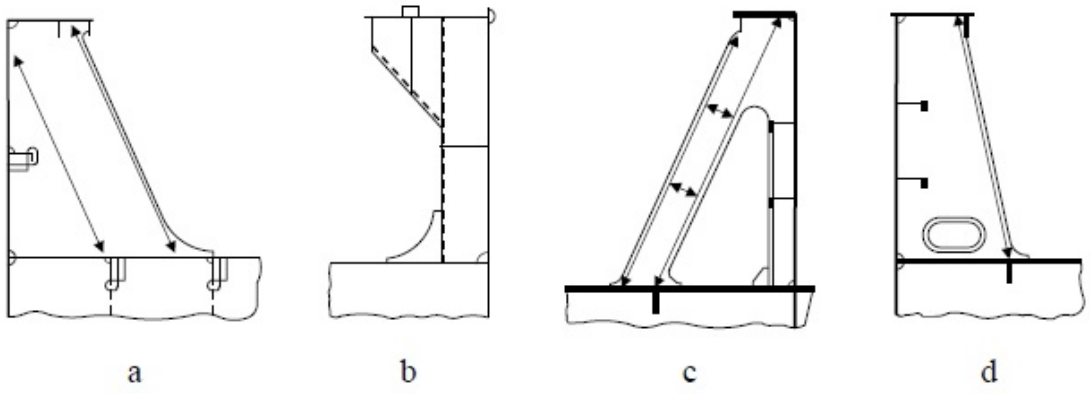
p_H is as defined in [3.5] .

Y is as defined in [9.1.1] .

For other designs of coaming stays, such as those shown in 3-2-15/Figure 10 c and 3-2-15/Figure 10 d, the stresses are to be determined through FEM. The calculated stresses are to comply with the permissible stresses according to [9.1.1].

Webs are to be connected to the deck by fillet welds on both sides with a fillet weld throat thickness of at least $0.44\, t_w$.

FIGURE 10
Examples for Typical Coaming Stay Configurations



9.21.3(c) Coaming Stays Under Friction Load. For coaming stays, which transfer friction forces at hatch cover supports, fatigue strength is to be considered in the design.

9.21.4 Further Requirements for Hatch Coamings

9.21.4(a) Longitudinal Strength. Hatch coamings which are part of the longitudinal hull structure are to be designed according to the requirements for longitudinal strength (see also [5.9]).

For structural members welded to coamings and for cutouts in the top of coamings sufficient fatigue strength is to be verified.

Longitudinal hatch coamings with a length exceeding $0.1L$ m (ft) are to be provided with tapered brackets or equivalent transitions and a corresponding substructure at both ends. At the end of the

brackets they are to be connected to the deck by full penetration welds of minimum 300 mm (11.81 in.) in length.

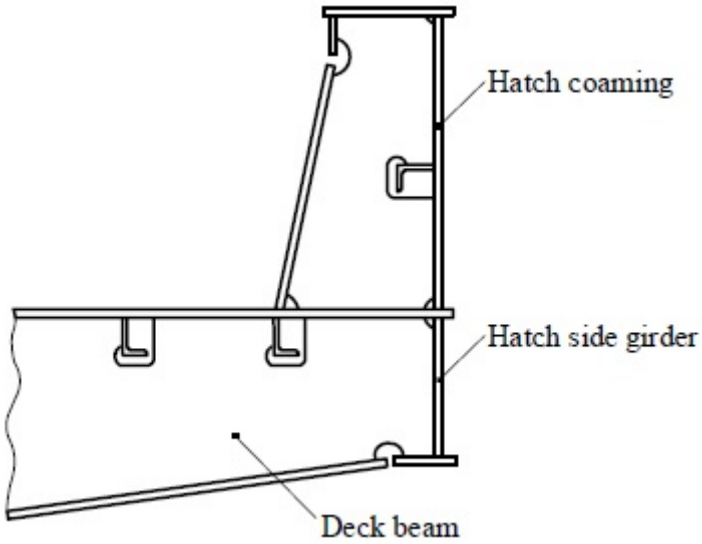
9.21.4(b) Local details are to be adequate for the purpose of transferring the loads on the hatch covers to the hatch coamings and, through them, to the deck structures below. Hatch coamings and supporting structures are to be adequately stiffened to accommodate the loading from hatch covers, in longitudinal, transverse and vertical directions.

Structures under deck are to be checked against the load transmitted by the stays.

9.21.4(c) Stays. On ships carrying cargo on deck, such as timber, coal or coke, the stays are to be spaced not more than 1.5 m (5 ft) apart.

9.21.4(d) Extend of Coaming Plates. Coaming plates are to extend to the lower edge of the deck beams or hatch side girders are to be fitted that extend to the lower edge of the deck beams. Extended coaming plates and hatch side girders are to be flanged or fitted with face bars or half-round bars. See example in [FIGURE 11] .

FIGURE 11
Example for Arrangement of Coaming Plates



9.21.4(e) Drainage Arrangement at the Coaming. If drain channels are provided inside the line of gasket by means of a gutter bar or vertical extension of the hatch side and end coaming, drain openings are to be provided at appropriate positions of the drain channels.

Drain openings in hatch coamings are to be arranged with sufficient distance to areas of stress concentration (e.g., hatch corners, transitions to crane posts).

Drain openings are to be arranged at the ends of drain channels and are to be provided with non-return valves to prevent ingress of water from outside. It is unacceptable to connect fire hoses to the drain openings for this purpose.

If a continuous outer steel contact between cover and ship structure is arranged, drainage from the space between the steel contact and the gasket is also to be provided for.

9.23 Closing Arrangements

9.23.1 Securing Devices

9.23.1(a) General. Securing devices between cover and coaming and at cross-joints are to be provided to ensure weathertightness. Sufficient packing line pressure is to be maintained.

Securing devices are to be appropriate to bridge displacements between cover and coaming due to hull deformations.

Securing devices are to be of reliable construction and effectively attached to the hatchway coamings, decks or covers. Individual securing devices on each cover are to have approximately the same stiffness characteristics.

Sufficient number of securing devices is to be provided at each side of the hatch cover considering the requirements of [9.7.2] . This applies also to hatch covers consisting of several parts.

Specifications of the materials are to be shown in the drawings of the hatch covers.

9.23.1(b) Rod Cleats. Where rod cleats are fitted, resilient washers or cushions are to be incorporated.

9.23.1(c) Hydraulic Cleats. Where hydraulic cleating is adopted, a positive means is to be provided to ensure that it remains mechanically locked in the closed position in the event of failure of the hydraulic system.

9.23.1(d) Cross-sectional Area of the Securing Devices. The gross cross-sectional area of the securing devices is not to be less than:

$$A = q \cdot s_{SD} \cdot k_\ell \text{cm}^2(\text{in}^2)$$

where

s_{SD} = spacing between securing devices as defined in [9.7.2] , in m (ft), not to be taken less than 2 m (6.5 ft)

k_ℓ = $0.28\left(\frac{235}{Y}\right)^{e\ell}$ where Y in N/mm^2

= $2.75\left(\frac{23.963}{Y}\right)^{e\ell}$ where Y in kgf/mm^2

= $2.317 \cdot 10^3\left(\frac{34084}{Y}\right)^{e\ell}$ where Y in psi

Y = minimum yield strength of the material as defined in [9.1.1] , in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi), but is not to be taken greater than $0.7\,\sigma_m$

σ_m = tensile strength of the material, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)

e_ℓ = 0.75 for $Y > 235$ N/mm^2 (23.963 kgf/mm^2, 34084 psi)

= 1.00 for $Y \le 235$ N/mm^2 (23.963 kgf/mm^2, 34084 psi)

q is as defined in [9.7.2] .

Rods or bolts are to have a gross diameter not less than 19 mm (0.75 in.) for hatchways exceeding 5 m^2 (54 ft^2) in area.

Securing devices of special design in which significant bending or shear stresses occur may be designed as anti-lifting devices according to [9.23.1(e)] . As load the packing line pressure q multiplied by the spacing between securing devices s_{SD} is to be applied.

9.23.1(e) Anti Lifting Devices. **(2024)**

The securing devices of hatch covers, on which cargo is to be lashed, are to be designed for the lifting forces resulting from loads according to [9.11] , see [FIGURE 12] . Unsymmetrical loadings, which may occur in practice, are to be considered. Under these loadings the equivalent stress in the securing devices is not to exceed:

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_V &= \frac{42}{k_\ell}\ \mathrm{N/mm^2} \\ &= \frac{42.08}{k_\ell}\ \mathrm{kgf/mm^2} \\ &= \frac{50.41}{k_\ell}\ \mathrm{psi} \end{aligned}$$

where k_ℓ is as defined in [9.23.1(d)] .

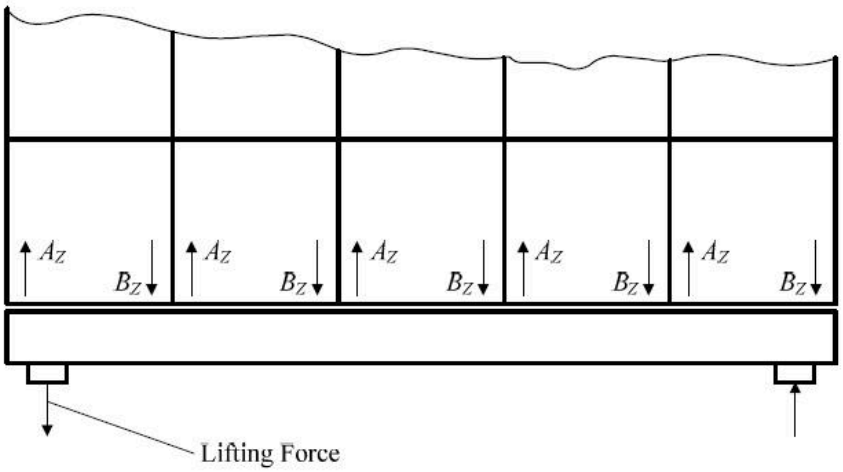
Commentary:

The partial load cases given in [FIGURE 5] do not cover all unsymmetrical loadings, critical for hatch cover lifting.

5.6 of IACS Rec.14 should be referred to for the omission of anti lifting devices.

End of Commentary

FIGURE 12
Lifting Forces at a Hatch Cover



9.23.2 Hatch Cover Supports, Stoppers and Supporting Structures

9.23.2(a) Horizontal Mass Forces. For the design of hatch cover supports, the horizontal mass force F_h *is to be calculated from the following equation:*

$$
\begin{aligned}
F_h &= m_h a_h \text{N} \\
&= 0.102\, m_h a_h \quad \text{kgf} \\
&= 0.031\, m_h a_h \quad \text{lbf}
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
a_{hX} &= 0.2\text{g} \quad \text{in longitudinal direction, in m/s}^2 \text{ (ft/s}^2\text{)} \\
a_{hY} &= 0.5\text{g} \quad \text{in transverse direction, in m/s}^2 \text{ (ft/s}^2\text{)} \\
m_h &= \text{sum of mass of cargo lashed on the hatch cover and mass of hatch cover, in kg (lb)}
\end{aligned}
$$

g as defined in 3-5-1/11.1.2.

The accelerations in longitudinal direction and in transverse direction do not need to be considered as acting simultaneously.

9.23.2(b) Hatch Cover Supports. ***(2024)***

For the transmission of the support forces resulting from the load cases specified in [3.3] through [3.5] and [9.9] , and of the horizontal mass forces specified in [9.23.2(a)] , supports are to be provided which are to be designed such that the nominal surface pressures in general do not exceed the following values:

$$P_{nmax} = d_h p_n \text{N/mm}^2 \left(\text{kgf/mm}^2, \text{psi}\right)$$

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
d_h &= 3.75 - 0.015L \text{ where } L \text{ in m} \\
&= 3.75 - 0.004572L \text{ where } L \text{ in ft} \\
d_{h\max} &= 3.0 \\
d_{h\min} &= 1.0 \quad \text{in general} \\
&= 2.0 \quad \text{for partial loading conditions, see [9.11.2]} \\
p_n &= \text{see [TABLE 7]}
\end{aligned}
$$

For metallic supporting surfaces not subjected to relative displacements the nominal surface pressure applies:

$$P_{n\max} = 3p_n \text{N/mm}^2 (\text{kgf/mm}^2, \text{psi})$$

Drawings of the supports are to be submitted. In the drawings of supports the permitted maximum pressure given by the material manufacturer is to be specified.

TABLE 7
Permissible Nominal Surface Pressure p_n

Support Material	p_n *N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi) when loaded by:*	
	Vertical Force	*Horizontal Force (on Stoppers)*
Hull structural steel	25 (2.55, 3626)	40 (4.08, 5802)
Hardened steel	35 (3.57, 5076)	50 (5.10, 7252)
Lower friction materials	50 (5.10, 7252)	—

Commentary:

When the manufacturer of vertical hatch cover support material can provide proof that the material is sufficient for the increased surface pressure, not only statically but under dynamic conditions including relative motion for adequate number of cycles, permissible nominal surface pressure may be relaxed at their discretion. However, realistic long term distribution of spectra for vertical loads and relative horizontal motion are subject to approval by ABS.

Where large relative displacements of the supporting surfaces are to be expected, the use of material having low wear and frictional properties is recommended.

If necessary, sufficient abrasive strength may be shown by tests demonstrating an abrasion of support surfaces of not more than 0.3 mm/year (0.012 in/year) in service under a total distance of shifting of 15000 m/year (49213 ft/year).

End of Commentary

The substructures of the supports are to be of such a design that a uniform pressure distribution is achieved.

Irrespective of the arrangement of stoppers, the supports are to be able to transmit the following force P_{sh} in the longitudinal and transverse direction:

$$P_{sh} = \mu \cdot \frac{P_{sV}}{\sqrt{d_h}}$$

where

P_{sV} = vertical supporting force

μ = frictional coefficient, to be taken as 0.5 in general

For non-metallic, low-friction support materials on steel, the friction coefficient may be reduced but not to be less than 0.35.

Supports as well as the adjacent structures and substructures are to be designed such that the permissible stresses according to [9.1.1] are not exceeded.

For substructures and adjacent structures of supports subjected to horizontal forces P_{sh}, a fatigue strength analysis is to be carried out.

9.23.2(c) Hatch Cover Stoppers. Hatch covers are to be sufficiently secured against horizontal shifting. Stoppers are to be provided for hatch covers on which cargo is carried.

The greater of the loads resulting from [3.5] and [9.23.2(a)] is to be applied for the dimensioning of the stoppers and their substructures.

The permissible stress in stoppers and their substructures, in the cover, and of the coamings is to be determined according to [9.1.1] . In addition, the provisions in [9.23.2(b)] are to be observed.

9.25 Corrosion Addition and Steel Renewal

9.25.1 Corrosion Addition for Hatch Covers and Hatch Coamings

The scantling requirements of the above sections imply the following general corrosion additions t_S:

TABLE 8
Corrosion Additions t_S for Hatch Covers and Hatch Coamings

Application	*Structure*	t_S *mm (in.)*
Weather deck hatches of container ships, car carriers, paper carriers, passenger vessels	Hatch covers	1.0 (0.04)
	Hatch coamings	1.0 (0.04)
Weather deck hatches of all other ship types covered by this Section	Hatch covers in general	2.0 (0.08)
	Weather exposed plating and bottom plating of double skin hatch covers	1.5 (0.06)
	Internal structure of double skin hatch covers and closed box girders	1.0 (0.04)
	Hatch coamings not part of the longitudinal hull structure	1.5 (0.06)
	Hatch coamings part of the longitudinal hull structure	1.0 (0.04)
	Coaming stays and stiffeners	1.5 (0.06)

9.25.2 Steel Renewal *(2024)*

Steel renewal is required where the gauged thickness is less than $t_{net} + 0.5$ mm ($t_{net} + 0.02$ in.) for

- Single skin hatch covers,
- The plating of double skin hatch covers, and
- Coaming structures the corrosion additions t_S of which are provided in [TABLE 8] .

Where the gauged thickness is within the range $t_{net} + 0.5\text{mm}(t_{net} + 0.02\text{in.})$ and $t_{net} + 1.0\text{mm}(t_{net} + 0.04\text{in.})$, coating (applied in accordance with the coating manufacturer's requirements) or annual gauging may be adopted as an alternative to steel renewal. Coating is to be maintained in condition with only minor spot rusting.

For the internal structure of double skin hatch covers, thickness gauging is required when hatch cover top or bottom plating renewal is to be carried out, or when this is deemed necessary , on the basis of the plating corrosion or deformation condition. In these cases, steel renewal for the internal structures is required where the gauged thickness is less than t_{net} mm (in.).

For corrosion addition $t_S = 1.0\text{mm}(0.04\text{in.})$ the thickness for steel renewal is t_{net} mm (in.) and the thickness for coating or annual gauging is when gauged thickness is between t_{net} mm (in.) and $t_{net} + 0.5\text{mm}(t_{net} + 0.02\text{in.})$.

10 Hatchways Closed by Covers of Steel Fitted with Gaskets and Clamping Devices for Spaces Other Than Cargo Holds *(2024)*

10.1 Strength of Covers

10.1.1 Scantlings

Where weathertight covers are constructed of steel, the maximum allowable stress and deflection under the design loads in [3.3] and the minimum top plate thickness are as follows.

Maximum allowable stress $0.8Y$, and not to exceed the critical buckling strength in compression

Maximum allowable deflection 0.0056 times the span, which is the greatest span of the primary support members

Top plate thickness $0.01s$, but not less than 6 mm (0.24 in.)

where Y and s are as defined in [9.1] and [9.3] , respectively.

Where the cross section of hatch cover stiffeners is not constant along the span, Appendix 3-2-A6 may be used to determine required scantlings.

10.3 Other Materials

The strength and stiffness of covers made of materials other than steel is to be equivalent to those of steel. Details for equivalency is to be submitted to ABS for approval.

10.5 Means for Securing Weathertightness

The covers are to be fitted with gaskets and clamping devices and so secured to maintain weathertightness in any sea conditions.

11 Hatchways in Decks at Higher Levels

11.1 Hatchways in Decks at Higher Levels *(2024)*

For the omission of gaskets on covers of hatchways in decks at high levels of cargo holds solely for transport of containers, see [9.19.2(b)] . For tests during subsequent surveys, refer to 7-3-2/1.1.1(f) and 7-3-2/5.1.11 of the ABS *Rules for Survey After Construction (Part 7).*

11.3 Hatchways in Lower Decks or within Fully Enclosed Superstructures

The following scantlings are intended for vessels of unrestricted service having conventional type covers. Scantlings for different types of covers or for vessels of restricted service will be separately considered.

11.3.1 Steel Covers *(2024)*

Where steel covers are fitted, the thickness of the plating is to be not less than required for platform decks in enclosed cargo spaces as obtained from 3-2-3/5.1. A stiffening bar is to be fitted around

the edges as required to provide the necessary rigidity to permit the covers being handled without deformation. The effective depth of the framework is normally to be not less than 4% of its unsupported length. Each stiffener in association with the plating to which it is attached is to have section modulus SM not less than that obtained from the following equation:

$$SM = 7.8hs\ell^2 \text{cm}^3$$

$$SM = 0.0041hs\ell^2 \text{in}^3$$

where

h = h_{cs}, in m (ft), the tween deck height for decks. Where the cargo uniform load p is specified and differs from 7.01 kN/m^3 (715 kgf/m^3, 44.7 lbf/ft^3) multiplied by the tween deck height, the height is to be proportionately adjusted.

s = spacing of the stiffeners, in m (ft)

ℓ = length of the stiffener, in m (ft)

11.3.2 Wheel Loading

Where provision is to be made for the operation or stowage of vehicles having rubber tires, the thickness of the hatch cover plating is to be not less than obtained from 3-2-3/5.17, for platform deck plating, except that the thickness of plate panels adjacent to the edges of the cover is to be at least 15% greater than that obtained from 3-2-3/5.17.

11.3.3 Beams and Wood Covers *(2024)*

Hatchways in lower decks or within fully enclosed superstructures are to be framed with steel beams of sufficient strength. Where such hatches are intended to carry a load of cargo, the hatch beams are to have a section modulus SM not less than that obtained from the following equation:

$$SM = 7.8hs\ell^2 \text{cm}^3$$

$$SM = 0.0041hs\ell^2 \text{in}^3$$

where

c = 1.18

h = tween-deck height, in m (ft). When a design load is specified, h is to be taken as p/n where p is the specified design pressure, in kN/m^2 (kgf/m^2, lbf/ft^2), and n is defined as 7.01 (715, 44.7).

s = spacing of hatch beams, in m (ft)

ℓ = length of hatch beams, in m (ft)

The wood covers are not to be less than 63.5 mm (2.50 in.) thick where the spacing of the beams does not exceed 1.52 m (5 ft). Where the height to which the cargo may be loaded on top of a hatch exceeds 2.6 m (8.5 ft), or where the spacing of the beams exceeds 1.52 m (5 ft), the thickness of the wood covers is to be suitably increased.

13 Small Hatches on the Exposed Fore Deck *(1 July 2024)*

The requirements of this Subsection are applicable to vessels with length, L, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, of 80 m (263 feet) or more where the height of the exposed deck in way of the hatch is less than 0.1 L or 22 m (72.2 ft) above the summer load waterline, whichever is less. The requirements apply to all small hatches located on the exposed fore deck within the forward 0.25 L. Small hatches in the context of this Subsection are hatches designed for access to spaces below the deck and are capable of being closed weathertight or watertight, as applicable. Their opening is normally 2.5 m^2 (27 ft^2) or less.

The requirements of this Subsection except that in 3-2-15/13.1 are not applicable to small hatches on container ships, which give access to a cargo hold and meet the conditions of 3-2-15/9.19.2(b). Hatch covers of such small hatches are considered non-weathertight regardless of whether they are actually weathertight or not. Such small hatches are to comply with the strength requirements in 3-2-15/13.1.

Hatches designed for emergency escape need not comply with [13.3i.], [13.3ii.], [13.5iii.] and [13.7].

13.1 Strength *(2024)*

For small rectangular steel hatch covers, the plate thickness, stiffener arrangement and scantlings are to be in accordance with [TABLE 9] and [FIGURE 13]. Stiffeners, where fitted, are to be aligned with the metal-to-metal contact points required in [13.5] (see also [FIGURE 13]). Primary stiffeners are to be continuous. All stiffeners are to be welded to the inner edge stiffener (see [FIGURE 14]).

Note:

For hatch covers with nominal sizes between the dimensions indicated in [TABLE 9], the stiffeners of the larger cover are to be required for stiffener scantlings

In those cases where the proposed hatch cover is larger than those indicated in [TABLE 9], but still in the range required to comply with this section (i.e., with opening of 2.5 square meters or less), the scantlings as indicated below are to be applied, with the stiffener arrangement similar to that indicated for hatch covers of 1330 x 1330 mm. Note that in no case are the scantlings to be less than those calculated in accordance with the requirements for the stiffeners of steel covers fitted with gaskets and clamping devices.

Nominal Size	*Cover Plate Thickness*	*Primary Stiffeners*	*Secondary Stiffeners*
(mm x mm)	(mm)	Flat Bar (mm x mm); number	
1580 x 1580	8	180 x 14; 2	100 x 10; 2

The upper edge of the hatchway coaming is to be suitably reinforced by a horizontal section, normally not more than 170 to 190 mm (6.9 to 7.5 in) from the upper edge of the coaming.

Commentary:

The horizontal stiffener should have strength enough to resist the pressures as calculated by section 3-2-17/11.7.2**,** with allowable bending stress as defined in section 3-2-17/11.7.3(a).

In the calculation of the pressure for hatches of rectangular shape, it should consider C_d = 1.0 and C_p = 1.0. The bending moment should be calculated considering the stiffener fixed at ends. A corrosion addition to the net section of 2. 0mm should be considered when defining the final stiffener's scantlings.

For small circular hatches in order to verify the scantlings of the horizontal stiffeners on the coaming, the hatch should be considered as a square with a side equal to the diameter of the offered circular hatch cover, and the same procedure applied for hatches of rectangular shape, but considering C_d = 0.8 and C_p = 1.0 in the calculation of the pressure.

End of Commentary

For small hatch covers of circular or similar shape, the cover plate thickness and reinforcement is to provide strength and stiffness equivalent to the requirements for small rectangular hatches.

For small hatch covers constructed of materials other than steel, the required scantlings are to provide strength and stiffness equivalent to 235 N/mm^2 (24 kgf/mm^2, 34,000 psi) yield strength steel. Strength of small hatch covers constructed of aluminum alloy may be in accordance with [7.3] .

13.3 Primary Securing Devices *(2024)*

The primary securing devices are to be such, that their hatch covers can be secured in place and made weathertight by means of a mechanism employing any one of the following methods:

i) Butterfly nuts tightening onto forks (clamps), or

ii) Quick acting cleats, or

iii) A central locking device.

Dogs (twist tightening handles) with wedges are not acceptable.

Commentary:

Securing devices of hatches designed for emergency escape should be of a quick-acting type (e.g., one action wheel handles are provided as central locking devices for latching/unlatching of hatch cover) operable from both sides of the hatch cover.

End of Commentary

Emergency escape hatches need not comply with *i)* and *ii)* above.

13.5 Requirements for Primary Securing *(2024)*

i) The hatch cover is to be fitted with a gasket of elastic material. This is to be designed to allow a metal-to-metal contact at a designed compression and to prevent over compression of the gasket by green sea forces that may cause the securing devices to be loosened or dislodged. The metal-to-metal contacts are to be arranged close to each securing device, in accordance with [FIGURE 14] , and of sufficient capacity to withstand the bearing force.

ii) The primary securing method is to be designed and manufactured such, that the designed compression pressure is achieved by one person without the need of any tools. A short bar for on/off tilting of quick acting cleats is acceptable.

iii) For a primary securing method using butterfly nuts, the forks (clamps) are to be of robust design. They are to be designed to minimize the risk of butterfly nuts being dislodged while in use, by knuckling the forks' tips upward, and raising the top surface on the free end, or by any similar method. The plate thickness of un-stiffened steel forks is not to be less than 16 mm (5/8in.) . An example arrangement is shown in [FIGURE 14] . Emergency escape hatches need not comply with the forgoing requirements in this paragraph.

iv) For small hatch covers on the exposed deck forward of the superstructure or deckhouse, the hinges are to be fitted on the fore edge such that the predominant direction of green water will cause the cover to close.

v) For small hatch covers located on the exposed deck forward of the fore-most cargo hatch, the hinges are to be fitted such that the predominant direction of green sea will cause the cover to close, which means that the hinges are normally to be located on the fore edge.

vi) On small hatches located between the main hatches, for example, between Nos. 1 and 2, the hinges are to be placed on the fore edge or outboard edge, whichever is practicable for protection from green water in beam sea and bow quartering conditions.

vii) On small hatches located elsewhere the hinges are to be placed either on the fore edge or outboard edge, whichever is more practical for protection against green water coming from beam sea and/or bow quartering sea at their location.

13.7 Secondary Devices *(2024)*

Small hatches on the fore deck are to be fitted with an independent secondary securing device, e.g., by means of a sliding bolt, a hasp or a backing bar of slack fit, which is capable of keeping the hatch cover in place even in the event that the primary securing device became loosened or dislodged. It is to be fitted on the side opposite to the hatch cover hinges. Emergency escape hatches need not comply with the forgoing requirements in this paragraph.

Commentary:

The secondary device does not necessarily need to keep the hatch cover weathertight.

End of Commentary

TABLE 9
Scantlings for Small Steel Hatch Covers on the Fore Deck

Nominal Size	*Cover Plate Thickness*	*Primary Stiffeners*	*Secondary Stiffeners*
(mm x mm)	*(mm)*	*Flat Bar (mm x mm); number*	
630 x 630	8	---	---
630 x 830	8	100 x 8; 1	---
830 x 630	8	100 x 8; 1	---
830 x 830	8	100 x 10; 1	---
1030 x 1030	8	120 x 12; 1	80 x 8; 2
1330 x 1330	8	150 x 12; 2	100 x 10; 2

FIGURE 13
Arrangement of Stiffeners

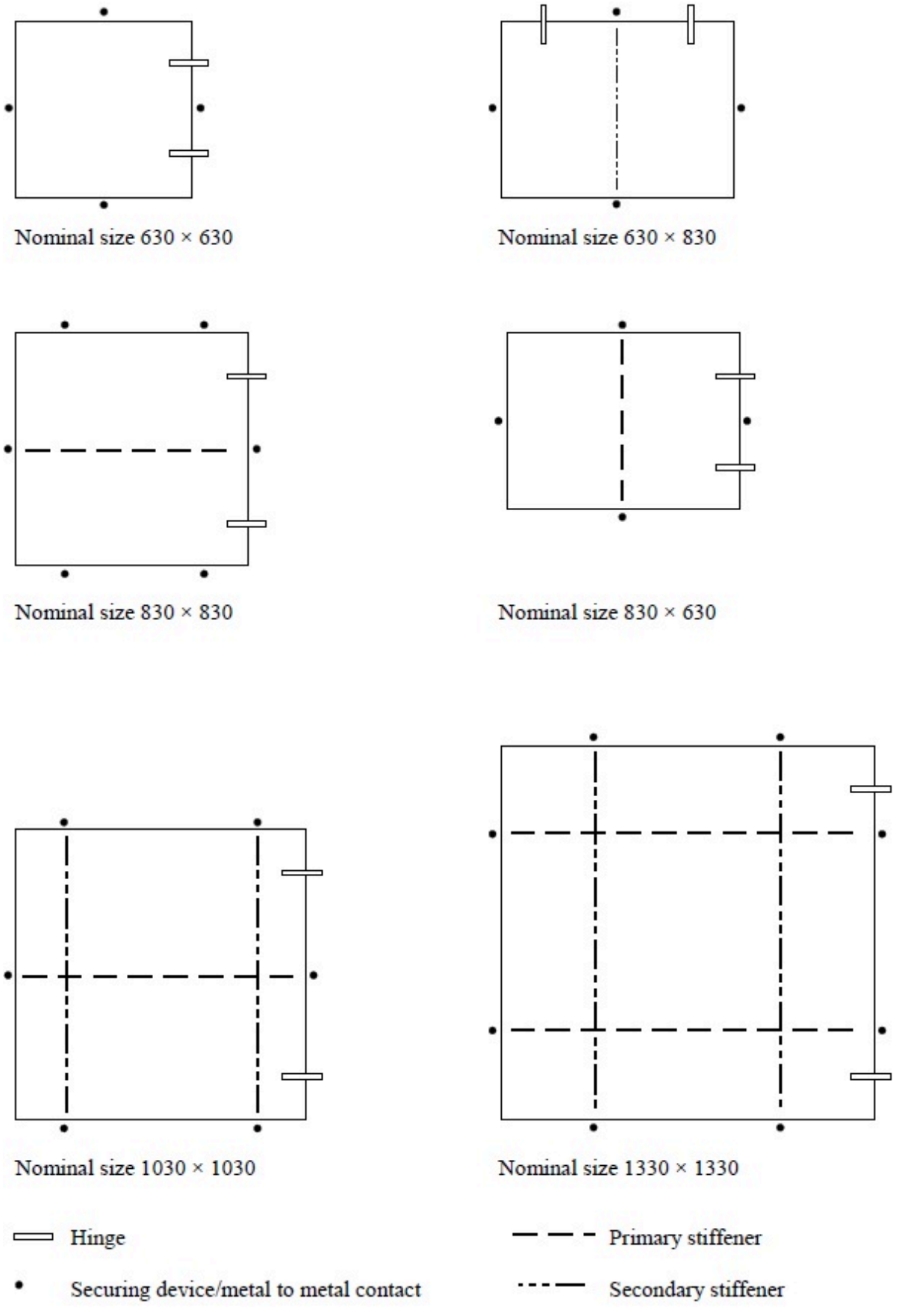
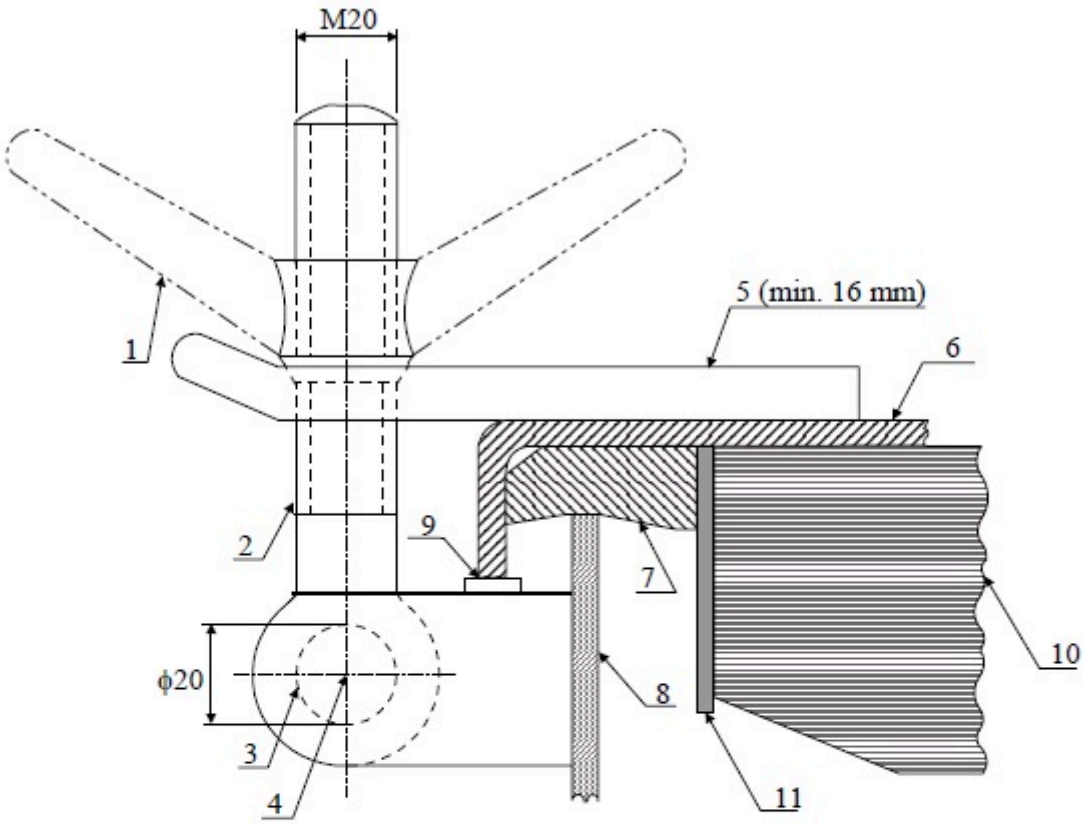


FIGURE 14
Example of Primary Securing Method



1: butterfly nut
2: bolt
3: pin
4: center of pin
5: fork (clamp) plate
6: hatch cover
7: gasket
8: hatch coaming
9: bearing pad welded on the bracket of a toggle bolt for metal to metal contact
10: stiffener
11: inner edge stiffener

(Note: Dimensions in millimeters)

15 Other Hatchways

15.1 Hatchways within Open Superstructures

Hatchways within open superstructures are to be considered as exposed.

15.3 Hatchways within Deckhouses

Hatchways within deckhouses may be flush or are to have coamings and closing arrangements related to the degree of protection offered by the deckhouse itself, in terms of construction and the means provided for the closing of all external deckhouse openings.

17 Additional Requirements for Subdivision

17.1 External Opening below Damage Waterline *(2024)*

All external openings leading to compartments assumed intact in the damage analysis, which are permitted by 3-3-1/5.3 to be below the final damage waterline, are to be watertight. Except for cargo hatch covers, these openings are to be fitted with indicators on the bridge showing whether the closing appliances are open or closed.

17.3 Internal Openings

The openings and penetrations in internal decks required to be watertight for subdivision are to meet the corresponding requirements for watertight doors in 3-2-9/1.3 and 3-2-9/9.

19 Machinery Casings

19.1 Arrangement

Machinery-space openings in Position 1 or 2 are to be framed and efficiently enclosed by steel casings of ample strength, and, wherever practical, those openings in freeboard decks are to be located within superstructures or deckhouses. Where the machinery casings are exposed, plating and stiffeners are to be in accordance with the requirements in 3-2-11/3. Access openings in exposed casings are to be fitted with steel doors complying with the requirements of 3-2-11/5.3, the sills of which are to be at least 600 mm (23.5 in.) above the deck if in Position 1, and at least 380 mm (15 in.) above the deck if in Position 2. Where the vessel is assigned a freeboard less than that based on Table B as allowed by the International Convention on Load Lines, 1966, there are generally to be no openings giving direct access from the freeboard deck to the machinery space. A door, complying with the requirements of 3-2-11/5.3, may however be permitted in the exposed machinery casing, provided that it leads to a space or passageway that is as strongly constructed as the casing and is separated from the engine room by a second door complying with 3-2-11/5.3. The sill of the exterior door is not to be less than 600 mm (23.5 in.), and the sill of the second/interior door is to be not less than 230 mm (9 in.). Other openings in such casings are to be fitted with equivalent steel covers, permanently attached in their proper positions. See also 4-7-2/1.9.5 and 4-7-2/1.9.6.

19.3 Fiddleys, Funnels, and Ventilators

Coamings of any fiddley, funnel or machinery-space ventilator in an exposed position on the freeboard or superstructure deck are to be as high above the deck as reasonable and practicable. Fiddley openings are to be fitted with strong covers of steel or other equivalent material, permanently attached in their proper positions and capable of being secured weathertight.

19.5 Casings within Open Superstructures

Scantlings of casings within open superstructures are to be in compliance with 3-2-11/3 for exposed casings on superstructure decks. Where end bulkheads to the superstructures are not provided, the arrangements and scantlings of casings are to be in compliance with 3-2-11/3 for an exposed casing on the freeboard deck.

19.7 Casings within Enclosed Superstructures

The thickness of casings within enclosed superstructures is to be not less than obtained from the following equation:

$t = 4.6 + L/64 + (s–760)/150\text{mm}$ but not less than 6.0 mm

$t = 0.181 + L/5333 + (s–30)/150\text{in.}$ but not less than 0.23 in.

The thickness of casing sides in accommodation spaces, above the crown of the machinery space, is not to be less than obtained from the following equation:

$$t = 4.5 + (s–760)/150\text{mm}$$

$$t = 0.18 + (s–30)/150\text{in.}$$

where

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft) but need not be taken greater than 122 m (400 ft)

s = the stiffener spacing, in mm (in.), but is not to be taken less than 760 mm (30 in.)

Where accelerated corrosion is expected, maybe such as in way of wet spaces, the thickness of coaming plates ought to be increased. Where casings are used in lieu of girders or deep beams, the plating in way of them is to be suitably increased. Stiffeners are to be fitted in line with the beams and are to have a section modulus SM not less than obtained from the following equation:

$$SM = 7.8chsl^2\text{cm}^3$$

$$SM = 0.0041chsl^2\text{in}^3$$

where

c = 0.14

s = spacing of stiffeners, in m (ft)

h = tween-deck height, in m (ft)

ℓ = length, between support, of the stiffeners, in m (ft)

Casings which support girders or pillars are to be stiffened in such a manner as to provide supports not less effective than required for stanchions or pillars.

19.9 Casings within Deckhouses

Casings within deckhouses are to have scantlings, sill heights and closing arrangements to entrances related to the degree of protection offered by the deckhouse itself, in terms of construction and the means provided for closing of all external deckhouse openings.

19.11 Exposed Casings on Superstructure Decks for Vessels Under 90 m (295 ft) in Length *(2024)*

Exposed casings on superstructure decks are to have plating not less in thickness than that obtained from the following equation:

$$t = 0.033L + 3.5\text{mm}t = 0.0004L + 0.14\text{in.}$$

where

t = thickness, in mm (in.)

L = length of vessel, in m (ft), as defined in 3-1-1/3, but is not to be taken as less than 30.5 m (100 ft).

Stiffeners in association with the plating to which they are attached are to have section modulus, SM, as obtained from the following equation:

$SM = 7.8chs\ell^2 \text{cm}^3 SM = 0.0041chs\ell^2 \text{in}^3$

where

c = 0.25

s = spacing of stiffeners, in m (ft)

h = height of casing, in m (ft)

ℓ = length, between supports, of the stiffeners, in m (ft)

21 Miscellaneous Openings in Freeboard and Superstructure Decks

21.1 Manholes and Scuttles

Manholes and flush scuttles in Position 1 or 2 or within superstructures other than enclosed superstructures are to be closed by covers capable of being made watertight. Unless secured by bolts spaced not more than 5 times the bolts' diameter, the covers are to be permanently attached.

21.3 Other Openings

Openings in freeboard decks other than hatchways, machinery-space openings, manholes and flush scuttles are to be protected by an enclosed superstructure or by a deckhouse, or companionway of equivalent strength and weathertightness. Any such opening in an exposed superstructure deck or in the top of a deckhouse on the freeboard deck, which gives access to a space below the freeboard deck or a space within an enclosed superstructure, is to be protected by a deckhouse or companionway as well. Doorways in such deckhouses or companionways are to be fitted with doors complying with the requirements of 3-2-11/5.3.

21.5 Escape Openings

i) The closing appliances of escape openings are to be of a type that is operable from each side.

ii) The maximum force needed to open the hatch cover is not to exceed 150 N (15.3 kgf, 33.7 lbf).

iii) The use of a spring equalizing, counterbalance or other suitable device on the hinge side to reduce the force needed for opening is acceptable.

21.7 Companionway Sills *(2022)*

The height above the deck of sills to the doorways in companionways is to be as follows:

Position 1	***Position 2***
For vessels 24 meters (79 feet) in length and greater	
600 mm (23.5 in.)	380 mm (15 in.)

Position 1	*Position 2*
For vessels under 24 meters (79 feet) in length [1,2]	
450 mm (17.5 in.)	300 mm (12 in.)

Notes:

1 Sill heights may be reduced on vessels which have freeboard in excess of the minimum geometric freeboard and/or a superstructure deck with height of deck in excess of the standard height of a superstructure.

2 For vessels with $L < 24$ m (79 ft), the sill height should be as indicated above, unless otherwise specifically requested by flag Administration.

21.9 Mast Openings

Openings penetrating decks and other structures to accommodate masts, kingposts and similar members are to be reinforced by fitting doublings or plating of increased thickness.

21.11 Chain Pipe Opening

Chain pipes through which anchor chains or wires are led are to be provided with permanently attached closing appliances minimizing the ingress of water. Steel, aluminum plate or a canvas cover with appropriate lashing arrangement will be acceptable for this purpose*. A cement and wire mesh arrangement is not permitted.

The arrangement on vessels that are not subject to the International Convention on Load Lines or its Protocol may be specially considered.

Note: * Examples of acceptable arrangements are such as:

i) Steel plates with cutouts to accommodate chain links or

ii) Canvas hoods with a lashing arrangement that maintains the cover in the secured position.

PART 3

CHAPTER 2
Hull Structures and Arrangements

SECTION 16
Protection of Shell Openings

1 General

1.1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1.1 Goals

The vessel structure is to be designed, constructed, operated, and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goal*
STRU 1	In the intact conditions, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU 2	Resist structural failure associated with accident conditions.
STRU 3	Provide protection to persons onboard, the environment and required safety services.
STAB 1	Have adequate watertight integrity and restoring energy to prevent capsize in an intact condition.
STAB 2	Have adequate subdivision and stability to provide survivability to damage or accidental conditions.
STAB 4	Detect accumulated liquids.
STAB 5	Be able to remove accumulated liquids to mitigate the effects of flooding.
MGMT 3	Establish procedures, plans and instructions for operations concerning the safety of the personnel, vessel, and protection of the environment. (ISM Code 7)
AUTO 4	Provide the equivalent degree of safety and operability from a remote location as those provided by local controls.

1.1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above stated goals, the following functional requirements apply to this section:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Stability (STAB)	
STAB-FR1	Openings in the sides of the vessels are to be watertight and protected to prevent water ingress into the intact hull.
STAB-FR2	The number of openings is to be minimized considering the operation of the vessel.
STAB-FR3	Means to drain water are to be provided in case of water ingress through large openings and to prevent spread of any leakage water.
STAB-FR4	The bow doors, inner doors, side shell doors and stern doors when fitted are to provide watertightness and structural integrity sufficient for their location, operational conditions and the surrounding structure.
STAB-FR5	Provide remote visual surveillance of inaccessible locations that may be flooded by shell doors.
STAB-FR6 (STRU)	Means are to be provided to prevent movement of the doors and accidental opening when closed.
Automation: Control, Monitoring and Safety Systems (AUTO)	
AUTO-FR1	Means of controlling and monitoring doors and devices are to be provided at accessible local, and remote where applicable, locations with fail-safe design.
Structure (STRU)	
STRU-FR1	Scantlings are to have sufficient strength to resist failure and excessive deformation associated with buckling and yielding when subjected to the loads anticipated throughout the service life, including bow impact load, slamming load, hydrodynamic lift and drag loads, vibration, load from rudders, propellers, and propulsion improvement devices.
STRU-FR2	The design of the termination of structural members is to be such as to prevent yielding or fatigue cracks.
STRU-FR3	The workmanship is to avoid discontinuities, misalignment and other harmful details that may lead to failure in service.
Safety Management (MGMT)	
MGMT-FR1	Information is to be provided for safe operation and maintenance of the door during the service life.

The goals and functional requirements in cross-referenced Rules are to be met.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

1.1.4 Application

Bow Doors and Inner Doors are to comply with the requirements of Section 3-2-16 for the arrangement, strength and securing of bow doors and inner doors leading to a complete or long enclosed superstructure, or to a long non-enclosed superstructure, where fitted to attain minimum bow height equivalence.

The requirements in this section are for two types of bow doors – Visor Doors and Side-Opening Doors. Other type of bow doors will be specially considered in association with the applicable requirements of these rules .

Side Shell Doors and Stern Doors are to comply with the requirements of Section 3-2-16 for the arrangement, strength and securing of side shell doors, abaft the collision bulkhead, and stern doors leading to enclosed spaces.

Side shell openings leading to relatively small enclosed watertight compartments (such as bunkering stations or passageways) are to comply with [2] if fitted with a second watertight door of equivalent strength and watertightness. Side shell openings leading into a relatively large cargo or similar compartment without a second watertight door are to comply with [3] .

Commentary:

The requirements in this section cover bow doors, side and stern doors and other shell openings leading to enclosed spaces below the freeboard deck and in the enclosed superstructure. Shell Openings without closing devices above freeboard deck should be included in the progressive flooding points for both intact and damage stability calculations.

For other miscellaneous shell openings and penetrations, refer to the following Rule sections:

- 3-2-2/9 for structural compensation for openings in shell
- 4-6-4/3.3.4 for pipe penetration to shell
- 4-6-5/7.5, 3-2-4/19.1, 4-6-2/9.13 for sea chests and shell connections
- 4-8-1/5.3.3 for special hull penetrations
- *Requirements for Air Lubrication System Installation* for shell openings for air dispensers on the hull

End of Commentary

1.1.5 Drawing submission

Drawings with the following information are to be submitted for the external doors:

i) General arrangement plan indicating location of the bow door, inner door, side shell door and stern door

ii) Door arrangement plan indicating doors and adjacent ship structure, securing devices and supporting devices and door operating mechanism

iii) Structural plans of the doors

iv) Door details indicating securing devices, supporting devices, locking devices, sealing arrangements, weld details, material specifications

v) Hull structure in way of the doors and details of attachments of supporting devices

vi) Lines plan indicating areas of transverse, horizontal and vertical projections of the bow door to enable angles α and β to be determined

vii) Drawings of Indicator lights and audible alarms for the doors and securing and locking devices.

viii) Arrangement plan of water leakage detection system, alarm and television surveillance system.

ix) Operating and Maintenance Manual

x) Calculations for the door, securing devices and supporting devices.

Commentary:

The following statutory requirements and IACS documents can be taken as reference for external openings:

- ICLL Reg.21
- SOLAS II-1/B-2/Reg. 15,15-1, 16
- IACS UI LL21
- IACS UR S8, S9, S15, S16, Z24
- IACS UR Technical Background document

End of Commentary

2 Cargo, Gangway, or Fueling Ports

2.1 Construction *(2024)*

Cargo, gangway, or fueling ports in the sides of vessels are to be capable of being made thoroughly watertight. Where frames are cut in way of such ports, web frames are to be fitted on each side of the opening and arrangements are to be provided for the support of the beams over the opening. Thick insert plates are to be fitted in the side shell to compensate for the openings. Doubler plates are not allowed for vessels over 61 m (200 feet) in length. The corners of the openings are to be well rounded.

Unless otherwise specifically required, openings in the side shell are to have a minimum corner radius of 0.1 times the width of the opening but need not exceed 450 mm (18 in.). Additionally, the minimum radius in way of narrow vertical ligaments between adjacent openings having the same depth is not to be less than 150 mm (6 in.).

Waterway angles and scuppers are to be provided on the deck in way of openings in cargo spaces below the freeboard deck or in cargo spaces within enclosed superstructures, to prevent the spread of any leakage water over the cargo deck.

Indicators showing whether the ports in the side shell below the freeboard or superstructure deck are secured closed or open are to be provided on the navigation bridge. See 4-9-8/1.9.2 for the requirements.

All outer doors are to open outwards unless specially approved.

Commentary:

IACS UI LL5 states that doors should generally open outwards to provide additional security against the impact of the sea. Doors which open inwards are subject to special approval by ABS.

For side or stern doors opening inwards, which in damaged condition can be immersed below equilibrium or intermediate waterplane, the deflections of the door frame should be controlled to not affect watertightness of the door. For the structural analysis for large doors, refer to the Commentary to [11.7] . Watertightness tests should be carried out in accordance with [11.7] .

IACS UR S-9/S9.5.1 & S9.5.2 provide requirements for side shell door and stern doors opening inward.

End of Commentary

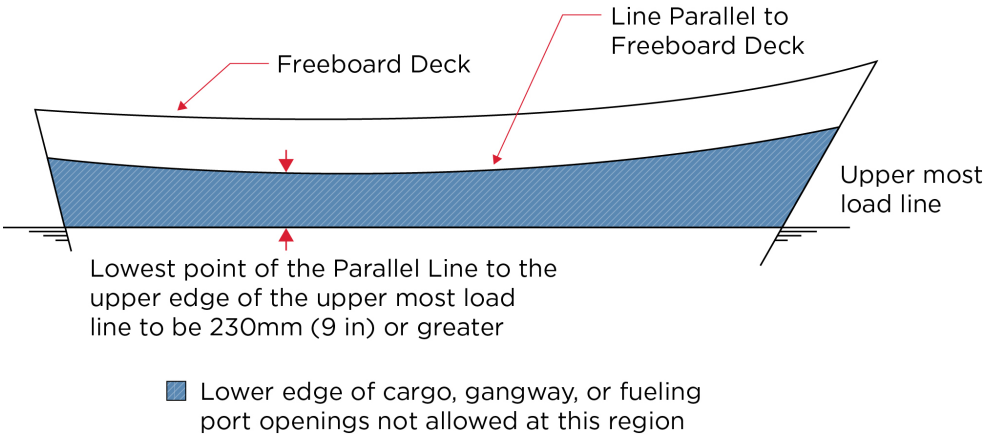
2.3 Location *(2024)*

Unless especially approved, the lower edge of cargo, gangway, or fueling port openings is not to be below a line drawn parallel to the freeboard deck at side, which has at its lowest point at least 230 mm (9 in.) above the upper edge of the uppermost load line, including all assigned seasonal marks. See 3-2-16/FIGURE 1.

Cargo ports or similar openings having their lower edge below the line defined above are to be fitted with a second internal door of equivalent strength and water-tightness to the shell door, with a leakage detection

device for the enclosed compartment between both doors. The drain from this compartment is to be led to the bilge with a screw-down valve, remotely controlled from an accessible location (see 4-6-4/3.3). Such ports are not to have their lowest point below the deepest subdivision loadline. (Passenger Vessel).

FIGURE 1
Location of Cargo, Gangway, or Fueling Port Openings *(2024)*



2.5 Watertight Subdivision Openings *(2024)*

For passenger ships and cargo ships of 80 m in length and above, the relevant regulations concerning shell and watertight subdivision openings contained in SOLAS 1974 as amended are to be complied with. See [1.1.5] / Commentary. For non-SOLAS vessels, the requirements of the flag Administrations are to be complied with.

Openings in the shell plating below the deck, limiting the vertical extent of damage, are to be kept permanently closed while at sea. Should any of these openings be accessible during the voyage, their closing appliances are to be fitted with a device which prevents unauthorized opening.

Closing appliances which are kept permanently closed at sea to provide the watertight integrity of external openings but are not fitted with a device which prevents unauthorized opening, due to their inaccessibility during the voyage, are to be provided with a notice affixed to each such closing appliance to the effect that it is to be kept closed.

3 Bow Doors, Inner Doors, Side Shell Doors and Stern Doors

3.1 General *(2024)*

Bow doors requirements in 3-2-16/3 are for the arrangement of bow doors and inner doors leading to a complete or long forward enclosed superstructures, or to a long non-enclosed superstructure, where fitted to attain minimum bow height equivalence. Hull supporting structure in way of the bow doors is to be able to withstand the loads imposed by the bow door securing and supporting devices without exceeding the allowable stresses for those devices, both given in this section.

Side shell doors fitted abaft of the collision bulkhead and stern doors leading into enclosed spaces are to meet the requirements of this section.

3.3 Arrangement

3.3.1 General

As far as practicable, bow doors and inner doors are to be arranged so as to preclude the possibility of the bow door causing structural damage to the inner door or to the collision bulkhead n the case of damage to or detachment of the bow door.

3.3.2 Bow Doors

Bow doors are to be situated above the freeboard deck except that where a watertight recess fitted for arrangement of ramps or other related mechanical devices is located forward of the collision bulkhead and above the deepest waterline, the bow doors may be situated above the recess.

3.3.3 Inner Doors

An inner door is to be fitted in the extension of the collision bulkhead required by 3-2-9/3.1.1. A vehicle ramp made watertight and conforming to 3-2-9/3.3 FIGURE 1A in the closed position can be accepted for this purpose.

3.3.4 Side Shell and Stern Doors *(2024)*

Stern doors for passenger vessels are to be situated above the freeboard deck.

Stern doors for Ro-Ro cargo vessels and all side shell doors need not be situated above the freeboard deck. The location of the stern doors and side shell doors is to comply with [2.3] .

For vessels with large stern or side doors for equipment or cargo, the following are to be taken into consideration in the design:

When the doors are located below the vertical limit or need to be open at sea, two scenarios are to be considered for the enclosed spaces protected by the door in damage stability, considering the space open and closed for floating conditions.

In addition to [17] , the strength of the side and stern doors is to be equivalent to the strength of the surrounding structure. Scantlings of the doors can be determined based on direct strength calculations. See Section 3-2-20 for guidance on the direct analysis. All load transmitting elements in the design load path from the door through securing and supporting devices into the ship structure, including welded connection, are to be of the same strength standard as required for the securing and supporting devices.

Commentary:

If compliance with [3.3.1] is not practicable, or inner door cannot be fitted in the extension of the collision bulkhead as required in [3.3.3] , a separate inner weathertight door should be installed.

End of Commentary

5 Definitions *(2024)*

5.1 Definitions

5.1.1 Securing Device

A device used to keep the door closed by preventing it from rotating about its hinges or its pivoted attachments to the vessel.

5.1.2 Supporting Device

A device used to transmit external or internal loads from the door to a securing device and from the securing device to the vessel's structure, or a device other than a securing device, such as a hinge, stopper or other fixed device, that transmits loads from the door to the vessel's structure.

5.1.3 Locking Device

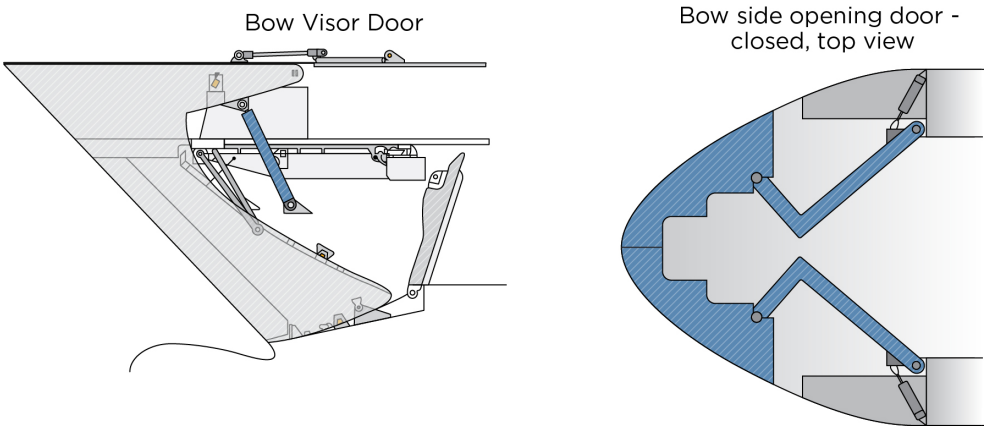
A device, which locks a securing device in the closed position.

5.1.4 Bow Door *(2024)*

Visor Doors. Opened by rotating upwards and outwards about a horizontal axis through two or more hinges located near the top of the door and connected to the primary structure of the door by longitudinal arranged lifting arms. See 3-2-16/FIGURE 2.

Side-opening Doors. Opened either by rotating outwards about a vertical axis through two or more hinges located near the outboard edges or by horizontal translation by means of linking arms arranged with pivoted attachments to the door and the ship. It is anticipated that side-opening bow doors are arranged in pairs. See 3-2-16/FIGURE 2.

FIGURE 2
Bow Door Type



7 Securing and Supporting Devices - Arrangements *(2024)*

7.1 General

Securing and supporting devices are to be arranged in accordance with this subsection, and are to have scantlings as required by [13.9] , [15.5] or [17.9] as appropriate.

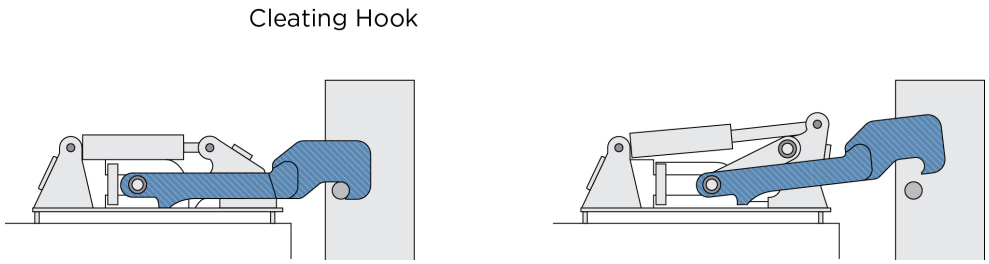
7.3 Side Shell and Stern Doors *(2024)*

Means are to be provided to prevent lateral or vertical movement of the side shell or stern doors when closed. Means are also to be provided for mechanically fixing the doors in the open position. See 3-2-16/FIGURE 3 for cleating hook and wedge arrangement.

The means of securing and supporting the doors are to have strength and stiffness equivalent to the adjacent structure.

Clearance and packing for side shell and stern doors are to be in accordance with [7.5.1] .

FIGURE 3
Example Cleat Arrangement *(2024)*



7.5 Bow Doors *(2024)*

Means are to be provided to prevent lateral or vertical movement of the bow doors when closed. Means are also to be provided for mechanically fixing the door in the open position. See [FIGURE 3] .

Means of securing and supporting the door are to maintain equivalent strength and stiffness of the adjacent structure.

7.5.1 Clearance and Packing

The maximum design clearance between the door and securing/supporting devices is not to exceed 3 mm (0.12 in.). Where packing is fitted, it is to be of a comparatively soft type and the supporting forces are to be carried by the steel structure only.

7.5.2 Visor Door Arrangement *(2024)*

The pivot arrangement is to be such that the visor is self-closing under external loads. The closing moment, M_y, as defined in [19.5.1] is not to be less than M_{yo} as given by the following equation:

$$M_{yo} = W_c + 0.1\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}\sqrt{F_x^2 + F_z^2}$$

where W, a, b, c, F_x and F_z are as defined in [17] .

In addition, the arrangement of the door is to be such that the reaction forces of pin or wedge supports at the base of the door does not act in the forward direction when the door is loaded in accordance with [19.5.4] .

Commentary:

The intention of the requirements in 3-2-16/7.5.2 for pivot or hinge arrangement is that the door is effectively self-closing under external loads, and the opening moment is to be balanced by the reaction forces.

End of Commentary

9 Securing and Locking Arrangement

9.1 General

Securing devices are to be provided with a mechanical locking arrangement (self-locking or separate arrangement), or are to be of the gravity type.

9.3 Operation *(2024)*

Securing devices are to be simple to operate and readily accessible. The opening and closing systems as well as the securing and locking devices are to be interlocked in such a way that they can only operate in the proper sequence.

For control and monitoring of securing devices, water leakage protection and door surveillance, refer to [4-9-8/1.7] and 4-9-8/1.9.

11 Tightness

11.1 Bow Doors *(2024)*

Bow doors are to be so fitted as to provide tightness and to give effective protection to the inner doors.

11.3 Inner Doors

Inner doors forming part of the extension of the collision bulkhead are to be weathertight over the full height of the cargo space and arranged with fixed sealing supports on the aft side of the doors.

11.5 Side Shell and Stern Doors

Side shell doors and stern doors are to provide water tightness.

11.7 Testing at Watertight Door Manufacturer *(2024)*

To comply with relevant subdivision and damage stability regulations, doors which become immersed by an equilibrium or intermediate waterplane at any stage of assumed flooding are to be hydrostatically tested at the manufacturer's plant. The head of water used for the test shall correspond at least to the head measured from the lower edge of the door opening, at the location in which the door is to be fitted in the vessel, to the most unfavorable damage waterplane.

Commentary:

For large doors greater than 6 m^2, structural analysis may be accepted in lieu of pressure testing. Where such doors utilize gasket seals, a prototype pressure test of the gasket seal should be carried out to confirm that the compression of the gasket material can accommodate maximum deflection, as determined by the structural analysis. After installation of such a door, the initial gasket compression is to be recorded. Refer to SOLAS II-1/Reg.16/2 and UI 21.5.2 of MSC.1/Circ 1572 for doors where testing is not feasible.

End of Commentary

13 Bow Door Scantlings

13.1 General

Bow doors are to be framed and stiffened so that the whole structure is equivalent to the intact bow structure when closed.

13.3 Primary Structure *(2024)*

Scantlings of primary members are to be designed so that the allowable stresses indicated in [25.1] are not exceeded when the structure is subjected to the design loads indicated in [19.1] . Normally, simple beam theory may be applied to determine the bending stresses. Members are to be considered to have simply supported end connections. The buckling strength of primary members is to be verified as being adequate. Refer to 3-2-20/9.3.

13.5 Secondary Stiffeners *(2024)*

Secondary stiffeners are to be supported by primary members constituting the main stiffening of the door. The section modulus, *SM,* of secondary stiffeners is to be as required 3-2-5/1.2 and 3-2-5/5. Consideration is to be given, where necessary, to differences in fixity between the requirements in 3-2-5/1.2, 3-2-5/5, and bow door stiffeners.

In addition, stiffener webs are to have a net sectional area exclusive of any openings, A, including effective brackets where applicable, not less than that obtained from the following equation:

$$A = VQ/10\text{cm}^2 (A = VQ\text{cm}^2, A = VQ/6.5\text{in}^2)$$

where

V = shear force, in kN (tf, Ltf), in the stiffener calculated using the uniformly distributed external pressure, P_{eb}, given in [19.1]

Q = as defined in 3-2-1/5.3.

Commentary:

The term ”net sectional area” refers to the deduction of area due to openings in the web. A corrosion allowance does not need to be deducted.

For secondary stiffeners, if the fixity of the stiffeners at ends is simply supported, then *SM* should be adjusted by 1.5 times that required by Section 3-2-5, which assumes fixed-fixed.

End of Commentary

13.7 Plating

The thickness of bow door plating is to be not less than that required for side shell plating at the same location.

13.9 Securing and Supporting Devices – Scantlings for Bow Doors *(2024)*

Scantlings of securing and supporting devices are to be designed so that the allowable stresses indicated in [25.1] are not exceeded when the structure is subjected to the design loads indicated in [19.3] . All load-transmitting elements in the design load path from the door through securing and supporting devices into the vessel structure, including welded connections, are to meet the strength standards required for securing and supporting devices. These elements include pins, support brackets and back-up brackets. Where fitted, threaded bolts are not to carry support forces, and the maximum tensile stress in way of the threads is not to exceed the allowable stress given in [25.5] .

In determining the required scantlings, the door is to be assumed to be a rigid body. Only those active supporting and securing devices having an effective stiffness in the relevant direction are to be included and considered when calculating the reaction forces on the devices. Small or flexible devices such as cleats intended to provide compression load on the packing material are not to be included in the calculations.

13.9.1 Bearing Pressure

The bearing pressure on steel to steel bearings is to be calculated by dividing the design force by the projected bearing area, and is not to exceed the allowable stress given in [25.3] .

13.9.2 Redundancy

In addition to the above requirements, the arrangement of the securing and supporting devices is to be designed with redundancy such that in the event of failure of any single securing or supporting device, the stresses in the remaining devices do not exceed the allowable stresses indicated in [25.1] by more than 20% when the above loads are applied.

13.9.3 Visor Door Securing and Supporting Devices

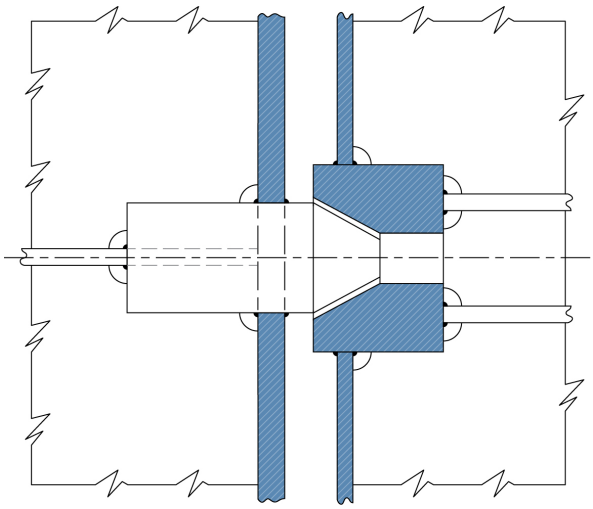
Securing and supporting devices, excluding the hinges, are to be capable of resisting the vertical design force given in [19.5.3] without exceeding the allowable stresses in [25.1] .

Two securing devices are to be provided at the lower part of the door, each capable of providing the full reaction force required to prevent opening of the door without stresses exceeding the allowable stresses indicated in [25.1] . The opening moment, M_o, to be balanced by this force is as given in [19.5.2] .

13.9.4 Side-opening Door Thrust Bearing *(2024)*

A thrust bearing is to be provided in way of girder ends at the closing of the two doors, and is to prevent one door from shifting towards the other one under the effect of unsymmetrical pressure. Securing devices are to be fitted to secure sections thrust bearing to one another. See 3-2-16/Figure 4 for an example.

FIGURE 4
Example Thrust Bearing *(2024)*



13.11 Visor Door Lifting Arms and Supports

Where visor type bow doors are fitted, calculations are to be submitted verifying that lifting arms and their connections to the door and vessel structure are adequate to withstand the static and dynamic forces applied during the lifting and lowering operations under a wind pressure of at least 1.5 kN/m^2 (0.15 tf/m^2, 0.014 Ltf/ft.^{2}).

15 Inner Door Scantlings

15.1 General

Scantlings of inner doors are to meet the requirements of this subsection. In addition, where inner doors are used as vehicle ramps, scantlings are not to be less than required for vehicle decks in 3-2-3, 3-2-7, and 3-2-8.

15.3 Primary Structure *(2024)*

Scantlings of primary members are to be designed so that the allowable stresses indicated in [25.1] are not exceeded when the structure is subjected to the design loads indicated in [21.1] . The buckling strength of primary members is to be verified as being adequate. Refer to 3-2-20/9.3.

Plating and stiffeners of the inner door are to be equivalent to the intact bow structure when closed.

15.5 Securing and Supporting Devices

Scantlings of securing and supporting devices are to be designed so that the allowable stresses indicated in [25.1] are not exceeded when the structure is subjected to the design loads indicated in [21] . Where fitted,

threaded bolts are not to carry support forces, and the maximum tensile stress in way of the threads is not to exceed the allowable stress given in [25.5] .

The bearing pressure on steel to steel bearings is to be calculated by dividing the design force by the projected bearing area, and is not to exceed the allowable stress given in [25.3] .

17 Side Shell Door and Stern Door Scantlings

17.1 General

Scantlings of side shell doors or stern doors are to meet the requirements of this subsection. In addition, where the doors are used as vehicle ramps, scantlings are not to be less than required for vehicle decks in 3-2-3, 3-2-7, and 3-2-8.

17.3 Primary Structure *(2024)*

Scantlings of primary members are to be designed so that the allowable stresses indicated in [25.1] are not exceeded when the structure is subjected to the design loads indicated in [23] . Normally, simple beam theory may be applied to determine the bending stresses. Members are considered to have simply supported end connections. The buckling strength of primary members is to be verified as being adequate. Refer to 3-2-20/9.3.

17.5 Secondary Stiffeners

Secondary stiffeners are to be supported by primary members constituting the main stiffening of the door. The section modulus, *SM*, of secondary stiffeners is to be not less than required by 3-2-5 for frames in the same location. In addition, the net sectional area of stiffener webs is to be in accordance with [13.5] , using the external pressure, p_e, given in [23] .

17.7 Plating

The thickness of side or stern door plating is to be not less than that required for side shell plating at the same location.

17.9 Securing and Supporting Devices

Scantlings of securing and supporting devices are to be designed so that the allowable stresses indicated in [25.1] are not exceeded when the structure is subjected to the design loads indicated in [23] . All load-transmitting elements in the design load path from the door through securing and supporting devices into the vessel structure, including welded connections, are to meet the strength standards required for securing and supporting devices. Where fitted, threaded bolts are not to carry support forces, and the maximum tensile stress in way of the threads is not to exceed the allowable stress given in [25.5] .

In determining the required scantlings, the door is to be assumed to be a rigid body. Only those active supporting and securing devices having an effective stiffness in the relevant direction are to be included and considered when calculating the reaction forces on the devices. Small or flexible devices such as cleats intended to provide compression load on the packing material are not to be included in the calculations.

17.9.1 Bearing Pressure

The bearing pressure on steel-to-steel bearings is to be calculated by dividing the design force by the projected bearing area, and is not to exceed the allowable stress given in [25.3] .

17.9.2 Redundancy

In addition to the above requirements, the arrangement of the securing and supporting devices is to be designed with redundancy such that in the event of a failure of any single securing or supporting device, the stresses in the remaining devices do not exceed the allowable stresses indicated in [25.1] by more than 20% under the above loads.

19 Bow Door Design Loads

19.1 External Pressure

The design external pressure, P_{eb}, is to be taken as indicated by the following equation:

$$P_{eb} = nc(0.22 + 0.15\tan\beta)(0.4V_d \sin\alpha + 0.6\sqrt{kL_1})^2 \text{kN/m}^2(\text{tf/m}^2, \text{Ltf/ft}^2)$$

where

n = 2.75 (0.280, 0.0256)

c = 1.0

L = length of vessel, as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, in m (ft.)

L_1 = length of vessel, in m (ft.), as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, but need not be taken as greater than 200 m (656 ft.)

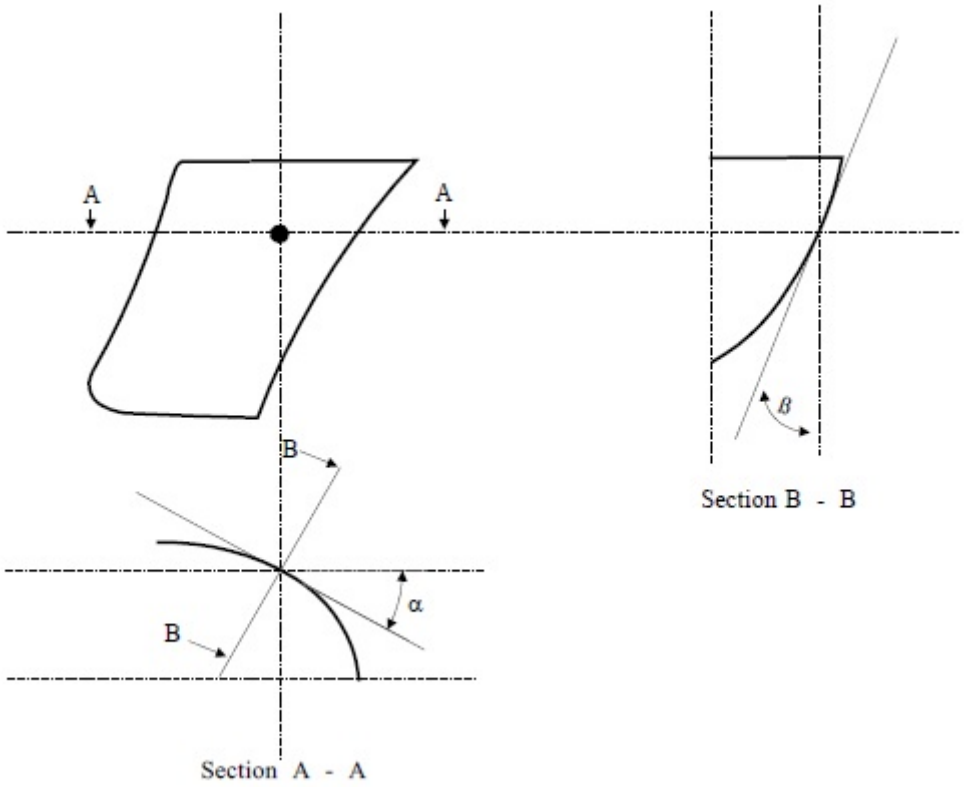
β = flare angle at the point to be considered, defined as the angle between a vertical line and the tangent to the side shell plating measured in a vertical plane normal to the horizontal tangent to the shell plating. See [FIGURE 1] .

α = entry angle at the point to be considered, defined as the angle between a longitudinal line parallel to the centerline and the tangent to the shell plating in a horizontal plane. See [FIGURE 1] .

k = 1.0 (1.0, 0.305)

V_d = vessel design speed, as defined in 3-2-14/3.1.

FIGURE 5
Entry and Flare Angles



19.3 External Forces *(2024)*

The design external forces considered in determining scantlings of securing and supporting devices of bow doors are not to be taken less than those given by the following equations:

$F_x = P_{em} A_x$

$F_y = P_{em} A_y$

$F_z = P_{em} A_z$

where

F_x = the design external force in the longitudinal direction, in kN (tf, Ltf)

F_y = the design external force in the transverse direction, in kN (tf, Ltf)

F_z = the design external force in the vertical direction, in kN (tf, Ltf)

A_x = area, in m^2 (ft^2), of the transverse projection of the door between the levels of the bottom of the door and the top of the upper deck bulwark or between the bottom of the door and the top of the door, whichever is the lesser. Where the flare angle of the bulwark is at least 15° less than the flare of the adjacent shell plating, the bulwark may be excluded and the distance may be measured from the bottom of the door to the upper deck or to the top of the door, whichever is the lesser.

A_y = area, in m^2 (ft^2), of the longitudinal projection of the door between the levels of the bottom of the door and the top of the upper deck bulwark or between the bottom of the door and the top

of the door, whichever is the lesser. Where the flare angle of the bulwark is at least 15° less than the flare of the adjacent shell plating, the bulwark may be excluded and the distance may be measured from the bottom of the door to the upper deck or to the top of the door, whichever is the lesser.

A_z = area, in m^2 (ft^2), of the horizontal projection of the door between the levels of the bottom of the door and the top of the upper deck bulwark or between the bottom of the door and the top of the door, whichever is the lesser. Where the flare angle of the bulwark is at least 15° less than the flare of the adjacent shell plating, the bulwark may be excluded and the distance may be measured from the bottom of the door to the upper deck or to the top of the door, whichever is the lesser.

P_{em} = bow door pressure, P_{eb}, determined using α_m and β_m in place of α and β.

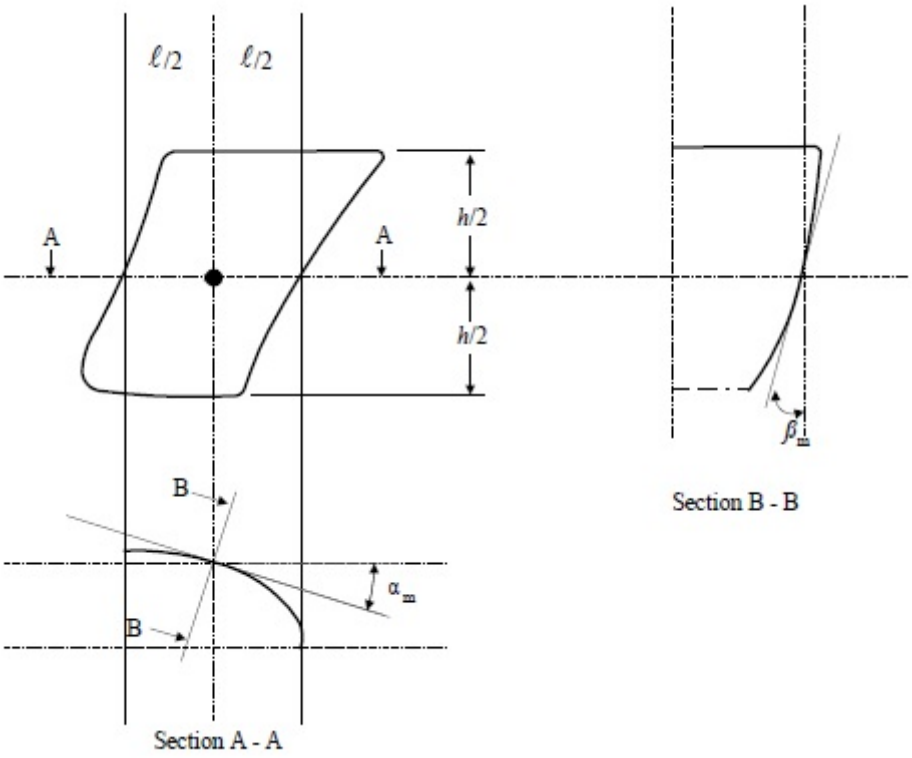
β_m = lare angle measured at a point on the bow door $\ell/2$ aft of the stem line on a plane $h/2$ above the bottom of the door, as shown in [FIGURE 2] .

α_m = entry angle measured at the same point as β_m. See [FIGURE 2] .

h = height, in m (ft.), of the door between the levels of the bottom of the door and the upper deck or between the bottom of the door and the top of the door, whichever is less

ℓ = fore and aft length, in m (ft.), of the door at a height $h/2$ above the bottom of the door

FIGURE 6
Definition of α_m and β_m



19.5 Visor Door Forces, Moments and Load Cases

19.5.1 Closing Moment

For visor doors, the closing moment, M_y is to be taken as indicated by the following equation:

$M_y = F_x a + Wc - F_z b$ kN-m(tf-m,Ltf-ft.)

where

W = weight of the visor door, in kN (tf, Ltf)

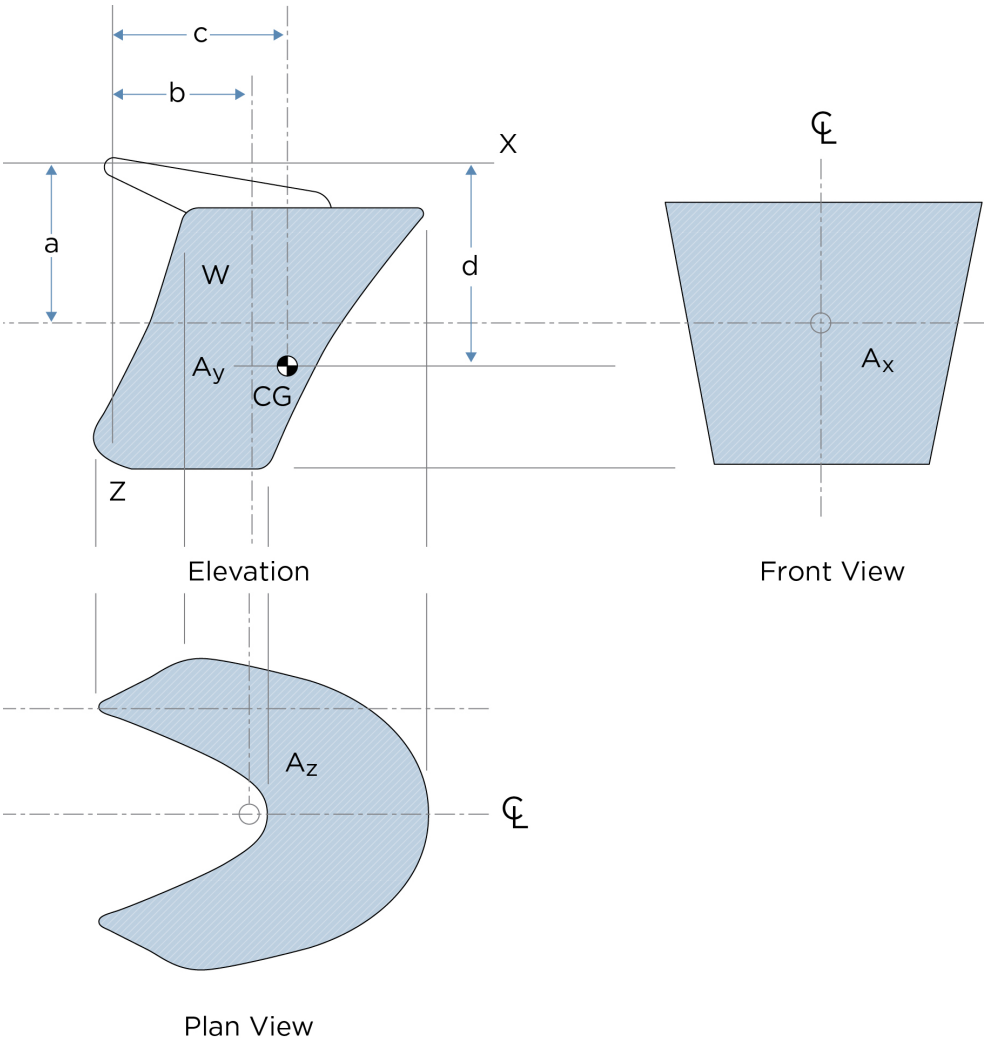
α = vertical distance, in m (ft), from the visor pivot to the centroid of the transverse vertical projected area of the visor door. See [FIGURE 3] .

b = horizontal distance, in m (ft), from visor pivot to the centroid of the horizontal projected area of the visor door. See [FIGURE 3] .

c = horizontal distance, in m (ft), from the visor pivot to the center of gravity of the visor. See [FIGURE 3] .

F_x and F_z are as defined in [19.3]

FIGURE 7
Visor Type Bow Door Design Parameters *(2024)*



19.5.2 Opening Moment

The opening moment, M_o, is to be taken as indicated by the following equation:

$M_o = Wd + 5A_x a$ kN-m ($Wd + 0.5A_x a$ tf-m, $Wd + 0.047A_x a$ Ltf-ft)

where

d = vertical distance, in m (ft), from the hinge axis to the center of gravity of the door

W, A_x and a are as indicated above.

19.5.3 Vertical Design Force

The vertical design force is to be taken as $F_z - W$ where F_z is as defined in [19.3] and W is as defined in [19.5.1].

19.5.4 Combined Load Case 1

The visor doors are to be evaluated under a load of F_x, F_z and W acting simultaneously with F_x and F_z acting at the centroid of their respective projected areas.

19.5.5 Combined Load Case 2

The visor doors are to be evaluated under a load of $0.7F_y$ acting on each side separately together with $0.7F_x$, $0.7F_z$ and W. F_x, F_y and F_z are to be taken as acting at the centroid of their respective projected areas.

19.7 Side-Opening Door Load Cases

19.7.1 Combined Load Case 1

Side opening doors are to be evaluated under a load of F_x, F_y, F_z and W acting simultaneously with F_x, F_y and F_z acting at the centroid of their respective projected areas.

19.7.2 Combined Load Case 2

Side opening doors are to be evaluated under a load of $0.7F_x$, $0.7F_x$ and W acting on both doors simultaneously and $0.7F_y$ acting on each door separately.

21 Inner Door Design Loads

21.1 External Pressure

The design external pressure is to be taken as the greater of P_{ei} or P_h as given by the following equations:

$P_{ei} = 0.45\text{L1}$ kN/m^2 ($0.046L_1$ tf/m^2, $0.00128L_1$ Ltf/ft^2)

$P_h = 10\text{h}$ kN/m^2 ($1.0h$ tf/m^2, $0.029h$ Ltf/ft^2)

where

L_1 is as defined in [19.1].

h = the distance, in m (ft), from the load point to the top of the cargo space.

21.3 Internal Pressure

The design internal pressure, P_i is to be taken as not less than 25 kN/m^2 (2.5 tf/m^2, 0.23 Ltf/ft^2).

23 Design Forces for Side Shell and Stern Doors *(2024)*

23.1 Design Forces for Primary Members

The design force, in kN (tf, Ltf), for primary members is to be the greater of the following:

External force: $F_e = A\, p_e$

Internal force: $F_i = F_o + W$

23.3 Design Forces for Securing or Supporting Devices of Doors Opening Inwards

The design force, in kN (tf, Ltf), for securing or supporting devices of doors opening inwards is to be the greater of the following:

External force: $F_e = A\, p_e + F_p$

Internal force: $F_i = F_o + W$

23.5 Design Forces for Securing or Supporting Devices of Doors Opening Outwards

The design force, in kN (tf, Ltf), for securing or supporting devices of doors opening outwards is to be the greater of the following:

External force: $F_e = A\, p_e$

Internal force: $F_i = F_o + W + F_p$

where

A = area, in m^2 (ft^2), of the door opening

W = weight of the door, in kN (tf, Ltf)

F_p = total packing force, in kN (tf, Ltf). Packing line pressure is normally not to be taken less than 5.0 N/mm (0.51 kg/mm, 28.6 lbf/in.).

F_o = the greater of F_c and kA, in kN (tf, Ltf)

k = 5 (0.51, 0.047)

F_c = accidental force, in kN (tf, Ltf), due to loose cargo, etc., to be uniformly distributed over the area A and not to be taken less than 300 kN (30.6 tf, 30.1 Ltf). For small doors such as bunker doors and pilot doors, the value of F_c may be appropriately reduced. However, the value of F_c may be taken as zero provided an additional structure such as an inner ramp is fitted which is capable of protecting the door from accidental forces due to loose cargoes.

P_e = external design pressure, in kN/m^2 (tf/m^2, Ltf/ft^2), determined at the center of gravity of the door opening and not taken less than:

$p_e = k_1$ for $Z_G \geq d$

$p_e = k_2(d–Z_G) + k_1$ for $Z_G < d$

Moreover, for vessels fitted with bow doors, p_e for stern doors is not to be taken less than:

$p_e=nc(0.8+0.6(k_3L)^{0.5})^2$

For vessels fitted with bow doors, and operating in restricted service, the value of p_e for stern doors will be specially considered.

k_1 = 25.0 (2.55, 0.233)

k_2 = 10.0 (1.02, 0.0284)

d = draft, in m (ft), as defined in 3-1-1/9

Z_G = height of the center of area of the door, in m (ft), above the baseline.

n = 0.605 (0.0616, 0.00563)

c = 1

k_3 = 1.0 (1.0, 0.305)

L = length of vessel, in m (ft), as defined in 3-1-1/3.1, but need not be taken as greater than 200 m (656 ft).

25 Allowable Stresses

25.1 Primary Structure and Securing and Supporting Devices

The following stresses are not to be exceeded under the loads indicated above.

Shear Stress:		$\tau = 80/Q$ N/mm^2	($8.2/Q$ kgf/mm^2, $11600/Q$ psi)
Bending Stress:		$\sigma = 120/Q$ N/mm^2	($12.2/Q$ kgf/mm^2, $17400/Q$ psi)
Equivalent Stress:	$\left(\sqrt{\sigma^2 + 3\tau^2}\right)$:	$\sigma_e = 150/Q$ N/mm^2	($15.3/Q$ kgf/mm^2, $21770/Q$ psi)

where Q is as defined in 3-2-1/5.3.

25.3 Steel Securing and Supporting Devices Bearing Stress

For steel to steel bearings in securing and supporting devices, the nominal bearing pressure is not to exceed $0.8\sigma_f$, where σ_f is the yield stress of the bearing material.

25.5 Tensile Stress on Threaded Bolts

The tensile stress in threaded bolts is not to exceed $125/Q$ N/mm^2 ($12.7/Q$ kgf/mm^2, $18000/Q$ psi).

27 Operating and Maintenance Manual

The following information is to be submitted for review.

27.1 Manual

An operating and maintenance manual for the doors is to be provided onboard and is to contain at least the following:

- Main particulars and design drawings
- Service conditions, e.g., service area restrictions, emergency operations, acceptable clearances for supports

- Maintenance and function testing
- Register of inspections and repairs

27.3 Operating Procedures

Documented operating procedures for closing and securing the doors are to be kept onboard and posted at an appropriate location.

PART 3

CHAPTER 2
Hull Structures and Arrangements

SECTION 17
Bulwarks, Rails, Freeing Ports, Side Scuttles, Windows, Ventilators, Tank Vents and Overflows *(2024)*

1 General *(2024)*

1.1 Objective

1.1.1 Goals

The vessel structure is to be designed, constructed, operated, and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goal*
STAB 1	have adequate watertight integrity and restoring energy to prevent capsize in an intact condition.
STAB 5	be able to remove accumulated liquids to mitigate the effects of flooding.
STRU 1	in the intact condition, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU 3	provide protection to persons onboard, environment and required safety service.
SAFE 1.2	provide means to minimize the risk of strikes against objects, slips, and falls within the vessel and overboard.

1.1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above stated goals, the following functional requirements apply to this section:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Safety of Personnel (SAFE)	
SAFE-FR1	Efficient means are to be provided on all exposed parts of the freeboard and superstructure decks to which crew have normal access to prevent persons from falling overboard.

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
SAFE-FR2	Satisfactory means are to be provided for the protection of the crew from fire and heavy weather when transiting to and from their quarters, the machinery space and all other parts used during the normal operations of the ship.
Stability (STAB)	
STAB-FR1	Where wells are formed on the weather portions of freeboard or superstructure decks, ample provision is to be made for rapidly freeing the decks of water.
STAB-FR2 (STRU)	Side scuttles, windows, skylights, etc., including the glass, deadlights and storm covers, if fitted, are to be of substantial strength to provide watertightness/weathertightness of the external boundary.
STAB-FR3	The position and size of the side scuttles and windows are to minimize the risk of water ingress.
STAB-FR4	Ventilators and air pipes, tank vents and overflows are to be of substantial construction and be effectively protected to prevent water ingress.
STAB-FR5	Means of closure are to be provided for openings in locations likely to have water on deck in heavy weather.
STAB-FR6	Continuous supply of ventilation is to be provided to machinery and other critical spaces in heavy weather while minimizing the risk of water ingress.
STAB-FR7	Automatic weathertight means are to be provided on air pipes to allow passage of air but prevent water ingress in all normal and emergency conditions.
STAB-FR8	The intact and damage stability analysis is to consider the risk of water ingress through external openings leading to compartments.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

2 Bulwarks and Guard Rails *(2024)*

The vessel is to be fitted either with permanent bulwarks or with efficient rails of the same height and of strong construction meeting requirements in this section, protecting all exposed parts of the freeboard and superstructure decks to which crew have normal access.

2.1 Height on Manned Vessels

The height of bulwarks and guard rails on exposed parts of freeboard and superstructure decks, and if applicable, at the boundary of first tier deckhouses and at the ends of superstructures is to be at least 1.0 m (39.5 in.) from the deck surface. Where this height would interfere with the operation of the vessel, a lesser height may be approved if adequate protection is provided. Where approval of a lower height is requested, justifying information is to be submitted.

2.3 Bulwarks *(2024)*

2.3.1 Strength Requirements *(2024)*

i) Bulwarks are to be of ample strength in proportion to their height and efficiently stiffened at the upper edge by a suitable bar or equivalent. The bulwark plating is to be kept clear of the sheerstrake and the lower edge effectively stiffened. Bulwarks and stays are to be aligned with underdeck structure.

ii) The gross thickness of bulwark plating, at the boundaries of exposed freeboard deck and superstructure deck, is not to be less than that given in 3-2-17/Table 1A.

TABLE 1A
Thickness of Bulwark Plates

Height of bulwark	*Gross Thickness of Bulwark Plate*
1.8 m (5.91 ft) or more	Thickness required for a superstructure side in the same position, obtained from 3-2-11/3.3, but not less than 6 mm (0.24 in.).
1.0 m (3.28 ft)	6 mm (0.24 in.)
Intermediate Height	By linear interpolation

iii) Bulwarks are to be supported by efficient stays. Stays on freeboard decks are to be spaced not more than 1.83 m (6 ft) apart. The stays are to be formed either of flanged plate or built-up sections and are to be efficiently attached to the bulwarks and deck plating. The gross section modulus of stays, $Z_{stay-gr}$, is not to be less than:

$$Z_{\text{stay-gr}} = 77 h_{\text{blwk}}^2 S_{\text{stay}} \left(\text{cm}^3\right),$$

$$Z_{\text{stay-gr}} = 0.133 h_{\text{blwk}}^2 S_{\text{stay}} \left(\text{in}^3\right),$$

where:

h_{blwk} = height of bulwark from the top of the deck plating to the top of the rail, in m (ft).

S_{stay} = spacing of the stays, in m (ft).

In the calculation of the section modulus, only the material connected to the deck is to be included. The bulb or flange of the stay may be taken into account where connected to the deck.
Where the bulwark plating is connected to the sheer strake, a width of attached plating, not exceeding 600 mm (23.6 in.), may also be included.

iv) Where it is intended to carry timber deck cargoes, the bulwark stays are to be not more than 1.52 m (5 ft) apart and have increased attachment to deck and bulwark.

v) Gangways and other openings in bulwarks are to be located well away from breaks of superstructures, and heavy plates are to be fitted in way of mooring pipes.

vi) For vessels over 61 m (200 ft) in length, bulwarks are to be arranged such that they are free from hull girder stress within 0.6L amidships. Long bulwarks within 0.6L amidships are not to be welded to deck plating unless expansion joints are arranged at 0.1L apart.

Commentary:

For vessels under 61 meters (200 ft) in length, bulwark plating on freeboard deck may be connected to the sheerstrake, provided the conditions listed below are complied with:

i The hull girder stress at the top of the bulwark, as well as at the deck at side, comply with the Rule required value.

ii The bulwark plate thickness is not less than thickness required for forecastle side plating.

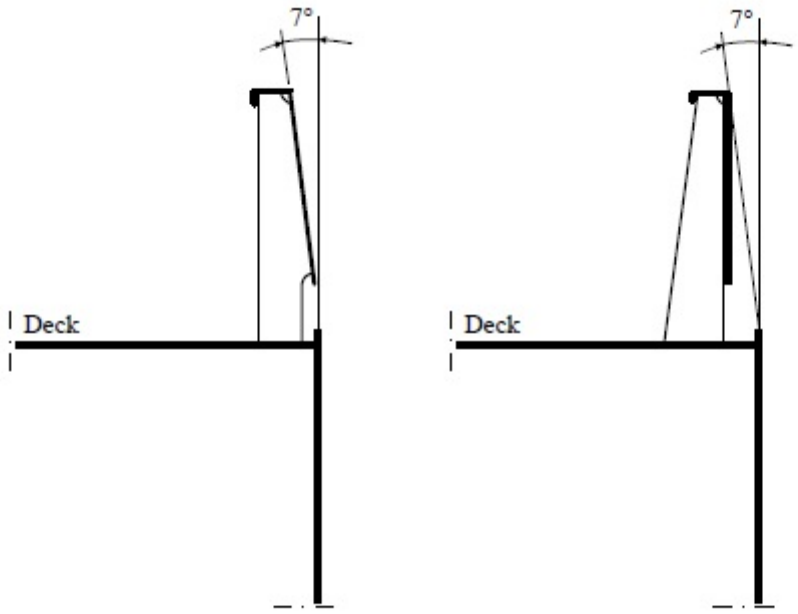
iii Welding of bulwark plate to sheerstrake is carried out in accordance with Section [2-4-1].

End of Commentary

2.3.2 Openings in Bulwarks *(2024)*

Openings in bulwarks are to be protected by rails or bars spaced not more than 230 mm (9 in.) apart. Vertical rails or bars spaced not more than 230 mm (9 in.) apart can be accepted in lieu of rails or bars arranged horizontally.

FIGURE 1
Bulwark Stanchion Offset for OSV *(2019)*



2.5 Guard Rails

2.5.1

Fixed, removable or hinged stanchions are to be fitted at approximately 1.5 m (5 ft) apart. Removable or hinged stanchions are to be capable of being locked in the upright position.

2.5.2 *(1 July 2021)*

At least every third stanchion is to be supported by a bracket or stay. Dimensions and arrangement of stanchion and stays are to be as shown in [FIGURE 2] . Where this arrangement would interfere with the safe traffic of persons on board, the following alternative arrangements of stanchions may be acceptable:

i) At least every third stanchion is to be of increased breadth, $kb_s = 2.9\,b_s$ at the attachment of stanchion to the deck, or,

ii) At least every second stanchion is to be of increased breadth, $kb_s = 2.4\,b_s$ at the attachment of stanchion to the deck, or,

iii) Every stanchion is to be of increased breadth, $kb_s = 1.9\,b_s$ at the attachment of stanchion to the deck.
where, b_s is not to be taken as less than 60 mm (2.36 in.) (see [FIGURE 3]). The thickness of the flat bar stanchions is not to be less than 15 mm (0.59 in.).
For any of the above arrangements *i), ii)* or *iii)* above, the following details are to be complied with:

iv) Flat steel stanchion required by *i), ii)* or *iii)* above is to be aligned with supporting member below the deck unless the deck plating thickness exceeds 20 mm (0.79 in.) and welded to

deck with double continuous fillet weld with minimum leg size of 7.0 mm (0.28 in.) or as specified by the design standard.

v) The underdeck supporting member of the stanchion is to be a minimum of 100 × 12 mm (4.0 × 0.5 in.) flat bar welded to deck by double continuous fillet weld (see [FIGURE 3]).

Alternative arrangements could be acceptable provided that it can be shown equivalent in strength and stiffness to the above requirements or based on recognized international standards.

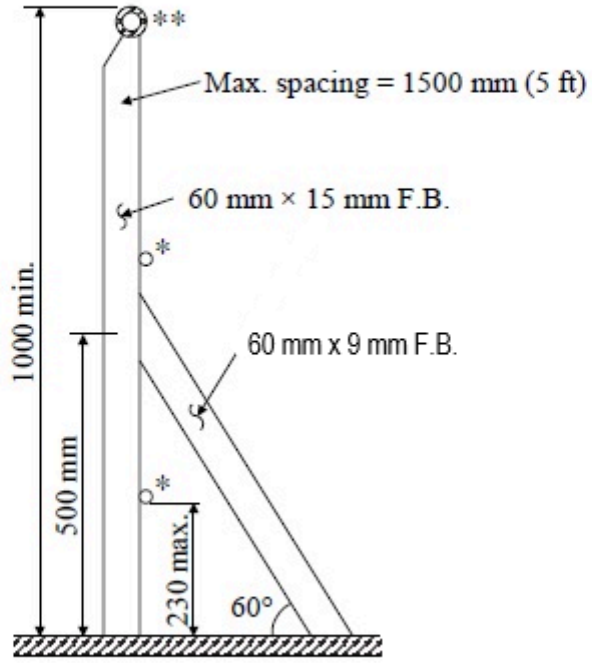
Lengths of chain may only be accepted in lieu of guard rails if they are fitted between two fixed stanchions and/or bulwarks.

Where necessary for the normal operation of the vessel, steel wire ropes may be accepted in lieu of guard rails. They may be used with either fixed or portable stanchions and shall be made taut by means of turnbuckles.

FIGURE 2
Guardrail Stanchion *(1 July 2021)*

** Top Rail = 34 mm outside diameter pipe with 2.6 mm minimum wall thickness (or pipes having an equivalent section modulus)

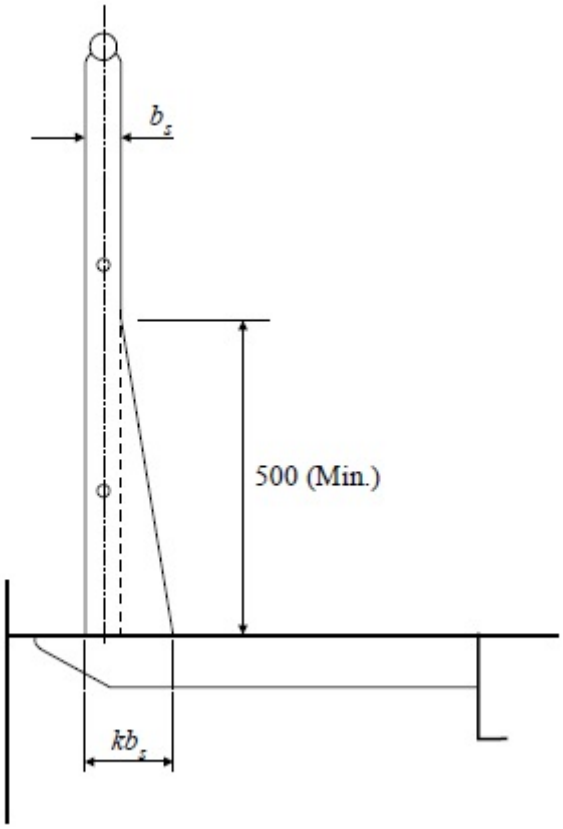
* = 19 mm solid round bar or 26.9 mm outside diameter pipe with 2.3 mm minimum wall thickness (or pipes having an equivalent section modulus)



Standard stanchion, rail, and stay sizes.

(Stay to be provided at every third stanchion)

FIGURE 3
Guardrail Stanchion



2.5.3 *(2019)*

The clear opening below the lowest course is not to exceed 230 mm (9 in.). Where a foot-stop is installed at the deck level the clear opening below the lowest course may be measured from the top of the foot-stop. The clear distances between the lowest and the middle courses, as well as the middle and the upper courses are not to exceed 380 mm (15 in.).

2.5.4 *(2019)*

For vessels with rounded gunwales, stanchions are to be placed on the flat of the deck.

2.5.5 *(2024)*

Stanchions, rails and stays are to be provided with a protective coating.

Commentary:

Where the height of bulwarks or guard rails would interfere, at least half the length of the exposed parts of the freeboard deck should be fitted with open rails as per IACS UI LL59. Otherwise, freeing ports should be provided complying with [5] .

End of Commentary

3 Access and Crew Protection

3.1 General *(2024)*

Satisfactory means in the form of guard rails, lifelines, gangways or under-deck passages, etc., are to be provided for the protection of the crew in getting to and from their quarters, the machinery space, and all other parts (see [TABLE 1]).

3.3 Access to Bow on Tankers *(2024)*

Tankers, including oil carriers, fuel oil carriers, gas carriers and chemical carriers, are to be provided with means to enable the crew to gain safe access to the bow even in severe weather conditions in accordance with 3-2-17/Table 1B.

TABLE 1B
Acceptable Arrangement for Access
(1 July 2024)

Type of Vessel	*Locations of access in Vessel*	*Assigned Summer Freeboard*	*Acceptable arrangements according to type of freeboard assigned*			
			Type A	*Type B–100*	*Type B–60*	*Type B & B+*
All Vessels other than Oil Tankers*, Chemical Tankers* and Gas Carriers*	**1.1: Access to Midship Quarters** **1.1.1.** Between poop and bridge, or **1.1.2.** Between poop and deckhouse containing living accommodation, or navigating equipment, or both	≤ 3000 mm (≤ 118 in.)	a b e	a b e	a b c(1) e f(1)	a b c(1) c(2) c(4)
		> 3000 mm (> 118 in.)	a b e	a b e	a b c(1) c(2) e f(1) f(2)	d(1) d(2) d(3) e f(1) f(2) f(4)
	1.2: Access to Ends **1.2.1** Between poop and bow (if there is no bridge), or **1.2.2.** Between bridge and bow, or **1.2.3.** Between a deckhouse containing living accommodation or navigating equipment, or both, and bow, or **1.2.4** In the case of a flush deck vessel, between crew accommodation and the forward and after ends of ship.	≤ 3000 mm (≤ 118 in.)	a b c(1) e f(1)	a b c(1) c(2) e f(1) f(2)	a b c(1) c(2) e f(1) f(2)	
		> 3000 mm (> 118 in.)	a b c(1) d(1) e f(1)	a b c(1) c(2) d(1) d(2) e f(1) f(2)	a b c(1) c(2) c(4) d(1) d(2) d(3) e f(1) f(2) f(4)	

Type of Vessel	*Locations of access in Vessel*	*Assigned Summer Freeboard*	*Acceptable arrangements according to type of freeboard assigned*			
			Type A	*Type B–100*	*Type B–60*	*Type B & B+*
Oil Tankers*, Chemical Tankers* and Gas Carriers*	**2.1: Access to Bow** **2.1.1.** Between poop and bow, or **2.1.2.** Between a deckhouse containing living accommodation or navigating equipment, or both, and bow, or **2.1.3.** In the case of a flush deck vessel, between crew accommodation and the forward end of ship.	$\leq (A_f + H_s)$**	a e f(1) f(5)			
		$> (A_f + H_s)$**	a e f(1) f(2)			
	2.2: Access to After End In the case of a flush deck vessel, between crew accomodation and the after end of ship.	As required in 1.2.4 for other types of ships				

*Oil Tanker, Chemical Tanker and Gas Carrier as defined in SOLAS: II-1/2.22, VII/8.2 and VII/11.2 respectively.
** A_f : the minimum summer freeboard calculated as type A ship regardless of the type freeboard actually assigned.
H_s : the standard height of superstructure as defined in ICLL Regulation 33.

Note: Deviations from some or all of these requirements or alternative arrangements for such cases as vessels with very high gangways (i.e.: certain gas carriers) may be allowed, subject to agreement on a case-by-case basis with the relevant Flag Administration.

I. Construction Keys (a) through (f)

a) A well-lighted and ventilated under-deck passageway with clear opening at least 0.8 m (2.6 ft) in width and 2.0 m (6.6 ft) in height, providing access to the locations in question and located as close as practicable to the freeboard deck. For tankers, see also [5C-2-3/17.5] , 5C-2-3/31.5, 5C-2-3/31.9, 5C-2-3/31.11 and [5C-2-3/31.17] .

b) A permanently constructed gangway fitted at or above the level of the superstructure deck on or as near as practicable to the center line of the vessel, providing a continuous platform of a non-slip surface at least 0.6 m (2 ft) in width, with a foot-stop and guard rails extending on each side throughout its length. Guard rails are to be as required in [3.1] and [1.5] except that stanchions are to be fitted at intervals not more than 1.5 m (5 ft).

c) A permanent walkway at least 0.6 m (2 ft) in width fitted at freeboard deck level consisting of two rows of guard rails with stanchions spaced not more than 3 m (10 ft). The number of courses of rails and their spacing are to be as required in [1.5] . Hatchway coamings not less than 0.6 m (2 ft) in height may be regarded as forming one side of the walkway, provided that two rows of guard rails are fitted between the hatchways.

d) A 10 mm (0.4 in.) minimum diameter wire rope lifeline supported by stanchions about 10 m (33 ft) apart, or

A single hand rail or wire rope attached to hatch coamings, continued and adequately supported between hatchways.

e) A permanently constructed gangway fitted at or above the level of the superstructure deck on or as near as practicable to the center line of the vessel:

- Located so as not to hinder easy access across the working areas of the deck;
- Providing a continuous platform at least 1.0 m (3.3 ft) in width
- Constructed of fire resistant and non-slip material;
- Fitted with guard rails extending on each side throughout its length. Guard rails are to be as required in [3.1] and [3-2-17/2.5.1 & 3-2-17/2.5.3] except that stanchions are to be fitted at intervals not more than 1.5 m (5 ft);
- Provided with a foot-stop on each side;
- Having openings, with ladders where appropriate, to and from the deck. Openings are to be not more than 40 m (131 ft) apart;
- Having shelters of substantial construction, set in way of the gangway at intervals not exceeding 45 m (148 ft) if the length of the exposed deck to be traversed exceeds 70 m (230 ft). Every such shelter is to be capable of accommodating at least one person and be so constructed as to afford weather protection on the forward, port and starboard sides.

f) A permanent and efficiently constructed walkway fitted at freeboard deck level on or as near as practicable to the center line of the vessel having the same specifications as those for a permanent gangway listed in (e)*, except for foot-stops. On ships certified for the carriage of liquids in bulk, the hatch coamings may be accepted as forming one side of the walkway provided a combined height of hatch coaming and hatch cover in the closed condition is not less than 1 m (3.3 ft) and two rows of guard rails are fitted between the hatchways.
(*) For tankers less than [100 m (328 ft)] in length, the minimum width of the gangway platform or deck level walkway fitted in accordance with arrangement (e) or (f), respectively, may be reduced to 0.6 m (2 ft).

II. Transverse Location Keys (1) through (5) - for Construction (c), (d) and (f) where specified in the Table

1) At or near the centerline of vessel or fitted on hatchways at or near the centerline of vessel.

2) Fitted on each side of the vessel.

3) Fitted on one side of the vessel, provision being made for fitting on either side.

4) Fitted on one side only.

5) Fitted on each side of the hatchways as near to the centerline as practicable.

III. Notes:

1) In all cases where wire ropes are fitted, adequate devices are to be provided to enable maintaining their tautness.

2) A means of passage over obstructions, if any, such as pipes or other fittings of a permanent nature are to be provided.

3) Generally, the width of the gangway or walkway should not exceed 1.5 m (5 ft).

3.5 Embarkation, Disembarkation and Pilot Transfer Arrangement *(2023)*

For vessels that are to comply with the SOLAS Convention, the following are to be met:

The means of embarkation and disembarkation for in port and port-related operations are to be provided, such as gangways and accommodation ladders. They are to be designed and constructed in accordance with recognized international standards such as ISO 7061 and ISO 5488. The details are to be submitted for review.

The pilot transfer arrangements are to be provided in accordance with the applicable requirements in SOLAS Regulation V/23. The details of pilot ladder are to be submitted for our review by the manufacturer as complying with the recommendations by the International Organization for Standardization, in particular publication ISO 799.

Commentary:

Exceptions may be allowed as per II-1 Regulation 3-9 of SOLAS as given below:

Circumstances where compliance may be deemed unreasonable or impractical may include where the ship:

1 Has small freeboards and is provided with boarding ramps; or

2 Is engaged in voyages between designated ports where appropriate shore accommodation/embarkation ladders (platforms) are provided.

End of Commentary

5 Freeing Ports *(2024)*

5.1 Definitions *(2024)*

Type 'A' Vessel – One that is designed to carry only liquid cargoes in bulk and has cargo tanks that have only small access openings closed by watertight gasketed covers of steel or equivalent material. Such a vessel also possesses these features:

i) A high integrity of exposed deck

ii) A high degree of safety against flooding, resulting from the low permeability of loaded cargo spaces and the degree of subdivision usually provided

Type 'B' Vessel – Vessels which do not qualify as a Type 'A' vessel are considered to be Type 'B' vessels.

Type 'B' Vessels with reduced freeboards:

Type 'B-100' – A vessel complying with 'B-100' Flooding Standard which can receive reduced freeboard up to 100% of the total difference between the tabular freeboard for a Type 'A' and a Type 'B' Vessel.

Type 'B-60' – A vessel complying with 'B-60' Flooding Standard which can receive reduced freeboard up to 60% of the total difference between the tabular freeboard for a Type 'A' and a Type 'B' Vessel.

Flush Deck Vessel – A vessel which has no superstructure on the freeboard deck. However, it may have sheer and/or camber.

Wear Deck – An elevated walking surface located above the plating forming the deck of a vessel. Some wear decks are a fully raised platform (creating a void between the deck and working surface), such as on a fishing vessel. Flush wear decks, such as on an offshore supply vessel, may consist of a layer of sheathing to protect the freeboard deck

Deck Obstruction - Any structure that impedes the free flow of water in a transverse direction from side-to-side across the vessel.

Trunk – A weathertight structure on the freeboard deck which has a breadth less than 92% of the breadth of the vessel.

Well – Any area on the deck exposed to the weather, where water may be entrapped. Wells are considered to be deck areas bounded on two or more sides by deck structure.

Free Flow Area – Free flow area on deck is the net area of gaps between hatchways, and between hatchways and superstructures and deckhouses up to the actual height of the bulwark.

Bulwark – For the consideration of freeing ports, a bulwark is a structure:

i) Located on the weather decks within 0.04B of the sides of the vessel

ii) With an average height exceeding 300 mm (12 in.)

iii) That can entrap water for a period of time, with due consideration given to trim, list, rolling, pitching, and the stowage of cargo or equipment

Open Superstructure – A superstructure that is open at either or both ends to wells formed by bulwarks on the open deck.

Screen Bulkhead – A structure that extends from the side of a deckhouse or superstructure to the side of the vessel, with the purpose of acting as a screen to block the passage of on-deck water from running aft and to direct it overboard.

5.2 General *(2024)*

Where bulwarks on the weather portions of freeboard or superstructure decks form wells, provision is to be made for rapidly freeing the decks of water and for draining them in accordance with this Subsection. Examples of wells include passage between the bulwark and the cargo rail or the cargo deck between port and starboard cargo rails, or the passage between the bulwark and the deckhouse bulkhead.

The required freeing port area is to be determined based on the characteristics of the wells in question, assuming that no freeing arrangements exist. The effective area of offered freeing arrangements is then assessed and compared to the required area. If the effective area is less than the required area, additional freeing arrangements are to be provided.

For configurations symmetrical to the centerline of the vessel, only one required freeing port area calculation is necessary, because it can be applied to each side. For asymmetrical configurations, the port and starboard sides of the well are to be evaluated independently, which necessitates two separate calculations.

An additional check is to be made that there is a proper distribution of the effective freeing port area, based on the characteristics of the wells.

Commentary:

Weather deck scuppers may be fitted when local recesses exist which for various reasons cannot be drained by means of freeing ports

Water on deck should be viewed as a liability which is to be avoided. Water on deck has four detrimental effects on a vessel's stability:

i Adds to the displacement of the vessel

ii Raises the vertical center of gravity (VCG)

iii Creates a free surface

iv May increase rolling acceleration and the roll angle

End of Commentary

5.3 Freeing Port Area on Freeboard Deck *(2024)*

The minimum required freeing port areas in bulwarks on the freeboard deck, on each side of the vessel, are to comply with the requirements in 3-2-17/Table 2.

TABLE 2
Required Freeing Port Area in Bulwarks Located on the Freeboard Deck

Vessel Types	*Area A of Freeing Ports, in m^2 (ft^2)*	*Applicable Section of 3-2-17*
With a well not adjacent to a trunk or hatchways	A_1	5.4
Fitted with a trunk included in freeboard calculation and/or breadth $\geq 0.6B$	$0.33\ \ell_B\ h_B$	5.5

Vessel Types	*Area A of Freeing Ports, in m^2 (ft^2)*	*Applicable Section of 3-2-17*
Fitted with a trunk not included in freeboard calculation and or continuous or substantially continuous hatch coamings	A_2	5.5
Fitted with non-continuous trunk and/or hatch coamings	A_3	5.6
Fitted with open superstructure	As for superstructures	5.7
	A_w for wells	5.7
Type A	0.33 $\ell_B h_B$	5.9.1
Type B-100	0.33 $\ell_B h_B$	5.9.2
Type B-60	0.25 $\ell_B h_B$	5.9.2
Where: ℓ_B = length, in m (ft), of bulwark in a well at one side of the vessel h_B = mean height, in m (ft), of bulwark in a well of length ℓ_B		

5.4 Freeing Port Area in a Well not Adjacent to a Trunk or Hatchways *(2024)*

5.4.1 Vessels with Standard or Greater Sheer *(2024)*

Except as provided in [5.3] and [5.5], and in cases where the sheer in way of the well is standard or greater than standard as defined in the International Convention on Load Lines 1966, the minimum freeing-port area A_1 on each side of the vessel for each well on the freeboard deck is to be obtained from 3-2-17/Table 3.

TABLE 3
Required Freeing Port Area in a Well not Adjacent to a Trunk or Hatchway
(2024)

Location	***Area A_1 of Freeing Ports, in m^2***	
	$\ell_B \leq 20$	$\ell_B \geq 20$
Freeboard deck and raised quarter decks	0.7 + 0.035 ℓ_B + A_C	0.07 ℓ_B + A_C
Superstructure decks	0.35 + 0.0175 ℓ_B + 0.5 A_C	0.035 ℓ_B + 0.5 A_C
Note: ℓ_B = length, in m, of bulwark in the well, to be taken not greater than 0.7 L_f where L_f is as defined in 3-1-1/3.3. A_C = area, in m^2, to be taken with its sign equal to: $A_C = 0.04\ell_B(h_B - 1.2)$ for $h_B > 1.2$ $A_C = 0$ for $0.9 \leq h_B \leq 1.2$ $A_C = 0.04\ell_B(h_B - 1.2)$ for $h_B < 0.9$ h_B = mean height, in m, of bulwark in a well of length ℓ_B		
Location	***Area A_1 of Freeing Ports, in ft^2***	
	$\ell_B \leq 66$	$\ell_B \geq 66$

Freeboard deck and raised quarter decks	$7.6 + 0.115\ \ell_B + A_C$	$0.23\,\ell_B + A_C$
Superstructure decks	$3.8 + 0.0574\ \ell_B + 0.5\,A_C$	$0.115\ \ell_B + 0.5\,A_C$

Note:

ℓ_B = length, in ft, of bulwark in the well, to be taken not greater than $0.7\ L_f$ where L_f is as defined in 3-1-1/3.3.

A_C = area, in ft^2, to be taken with its sign equal to:

$A_C = 0.04\ell_B\,(h_B - 3.9)$ for $h_B > 3.9$
$A_C = 0$ for $2.95 \le h_B \le 3.9$
$A_C = 0.04\ell_B\,(h_B - 2.95)$ for $h_B < 2.95$

h_B = mean height, in ft, of bulwark in a well of length ℓ_B

5.4.2 Vessels with Less than Standard Sheer *(2024)*

In vessels without sheer, the freeing port area on the freeboard deck calculated as described above is to be increased by 50%. Where the sheer is less than the standard, the percentage is to be obtained by linear interpolation.

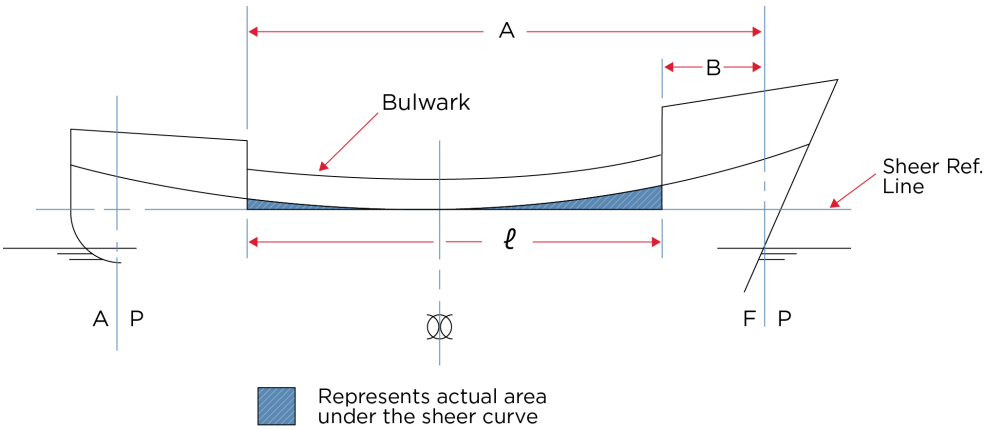
For wells located on decks other than the freeboard deck, it is not necessary to calculate the actual sheer in way of the well except for a well located on a full superstructure deck (at least one standard height) which was used to measure the sheer ordinates for the sheer correction in Regulation 38.

Commentary:

The term "standard sheer", referred to in the ICLL66 Annex I Regulation 24, is the **area** under the standard sheer profile curve as defined in Regulation 38.13. *Only* the area under the standard sheer profile curve for the portion in way of the well is to be considered. For example, if the well in question extends from the A.P. to a point 0.4L forward of the A.P., only that portion of the area under the standard sheer profile curve between the same two points is considered.

The standard sheer profile curve is described by seven evenly spaced ordinates for the entire length (L) of the vessel. *Unless* the well extends for the full length of the vessel, it is cumbersome to find the area under the standard curve only for the desired portion in way of the well.

To simplify the process, the following procedure is given. The area under the standard sheer profile curve has been subdivided into increments of 0.05L and may be determined solely as a function of the length of the vessel (L).



Procedure

1 Find the distance to the aft end of the well from the load line F.P., as a function of the load line length of the vessel (L); distance designated as "A".

2 Enter the table 38.1 under ICLL Reg 38(8) to find the area under the standard sheer profile curve for distance "A".

3 Find the distance to the forward end of the well from the load line FP, as a function of the load line length of the vessel (L); distance designated as "B".

4 Enter the table 38.1 under ICLL Reg 38(8) to find the area under the standard sheer profile curve for distance "B".

5 The difference between the area determined for "A" and the area determined for "B" is the standard sheer profile area in way of the well with a length of "ℓ".

End of Commentary

5.5 Continuous Trunks or Hatchways *(2024)*

Where a vessel is fitted with a trunk, and open rails are not fitted on weather parts of the freeboard deck in way of the trunk for at least half their length, or where continuous or substantially continuous hatchway side coamings are fitted between detached superstructures, the minimum area of the freeing-port openings is to be calculated from 3-2-17/Table 4, where the trunk/hatchway coaming is not included in the freeboard calculation.

The minimum area of the freeing port openings is to be not less than 33% of the bulwark area where the trunk/hatchway coaming is included in the freeboard calculation.

TABLE 4
Freeing Port Area in a Well Adjacent to Continuous Trunk or Hatchway
(2024)

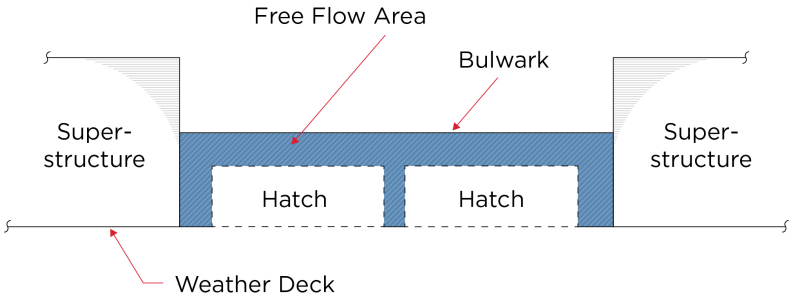
Breadth of Hatchway or Trunk in Relation to the Breadth of Vessel	*Area of Freeing Ports (A_2) in Relation to the Total Area of the Bulwarks*
40% or less	20%
75% or more	10%

The area of freeing ports at intermediate breadths is to be obtained by linear interpolation. Where the height of the trunk is less than the corresponding standard height, the calculated freeing port area can be corrected in the ratio of the height of the actual trunk to the applicable standard height as defined in ICLL Reg.33.

5.6 Non-continuous Trunk or Hatchway *(2024)*

The effectiveness of the freeing port area in bulwarks required by the equations for vessels not fitted with a continuous deck obstruction depends on the free flow across the deck.. See 3-2-17/Figure 4.

FIGURE 4
Free Flow Area in way of Non-continuous Hatchways



The freeing port area in bulwarks with non-continuous deck obstruction is to be not less than 3-2-17/Table 5.

TABLE 5
Freeing Port Area in a Well Adjacent to a Non-continuous Trunk or Hatchway

Free Flow Area FFA **, in m^2 (ft^2)**	***Freeing Port Area*** A_3 **, in m^2 (ft^2)**
$\text{FFA} \le A_1$	A_2
$A_1 < \text{FFA} < A_2$	$A_1 + A_2 - \text{FFA}$
$\text{FFA} \ge A_2$	A_1

Note:
FFA = free flow area on deck.
A_1 = area of freeing ports, in m^2 (ft^2), to be obtained from [TABLE 3] .
A_2 = area of freeing ports, in m^2 (ft^2), to be obtained from [TABLE 4] .

5.7 Open Superstructures *(2024)*

In vessels having superstructures which are open at either or both ends, adequate provision for freeing the space within such superstructures is to be provided as follows:

The freeing port area for the open well is to be not less than:

$$A_w = (0.07\ell_B + A_C)\, S_C (0.5 h_s/h_w) \quad \text{m}^2$$

$$A_w = (0.23\ell_B + A_C)\, S_C (0.5 h_s/h_w) \quad \text{ft}^2$$

The freeing port area for the open superstructure is to be not less than:

$$A_S = (0.07\ell_t)\, S_C (b_o/\ell_t) \left(1 - (\ell_B/\ell_t)^2\right) (0.5 h_s/h_w) \quad \text{m}^2 \quad \text{for} \ell_t > 20\text{m}$$

$$A_S = (0.23\ell_t)\, S_C (b_o/\ell_t) \left(1 - (\ell_B/\ell_t)^2\right) (0.5 h_s/h_w) \quad \text{ft}^2 \quad \text{for} \ell_t > 66\text{ft}$$

$$A_S = (0.7 + 0.035\ell_t) \quad \text{m}^2 \quad \text{for} \ell_t \le 20\text{m}$$

$$A_S = (7.6 + 0.115\ell_t) \quad \text{ft}^2 \quad \text{for} \ell_t \le 66\text{ft}$$

where

ℓ_B = length, in m (ft), of bulwark in the well

ℓ_S = length, in m (ft), of the common space within open superstructure

ℓ_t = $\ell_t = \ell_B + \ell_S$

S_C = sheer correction factor, max 1.5, as defined in [5.4.2]

b_o = breadth of openings in the end bulkhead of the superstructure, in m (ft)

h_w = distance of the well deck above the freeboard deck, in m (ft)

h_s = one standard superstructure height, in m (ft)

h_B = height of bulwark, in m (ft), not to be taken as greater than h_s

A_C = bulwark height correction, as defined in [TABLE 3]

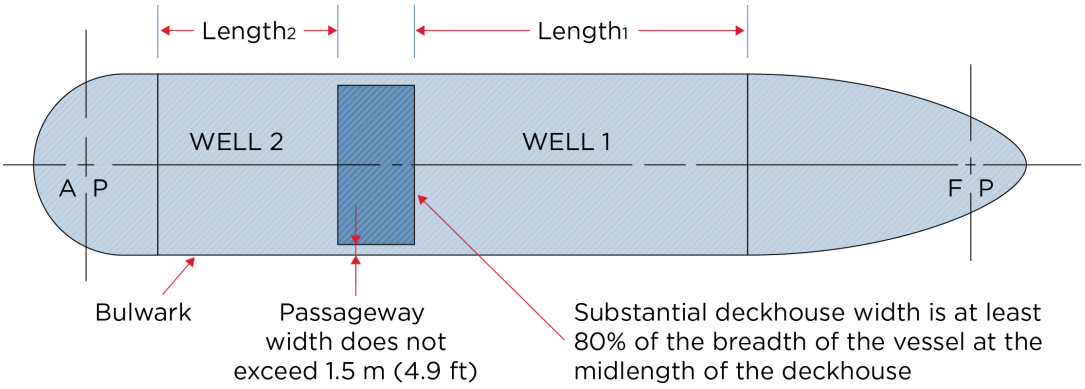
The resulting freeing port areas for the open superstructure (A_S) and for the open well (A_w) are to be provided along each side of the open space covered by the open superstructure and each side of the open well, respectively

5.8 Multiple Wells *(2024)*

Where superstructures or large deckhouses (with a breadth more than 80% of the vessel's beam, and the passageway along the side of the vessel not exceeding 1.5 m (4.9 ft) in width) effectively divide the vessel to form two or more wells, each well is to be treated separately when determining the required freeing port area. The summation of the individual well lengths may exceed 0.7*L*.

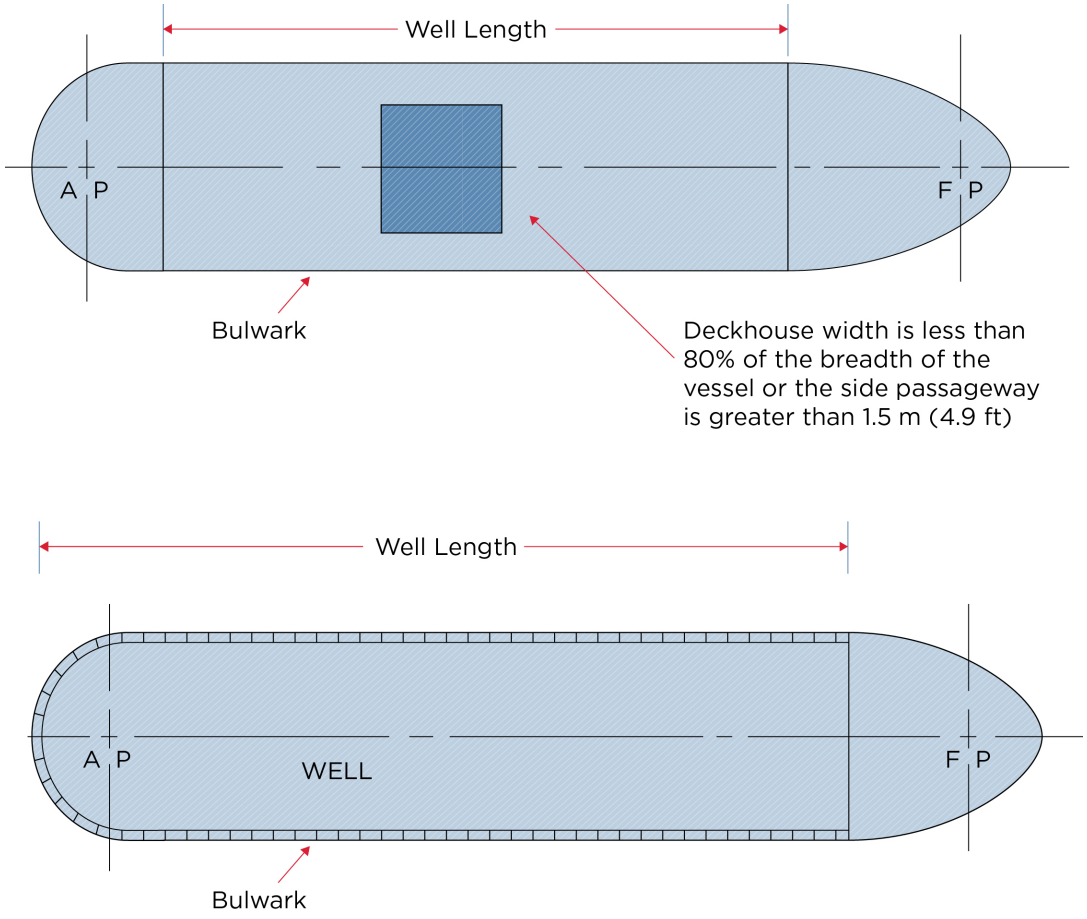
A screen bulkhead fitted completely across the vessel at the forward end of a midship deckhouse effectively creates two wells.

FIGURE 5
Freeing Ports: Multiple Wells



If an amidship deckhouse is not 80% of the beam of the vessel or if the width of the side passageways exceed 1.5 m (4.9 ft), the configuration is considered as one well.

FIGURE 6
Freeing Ports: Configuration considered as One Well



5.9 Type 'A' Vessels and Type 'B' Vessels with Reduced Freeboard *(2024)*

5.9.1 Type 'A' Vessels

Type 'A' vessels with bulwarks are to have open rails fitted for at least half the length of the exposed parts of the weather deck or a freeing port area, in the lower part of the bulwarks, of 33% of the total area of the bulwarks. The upper edge of the sheer strake is to be kept as low as practicable.

Where superstructures are connected by trunks, open rails are to be fitted for the whole length of the exposed parts of the freeboard deck. (ICLL Reg.26)

5.9.2 Type 'B-100' and 'B-60' Vessels

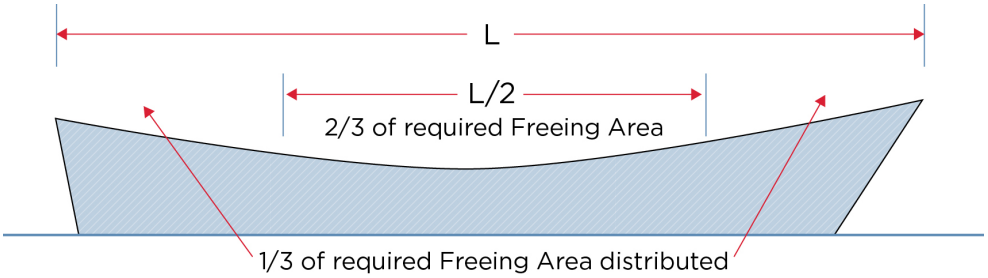
Type 'B-100' vessels with bulwarks are to have open rails fitted for at least half the length of the exposed parts of the weather deck or a freeing port area, in the lower part of the bulwarks, of 33% of the total area of the bulwarks. For Type 'B-60' vessels, there are to be freeing port areas in the lower part of the bulwarks equal to at least 25% of the total area of the bulwarks.

5.10 Details of Freeing Ports

5.10.1 Location of Freeing Ports *(2024)*

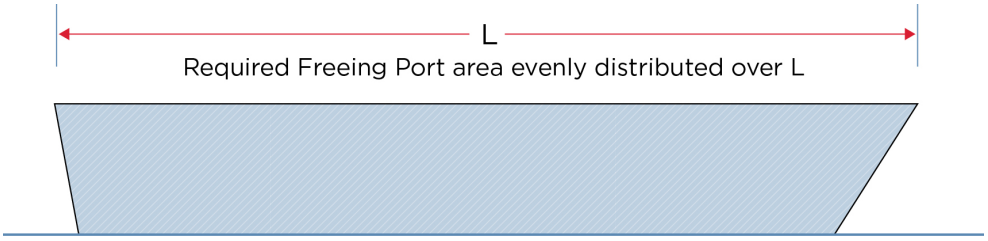
For a vessel with sheer on the freeboard deck, two-thirds of the required area is to be provided in the half of the well at the lowest point of the freeboard deck. The remaining one-third of the required area is distributed evenly along the remaining length of the well (to drain water in trimmed conditions). See 3-2-17/Figure 7.

FIGURE 7
Freeing Port Area: Distribution with Deck Sheer



For a vessel with little to no sheer, the required area is to be evenly distributed along the entire length of the well. See 3-2-17/Figure 8.

FIGURE 8
Freeing Port Area: Distribution with little to no Deck Sheer



Commentary:

The lower edges of the freeing ports should be as near the deck as practicable. Some freeing port area should be placed as near the ends of the well as practicable, to rapidly drain the deck in trim and pitching conditions. These conditions may cause on-deck water to "run up" the superstructure end bulkheads, or end transverse bulwark if no superstructure is fitted. If sufficient freeing port area is provided, but not properly distributed, additional freeing ports may be necessary.

If a raised wear deck is fitted on a vessel, the required freeing port area should be provided both above and below the level of the wear deck. Sections of grating should be provided around doors and hatch coamings on the wear deck to prevent run-up of water on openings and provide rapid drainage of water to a lower deck level.

The lower edges of freeing ports should be as near the deck as practicable. Some credit may be given for openings in the sides of a well that are not flush with the deck. However, their effectiveness is diminished. The higher the lower edge of the opening is above the deck, the less effective the freeing area. No credit should be given for openings with a lower edge more than 300 mm (12 in.) above the deck.

Caution should be taken when considering freeing ports that are short in height. Loose items on the deck, such as mooring lines, can easily block these freeing ports and rapidly decrease their effectiveness.

End of Commentary

5.10.2 Protection of Freeing Ports *(2024)*

When the height of the freeing port opening is greater than 230 mm (9 in.), such openings in the bulwarks are to be protected by horizontal rails or bars spaced not more than 230 mm (9 in.) apart. If shutters are fitted to freeing ports, an ample clearance is to be provided to prevent jamming, and such shutters are only allowed on flat (not curved) portions of the bulwarks. Hinges on shutters are to have pins or bearings of noncorrosive material and are to be located at or as near as possible to the top of the shutters. If shutters are fitted with securing appliances, they are to be of approved construction.

In vessels operating in areas where icing is likely to occur, no shutters are to be fitted in the freeing ports.

5.10.3 Spill Coamings and Gutter Bars *(2024)*

Where spill coamings, gutter bars, toe guards, or similar structures are fitted and are 300 mm (12 in.) in height or more, they are to be fitted with freeing ports. Where they are less than 300 mm (12 in.) in height, freeing ports need not be fitted.

Tankers fitted with spill coamings or gutter bars greater than 300 mm (12 in.) in height in way of cargo manifolds and cargo piping are required to have freeing ports as if they were a bulwark. Closures can be attached for use during loading and discharge operations and should be so arranged so that jamming while at sea cannot occur.

5.10.4 Wooden Deck Sheathing *(2024)*

Freeing ports are to be designed and maintained so that there is a clear unobstructed path for the on-deck water to rapidly drain overboard.

Commentary:

Wood deck sheathing may reduce the effectiveness of a freeing port for rapidly freeing the deck. Deck sheathing is usually set a small distance from the side of the vessel to provide a drainage area along the bulwark or gunwale plate. The effectiveness of the freeing port opening may be reduced depending on the thickness of the sheathing, the distance the sheathing is set in from the side of the vessel, and the location of the freeing port opening above the deck.

End of Commentary

7 Side Scuttles *(2024)*

Side scuttles are defined as round, or oval openings with an area not exceeding 0.16 m^2 (1.7 ft^2). This Subsection applies to passenger vessels (see [5C-7-2/7.13]), cargo vessels (see [5C-7-2/7.13]) and OSVs unless otherwise specified. As such, any reference to bulkhead/freeboard deck means bulkhead deck in the case of passenger vessels and freeboard deck in the case of cargo vessels and OSVs.

7.1 Location

7.1.1 General *(2024)*

i) No side scuttle is to be fitted in a position with its sill below a line drawn parallel to the bulkhead/freeboard deck at side and having its lowest point 0.025*B* or 500 mm (19.5 in.) above the maximum summer load waterline (or summer timber load waterline, if assigned), whichever is the greater distance.

ii) Side scuttles are not to be fitted in machinery spaces or spaces which are used for the carriage of cargo.

In addition, a side scuttle fitted in an external door is to be treated the same as a side scuttle in the adjacent bulkhead.

7.3 Deadlights and Storm Covers *(2024)*

Side scuttles to spaces below the bulkhead/freeboard deck or to spaces within enclosed superstructures or enclosed deckhouses on the first and second tiers above the freeboard deck are to be fitted with efficient hinged inside deadlights arranged such that they can be effectively closed and secured watertight, except as noted below:

i) Side scuttles fitted on second tier deckhouse with cabin bulkheads and doors in the second tier that separate the Side scuttles from direct access leading below may be fitted without deadlights.

ii) Side scuttles inside bulkheads set inboard from the side shell in the second tier protecting direct access leading below may be fitted with external storm covers in lieu of deadlights provided the storm covers are accessible, permanently attached and capable of being effectively closed and secured weathertight.

iii) Side scuttles located in first tier deckhouse bulkheads where the deckhouse is not protecting openings leading below or is not considered buoyant in stability calculation may be fitted without deadlights.

iv) Side scuttles located higher than the second tier above the freeboard deck may be fitted without deadlights.

7.5 Construction

The following requirements are to be complied with, as applicable.

7.5.1 General *(2024)*

Side scuttles, together with their glasses and deadlights, are to comply with ISO 1751 or an equivalent national standard. However, side scuttles frames of cast iron or non-metallic materials are not permitted.

Where side scuttles are fitted in the side shell, in the sides of superstructures and in the front bulkheads of superstructures and deckhouses on weather decks, they are to be of Type A side scuttles (designated as per ISO 1751).

Where side scuttles are fitted in the after ends of superstructures or the sides and after ends of deckhouses, they are to be of Type B side scuttles (designated as per ISO 1751).

Deadlights and storm covers are to be of a strength equivalent to the adjacent bulkhead. Non-metallic deadlights and storm covers are not acceptable.

Opening-type side scuttles are to have noncorrosive hinge pins.

7.5.2 Non-opening Type *(2024)*

Where vessels are subject to damage stability requirements of 3-3-1/5.3, side scuttles found to be situated below a final damage equilibrium waterline are to be of non-opening type.

7.5.3 Locked Type *(2024)*

Side scuttles where permitted in [7.5.2] to be of opening type are to be of locked type to prevent unauthorized opening where:

7.5.3(a)

the sills of which are below the bulkhead/freeboard deck as permitted in [7.1.1] , or

7.5.3(b) **(2024)**

fitted in spaces used alternatively for the carriage of cargo or passengers. Opening of the side scuttles or their deadlights in the spaces alternatively carrying cargo is not allowed without the consent of the Master.

7.5.4 Automatic Ventilating Type *(2024)*

Automatic ventilating side scuttles are not to be fitted in the shell plating below the bulkhead/freeboard deck without special approval. Watertight arrangement details of the side scuttles are to be submitted for approval.

9 Windows

Windows are defined as being rectangular, round, or oval openings with an area exceeding 0.16 m^2 (1.7 ft^2).

9.1 Location *(2024)*

Windows may only be fitted in the following locations:

i) In front, after end bulkheads and side bulkheads of deckhouse and superstructures, in the second tier and higher above the freeboard deck

ii) In first tier deckhouses that are not considered buoyant in the stability calculations or that do not protect openings leading below

A window fitted in an external door is to be treated the same as a window in the adjacent bulkhead.

Commentary:

When the vessel is provided with an excess in freeboard that exceeds the minimum tabular freeboard by more than one standard tier height of the superstructure, the tier directly above the weather deck can be defined as an upper tier.

End of Commentary

9.3 Deadlight Arrangement *(2024)*

i) Windows to spaces within enclosed superstructures or enclosed deckhouses on the second tier above the freeboard deck are to be fitted with efficient hinged inside deadlights arranged such that they can be effectively closed and secured watertight, except as noted below:

- Windows fitted on second tier deckhouse with cabin bulkheads and doors in the second tier that separate the window from direct access leading below may be fitted without deadlights.
- Windows in side bulkheads set inboard from the side shell in the second tier protecting direct access leading below may be fitted with external storm covers of appoved design in lieu of deadlights provided the storm covers are accessible, permanently attached and capable of being effectively closed and secured weathertight.
- Windows located in first tier deckhouse bulkheads where the deckhouse is not protecting openings leading below or is not considered buoyant in stability calculation may be fitted without deadlights.

ii) Windows located higher than the second tier above the freeboard deck may be fitted without deadlights. However, windows fitted in the front bulkheads of deckhouses located in the first tier above the weather deck on the forecastle are to be fitted with inside deadlights or storm covers that are permanently attached and capable of being effectively closed and secured weathertight.

iii) Where windows in the wheelhouse front are required to have deadlights or storm covers, at least two of the deadlights or storm covers are to have means of providing a clear view.

9.5 Construction *(2024)*

Window constructions are to comply the following requirements:

i) Window frames are to be metal or other appropriate material and secured to the adjacent structure.

ii) Window cutouts are to have a minimum of 6.5 mm (0.25 in.) radius at all corners and the glazing is to be set into the frames in an approved, flexible seawater and sunlight resistant packing or compound.

iii) Special attention is to be paid to the windows installed in angled deckhouse fronts.

iv) Deadlights and storm covers are to be of a strength equivalent to the adjacent bulkhead. Non-metallic deadlights and storm covers are not acceptable.

Windows are to comply with a recognized international standard or an equivalent national standard, such as the following:

	Document No.	*Title*
1	British Standard MA 25	Ship's Windows
2	ISO 614	Shipbuilding and Marine Structures: Toughened safety glass panes for rectangular windows and side scuttles: punch method of non-destructive strength testing (identical with ISO 614:1989)
3	ISO 1095	Shipbuilding – Toughened safety glass panes for ship's side scuttles
4	ISO 3254	Shipbuilding - Toughened safety glass panes for ships rectangular windows
5	ISO 3903	Shipbuilding – Ship's ordinary rectangular windows

Commentary:

In general, windows should be fitted from the outside. Windows in the third tier and higher above the freeboard deck may be fitted from the inside. The window frames may be fitted from inside, provided all window frame load-carrying elements, mechanical fastenings and welded connections in the load path between the window glazing and the bulkheads have a strength equivalent to the approved glazing ultimate load. The yield strength of the bolts, including the screw connection to the window frame, and the window frame flange should not be exceeded when the window is subject to 4 times the glazing design pressure.

Windows and side scuttles required to meet fire protection requirements also are subject to the requirements of the International Code for the Application of Fire Test Procedures (FTP Code), IMO Resolution MSC 61(67). See Section 3-4-1 of the *Marine Vessel Rules* for structural fire protection requirements.

End of Commentary

9.7 Glazing for Windows and Side Scuttles *(2024)*

9.7.1 Glass Thickness for Single Pane Windows and Side Scuttles *(2024)*

The thickness of the window glazing is not to be less than the greater of the following:

$$t = s\left(\sqrt{\frac{pk_1}{C_1\sigma_a}}\right) \text{mm(in.)}$$

$$t = s\left(\sqrt[3]{\frac{pk_2}{C_2E}}\right) \text{mm(in.)}$$

The thickness of the side scuttle glazing is not to be less than the greater of the following:

$$t = 0.5d\left(\sqrt{\frac{1.21p}{C_1\sigma_a}}\right) \text{mm (in.)}$$

where

C_1 = 1000 (1.0)

C_2 = 20 (0.02)

t = required window thickness, in mm (in.)

s = lesser dimension of window, in mm (in.)

d = nominal diameter or the equivalent diameter of side scuttle in mm (in.)

h = pressure head, in m (ft), given in 3-2-11/3.5

p = $9.8h$ kN/m^2 ($0.44h$ psi)

k_1 = factor given in [TABLE 2]

k_2 = factor given in [TABLE 2]

σ_a = $0.30\sigma_f$

σ_f = material flexural strength; see [TABLE 3]

E = material flexural modulus; see [TABLE 3]

For tempered monolithic glass, t is to comply with the following minimum thicknesses:

- 8.0 mm (0.31 in.) for front windows with area less than 1.0 m^2
- 9.5 mm (0.37 in.) for front windows of 1.0 m^2 or more
- 6.5 mm (0.25 in.) for side and end windows with area less than 1.0 m^2
- 8.0 mm (0.31 in.) for side and end windows with area of 1.0 m^2 or more

TABLE 6

ℓ/s	k_1	k_2
>5	0.750	0.142
5	0.748	0.142
4	0.741	0.140
3	0.713	0.134
2	0.610	0.111
1.8	0.569	0.102
1.6	0.517	0.091
1.4	0.435	0.077
1.2	0.376	0.062
1	0.287	0.044

ℓ = greater dimension of window panel, in mm (in.)

s = lesser dimension of window panel, in mm (in.)

TABLE 7
(2025)

Glazing	*Flexural Strength*	*Flexural Modulus*
Tempered Monolithic(2)	120 MPa (17,405 psi)	73,000 MPa (10,600,000 psi)
Polycarbonate(1)	93 MPa (13,500 psi)	2,345 MPa (340,000 psi)
Acrylic (poly methyl methacrylate)(1)	110 MPa (16,000 psi)	3,000 MPa (435,000 psi)

Notes:

1 Indicated values are for reference. Aging effects are to be considered for design.

2 Higher mechanical properties may be considered if supported by approved test reports carried out in accordance with an international recognized standards (such as ISO 1288-3).

9.7.2 Laminated Glass *(2025)*

For laminated toughened safety glass, when it is used for windows, the equivalent offered thickness (t_0) is to be determined from the following formula:

$$t_0 = \sqrt{t_{L1}^2 + t_{L2}^2 + ...t_{Ln}^2}$$

where

n = number of laminates

t_{Li} = thickness of glass laminate

t_0 = equivalent offered thickness of laminated glass

The equivalent offered thickness of laminated glass is not to be less than required by [9.7.1], obtained from the monolithic panel equation using the mechanical properties reported in 3-2-17/Table 7.

The laminated construction and glazing is to meet the requirements outlined in ISO 12543-1.

9.7.3 Double Window *(2025)*

Double windows are glass windows made of two plies of glass separated by a hermetically sealed space bar. The thickness of the ply exposed to the loads is to be calculated as in [9.7.1].

Commentary:

As an alternative to 3-2-17/9.7.1, 3-2-17/9.7.2 and 3-2-17/9.7.3, the required glass thickness may be calculated according to ISO 11336-1 using the pressure head as defined in 3-2-17/9.7.1 and using the actual mechanical properties of the glass layer(s) obtained from approved test reports carried out in accordance with an international recognized standard such as ISO 1288-3.

For laminated glass, the mechanical properties of the interlayer are to be provided by the manufacturer in form of material data sheets.

End of Commentary

9.8 Skylights *(2024)*

Fixed or opening skylights, where fitted, are to have thickness appropriate to their size and position as required for side scuttles and windows. Skylight glasses in any position are to be protected from mechanical damage, and where fitted in positions 1 or 2, are to be provided with permanently attached deadlights or storm covers.

9.9 Testing *(2024)*

All windows and side scuttles are to be tested and verified during survey:

i) All windows and side scuttles are to be hose-tested in position under a water pressure of at least 2 bar (2 kgf/cm^2, 30 lbs/in^2) at the time of construction and, if considered necessary, at subsequent surveys.

ii) The flexural strength of the thermally toughened glass is to be verified by compliance with the proof loads in ISO 614.

11 Ventilators, Tank Vents and Overflows

11.1 General

Ventilators are to comply with the requirements of [11.3] . Tank vents and overflows are to comply with the requirements in [11.5] . In addition, for those located on the fore deck, the requirements given in [11.7] are to be complied with.

11.3 Ventilators

11.3.1 Construction of Coamings *(2024)*

Ventilators on exposed freeboard or superstructure decks to spaces below the freeboard deck or decks of enclosed superstructures are to have coamings of steel or other equivalent material. The minimum coaming-plate thickness is to be calculated from the following table:

Outer Diameter of a Ventilator d_v, in mm (in.)	*Coaming Plate Thickness t_c, in mm (in.)*
$d_v \leq 200(8)$	7.5 (0.3)
$200\text{mm} < d_v < 457\text{mm}$ $8\text{in.} < d_v < 18\text{in.}$	$t_c = 7.5 + [2.5(d_v – 200)]/257\text{mm}$ $t_c = 0.3 + 0.01(d_v – 8)\text{in.}$
$d_v \geq 457(18)$	10 (0.4)

Coamings are to be secured to the stiffened deck plating. Coamings which are more than 900 mm (35.5 in.) high and which are not supported by or clamped to adjacent structures are to be bracketed at the deck attachment. Ventilators passing through superstructures, other than enclosed superstructures, are to have coamings of steel at the freeboard deck.

Where a fire damper is located within a ventilation coaming, an inspection port or opening at least 150 mm (6 in.) in diameter is to be provided, to facilitate survey of the damper. The closure provided for the inspection port or opening is to maintain the watertight integrity and, if appropriate, the fire integrity of the coaming in question.

11.3.2 Height of Coamings *(2024)*

Ventilators in Position 1 are to have coamings at least 900 mm (35.5 in.) above the deck. Ventilators in Position 2 are to have coamings at least 760 mm (30 in.) above the deck (see 3-2-15/3 for definition of Positions). In exposed positions, the height of coamings may be required to be increased.

Commentary:

Ventilators in exposed positions are considered downflooding points in intact and damage stability, and the coaming height may be required to be increased based on the stability calculations.

End of Commentary

11.3.3 Means for Closing Openings *(1 July 2021)*

Except as provided below, ventilator openings are to be provided with permanently attached closing appliances. Ventilators in Position 1, the coamings of which extend to more than 4.5 m (14.8 ft)

above the deck, and in Position 2, the coamings of which extend to more than 2.3 m (7.5 ft) above the deck, need not be fitted with closing arrangements, unless unusual features or the design makes this necessary. See also [4-7-2/1.9.5] and [4-7-2/1.9.6] .

These coaming height requirements may be modified in vessels measuring less than 24 m (79 ft) in length on a case-by-case basis.

11.5 Tank Vents and Overflows

Tank vents and overflows are to be in accordance with the requirements of 4-6-4/9.3 and 4-6-4/9.5 of these Rules. In addition, where applicable, the requirements given below in [11.7] are to be complied with.

11.7 Ventilators, Tank Vents and Overflows on the Fore Deck

11.7.1 Application *(2024)*

The requirements of this paragraph apply to all ventilators, tank vents and overflows of vessel with length, L of 80 meters (263 feet) or more, located on the exposed fore deck within the forward $0.25L$ and where the height of the exposed fore deck in way of the item is less than $0.1L$ or 22 meters (72 ft) above the scantling waterline, whichever is lesser. The design is to be in accordance with the standard dimensions shown in [TABLE 8] and [TABLE 9] . Alternatively, the first principles approach is to be followed.

11.7.2 Applied Loading to the Air Pipes and Ventilators

11.7.2(a) Pressure. The pressures p, in kN/m^2 (tf/m^2, Ltf/ft^2), acting on air pipes, ventilator pipes and their closing devices, may be calculated from:

$$p = f\rho V^2 C_d C_s C_p \qquad \text{N/m}^2 \text{ (tf/m}^2\text{, Ltf/ft}^2\text{)}$$

where:

f = 0.5 (0.05, 0.0156)

ρ = density of sea water, 1.025 t/m^3 (1.025 t/m^3, 0.0286 Lt/ft^3)

V = velocity of water over the fore deck,

= 13.5 m/sec (44.3 ft/sec) for $d \leqslant 0.5d_1$

= $13.5\sqrt{2\left(1-\frac{d}{d_1}\right)}$ m/sec ($44.3\sqrt{2\left(1-\frac{d}{d_1}\right)}$ ft/sec) for $0.5d_1 < d < d_1$

d = distance from summer load waterline to exposed deck

d_1 = $0.1L$ or 22 m (72 ft), whichever is the lesser

C_d = shape coefficient

= 0.5 for pipes

= 1.3 for pipes or ventilator heads in general

= 0.8 for ventilator heads of cylindrical form with their axis in the vertical direction

C_s = slamming coefficient, 3.2

C_p = protection coefficient:

= 0.7 for pipes and ventilator heads located immediately behind a breakwater or forecastle

= 1.0 elsewhere, including immediately behind a bulwark

11.7.2(b) Force. Forces acting in the horizontal direction on the pipe and its head (closing device) may be calculated from the above pressures using the largest projected area of each component.

11.7.3 Strength Requirements for Ventilators, Tank Vents and Overflows and their Closing Devices

11.7.3(a) ***(2024)***

Bending Moment and Stress. Bending moments and stresses in air pipes and ventilator pipes are to be calculated at penetration pieces, at weld or flange connections and at toes of supporting brackets. Bending stresses in the net section are not to exceed $0.8Y$, where Y is the specified minimum yield stress or determined by the 0.2% proof stress method of the steel at room temperature. Then, irrespective of corrosion protection, a corrosion addition of 2.0 mm (0.08 in.) is to be applied to the minimum pipe wall thickness needed to meet above limits.

11.7.3(b) Tank Vents and Overflows ***(2024)***

i) For standard tank vents and overflows of 760 mm (30 in.) height closed by heads of not more than the tabulated projected area, pipe thicknesses and bracket heights are specified in [TABLE 9] . Where brackets are required, minimum three radial brackets are to be fitted.

ii) Brackets are to be of gross thickness of 8 mm (0.32 in.) or more, of minimum length of 100 mm (4.0 in.) and height according to [TABLE 4] , but need not extend over the head attachment flange. Bracket toes at the deck are to be supported.

iii) For other configurations; loads according to [11.7.2] are to be applied and supports determined to comply with the strength requirements above. Brackets, where fitted, are to be of thickness and length in proportion to their height.

iv) Final (gross) pipe thickness is not to be taken less than as indicated in 4-6-4/9.3.2 and 4-6-4/9.5.6.

v) The minimum internal diameter of the air pipe or overflow is not to be less than 65 mm (2.5 in.).

11.7.3(c) Ventilators

i) For standard ventilators of 900 mm (35.4 in.) height closed by heads of not more than the tabulated projected area, pipe thicknesses and bracket heights are specified in [TABLE 5] . Brackets, where required, are to be as specified in [11.7.3(b).ii.]).

ii) For ventilators of height greater than 900 mm (35.4 in.), brackets or alternative means of support are to be provided. Coamings are not to be taken less than as indicated in [11.3] nor in [TABLE 5] .

11.7.3(d) Components and Connections. All component parts and connections of the tank vents and overflows or ventilators are to be capable of withstanding the loads defined in [11.7.2] .

11.7.3(e) Rotary Heads. Rotating type mushroom ventilator heads are not to be used for applications in this location.

TABLE 8
760 mm (30 in.)[3] High Tank Vents and Overflows
Thickness and Bracket Standards

Nominal Pipe Size		*Minimum Fitted Gross Thickness*		*Maximum Projected Area of Head*		*Height* [1] *of Brackets*	
A	*B*						
mm	*in.*	*mm*	*in.*	*cm²*	*in²*	*mm*	*in.*
65	2½	6.0	---	---	---	480	18.9
80	3	6.3	0.25	---	---	460	18.1
100	4	7.0	0.28	---	---	380	15.0
125	5	7.8	0.31	---	---	300	11.8
150	6	8.5	0.33	---	---	300	11.8
175	7	8.5	0.33	---	---	300	11.8
200	8	8.5(2)	0.33(2)	1900	295	300	11.8
250	10	8.5(2)	0.33(2)	2500	388	300(2)	11.8(2)
300	12	8.5(2)	0.33(2)	3200	496	300(2)	11.8(2)
350	14	8.5(2)	0.33(2)	3800	589	300(2)	11.8(2)
400	16	8.5(2)	0.33(2)	4500	698	300(2)	11.8(2)

Notes:

1) Brackets [see [11.7.3(b)]] need not extend over the joint flange for the head.

2) Brackets are required where the as fitted (gross) thickness is less than 10.5 mm (0.41 in.) or where the tabulated projected head area is exceeded

3) For other air pipe heights, the relevant requirements of [11.7.3] are to be applied.

TABLE 9
900 mm (35.4 in.)(2) High Ventilator Thickness and Bracket Standards

Nominal Pipe Size		*Minimum Fitted Gross Thickness*		*Maximum Projected Area of Head*		*Height* [1] *of Brackets*	
A	*B*						
mm	*in.*	*mm*	*in.*	*cm²*	*in²*	*mm*	*in.*
80	3	6.3	0.25	---	---	460	18.1
100	4	7.0	0.28	---	---	380	15.0
150	6	8.5	0.33	---	---	300	11.8
200	8	8.5	0.33	550	85	---	---
250	10	8.5	0.33	880	136	---	---
300	12	8.5	0.33	1200	186	---	---
350	14	8.5	0.33	2000	310	---	---
400	16	8.5	0.33	2700	419	---	---
450	18	8.5	0.33	3300	511	---	---
500	20	8.5	0.33	4000	620	---	---

Notes:

1 Brackets [see [11.7.3(b)]] need not extend over the head attachment flange.

2 For other ventilator heights, the relevant requirements of [11.7.3] are to be applied.

1 General *(2024)*

1.1 Objective

1.1.1 Goal

The vessels covered in this section are to be designed, constructed, operated and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goal*
MAT 1	The selected materials' physical, mechanical, and chemical properties are to meet the design requirements appropriate for the application, operating conditions, and environment.

1.1.2 Functional Requirement

To achieve the above stated goals, the design, construction, installation, and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Materials (MAT)	
MAT-FR1	Materials and their corrosion prevention systems are to have appropriate wear and corrosion resistance for the operating environment and service life.
MAT-FR2	Arrangements are to be such that the spaces are easily accessible for maintenance and facilitating drainage.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

3 Close Ceiling

Ceiling, where fitted, is to be laid either directly on a tightening and preserving compound or on battens. On vessels with sloping margin plate, the ceiling from the margin plate to the upper part of the bilge is to be arranged so as to be readily removable for inspection. Except for holds intended exclusively for the carriage of containers on the inner bottom, ceiling is to be fitted under all hatchways unless the inner bottom plating is increased by at least 2 mm (0.08 in.).

3 <No Text>

5 Corrosion Protection of Steel

5.1 All Spaces *(2024)*

Unless otherwise approved, all steel surfaces are to be suitably protected by an efficient corrosion prevention system, such as protective coatings and/or cathodic protection as applicable. For guidance, the ABS *Guidance Notes on Cathodic Protection of Ships* and the ABS *Guidance Notes on the Application and Inspection of Marine Coatings Systems* may be referred to.

Additional requirements for corrosion protection and coating for different vessel type are provided in the table below.

Vessel Type	*Rule References*
CSR Bulk Carrier	[5B-1-2/2]
CSR Tanker	[5B-2-2/1]
Ammonia Containment	5C-8-17/12
Carbon Dioxide: reclaimed quality Containment	5C-8-17/22
Chemical Cargo	[5C-9-6] , [5C-9-15/5.3] , [5C-9-15/11]
Fishing Vessel	[5C-18-7/9]

5.3 Dedicated Salt Water Ballast Tanks and Double-side Skin Spaces *(2024)*

All dedicated seawater ballast tanks in all ships greater than or equal to 500 gross tonnage shall have an efficient corrosion prevention system, such as hard protective coatings or equivalent in accordance with SOLAS Regulation II-1/3-2. The scheme for the selection, application and maintenance of the system shall be approved by ABS, based on IMO Resolution A.798(19) and IACS UI SC 122. The scheme for the selection, application and maintenance of the system shall be approved by ABS, based on IMO Resolution MSC.215(82) and IACS UI SC 223.

The ABS *Guide for Performance Standards for Corrosion Protection* is provided as an aid in satisfying the protective coating requirements contained in the IMO PSPC and related Unified Interpretations from IACS and IMO.

Where a long retention period of salt water ballast is expected the use of inhibitors or sacrificial anodes should be considered. When such tanks are designed as dual purpose (for example brine/sea water ballast, brine/drill water or brine tank/chain locker) they are to have a hard, corrosion resistant coating applied as well.

Commentary:

Tanks occasionally used for ballast should be coated the same as for ballast tanks. Refer also to MSC.1/Circ.1539/Rev.1.

End of Commentary

5.5 Void Spaces *(2024)*

Void spaces with no IMO PSPC-VOID requirement and narrow spaces are to be protected by an efficient protective product, particularly at the ends of the ship where inspections and maintenance are difficult due to accessibility challenges.

Commentary:

See Subsection 8/2 of the ABS *Guidance Notes on The Application and Inspection of Marine Coating Systems*.

End of Commentary

5.7 Fuel Oil Tanks

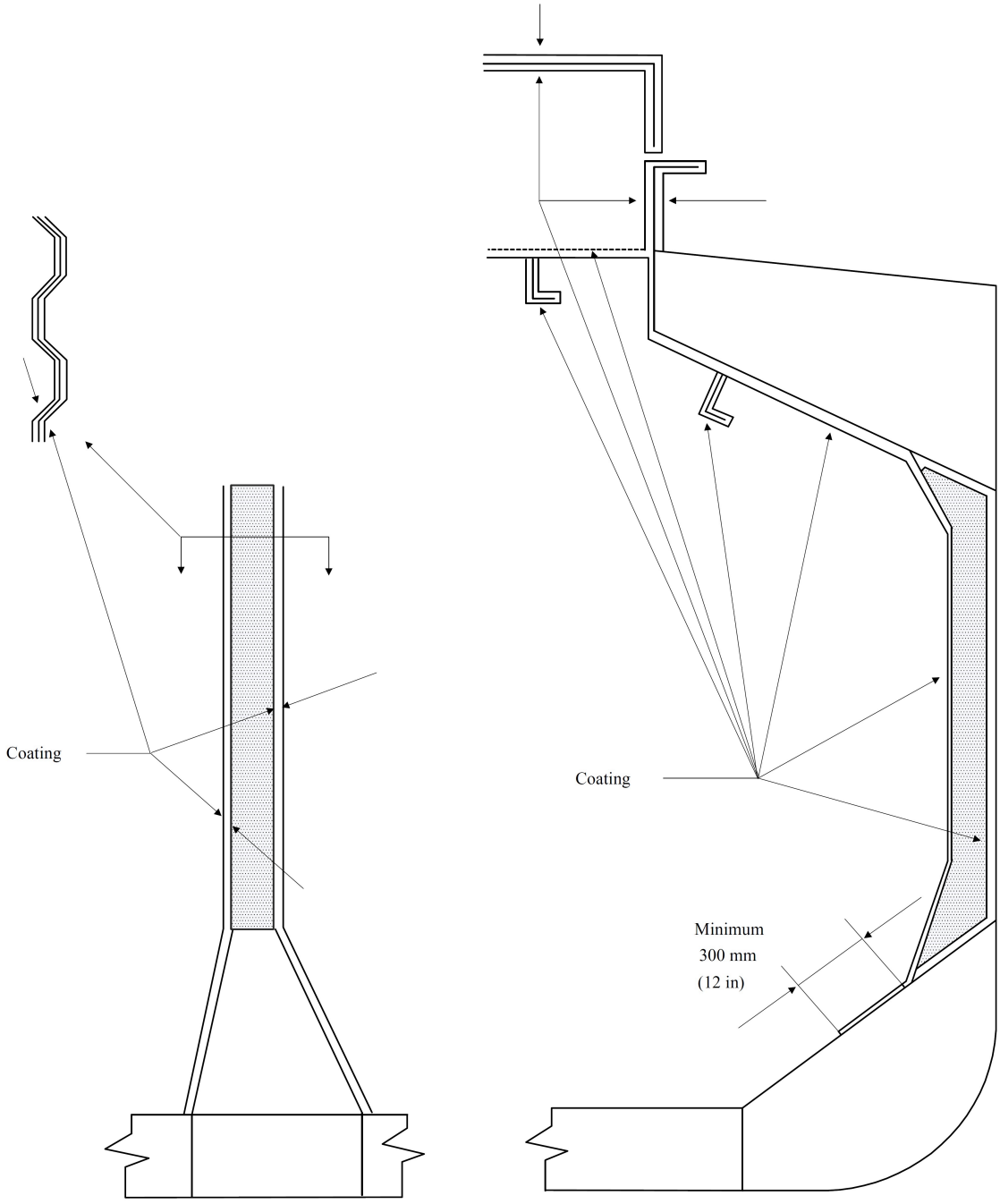
Corrosion protective coating is not required for internal surfaces of spaces intended for the carriage of fuel oil, including cargo fuel oil and base oil (diesel oil).

5.9 Cargo Holds on Bulk Carriers (including Combination Carriers)

All internal and external surfaces of hatch coamings and hatch covers, and all internal surfaces of cargo holds, excluding the flat tank top areas and the hopper tank sloping plating up to approximately 300 mm (12 in.) below the side shell frame end brackets, are to have an epoxy or equivalent coating applied in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The internal surface of the cargo hold includes those surfaces of stiffening members of the top wing tank bottom, where fitted on the hold side, and deck plating and associated beams, girders, etc. facing holds such as those between the main hatchways. See [FIGURE 1] .

In the selection of coatings, due consideration is to be given by the Owner to the intended cargoes and conditions expected in service.

FIGURE 1
Extent of Coatings on Bulk Carriers *(2024)*



a) TRANSVERSE BULKHEAD

b) HOLD, HATCH COAMINGS AND HATCH COVER

5.11 Integral Tanks for Urea Based Ammonia Solution as SCR Reductants *(2020)*

Where a urea-based ammonia solution (e.g., 40%/60% urea/water solution) used for reducing NOx as SCR Reductants is stored in integral tanks, these tanks are to be coated with an appropriate anti-corrosion coating recommended by a coating manufacturer as compatible with the solution. In no case is a reduction in scantlings in association with protective coatings is to be considered. See also Part 6, Chapter 3.

5.13 Corrosion Protection of Cargo Tanks of Crude Oil Tankers *(2024)*

All cargo oil tanks of crude oil tankers in all ships greater than or equal to 500 gross tonnage are to have an efficient corrosion prevention system, in accordance with the Performance standard for protective coatings for cargo oil tanks of crude oil tankers, or equivalent, in accordance with SOLAS Regulation II-1/3-11, adopted by Maritime Safety Committee by resolution MSC.288(87). The scheme for the selection, application and maintenance of the system is to be approved by ABS, based IMO resolution MSC.288(87) and IACS UI SC 258.

Commentary:

The ABS *Guide for Performance Standards for Corrosion Protection* is provided as an aid in satisfying the protective coating requirements contained in the IMO PSPC and related Unified Interpretations from IACS and IMO.

End of Commentary

1 General *(2024)*

1.1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1.1 Goals

The vessel structure is to be designed, constructed, operated, and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goal*
STRU 1	in the intact condition, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU 2	resist structural failure associated with accidental conditions
STRU 3	provide protection to persons onboard, the environment and required safety services.
STAB 1	have adequate watertight integrity and restoring energy to prevent capsize in an intact condition.
MAT 1	The selected materials' physical, mechanical, and chemical properties are to meet the design requirements appropriate for the application, operating conditions, and environment.
FIR 1	Prevent the occurrence of fire and explosion. (SOLAS II-2/Reg 2.1.1)

1.1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above-stated goals, the design, construction, installation and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Structure (STRU)	
STRU-FR1	Welded connections are to have sufficient strength to resist failure and fatigue damage.
STRU-FR2	Welded connections are to be of sufficient quality including structural tolerances and alignment.

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
STRU-FR3	Welded connections are to be free from defects and discontinuities.
STRU-FR4 (STAB)	Welded connections of watertight and tank boundaries are to have suitable tightness.
STRU-FR5	In ballast tanks, the weld design is to avoid discontinuities and the potential for seawater ingress behind the welds.
STRU-FR6 (FIR)	Welded connections are to prevent the accumulation of flammable liquids which may lead to accidents due to hot work.
STRU-FR7	In areas of high stress or critical locations, welded connections are to properly transmit loads and reduce fatigue damage.
Materials (MAT)	
MAT-FR1	Welding is not to degrade the material properties below that required by the design.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved by ABS. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

1.3 Fillet Welds *(2024)*

1.3.1 Plans and Specifications

The actual sizes of fillet welds are to be indicated on detail drawings or on a separate welding schedule and submitted for approval in each individual case. In determining weld sizes based on the equations in this Section, the nearest 0.5 mm ($^{1}/_{64}$ in.) is to be used.

1.3.2 Workmanship

Completed welds are to be to the satisfaction of the attending Surveyor. The gaps between the faying surfaces of members being joined should be kept to a minimum . Where the opening between members being joined exceeds 2.0 mm (0.08 in.) and is not greater than 5 mm ($^{13}/_{64}$ in.), the weld leg size is to be increased by the amount of the opening in excess of 2.0 mm (0.08 in.).

Where the opening between members is greater than 5 mm ($^{13}/_{64}$ in.), corrective procedures are to be approved by the Surveyor.

1.3.3 IMO PSPC and/or IMO PSPC-COT Regulations *(2024)*

For all welds in ballast tanks in all types of vessels, double side skin spaces of bulk carriers, and cargo oil tanks of crude oil tankers required to be in compliance with the IMO PSPC and/or IMO PSPC-COT Regulations, continuous welding is to be adopted.

3 Tee Connections *(2024)*

3.1 Size of Fillet Welds

Tee connections are to be formed by continuous or intermittent fillet welds on each side, as required by [TABLE 1] . The leg size, *w*, of fillet welds (see figure in [TABLE 1]) is obtained from the following equations:

$$w = t_{p\ell} \times C \times \frac{s}{\ell} + 2.0\text{mm}$$

$$w = t_{p\ell} \times C \times \frac{s}{\ell} + 0.08\text{in.}$$

$w_{\min} = 0.3t_{p\ell}$ or 4.5 mm (0.18 in.) [4.0 mm (0.16 in.) where [9] is applicable], whichever is greater.

where

ℓ = the actual length of weld fillet, clear of crater, in mm (in.).

s = the distance between successive weld fillets, from center to center, in mm (in.).

s/ℓ = 1.0 for continuous fillet welding

$t_{p\ell}$ = thickness of the thinner of the two members being joined, in mm (in.).

C = weld factors given in [TABLE 1]

In selecting the leg size and spacing of matched fillet welds, the leg size for the intermittent welds is to be taken as not greater than the designed leg size w or $0.7t_{p\ell} + 2.00\text{mm}\,(0.7t_{p\ell} + 0.08\text{in.})$, whichever is less.

The throat size, *t*, is to be not less than 0.70 *w*.

The weld size for $t_{p\ell}$ less than 6.5 mm (0.25 in.) or less, see [3.11].

Alternatively, on vessels with length, *L*, below 90 meters (295 feet), it is also acceptable to assess weld sizes and spacing based on [TABLE 2].

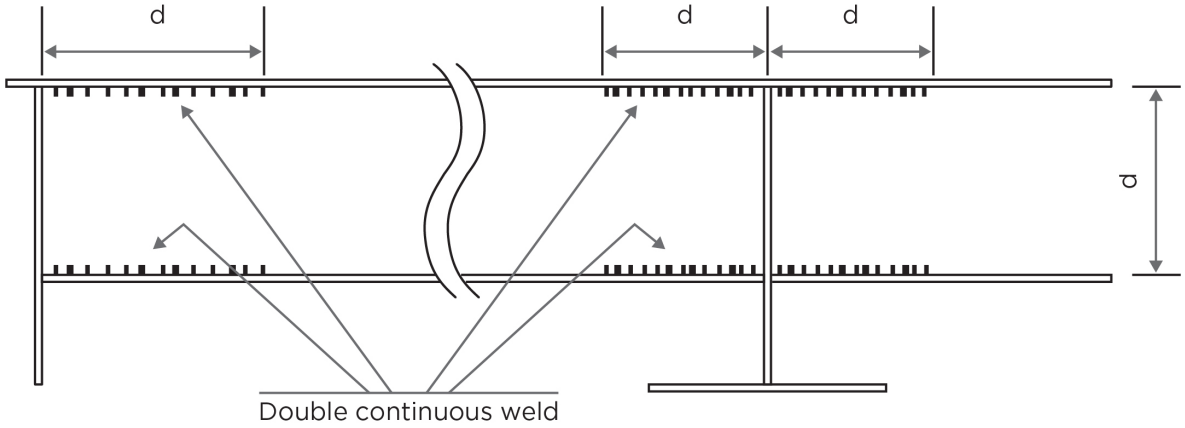
3.3 Arrangement of Intermittent Welding *(2024)*

Where an intermittent weld is permitted by [TABLE 1], the length of each fillet weld is to be not less than 75 mm (3 in.) for $t_{p\ell}$ of 7 mm (0.28 in.) or more nor less than 65 mm (2.5 in.) for lesser $t_{p\ell}$. The unwelded length on one side is to be not more than 32 $t_{p\ell}$.

3.5 Intermittent Welding at Ends and Intersections *(2024)*

Where stiffeners or primary supporting members are intermittently welded to the plating and to the face plate, the welding at the ends and intersections with other stiffeners or primary supporting members is to be double continuous welding equal in length to the depth of the member. See 3-2-19/FIGURE 1.

FIGURE 1
Double Continuous Welds at Ends and Intersections *(2024)*



3.7 Thin Plating *(2024)*

For plating of 6.5 mm (0.25 in) or less, the requirements of [3.1] may be modified as follows:

$$w = t_{p\ell} C \frac{s}{\ell} + 2.0 \left(1.25 - \frac{\ell}{s}\right) \text{mm}$$

$$w = t_{p\ell} C \frac{s}{\ell} + 0.08 \left(1.25 - \frac{\ell}{s}\right) \text{in.}$$

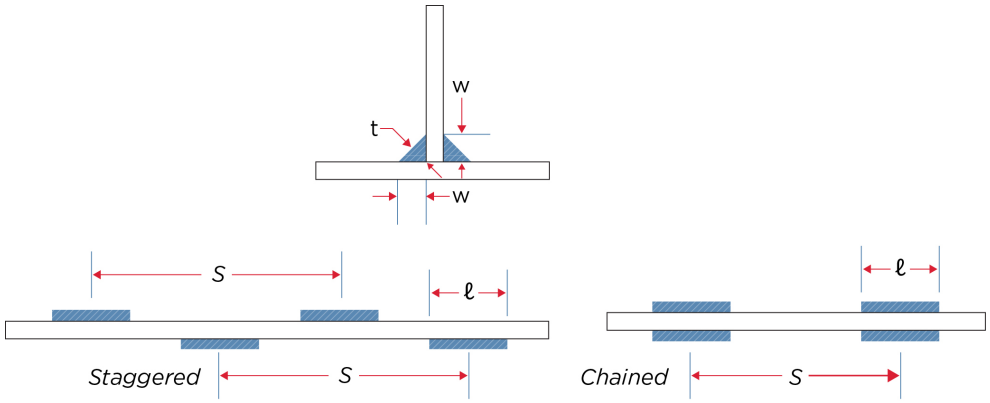
$$w_{min} = 3.5\text{mm}\,(0.14\text{in.})$$

Commentary:

Depending upon the location and the quality control procedures used, the use of the above equations for plating in excess of 6.5 mm (0.25 in.) may be also considered by ABS.

End of Commentary

TABLE 1
Weld Factors for Vessels 90 m (295 ft) in Length and Greater
(2025)



w = leg size in mm (in.) t = throat size in mm (in.)

I.	Periphery Connections	Factor C
		C = Continuous DC = Double Continuous
A.	Tight Joints	
	1. Strength deck to sheer strake (See [15])	0.42 DC
	2. Main longitudinal bulkhead to deck, bottom or inner bottom (See [15])	0.42 DC
	3. All other tight joints except XI.B. (See 3-2-9/7.5)	
	a. watertight bulkhead, $t_{p\ell} \leq$ 12.5 mm (0.50 in.) where one side intermittent and the other side continuous	0.12 & 0.58 C
	b. watertight bulkhead, $t_{p\ell} \leq$ 12.5 mm (0.50 in.) where double continuous	0.35 DC
	c. all other joints	0.35 DC
B.	Non-tight Joints	
	1. Platform decks	0.28 DC
	2. Swash bulkheads in deep tanks	0.20
	3. Non-tight bulkheads other than B2	0.15
II.	**Bottom Floors**	
	1. To Shell	
	a. in aft peak below waterline	0.25 DC

	b. in machinery space	0.20 DC
	c. flat of bottom forward	0.15
	d. in aft peak above waterline and in forward peak	0.15
	e. elsewhere	0.12
	2. To Inner Bottom	
	a. in machinery space	0.20 DC
	b. at forward end (fore end strengthening)	0.15
	c. elsewhere	0.12
	3. To Center or Side Girder	
	a. in way of engine	0.30 DC
	b. with longitudinal framing	0.30 DC
	c. with transverse framing	0.17
	4. To Margin Plate, Side Shell, Longitudinal Bulkhead or Bilge	0.35 DC
	5. Open Floor Bracket	
	a. to center girder	0.15
	b. to margin plate	0.30 DC
III.	**Bottom Girder**	
	1. Center Girder	
	a. to inner bottom in way of engine	0.30 DC
	b. to inner bottom clear of engine, non-tight	0.23
	c. to shell, non-tight	0.25 DC
	2. Side Girder	
	a. to floors in way of transverse bulkheads	0.35 DC
	b. to shell —flat of bottom forward	0.23
	— elsewhere	0.15
	c. to inner bottom — in way of engine	0.23
	— elsewhere	0.15
IV.	**Web Frames, Stringers, Deck Girders and Deck Transverses**	
	1. To Plating	
	a. in tanks	0.20
	b. elsewhere	0.15
	2. To Face Plates	
	a. face area $\leq$ 64.5 cm^2 (10 in^2)	0.12
	b. face area > 64.5 cm^2 (10 in^2)	0.15

	3. End Attachment	
	a. unbracketed (see note 1)	0.55 DC
	b. bracketed	0.40 DC
V.	**Frames, Beams and Stiffeners**	
	1. To Shell	
	a. in aft peak below waterline	0.25 DC
	b. flat of bottom forward	0.25 DC
	c. 0.125*L* forward	0.15
	d. in aft peak above waterline and in forward peak	0.15
	2. Slab longitudinals	(see note 5)
	3. To plating elsewhere	0.12
	4. End attachment	
	a. unbracketed (see note 1)	0.45 DC
	b. bracketed	0.35 DC
VI.	**Hatch Covers**	
	1. Oiltight Joints	0.40 DC
	2. Watertight Joints	
	Outside	0.40 C
	Inside	0.15
	3. Stiffeners and Webs to Plating and to Face Plate	0.12
	4. Stiffeners and Web to Side Plating or other stiffeners	
	— unbracketed (see note 1)	0.45 DC
	— bracketed	0.35 DC
VII.	**Hatch Coamings and Ventilators**	
	1. To Deck	
	a. at hatch corner	0.45 DC
	b. elsewhere	0.25 DC
	2. Coaming stays	
	a. to deck	0.20 DC
	b. to coaming	0.15 DC
VIII.	**Foundations (See [15])**	
	1. Main Engine and Major Auxiliaries	0.40 DC

	2. Boilers and other Auxiliaries	0.35 DC
	3. Windlass and Major Deck Machinery	0.40 DC
	4. Heavy Duty Specialized Offshore Equipment	0.45 DC
IX.	**Rudders—Diaphragms**	
	1. To Side Plating	
	a. in way of rudder axis	0.45 DC
	b. elsewhere	0.20
	c. slot welds (see note 4)	0.45 DC
	2. To Diaphragms	
	a. to vertical diaphragms in way of rudder axis	0.45 DC
	b. elsewhere	0.20
	c. to top and bottom casting in way of rudder axis	Full penetration welds
X.	**Superstructures/Deckhouses**	
	1. To Side Shell Plating	Full penetration welds
	2. External bulkheads and exposed decks connections	
	a. $X_f/L_f > 0.75$, all tiers	0.35 DC
	b. $X_f/L_f \leq 0.75$, first and second tier above freeboard deck	0.35 DC
	c. Elsewhere	0.20 DC
	3. Internal decks to external bulkheads	0.20 DC
	4. Elsewhere	0.20
XI.	**Additional Weld Factors for Oil Carriers and Similar Vessels**	
A.	Deep Supporting Members	
	1. To Bottom Shell	
	a. end quarter span	0.45 DC
	b. mid half span (See note 6)	0.40 DC
	2. To Deck	
	a. end quarter span	0.40 DC
	b. mid half span (See note 6)	0.35 DC
	3. To Side Shell and Longitudinal Bulkheads	0.40 DC
	4. To Transverse Bulkheads	
	a. end quarter span	0.45 DC
	b. mid half span	0.35 DC
	5. To Face Plate	0.30 DC

B.	Boundaries of Cargo Segregation (See [15] and 3-2-9/7)	0.42 DC
XII.	**Additional Weld Factors for Double Hull Tankers**	
A.	Deep Supporting Members in Double Hull (see Note 7)	
	1. To Side Shell	0.20 DC
	2. To Inner Skin Bulkhead	
	a. in way of deck transverse/bracket	0.35 DC
	b. in way of strut, as applicable	0.35 DC
	c. elsewhere	0.20 DC
	3. To Inner Bottom (floor)	
	a. in way of longitudinal bulkhead web/bracket	0.45 DC
	b. elsewhere	0.12 DC
	4. To bottom side girder in way of bilge	0.35 DC
	5. To horizontal shelf plate in way of bilge	0.35 DC
XIII.	**Additional Weld Factors for Single Side Skin Bulk Carriers**	Factor C
A.	Transverse Hold Frames (see notes 1 and 5)	
	1. To Side Shell	
	a. End Quarter Span	$(0.63 - C_{pl} / t_{pl})$DC
	b. Remainder	$(0.57 - C_{pl} / t_{pl})$DC
	2. End Attachment (to sloping wing tank plating)	
	a. bracketed	$(0.63 - C_{pl} / t_{pl})$DC
	C_{pl} = 2.00 (0.08) mm (in.)	

Notes:

1 The weld size is to be determined from the thickness of the member being attached.

2 The weld size is to be determined from the thickness of the side plating.

3 For slab longitudinals within D_s / 4 from strength deck. the leg size w and w_{min} in [3.1] are to be taken as $0.23t_{pl}$ + 1.0 mm ($0.23t_{pl}$ + 0.04 in.) with a minimum of 4.5 mm (0.18 in.), but need not be greater than 8 mm. Where the slab longitudinal is located more than D_s/4 from the strength deck, the weld factor for "To plating elsewhere" may be applied.

4 This may be applied only where the shearing forces over the mid-half span are no greater than one-half the maximum shearing-force on the member and where the web is of the same depth, clear of end brackets and of the same thickness throughout the length of the member. Otherwise, 0.45 is to be applied. The weld size is to be determined from the thickness of member being attached.

5 Where the hull form is such that an effective fillet weld cannot be produced, edge preparation of the frame web and bracket is to be applied to provide the same efficiency of the connection.

6 For oil carriers and similar vessels, the leg size in cargo tanks and in ballast tanks in the cargo area is not to be less than 6 mm (0.25 in.), except where indicated in Note 9 below or an approval has been given in accordance with [9]

7 For double hull tankers of length less than 150 m (492 ft), the minimum fillet welding leg size of 6 mm (0.25 in.) does not apply to longitudinals or other structures within inside of the double hull spaces.

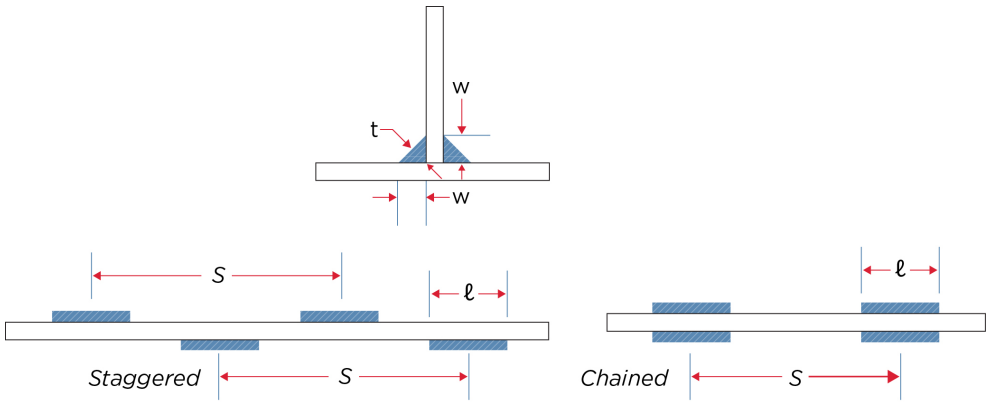
8 The weld size is to be increased for high stress areas which are to be confirmed by "Calculation of Structural Responses" as specified in 5C-1-5/9.

9 For Note 1, in special cases, where heavy members are attached to relatively light plating, the sizes may be modified. Where only the webs of girders, beams, and stiffeners are required to be attached to plating, it is recommended that the unattached face plate or flanges be cut back.

10 X_f = X-coordinate of the load point measured from the aft end of the freeboard length L_f.

TABLE 2
Weld Sizes and Spacing for Vessels Under 90 m (295 ft) in Length – Millimeters
(2024)

For weld requirements for thicknesses intermediate to those shown in the table, use the nearest thickness shown in the table.



w = leg size in mm (in.) t = throat size in mm (in.)

	Weld size for lesser thickness of members joined, mm							
	5	*6.5*	*8*	*9.5*	*11*	*12.5*	*14.5*	*16*
Nominal leg size of fillet w	3	5	6.5	6.5	8	8	8	8
Nominal throat size of fillet t	2	3.5	4.5	4.5	5.5	5.5	5.5	5.5
Length of fillet weld	40	65	75	75	75	75	75	75

Structural Items	***Spacing of Welds S, mm***							
Single-Bottom Floors To center keelson Elsewhere	In accordance with [6] Same weld as floors in double bottom							
Double-Bottom Floors								
To shell in aft peaks of vessels having high power and fine form	—	—	150	125	150	150	150	125
To shell flat of bottom forward (fore-end strengthening) and in peaks	—	—	250	225	250	250	225	200

Structural Items	*Spacing of Welds S, mm*							
To shell elsewhere	*300	*300	300	275	300	275	250	250
Solid floors to center vertical keel plate in engine room, under boiler bearers, wide-spaced floors with longitudinal frames	In accordance with [6]							
Solid floors to center vertical keel plate elsewhere, and open-floor brackets to center vertical keel	*250	*250	250	225	250	225	200	175
Solid floors and open-floor brackets to margin plate	In accordance with [6]							
To inner bottom in engine room	In accordance with [6]							
To inner bottom at forward end (fore-end strengthening)	*275	*275	275	250	275	250	225	200
To inner bottom elsewhere	*300	*300	300	275	300	275	250	250
Wide spaced with longitudinal framing to shell and inner bottom	In accordance with [6]							
Solid floor stiffeners at watertight or oiltight boundaries	300	300	300	275	300	275	250	250
Watertight and oiltight periphery connections of floors throughout double bottom	In accordance with [6]							
Center Girder								
Nontight to inner-bottom or center strake in way of engine and to shell or bar keel	In accordance with [6]							
Nontight to inner-bottom or center strake clear of engine	150	150	150	125	150	125	125	125
Watertight or oiltight to inner bottom, rider plate, shell or bar keel	In accordance with [6]							
Intercostals								
Intercostals and continuous longitudinal girders to shell on flat bottom forward (fore-end strengthening) and to inner bottom in way of engines.	—	150	150	125	150	125	125	‡Dbl. Cont.
Intercostals and continuous longitudinal girders to shell and inner bottom elsewhere and to floors	*275	*275	275	250	275	250	225	225
Watertight and oiltight periphery connections of longitudinal girders in double bottom	In accordance with [6]							
Frames								
To shell in aft peaks of vessels having high power and fine form	—	—	150	125	150	150	150	125
To shell for $0.125L$ forward and in peaks	—	—	250	225	250	250	225	225
To shell elsewhere—See *Note* 1	*300	*300	300	275	300	275	250	250
Unbracketed to inner bottom	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.
Frame brackets to frames, decks and inner bottom	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	‡Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	‡Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.

Structural Items	*Spacing of Welds S, mm*							
Longitudinals to shell and inner bottom	*300	*300	300	275	300	275	250	250
Longitudinals to shell on flat of bottom forward (fore-end strengthening)	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	‡Dbl. Cont	‡Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.
Girders and Webs								
To shell and to bulkheads or decks in tanks	—	200	225	200	225	200	175	150
To bulkheads or decks elsewhere	—	—	250	225	250	225	200	175
Webs to face plate where area of face plate is 64.5 sq. cm. or less	*250	*250	300	275	300	275	250	250
Webs to face plate area of face plate exceeds 64.5 sq. cm	—	—	250	225	250	225	200	175
Bulkheads								
Peripheries of swash bulkheads	—	200	225	200	225	200	175	150
Peripheries of nontight structural bulkheads	—	225	250	225	250	225	200	175
Peripheries of deep tank or watertight bulkheads	In accordance with [6]							
Stiffeners to deeptank bulkheads—See *Note* 1	—	*300	300	275	300	275	250	250
Stiffeners to ordinary watertight bulkheads and deckhouse fronts—See *Note* 1	—	*300	300	275	300	275	250	250
Stiffeners to nontight structural bulkheads; stiffeners on deckhouse sides and after ends—See *Note* 2	*300	*300	*‡300	300	‡300	300	300	250
Stiffener brackets to beams, decks, etc.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	‡Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	‡Dbl Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.
Decks								
Peripheries of platform decks and nontight flats								
Upper Weld	Cont.	Cont.	‡Cont.	Cont.	‡Cont.	Cont.	Cont.	†Cont.
Lower Weld	300	300	‡300	300	‡300	300	300	250
Peripheries of strength decks,exposed decks, and all watertight or oiltight decks, tunnels and flats	In accordance with [6]							
Beams (transverse or longitudinal) to decks	*300	*300	300	275	300	275	250	250
Beams knees to beams and frames	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	‡Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	‡Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.
Hatch coamings to exposed decks	—	—	—	In accordance with [6]				
Transverses or deep beams to decks in tanks	—	200	225	200	225	200	175	150
Transverse or deep beams to deck elsewhere	—	—	250	225	250	225	200	175
Foundations								
To top plates, shell or inner bottom for main engines and major auxiliaries	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.
To top plates, shell or inner bottom for boilers and other auxiliaries	In accordance with [6]							
Additional Welding for Vessels Classed "Oil Carrier"(See Note 4)								

Structural Items	*Spacing of Welds S, mm*							
Girders and Webs								
Centerline girder to shell	—	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.
Centerline girder to deck	—	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.
Bulkhead webs to plating	—	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.
To face plates	—	150	150	150	150	125	125	‡Dbl. Cont.
Transverses								
Bottom transverses to shell	—	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.
Side, deck and bulkhead transverses to plating	—	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.
To face plates	—	150	150	150	150	125	125	‡Dbl. Cont.

Notes:

1 Unbracketed stiffeners of shell, watertight and deep tank bulkheads and house fronts are to have double continuous welds for one-tenth of their length at each end.

2 Unbracketed stiffeners of nontight structural bulkheads, deckhouse sides and after ends are to have double continuous welds equal in length to the depth of the member at each end.

3 Where the symbol, "—" (dash), is shown in place of the spacing of intermittent fillet welds, it is to indicate that the corresponding thickness is not anticipated for that particular structural member.

4 The welding of longitudinals is to be as required under frames or decks above. In addition, they are to have double continuous welds at the ends and in way of transverses equal in length to the depth of the longitudinal. For deck longitudinals, only a matched pair of welds is required at the transverses. For slab longitudinals, the attachment is to be made by double continuous fillet welds of a size w which is 0.3 times the thickness of the thinner plate, but need not be greater than 8.0 mm.

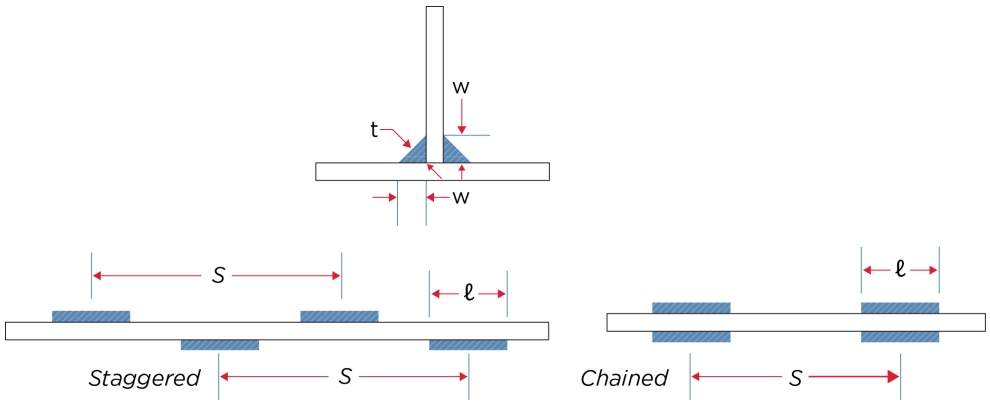
‡ Nominal size of fillet w may be reduced 1.5 mm.

† Nominal size of fillet w is increased 1.5 mm.

* Fillet welds are to be staggered.

TABLE 2
Weld Sizes and Spacing for Vessels Under 90 m (295 ft) in Length – Inches
(2024)

For weld requirements for thicknesses intermediate to those shown in the table, use the nearest thickness shown in the table.



w = leg size in mm (in.) t = throat size in mm (in.)

	Weld size for lesser thickness of members joined, in.							
	0.19	*0.25*	*0.32*	*0.38*	*0.44*	*0.50*	*0.57*	*0.63*
Nominal leg size of fillet w	$^1/_8$	$^3/_{16}$	$^1/_4$	$^1/_4$	$^5/_{16}$	$^5/_{16}$	$^5/_{16}$	$^5/_{16}$
Length of fillet weld	$1^1/_2$	$2^1/_2$	3	3	3	3	3	3

Structural Items	***Spacing of Welds S, in.***							
Single-Bottom Floors To center keelson Elsewhere	In accordance with [6] Same weld as floors in double bottom							
Double-Bottom Floors								
To shell in aft peaks of vessels having high power and fine form	—	—	6	5	6	6	6	5
To shell flat of bottom forward (fore-end strengthening) and in peaks	—	—	10	9	10	10	9	8
To shell elsewhere	*12	*12	12	11	12	11	10	10
Solid floors to center vertical keel plate in engine room, under boiler bearers, wide-spaced floors with longitudinal frames	In accordance with [6]							
Solid floors to center vertical keel plate elsewhere, and open-floor brackets to center vertical keel	*10	*10	10	9	10	9	8	7
Solid floors and open-floor brackets to margin plate	In accordance with [6]							
To inner bottom in engine room	In accordance with [6]							
To inner bottom at forward end (fore-end strengthening)	*11	*11	11	10	11	10	9	8
To inner bottom elsewhere	*12	*12	12	11	12	11	10	10

Structural Items	*Spacing of Welds S, in.*							
Wide spaced with longitudinal framing to shell and inner bottom	In accordance with [6]							
Solid floor stiffeners at watertight or oiltight boundaries	—	12	12	11	12	11	10	10
Watertight and oiltight periphery connections of floors throughout double bottom	In accordance with [6]							
Center Girder								
Nontight to inner-bottom or center strake in way of engine and to shell or bar keel	In accordance with [6]							
Nontight to inner-bottom or center strake clear of engine	6	6	6	5	6	5	5	5
Watertight or oiltight to inner bottom, rider plate, shell or bar keel	In accordance with [6]							
Intercostals								
Intercostals and continuous longitudinal girders to shell on flat bottom forward (fore-end strengthening) and to inner bottom in way of engines.	—	6	6	5	6	5	5	‡Dbl. Cont.
Intercostals and continuous longitudinal girders to shell and inner bottom elsewhere and to floors	*11	*11	11	10	11	10	9	9
Watertight and oiltight periphery connections of longitudinal girders in double bottom	In accordance with [6]							
Frames								
To shell in aft peaks of vessels having high power and fine form	—	—	6	5	6	6	6	5
To shell for $0.125L$ forward and in peaks	—	—	10	9	10	10	9	9
To shell elsewhere—See *Note* 1	*12	*12	12	11	12	11	10	10
Unbracketed to inner bottom	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.
Frame brackets to frames, decks and inner bottom	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	‡Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	‡Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.
Longitudinals to shell and inner bottom	*12	*12	12	11	12	11	10	10
Longitudinals to shell on flat of bottom forward (fore-end strengthening)	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	‡Dbl. Cont	‡Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.
Girders and Webs								
To shell and to bulkheads or decks in tanks	—	8	9	8	9	8	7	6
To bulkheads or decks elsewhere	—	—	10	9	10	9	8	7
Webs to face plate where area of face plate is 64.5 sq. cm. or less	*10	*10	12	11	12	11	10	10
Webs to face plate area of face plate exceeds 64.5 sq. cm	—	—	10	9	10	9	8	7
Bulkheads								

Structural Items	*Spacing of Welds S, in.*							
Peripheries of swash bulkheads	—	8	9	8	9	8	7	6
Peripheries of nontight structural bulkheads	—	9	10	9	10	9	8	7
Peripheries of deep tank or watertight bulkheads	In accordance with [6]							
Stiffeners to deeptank bulkheads—See *Note* 1	—	*12	12	11	12	11	10	10
Stiffeners to ordinary watertight bulkheads and deckhouse fronts—See *Note* 1	—	*12	12	11	12	11	10	10
Stiffeners to nontight structural bulkheads; stiffeners on deckhouse sides and after ends—See *Note* 2	*12	*12	*‡12	12	‡12	12	12	10
Stiffener brackets to beams, decks, etc.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	‡Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	‡Dbl Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.
Decks								
Peripheries of platform decks and nontight flats								
Upper Weld	Cont.	Cont.	‡Cont.	Cont.	‡Cont.	Cont.	Cont.	†Cont.
Lower Weld	12	12	‡12	12	‡12	12	12	10
Peripheries of strength decks,exposed decks, and all watertight or oiltight decks, tunnels and flats	In accordance with [6]							
Beams (transverse or longitudinal) to decks	*12	*12	12	11	12	11	10	10
Beams knees to beams and frames	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	‡Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	‡Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.
Hatch coamings to exposed decks	—	—	—	In accordance with [6]				
Transverses or deep beams to decks in tanks	—	8	9	8	9	8	7	6
Transverse or deep beams to deck elsewhere	—	—	10	9	10	9	8	7
Foundations								
To top plates, shell or inner bottom for main engines and major auxiliaries	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.
To top plates, shell or inner bottom for boilers and other auxiliaries	In accordance with [6]							
Additional Welding for Vessels Classed "Oil Carrier"(See Note 4)								
Girders and Webs								
Centerline girder to shell	—	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.
Centerline girder to deck	—	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.
Bulkhead webs to plating	—	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.
To face plates	—	6	6	6	6	5	5	‡Dbl. Cont.
Transverses								
Bottom transverses to shell	—	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.	†Dbl. Cont.

Structural Items	*Spacing of Welds S, in.*							
Side, deck and bulkhead transverses to plating	—	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.	Dbl. Cont.
To face plates	—	6	6	6	6	6	6	‡Dbl. Cont.

Notes:

1 Unbracketed stiffeners of shell, watertight and deep tank bulkheads and house fronts are to have double continuous welds for one-tenth of their length at each end.

2 Unbracketed stiffeners of nontight structural bulkheads, deckhouse sides and after ends are to have double continuous welds equal in length to the depth of the member at each end.

3 Where the symbol, "—" (dash), is shown in place of the spacing of intermittent fillet welds, it is to indicate that the corresponding thickness is not anticipated for that particular structural member.

4 The welding of longitudinals is to be as required under frames or decks above. In addition, they are to have double continuous welds at the ends and in way of transverses equal in length to the depth of the longitudinal. For deck longitudinals only, a matched pair of welds is required at the transverses. For slab longitudinals, the attachment is to be made by double continuous fillet welds of a size *w* which is 0.3 times the thickness of the thinner plate, but need not be greater than $^5/_{16}$ in.
‡ Nominal size of fillet w may be reduced $^1/_{16}$ in.
† Nominal size of fillet w is increased $^1/_{16}$ in.
* Fillet welds are to be staggered.

5 <No Text>

6 Tee Joints at Boundary Connections *(2024)*

The size of fillet welds for vessels 90 meters (295 feet) in length and greater is to be determined in accordance with [TABLE 1] .

For vessels under 90 meters (295 feet) in length, where the sizes of the welds are assessed based on [TABLE 2] , tee joints at boundary connections of bulkheads, decks, inner bottoms, etc. are to have continuous welding on both sides where the thinner of the plates is 12.5 mm ($^1/_2$ in.) thick or greater. The size of the welds, *w*, is to be such that the two together are not less than the thickness of the thinner plate plus 1.5 mm ($^1/_{16}$ in.). Where the thickness of the thinner plate is less than 12.5 mm ($^1/_2$ in.), it is also acceptable to have the attachment made by a continuous weld on one side 1.5 mm ($^1/_{16}$ in.) less than the thickness of the thinner plate with intermittent welding on the opposite side of the size required by [TABLE 2] for stiffeners to deep tank bulkheads. This is not to be applied in way of tanks where equivalent continuous welds are required.

7 Ends of Unbracketed Stiffeners *(2024)*

Unbracketed stiffeners of shell, watertight and deep tank bulkheads and house fronts are to have double continuous welds for one-tenth of their length at each end.

Unbracketed stiffeners of non-tight structural bulkheads, deckhouse sides and after ends are to have a pair of matched intermittent welds at each end.

9 Reduced Weld Size

9.1 General *(2024)*

Reduction in fillet weld sizes, is to be approved by the Surveyor in accordance with either [9.3] or [9.5] provided that the requirements of [3] are satisfied. This reduction is not allowed for slab longitudinals of thickness greater than 25 mm (1.0 in.)

9.3 Controlled Gaps

Where quality control facilitates working to a gap between members being attached of 1 mm (0.04 in.) or less, a reduction in fillet weld leg size w of 0.5 mm (0.02 in.) is permitted.

9.5 Deep Penetration Welds

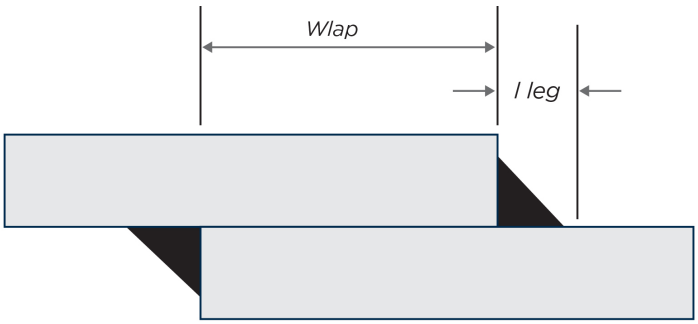
Where automatic double continuous fillet welding is used and quality control facilitates working to a gap between members being attached of 1 mm (0.04 in.) or less, a reduction in fillet weld leg size of 1.5 mm (0.06 in.) is permitted, provided that the penetration at the root is at least 1.5 mm (0.06 in.) into the members being attached.

11 Lapped Joints

11.1 General *(2024)*

Unless otherwise specified, lapped joints are to have overlaps of not less width than twice the thinner plate thickness plus 25 mm (1.0 in.). Refer to 3-2-19/FIGURE 2.

FIGURE 2
Double Continuous Welds at Ends and Intersections *(2024)*



W lap: width of the overlap, see 3-2-19/11.1, 3-2-19/11.7 and 3-2-19/11.9
l leg: leg length of fillet weld, see 3-2-19/11.3, 3-2-19/11.5

11.3 Overlapped End Connections

Overlapped end connections of longitudinal strength members within the midship 0.4*L* are to have continuous fillet welds on both edges each equal in size w to the thickness of the thinner of the two plates joined. All other overlapped end connections are to have continuous welds on each edge of size *w* such that the sum of the two is not less than 1.5 times the thickness of the thinner plate.

11.5 Overlapped Seams

11.5.1 Vessels Under 90 m (295 ft) in Length *(2024)*

Overlapped seams are to have welds on both edges of the sizes required by [6] for tee-connections at boundaries.

Overlapped seams are not to be fitted in way of bottom shell, side shell, bilge, freeboard deck, or tanks carrying flammable liquids. Where used elsewhere, overlapped seams are not to be in connections subject to compressive stresses and are not to be in connections with in-plane shear exceeding 10.35 kN/cm^2 (1.055 tf/cm^2 , 6.7 Ltf/in^2).

11.5.2 Vessels 90 m (295 ft) in Length and Above *(2024)*

Overlapped seams are to have continuous welds on both edges of the sizes required by [TABLE 1] for the boundaries of deep tank or watertight bulkheads, except that for seams of plates 12.5 mm ($^1/_2$ in.) or less clear of tanks, it is acceptable to have one edge intermittent welds in accordance with [TABLE 1] for watertight bulkhead boundaries.

11.7 Overlaps for Lugs and Collars *(2024)*

The overlaps for lugs and collars in way of cut-outs for the passage of stiffeners through webs and bulkhead plating are not to be less than three times the thickness of the lug, but need not be greater than 50 mm (2.0 in.).

11.9 Overlaps of Pipe Penetration Collars *(2021)*

Overlaps of collar plates in way of pipe penetrations through watertight boundaries are not to be less than 30 mm (1.2 in.) in width for pipes with Nominal Diameter (ND) up to 100 mm (4.0 in.), and need not exceed 50 mm (2.0 in.) in width for pipes with ND over 550 mm (21.7 in.). Intermediate widths are to be obtained by interpolation for pipes with ND between 100 (4.0 in.) and 550 mm (21.7 in.), but an average value of 40 mm (1.6 in.) is considered acceptable.

The collar plate is to be equal to, or greater than, the thickness of the watertight boundary plate penetrated, of equivalent material, and continuously welded in accordance with [TABLE 1] for the boundaries of deep tank or watertight bulkheads.

Strength verification is to be carried out for pipe penetrations in areas of high stress concentration such as an area close to a large bracket toe, a cluster of pipe penetrations or a hatch corner.

13 Plug Welds or Slot Welds *(2024)*

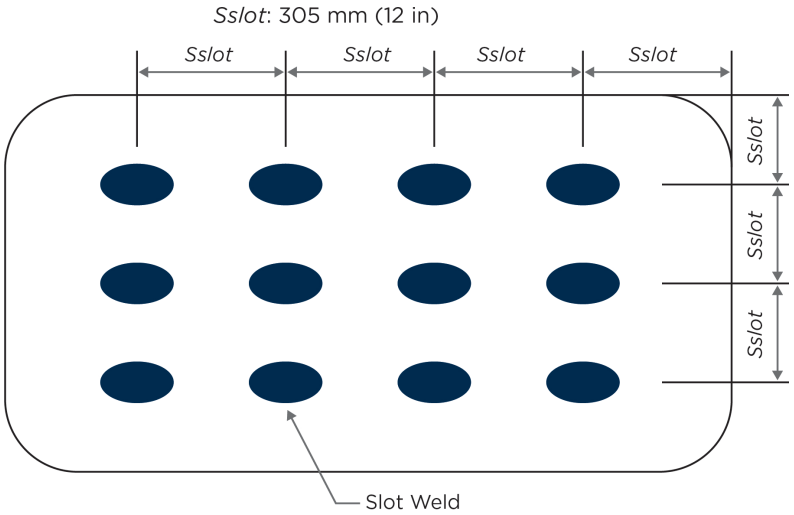
Plug welds or slot welds are approved only for particular applications where access for welding from inside the hull or shell is impracticable such as: very narrow recesses at ends, one side of rudder plating, fairleads or one side of box keel.

Where used in the body of doublers and similar locations, such welds are to be spaced about 305 mm (12 in.) between centers in both directions. Refer to 3-2-19/FIGURE 3. Doubler plates are not acceptable in tanks carrying flammable liquids. Where doubler plates are proposed in way of equipment foundations when large tensile forces normal to the doubler plates could exist, the doubler plate and welds are to be assessed for yielding and buckling, as applicable.

Where plug or slot welds are used, weld details are to comply with a recognized standard (IACS CSR, AWS D1.1, AISC, etc.).

Suitable torch angles are to be applied to minimize lack of fusion in the root corner during slot welding. Welders are to be suitably trained and qualified to perform slot welds.

FIGURE 3
Slot Weld for Doubler *(2024)*



15 Full or Partial Penetration Corner or Tee Joints *(2024)*

Where specifically required by the Rules or where the connection is highly stressed or otherwise considered critical, beveling of a partial or full penetration weld at the edge of the abutting plate is to be applied.

Commentary:

Partial or full penetration welds should be considered for highly stressed joints, where the stress is 75% or more of the yield.

End of Commentary

For partial penetration welds, the root face is to be between 3 mm and $t/3$.

Commentary:

A root face greater than $t/3$ may be specially approved.

End of Commentary

For partial penetration welds with one side beveling, the fillet weld at the opposite side of the bevel is not to be taken less than required in [3.1] with weld factors of 70% of C in [TABLE 1] .

Commentary:

The designer should minimize the potential for lamellar tearing in the joints of full penetration welds.

End of Commentary

17 Alternatives *(2024)*

The foregoing are considered minimum requirements for electric-arc welding in hull construction, Alternative methods, arrangements and details are subject to approval by ABS. See [2-4-3/5] of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)*. Alternative fillet weld sizes determined from structural analyses based on sound engineering principles are acceptable, provided that they meet the overall strength standards of these Rule. Requirements related to coating protection and the accumulation of flammable liquids are to be considered.

PART 3

CHAPTER 2
Hull Structures and Arrangements

SECTION 20
Guidance on Finite Element Analysis

1 General *(2024)*

The intent of this Section is to provide guidance on the use of finite element methods (FEM) for evaluating linear response of hull structural components, equipment foundations and reinforcement structure to the applied loads, where such analysis is necessary for a part of the ship.

Finite element methods can be applied with varying level of detail and complexity to determine stress levels, deflection magnitudes and other parameters of structural components. The choice of the type of finite element and evaluation criteria should match the desired level of detail, loading scenario, boundary conditions and complexity of the structural component.

For vessel specific Total Strength Assessment requirements, refer to Parts 5A and 5C of *Marine Vessel Rules*.

The following Rules provide additional guidance for the specific structural analysis:

Structure Analysis	***Rule Section***
Crane Foundations	Subsection 3/3 of ABS *Guide for Certification of Lifting Appliances*, 5D-6-4/3.15, 5D-8-3/5, 5D-9-3/7, 5A-11-4/4 of *Marine Vessel Rules*, as applicable.
LSA Launching Appliance Foundations	6.1.1.6 of IMO LSA Code for non-CSR vessels, 5A-11-4/4 for CSR vessels,
Helicopter Decks	3-2-11/11.3 of *Marine Vessel Rules*
Deck Fittings	3-2-7/4 of *Marine Vessel Rules*
Bow, Inner, Side and Stern Doors	3-2-16 of *Marine Vessel Rules*
Cargo Hatch Cover	3-2-15/9, 5B-1-5/5.6, 5C-3-4/19.3, 5C-4-2/13 of *Marine Vessel Rules*

Commentary:

For foundations of lifesaving appliances, refer to IMO MSC.81(70), Part 1 Section 8, IMO A.749(18), Section 5 (for ice accretion), API 2C (for offshore davits) as applicable for information on maximum test loads and maximum safe working loads to be considered in the Life Saving Appliance.

End of Commentary

1.1 Submittal Items *(2024)*

Submit a report documenting the analysis along with all structural drawings pertaining to the area of the structure that is being analyzed. The Finite Element (FE)model may be submitted for review along with the report.

The report is to include the following background information of the analysis:

i) The list of drawings/plans used in the analysis, including their versions and dates.

ii) Detailed descriptions of structural modeling principles

iii) Description and plots of the structural models showing:

- ***a)*** Geometry
- ***b)*** Plate thickness

iv) Material properties and beam properties, if applicable

v) Details of boundary conditions applied

vi) All loading conditions analyzed

vii) Data for load application*

viii) Summaries and plots of calculated deflections and reactions and validation of the load direction and global balance in the model

ix) Summaries and plots of calculated stresses

x) Details of buckling assessments, if necessary

xi) Comparison table for design/drawing scantlings and FEA model scantlings and detailed descriptions to show any deviations in the model from the structural drawings.

xii) Description of software used in analysis, including its version and date

xiii) Element type used

Note:

* Details on how loads (static, dynamic, impact, etc.) are determined for structural evaluation.

3 Structural Modeling

3.1 Finite Element Types *(1 July 2021)*

The choice of the type of finite element is guided by the complexity of the structural system or component being analyzed, the level of detail desired and the outcomes measured. Two node line element and three or four node membrane/plate element are considered sufficient for representation of a structure, and requirements in this Section assume the use of such element types in the models. Higher order elements may also be applied. Details of basic element types are given in [TABLE 1] .

TABLE 1
Finite Element Type
(1 July 2021)

Rod (or truss) element	Line element with axial stiffness only and constant cross-sectional area along the length of the element
Beam element	Line element with axial, torsional and bi-directional shear and bending stiffness and with constant properties along the length of the element
Membrane (or plane-stress) element	Plate element with in-plane stiffness and with constant thickness
Shell (or bending plate) element	Plate element with in-plane and out-of-plane bending stiffness and with constant thickness
Solid element	Tetrahedron or brick element with axial, torsional and bi-directional shear. Bending response can be included using several through-thickness elements (linear) or one through-thickness element (quadratic)

3.3 Model Types

3.3.1 Beam/Grillage Model

Beam/grillage models consist entirely of beam and rod elements, and are suitable for the solution of simple to more elaborate beam problems of one, two or three-dimensional configuration. Examples where such models could be applied are for deck beams, girders, floors, and bulkhead stiffening. Such models provide bending moment and shear force distributions, axial, bending and shear stresses, and deflection magnitudes.

3.3.2 Plate Element Model *(1 July 2021)*

Plate element models are applied in cases where a precise representation of the geometry of the structural component or system is necessary, the complexity of the structure warrants it, or when the desired structural response cannot be determined from beam or grillage models. Plate/shell element models are commonly used for thin walled marine applications.

3.3.3 Solid Element Model *(1 July 2021)*

Solid element models are generally used for parts/components where the dimensions of the part/component are comparable to the thickness, such as castings and forgings. The required number of elements and nodes to accurately predict bending response for thin walled structures is much greater than for shell elements, increasing the computational time.

3.5 Modeling Guidance *(2024)*

i) The model should include, as applicable, all primary load-carrying members of the structure being analyzed. Secondary structural members that may significantly affect load distributions and local response of the primary members may also be appropriately included in the model.

ii) For beam elements, in 2D or 3D beam model, cross sectional properties are to be based on an effective width of the attached plating. The effective width of plating of beam elements is not to exceed the sum of one-half of the spacing on either side of the structural member or $1/3$ of the unsupported span of the member, whichever is less. For 3D FEM model, the offset of stiffener cross-section is to be considered for beam elements where appropriate.

iii) Plate element meshing is to follow the stiffening system as far as practicable. The mesh size used should be adequate to represent the overall stiffness of the considered structure. For meshing of large systems such as deck, shell or bulkhead plate/framing systems, the mesh size is to not exceed

the spacing between the frames. The mesh should be progressively and smoothly refined to capture structural details where important or found necessary. A mesh convergence study should be done to confirm the response of the model is not mesh dependent while also optimizing computational time.

iv) At least three elements are to be used, where practical, to model webs of primary supporting members such as girders, transverses, stringers and floors. Rod elements may be used to model flanges of primary supporting members and brackets. The cross sectional area of rods/beams representing sniped or tapered flanges is to be considered proportionally using an average area over the length of the element.

v) The aspect ratio of plate elements, in general, is not to exceed three. The use of triangular plate elements is to be kept to a minimum.

vi) Shell elements are to be used for plate elements subjected to lateral loading.

vii) Gross scantlings are to be used in modeling the structure.

viii) Discontinuities that cause stress concentrations or change the response of a member, such as lightening holes or penetrations, should be included when possible.

5 Boundary Conditions *(1 July 2021)*

Boundary conditions applied are to reflect, as closely as possible, the actual support conditions of the structure.

The model extent should be sufficient to establish proper boundary conditions. Where the model has been extended to points well away from the areas of interest within the model, boundary conditions may be reasonably simplified, for example assuming fully fixed conditions for plate elements models.

A separate local FE model with fine mesh zones in conjunction with the boundary conditions obtained from global (parent) model may be used to check the localized stresses against yielding strength and fatigue strength as applicable.

7 Loads *(1 July 2021)*

Loads applied on a model are to be as required by the relevant rule or the design loads of the structural member, whichever is greater.

In addition to static loads, other loads such as hull girder and dynamic loads arising out of acceleration, ship motion, etc. are to be considered where applicable and relevant. If accelerations from model tests, recognized standards or direct calculations are not available, the acceleration parameters in accordance with Part 5 of the *Marine Vessel Rules*, as applicable for specific vessel type are to be considered.

In typical cases, it is not necessary to consider the self weight of the structure, unless it is expected to be a significant component of the loads acting on the structure.

Loads are to be applied in a manner so as to match, as closely as possible, the expected distribution and manifestation of the load within the structure in the actual situation.

9 Acceptance Criteria

9.1 Allowable Stresses *(1 July 2024)*

Unless otherwise specified in these Rules or relevant regulations, individual stress components and, as applicable, direct combinations of such stresses in beam or grillage models are not to exceed the allowable stress F.

$$F = S_m F_y / FS$$

where

S_m = to be taken as defined in Note 2 of [TABLE 2B]

F_y = specified minimum yield strength of the material

FS = Factor of Safety

See 3-2-20/Table 2A for the Factor of Safety for specific stresses:

TABLE 2A
Factor of Safety for Beam Element Models
(2024)

Stress Type	*Factor of Safety*	
	Static + Dynamic	*Static*
Axial or Bending Stress	1.25	1.67
Shear Stress	1.88	2.5

Note: For longitudinally effective structure that is modeled without the hull girder loads, the allowable axial or bending stresses are to be decreased by 10%.

For plate element models, and unless otherwise specified in these Rules or relevant regulations, the Von-Mises equivalent stress is not to exceed the limits specified in [TABLE 2] for the specific mesh size.

TABLE 2B
Stress Limits for Plate Element Models
(2022)

Mesh Size	*Stress Limit*	
	Static + Dynamic	*Static*
1 x stiffener spacing (SS)	0.90 S_mF_y	0.63 S_mF_y
1/2 x SS	0.95 S_mF_y	0.67 S_mF_y
1/3 x SS	1.00 S_mF_y	0.70 S_mF_y
1/4 x SS (1)	1.06 S_mF_y	0.74 S_mF_y
1/5 x SS ~ 1/10 x SS (1)	1.12 S_mF_y	0.78 S_mF_y
1/10 x SS ~ Plate Thickness (1)	1.18 S_mF_y	0.82 S_mF_y

Notes:

1 Stress limits greater than 1.00 $S_m F_y$ are to be restricted to small areas in way of structural discontinuities. A small area is defined at one particular high stress location in a structural detail with a potential crack location. The high stress includes stress risers due to structural discontinuities and presence of attachments, but excludes the effects of welds. To determine high stress, the mesh size needs to be finer than 1/10 longitudinal spacing, but not finer than plate thickness.

2 $S_m = 1.0$ for mild steel

= 0.95 for HT 32

= 0.908 for HT 36

= 0.875 for HT 40

3 For intermediate mesh size, the stress limit is to obtained by linear interpolation

4 For longitudinally effective structure that is modeled without the hull girder loads, the allowable stresses are to be decreased by 10%

5 The above limits have been developed for models which are based on gross scantlings. Adjustments may be made to the allowable stress if net scantlings are used. In using SafeHull buckling criteria, [15/5.i.] of the ABS *Guide for 'SafeHull-Dynamic Loading Approach' for Vessels* provides a method to convert stresses using gross scantling to stresses using net scantlings.

6 The above limits are combined stresses including tertiary stresses resulting from the local bending of plate panels between stiffeners. Where the tertiary stress is not represented in the model, the effect of tertiary stress estimated by first principle approach is to be added in the calculated element stress.

7 For SafeHull Structural Assessment, the allowable values as given in ABS *Guide for 'SafeHull-Dynamic Loading Approach' for Vessels* are to be applied.

Commentary:

For FEM calculations using shell or plane strain elements, the stresses are read from the center of the individual element. When checking Von-Mises stresses of elements, stress plots based on stress at each element centroid can be used. For mesh sizes less than *S* x *S*, the area weighted Von-Mises stress within an area equivalent to the specified mesh size may be used to compare with the permissible stresses. Stress concentrations should be considered by examining design details or FE analysis.

For shell elements, the stresses are evaluated at the mid plane of the element. If flat bars are modeled using shell or plane stress elements, dummy rod elements or equivalent should be used to evaluate the stresses at the free edge of the flat bars. Stresses in the free edge should be read at the midpoint between nodes of the free edge.

The element shear stress in way of cut-outs which are not modelled in webs should be corrected for loss in shear area as given in [5A-7-2/5.2.6] . The corrected element shear stress shall be used to calculate the Von-Mises stress of the element for verification against the yielding criteria. When possible, and specially for fine mesh model, openings are to be included in the model.

For vessels under 61 meters in length, 10% reduction on the allowable stress by the effects of hull girder loads need not be applied.

End of Commentary

9.3 Buckling Strength *(1 July 2021)*

Buckling strength is to be adequate for the critical locations and high stress areas subject to compressive and/or shear stresses.

Plate panels and primary supporting members are to be checked against buckling (serviceability state limit) and ultimate state limit using stresses obtained from the structural FE analyses. For this purpose, established analytical or empirical formulas suitable to the hull structure are to be used.

Buckling and ultimate strength criteria for plate panels and primary supporting members of the vessels are to be in accordance with Part 5 of the *Marine Vessel Rules*, as applicable for specific vessel type. For vessels that do not have specific requirements in Part 5 of the*Marine Vessel Rules*, reference is made to Appendix [A2] of the *Guide for 'SafeHull-Dynamic Loading Approach' for Vessels*.

APPENDIX 1
Calculation of Shear Stresses for Vessels Having Longitudinal Bulkheads

1 General *(2024)*

1.1 Objective *(2024)*

The objective of this section is to provide a procedure for calculation of shear stresses for vessels having longitudinal bulkheads.

1.2 Methods of Calculation *(2024)*

The nominal total shear stress f_s in the side shell or longitudinal bulkhead plating is related to the shear flow N at that point, by the following equation:

f_s = N/t, kN/cm^2 (tf/cm^2, Ltf/in^2)

N = shear flow, kN/cm (tf/cm, Ltf/in.)

t = thickness of the plating, cm (in.)

Commentary:

Refer to Appendix [5A-5-A1] and Appendix 5C-11-A1 for guidance on calculating shear flow and shear stresses for vessels having longitudinal bulkheads.

ABS HGSA Software is available to assist in this calculation.

In calculating the shear stress for vessels having plane plate longitudinal bulkheads, for a section with openings symmetrical or unsymmetrical, or openings on only one side of the vessel, the shear flow may need to be adjusted to consider the following factors:

- Size of the opening – Extent in longitudinal and vertical direction
- Extent of continuity of the longitudinal bulkhead in which the opening is located
- Connectivity of the structural members/availability of nearby bulkheads for the shear to flow through/other structural members around (bulkheads to decks or flats/arrangement of the structural members in the vicinity of the opening)
- Completeness of the complex girder system formed by the structural members around the opening in the section under consideration

- Structural details in way of the openings such as corner radius, proposed reinforcement in way of the openings, etc., against the effects of stress concentration

A 2D full section or 3D model of a sufficient length may be required to calculate the actual shear flow and justify the shear stress in way of the section.

End of Commentary

3 Calculation of the Shear Flow Around Closed Sections

The shear flow of a closed and prismatic structure is expressed by the following equation.

N = $(Fm/I)+N_i$, kN/cm (tf/cm, Ltf/in.)

F = total shear force at the section under consideration, in kN(tf, Ltf)

m = first moment about the neutral axis of the section, in cm^3(in^3), of the area of the longitudinal material between the zero shear level and the vertical level, at which the shear stress is being calculated

m = $\int_o^p Ztds + \sum_{i=o}^{n} a_i z_i$ cm^3(in^3)

I = moment of inertia of the section, in cm^4(in^4)

N_i = constant shear flow around the cell regarded as an integration constant of unknown value arising from substituting the statically indeterminate structure by statically determinate one, in kN/cm (tf/cm, Ltf/in)

Z = distance from section neutral axis to a point in the girth, positive downward, in cm(in.)

a = equivalent sectional area of the stiffener or girder attached to the deck, shell and bulkhead plating, in cm^2(in^2)

s = length along girth and longitudinal bulkhead, in cm (in.)

5 Calculation of m

To calculate the value of m requires the knowledge or assumption of a zero shear point in the closed cell. As an example, in the case of a simplified tanker section, the deck point at the centerline is a known point of zero shear in the absence of the centerline girder. An arbitrary point may be chosen in the wing tank cell. Superposition of the constant N_i to the shear flow resulting from the assumption of zero shear point will yield to the correct shear flow around the wing cell.

7 Determination of N_i

N_i is determined by using Bredt's torsion formula, making use of the assumption that there is no twist in the cell section, i.e., the twist moment resulting from the shear flow around a closed cell should equal zero, or $\oint N\frac{ds}{t} = 0$. In a multicell structure of n number of cells, the formula can be written for the ith cell as follows.

$$\oint N\frac{ds}{t} = \frac{F}{I}\oint_i m_i\frac{ds}{t} + N_{i-1}\int_{Div}\frac{ds}{t} + N_i\oint\frac{ds}{t} + N_{i+1}\int_{Div}\frac{ds}{t} = 0$$

Div = common division between cell i and the adjacent cells $i-1$ and $i+1$.

The first term represents twist moment around cell i at the assumed statically determined status. The m values are calculated upon arbitrary zero shear points in the cell i and the adjacent cells. The remaining terms in the equations represent the balancing twist moments around cell i and of those carried out by the common divisions in the adjacent cells $i-1$ and $i+1$.

To determine the constant shear flow in the cells N_1, N_2,. . . N_i, N_n, n number of similar equations are formed for each cell and are solved simultaneously.

PART 3

CHAPTER 2
Hull Structures and Arrangements

APPENDIX 2
Loading Manuals and Loading Instruments

1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1 Goal

The vessels covered in this section are to be designed, constructed, operated and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goals*
STRU 1	In the intact condition, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU 3	Provide protection to persons onboard, the environment and required safety services.

1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above stated goals, the design, construction, installation, and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Structure (STRU)	
STRU-FR1	The loading conditions are to be properly defined to cover the critical cases for the intended service with the calculated still water bending moment and shear force to ensure sufficient hull girder longitudinal strength.
STRU-FR2	Information is to be provided to enable to the vessel to operate within the designed limits of hull girder longitudinal strength, local strength of forward bottom structures against slamming, cargo hold tank tops, decks and hatch covers, designed maximum cargo density, and other designed limits and loading instructions, where applicable.
STRU-FR3	Means is to be provided to enable the Master to quickly perform calculations to ensure the intended loading conditions meeting the designed limits of hull girder strength and local strength, where applicable.

1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

2 General

2.1 Application *(2024)*

The requirements in this Appendix apply to all classed cargo vessels 65 m (213 ft) and above in length.

Additional requirements in Appendix 3-2-A3 are applied to bulk carriers, ore carriers and combination carriers having a freeboard length (L_f) of 150 m (492 ft) and above. L_f is as defined in 3-1-1/3.1.

Commentary:

These requirements satisfy Regulation 10(1) of the International Convention on Load Lines, 1966 and are applicable for vessels with freeboard length, L_f of 65 meters (213 feet) and above.

End of Commentary

3 Definitions

3.1 Loading Guidance

Loading guidance is a generic term covering both loading manual and loading instrument, as defined below.

3.1.1 Loading Manual

A loading manual is a document containing sufficient information to assist the master of the vessel to arrange for the loading and ballasting of the vessel in such a way as to avoid the creation of any unacceptable stresses in the vessel's structure.

3.1.2 Loading Instrument

A loading instrument is an instrument designed to assess vessel's still water bending moments, shear forces and, where applicable, the still water torsional moments and lateral loads at the specified points along the length for the purpose not to exceed the specified values in any loaded or ballast condition.

3.3 Category I Vessels

Category I vessels are any of the following:

i) Vessels with large deck openings where combined stresses due to vertical and horizontal hull girder bending, torsional and lateral loads need be considered, such as container carriers.

ii) Vessels designed for non-homogeneous loading where the cargo and/or ballast may be unevenly distributed, except those belonging to [3.5.iii.] . Examples of such vessel are bulk carriers, ore carriers and combination carriers.

iii) Vessels, such as oil carriers and fuel carriers, except those belonging to [3.5.iii.] .

iv) Chemical carriers and gas carriers

3.5 Category II Vessels

Category II vessels are any of the following:

i) Vessels with such arrangements that only allow a small possibility for variation in cargo and ballast distribution, such as passenger ships.

ii) Vessels on regular and fixed trading pattern where the loading manual gives sufficient guidance, such as ro-ro ferries.

iii) Vessels less than 120 m (394 ft) in length, L, when their design takes into account the uneven distribution of cargo or ballast.

5 Loading Documents

5.1 Loading Manual *(2024)*

All vessels are to be provided with a loading manual reviewed and stamped by ABS in accordance with [7], except for Category II vessels with length less than 90 m and the deadweight not exceeding 30% of the displacement at the summer load line.

5.3 Modifications

Where modifications to the vessel or to the loading/trading pattern result in changes to the input information, a revised or new loading manual is to be submitted and a stamped copy is to be placed aboard the vessel to replace the existing manual. The loading instrument is to be verified in accordance with [9.3] or newly installed and verified in such cases.

Where changes due to modification of the vessel are such that the still water bending moments and shear forces corresponding to the new loading conditions are within ±2% of the existing allowable values, the existing allowable values need not be modified.

7 Loading Manual

7.1 Required Information

The loading manual is to be based on the final data of the vessel and is to include at least the following information:

i) The loading conditions upon which the design of this vessel is approved.

ii) The results of the calculations of still water bending moments and shear forces.

iii) Permissible limits of still water bending moments and shear forces and, where applicable, limitations due to torsional and lateral loads.

iv) Maximum allowable local lower decks and double bottom loading.

v) If cargoes other than bulk cargoes are contemplated, such as different deck cargoes, they are to be listed together with any specific instructions for loading.

vi) Maximum allowable load on deck and hatch covers. If the vessel is not approved to carry load on deck or hatch covers, that fact is to be clearly stated in the loading manual.

vii) Information on the heavy ballast draft forward used for the fore-end strengthening required in 3-2-4/15.

7.3 Loading Conditions

The above information is to be based on the intended service conditions. See 3-2-A2/11 TABLE 1 for the selection of loading conditions.

TABLE 1
Loading Conditions in the Loading Manual

1.	The loading manual is to include at least	
1.1	full load conditions, for both departure and arrival conditions,	
1.2	ballast conditions, for both departure and arrival conditions (see also 1.5)	
1.3	any other critical loading conditions on which the design of the vessel is based.	
1.4	in-port conditions (see also 1.5.3)	
1.5	Intermediate conditions, including but not limited to	
	1.5.1	before and after any ballasting/deballasting during the voyage.
	1.5.2	ballast exchange and its sequence, where intended,
	1.5.3	during loading/unloading (for vessels in 2.1, 2.2 where applicable, and 2.5)
2.	The following conditions are to be considered for the particular type of vessel. The list does not preclude any loading conditions that are necessary for the particular service intended:	
2.1	Oil Carriers:	
	2.1.1	homogeneous cargo if consistent with the service of the vessel
	2.1.2	cargoes of typical densities within the expected range
	2.1.3	part loaded conditions
	2.1.4	short voyages (e.g. half bunker)
	2.1.5	tank cleaning conditions
	2.1.6	docking conditions afloat
2.2	Bulk Carriers, Ore Carriers, Container Carriers, Dry Cargo Vessels, Other Specialized Carriers:	
	2.2.1	homogeneous cargo if consistent with the service of the vessel
	2.2.2	cargoes of typical densities within the expected range
	2.2.3	heavy cargo with empty holds or non-homogeneous conditions
	2.2.4	short voyages (e.g. half bunker)
	2.2.5	deck cargoes
	2.2.6	docking conditions afloat
2.3	Liquefied Gas Carriers:	
	2.3.1	homogeneous loading for all approved cargoes
	2.3.2	with empty or partially filled tank(s)
	2.3.3	docking conditions afloat
2.4	Chemical Carriers:	
	2.4.1	conditions for oil carriers
	2.4.2	all approved high density cargoes
2.5	Combination Carriers	
	2.5.1	conditions as specified in 2.1 and 2.2 above.
2.6	Offshore Support Vessels	
	2.6.1	anchor handling operations
	2.6.2	pipe laying and/or seabed trenching
	2.6.3	outboard weights lifting either with use of heavy cranes or A-frames

	2.6.4	homogeneous cargo if consistent with the service of the vessel
	2.6.5	heavy deck cargo with empty holds and/or tanks or non-homogeneous conditions
	2.6.6	cargo deck and/or lower decks or inner bottom cargoes
	2.6.7	cargoes of typical densities within the expected range
	2.6.8	high densities cargoes
	2.6.9	part loaded conditions
	2.6.10	short voyages (e.g. half bunker)
	2.6.11	tank cleaning conditions
	2.6.12	docking conditions afloat

7.5 Language

The loading manual is to be prepared in, or is to include, a language understood by the user. English may be considered to be a language understood by the user.

9 Loading Instrument *(2024)*

In addition to the loading manual indicated in [5.1] , Category I vessels of 100 m (328 ft) or more in length are to be provided with a loading instrument verified in accordance with [9] . For Computer Software for Onboard Stability Calculations, additional requirements in Appendix 3-3-A7 are to be applied.

9.1 Type

A loading instrument is to be digital. A single point loading instrument is not acceptable.

9.3 Functional Requirements and Information *(2024)*

The requirements of the loading instrument include, but not limited to, the following:

- The instrument is to be type approved, where applicable.
- The instrument is to be based on the final data of the vessel.
- The number and position of read-out points are satisfactory.
- The relevant limits for all read-out points are satisfactory.

The verification of the loading instrument is to be in accordance with 3-7-3/7.

Commentary:

See IACS Recommendation No. 48 for recommendations on the approval of loading instruments.

End of Commentary

9.5 Language *(2024)*

The operation manual and the instrument output are to be prepared in, or are to include, a language understood by the user. If this language is not English, a translation into English is to be included.

11 Annual Surveys *(2024)*

The annual surveys are to be in accordance with 7-3-2/1.1.5.

PART 3

CHAPTER 2

Hull Structures and Arrangements

APPENDIX 3

Loading Manuals and Loading Instruments: Additional Requirements for Bulk Carriers, Ore Carriers and Combination Carriers 150 Meters (492 Feet) and above in Length (L_f)

1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1 Goal

The vessels covered in this section are to be designed, constructed, operated and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goals*
STRU 1	In the intact condition, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU 2	Resist structural failure associated with accidental conditions.
STRU 3	Provide protection to persons onboard, the environment and required safety services.
MGMT 3	Establish procedures, plans and instructions for operations concerning the safety of the personnel, vessel, and protection of the environment. (ISM Code 7)

1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above stated goals, the design, construction, installation, and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Structure (STRU)	
STRU-FR1	The loading conditions are to be properly defined to cover the critical cases for the intended service with the calculated still water bending moment and shear force to ensure the sufficient hull girder longitudinal strength in intact conditions.

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
STRU-FR2	The hull girder longitudinal strength in each cargo hold flooded conditions is to be adequate to reduce the risk of structure failure for bulk carriers where there is no double side skin construction with a sufficient width.
STRU-FR3	Means is to be provided to enable the Master to quickly perform the calculations to ensure the intended loading conditions meeting the designed limits of hull girder strength and local strength.
Safety Management (MGMT)	
MGMT-FR1	Information is to be provided to enable the vessel to load and unload cargo safely.
MGMT-FR2	Information is to be provided to enable to the vessel to operate within the designed maximum and minimum limits of cargo mass of each cargo hold and adjacent two cargo holds.

The functional requirements covered in the cross-referenced Rules are also to be met.

1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

2 Application *(2024)*

The requirements in this Appendix apply to bulk carriers, ore carriers and combination carriers having a freeboard length (L_f), as defined in 3-1-1/3.3, of 150 m (492 ft) and above. Unless otherwise stated, these requirements are additional to those in Appendix 3-2-A2.

Commentary:

This Appendix is based IACS UR S1A "Additional Requirements for Loading Conditions, Loading Manuals and Loading Instruments for Bulk Carriers, Ore Carriers and Combination Carriers"

End of Commentary

3 <No Text>

5 Loading Manual

5.1 Required Information

5.1.1 Permissible Limits

In addition to 3-2-A2/7.1, the loading manual is to include the following information:

5.1.1(a) For bulk carriers specified in [5C-3-A5a/1] where [5C-3-A5a] is applicable, (2024)

i) The permissible limits of still water bending moments and shear forces in the hold flooded condition in accordance with 5C-3-3/3.1 and [5C-3-A5a] .

ii) The still water bending moment limits are to be presented in the form of an envelope curve for all combinations of loading conditions and flooded holds.

5.1.1(b) The cargo hold(s) or combination of cargo holds that might be empty at full draft. If it is not permitted to have an empty cargo hold at full draft, this is to be clearly stated in the loading manual.

5.1.1(c) Maximum allowable and minimum required mass of contents of each cargo hold and double bottom space in way thereof, as a function of the draft at the mid length of the hold.

5.1.1(d) Maximum allowable and minimum required mass of contents of two cargo holds and double bottom spaces forward and aft of any cargo hold bulkhead, as a function of the mean draft. This mean draft may be taken as the average of the drafts at the mid-length of two holds.

5.1.2 Loading Rate and Sequence

5.1.2(a) The maximum rate of ballast change

5.1.2(b) An instruction that a loading plan is to be agreed with the terminal on the basis of the achievable rates of change of ballast.

5.1.2(c) Typical sequence of loading from commencement to full deadweight or any contemplated part load conditions. Where applicable, homogeneous conditions and alternate loading conditions are to be included. The typical loading sequences shall be developed with due attention being paid to the loading rate, the deballasting capacity and applicable strength limitations. The Annex to this Appendix and [TABLE 2] contain, as guidance only, an example of a Loading Sequence Summary Form and aspects that may be considered in developing the sequence.

5.1.2(d) Typical sequences for change of ballast at sea, where applicable.

5.3 Loading Conditions

The above information is to be based on the intended service conditions. See [TABLE 1] for the selection of loading conditions, which replaces 3-2-A2/7.3 TABLE 1 for the vessels covered by this Appendix.

7 Loading Instrument

7.1 Required Verifications

In addition to 3-2-A2/9.3, at least the following aspects are to be demonstrated to the Surveyor for his/her verification:

7.1.1

That the instrument can easily and quickly perform calculations to determine that the permissible values at the specified points along the vessel will not be exceeded in any loaded or ballast condition;

7.1.2

That the relevant limits for the mass of contents of each cargo hold and double bottom spaces in way thereof, as a function of the draft at the mid-hold position, are satisfactory;

7.1.3

That the relevant limits for the mass of contents of two cargo holds and double bottom spaces forward and aft of any cargo hold bulkhead, as a function of the mean draft in way of these holds, are satisfactory;

7.1.4 *(2024)*

Where applicable for bulk carriers as specified in [5C-3-A5a/1] , that the relevant limits for the still water bending moments and shear forces in any one hold flooded conditions in accordance with 5C-3-3/3.1 and [5C-3-A5a] are satisfactory.

TABLE 1
Loading Conditions in the Loading Manual For Bulk Carriers, Ore Carriers and Combination Carriers 150 Meters (492 Feet) and above in Length (L_f)

1.	The loading manual is to include at least the following loading conditions, upon which the design of the vessel is based.	
1.1	full load conditions, subdivided into departure and arrival conditions	
	1.1.1	cargoes of typical densities within the expected range
	1.1.2	alternate heavy cargo loading condition (see notes 1 & 5 below)
	1.1.3	alternate light cargo loading condition (see notes 2 & 5 below)
	1.1.4	homogeneous heavy cargo loading (see notes 3 & 5 below)
	1.1.5	homogeneous light cargo loading (see notes 4 & 5 below)
	1.1.6	short voyages (e.g. half bunker)
	1.1.7	deck cargoes
1.2	multiple port loading/unloading conditions, subdivided into departure and arrival conditions (see note 5 below)	
1.3	ballast conditions, subdivided into departure and arrival conditions	
1.4	critical loading conditions	
1.5	intermediate conditions, including but not limited to	
	1.5.1	before and after any ballasting/deballasting during the voyage
	1.5.2	ballast exchange and its sequence {see [5.1.2(a)], [5.1.2(b)] and [5.1.2(d)] }
1.6	in-port conditions	
1.7	docking conditions afloat	
2.	The following conditions are to be considered for combination carriers, in addition to the conditions as specified above. The list does not preclude any loading conditions that are necessary for the particular service intended:	
2.1	part loaded conditions (see note 5 below)	

Notes:

1 Heaviest cargo can be carried and the draft is corresponding to the summer load water line. Loaded holds may not be filled completely with cargo.

2 Lightest cargo can be carried at the summer load water line. Loaded holds may or may not be filled completely with cargo.

3 Heaviest cargo loaded in all cargo holds at the same filling ratio (cargo volume/hold cubic capacity) and at the draft corresponding to the summer load water line. All loaded holds may not be filled up with cargo.

4 Homogeneous loading condition. All cargo holds are filled completely with cargo and the draft is corresponding to the summer load water line.

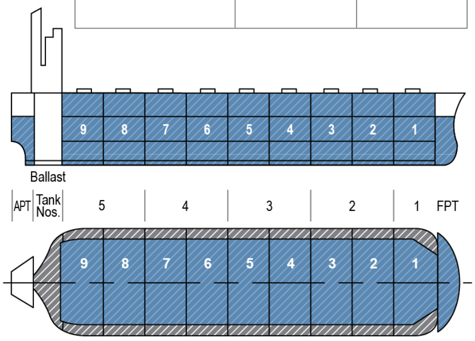
5 Conditions during loading/unloading are also to be included.

TABLE 2
Guidance on Loading/Unloading Sequences

1.	In addition to [5.1.2(c)] , due attention is to be paid to the following items in the development of typical loading/unloading sequences being submitted for review.
2.	The typical sequences are to include, but not limited to, the following:
-	alternate hold light and heavy cargo condition
-	homogeneous light and heavy cargo condition
-	short voyage (full load with less than full fuel)
-	multiple port loading/unloading
-	deck cargo condition
-	block loading
3.	The sequences may be port specific if so desired.
4.	The sequence should include each and every stage from commencement to full deadweight or vice versa. Whenever the loading/unloading equipment moves to the next location, it constitutes the end of that stage. For each stage, longitudinal as well as local strength of double bottom are to be considered.
5.	for each stage, a summary highlighting the essential information such as the following is to be prepared:
-	the amount of cargo loaded/unloaded during that stage
-	the amount of ballast discharged/ballasted during that stage
-	the still-water bending moment and shearing forces at the end of the stage
-	trim and draft at the end of the stage

ANNEX Guidance on Loading Summary Sequence Form [see 3-2-A3/5.1.2(c)]

Vessel Name:	Yard:	ID Number:



Port (Specific or typical):	Condition at commencement of loading/discharging	
Total mass of cargo to be loaded/discharged:	Condition at end of loading/discharging	
Dock water density (l/m3):	Maximum loading/discharging rate:	Average loading/discharging rate:
Number of loaders/dischargers:	Maximum Ballasting/ Deballasting rate:	Average Ballasting/ Deballasting rate:

Volume of Hold l/h(m3)									
Height of hold (m)									

NOTE: During each pour allowable limits for hull girder shear faces, bending moments and mass in holds are not to be exceeded. Loading/discharging operations may have to be suspended temporarily to allow for ballasting in order to keep actual values within limits.

	Hold content at commencement of loading/discharging								
Cargo mass									
Density (l/m3)									
Grade									

Ballast content at commencement of loading/discharging	APT	Ball No.5	Ball No.4	Hold No.6	Ball No.3	Hold No.4	Ball No.2	Ball No.1	FPT
Wings or Peaks									
Upper									
Lower Peaks									

Commencement of loading/discharging (sea)				
d aft (m)	Trim (m)	d fwd (m)	Maximum S.F.%	Maximum B.M.%

Pour No./ grade	Cargo Operations: Hold 1	Hold 2	Hold 3	Hold 4	Hold 5	Hold 6	Hold 7	Hold 8	Hold 9	Upper / Lower/ Peak	Ballast Operations: APT	Ballast Tank No. 5	Ballast Tank No. 4	No. 6 Ballast Hold	Ballast Tank No. 3	No. 4 Ballast Hold	Ballast Tank No. 2	Ballast Tank No. 1	FPT	Values at end of pour (from harbour to sea): d aft (m)	Trim (m)	d fwd (m)	Maximum S.F.%	Maximum B.M.%
1										Upper														
										Lower/ Peak														
2										Upper														
										Lower/ Peak														
3										Upper														
										Lower/ Peak														
4										Upper														
										Lower/ Peak														
5										Upper														
										Lower/ Peak														
6										Upper														
										Lower/ Peak														
7										Upper														
										Lower/ Peak														
8										Upper														
										Lower/ Peak														
...										Upper														
										Lower/ Peak														
Draft Survey (per loading):	Total cargo onboard (l):				Remaining cargo to be loaded (l):					Total amount of bunkers onboard (l):													X	X
n-1										Upper														
										Lower/ Peak														
n										Upper														
										Lower/ Peak														

	Hold content at end of loading/discharging								
Cargo mass									

Total mass loaded/discharged (l)	

Ballast content at end of loading/discharging									
Wings or Peaks									
Upper									
Lower Peaks									

Values at end of loading/discharging (sea)				
d aft (m)	Trim (m)	d fwd (m)	Maximum S.F.%	Maximum B.M.%

Approved by:

APPENDIX 4

Buckling Strength of Longitudinal Strength Members for Vessels Over 61 m (200 ft) in Length

1 Application *(2025)*

When compliance with this Appendix is required in the applicable Rules and Guides, these requirements apply to plate panels and longitudinals subject to hull girder bending and shear stresses. This Appendix is not applicable to vessels with the SafeHull **SH** notation.

3 Elastic Buckling Stresses

3.1 Elastic Buckling of Plates

3.1.1 Compression *(2024)*

The ideal elastic buckling stress is given by:

$$\sigma_E = 0.9mE\left(\frac{t_b}{s}\right)^2 \text{ N/mm}^2(\text{kgf/mm}^2, \text{psi})$$

For plating with longitudinal stiffeners (parallel to compressive stress) as indicated in [FIGURE 1] :

$$m = \frac{8.4}{\Psi + 1.1} \text{ for } (0 \le \Psi \le 1)$$

For plating with transverse stiffeners (perpendicular to compressive stress) as indicated in [FIGURE 1] :

$$m = c\left[1 + \left(\frac{s}{\ell}\right)^2\right]^2 \frac{2.1}{\Psi + 1.1} \text{ for } (0 \le \Psi \le 1)$$

where

E = 2.06×10^5 N/mm^2 (21,000 kgf/mm^2, 30×10^6 psi)

t_b = net thickness of plating, in mm (in.), after making standard deductions as given in [TABLE 1A] or [TABLE 1B] , as applicable

s = shorter side of plate panel, in mm (in.)

ℓ = longer side of plate panel, in mm (in.)

c = 1.3 when plating stiffened by floors or deep girders

= 1.21 when stiffeners are angles or T-sections

= 1.10 when stiffeners are bulb flats

= 1.05 when stiffeners are flat bars

Ψ = ratio of smallest to largest compressive stress, σ_a (see [7.1]), varying linearly across panel.

3.1.2 Shear

The ideal elastic buckling stress is given by:

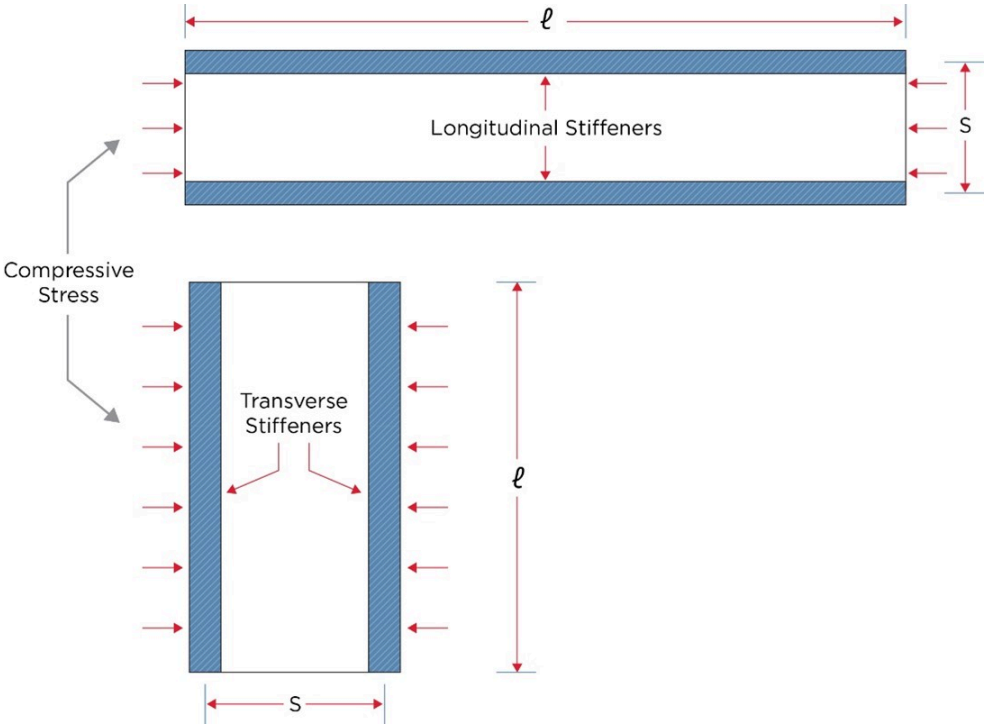
$$\tau_E = 0.9 k_t E \left(\frac{t_b}{s}\right)^2 \text{ N/mm}^2(\text{kgf/mm}^2, \text{psi})$$

where

$$k_t = 5.34 + 4\left(\frac{s}{\ell}\right)^2$$

E, t_b, s and ℓ are as defined in [3.1.1]

FIGURE 1
Plating with Longitudinal/Transverse Stiffeners *(2024)*



3.3 Elastic Buckling of Longitudinals

3.3.1 Column Buckling without Rotation of the Cross Section

For the column buckling mode (perpendicular to plane of plating), the ideal elastic buckling stress is given by:

$$\sigma_E = \frac{EI_a}{c_1 A\ell^2}\ \mathrm{N/mm^2(kgf/mm^2, psi)}$$

where

I_a = moment of inertia, in cm^4 (in^4), of longitudinal, including plate flange and calculated with thickness as specified in [3.1.1]

A = cross-sectional area, in cm^2 (in^2), of longitudinal, including plate flange and calculated with thickness as specified in [3.1.1]

ℓ = span, in m (ft), of longitudinal

c_1 = 1000 (1000, 14.4)

E = as defined in [3.1.1]

3.3.2 Torsional Buckling Mode

The ideal elastic buckling stress for the torsional mode is given by:

$$\sigma_E = \frac{\pi^2 EI_w}{10c_1 I_p \ell^2}\left(m^2 + \frac{K}{m^2}\right) + 0.385E\frac{I_t}{I_p}\ \mathrm{N/mm^2\ (kgf/mm^2, psi)}$$

where

K = $c_2 \dfrac{C\ell^4}{\pi^4 EI_w}$

m = number of half waves given by [TABLE 2]

E = as defined in [3.1.1]

c_2 = 10^6 (10^6, 20736)

I_t = St. Venant's moment of inertia, in cm^4 (in^4), of profile (without plate flange)

= $c_3 \dfrac{h_w t_w^3}{3}$ for flat bars (slabs)

= $c_3 \dfrac{1}{3}\left[h_w t_w^3 + b_f t_f^3\left(1 - 0.63\dfrac{t_f}{b_f}\right)\right]$ for flanged profiles

c_3 = 10^{-4}(10^{-4}, 1.0)

I_p = polar moment of inertia, in cm^4 (in^4), of profile about connection of stiffener to plate

= $c_3 \dfrac{h_w^3 t_w}{3}$ for flat bars (slabs)

= $c_3\left(\dfrac{h_w^3 t_w}{3} + h_w^2 b_f t_f\right)$ for flanged profiles

I_w = warping constant, in cm^6 (in^6), of profile about connection of stiffener to plate

= $c_4 \frac{h_w^3 t_w^3}{36}$ for flat bars (slabs)

= $c_4 \left(\frac{t_f b_f^3 h_w^2}{12} \right)$ for "Tee" profiles

= $c_4 \frac{b_f^3 h_w^2}{12 (b_f + h_w)^2} \left[t_f \left(b_f^2 + 2 b_f h_w + 4 h_w^2 \right) + 3 t_w b_f h_w \right]$ for angles and bulb profiles

c_4 = 10^{-6} (10^{-6}, 1.0)

h_w = web height, in mm (in.)

t_w = web thickness, in mm (in.), after making standard deductions as specified in [3.1.1]

b_f = flange width, in mm (in.)

t_f = flange thickness, in mm (in.), after making standard deductions as specified in [3.1.1] For bulb profiles the mean thickness of the bulb is to be used.

ℓ = span of profile, in m (ft)

s = spacing of profiles, in mm (in.)

C = spring stiffness exerted by supporting plate panel

= $\frac{k_p E t_p^3}{3s \left(1 + \frac{1.33 k_p h_w t_p^3}{s t_w^3} \right)}$ N (kgf, lbf)

k_p = $1 - \eta_p$, not to be taken less than zero

t_p = plate thickness, in mm (in.), after making standard deductions as specified in [3.1.1]

η_p = $\frac{\sigma_a}{\sigma_{Ep}}$

σ_α = calculated compressive stress. For longitudinals, see [7.1]

σ_{Ep} = elastic buckling stress of supporting plate as calculated in [3.1]

For flanged profiles, k_p need not be taken less than 0.1.

3.3.3 Web and Flange Buckling

For web plate of longitudinals the ideal buckling stress is given by:

$$\sigma_E = 3.8E \left(\frac{t_w}{h_w} \right)^2 \text{N/mm}^2 \left(\text{kgf/mm}^2, \text{psi} \right)$$

For flanges on angles and T-sections of longitudinals, the following requirements apply:

$$\frac{b_f}{t_f} \leq 15$$

b_f = flange width, in mm (in.), for angles, half the flange width for T-sections.

t_f = as built flange thickness, in mm (in.)

TABLE 1A
Standard Deduction t_k for Vessels Under 90 m (295 ft) in Length
(2024)

	Structure	*Standard Deduction*	*Limit Values min.-max. in mm (in.)*
— —	Compartments carrying dry bulk cargoes One side exposure to ballast and/or liquid cargo Vertical surfaces and surfaces sloped at an angle greater than 25° to the horizontal line	0.05*t*	0.5-1.0 (0.02-0.04)
— —	One side exposure to ballast and/or liquid cargo Horizontal surfaces and surfaces sloped at an angle less than 25° to the horizontal line Two side exposure to ballast and/or liquid cargo Vertical surfaces and surfaces sloped at an angle greater than 25° to the horizontal line	0.10*t*	1.0-3.0 (0.04-0.12)
—	Two side exposure to ballast and/or liquid cargo Horizontal surfaces and surfaces sloped at an angle less than 25° to the horizontal line	0.15*t*	1.5-4.0 (0.06-0.16)

Notes:

1 For the bulkheads separating passenger spaces at both sides and protected against corrosion by coating or equivalent, corrosion deduction may be taken as zero.

2 For the side shell below the waterline, with void spaces inside corrosion deduction is to be taken as 0.05t (0.5 mm (0.02 in.) – 1.0 mm (0.04 in.)).

3 For the side shell below the waterline, with ballast or liquid cargo tanks inside corrosion deduction is to be taken as $0.10\,t$ (1.0 mm (0.04 in.) – 3.0 mm (0.12 in.)).

TABLE 1B
Standard Deduction t_k for Vessels 90 m (295 ft) in Length and Above
(2019)

	Structure	*Standard Deduction*	*Limit Values min.-max. in mm (in.)*
— —	Compartments carrying dry bulk cargoes One side exposure to ballast and/or liquid cargo Vertical surfaces and surfaces sloped at an angle greater than 25° to the horizontal line	0.05*t*	0.5-1.0 (0.02-0.04)
—	One side exposure to ballast and/or liquid cargo Horizontal surfaces and surfaces sloped at an angle less than 25° to the horizontal line	0.10*t*	2.0-3.0 (0.08-0.12)

	Structure	*Standard Deduction*	*Limit Values min.-max. in mm (in.)*
—	Two side exposure to ballast and/or liquid cargo Vertical surfaces and surfaces sloped at an angle greater than 25° to the horizontal line		
—	Two side exposure to ballast and/or liquid cargo Horizontal surfaces and surfaces sloped at an angle less than 25° to the horizontal line	0.15t	2.0-4.0 (0.08-0.16)

Notes:

1 For bulkheads separating passenger spaces at both sides and protected against corrosion by coating or equivalent, corrosion deduction may be taken as zero.

2 For the side shell below the waterline, with void spaces inside corrosion deduction is to be taken as 0.05 t (0.5 mm (0.02 in.) – 1.0 mm (0.04 in.)) corrosion deduction.

3 For the side shell below the waterline, with ballast or liquid cargo tanks inside corrosion deduction is to be taken as 0.10 t (2.0 mm (0.08 in.) – 3.0 mm (0.12 in.)) corrosion deduction.

TABLE 2
Number of Half Waves

	$0 < K \leq 4$	$4 < K \leq 36$	$36 < K \leq 144$	$144 < K \leq 400$	$(m-1)^2m^2 < K \leq m^2(m+1)^2$
m	1	2	3	4	m

5 Critical Buckling Stresses

5.1 Compression

The critical buckling stress in compression, σ_c, is determined as follows:

$$\sigma_c = \sigma_E \quad \text{when} \quad \sigma_E \leq \frac{\sigma_F}{2}$$

$$= \sigma_F\left(1 - \frac{\sigma_F}{4\sigma_E}\right) \quad \text{when} \quad \sigma_E > \frac{\sigma_F}{2}$$

where

σ_F = yield stress of material, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, lbf/in^2). σ_F is to be taken as 235 N/mm^2 (24 kgf/mm^2, 34,000 psi) for mild steel.

σ_E = ideal elastic buckling stress calculated according to [3]

5.3 Shear

The critical buckling stress in shear, τ_c, is determined as follows:

$$\tau_c = \tau_E \quad \text{when} \quad \tau_E \leq \frac{\tau_F}{2}$$

$$= \tau_F\left(1 - \frac{\tau_F}{4\tau_E}\right) \quad \text{when} \quad \tau_E > \frac{\tau_F}{2}$$

where

$$\tau_F = \frac{\sigma_F}{\sqrt{3}}$$

σ_F = as given in [5.1]

τ_E = ideal elastic buckling stress in shear calculated according to [3.1.2]

7 Working Stress

7.1 Longitudinal Compressive Stress

The compressive stresses are given in the following formula:

$$\sigma_a = c_5 \frac{M_w + M_{sw}}{I_n} y \qquad \text{N/mm}^2 \text{ (kgf/mm}^2\text{, lbf/in}^2\text{)}$$

$$= \text{minimum } 30/Q \text{ N/mm}^2 \text{ (} 3.1/Q \text{ kgf/mm}^2\text{, } 4400/Q \text{ lbf/in}^2\text{)}$$

where

M_{sw} = still water bending moment, as given in 3-2-1/3.7.1(a), in kN-m (tf-m, Ltf-ft)

M_w = wave bending moment, as given in 3-2-1/3.7.1(a), in kN-m (tf-m, Ltf-ft)

I_n = moment of inertia, in cm^4 (in^4), of the hull girder

y = vertical distance, in m (ft), from the neutral axis to the considered point

Q = as defined in 3-2-1/5.3 (1.0 for ordinary strength steel)

c_5 = 10^5 (10^5, 322,560)

M_w and M_{sw} are to be taken as sagging or hogging bending moments, respectively, for members above or below the neutral axis.

7.3 Shear Stresses

7.3.1 Ships without Effective Longitudinal Bulkheads

The working shear stress, τ_a, in the side shell of ships without effective longitudinal bulkheads is given by the following formula:

$$\tau_a = c_6 \frac{(F_{sw} + F_w)\, m_s}{2 t_s I} \text{ N/mm}^2 (\text{kgf/mm}^2, \text{lbf/in}^2)$$

where

I = moment of inertia of the hull girder section, in cm^4 (in^4), at the section under consideration.

m_s = first moment, in cm^3 (in^3), about the neutral axis of the area of the effective longitudinal material between the horizontal level at which the shear stress is being determined and the vertical extremity of effective longitudinal material, taken at the position under consideration.

t_s = thickness of the side shell plating, in cm (in.), at the position under consideration.

F_{sw} = hull girder shearing force in still water, in kN (tf, Ltf). See 3-2-1/3.3.

F_w = F_{wp} or F_{wn}, in kN (tf, Ltf), as specified by 3-2-1/3.5.3, depending upon loading

c_6 = 10 (10, 2240)

7.3.2 Ships with Two or More Effective Longitudinal Bulkheads

The working shear stress, τ_a, in the side shell or longitudinal bulkhead plating is to be calculated by an acceptable method and in accordance with 3-2-1/3.9.4.

9 Scantling Criteria

9.1 Buckling Stress *(2024)*

The design buckling stress, σ_c, of plate panels and longitudinals (as calculated in [5.1]) is to be such that:

$$\sigma_c \geq \beta \sigma_a$$

where

β = 1 for plating and for web plating of stiffeners (local buckling)

β = 1.1 for stiffeners

The critical buckling stress, τ_c, of plate panels (as calculated in [5.3]) is to be such that:

$$\tau_c \geq \tau_a$$

where

τ_a = the working shear stress in the plate panel under consideration, in N/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, lbf/in^2), as determined by [7.3] .

Alternatively for transversely framed vessels between 61 meters (200 feet) and 90 meters (295 feet) in length, the deck and bottom plate may be taken not less than:

$$t = \frac{s}{45}\sqrt{\frac{SM_R}{SM_A}} \cdot \frac{1}{\sqrt{Q}} + t_k \text{mm (in.)}$$

where

t = thickness of bottom shell or deck plating, in mm (in.)

t_k = Standard deduction as given in [TABLE 1A] or [TABLE 1B] as applicable, in mm(in.)

s = frame spacing, in mm (in.)

SM_R = hull girder section modulus required by 3-2-1/3, at amidships in cm^2-m (in^2-ft)

SM_A = bottom or deck hull girder section modulus at amidships, in cm^2-m (in^2-ft)

Q = as defined in 3-2-1/5.3

PART 3

CHAPTER 2
Hull Structures and Arrangements

APPENDIX 5
Guidelines for Calculating Bending Moment and Shear Force in Rudders and Rudder Stocks

1 Application *(2024)*

Bending moments, shear forces and reaction forces of rudders, stocks and bearings may be calculated according to this Appendix for the types of rudders indicated. Moments and forces on rudders of different types or shapes than those shown are to be calculated using alternative methods and will be considered based on submitted documents and calculations supporting the review.

Commentary:

The requirements of Appendix 3-2-A5 are based on IACS UR S10 Annex.

End of Commentary

3 Spade Rudders

3.1 Rudder Blade

3.1.1 Shear Force *(2020)*

For regular spade rudders as shown in [FIGURE 1] (a), the shear force, $V(z)$, at a horizontal section of the rudder above baseline is given by the following equation:

$$V(z) = \frac{zC_R}{A}\left[c_\ell + \frac{z}{2\ell_R}(c_u - c_\ell)\right] \text{ kN(tf, Ltf)}$$

where

z = distance from the rudder baseline to the horizontal section under consideration, in m (ft)

C_R = rudder force, as defined in 3-2-14/3, in kN (tf, Ltf)

A = total projected area of rudder blade in m^2 (ft^2), as defined in 3-2-14/3

c_ℓ, c_u and ℓ_R are dimensions as indicated in [FIGURE 1] (a), in m (ft).

For spade rudders with embedded rudder trunks let deep in the rudder blade, as shown in [FIGURE 1] (b), the shear forces at rudder horizontal sections above rudder baseline in areas A_1, and A_2, are given by the following equations:

$$V(z')_1 = \frac{z'C_{R1}}{A_1}\left[c_u - \frac{z'}{2\ell_\ell}(c_u - c_b)\right] \text{kN(tf, Ltf), over area} A_1$$

$$V(z)_2 = \frac{zC_{R2}}{A_2}\left[c_\ell + \frac{z}{2\ell_b}(c_b - c_\ell)\right] \text{kN(tf, Ltf), over area} A_2$$

where

z' = $\ell_R - z$

C_{R1} = rudder force over rudder area A_1, in kN (tf, Ltf)

= $\frac{A_1}{A} C_R$

C_{R2} = rudder force over rudder area A_2, in kN (tf, Ltf)

= $\frac{A_2}{A} C_R$

A_1 = partial rudder blade area above neck bearing and below rudder top, in mm^2 (ft^2)

A_2 = partial rudder blade area above rudder baseline and below neck bearing, in mm^2 (ft^2)

$z, A,$ and C_R are as indicated in [3.1.1] .

c_ℓ, c_b, c_u, ℓ_u and ℓ_b are dimensions as illustrated in [FIGURE 1] (b).

3.1.2 Bending Moment *(1 July 2024)*

For regular spade rudders, bending moment, $M(z)$, at a horizontal section *z* meters (feet) above the baseline of the rudder is given by the following equation:

$$M(z) = \frac{z^2 C_R}{2A}\left[c_\ell + \frac{z}{3\ell_R}(c_u - c_\ell)\right] \text{kN} - \text{m, (tf} - \text{m, Ltf} - \text{ft)}$$

The moment at the top of the cone coupling is applicable for the connection between the rudder and rudder stock.

For spade rudders with embedded rudder trunk, the bending moment at a horizontal section within area A_1 is obtained from the following:

$$M(z')_1 = \frac{(z')^2 C_{R1}}{2A_1}\left[c_u - \frac{z'}{3\ell_\ell}(c_u - c_b)\right] \text{kN} - \text{m, (tf} - \text{m, Ltf} - \text{ft)}$$

With the maximum bending moment M_1 over area A_1 equals to:

$$M_1 = C_{R1}\ell_\ell\left[1 - \frac{2c_b + c_u}{3(c_b + c_u)}\right] \text{kN} - \text{m, (tf} - \text{m, Ltf} - \text{ft)}$$

For spade rudders with embedded rudder trunk, the bending moment at a horizontal section within area A_2 is obtained from the following:

$$M(z)_2 = \frac{z^2 C_{R2}}{2A_2}\left[c_\ell + \frac{z}{3\ell_b}(c_b - c_\ell)\right] \text{kN} - \text{m}, (\text{tf} - \text{m}, \text{Ltf} - \text{ft})$$

With the maximum bending moment M_2 over area A_2 equals to:

$$M_2 = C_{R2}\ell_b \frac{2c_\ell + c_b}{3(c_\ell + c_b)} \text{kN} - \text{m}, (\text{tf} - \text{m}, \text{Ltf} - \text{ft})$$

where $z, z', C_{R1}, C_{R2}, A_1, A_2, c_\ell, c_u$ and ℓ_R are as defined in [3.1.1] .

3.1.3 Load Cases for Spade Rudders with Embedded Rudder Trunk *(1 July 2024)*

For spade rudders with embedded rudder trunk, the strength is to be checked against the shear forces and bending moments as defined in 3-2-A5/3.1.1 and 3-2-A5/3.1.2 for the following two cases:

i) Pressure applied on the entire rudder area

ii) Pressure applied only on rudder area below the middle of neck bearing

3.3 Lower Stock

3.3.1 Shear Force

For regular spade rudder, the shear force, V_ℓ , at any section of the lower stock between the top of the rudder and the neck bearing is given by the following equation:

$$V_\ell = C_R \text{kN}(\text{tf}, \text{Ltf})$$

For spade rudder with embedded rudder trunk, the shear force at any section of the stock between the top of the rudder and the neck bearing is given by the following equation:

$$V_\ell = \frac{M_2 - M_1}{\ell_u + \ell_\ell} \text{kN}(\text{tf}, \text{Ltf})$$

where $C_R, \ell_\ell,$ and ℓ_u are as defined in [3.1.1] .

3.3.2 Bending Moment at Neck Bearing

For regular spade rudder, the bending moment in the rudder stock at the neck bearing, M_n, is given by the following equation:

$$M_n = C_R\left[\ell_\ell + \frac{\ell_R(2c_\ell + c_u)}{3(c_\ell + c_u)}\right] \text{kN} - \text{m}(\text{tf} - \text{m}, \text{Ltf} - \text{ft})$$

where

C_R = rudder force as defined in 3-2-14/3

c_ℓ, c_u, ℓ_ℓ and ℓ_R are dimensions as indicated in [FIGURE 1] , in m (ft.).

For spade rudder with embedded rudder trunk, the bending moment in the rudder stock at the neck bearing is given by the following equation:

$$M_n = M_2 - M_1 \text{kN} - \text{m}(\text{tf} - \text{m}, \text{Ltf} - \text{ft})$$

where M_1 and M_2 as defined in [3.1.2] .

Where partial submergence of the rudder leads to a higher bending moment in the rudder stock at the neck bearing (compared with the fully submerged condition), M_n is to be calculated based on the most severe partially submerged condition.

3.5 Moment at Top of Upper Stock Taper

For regular spade rudder, the bending moment in the upper rudder stock at the top of the taper, M_t, is given by the following equation:

$$M_t = C_R \left[\ell_\ell + \frac{\ell_R (2c_\ell + c_u)}{3\,(c_\ell + c_u)}\right] \times \left[\frac{(\ell_u + \ell_R + \ell_\ell - z_t)}{\ell_u}\right] \text{kN} - \text{m}, (\text{tf} - \text{m}, \text{Ltf} - \text{ft})$$

For spade rudder with embedded rudder trunk, the bending moment in the upper rudder stock at the top of the taper is given by the following equation:

$$M_t = M_R \left[\frac{(\ell_R + \ell_u - z_t)}{\ell_u}\right] \text{kN} - \text{m}(\text{tf} - \text{m}, \text{Ltf} - \text{ft})$$

where

z_t = distance from the rudder baseline to the top of the upper rudder stock taper in m (ft.)

C_R = rudder force, as defined in [3.1.1]

M_R = is the greater of M_1 and M_2, as defined in [3.1.2]

$c_\ell, c_u, \ell_\ell, \ell_u$ and ℓ_R are dimensions as indicated in [FIGURE 1] , in m (ft).

3.7 Bearing Reaction Forces

For regular spade rudder, the reaction forces at the bearings are given by the following equations:

P_u = reaction force at the upper bearing

$$= -\frac{M_n}{\ell_u} \text{kN}(\text{tf}, \text{Ltf})$$

P_n = reaction force at the neck bearing

$$= C_R + \frac{M_n}{\ell_u} \text{kN}(\text{tf}, \text{Ltf})$$

For spade rudder with embedded rudder trunk, the reaction forces at the bearings are given by the following equations:

$$P_u = -\frac{M_n}{\ell_u + \ell_\ell}\,\mathrm{kN(tf, Ltf)}$$

$$P_n = C_R + P_u\mathrm{kN(tf, Ltf)}$$

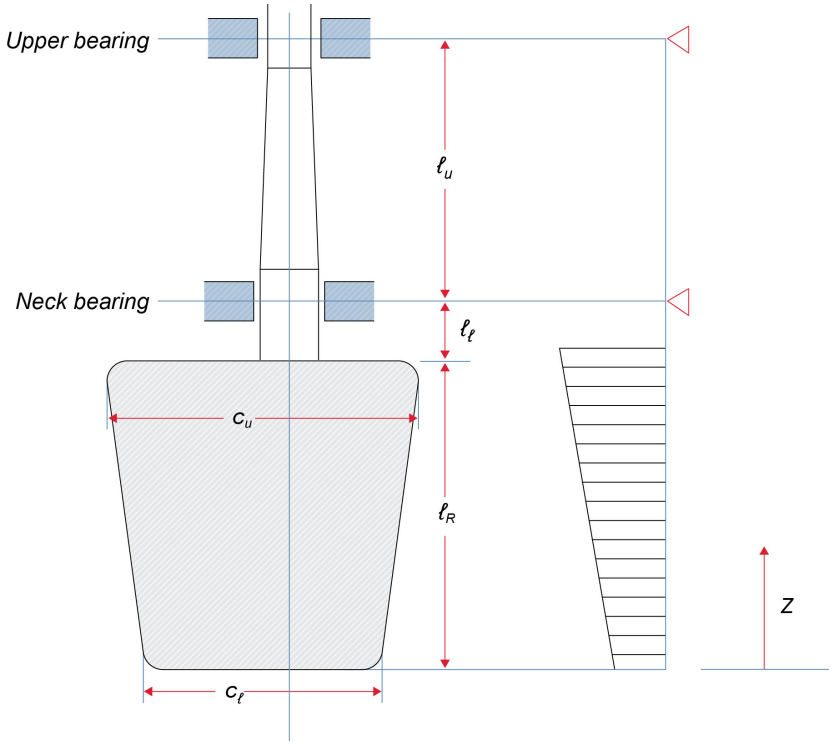
where

M_n = bending moment at the neck bearing, as defined in [3.3.2]

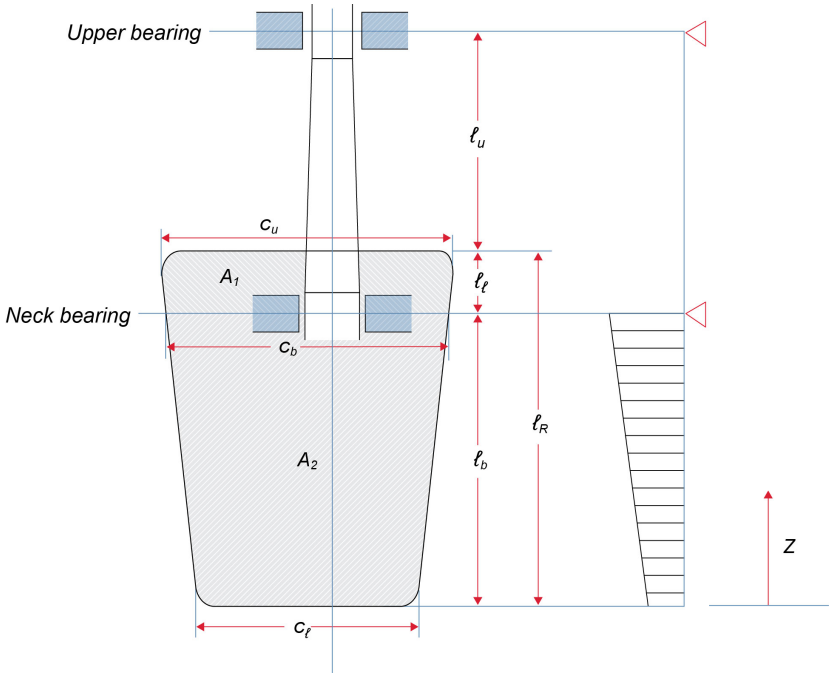
C_R = rudder force, as defined in 3-2-14/3.

ℓ_u is as indicated in [FIGURE 1] , in m (ft).

FIGURE 1
Spade Rudder



(a) Regular Spade Rudder



(b) Spade Rudder With Embedded Rudder Trunk

5 Rudders Supported by Shoe Piece

5.1 Shear Force, Bending Moment and Reaction Forces

Shear force, bending moment and reaction forces are to be assessed by the simplified beam model given in [FIGURE 2] .

w_R = rudder load per unit length

= $\frac{C_R}{\ell_R}$ kN/m (tf/m, Ltf/ft)

where

C_R = rudder force, as defined in 3-2-14/3

k_s = spring constant reflecting support of the shoe piece

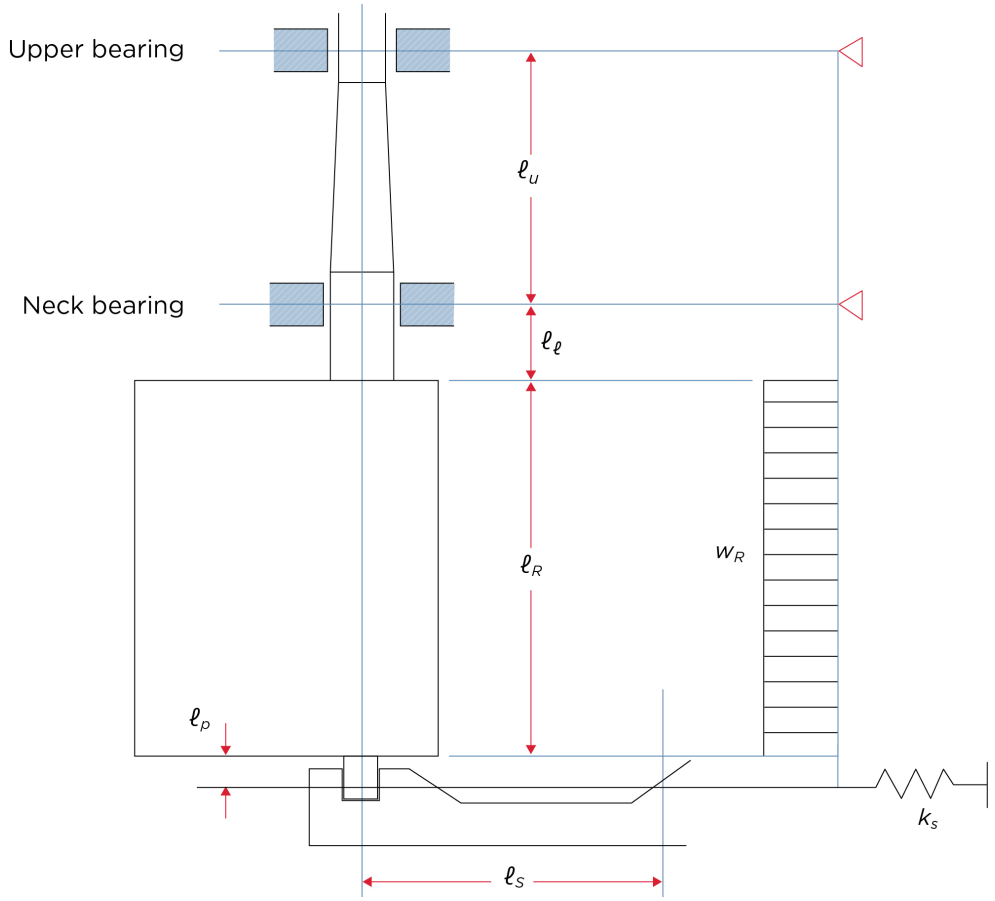
= $\frac{n_s I_s}{\ell_s^3}$ kN/m (tf/m, Ltf/ft)

n_s = 6.18 (0.630, 279)

I_s = moment of inertia of shoe piece about the vertical axis, in cm^4 (in^4)

ℓ_s, ℓ_R and ℓ_p are dimensions as indicated in [FIGURE 2] , in m (ft).

FIGURE 2
Rudder Supported by Shoe Piece



7 Rudders Supported by a Horn with One Pintle

7.1 Shear Force, Bending Moment and Reaction Forces *(2024)*

Shear force, bending moment and reaction forces are to be assessed by the simplified beam model shown in [FIGURE 3] .

w_{R1} = rudder load per unit length above pintle

= $-\frac{C_{R1}}{\ell_{R1}}$ kN/m (tf/m, Ltf/ft)

w_{R2} = rudder load per unit length below pintle

= $\frac{C_{R2}}{\ell_{R2}}$ kN/m (tf/m, Ltf/ft)

where

C_{R1} = rudder force, as defined in 3-2-14/3.3

C_{R2} = rudder force, as defined in 3-2-14/3.3

k_h = spring constant reflecting support of the horn

$$= \frac{1}{\frac{\ell_h^3}{n_b I_h} + \frac{\sum\left(\frac{s_i}{t_i}\right) e^2 \ell_h}{n_t a^2}} \text{ kN/m(tf/m, Ltf/ft)}$$

n_b = 4.75 (0.485, 215)

n_t = 3.17 (0.323, 143)

a = mean area enclosed by the outside lines of the rudder horn, in cm^2 (in^2)

s_i = the girth length of each segment of the horn of thickness t_i, in cm (in.)

t_i = the thickness of each segment of horn outer shell of length s_i, in cm (in.)

I_h = moment of inertia of horn section at ℓ_h about the longitudinal axis, in cm^4 (in^4)

e, ℓ_h, ℓ_{R2} and ℓ_{R2} are dimensions as indicated in [FIGURE 3] , in m (ft)

s and t are dimensions as indicated in [FIGURE 3B] , in m (ft)

FIGURE 3A
Rudder Supported by a Horn with One Pintle

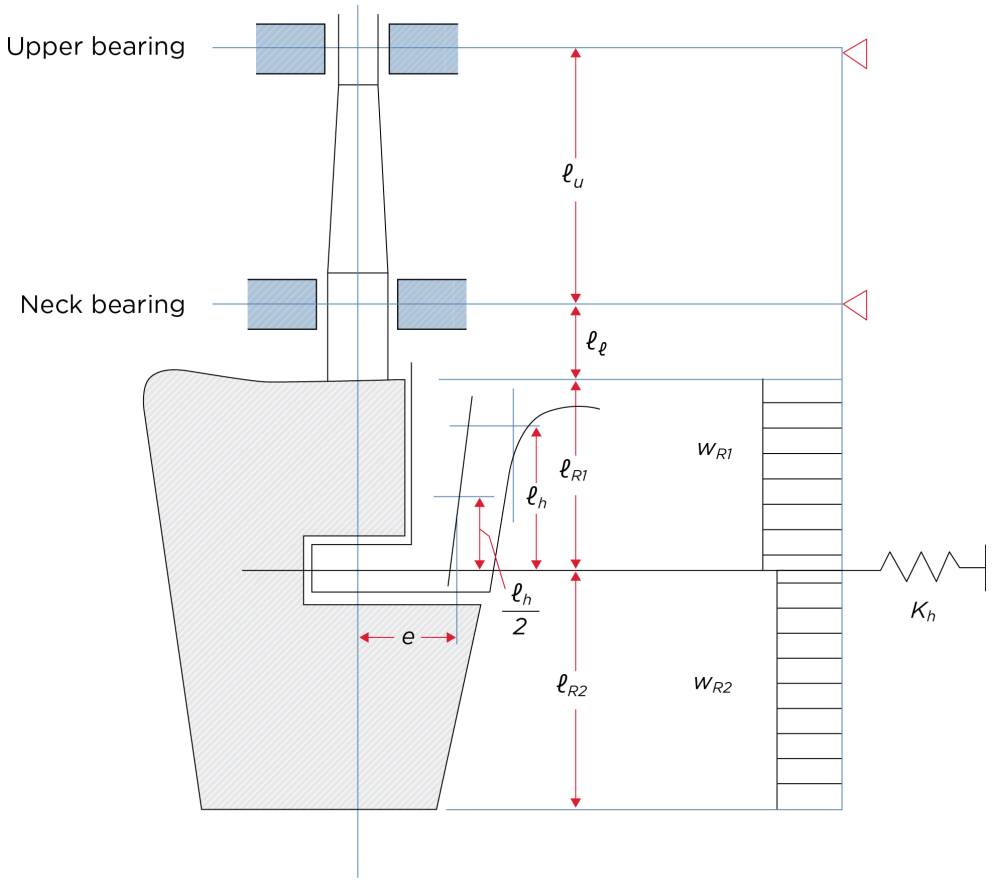
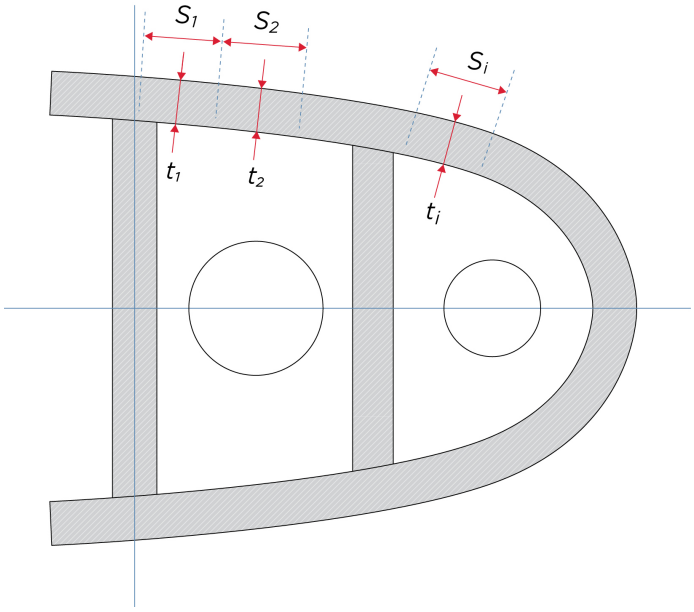


FIGURE 3B
Rudder Horn Sectional View *(2024)*



9 Rudders Supported by a Horn Arranged with Two Pintles (Supports) *(2024)*

9.1 Shear Force, Bending Moment and Reaction Forces

Shear force, bending moment and reaction forces are to be assessed by the simplified beam model shown in [FIGURE 4] .

w_{R1} = rudder load per unit length above lower rudder support/pintle

$$= \frac{C_{R1}}{\ell_{R1}} \quad \text{kN/m (tf/m, Ltf/ft)}$$

w_{R2} = rudder load per unit length below lower rudder support/pintle

$$= \frac{C_{R2}}{\ell_{R2}} \quad \text{kN/m (tf/m, Ltf/ft)}$$

where

C_{R1} = rudder force, as defined in 3-2-14/3.3

C_{R2} = rudder force, as defined in 3-2-14/3.3

ℓ_{R1} and ℓ_{R2} are dimensions as indicated in [FIGURE 4] , in m (ft).

In [FIGURE 4] the variables K_{11}, K_{22}, K_{12} are rudder horn compliance constants calculated for rudder horn with 2-conjugate elastic supports. The 2-conjugate elastic supports are defined in terms of horizontal displacements, y_i, by the following equations:

- At the lower rudder horn bearing:
  $y_1 = -K_{12}B_2 - K_{22}B_1$ m (ft)

- At the upper rudder horn bearing:
  $y_2 = -K_{11}B_2 - K_{12}B_1$ m (ft)

where

y_1, y_2 = horizontal displacement at lower and upper rudder horn bearings, respectively

B_1, B_2 = horizontal support force, in kN (tf, Ltf), at lower and upper rudder horn bearings, respectively

K_{11}, K_{12}, K_{22} = spring constant of the rudder support obtained from the following:

K_{11} = $m\left[1.3\dfrac{\lambda^3}{3EJ_{1h}} + \dfrac{e^2\lambda}{GJ_{th}}\right]$ m/kN (m/tf, ft/Ltf)

K_{12} = $m\left[1.3\left[\dfrac{\lambda^3}{3EJ_{1h}} + \dfrac{\lambda^2(\ell_h - \lambda)}{2EJ_{1h}}\right] + \dfrac{e^2\lambda}{GJ_{th}}\right]$ m/kN (m/tf, ft/Ltf)

K_{22} = $m\left[1.3\left[\dfrac{\lambda^3}{3EJ_{1h}} + \dfrac{\lambda^2(\ell_h - \lambda)}{EJ_{1h}} + \dfrac{\lambda(\ell_h - \lambda)^2}{EJ_{1h}} + \dfrac{(\ell_h - \lambda)^3}{3EJ_{2h}}\right] + \dfrac{e^2\ell_h}{GJ_{th}}\right]$ m/kN (m/tf, ft/Ltf)

m = 1.00 (9.8067, 32.691)

ℓ_h = height of the rudder horn, in m (ft), defined in [FIGURE 4] . This value is measured downwards from the upper rudder horn end, at the point of curvature transition, to the mid-line of the lower rudder horn pintle.

λ = length, in m (ft), as defined in [FIGURE 4] . This length is measured downwards from the upper rudder horn end, at the point of curvature transition, to the mid-line of the upper rudder horn bearing. For $\lambda = 0$, the above formulae converge to those of spring constant k_h for a rudder horn with 1-pintle (elastic support), and assuming a hollow cross section for this part.

e = rudder-horn torsion lever, in m (ft), as defined in [FIGURE 4] (value taken at vertical location $\ell_h/2$).

E = Young's modulus of the material of the rudder horn in kN/m^2 (tf/m^2, Ltf/in^2)

G = modulus of rigidity of the material of the rudder horn in kN/m^2 (tf/m^2, Ltf/in^2)

J_{1h} = moment of inertia of rudder horn about the x axis, in m^4 (ft^4), for the region above the upper rudder horn bearing. Note that J_{1h} is an average value over the length λ (see [FIGURE 4]).

J_{2h} = moment of inertia of rudder horn about the x axis, in m^4 (ft^4), for the region between the upper and lower rudder horn bearings. Note that J_{2h} is an average value over the length $\ell_h - \lambda$ (see [FIGURE 4]).

J_{th} = torsional stiffness factor of the rudder horn, in m^4 (ft^4)

= $\dfrac{4F_T^2}{\sum_i \frac{u_i}{t_i}}$ for any thin wall closed section, in m^4 (ft^4)

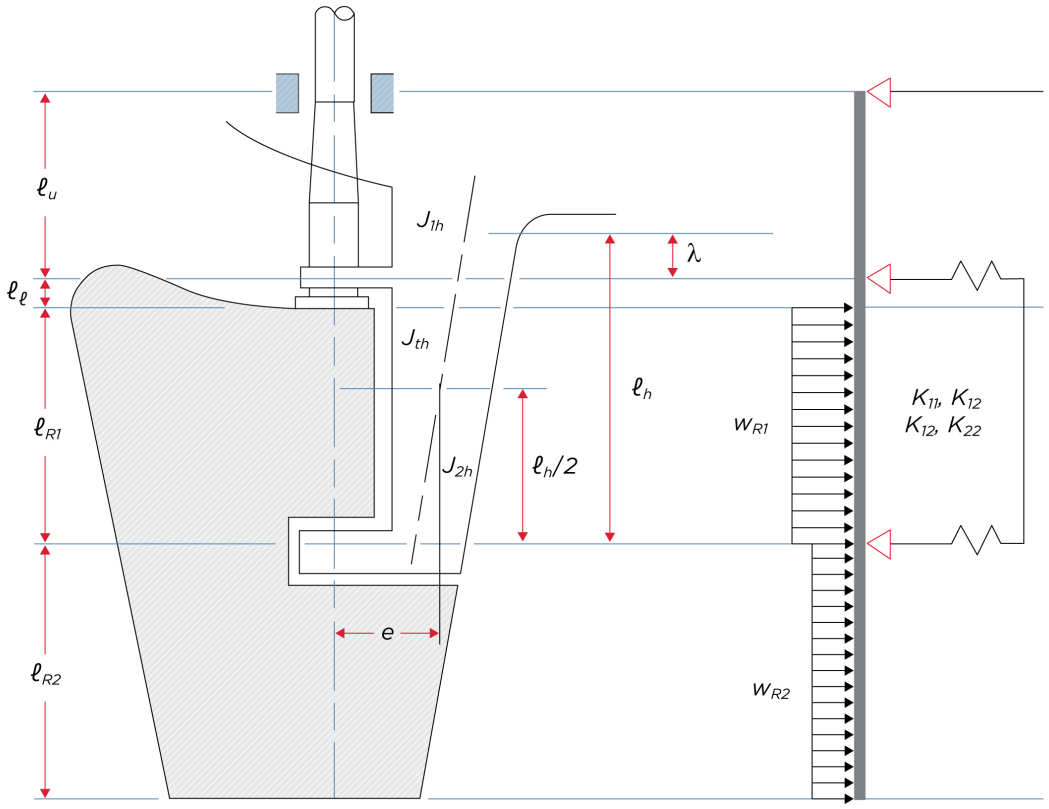
Note that the J value is taken as an average value, valid over the rudder horn height.

F_T = mean of areas enclosed by outer and inner boundaries of the thin walled section of rudder horn, in m^2 (ft^2)

u = length, in mm (in.), of the individual plates forming the mean horn sectional area

t = thickness, in mm (in.), of the individual plates mentioned above

FIGURE 4
Rudder Supported by a Horn Arranged with Two Pintles (Supports)



APPENDIX 6
Portable Beams and Hatch Cover Stiffeners of Variable Cross Section

1 Application

For portable beams and hatch cover stiffeners with free ends and varying cross section along their spans, the section modulus SM and inertia I at the midspan required by 3-2-15/8.1.1, 3-2-15/8.3.2, 3-2-15/8.5.1 and 3-2-15/9.1 may be obtained from the following equations.

$$SM = \frac{C_1 K_1 psl^2}{\sigma_a} \text{ cm}^3(\text{in}^3)$$

$$I = C_2 K_2 ps\ell^3 \text{cm}^4(\text{in}^4)$$

where

C_1 = 125 (125, 1.5)

C_2 = 2.87 (28.2, 2.85×10^{-5}) for 3-2-15/8.1.1 and 3-2-15/8.3.2

= 2.26 (22.1, 2.24×10^{-5}) for 3-2-15/8.5.1 and 3-2-15/9.1

K_1 = $1 + \frac{3.2\alpha - \gamma - 0.8}{7\gamma + 0.4}$, but not less than 1.0

α = length ratio

= ℓ_1/ℓ

γ = SM ratio

= SM_1/SM

$\ell_1/\ell, SM_1$ and SM are as indicated in [FIGURE 1]

σ_a = allowable stress given in 3-2-15/8.1.1, 3-2-15/8.3.2, 3-2-15/8.5.1 and 3-2-15/9.1, in kN/mm^2 (kgf/mm^2, psi)

K_2 = $1 + 8\alpha^3 \frac{(1-\beta)}{(0.2+3\sqrt{\beta})}$, but not less than 1.0

β = ratio of the moments of inertia, I_1 and I, at the locations indicated in [FIGURE 1]

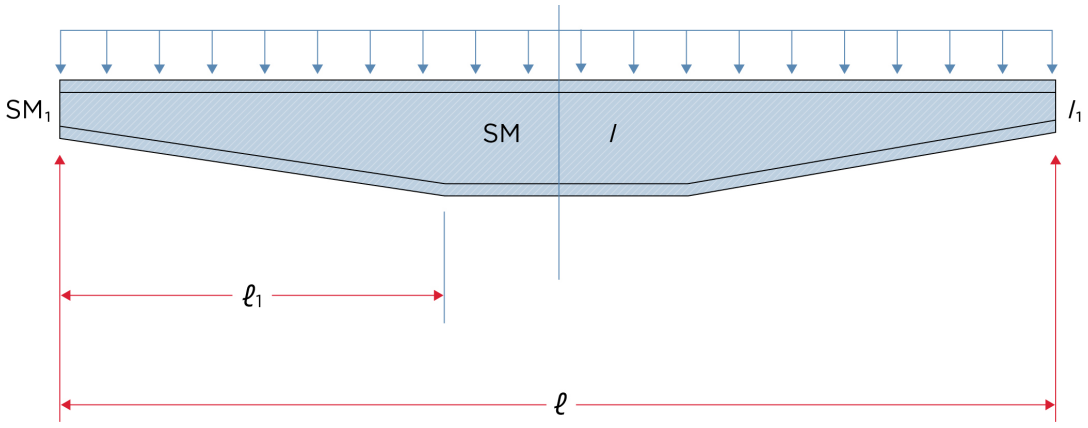
= I_1/I

p = design load given in 3-2-15/3.3, in kN/m^2 (tf/m^2, psi)

s = spacing of beams or stiffeners, in m (ft).

ℓ = span of free ended constructional elements, in m (ft).

FIGURE 1
SM and I of Construction Elements



PART 3

CHAPTER 2
Hull Structures and Arrangements

APPENDIX 7
Review of Portable Industrial Equipment and Modules

1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1 Goals

Industrial equipment and modules defined in [2.1] .1 is to be designed, constructed, operated and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goals*
STRU 1	In the intact conditions, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU 3	Provide protection to persons onboard, the environment and required safety services.
SAFE 1.1	Minimize danger to persons on board, the vessel, and surrounding equipment/installations from hazards associated with machinery and systems.
CARGO SG7	Have measures to mitigate risk to vessel's stability due to cargo shifting or cargo liquefaction.
FIR 1	Prevent the occurrence of fire and explosion (SOLAS II-2/Reg 2.1.1).
EER 1	Provide means of escape so that persons on board can safely and swiftly escape to a protected place of refuge, muster station, or embarkment station (SOLAS II-2/Reg 13.1).

1.2 Functional Requirements

In order to achieve the above-stated goals, the design, construction, and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Structure (STRU)	
STRU-FR1	Deck foundations in way of industrial equipment and industrial modules are to be designed to withstand the design loads for operations during the anticipated installation.

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
STRU-FR2	Scantlings are to have sufficient strength to protect personnel when subjected to the loads anticipated throughout the service life.
STRU-FR3	Scantlings are to be maintained so that structure will continue to satisfy all Goals and Functional Requirements.
Safety (SAFE)	
SAFE-FR1	Accurate documentation detailing the installation of industrial equipment and modules is to be provided.
SAFE-FR2	Hazardous areas should be restricted to minimize the potential risks that might affect the safety of the ship, persons on board and equipment.
Cargo (CARGO)	
CARGO-FR1	Securing devices used for industrial equipment and industrial modules are to be of sufficient quantity and quality and so designed to withstand the design loads for operations during the anticipated installation.
Fire Safety (FIR)	
FIR-FR1	Means are to be provided to minimize the spread of flammable, explosive, or toxic gas to non-hazardous areas.
FIR-FR2	Extinguishing and detection measures appropriate to the hazards concerned are to be provided.
FIR-FR3	Hazards to life from smoke and toxic products generated during a fire in spaces where persons normally work or live are to be provided. (SOLAS II-2)
FIR-FR4	The fire growth potential in every space of the ship is to be limited. (SOLAS II-2)
Escape, Evacuation, Rescue (EER)	
EER-FR1	Hatches, doors, and windows are to be arranged so that means of escape, evacuation and access are not restricted. (SOLAS II-2)

The functional requirements in the cross-referenced Rules are to be met.

1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

2 General *(2025)*

Where industrial equipment, systems, tanks and/or other industrial items (industrial equipment) are installed aboard a vessel without a Classification Notation for specialized functional service, the impact on the vessel safety is to be reviewed in accordance with this appendix.

Industrial modules may be used for various purposes, such as Workshops, Instrument Control, MCC/ Battery/Switchgear Rooms, Laboratories, Wireline Units, ROV Control Room, etc. They may not be used for accommodations or living spaces and they are to be unmanned during heavy weather and sufficient space for the entire complement of personal assigned to work in the module(s) is provided in a deckhouse, superstructure, or module complying fully with applicable structural requirements.

Commentary:

Refer to the ABS *Requirements for Portable Accommodation Modules* for requirements for modules used for accommodation, living spaces, or modules manned during heavy weather.

End of Commentary

The Installation of industrial modules and equipment is subject to survey in presence of and to the satisfaction of the attending Surveyor in accordance with Appendix 7-A1-17 of the ABS *Rules for Survey After Construction (Part 7),* as applicable. Flag Administration requirements are to be considered in addition to this Appendix.

2.1 Applicability and Types of Industrial Modules *(2024)*

Requirements of this Appendix apply to portable industrial equipment modules where the forces on the cargo deck exceed the rated deck capacity, to any portable industrial equipment module which is not a standard container box or to a securing arrangement which is not covered in the vessel's approved Cargo Securing Manual. Nothing in this Appendix is intended to permit installations of industrial equipment which would require a Classification Notation for specialized functional service.

2.3 Background *(2024)*

The installation of portable industrial equipment, industrial spaces, and workshops has become increasingly prevalent in recent years. Irrespective of the amount of time that portable modules are installed onboard, the potential risks to personnel within and around these modules is of concern and therefore it is imperative that details be reviewed in accordance with this Appendix.

3 Submission of Data *(2024)*

For the installation of industrial equipment and modules, the list of plans in 5D-2-1/7 applies. When a vessel is carrying independent tanks on deck which contain Hazardous and Noxious Liquid Substances, as defined in Section 5D-2-3 of the Rules, *International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk (IBC Code)*, *IMO Resolution A.673 (16)* and *IEC 60092-502,* then the list of plans in 5D-2-3/7 applies.

Commentary:

Flag Administrations may have specific requirements on certification and construction standards of industrial modules that are manned. When these requirements are applicable and ABS issues statutory certificates, all required documentation should be submitted to ABS.

End of Commentary

Where a container box is considered an industrial module in accordance with the applicable Rules for the intended purpose, the container is to be confirmed as being certified to a recognized standard and documentation is to be submitted to ABS.

5 Structural Review

5.1 Arrangements *(2024)*

A revised General Arrangement drawing is to be submitted for the vessel whenever industrial equipment or modules are installed on deck. This submittal will be kept available for reference by ABS for the duration of the installation. The General Arrangement is to show the exact location of each piece of industrial equipment or modules and is to be furnished to ABS at the start of the project. If the location of equipment changes, then a new arrangement is to be submitted to ABS. At the completion of a project or when all industrial equipment and modules have been removed, a notice shall be furnished to ABS. At this time a clean General Arrangement is not required, provided that it has not changed from the revision which previously reviewed by ABS prior to the installation of the equipment.

Stacked arrangements of industrial modules or equipment require design review by ABS, and are to be surveyed accordingly.

Where isolated deck cargo exceeds the rated deck capacity, the vessel scantlings are to comply with Section 5D-1-4. The vessel structure will be analyzed using standard accelerations applied from the vessel's approved cargo securing manual or the IMO *Code of Safe Practice for Cargo Stowage and Securing (CSS Code)*. The resulting stresses in deck members from cargo loadings are not to exceed those values found in 5D-2-2/1.3.

If a vendor provides drawings or documents of design loads or forces, then these design loads are to include appropriate accelerations or dynamic factors for transverse, longitudinal, and vertical loadings as appropriate for the intended service.

5.3 Securing Arrangement and Securing Details

Where securing devices used are outside the scope of the vessel's Cargo Securing Manual, the equipment exceeds rated deck capacity, or a Cargo Securing Manual has not been approved for the vessel, details of securing devices are to be reviewed by ABS. These details may be provided either on a separate drawing or on the General Arrangement. All securing details are to be shown. If the equipment does not exceed the deck capacity and the securing devices are included in the approved Cargo Securing Manual, then the securing is at the discretion of the vessel's crew in accordance with the vessel's Cargo Securing Manual.

5.3.1 Welded Fittings *(2024)*

A welded fitting is a plate clip, bracket or metal stopper which is intended to secure equipment to the vessel. Simple welded fittings may be used to provide securing against sliding. If a welded fitting is intended to resist uplift from over-turning moments, then the horizontal edge is welded to the deck and likewise the vertical edge is welded to the piece of equipment or skid, see [FIGURE 1] .

In some cases, a vendor may request these welded fittings not be welded to their equipment, as shown in [FIGURE 2] . In this case, the fitting may be slotted into a corner casting or fit tightly around an accessible edge. In this case effectiveness of the clips is to be reduced and the weld at the deck sized appropriately.

If welded fittings are the only means of securing, then they are to be provided in both the transverse and longitudinal directions so that they are not loaded at right angles to the weld direction by significant bending forces. These fittings, in their quantity, size, and welds, are to be able to resist the forces of sliding and tipping, with applicable accelerations. Calculations are to be performed to confirm this for both shear and weld strength.

Additional calculations may be necessary to check the bending strength adequacy of the fitting based on the fitting design and the proposed arrangement.

Required details for welded fittings are:

- Plate thickness
- Weld size and details
- Dimensions of the clip
- Plate material

FIGURE 1
Fitting Welded to Equipment *(2024)*

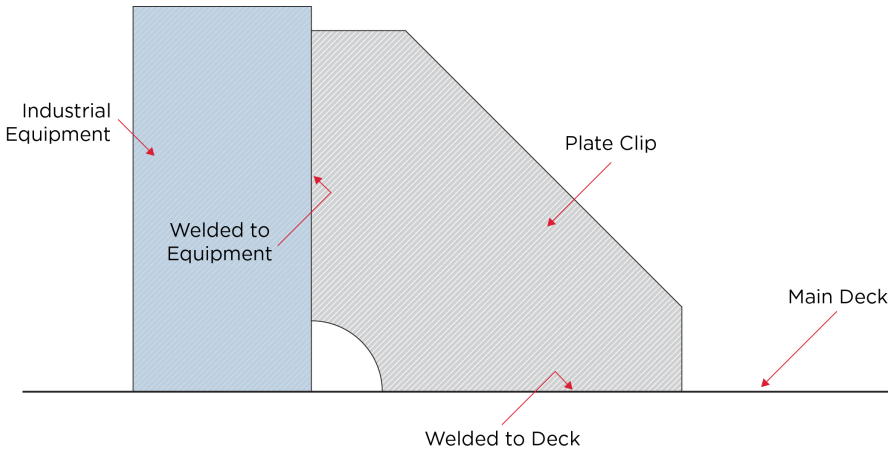
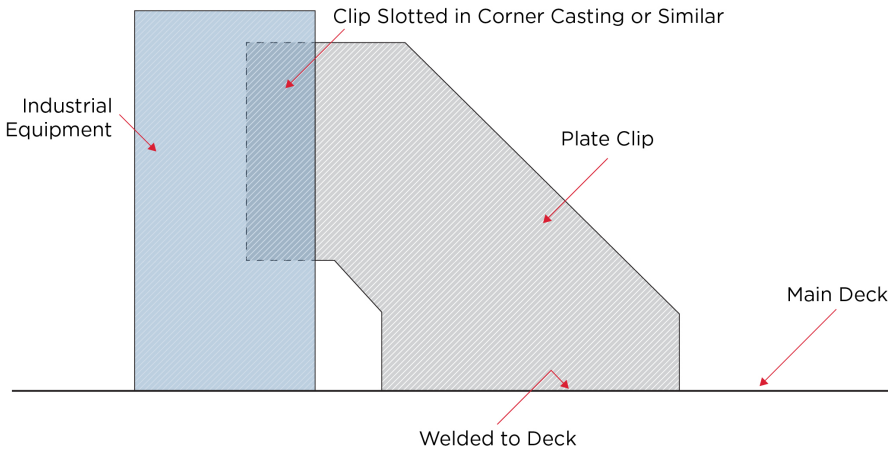


FIGURE 2
Fitting Not Welded to Equipment *(2024)*



5.3.2 Lashings including Chain and Wire Rope *(2024)*

All chains, wire ropes, turnbuckles and all other pieces of lashing equipment being used are to comply with those approved in the vessel's Cargo Securing Manual, if one is provided. Securing devices not in the Cargo Securing Manual may be used if details of them are provided.

When lashings are used, they are to be able to resist the forces of sliding and tipping, in accordance with the CSS Code.

Commentary:

The effective direction of a lashing is defined in the IMO *Code of Safe Practice for Cargo Stowage and Securing (CSS Code) ANNEX 13* which provides reductions in working loads of devices based on the angles formed between the deck and cargo.

End of Commentary

Required details for lashings are:

- Securing point on deck
- Securing point on the equipment

- Angle of the lash with respect to the deck and respect to the centerline of the vessel
- Material and type of lashing (i.e., Chain, wire rope, turnbuckle, shackles, etc.)
- Safe Working Load of lashings

5.3.3 ISO Fittings

ISO fitting means, any deck socket, twist lock, deck casting, or securing device which is ISO or type approved.

Where ISO fittings are used, cut sheets or manufacturer specifications of all parts are to be provided to ABS; or at a minimum the manufacturer and model are to be noted on the arrangement, securing drawing or furnished to ABS.

5.5 Weights *(2024)*

A static weight is to be provided to ABS for every piece of industrial equipment and modules which exceeds the rated deck capacity. This weight should be noted on the drawing or provided in a separate document.

Commentary:

The weights are subject to motion based accelerations per the IMO *Code of Safe Practice for Cargo Stowage and Securing (CSS Code).* The *CSS Code* provides not only vertical accelerations but also transverse and longitudinal sliding and tipping forces.

End of Commentary

If the vendor or manufacturer of the equipment provides design loads, these loads are to incorporate accelerations consistent with the *CSS Code*.

5.7 Deck Contact Area, Skids and Mounting Frames *(2024)*

For all industrial equipment and modules, the contact area to the deck foundation is to be specified.

For equipment and modules which sits on a skid or frame, details of the skid are to be provided, including identification of members and how the skid is secured to the deck as well as how the piece of equipment is secured to the skid or frame. When skids, equipment foundations and mounting frames are installed between the vessel cargo deck and industrial module or industrial equipment, they are to be considered as part of the furnished installation.

If the piece of equipment or of the modules have integral contact points which are part of the design, then these contact areas are to be noted on the arrangement drawing. Additionally, vendor drawings, documents and details pertaining to the installation of industrial equipment and modules are to be furnished to ABS.

5.9 Equipment Installed Over the Side Shell *(2024)*

Dynamic loads are to be provided for any piece of equipment which will be used for service over the side of the vessel as a cable reel, ROV frame, A-Frame, davit, or crane.

If the manufacture of such equipment provided design loads then this information is to be furnished to ABS. If dynamic loads exceed the loading from accelerations applied to the static weight per the IMO *Code of Safe Practice for Cargo Stowage and Securing (CSS Code)* then these forces may be used. If dynamic forces are included in the design loads it is at the discretion of ABS to determine whether the dynamic forces are sufficient per applicable rules and regulations.

7 Statutory

7.1 Ventilation *(2024)*

Ventilation openings and their proximity to hazards and hazardous or noxious cargoes are to comply with the Section 5D-2-3 of the Rules as well as the applicable regulations, including the *International Code for*

the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk (IBC Code) and IMO *Resolution A.673 (16)* and *IEC 60092-502.* When a piece of equipment or independent tank is installed on deck and modification is necessary to meet the applicable requirements, then a revised ventilation arrangement is to be submitted to ABS for review.

7.3 Doors, Windows and Hatches *(2024)*

Doors, windows, hatches and other tonnage openings are to comply with the Section 5D-2-3 of the Rules as well and applicable regulations, to include their proximity to hazards or cargoes as defined in the rules and the *International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk (IBC Code)*, IMO *Resolution A.673 (16)* and *IEC 60092-502.* When a module, a piece of equipment, or independent tank is installed on deck and modification is necessary to meet the applicable requirements, then the appropriate revised plans arrangement is to be submitted to ABS for review.

Hatches which are not used for escape, secondary means or emergency escape and not used for access during normal operations and are located in a hazardous zone, or cargo area are to be welded shut as a suitable means of securing them from access during the time the industrial equipment or independent tanks are installed. The Fire Control Plan is to be revised accordingly.

7.5 Fire Control Plans and Lifesaving *(2024)*

When industrial equipment or modules are installed onboard and the equipment or module is fitted with a fire detection system or additional fire-fighting equipment, details of the system are to be included on the Fire Control Plan and submitted to ABS for review. Additionally, any modification to the vessel's Fire Control Plan as a result of the installation of industrial equipment or modules is to be submitted to ABS for review.

Commentary:

Where ABS issues statutory certificates on behalf of a flag Administration any modification to the vessel's life saving arrangement as a result of installation of industrial equipment or modules on a vessel which obstruct, interfere with, or contain products or hazards which either obstruct or interfere with operation of life saving equipment, the vessel's life saving plan is to be revised in accordance with *SOLAS* and flag applicable regulations. Surveyor is to endorse the onboard life-saving plan to indicate ABS verification.

End of Commentary

9 Electrical

9.1 General *(2024)*

If industrial equipment or modules are going to be tied into the vessel's electrical systems, then drawings showing the proposed modifications are to provided (i.e., Vessel One Line Diagram, etc.). The electrical systems are to be designed in accordance with the requirements set forth in Part 4, Chapter 8 and Part 5D, as appropriate.

9.1.1 Hazardous Zone Plan *(2024)*

When equipment or tanks are installed on deck and they contain products as defined in the *International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk (IBC Code)*, *IMO Resolution A.673 (16) and IEC 60092-502*, or any other product which generates hazardous for electrical installations, then a hazardous zone plan is to be submitted to ABS for review. The plan should include these areas as defined in the applicable regulations along with an electrical equipment register. See [4-8-4/1.5] and [4-8-4/27] .

11 Mechanical, Safety Systems, and Piping *(2024)*

11.1 General *(2024)*

If industrial equipment and modules are to connect to the vessel's piping systems, mechanical systems or any other host vessel system or service, drawings showing the proposed modifications are to be provided.

Any fixed deck piping system installed for use by portable industrial equipment is to be submitted to ABS for review.

The machinery systems are to be designed in accordance with the requirements set forth in Part 4 and Part 5D, as appropriate. See Part 4, Chapter 6 for piping systems, and Part 4, Chapter 8 for fire safety systems.

13 Equipment Designed for Specialized Work *(2024)*

Where a classification notation for specialized vessel is requested or is mandatory if represents the primary intended service in accordance with 5D-1-1/5 the installation of equipment used for specialized work such as Oil Spill Recovery, Well Intervention or Stimulation, Fire Fighting, Safety Standby, Pipe Laying, Cable Laying, etc. are to comply with the specific section of Part 5D.

15 Stability and Tonnage *(2024)*

For installations of industrial equipment and modules which fall outside the scope of the vessel's existing stability guidance, documents are to be submitted to ABS for review to the criteria applicable to the vessel. Refer to Section 3-3-1.

For lightship characteristics if vessels undergoing installation of industrial equipment or modules or undergoing modifications see 3-3-1/7.11.

An addendum to the existing approved trim and stability booklet may be required to provide the master with revised operating guidance based on the installed equipment/modules.

Commentary:

When additional industrial modules of equipment are installed and ABS issues tonnage certificates on behalf of a flag Administration, the additional volume is to be evaluated against the assigned tonnage and flag Administration requirements to determine if an updated tonnage certificate is required to be issued.

End of Commentary

17 <No Text>

PART 3

CHAPTER 2
Hull Structures and Arrangements

APPENDIX 8
Buckling Strength Assessment of Ship Structural Elements

1 Application and Definitions

Abbreviations

EPP	Elementary Plate Panel, as defined in 3-2-A8/1.2.3(a).
PSM	Primary Supporting Member.
SP	Stiffened Panel, as defined in 3-2-A8/1.2.3(c).
UP	Unstiffened Panel, as defined in 3-2-A8/1.2.3(c).

1.1 Application

Commentary:

- The requirements in 3-2-A8 are based on IACS Unified Requirements (UR) S35.
- Compliance with the requirements in 3-2-A8/2 is exclusively limited to stiffeners in hatch cover structures.
- Compliance with the requirements in 3-2-A8/3 will not become effective until IACS UR S11, UR S11A or other IACS URs are updated to require compliance with UR S35.

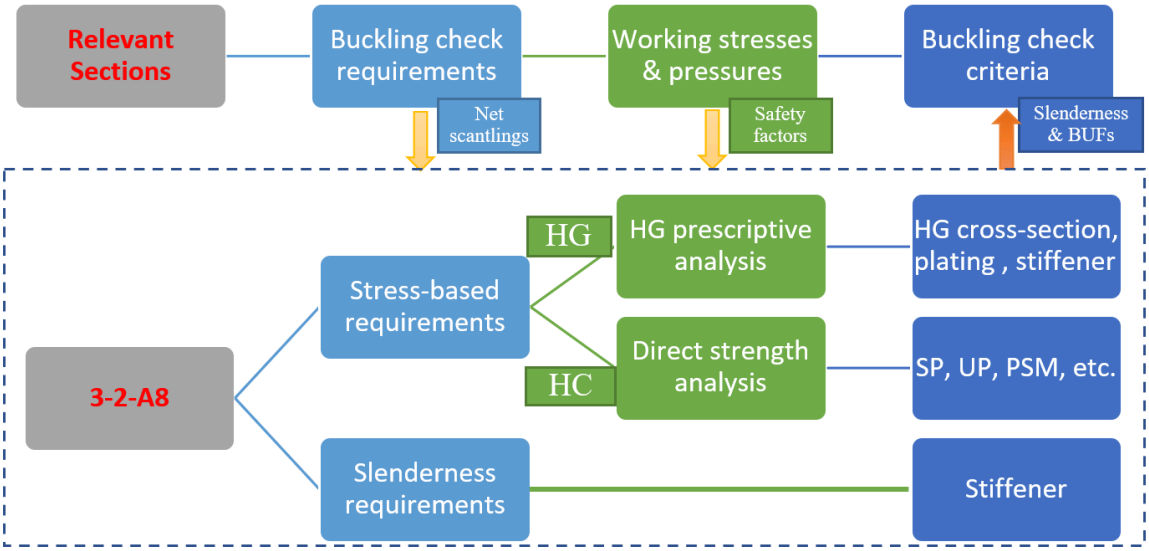
End of Commentary

1.1.1 General

1.1.1(a) Relevant rule sections

The requirement in Appendix 3-2-A8 establishes a general buckling assessment procedure and is to be applied in conjunction with the sections of the *Marine Vessel Rules* where Appendix 3-2-A8 is indicated and referred to as Relevant Sections hereafter, as illustrated in 3-2-A8/Figure 1.

FIGURE 1
Overview of Applying 3-2-A8 in Conjunction with Relevant Sections



Note: BUF stands for Buckling Utilization Factor, HC stands for Hatch Cover, and HG stands for Hull Girder.

1.1.2 Application

1.1.2(a) Sections

The buckling checks are to be performed according to:

- 3-2-A8/1 for general definitions regarding buckling capacity, allowable buckling utilization factors and buckling check criteria.
- 3-2-A8/2 for the slenderness requirements of longitudinal and transverse stiffeners.
- 3-2-A8/3 for the prescriptive buckling requirements of plates, longitudinal and transverse stiffeners, primary supporting members and other structures subject to hull girder stresses.
- 3-2-A8/4 for direct strength analysis (usually by finite element method) buckling requirements of hatch cover structural members including plates, stiffeners and primary supporting members.
- 3-2-A8/5 for the determination of buckling capacities of plate panels, stiffeners, primary supporting members and column structures.

1.1.2(b) Buckling assessment

For the buckling assessment of a ship hull girder, a hatch cover or some structural component, the slenderness requirements as defined in 3-2-A8/2 and the buckling requirements as defined in 3-2-A8/3 or 3-2-A8/4 are to be checked as per the requirements of Relevant Sections.

1.1.2(c) Alternative methods

This requirement contains the general methods for the determination of buckling capacities of plate panels, stiffeners, primary supporting members, and columns. For special cases not covered in this requirement, such as a whole plate structure with stiffeners in two directions (i.e., a stiffened panel with both primary and secondary stiffeners), other more advanced methods, such as finite element analysis methods, can be used as deemed appropriate by ABS.

1.2 Terminology and Assumptions

1.2.1 Buckling

1.2.1(a) Buckling strength

Buckling strength or capacity refers to the strength of a structure under in-plane compressions and/or shear and lateral load. Buckling strength with consideration of the buckling behavior in 3-2-A8/1.2.1(b) gives a lower bound estimate of ultimate capacity, or the maximum load a structural member can carry without suffering major permanent set. For each structural member, its buckling strength is to be taken as corresponding to the most unfavorable or critical buckling mode.

1.2.1(b) Buckling behavior

Buckling strength assessment takes into account both elastic buckling and post-buckling behaviors. Post-buckling can consider the internal redistribution of loads depending on the load situation, slenderness and type of structure. Such as for the buckling assessment of plates, generally its positive elastic post-buckling effect can be utilized.

As such, for slender structures, the calculated buckling strength is typically higher than the ideal elastic buckling stress (minimum eigenvalue). Accepting elastic buckling of slender plate panels implies that large elastic deflections and reduced in-plane stiffness may occur at higher buckling utilization levels.

1.2.2 Net Scantling Approach

1.2.2(a) General

Unless otherwise specified, all the scantling requirements, including slenderness requirements, in this requirement are based on net scantlings obtained by removing full corrosion addition from the gross offered thicknesses.

1.2.2(b) Corrosion addition

Corrosion addition referred to in this requirement is defined in Relevant Sections.

1.2.2(c) Stress calculation models

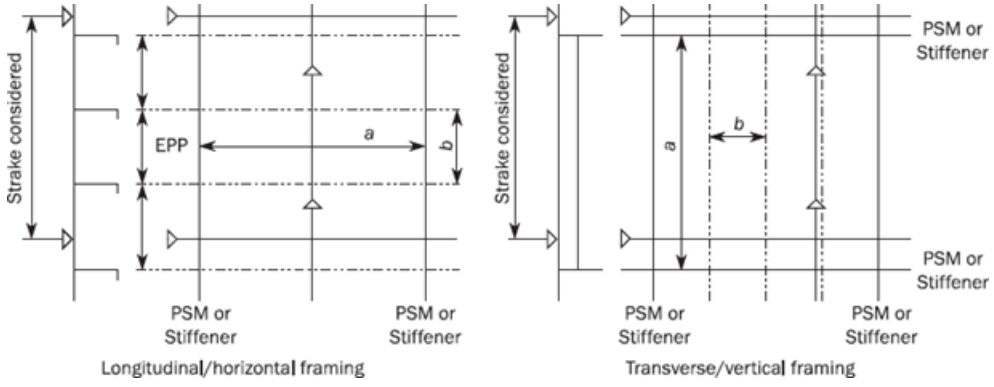
The structural models used for the calculation of stresses to be applied for buckling assessment, which are usually based on net scantlings, are defined in Relevant Sections.

1.2.3 Structural Idealization

1.2.3(a) Elementary plate panel

An elementary plate panel (EPP) is the unstiffened part of the plating between stiffeners and/or primary supporting members. The plate panel length, *a*, and breadth, *b*, of the EPP are defined respectively as the longest and shortest plate edges, as shown in 3-2-A8/Figure 2.

FIGURE 2
Elementary Plate Panel (EPP) Definition



1.2.3(b) Standard types of stiffeners

Definitions of the cross-sectional dimensions of typical stiffener types are shown in 3-2-A8/Figure 3, which are flat bars, bulb flats, angles, L2 and T bars. If applicable, other types of stiffeners can be

idealized to one of the typical types in 3-2-A8/Figure 3 for buckling check. For the U-type stiffener which is usually fitted in some hatch covers, the definition of its cross-sectional dimensions is shown in 3-2-A8/Figure 4.

Unless otherwise specified, the full span or full length l, in mm, of a stiffener is to be used for buckling check, which equals to the spacing between primary supporting members.

Symbolic dimensions of the cross-sections are as below:

b_1 = Width of the attached plate enclosed by the U-type stiffener, in mm, as shown in 3-2-A8/Figure 4.

b_2 = Width of the attached plate between adjacent U-type stiffeners, in mm as shown in 3-2-A8/Figure 4.

b_f = Width of the flange or face plate of the stiffener, in mm as shown in 3-2-A8/Figure 3 and 3-2-A8/Figure 4.

b_{f-out} = Maximum distance, in mm, from mid thickness of the web to the flange edge, in mm, as shown in 3-2-A8/Figure 3.

d_f = Breadth of the extended part of the flange for L2 profiles, in mm, as shown in 3-2-A8/Figure 3.

e_f = Distance from attached plating to centre of flange, in mm, as shown in 3-2-A8/Figure 3. For its detailed definition, refer to 3-2-A8/5, Symbols.

h_w = Depth of stiffener web, in mm, as shown in 3-2-A8/Figure 3 and 3-2-A8/Figure 4.

t_f = Net flange thickness, in mm.

t_p = Net thickness of plate, in mm.

t_w = Net web thickness, in mm.

FIGURE 3
Dimensions of Typical Stiffener Cross Sections

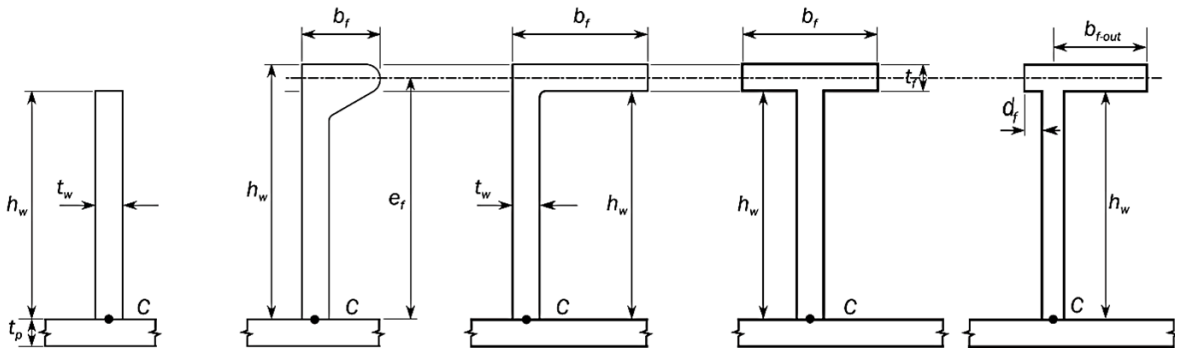
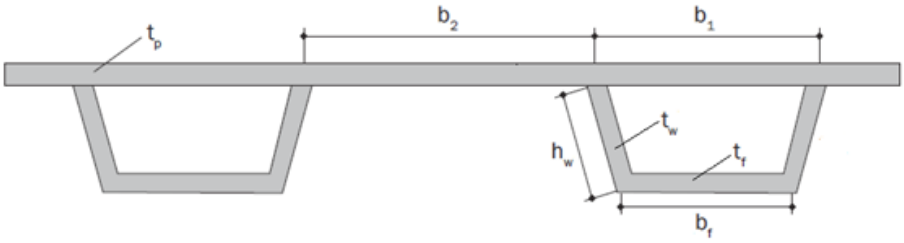


FIGURE 4
Dimensions of a U-type Stiffener Cross Section



1.2.3(c) Stiffened panel (SP) and Unstiffened panel (UP)

For a panel with relatively strong interactive effect between the stiffener and its attached plate, each stiffener with its attached plate as a whole is to be modelled as a stiffened panel (SP), so as to be able to consider both of its local and global buckling modes.

However, for an EPP, if its buckling strength can be checked without considering its interactive effect with stiffeners fitted along its edges, it's to be modelled as an unstiffened panel (UP).

1.2.4 Sign Convention

1.2.4(a) Stresses

In this requirement, compressive and shear stresses are to be taken as positive, tension stresses are to be taken as negative.

1.3 Assessment Methods and Acceptance Criteria

1.3.1 Assessment Methods

1.3.1(a) Method A and Method B

The buckling assessment is to be carried out according to one of the following two methods taking into account different boundary condition types:

- Method A: All the edges of the EPP are forced to remain straight (but free to move in the in-plane directions) due to the surrounding structure/neighboring plates.
- Method B: The edges of the EPP are not forced to remain straight due to low in-plane stiffness at the edges and/or no surrounding structure/neighboring plates.

1.3.1(b) SP-A, SP-B, UP-A and UP-B models

For the buckling assessment of the stiffened panel (SP) and unstiffened panel (UP) structural models defined in 3-2-A8/1.2.3(c), with application of either Method A or Method B for the plate buckling assessment, the following four buckling assessment models are established:

- SP-A: a stiffened panel with application of Method A.
- SP-B: a stiffened panel with application of Method B.
- UP-A: an unstiffened panel with application of Method A.
- UP-B: an unstiffened panel with application of Method B.

1.3.2 Buckling Utilization Factor

1.3.2(a)

The utilization factor, η, is defined as the ratio between the applied loads and the corresponding buckling capacity.

1.3.2(b)

For combined loads, the utilization factor, η_{act}, is defined as the ratio of the applied equivalent stress and the corresponding buckling capacity, as shown in 3-2-A8/Figure 5, and is to be taken as:

$$\eta_{act} = \frac{W_{act}}{W_U} = \frac{1}{\gamma_c}$$

where

W_{act} = Equivalent applied stress. The actual applied stresses are given in 3-2-A8/3 and 3-2-A8/4 respectively for buckling assessment by prescriptive and direct strength analysis.

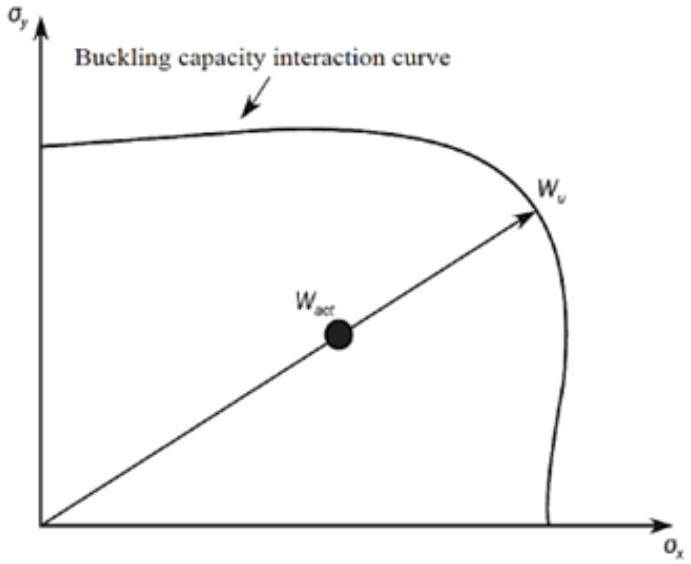
W_U = Equivalent buckling capacity. For plates and stiffeners, their respective buckling or ultimate capacities are given in 3-2-A8/5.

γ_c = Stress multiplier factor at failure.

For each typical failure mode, the corresponding buckling capacity of the panel is calculated by applying the actual stress combination and then increasing or decreasing the stresses proportionally until collapse occurs (i.e., when the increased or decreased stresses are on a buckling strength interaction curve or surface).

3-2-A8/Figure 5 illustrates the buckling capacity and the buckling utilization factor of a structural member subject to σ_x and σ_y stresses.

FIGURE 5
Illustration of Buckling Capacity and Buckling Utilization Factor



1.3.3 Allowable Buckling Utilization Factor

1.3.3(a)

The allowable buckling utilization factor η_{all} is to be taken according to Relevant Sections.

1.3.4 Buckling Acceptance Criteria

1.3.4(a)

A structural member is considered to have an acceptable buckling strength if it satisfies the following criterion:

$$\eta_{act} \leq \eta_{all}$$

where:

η_{act} = Buckling utilization factor based on the applied stress, defined in 3-2-A8/1.3.2(b).

η_{all} = Allowable buckling utilization factor as defined in 3-2-A8/1.3.3(a).

2 Slenderness Requirements

Commentary:

- Compliance with the requirements in 3-2-A8/2 is exclusively limited to stiffeners in hatch cover structures.

End of Commentary

Symbols

For symbols not defined in this section, refer to 3-2-A8/1.2.3(b).

R_{eH} Specified minimum yield stress of the structural member being considered, in N/mm^2.

2.1 General

2.1.1 Introduction

2.1.1(a)

The stiffener elements except for U-type stiffeners are to comply with the applicable slenderness and proportion requirements given in 3-2-A8/2.2

2.2 Stiffeners

2.2.1 Proportions of Stiffeners

2.2.1(a) Net thickness of all stiffener types

The net thickness of stiffeners is to satisfy the following criteria:

a) Stiffener web plate:

$$t_w \geq \frac{h_w}{C_w}\sqrt{\frac{R_{eh}}{235}}$$

b) Flange:

$$t_f \geq \frac{b_{f-out}}{C_f}\sqrt{\frac{R_{eH}}{235}}$$

where

C_w, C_f = Slenderness coefficients given in 3-2-A8/Table 1.

If requirement b) is not fulfilled, the effective free flange outstand, in mm, used in strength assessment including the calculation of actual net section modulus, is to be taken as:

$$b_{f-out-max} = C_f t_f \sqrt{\frac{235}{R_{eH}}}$$

TABLE 1
Slenderness Coefficients

Type of Stiffener	C_w	C_f
Angle and L2 bars	75	12
T-bars	75	12
Bulb bars	45	-
Flat bars	22	-

For built-up profile where the relevant yielding strength for the web of built-up profile without the edge stiffener is acceptable, as an alternative the web can be assessed according to the web requirements of Angle and L2 bars in 3-2-A8/Table 1, and the edge stiffener can be assessed as a flat bar stiffener according to 3-2-A8/2.2.1(a). The requirement to flange in 3-2-A8/2.2.1(b) shall still apply.

2.2.1(b) Net dimensions of angle and T-bars

The total flange breadth b_f, in mm, for angle and T-bars is to satisfy the following criterion:

$$b_f \geq 0.2 h_w$$

2.3 Primary Supporting Members

2.3.1 Proportions and Stiffness

2.3.1(a) Proportions of web plate and flange

The scantlings of webs and flanges of primary supporting members are to comply with corresponding ABS MVR requirements..

3 Buckling Requirements for Hull Girder Prescriptive Analysis

Commentary:

- Compliance with the requirements in 3-2-A8/3 will not become effective until IACS UR S11, UR S11A or other IACS URs are updated to require compliance with UR S35.

End of Commentary

Symbols

η_{all} Allowable buckling utilization factor, as defined in 3-2-A8/1.3.3(a).

LCP Load Calculation Point, as defined in 3-2-A8/3.1.2(a).

3.1 General

3.1.1 Introduction

3.1.1(a)

This section applies to plate panels including plane and curved plate panels, stiffeners and corrugation of longitudinal corrugated bulkheads subject to hull girder compression and shear stresses.

3.1.1(b)

The ship longitudinal extent where the buckling check is performed for structural elements subject to hull girder stresses is to be in accordance with Relevant Sections.

3.1.1(c)

Design load sets: The buckling check is to be performed for all design load sets corresponding to the design loading conditions defined in Relevant Sections with the most unfavorable pressure combinations.

For each design load set, for all static and dynamic load cases, the lateral pressure is to be determined at the load calculation point defined in 3-2-A8/3.1.2(a), and is to be applied together with the hull girder stress combinations defined in Relevant Sections.

3.1.2 Definitions

3.1.2(a) Load calculation point

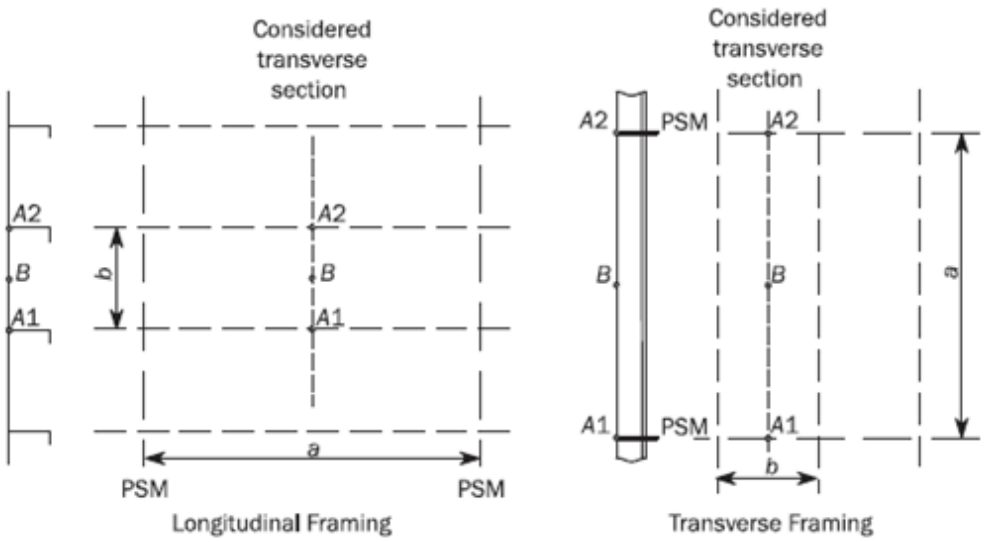
The load calculation points (LCP) for both elementary plate panels (EPP) and stiffeners are defined as follows:

a) LCP for hull girder stresses of EPP
The hull girder stresses for EPP are to be calculated at the load calculation points defined in 3-2-A8/Table 2.

TABLE 2
Load Calculation Points (LCP) Coordinates for Plate Buckling Assessment

LCP Coordinates	*Hull Girder Bending Stress*		*Hull Girder Shear Stress*
	Non Horizontal Plating	*Horizontal Plating*	
x coordinate	Mid-length of the EPP		
y coordinate	Both upper and lower ends of the EPP (points A1 and A2 in 3-2-A8/Figure 6)	Outboard and inboard ends of the EPP (points A1 and A2 in 3-2-A8/Figure 6)	Mid-point of EPP (point B in 3-2-A8/Figure 6)
z coordinate	Corresponding to x and y values		

FIGURE 6
LCP for Plate Buckling Assessment



b) LCP for hull girder stresses of longitudinal stiffeners
The hull girder stresses for longitudinal stiffeners are to be calculated at the following load calculation point:

- at the mid length of the considered stiffener.
- at the intersection point between the stiffener and its attached plate.

c) LCP for pressure of horizontal stiffeners
The load calculation point for the pressure is located at:

- Middle of the full length, ℓ, of the considered stiffener.
- The intersection point between the stiffener and its attached plate.

d) LCP for pressure of non-horizontal stiffeners
The lateral pressure, P, is to be calculated as the maximum between the value obtained at middle of the full length, ℓ, and the value obtained from the following formulae:

$P = \frac{p_U + p_L}{2}$ when the upper end of the vertical stiffener is below the lowest zero pressure level.

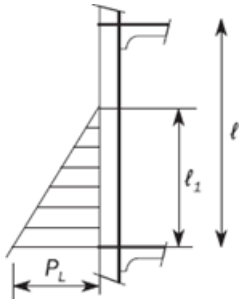
$P = \frac{\ell_1}{\ell}\frac{p_L}{2}$ when the upper end of the vertical stiffener is at or above the lowest zero pressure level, see 3-2-A8/Figure 7.

where:

ℓ_1 = Distance, in m, between the lower end of vertical stiffener and the lowest zero pressure level.

p_U, p_L = Lateral pressures at the upper and lower end of the vertical stiffener span ℓ, respectively.

FIGURE 7
Definition of Pressure for Vertical Stiffeners



3.1.3 Assumptions for Equivalent Plate Panels

3.1.3(a) Longitudinal stiffening with varying plate thickness

In longitudinal stiffening arrangement, when the plate thickness varies over the width b of a plate panel, the buckling check is to be performed for an equivalent plate panel width, combined with the smaller plate thickness, t_1. The width of this equivalent plate panel, b_{eq}, in mm, is defined by the following formula:

$$b_{eq} = \ell_1 + \ell_2 \left(\frac{t_1}{t_2}\right)^{1.5}$$

where:

ℓ_1 = Width of the part of the plate panel with the smaller plate thickness, t_1, in mm, as defined in 3-2-A8/Figure 8.

ℓ_2 = Width of the part of the plate panel with the greater plate thickness, t_2, in mm, as defined in 3-2-A8/Figure 8.

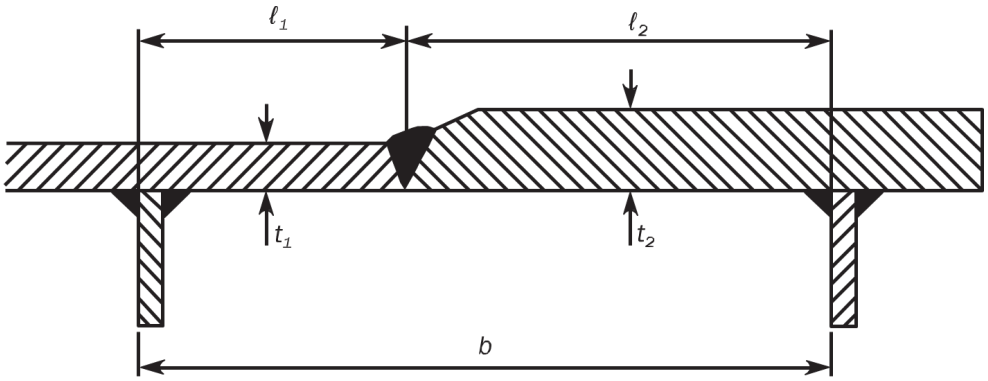
3.1.3(b) Transverse stiffening with varying plate thickness

In transverse stiffening arrangement, when an EPP is made with different thicknesses, the buckling check of the plate and stiffeners is to be made for each thickness considered constant on the EPP, the stresses and pressures being estimated for the EPP at the LCP.

3.1.3(c) Plate panel with different materials

When the plate panel is made of different materials, the minimum yield strength is to be used for the buckling assessment.

FIGURE 8
Plate Thickness Change Over the Width



3.2 Buckling Criteria

3.2.1 Overall Stiffened Panel

3.2.1(a)

The buckling strength of overall stiffened panels is to satisfy the following criterion:

$$\eta_{overall} \leq \eta_{all}$$

where:

$\eta_{overall}$ = Maximum overall buckling utilization factor as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.1.

3.2.2 Plates

3.2.2(a)

The buckling strength of elementary plate panels is to satisfy the following criterion:

$$\eta_{plate} \leq \eta_{all}$$

where:

η_{plate} = Maximum plate buckling utilization factor as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.2 where SP-A model is to be used.

For the determination of η_{plate} of the vertically stiffened side shell plating of single side skin bulk carrier between hopper and topside tanks, the cases 12 and 16 of 3-2-A8/Table 5 corresponding to the shorter edge of the plate panel clamped are to be considered together with a mean σ_y stress and $\psi_y = 1$.

3.2.3 Stiffeners

3.2.3(a)

The buckling strength of stiffeners or of side frames of single side skin bulk carriers is to satisfy the following criterion:

$$\eta_{stiffener} \leq \eta_{all}$$

where:

$\eta_{stiffener}$ = Maximum stiffener buckling utilization factor as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.3.

Notes:

1 This buckling check can only be fulfilled when the overall stiffened panel buckling check, as defined in 3-2-A8/3.2.1, is satisfied.

2 The buckling check of the stiffeners is only applicable to the stiffeners fitted along the long edge of the buckling panel.

3.2.4 Vertically Corrugated Longitudinal Bulkheads

The shear buckling strength of vertically corrugated longitudinal bulkheads is to satisfy the following criterion:

$$\eta_{shear} \leq \eta_{all}$$

where:

η_{shear} = Maximum shear buckling utilization factor, defined as

$$\eta_{shear} = \frac{\tau_{bhd}}{\tau_c}$$

τ_{bhd} = Shear stress, in N/mm^2, in the bulkhead taken as the hull girder shear stress defined in Relevant Sections

τ_c = Shear critical stress, in N/mm^2, as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.2(c).

3.2.5 Horizontally Corrugated Longitudinal Bulkheads

3.2.5(a)

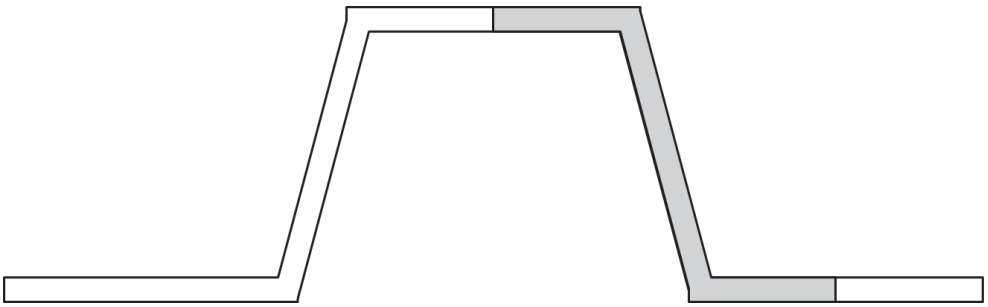
Each corrugation unit within the extension of half flange, web and half flange (i.e. single corrugation as shown in grey in 3-2-A8/Figure 9) is to satisfy the following criterion:

$$\eta_{column} \leq \eta_{all}$$

where:

η_{column} = Overall column buckling utilization factor, as defined in 3-2-A8/5.3.1.

FIGURE 9
Single Corrugation



4 Buckling Requirements for Direct Strength Analysis of Hatch Covers

Symbols

R_{eH_P} Yield stress of the plate panel, as defined in 3-2-A8/4.2.1(c).

R_{eH_S} Yield stress of the stiffener, as defined in 3-2-A8/4.2.1(c).

α Aspect ratio of the plate panel, as defined in the Symbol list of 3-2-A8/5.

η_{all} Allowable buckling utilization factor, as defined in 3-2-A8/1.3.3(a).

4.1 General

4.1.1 Introduction

4.1.1(a)

The requirements of this Section apply to the buckling assessment of hatch cover structural members based on direct strength analysis (usually by finite element method) and subjected to normal stress, shear stress and lateral pressure.

4.1.1(b)

All structural elements in the direct strength analysis carried out according to Relevant Sections are to be assessed individually. The buckling checks are to be performed for the following structural elements:

- Stiffened and unstiffened panels.
- Web plate in way of openings.

4.2 Stiffened and Unstiffened Panels

4.2.1 General

4.2.1(a)

The plate panel of a hatch cover structure is to be modelled as stiffened panel (SP) or unstiffened panel (UP), with either Method A or Method B as defined in 3-2-A8/1.3.1(a) to be used for the calculation of the plate buckling capacity, which in combination is also equivalent to use the buckling assessment models defined in 3-2-A8/1.3.1(b).

4.2.1(b) Average thickness of plate panel

For FE analysis, where the plate thickness along a plate panel is not constant, the panel used for the buckling assessment is to be modelled with a weighted average thickness taken as:

$$t_{avr} = \frac{\sum_1^n A_i t_i}{\sum_1^n A_i}$$

where:

A_i = Area of the *i*-th plate element.

t_i = Net thickness of the *i*-th plate element.

n = Number of finite elements defining the buckling plate panel.

4.2.1(c) Yield stress of the plate panel and stiffener

The panel yield stress R_{eH_P} is taken as the minimum value of the specified yield stresses of the elements within the plate panel.

The stiffener yield stress R_{eH_S} is taken as the minimum value of the specified yield stresses of the elements within the stiffener.

4.2.2 Stiffened Panels

4.2.2(a)

For a stiffened panel (SP), each stiffener with attached plate is to be idealized as a stiffened panel model of the extent defined in Relevant Sections.

4.2.2(b)

If the stiffener properties or stiffener spacing varies within the stiffened panel, the calculations are to be performed separately for all configurations of the panels, i.e., for each stiffener and plate between the stiffeners. Plate thickness, stiffener properties and stiffener spacing at the considered location are to be assumed for the whole panel.

4.2.2(c)

The buckling check of the stiffeners of stiffened panels is only applicable to the stiffeners fitted along the longer side edges of the buckling panel.

4.2.3 Unstiffened Panels

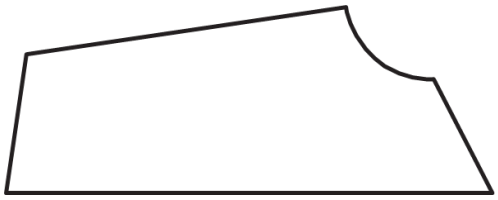
4.2.3(a) Irregular plate panel

In way of web frames and brackets, the geometry of the panel (i.e. plate bounded by web stiffeners/face plate) may not have a rectangular shape. In this case, for FE analysis, an equivalent rectangular panel is to be defined according to 3-2-A8/4.2.3(b) for irregular geometry and 3-2-A8/4.2.3(c) for triangular geometry and to comply with buckling assessment.

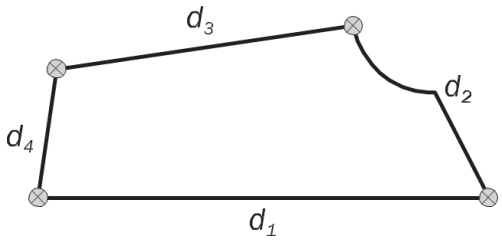
4.2.3(b) Equivalent EPP of an unstiffened panel with irregular geometry

Unstiffened panels with irregular geometry are to be idealized to equivalent panels for plate buckling assessment according to the following procedure:

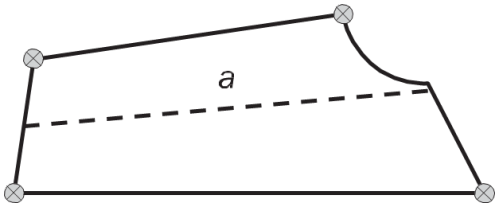
a) The four corners closest to a right angle, 90 deg, in the bounding polygon for the plate are identified.



b) The distances along the plate bounding polygon between the corners are calculated, i.e. the sum of all the straight-line segments between the end points.



c) The pair of opposite edges with the smallest total length is identified, i.e. minimum of $d_1 + d_3$ and $d_2 + d_4$.



d) A line joins the middle points of the chosen opposite edges (i.e. a mid-point is defined as the point at half the distance from one end). This line defines the longitudinal direction for the capacity model. The length of the line defines the length of the capacity model, a, measured from one end point.

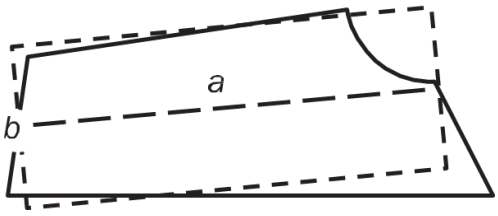
e) The length of shorter side, b, in mm, is to be taken as:

$$b = \frac{A}{a}$$

where:

A = Area of the plate, in mm^2

a = Length defined in (d), in mm.

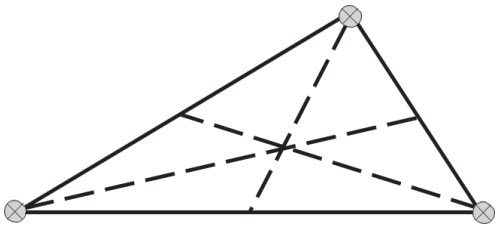


f) The stresses from the direct strength analysis are to be transformed into the local coordinate system of the equivalent rectangular panel. These stresses are to be used for the buckling assessment.

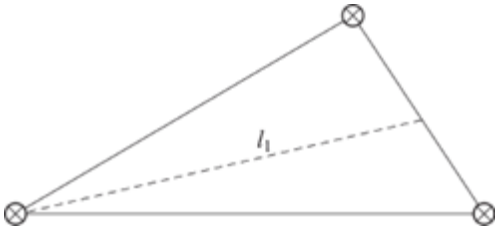
4.2.3(c) Modelling of an unstiffened plate panel with triangular geometry

Unstiffened panels with triangular geometry are to be idealized to equivalent panels for plate buckling assessment according to the following procedure:

a) Medians are constructed as shown below.



b) The longest median is identified. This median the length of which is l_1, in mm, defines the longitudinal direction for the capacity model.

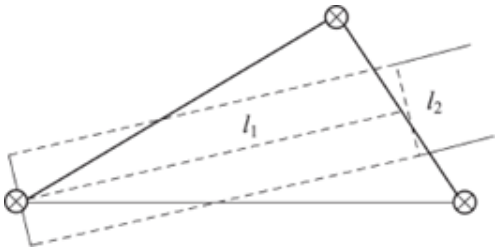


c) The width of the model, l_2, in mm, is to be taken as:

$$l_2 = \frac{A}{l_1}$$

where:

A = Area of the plate, in mm^2



d) The lengths of shorter side, b, and of the longer side, a, in mm, of the equivalent rectangular plate panel are to be taken as:

$$b = \frac{l_2}{C_{tri}}$$

$$a = l_1 C_{tri}$$

where:

$$C_{tri} = 0.4\frac{l_2}{l_1} + 0.6$$

e) The stresses from the direct strength analysis are to be transformed into the local coordinate system of the equivalent rectangular panel and are to be used for the buckling assessment of the equivalent rectangular panel.

4.2.4 Reference Stress

4.2.4(a)

The stress distribution is to be taken from the direct strength analysis according to Relevant Sections and applied to the buckling model.

4.2.4(b)

For FE analysis, the reference stresses are to be calculated using the stress-based reference stresses as defined in 3-2-A8/6.

4.2.5 Lateral Pressure

4.2.5(a)

The lateral pressure applied to the direct strength analysis is also to be applied to the buckling assessment.

For FE analysis, where the lateral pressure is not constant over a buckling panel defined by a number of finite plate elements, an average lateral pressure, N/mm^2, is calculated using the following formula:

$$P_{avr} = \frac{\sum_1^n A_i P_i}{\sum_1^n A_i}$$

where:

A = Area of the *i*-th plate element, in mm^2

P_i = Lateral pressure of the *i*-th plate element, in N/mm^2.

n = Number of finite elements in the buckling panel.

4.2.6 Buckling Criteria

4.2.6(a) UP-A

The compressive buckling strength of UP-A is to satisfy the following criterion:

$$\eta_{UP-A} \leq \eta_{all}$$

where:

η_{UP-A} = Plate buckling utilization factor, equal to η_{plate} as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.2 where UP-A model is to be used.

4.2.6(b) UP-B

The compressive buckling strength of UP-B is to satisfy the following criterion:

$$\eta_{UP-B} \leq \eta_{all}$$

where:

η_{UP-B} = Plate buckling utilization factor, equal to η_{plate} as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.2 where UP-B model is to be used.

4.2.6(c) SP-A

The compressive buckling strength of SP-A is to satisfy the following criterion:

$$\eta_{SP-A} \leq \eta_{all}$$

where:

η_{SP-A} = Buckling utilization factor of the stiffened panel, taken as the maximum of the buckling utilization factors calculated as below:

- The overall stiffened panel buckling utilization factor $\eta_{overall}$ as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.1.
- The plate buckling utilization factor η_{plate} as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.2 where SP-A model is to be used.
- The stiffener buckling utilization factor $\eta_{stiffener}$ as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.3 considering separately the properties (thickness, dimensions), the pressures defined in 3-2-A8/4.2.5(b) and the reference stresses of each EPP at both sides of the stiffener.

Note: The stiffener buckling strength check can only be fulfilled when the overall stiffened panel capacity check, as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.1, is satisfied.

4.2.6(d) SP-B

The compressive buckling strength of SP-B is to satisfy the following criterion:

$$\eta_{SP-B} \leq \eta_{all}$$

where:

η_{SP-B} = Buckling utilization factor of the stiffened panel, taken as the maximum of the buckling utilization factors calculated as below:

- The overall stiffened panel buckling utilization factor $\eta_{overall}$ as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.1.
- The plate buckling utilization factor η_{plate} as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.2 where SP-B model is to be used.
- The stiffener buckling utilization factor $\eta_{stiffener}$ as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.3 considering separately the properties (thickness, dimensions), the pressures defined in 3-2-A8/4.2.5(b) and the reference stresses of each EPP at both sides of the stiffener.

Note: The stiffener buckling strength check can only be fulfilled when the overall stiffened panel capacity check, as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.1, is satisfied.

4.2.6(e) Web plate in way of openings

The web plate of primary supporting members with openings is to satisfy the following criterion:

$$\eta_{opening} \leq \eta_{all}$$

where:

$\eta_{opening}$ = Maximum web plate utilization factor in way of openings, calculated with the definition in 3-2-A8/1.3.2(b) and the stress multiplier factor at failure γ_c which can be calculated following the requirements in 3-2-A8/5.2.4.

5 Buckling Capacity

Symbols

A_p Net sectional area of the stiffener attached plating, in mm^2, taken as:

$$A_p = st_p$$

A_s Net sectional area of the stiffener without attached plating, in mm^2.

a Length of the longer side of the plate panel, in mm.

b Length of the shorter side of the plate panel, in mm.

b_{eff} Effective width of the attached plating of a stiffener, in mm, as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.3(e).

b_{eff1} Effective width of the attached plating of a stiffener, in mm, without the shear lag effect taken as:

- For $\sigma_x > 0$
  - For prescriptive assessment:
    $$b_{eff1} = \frac{C_{x1}b_1 + C_{x2}b_2}{2}$$
  - For FE analysis:
    $$b_{eff1} = C_x b$$
- For $\sigma_x \leq 0$
  $$b_{eff1} = b$$

b_f Breadth of the stiffener flange, in mm.

b_1, b_2 Width of plate panel on each side of the considered stiffener, in mm. For stiffened panels fitted with U-type stiffeners, b_1 and b_2 are as defined in 3-2-A8/Figure 4.

C_{x1}, C_{x2} Reduction factor defined in 3-2-A8/Table 5 calculated for the EPP1 and EPP2 on each side of the considered stiffener according to case 1.

d Length of the side parallel to the cylindrical axis of the cylinder corresponding to the curved plate panel as shown in 3-2-A8/Table 6, in mm.

d_f Breadth of the extended part of the flange for L2 profiles, in mm, as shown in 3-2-A8/Figure 3.

e_f Distance from attached plating to centre of flange, in mm, as shown in 3-2-A8/Figure 3 to be taken as:

$e_f = h_w$ for flat bar profile.

$e_f = h_w$–$0.5t_f$ for bulb profile.

$e_f = h_w + 0.5t_f$ for angle, L2 and Tee profiles.

F_{long} Coefficient defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.2(d).

F_{tran} Coefficient defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.2(e).

h_w Depth of stiffener web, in mm, as shown in 3-2-A8/Figure 3.

ℓ Span, in mm, of stiffener equal to spacing between primary supporting members or span of side frame equal to the distance between the hopper tank and top wing tank in way of the side shell.

R Radius of curved plate panel, in mm.

R_{eH_P} Specified minimum yield stress of the plate in N/mm^2.

R_{eH_S} Specified minimum yield stress of the stiffener in N/mm^2.

S Partial safety factor, unless otherwise specified in Relevant Sections, to be taken as 1.0.

t_p Net thickness of plate panel, in mm.

t_w Net stiffener web thickness, in mm.

t_f Net flange thickness, in mm.

x-axis Local axis of a rectangular buckling panel parallel to its long edge.

y-axis Local axis of a rectangular buckling panel perpendicular to its long edge.

α Aspect ratio of the plate panel, defined in 3-2-A8/Table 5 to be taken as: $\alpha = \frac{a}{b}$

β Coefficient taken as: $\beta = \frac{1-\psi}{\alpha}$

ω Coefficient taken as: $\omega = min\,(3, \alpha)$

σ_x Stress applied on the edge along *x*-axis of the buckling panel, in N/mm^2.

σ_y Stress applied on the edge along *y*-axis of the buckling panel, in N/mm^2.

σ_1 Maximum normal stress along a panel edge, in N/mm^2.

σ_2 Minimum normal stress along a panel edge, in N/mm^2.

σ_E Elastic buckling reference stress, in N/mm^2 to be taken as:

- For the application of the limit state of plane plate panels according to 3-2-A8/5.2.2(a):
$$\sigma_E = \frac{\pi^2 E}{12(1-v^2)}\left(\frac{t_p}{b}\right)^2$$
- For the application of the limit state of curved plate panels according to 3-2-A8/5.2.2(f):
$$\sigma_E = \frac{\pi^2 E}{12(1-v^2)}\left(\frac{t_p}{d}\right)^2$$

τ Applied shear stress, in N/mm^2.

τ_c Buckling strength in shear, in N/mm^2, as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.2(c).

ψ Edge stress ratio to be taken as: $\psi = \frac{\sigma_2}{\sigma_1}$

γ Stress multiplier factor acting on loads. When the factor is such that the loads reach the interaction formulae, $\gamma = \gamma_c$.

γ_c Stress multiplier factor at failure.

γ_{GEB} Stress multiplier factor of global elastic buckling capacity.

5.1 General

5.1.1 Introduction

5.1.1(a)

This section contains the methods for determination of the buckling capacities of plate panels, stiffeners, primary supporting members and columns.

5.1.1(b)

For the application of this section, the stresses σ_x, σ_y and τ applied on the structural members are defined in:

- 3-2-A8/3 for hull girder prescriptive buckling requirements.
- 3-2-A8/4 for direct strength analysis buckling requirements of hatch covers.

5.1.1(c) Buckling capacity

The buckling capacity is calculated by applying the actual stress combination and then increasing or decreasing the stresses proportionally until the interaction formulae defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.1(a), 3-2-A8/5.2.2(a) and 3-2-A8/5.2.3(d) are equal to 1.0, respectively.

5.1.1(d) Buckling utilization factor

The buckling utilization factor of the structural member is equal to the highest utilization factor obtained for the different buckling modes.

5.1.1(e) Lateral pressure

The lateral pressure is to be applied and considered as constant for the calculation of buckling capacities as defined in 3-2-A8/5.1.1(c).

5.2 Buckling Capacity of Plate Panels

5.2.1 Overall Stiffened Panels

5.2.1(a)

The elastic stiffened panel limit state is based on the following interaction formula, which sets a precondition for the buckling check of stiffeners in accordance with 3-2-A8/5.2.3(d):

$$\frac{\gamma}{\gamma_{GEB}} = 1$$

with the corresponding buckling utilization factor defined as

$$\eta_{overall} = \frac{1}{\gamma_c}$$

where the stress multiplier factors of global elastic buckling capacity, γ_{GEB}, are to be calculated based on the following formulae:

$$\gamma_{GEB} = \gamma_{GEB,bi+\tau} \quad \text{for} \quad \tau \neq 0 \text{and} (\sigma_x > 0 \text{or} \sigma_y > 0)$$
$$\gamma_{GEB} = \gamma_{GEB,bi} \quad \text{for} \quad \tau = 0 \text{and} (\sigma_x > 0 \text{or} \sigma_y > 0)$$
$$\gamma_{GEB} = \gamma_{GEB,\tau} \quad \text{for} \quad \tau \neq 0 \text{and} (\sigma_x \leq 0 \text{and} \sigma_y \leq 0)$$

where $\gamma_{GEB,bi+\tau}$, $\gamma_{GEB,bi}$ and $\gamma_{GEB,\tau}$ are stress multiplier factors of the global elastic buckling capacity for different load combinations as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.1(b), 3-2-A8/5.2.1(c) and 3-2-A8/5.2.1(d), respectively. For the calculation of $\gamma_{GEB,bi+\tau}$, $\gamma_{GEB,bi}$ and $\gamma_{GEB,\tau}$, neither σ_x nor σ_y shall be taken less than 0.

σ_x, σ_y Applied normal stress to the plate panel, in N/mm^2, to be taken as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.2(g).

τ Applied shear stress, in N/mm^2, to be taken as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.2(g).

5.2.1(b)

The stress multiplier factor $\gamma_{GEB,bi}$ for the stiffened panel subjected to biaxial loads is taken as:

$$\gamma_{GEB,bi} = \frac{\pi^2}{L_{B1}^2 L_{B2}^2} \frac{\left[D_{11} L_{B2}^4 + 2(D_{12} + D_{33}) n^2 L_{B1}^2 L_{B2}^2 + n^4 D_{22} L_{B1}^4\right]}{L_{B2}^2 N_x + n^2 L_{B1}^2 N_y}$$

where:

N_x = Load per unit length applied on the edge along *x*-axis of the stiffened panel, in N/mm, taken as:

$$N_x = \sigma_{x,av}(A_p + A_s)/s$$

For stiffened panels fitted with U-type stiffeners, stiffener spacing s is taken as:

$$s = b_1 + b_2$$

where b_1 and b_2 are as defined in 3-2-A8/Figure 4.

N_y = Load per unit length applied on the edge along *y* axis of the stiffened panel, in N/mm, taken as $N_y = c\sigma_y t_p$

L_{B1} = Stiffener span, in mm, equal to spacing between primary supporting members, i.e. $L_{B1} = \ell$. Specially, for vertically stiffened side shell of single side skin bulk carriers, $L_{B1} = 0.8\ell$.

L_{B2} = Total width of stiffened panel between lateral supports, in mm, taken as 6 times of the stiffener spacing, i.e. 6*s*.

n = Number of half waves along the direction perpendicular to the stiffener axis. The factor $\gamma_{GEB,bi}$ is to be minimized with respect to the wave parameter n, i.e. to be taken as the smallest value larger than zero.

c = Factor taking into account the normal stress distribution in the attached plating acting perpendicular to the stiffener's axis:

$$c = 0.5(1 + \psi) \quad \text{for} \quad 0 \leq \psi \leq 1$$
$$c = \frac{1}{2(1-\psi)} \quad \text{for} \quad \psi < 0$$

ψ = Edge stress ratio for case 2 according to 3-2-A8/Table 5.

$\sigma_{x,av}$ = Average stress for both plate and stiffener, taken as:

$$\sigma_{x,av} = \sigma_x - vc\sigma_y A_s/(A_p + A_s) \geq 0 \quad \text{for} \quad \sigma_x > 0 \text{and} \sigma_y > 0$$
$$\sigma_{x,av} = \sigma_x \quad \text{for} \quad \sigma_x \leq 0 \text{or} \sigma_y \leq 0$$

$D_{11}, D_{12}, D_{22}, D_{33}$ = Bending stiffness coefficients, in Nmm, of the stiffened panel, defined in general as:

$$\left.\begin{aligned} D_{11} &= \frac{EI_{eff}10^4}{s} \\ D_{12} &= \frac{Et_p^3 v}{12\,(1-v^2)} \\ D_{22} &= \frac{Et_p^3}{12\,(1-v^2)} \\ D_{33} &= \frac{Et_p^3}{12\,(1+v)} \end{aligned}\right\}$$

For stiffened panels fitted with U-type stiffeners, D_{12} and D_{22} are defined as:

$$D_{22} = \frac{Et_p^3}{12\,(1-v^2)}\left[1.2 + 4.8 \times Min\left(1.0,\ \frac{b_1^2}{h_w\,(b_1+b_2)}\right) \times Min\left(1.0,\ \left(\frac{t_w}{t_p}\right)^3\right)\right]$$

$$D_{12} = vD_{22}$$

h_w is the breadth of U-type stiffener web as defined in 3-2-A8/Figure 4

I_{eff} Moment of inertia, in cm^4, of the stiffener including effective width of attached plating, the same as *I* defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.3(d).

5.2.1(c)

The stress multiplier factor $\gamma_{GEB,\tau}$ for the stiffened panel subjected to pure shear load is taken as:

$$\gamma_{GEB,\tau} = \frac{\sqrt[4]{D_{11}^3 D_{22}}}{(L_B/2)^2 N_{xy}}\left[8.125 + 5.64\sqrt{\frac{(D_{12}+D_{33})^2}{D_{11}D_{22}}} - 0.6\,\frac{(D_{12}+D_{33})^2}{D_{11}D_{22}}\right] \quad \text{for} \quad D_{11}D_{22} \geq (D_{12}+D_{33})^2$$

$$\gamma_{GEB,\tau} = \frac{\sqrt{2D_{11}(D_{12}+D_{33})}}{(L_B/2)^2 N_{xy}}\left[8.3 + 1.525\,\frac{D_{11}D_{22}}{(D_{12}+D_{33})^2} - 0.493\,\frac{D_{11}^2 D_{22}^2}{(D_{12}+D_{33})^4}\right] \quad \text{for} \quad D_{11}D_{22} < (D_{12}+D_{33})^2$$

where:

$$N_{xy} = \tau t_p$$

5.2.1(d)

The stress multiplier factor $\gamma_{GEB,bi+\tau}$ for the stiffened panel subjected to combined loads is taken as:

$$\gamma_{GEB,bi+\tau} = \frac{1}{2}\gamma_{GEB,\tau}^2\left[-\frac{1}{\gamma_{GEB,bi}} + \sqrt{\frac{1}{\gamma_{GEB,bi}^2} + 4\,\frac{1}{\gamma_{GEB,\tau}^2}}\right]$$

where $\gamma_{GEB,bi}$ and $\gamma_{GEB,\tau}$ are as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.1(b) and 3-2-A8/5.2.1(c), respectively.

5.2.2 Plates

5.2.2(a) Plate limit state

The plate limit state is based on the following interaction formulae:

$$\left(\frac{\gamma_{c1}\sigma_x S}{\sigma_{cx}}\right)^{e_o} - B\left(\frac{\gamma_{c1}\sigma_x S}{\sigma_{cx}}\right)^{\frac{e_o}{2}}\left(\frac{\gamma_{c1}\sigma_y S}{\sigma_{cy}}\right)^{\frac{e_o}{2}} + \left(\frac{\gamma_{c1}\sigma_y S}{\sigma_{cy}}\right)^{e_o} + \left(\frac{\gamma_{c1}|\tau| S}{\tau_c}\right)^{e_o} = 1$$

$$\left(\frac{\gamma_{c2}\sigma_x S}{\sigma_{cx}}\right)^{\frac{2}{\beta_p^{0.25}}} + \left(\frac{\gamma_{c2}|\tau| S}{\tau_c}\right)^{\frac{2}{\beta_p^{0.25}}} = 1 for \sigma_x \geq 0$$

$$\left(\frac{\gamma_{c3}\sigma_y S}{\sigma_{cy}}\right)^{\frac{2}{\beta_p^{0.25}}} + \left(\frac{\gamma_{c3}|\tau| S}{\tau_c}\right)^{\frac{2}{\beta_p^{0.25}}} = 1 for \sigma_y \geq 0$$

$$\frac{\gamma_{c4}|\tau| S}{\tau_c} = 1$$

with

$$\gamma_c = min\left(\gamma_{c1}, \gamma_{c2}, \gamma_{c3}, \gamma_{c4}\right)$$

and the corresponding buckling utilization factor defined as

$$\eta_{plate} = \frac{1}{\gamma_c}$$

where:

σ_x, σ_y = Applied normal stress to the plate panel, in N/mm^2, to be taken as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.2(g).

τ = Applied shear stress to the plate panel, in N/mm^2.

σ_{cx} = Ultimate buckling stress, in N/mm^2, in direction parallel to the longer edge of the buckling panel as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.2(c).

σ_{cy} = Ultimate buckling stress, in N/mm^2, in direction parallel to the shorter edge of the buckling panel as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.2(c).

τ_c = Ultimate buckling shear stresses, in N/mm^2, as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.2(c).

$\gamma_{c1}, \gamma_{c2}, \gamma_{c3}, \gamma_{c4}$ = Stress multiplier factors at failure for each of the above different limit states. γ_{c2} and γ_{c3} are only to be considered when $\sigma_x \geq 0$ and $\sigma_y \geq 0$ respectively.

B = Coefficient given in 3-2-A8/Table 3.

e_0 = Coefficient given in 3-2-A8/Table 3.

β_p = Plate slenderness parameter taken as:

$$\beta_p = \frac{b}{t_p}\sqrt{\frac{R_{eH\_P}}{E}}$$

TABLE 3
Definition of Coefficients *B* and e_0

Applied Stress	B	e_0
$\sigma_x \geq 0$ and $\sigma_y \geq 0$	$0.7 - 0.3\beta_p/\alpha^2$	$2/\beta_p^{0.25}$
$\sigma_x < 0$ or $\sigma_y < 0$	1.0	2.0

5.2.2(b) Reference degree of slenderness

The reference degree of slenderness is to be taken as:

$$\lambda = \sqrt{\frac{R_{eH\_P}}{K\sigma_E}}$$

where:

K = Buckling factor, as defined in 3-2-A8/Table 5 and 3-2-A8/Table 6.

5.2.2(c) Ultimate buckling stresses

The ultimate buckling stresses of plate panels, in N/mm^2, are to be taken as:

$$\sigma_{cx} = C_x R_{eH\_P}$$

$$\sigma_{cy} = C_y R_{eH\_P}$$

The ultimate buckling stress of plate panels subject to shear, in N/mm^2, is to be taken as:

$$\tau_c = C_\tau \frac{R_{eH\_P}}{\sqrt{3}}$$

where:

C_x, C_y, C_τ = Reduction factors, as defined in 3-2-A8/Table 5.

- For the 1st Equation of 3-2-A8/5.2.2(a), when $\sigma_x < 0$ or $\sigma_y < 0$, the reduction factors are to taken as:
  $C_x = C_y = C_\tau = 1$.
- For the other cases:
  - For SP-A and UP-A, C_y is calculated according to 3-2-A8/Table 5 by using
    $c_1 = \left(1 - \frac{1}{\alpha}\right) \geq 0$
  - For SP-B and UP-B, C_y is calculated according to 3-2-A8/Table 5 by using
    $c_1 = 1$
  - For vertically stiffened single side skin of bulk carrier, C_y is calculated according to 3-2-A8/Table 5 by using
    $c_1 = \left(1 - \frac{1}{\alpha}\right) \geq 0$
  - For corrugation of corrugated bulkheads, C_y is calculated according to 3-2-A8/Table 5 by using

$$c_1 = \left(1 - \frac{1}{\alpha}\right) \geq 0$$

The boundary conditions for plates are to be considered as simply supported, see cases 1, 2 and 15 of 3-2-A8/Table 5. If the boundary conditions differ significantly from simple support, a more appropriate boundary condition can be applied according to the different cases of Table 5 subject to the agreement of ABS.

5.2.2(d) Correction factor F_{long}

The correction factor F_{long} depending on the edge stiffener types on the longer side of the buckling panel is defined in 3-2-A8/Table 4. An average value of F_{long} is to be used for plate panels having different edge stiffeners. For stiffener types other than those mentioned in 3-2-A8/Table 4, the value of c is to be agreed by ABS. In such a case, value of c higher than those mentioned in 3-2-A8/Table 4 can be used, provided it is verified by buckling strength check of panel using non-linear FE analysis and deemed appropriate by ABS.

TABLE 4
Correction Factor F_{long}

Structural Element Types			F_{long}	c
Unstiffened Panel			1.0	N/A
Stiffened Panel	Stiffener not fixed at both ends		1.0	N/A
	Stiffener fixed at both ends	Flat bar (1)	$F_{long} = c + 1$ for $\frac{t_w}{t_p} > 1$ $F_{long} = c\left(\frac{t_w}{t_p}\right)^3 + 1$ for $\frac{t_w}{t_p} \leq 1$	0.10
		Bulb profile		0.30
		Angle and L2 profiles		0.40
		T profile		0.30
		Girder of high rigidity (e.g. bottom transverse)	1.4	N/A
		U-type profile fitted on hatch cover (2)	• Plate on which the U-type profile is fitted, including EPP b_1 and EPP b_2 – For $b_2 < b_1$: $F_{long} = 1$ – For $b_2 \geq b_1$: $F_{long} = \left(1.55 - 0.55\frac{b_1}{b_2}\right)\left[1 + c\left(\frac{t_w}{t_p}\right)^3\right]$ • Other plate of the U type profile: $F_{long} = 1$	0.2

(1) t_w is the net web thickness, in mm, without the correction defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.3(b).

(2) b_1, b_2 and t_w are defined in 3-2-A8/Figure 4.

5.2.2(e) Correction factor F_{tran}

The correction factor F_{tran} is to be taken as:

- For transversely framed EPP of single side skin bulk carrier, between the hopper and top wing tank:

- F_{tran} = 1.25 when the two adjacent frames are supported by one tripping bracket fitted in way of the adjacent plate panels.
- F_{tran} = 1.33 when the two adjacent frames are supported by two tripping brackets each fitted in way of the adjacent plate panels.
- F_{tran} = 1.15 elsewhere.

- For the attached plate of a U-type stiffener fitted on a hatch cover:

  $$F_{tran} = Max\left(3 - 0.08\left(F_{tran0} - 6\right)^2, 1.0\right) \leq 2.25$$

  where:

  $$F_{tran0} = Min\left(\frac{b_2}{b_1} + \frac{6b_2^2}{\pi^2 h_w (b_1 + b_2)}\left(\frac{t_w}{t_p}\right)^3, 6\right) \text{ for EPP} b_2$$

  $$F_{tran0} = Min\left(\frac{b_1}{b_2} + \frac{6b_1^2}{\pi^2 h_w (b_2 + b_1)}\left(\frac{t_w}{t_p}\right)^3, 6\right) \text{ for EPP} b_1$$

  with b_1, b_2 and h_w as defined in 3-2-A8/Figure 4.
  Coefficient F defined in Case 2 of 3-2-A8/Table 5 is to be replaced by the following formula:

  $$F = \left[1 - \left(\frac{K_y}{0.91F_{tran}} - 1\right)/\lambda_p^2\right] c_1 \geq 0$$

- For other cases: F_{tran} = 1

5.2.2(f) Curved plate panels

This requirement for curved plate limit state is applicable when $R/t_p \leq 2500$. Otherwise, the requirement for plate limit state given in 3-2-A8/5.2.2(a) is applicable.

The curved plate limit state is based on the following interaction formula:

$$\left(\frac{\gamma_c \sigma_{ax} S}{C_{ax} R_{eH\_P}}\right)^{1.25} - 0.5\left(\frac{\gamma_c \sigma_{ax} S}{C_{ax} R_{eH\_P}}\right)\left(\frac{\gamma_c \sigma_{tg} S}{C_{tg} R_{eH\_P}}\right) + \left(\frac{\gamma_c \sigma_{tg} S}{C_{tg} R_{eH\_P}}\right)^{1.25} + \left(\frac{\gamma_c \tau\sqrt{3} S}{C_\tau R_{eH\_P}}\right)^2 = 1.0$$

with the corresponding buckling utilization factor defined as

$$\eta_{curved\_plate} = \frac{1}{\gamma_c}$$

where:

σ_{ax}	=	Applied axial stress to the cylinder corresponding to the curved plate panel, in N/mm^2. In case of tensile axial stresses, σ_{ax} = 0.
σ_{tg}	=	Applied tangential stress to the cylinder corresponding to the curved plate panel, in N/mm^2. In case of tensile tangential stresses, σ_{tg} = 0.
C_{ax}, C_{tg}, C_τ	=	Buckling reduction factor of the curved plate panel, as defined in 3-2-A8/ Table 6.

The stress multiplier factor, γ_c, of the curved plate panel need not be taken less than the stress multiplier factor, γ_c for the expanded plane panel according to 5A-8-5/2.2.1.

FIGURE 10
Transverse Stiffened Bilge Plating

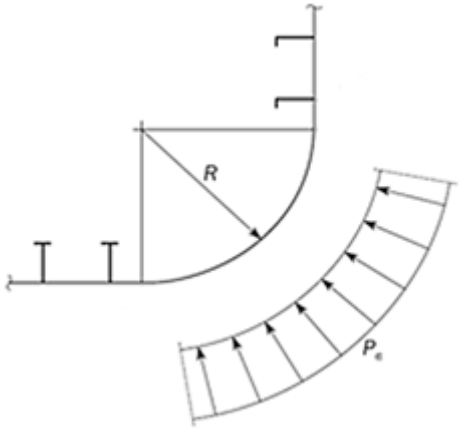
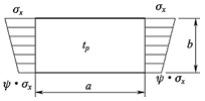
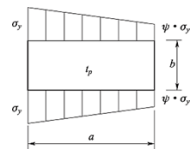
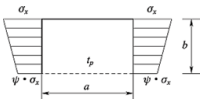
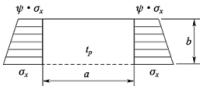
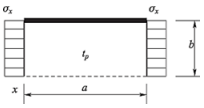
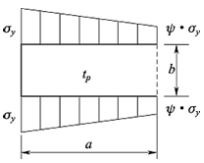
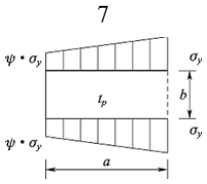
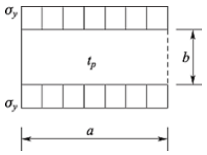
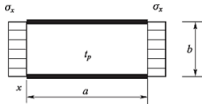
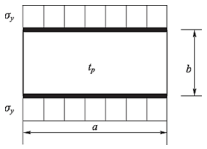
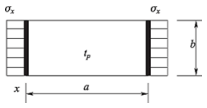
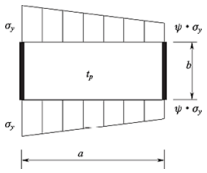
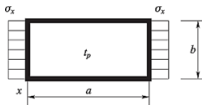


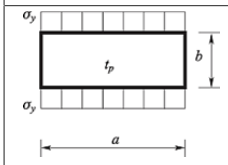
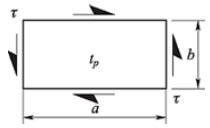
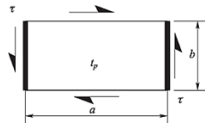
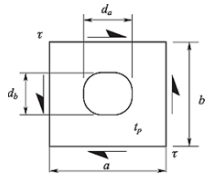
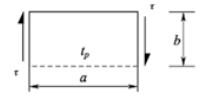
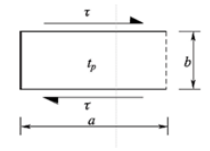
TABLE 5
Buckling Factor and Reduction Factor for Plane Plate Panels

Case	*Stress Ratio* ψ	*Aspect Ratio* α	*Buckling Factor* K	*Reduction Factor* C
1 	$1 \geq \psi \geq 0$		$K_x = F_{long}\dfrac{8.4}{\psi + 1.1}$	When $\sigma_x \leq 0, C_x = 1$ When $\sigma_x > 0$, $C_x = 1$ for $\lambda \leq \lambda_c$ $C_x = c\left(\dfrac{1}{\lambda} - \dfrac{0.22}{\lambda^2}\right)$ for $\lambda > \lambda_c$ where: $c = (1.25–0.12\psi) \leq 1.25$ $\lambda_c = \dfrac{c}{2}\left(1 + \sqrt{1 - \dfrac{0.88}{c}}\right)$
	$0 > \psi > -1$		$K_x = F_{long}[7.63–\psi(6.26–10\psi)]$	
	$\psi \leq -1$		$K_x = F_{long}[5.975(1–\psi)^2]$	
2 	$1 \geq \psi \geq 0$		$K_y = \dfrac{F_{tran} \cdot 2\left(1 + \frac{1}{\alpha^2}\right)^2}{1 + \psi + \frac{(1-\psi)}{100}\left(\frac{2.4}{\alpha^2} + 6.9 f_1\right)}$	When $\sigma_y \leq 0, C_y = 1$ When $\sigma_y > 0$, $C_y = c\left(\dfrac{1}{\lambda} - \dfrac{R + F^2(H - R)}{\lambda^2}\right)$ where $c = (1.25–0.12\psi) \leq 1.25$ $R = \lambda\left(1 - \dfrac{\lambda}{c}\right)$ for $\lambda < \lambda_c$ $R = 0.22$ for $\lambda \geq \lambda_c$
		$\alpha \leq 6$	$f_1 = (1–\psi)(\alpha–1)$	
		$\alpha > 6$	$f_1 = 0.6\left(1 - \dfrac{6\psi}{\alpha}\right)\left(\alpha + \dfrac{14}{\alpha}\right)$ but not greater than $14.5 - \dfrac{0.35}{\alpha^2}$	

Case	*Stress Ratio* ψ	*Aspect Ratio* α	*Buckling Factor* K	*Reduction Factor* C
	$1 - \frac{4a}{3} \le \psi < 0$	$K_y = \frac{200F_{tran}\left(1+\beta^2\right)^2}{\left(1-f_3\right)\left(100+2.4\beta^2+6.9f_1+23f_2\right)}$		$\lambda_c = 0.5c\left(1+\sqrt{1-\frac{0.88}{c}}\right)$ $F = \left(1-\frac{\left(\frac{K}{0.91}-1\right)}{\lambda_p^2}\right)c_1 \ge 0$ $\lambda_p^2 = \lambda^2 – 0.5$ for $1 \le \lambda_p^2 \le 3$ c_1 as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.2(c) $H = \lambda - \frac{2\lambda}{c\left(T+\sqrt{T^2-4}\right)} \ge R$ $T = \lambda + \frac{14}{15\lambda} + \frac{1}{3}$
		$\alpha > 6(1-\psi)$	$f_1 = 0.6\left(\frac{1}{\beta}+14\beta\right)$ but not greater than $14.5–0.35\beta^2$ $f_2 = f_3 = 0$	
		$3(1-\psi) \le \alpha \le 6(1-\psi)$	$f_1 = \frac{1}{\beta} - 1$ $f_2 = f_3 = 0$	
		$1.5(1-\psi) \le \alpha < 3(1-\psi)$	$f_1 = \frac{1}{\beta} - (2-\omega\beta)^4 - 9(\omega\beta-1)\left(\frac{2}{3}-\beta\right)$ $f_2 = f_3 = 0$	
		$1-\psi \le \alpha < 1.5(1-\psi)$	For $\alpha > 1.5$ $f_1 = 2\left(\frac{1}{\beta} - 16\left(1-\frac{\omega}{3}\right)^4\right)\left(\frac{1}{\beta}-1\right)$ $f_2 = 3\beta–2$ $f_3 = 0$ For $\alpha \le 1.5$ $f_1 = 2\left(\frac{1.5}{1-\psi}-1\right)\left(\frac{1}{\beta}-1\right)$ $f_2 = \frac{\psi\left(1-16f_4^2\right)}{1-\alpha}$ $f_3 = 0$ $f_4 = [1.5–Min(1.5,\alpha)]^2$	
		$0.75(1-\psi) \le \alpha < 1-\psi$	$f_1 = 0$ $f_2 = 1 + 2.31(\beta–1)–48\left(\frac{4}{3}-\beta\right)f_4^2$ $f_3 = 3f_4(\beta–1)\left(\frac{f_4}{1.81} - \frac{\alpha-1}{1.31}\right)$ $f_4 = [1.5–Min(1.5,\alpha)]^2$	

Case	Stress Ratio ψ	Aspect Ratio α	Buckling Factor K	Reduction Factor C
	$\psi < 1 - \frac{4a}{3}$		$K_y = 5.972F_{tran}\frac{\beta^2}{1-f_3}$ where $f_3 = f_5\left(\frac{f_5}{1.81} + \frac{1+3\psi}{5.24}\right)$ $f_5 = \frac{9}{16}(1+Max(-1,\psi))^2$	
3 	$1 \geq \psi \geq 0$		$K_x = \frac{4(0.425+1/\alpha^2)}{3\psi+1}$	For UP-A: $C_x = 1 \text{for} \lambda \leq 0.75$ $C_x = \frac{0.75}{\lambda} \text{for} \lambda > 0.75$ For UP-B: $C_x = 1 \text{for} \lambda \leq 0.7$ $C_x = \frac{1}{\lambda^2+0.51} \text{for} \lambda > 0.7$
	$0 > \psi \geq -1$		$K_x = 4(0.425+1/\alpha^2)(1+\psi)-5\psi(1-3.42\psi)$	
4 	$1 \geq \psi \geq -1$		$K_x = \left(0.425+\frac{1}{\alpha^2}\right)\frac{3-\psi}{2}$	
5 	—	$\alpha \geq 1.64$	$K_x = 1.28$	
		$\alpha < 1.64$	$K_x = \frac{1}{\alpha^2}+0.56+0.13\alpha^2$	
6 	$1 \geq \psi \geq 0$		$K_y = \frac{4(0.425+\alpha^2)}{(3\psi+1)\alpha^2}$	For UP-A: $C_y = 1 \text{for} \lambda \leq 0.75$ $C_y = \frac{0.75}{\lambda} \text{for} \lambda > 0.75$ For UP-B: $C_y = 1 \text{for} \lambda \leq 0.7$ $C_y = \frac{1}{\lambda^2+0.51} \text{for} \lambda > 0.7$
			$K_y = 4(0.425+\alpha^2)(1+\psi)\frac{1}{\alpha^2}-5\psi(1-3.42\psi)\frac{1}{\alpha^2}$	

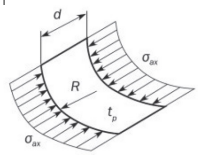
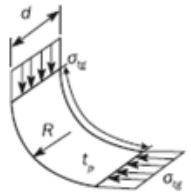
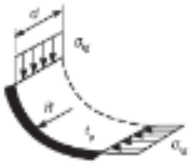
Case	Stress Ratio ψ	Aspect Ratio α	Buckling Factor K	Reduction Factor C
	$0 > \psi > -1$			
7 	$1 > \psi > -1$		$K_y = (0.425 + \alpha^2)\dfrac{(3-\psi)}{2\alpha^2}$	
8 	—		$K_y = 1 + \dfrac{0.56}{\alpha^2} + \dfrac{0.13}{\alpha^4}$	
9 	—		$K_x = 6.97$	$C_x = 1 \text{for} \lambda \le 0.83$ $C_x = 1.13\left[\dfrac{1}{\lambda} - \dfrac{0.22}{\lambda^2}\right] \text{for} \lambda > 0.83$
10 	—		$K_y = 4 + \dfrac{2.07}{\alpha^2} + \dfrac{0.67}{\alpha^2}$	$C_y = 1 \text{for} \lambda \le 0.83$ $C_y = 1.13\left[\dfrac{1}{\lambda} - \dfrac{0.22}{\lambda^2}\right] \text{for} \lambda > 0.83$
11 	—	$\alpha \ge 4$	$K_x = 4$	$C_x = 1 \text{for} \lambda \le 0.83$ $C_x = 1.13\left[\dfrac{1}{\lambda} - \dfrac{0.22}{\lambda^2}\right] \text{for} \lambda > 0.83$
		$\alpha < 4$	$K_x = 4 + 2.74\left(\dfrac{4-\alpha}{3}\right)^4$	
12 	—		$K_y = K_y$ determined as per case 2	For $\alpha < 2$ $C_y = C_{y2}$ For $\alpha \ge 2$ $C_y = \left(1.06 + \dfrac{1}{10\alpha}\right) C_{y2}$ where: C_{y2} : C_y determined as per case 2
13 	—	$\alpha \ge 4$	$K_x = 6.97$	$C_x = 1 \text{for} \lambda \le 0.83$ $C_x = 1.13\left[\dfrac{1}{\lambda} - \dfrac{0.22}{\lambda^2}\right] \text{for} \lambda > 0.83$
		$\alpha < 4$	$K_x = 6.97 + 3.1\left(\dfrac{4-\alpha}{3}\right)^4$	
14	—		$K_y = \dfrac{6.97}{\alpha^2} + \dfrac{3.1}{\alpha^2}\left(\dfrac{4-1/\alpha}{3}\right)^4$	$C_y = 1 \text{for} \lambda \le 0.83$

Case	*Stress Ratio* ψ	*Aspect Ratio* α	*Buckling Factor* K	*Reduction Factor* C
				$C_y = 1.13\left[\frac{1}{\lambda} - \frac{0.22}{\lambda^2}\right]$ for $\lambda > 0.83$
15 	—		$K_\tau = \sqrt{3}\left(5.34 + \frac{4}{\alpha^2}\right)$	$C_\tau = 1$ for $\lambda \le 0.84$ $C_\tau = \frac{0.84}{\lambda}$ for $\lambda > 0.84$
16 	—		$K_\tau = \sqrt{3}\left[5.34 + \max\left(\frac{4}{\alpha^2}, \frac{7.15}{\alpha^{2.5}}\right)\right]$	
17 	—		$K_\tau = K_{\tau case15} r$ $K_{\tau case15}$: K_τ according to case 15 r : opening reduction factor taken as $r = \left(1 - \frac{d_a}{a}\right)\left(1 - \frac{d_b}{b}\right)$ with $\frac{d_a}{a} \le 0.7$ and $\frac{d_b}{b} \le 0.7$	
18 	—		$K_\tau = \sqrt{3}\left(0.6 + \frac{4}{a^2}\right)$	$C_x = 1$ for $\lambda \le 0.84$ $C_x = \frac{0.84}{\lambda}$ for $\lambda > 0.84$
19 	—		$K_\tau = 8$	

Edge boundary conditions:
- - - - - - - - -Plate edge free.
_____ Plate edge simply supported.
━━━━━━ Plate edge clamped.

Note: Cases listed are general cases. Each stress component (σ_x, σ_y) is to be understood in local coordinates.

TABLE 6
Buckling Factor and Reduction Factor for Curved Plate Panel with $R/t_p \le 2500$

Case	*Aspect Ratio*	*Buckling Factor* K	*Reduction Factor* C
1 	$\frac{d}{R} \le 0.5\sqrt{\frac{R}{t_p}}$	$K = 1 + \frac{2}{3}\frac{d^2}{Rt_p}$	For general application: $C_{ax} = 1 \text{ for } \lambda \le 0.25$ $C_{ax} = 1.233 - 0.933\lambda \text{ for } 0.25 < \lambda \le 1$ $C_{ax} = 0.3/\lambda^3 \text{ for } 1 < \lambda \le 1.5$ $C_{ax} = 0.2/\lambda^2 \text{ for } \lambda > 1.5$ For curved single fields, e.g. bilge strake, which are bounded by plane panels as shown in 3-2-A8/Figure 10: $C_{ax} = \frac{0.65}{\lambda^2} \le 1.0$
	$\frac{d}{R} > 0.5\sqrt{\frac{R}{t_p}}$	$K = 0.267\frac{d^2}{Rt_p}\left[3 - \frac{d}{R}\sqrt{\frac{t_p}{R}}\right] \ge 0.4\frac{d^2}{Rt_p}$	
2 	$\frac{d}{R} \le 1.63\sqrt{\frac{R}{t_p}}$	$K = \frac{d}{\sqrt{Rt_p}} + 3\frac{(Rt_p)^{0.175}}{d^{0.35}}$	For general application: $C_{tg} = 1 \text{ for } \lambda \le 0.4$ $C_{tg} = 1.274 - 0.686\lambda \text{ for } 0.4 < \lambda \le 1.2$ $C_{tg} = \frac{0.65}{\lambda^2} \text{ for } \lambda > 1.2$ For curved single fields, e.g. bilge strake, which are bounded by plane panels as shown in 3-2-A8/Figure 10: $C_{tg} = \frac{0.8}{\lambda^2} \le 1.0$
	$\frac{d}{R} > 1.63\sqrt{\frac{R}{t_p}}$	$K = 0.3\frac{d^2}{R^2} + 2.25\left(\frac{R^2}{dt_p}\right)^2$	
3 	$\frac{d}{R} \le \sqrt{\frac{R}{t_p}}$	$K = \frac{0.6d}{\sqrt{Rt_p}} + \frac{\sqrt{Rt_p}}{d} - 0.3\frac{Rt_p}{d^2}$	As in load case 2.
	$\frac{d}{R} > \sqrt{\frac{R}{t_p}}$	$K = 0.3\frac{d^2}{R^2} + 0.291\left(\frac{R^2}{dt_p}\right)^2$	
4 	$\frac{d}{R} \le 8.7\sqrt{\frac{R}{t_p}}$	$K = \sqrt{3}\sqrt{28.3 + \frac{0.67d^3}{R^{1.5}t_p^{1.5}}}$	$C_\tau = 1 \text{ for } \lambda \le 0.4$ $C_\tau = 1.274 - 0.686\lambda \text{ for } 0.4 < \lambda \le 1.2$ $C_\tau = \frac{0.65}{\lambda^2} \text{ for } \lambda > 1.2$
	$\frac{d}{R} > 8.7\sqrt{\frac{R}{t_p}}$	$K = \sqrt{3}\frac{0.28d^2}{R\sqrt{Rt_p}}$	
Edge boundary conditions: - - - - - - - - -Plate edge free. _____ Plate edge simply supported. ━━━━━ Plate edge clamped.			

5.2.2(g) Applied normal and shear stresses to plate panels

The normal stress, σ_x and σ_y, in N/mm^2, to be applied for the overall stiffened panel capacity and the plate panel capacity calculations as given in 3-2-A8/5.2.1(a) and 3-2-A8/5.2.2(a) respectively, are to be taken as follows:

- For FE analysis, the reference stresses as defined in 3-2-A8/4.2.4.
- For prescriptive assessment of the overall stiffened panel capacity and the plate panel capacity, the axial or transverse compressive stresses calculated according to Relevant Sections, at load calculation points of the considered stiffener or the considered elementary plate panel, as defined

in item a) and item b) of 3-2-A8/3.1.2(a) respectively. However, in case of transverse stiffening arrangement, the transverse compressive stress used for the assessment of the overall stiffened panel capacity is to be taken as the compressive stress calculated at load calculation points of the stiffener attached plating, as defined in item a) of 3-2-A8/3.1.2(a).

- For grillage analysis where the stresses are obtained based on beam theory, the stresses taken as:

$$\sigma_x = \frac{\sigma_{xb} + v\sigma_{yb}}{1 - v^2}$$

$$\sigma_y = \frac{\sigma_{yb} + v\sigma_{xb}}{1 - v^2}$$

Where

σ_{xb}, σ_{yb} = Stress, in N/mm^2, from grillage beam analysis respectively along x or y axis of the plate attached to the PSM web.

The shear stress τ, in N/mm^2, to be applied for the overall stiffened panel capacity and the plate panel capacity calculations as given in 3-2-A8/5.2.1(a) and 3-2-A8/5.2.2(a) respectively, are to be taken as follows:

- For FE analysis, the reference shear stresses as defined in 3-2-A8/4.2.4.
- For prescriptive assessment of the plate panel capacity, the shear stresses calculated according to Relevant Sections, at load calculation points of the considered elementary plate panel, as defined in item a) of 3-2-A8/3.1.2(a).
- For prescriptive assessment of the overall stiffened panel capacity, the shear stresses calculated according to Relevant Sections, at the following load calculation point:
  - At the middle of the full span, ℓ, of the considered stiffener.
  - At the intersection point between the stiffener and its attached plating.
- For grillage beam analysis, $\tau = 0$ in the plate attached to the PSM web.

5.2.3 Stiffeners

5.2.3(a) Buckling modes

The following buckling modes are to be checked:

- Stiffener induced failure (*SI*).
- Associated plate induced failure (*PI*).

5.2.3(b) Web thickness of flat bar

For accounting the decrease of the stiffness due to local lateral deformation, the effective web thickness of flat bar stiffener, in mm, is to be used in 3-2-A8/5.2.1 and 3-2-A8/5.2.3(d) for the calculation of the net sectional area, A_s, the net section modulus, Z, and the moment of inertia, I, of the stiffener and is taken as:

$$t_{w\_red} = t_w \left(1 - \frac{2\pi^2}{3}\left(\frac{h_w}{S}\right)^2 \left(1 - \frac{b_{eff1}}{S}\right)\right)$$

5.2.3(c) Idealization of bulb profile

Bulb profiles are to be considered as equivalent angle profiles. The net dimensions of the equivalent built-up section are to be obtained, in mm, from the following formulae.

$$h_w = h_w^{'} - \frac{h_w^{'}}{9.2} + 2$$

$$b_f = \alpha \left(t_w^{'} + \frac{h_w^{'}}{6.7} - 2 \right)$$

$$t_f = \frac{h_w^{'}}{9.2} - 2$$

$$t_w = t_w^{'}$$

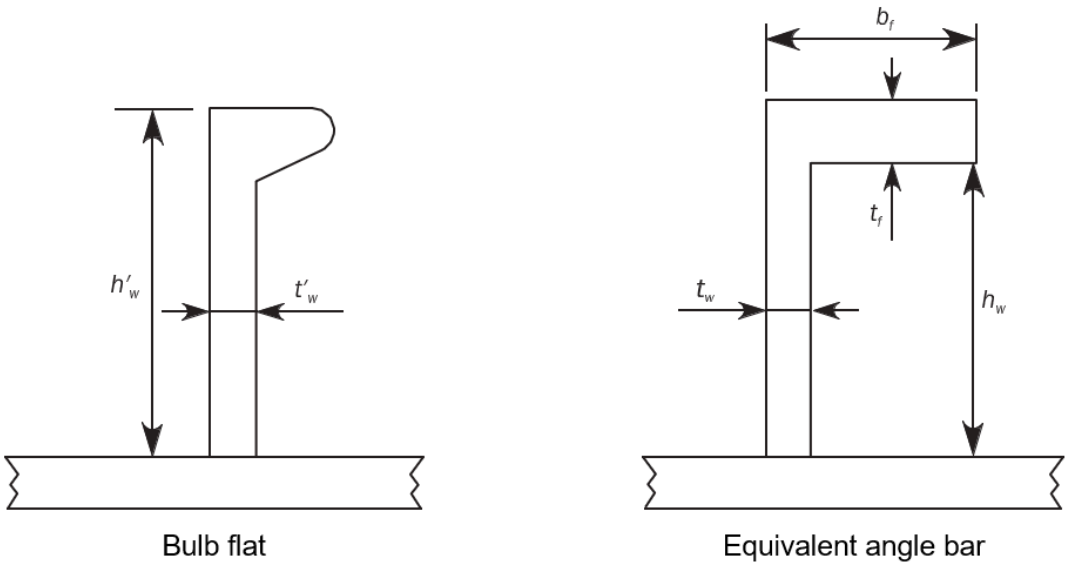
where:

$h_w^{'}, t_w^{'}$ = Net height and thickness of a bulb section, in mm, as shown in 3-2-A8/Figure 11.

α = Coefficient equal to $\alpha = 1.1 + \frac{(120 - h_w^{'})^2}{3000}$ for $h_w^{'} \le 120$

$\alpha = 1.0$ for $h_w^{'} > 120$

FIGURE 11
Idealization of Bulb Stiffener



5.2.3(d) Ultimate buckling capacity

When $\sigma_a + \sigma_b + \sigma_w > 0$ while initially setting $\gamma = 1$, the ultimate buckling capacity for stiffeners is to be checked according to the following interaction formula:

$$\frac{\gamma_c \sigma_a + \sigma_b + \sigma_w}{R_{eH}} S = 1$$

with the corresponding buckling utilization factor defined as

$$\eta_{stiffener} = \frac{1}{\gamma_c}$$

where:

σ_a = Effective axial stress, in N/mm^2, at mid span of the stiffener, acting on the stiffener with its attached plating.

$$\sigma_a = \sigma_x \frac{st_p + A_s}{b_{eff1}t_p + A_s}$$

σ_x = Nominal axial stress, in N/mm^2, acting on the stiffener with its attached plating.

- For FE analysis, σ_x is the FE corrected stress as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.3(f) in the attached plating in the direction of the stiffener axis.
- For prescriptive assessment, σ_x is the axial stress calculated according to 3-2-A8/3.2.2(a) at load calculation point of the stiffener, as defined in 3-2-A8/3.1.2(a).
- For grillage beam analysis, σ_x is the stress acting along the *x*-axis of the attached buckling panel.

R_{eH} = Specified minimum yield stress of the material, in N/mm^2:

$R_{eH} = R_{eH\_S}$ for stiffener induced failure *(SI)*.

$ReH = R_{eH\_p}$ for plate induced failure *(PI)*.

σ_b = Bending stress in the stiffener, in N/mm^2:

$$\sigma_b = \frac{M_o + M_1 + M_2}{1000Z}$$

Z = Net section modulus of stiffener, in cm^3, including effective width of plating according to 3-2-A8/5.2.3(e), to be taken as:

- The section modulus calculated at the top of stiffener flange for stiffener induced failure *(SI)*.
- The section modulus calculated at the attached plating for plate induced failure *(PI)*.

M_2 = Bending moment, in Nmm, due to eccentricity of sniped stiffeners, to be taken as:

$M_2 = 0$ for continuous stiffeners

$M_2 = C_{snip}W_{na}\gamma\sigma_x(A_p + A_s)$ for stiffeners sniped at one or both ends.

C_{snip} = Coefficient to account for the end effect of the stiffener sniped at one or both ends, to be taken as:

$C_{snip} = -1.2$ for stiffener induced failure (*SI*)

$C_{snip} = 1.2$ for plate induced failure (*PI*).

M_1 = Bending moment, in Nmm, due to the lateral load *P*:

$$M_1 = C_i \frac{|P|\, sl^2}{24 \times 10^3} \text{ for continuous stiffener}$$

$$M_1 = C_i \frac{|P|\, sl^2}{8 \times 10^3} \text{ for sniped stiffener}$$

$$M_1 = C_i \frac{|P|\, sl^2}{14.2 \times 10^3} \text{ for stiffener sniped at one end and continuous at the other end}$$

P = Lateral load, in kN/m^2.

- For FE analysis, P is the average pressure as defined in 3-2-A8/4.2.5(b) in the attached plating.
- For prescriptive assessment, P is the pressure calculated at load calculation point of the stiffener, as defined in 3-2-A8/3.1.2(a).

C_i = Pressure coefficient:

$C_i = C_{SI}$ for stiffener induced failure *(SI)*.

$C_i = C_{PI}$ for plate induced failure *(PI)*.

C_{PI} = Plate induced failure pressure coefficient:

C_{PI} = 1 if the lateral pressure is applied on the side opposite to the stiffener.

C_{PI} = -1 if the lateral pressure is applied on the same side as the stiffener.

C_{SI} = Stiffener induced failure pressure coefficient:

C_{SI} = -1 if the lateral pressure is applied on the side opposite to the stiffener.

C_{SI} = 1 if the lateral pressure is applied on the same side as the stiffener.

M_o = Bending moment, in Nmm, due to the lateral deformation w of stiffener:

$$M_o = F_E C_{sl} \frac{\gamma}{\gamma_{GEB} - \gamma} w_0 \text{with precondition} \gamma_{GEB} - \gamma > 0$$

γ_{GEB} = Stress multiplier factor of global elastic buckling capacity as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.1.

F_E = Ideal elastic buckling force of the stiffener, in N.

$$F_E = \left(\frac{\pi}{l}\right)^2 EI \cdot 10^4$$

I = Moment of inertia, in cm^4, of the stiffener including effective width of attached plating according to 3-2-A8/5.2.3(e). I is to comply with the following requirement:

$$I \geq \frac{st_p^3}{12 \cdot 10^4}$$

t_p = Net thickness of plate, in mm, to be taken as

- For prescriptive requirements: the mean thickness of the two attached plating panels,
- For FE analysis: the thickness of the considered EPP on one side of the stiffener.

C_{sl} = Deformation reduction factor to account for global slenderness, to be taken as:

$$C_{sl} = 1 - \frac{1}{12}\lambda_G^4 \quad \text{for} \quad \lambda_G \leq 1.56$$
$$C_{sl} = \frac{3}{\lambda_G^4} \quad \text{for} \quad \lambda_G > 1.56$$

λ_G = Reference degree of global slenderness of the stiffened panel, to be taken as:

$$\lambda_G = \sqrt{\frac{\gamma_{ReH}}{\gamma_{GEB}}} \text{with} \gamma_{Reh} = \frac{min\left(R_{eH\_P}, R_{eH\_s}\right)}{\sqrt{\sigma_{x,av}^2 + \sigma_y^2 - \sigma_{x,av}\sigma_y + 3\tau_{xy}^2}}$$

$\sigma_{x,av}$ = Average stress for both plate and stiffener as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.1(b).

σ_y = Applied transverse stress to the plate panel as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.1(a).

τ = Applied shear stress to the plate panel as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.1(a).

w_0 = Assumed imperfection, in mm, to be taken as:

$w_0 = l/1000$

σ_w = Stress due to torsional deformation, in N/mm^2, to be taken as:

- For stiffener induced failure (*SI*)
  - For $\sigma_a > 0$

    $\sigma_w = Ey_w e_f \Phi_0 \left(\frac{m_{tor}\pi}{l_{tor}}\right)^2 \left(\frac{1}{1 - \frac{\gamma\sigma_a}{\sigma_{ET}}} - 1\right)$ with precondition $\sigma_{ET} - \gamma\sigma_a > 0$
  - For $\sigma_a \leq 0$

    $\sigma_w = 0$
- For plate induced failure (*PI*)

  $\sigma_w = 0$

y_w = Distance, in mm, from centroid of stiffener cross section to the free edge of stiffener flange, to betaken as:

$y_w = \frac{t_w}{2}$ for flat bar.

$y_w = b_f - \frac{h_w t_w^2 + t_f b_f^2}{2A_s}$ for angle and bulb profiles

$y_w = b_{f-out} + 0.5t_w - \frac{h_w t_w^2 + t_f\left(b_f^2 - 2b_f d_f\right)}{2A_s}$ for L2 profile

$y_w = \frac{b_f}{2}$ for T profile.

Φ_0 = Coefficient taken as:

$\Phi_0 = \frac{l_{tor}}{m_{tor} h_w} 10^{-4}$

σ_{ET} = Reference stress for torsional buckling, in N/mm^2, to be taken as:

$$\sigma_{ET} = \frac{E}{I_p}\left[\left(\frac{m_{tor}\pi}{l_{tor}}\right)^2 I_w \cdot 10^2 + \frac{1}{2(1+v)} I_T + \left(\frac{l_{tor}}{m_{tor}\pi}\right)^2 \epsilon \cdot 10^{-4}\right]$$

I_P = Net polar moment of inertia of the stiffener, in cm^4, about point *C* as shown in 3-2-A8/Figure 3, as defined in 3-2-A8/Table 7.

I_T = Net St. Venant's moment of inertia of the stiffener, in cm^4, as defined in 3-2-A8/Table 7.

I_ω = Net sectorial moment of inertia of the stiffener, in cm^6, about point *C* as shown in 3-2-A8/Figure 3, as defined in 3-2-A8/Table 7.

l_{tor} = Stiffener span, distance equal to spacing between primary supporting members, i.e. $l_{tor} = l$. When the stiffener is supported by tripping brackets, l_{tor} should be taken as the maximum spacing between the adjacent primary supporting members and fitted tripping brackets.

m_{tor} = Number of half waves, taken as a positive integer so as to give smallest reference stress for torsional buckling.

ϵ = Degree of fixation, in mm^2, to be taken as:

$$\epsilon = \left(\frac{3b}{t_p^3} + \frac{2h_w}{t_w^3}\right)^{-1} \text{ for bulb, angle, L2, L3 and T profiles;}$$

$$\epsilon = \frac{t_p^3}{3b} \text{ for flat bars.}$$

A_w = Net web area, in mm^2.

A_f = Net flange area, in mm^2.

TABLE 7
Moments of inertia

	Flat bars [1]	***Bulb, angle, L2 and T profiles***
I_P	$\frac{h_w^3 t_w}{3 \cdot 10^4}$	$\left(\frac{A_w (e_f - 0.5t_f)^2}{3} + A_f e_f^2\right) 10^{-4}$
I_T	$\frac{h_w t_w^3}{3 \cdot 10^4}\left(1 - 0.63\,\frac{t_w}{h_w}\right)$	$\frac{(e_f - 0.5t_f)\,t_w^3}{3 \cdot 10^4}\left(1 - 0.63\,\frac{t_w}{e_f - 0.5t_f}\right) + \frac{b_f t_f^3}{3 \cdot 10^4}\left(1 - 0.63\,\frac{t_f}{b_f}\right)$
I_ω	$\frac{h_w^3 t_w^3}{36 \cdot 10^6}$	for bulb, angle and L2 profiles[2]: $\frac{A_f^3 + A_w^3}{36 \cdot 10^6} + \frac{e_f^2}{10^6}\left(\frac{A_f b_f^2 + A_w t_w^2}{3} - \frac{(A_f(b_f - 2d_f) + A_w t_w)^2}{4(A_f + A_w)} - A_f d_f (b_f - d_f)\right)$ for T profiles. $\frac{b_f^3 t_f e_f^2}{12 \cdot 10^6}$

(1) t_w is the net web thickness, in mm.
t_{w_red} as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.3(b) is not to be used in this table.

(2) d_f is to be taken as 0 for bulb and angle profiles.

5.2.3(e) Effective width of attached plating

The effective width of attached plating of stiffeners, b_{eff}, in mm, is to be taken as:

- For $\sigma_x > 0$:
  - For FE analysis,
    $b_{eff} = Min\,(C_x b, \chi_s s)$
  - For prescriptive assessment,
    $b_{eff} = Min\left(\frac{C_{x1} b_1 + C_{x2} b_2}{2}, \chi_s s\right)$
- For $\sigma_x \leq 0$:
  - $b_{eff} = \chi_s s$

where:

χ_s = Effective width coefficient to be taken as:

$$\chi_s = \frac{1.12}{1 + \frac{1.75}{\left(\frac{\ell_{eff}}{s}\right)^{1.6}}} \leq 1.0 \quad \text{for} \quad \frac{\ell_{eff}}{s} \geq 1$$

$$\chi_s = 0.407 \frac{\ell_{eff}}{s} \quad \text{for} \quad \frac{\ell_{eff}}{s} < 1$$

ℓ_{eff} = Effective length of the stiffener, in mm, taken as:

$\ell_{eff} = \frac{l}{\sqrt{3}}$ for stiffener fixed at both ends.

$\ell_{eff} = 0.75l$ for stiffener simply supported at one end and fixed at the other.

$\ell_{eff} = l$ for stiffener simply supported at both ends.

5.2.3(f) FE corrected stresses for stiffener capacity

When the reference stresses σ_x and σ_y obtained by FE analysis according to 3-2-A8/4.2.4 are both compressive, σ_x is to be corrected according to the following formulae:

- If $\sigma_x < \nu\sigma_y$
  $\sigma_{xcor} = 0$
- If $\sigma_x \geq \nu\sigma_y$
  $\sigma_{xcor} = \sigma_x - \nu\sigma_y$

5.2.4 Primary Supporting Members

5.2.4(a) Web plate in way of openings

The web plate of primary supporting members with openings is to be assessed for buckling based on the combined axial compressive and shear stresses.

The web plate adjacent to the opening on both sides is to be considered as individual unstiffened plate panels as shown in 3-2-A8/Table 8.

The interaction formulae of 3-2-A8/5.2.2(a) are to be used with:

$\sigma_x = \sigma_{av}$

$\sigma_y = 0$

$\tau = \tau_{av}$

where:

σ_{av} = Weighted average compressive stress, in N/mm^2, in the area of web plate being considered, i.e. *P1, P2* or *P3* as shown in 3-2-A8/Table 8.

For the application of the Table 8, the weighted average shear stress is to be taken as:

- Opening modelled in primary supporting members:

τ_{av} = Weighted average shear stress, in N/mm^2, in the area of web plate being considered, i.e. P1, P2, or P3 as shown in 3-2-A8/Table 8.

- Opening not modelled in primary supporting members:

τ_{av} = Weighted average shear stress, in N/mm^2, given in 3-2-A8/Table 8.

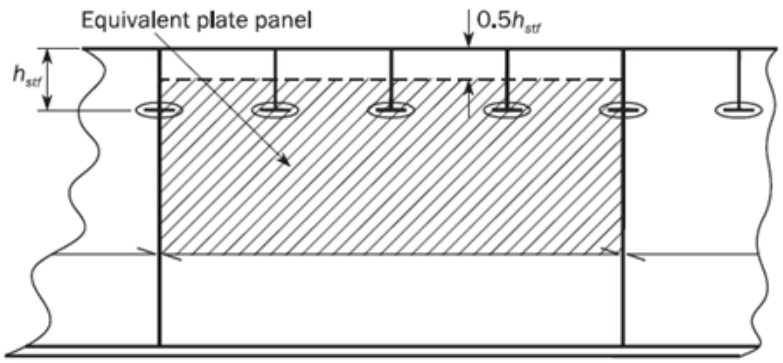
5.2.4(b) Reduction factors of web plate in way of openings

The reduction factors, C_x or C_y in combination with, C_τ of the plate panel(s) of the web adjacent to the opening is to be taken as shown in 3-2-A8/Table 8.

5.2.4(c)

The equivalent plate panel of web plate of primary supporting members crossed by perpendicular stiffeners is to be idealized as shown in 3-2-A8/Figure 12.

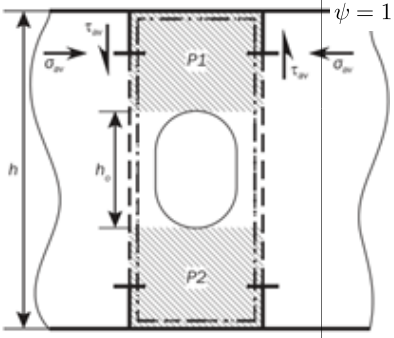
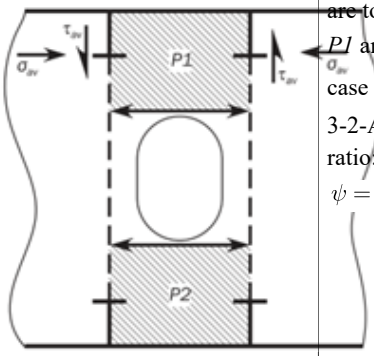
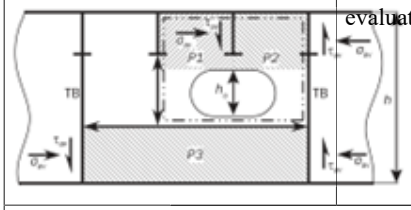
FIGURE 12
Web Plate Idealization



The correction of panel breadth is applicable also for other slot configurations provided that the web or collar plate is attached to at least one side of the passing stiffener.

TABLE 8
Reduction Factors

Configuration[1]	C_x, C_y	C_τ	
		Opening modelled in PSM	***Opening not modelled in PSM***
(a) Without edge reinforcements:[2]	Separate reduction factors are to be applied to areas *P1* and *P2* using case 3 or case 6 in 3-2-A8/Table 5, with edge stress ratio:	Separate reduction factors are to be applied to areas *P1* and *P2* using case 18	When case 17 of 3-2-A8/Table 5 is applicable: A common reduction factor is to be applied to areas *P1*

Configuration[1]	C_x, C_y	C_τ	
		Opening modelled in PSM	***Opening not modelled in PSM***
	$\psi = 1.0$	or case 19 in 3-2-A8/Table 5.	and *P2* using case 17 in 3-2-A8/Table 5 with: $\tau_{av} = \tau_{av}(web)$ When case 17 of 3-2-A8/Table 5 is not applicable: Separate reduction factors are to be applied to areas *P1* and *P2* using case 18 or case 19 in 3-2-A8/Table 5 with: $\tau_{av} = \tau_{av}(web)\, h/(h - h_0)$
(b) With edge reinforcements: 	Separate reduction factors are to be applied for areas *P1* and *P2* using C_x for case 1 or C_y for case 2 in 3-2-A8/Table 5 with stress ratio: $\psi = 1.0$	Separate reduction factors are to be applied for areas *P1* and *P2* using case 15 in 3-2-A8/Table 5.	Separate reduction factors are to be applied to areas *P1* and *P2* using case 15 in 3-2-A8/Table 5 with: $\tau_{av} = \tau_{av}(web)\, h/(h - h_0)$
(c) Example of hole in web: 	Panels *P1* and *P2* are to be evaluated in accordance with (a). Panel *P3* is to be evaluated in accordance with (b).		

Where:

h	Height, in m, of the web of the primary supporting member in way of the opening.
h_0	Height in m, of the opening measured in the depth of the web.
$\tau_{av}(web)$	Weighted average shear stress, in N/mm^2, over the web height h of the primary supporting member.

Notes:

1 Web panels to be considered for buckling in way of openings are shown shaded and numbered P1, P2, etc.

2 For a PSM web panel with opening and without edge reinforcements as shown in configuration (a), the applicable buckling assessment method depends on its specific boundary conditions. If one of the long edges along the face plate or along the attached plating is not subject to "inline support", i.e. the edge is free to pull in, Method B should be applied. In other cases, typically such as when the short plate edge is attached to the plate flanges, Method A is applicable.

5.2.5 Stiffened Panels with U-type Stiffeners

5.2.5(a) Local plate buckling

For stiffened panels with U-type stiffeners, local plate buckling is to be checked for each of the plate panels EPP b_1, b_2, b_f and h_w (see 3-2-A8/Figure 4) separately as follows:

- The attached plate panels EPP b_1 and b_2 are to be assessed using SP-A model, where in the calculation of buckling factors K_x as defined in Case 1 of Table 5, the correction factor F_{long} for U-type stiffeners as defined in 3-2-A8/Table 4 is to be used; and in the calculation of K_y as defined in Case 2 of 3-2-A8/Table 5, the F_{tran} for U-type stiffeners as defined in 3-2-A8/5.2.2.5] is to be used.
- The face plate and web plate panels b_f and h_w are to be assessed using UP-B model with $F_{long} = 1$ and $F_{tran} = 1$.

5.2.5(b) Overall stiffened panel buckling and stiffener buckling

For a stiffened panel with U-type stiffeners, the overall buckling capacity and ultimate capacity of the stiffeners are to be checked with warping stress $\sigma_w = 0$, and with bending moment of inertia including effective width of attached plating being calculated based on the following assumptions:

- The two web panels of a U-type stiffener are to be taken as perpendicular to the attached plate with thickness equal to t_w and height equal to the distance between the attached plate and the face plate of the stiffener.
- Effective width of the attached plating, b_{eff}, taken as the sum of the b_{eff} calculated for the EPP b_1 and b_2 respectively according to SP-A model.
- Effective width of the attached plating of a stiffener without shear lag effect, b_{eff1}, taken as the sum of the b_{eff1} calculated for the EPP b_1 and b_2 respectively.

5.3 Buckling Capacity of Column Structures

5.3.1 Column Buckling of Corrugations

5.3.1(a) Buckling utilization factor

The column buckling utilization factor, η, for axially compressed corrugations is to be taken as:

$$\eta_{column} = \frac{\sigma_{av}}{\sigma_{cr}}$$

where:

σ_{av} = Average axial compressive stress in the member, in N/mm^2.

= Minimum critical buckling stress, in N/mm^2, taken as:

- $\sigma_{cr} = \sigma_E \text{for} \sigma_E \leq 0.5 R_{eH\_S}$
- $\sigma_{cr} = \left(1 - \frac{R_{eH\_S}}{4\sigma_E}\right) R_{eH\_S} \text{for} \sigma_E > 0.5 R_{eH\_S}$

σ_E = Elastic column compressive buckling stress, in N/mm^2, according to 3-2-A8/5.3.1(b).

R_{eH_S} = Specified minimum yield stress of the considered member, in N/mm^2. For built-up members, the lowest specified minimum yield stress is to be used.

5.3.1(b) Elastic column buckling stress

The elastic compressive column buckling stress, σ_E in N/mm^2 of members subject to axial compression is to be taken as:

$$\sigma_E = \pi^2 E f_{end} \frac{I}{A l_{pill}^2} 10^{-4}$$

where:

I = Net moment of inertia about the weakest axis of the cross section, in cm^4.

A = Net cross sectional area of the member, in cm^2.

l_{pill} = Unsupported length of the member, in m.

f_{end} = End constraint factor, corresponding to simply supported ends is to be applied except for fixed end support to be used in way of stool with width exceeding 2 times the depth of the corrugation, taken as:

- f_{end} = 1.0 where both ends are simply supported.
- f_{end} = 2.0 where one end is simply supported and the other end is fixed.
- f_{end} = 4.0 where both ends are fixed.

6 Stress Based Reference Stresses

SYMBOLS

a Length, in mm, of the longer side of the plate panel as defined in 3-2-A8/5.

b Length, in mm, of the shorter side of the plate panel as defined in 3-2-A8/5.

A_i Area, in mm^2, of the *i*-th plate element of the buckling panel.

n Number of plate elements in the buckling panel.

σ_{xi} Actual stress, in N/mm^2, at the centroid of the *i*-th plate element in x direction, applied along the shorter edge of the buckling panel.

σ_{yi} Actual stress, in N/mm^2, at the centroid of the *i*-th plate element in y direction, applied along the longer edge of the buckling panel.

ψ Edge stress ratio as defined in 3-2-A8/5.

τ_i Actual membrane shear stress, in N/mm^2, at the centroid of the *i*-th plate element of the buckling panel.

6.1 Stress Based Method

6.1.1 Introduction

6.1.1(a)

This section provides a method to determine stress distribution along edges of the considered buckling panel by second-order polynomial curve, by linear distribution using least square method and by weighted average approach. This method is called Stress based Method. The reference stress

is the stress components at centre of plate element transferred into the local system of the considered buckling panel.

6.1.1(b) Definition

A regular panel is a plate panel of rectangular shape. An irregular panel is plate panel which is not regular, as detailed in 3-2-A8/4.2.3(a).

6.1.2 Stress Application

6.1.2(a) Regular panel

The reference stresses are to be taken as defined in 3-2-A8/6.2.1 for a regular panel when the following conditions are satisfied:

- At least, one plate element centre is located in each third part of the long edge a of a regular panel and
- This element centre is located at a distance in the panel local x direction not less than $a/4$ to at least one of the element centres in the adjacent third part of the panel.

Otherwise, the reference stresses are to be taken as defined in 3-2-A8/6.2.2 for an irregular panel.

6.1.2(b) Irregular panel and curved panel

The reference stresses of an irregular panel or of a curved panel are to be taken as defined in 3-2-A8/6.2.2.

6.2 Reference Stresses

6.2.1 Regular Panel

6.2.1(a) Longitudinal stress

The longitudinal stress σ_x applied on the shorter edge of the buckling panel is to be calculated as follows:

- For plate buckling assessment, the distribution of $\sigma_x(x)$ is assumed as second order polynomial curve as:

  $\sigma_x(x) = C \cdot x^2 + Dx + E$

  The best fitting curve $\sigma_x(x)$ is to be obtained by minimizing the square error $\prod$ considering the area of each element as a weighting factor.

  $$\prod = \sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i \left[\sigma_{ix} - (Cx_i^2 + Dx_i + E)\right]^2$$

  The unknown coefficients *C, D* and *E* must yield zero first derivatives, $\partial\prod$ with respect to *C*, *D* and *E* respectively.

  $$\begin{cases} \dfrac{\partial \prod}{\partial C} = 2\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i x_i^2 \left[\sigma_{xi} - (Cx_i^2 + Dx_i + E)\right] = 0 \\ \dfrac{\partial \prod}{\partial D} = 2\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i x_i \left[\sigma_{xi} - (Cx_i^2 + Dx_i + E)\right] = 0 \\ \dfrac{\partial \prod}{\partial E} = 2\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i \left[\sigma_{xi} - (Cx_i^2 + Dx_i + E)\right] = 0 \end{cases}$$

  The unknown coefficients *C, D* and *E* can be obtained by solving the 3 above equations.

  $$\sigma_{x1} = \frac{1}{b}\int_0^b \sigma_x(x)dx = \frac{b^2}{3}C + \frac{b}{2}D + E$$

  $$\sigma_{x2} = \frac{1}{b}\int_{a-b}^{a} \sigma_x(x)dx = \left(a^2 - ab + \frac{b^2}{3}\right)C + \left(a - \frac{b}{2}\right)D + E$$

If $-\frac{D}{2C} < \frac{b}{2}$ or $-\frac{D}{2C} > a - \frac{b}{2}$, σ_{x3} is to be ignored. Otherwise, σ_{x3} is taken as:

$$\sigma_{x3} = \frac{1}{b}\int_{x_{min}}^{x_{max}} \sigma_x(x)dx = \frac{b^2}{12}C - \frac{D^2}{4C} + E$$

where:

$$x_{min} = -\frac{b}{2} - \frac{D}{2C}\, x_{max} = \frac{b}{2} - \frac{D}{2C}$$

The longitudinal stress is to be taken as:

$$\sigma_x = Max(\sigma_{x1}, \sigma_{x2}, \sigma_{x3})$$

The edge stress ratio is to be taken as:

$$\psi_x = 1$$

- For overall stiffened panel buckling and stiffener buckling assessments, $\sigma_x(x)$ applied on the shorter edge of the attached plate is to be taken as:

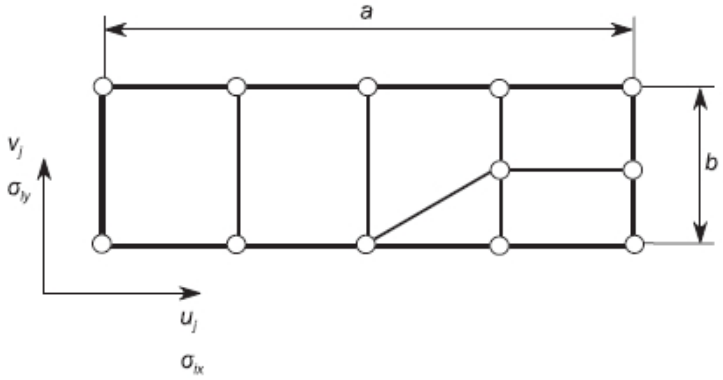
  $$\sigma_x = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i\sigma_{xi}}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i}$$

  The edge stress ratio ψ_x for the stress σ_x is equal to 1.0.

6.2.1(b) Transverse stress

The transverse stress σ_y applied along the longer edges of the buckling panel is to be calculated by extrapolation of the transverse stresses of all elements up to the shorter edges of the considered buckling panel.

FIGURE 13
Buckling Panel



The distribution of $\sigma_y(x)$ is assumed as straight line. Therefore: $\sigma_y(x) = A + Bx$

The best fitting curve $\sigma_y(x)$ is to be obtained by the least square method minimizing the square error Π considering area of each element as a weighting factor.

$$\Pi = \sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i \left[\sigma_{yi} - (A + Bx_i)\right]^2$$

The unknown coefficients C and D must yield zero first partial derivatives, $\partial\Pi$ with respect to C and D, respectively.

$$\frac{\partial\Pi}{\partial A} = 2\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i[\sigma_{yi} - (A + Bx_i)] = 0$$

$$\frac{\partial \Pi}{\partial B} = 2\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i x_i [\sigma_{yi} - (A + Bx_i)] = 0$$

The unknown coefficients A and *B* are obtained by solving the 2 above equations and are given as follow:

$$A = \frac{\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i \sigma_{yi}\right)\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i x_i^2\right) - \left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i x_i\right)\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i x_i \sigma_{yi}\right)}{\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i\right)\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i x_i^2\right) - \left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i x_i\right)^2}$$

$$B = \frac{\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i\right)\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i x_i \sigma_{yi}\right) - \left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i x_i\right)\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i \sigma_{yi}\right)}{\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i\right)\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i x_i^2\right) - \left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i x_i\right)^2}$$

The transverse stress is to be taken as:

$$\sigma_y = max(A, A + Ba)$$

The edge stress ratio is to be taken as:

$$\psi_y = \frac{min(A, A + Ba}{max(A, A + Ba)} \text{ for} \sigma_y \geq 0$$

$$\psi_y = 1 \text{for} \sigma_y < 0$$

6.2.1(c) Shear stress

The shear stress τ is to be calculated using a weighted average approach, and is to be taken as:

$$\tau = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i \tau_i}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i}$$

6.2.2 Irregular Panel and Curved Panel

6.2.2(a) Reference stresses

The longitudinal, transverse and shear stresses are to be calculated using a weighted average approach. They are to be taken as:

$$\sigma_x = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i \sigma_{xi}}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i}$$

$$\sigma_y = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i \sigma_{yi}}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i}$$

$$\tau = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i \tau_i}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i}$$

The edge stress ratios are to be taken as:

$$\psi_x = 1$$

$$\psi_y = 1$$

PART 3

CHAPTER 3

Subdivision and Stability

CONTENTS

SECTION 1 General Requirements....585

1 General....585
1.1 Objective....585
2 Application Scope....586
3 Review Procedures....586
3.1 Submission of Plans....586
3.3 Administration Review....587
3.5 ABS Review....587
5 Criteria....588
5.1 Intact Stability....588
5.3 Subdivision and Damage Stability....589
5.5 Carriage of Hazardous and Noxious Liquid Substances....590
5.7 Intact Stability for Anchor Handling/Towing Vessels....590
5.9 Intact Stability for Vessels Equipped with Lifting Appliances....590
7 Lightship Determination....590
7.1 590
7.3 591
7.5 592
7.7 592
7.9 592
7.11 Vessels Undergoing Modifications....592
9 Free Surface....593
9.1 593
9.3 593
9.5 593
11 Standard Loading Conditions....594
13 Trim and Stability Booklet....594
13.1 594
13.3 595
13.5 595

13.7 595
15 Damage Control Information 596
15.1 596
15.3 Damage Control Plan 596
15.5 Damage Control Booklet..... 598
17 Onboard Computers for Stability Calculations 598
19 Loading and Stability Computer Software..... 599
19.1 Application..... 599
19.3 Definitions..... 599
19.5 LSC Notation..... 599
19.7 LSC(DC) Notation..... 599

TABLE 1 Vessel Intact Stability Criteria – Application Scope..... 588
TABLE 2 Vessel Subdivision and Damage Stability Criteria – Application Scope..... 589

FIGURE 1 Inclining Measuring Devices..... 591
FIGURE 2 597

APPENDIX 1 Intact Stability of Tankers During Liquid Transfer Operations.... 601
1 601
1.1 Note..... 601
1.3 Application 601
3 Goal..... 601
3.1 Intact Stability Criteria..... 601
3.3 Compliance..... 602
3 <No Text>..... 603
5 <No Text>..... 603
7 <No Text>..... 603
9 <No Text>..... 603

APPENDIX 2 Intact Stability Requirements for Offshore Support Vessels..... 604
1 General..... 604
1.1 Objective..... 604
1.2 Righting Arm Curve for each Loading Condition..... 605
3 Criteria..... 605
3.1 General Criteria..... 605
3.3 Severe Wind and Rolling Criterion..... 605
3.5 Alternative Criteria for **Offshore**Support Vessels 605
5 Standard Loading Conditions..... 605
7 Carriage of Pipe as Deck Cargo 606
9 Icing..... 606
11 Special Purpose Offshore Support Vessels 607
13 Additional Criteria for Anchor Handling Vessels..... 607
13.1 Intact Stability..... 607

13.3 Loading Conditions....607
13.5 Stability Guidance for the Master....608
15 Additional Criteria for Towing Vessels....608
15.1 Intact Stability....608
15.3 Towing Operations....608
15.5 Heeling Arm Curve....609
15.7 Stability Guidance for the Master....610
17 Additional Criteria for Vessels Engaged in Lifting Operations....610

TABLE 1 Towline Pull Force....609

FIGURE 1 Righting Arm and Heeling Arm Curves....609
FIGURE 2 Heeling Moment by Towline Pull Force....610

APPENDIX 3 Intact Stability Requirements for Fishing Vessels....612
1 Objective....612
1.1 Goal....612
1.2 Functional Requirements....612
1.3 Compliance....613
2 Intact Stability....613
3 Criteria....613
3.1 General....613
3.3 Alternate Criteria....614
5 Severe Wind and Rolling Criteria....615
5.1 General....615
7 Treatment of Lifting Weights and Heeling Moments Due to Fishing Gear....620
7.1 General....620
7.3 Definitions....620
7.5 Heeling Moment Due to Onboard Crane Use....621
7.7 Heeling Moment Due to Fishing Gear....623
9 Standard Loading Conditions....625
9.1 Loading Conditions....625
9.3 Load Considerations....625
11 Design and Operating Factors Affecting Stability....626
11.1 Calculation of Righting Arms....626
11.3 Ballast....626
11.5 Watertight Integrity and Flooding....626
11.7 Icing....627
11.9 Water on Deck....628
13 Stability Guidance for the Master....630
13.1 630
13.3 630

TABLE 1 Values of factor X_1....618

TABLE 2 Values of factor X_2 619
TABLE 3 Values of factor k 619
TABLE 4 Values of factor *s*....619
TABLE 5 Values of C_h 622

FIGURE 1 Intact Stability Criteria for Fishing Vessels.... 614
FIGURE 2 Severe Wind and Rolling Criteria.... 618
FIGURE 3 Crane Radius 621
FIGURE 4 Lifting Criteria 623
FIGURE 5 Calculating the Effect of a Fastened Trawl....624
FIGURE 6 Diagram of Key Watertight Closures.... 627
FIGURE 7 Method of Treatment of Water on Deck.... 629
FIGURE 8 Volume of Water to be Included in Calculating Effect of Water on Deck....630

APPENDIX 4 Subdivision and Damage Stability Requirements for Bulk Carriers....631

1 Objective....631
1.1 Goals....631
1.2 **Functional Requirements** 631
1.3 **Compliance** 631
2 General 632
2.1 Note.... 632
2.3 Applicability 632
3 Damage Stability Criteria 633
5 Bulk Carriers with a Reduced Freeboard 633

TABLE 1 Bulk Carriers 150 m (492 ft) in Length (L_f) and above to Carry Solid Bulk Cargoes 632

APPENDIX 5 Damage Stability Requirements for Offshore Supply Vessels.... 634

1 **Objective** 634
1.1 **Goals** 634
1.2 **Functional Requirements** 634
1.3 **Compliance** 634
2 General.... 635
3 Damage Assumptions **for OSV of less than 100 Meters**..... 635
3.1 635
3.3 635
3.5 635
3.7 635
3.9 636
3.11 636
3.13 636
5 Criteria.... 636

5.1 OSV – General....636
5.3 OSV – Special Purpose....637
7 Permeability....638
9 Free Surface....638
11 Subdivision....638

APPENDIX 6 Damage Stability Requirements for Fishing Vessels....640
1 Objective....640
1.1 Goals....640
1.2 **Functional Requirements**....640
1.3 **Compliance**....640
2 Applicability....641
3 General....641
5 Damage Assumptions....641
5.1 641
5.3 641
5.5 641
5.7 641
5.9 641
5.11 642
7 Criteria....642
9 Permeability....642
11 Free Surface....643
13 Subdivision....643

APPENDIX 7 Computer Software for Onboard Stability Calculations....644
1 General....644
1.1 644
1.3 Design....645
3 Calculation Systems....645
5 Types of Stability Software....645
7 Functional Requirements....646
7.1 Calculation Program....646
7.3 Direct Damage Stability Calculations....646
7.5 Warning....646
7.7 Data Printout....646
7.9 Date and Time....646
7.11 Information of Program....646
7.13 Units....646
7.15 Computer Model....647
7.17 Further Requirements for Type 4 Stability Software....647
9 Acceptable Tolerances....649
9.1 Calculation Program of the Approved Stability Information....650
9.3 Independent Program for Assessment of Stability....650

11 Approval Procedure....651
11.1 Conditions of approval of the onboard software for stability calculations 651
11.3 General Approval (optional)....651
11.5 Specific Approval 652
13 Operation Manual....653
15 Installation Testing....653
17 Periodical Testing....653
19 Other Requirements....653

TABLE 1 Acceptable Tolerances 650

PART 3

CHAPTER 3
Subdivision and Stability

SECTION 1
General Requirements

1 General *(2024)*

Part 3, Chapter 3, Section 1 (referred to as Section 3-3-1) covers provisions for general requirements of subdivision and stability.

1.1 Objective

1.1.1 Goals

The vessel is to be designed, constructed, operated, and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goals*
STAB 1	have adequate watertight integrity and restoring energy to prevent capsize in an intact condition.
STAB 2	have adequate subvision and stability to provide survivability to damage or accidental conditions.
STAB 6	provide means to control the overall vessel weight and distribution to maintain adequate trim and stability.
MGMT 3	*establish procedures, plans and instructions for operations concerning the safety of the personnel, vessel, and protetion of the environment* (ISM Code 7)
MGMT 4	*establish procedures, plans and instructions* for emergency situations *concerning the safety of the personnel, vessel, and protection of the environment.* (ISM Code 7*)*
PROP 6	be provided with means to enable the safe conduct of all towing, mooring, and anchoring operations. (SOLAS II-1 Reg 3-8.2)

1.1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above-stated goals, the design, construction, and maintenance of subdivision and stability is to be in accordance with the following functional requirements, as applicable:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Stabilty (STAB)	
STAB-FR1	Provide adequate watertight integrity and restoring energy (intact stability) to prevent capsize in all loading conditions and foreseeable operating conditions including severe weather, icing, dead ship, rolling resonance, and water trapped on deck.
STAB-FR2 (PROP)	Have sufficient intact stability to carry out anchor handling/towing operations.
STAB-FR3	Have sufficient intact stability to carry out lifting operations.
STAB-FR4	Have sufficient intact stability to account for the effect of free surfaces of liquids in tanks.
STAB-FR5	Remain afloat and stable when damage to the hull causes subsequent loss of watertight integrity.
STAB-FR6	Provide the means to control the overall weight and distribution to maintain adequate trim and stability.
STAB-FR7	Accurately calculate lightship characteristics and monitor changes to buoyancy and weight throughout the vessel's operating life.
Safety Management (MGMT)	
MGMT-FR1 (STAB)	Provide information to enable the master by rapid and simple processes to obtain accurate guidance as to the stability and applicable intact and damage stability requirements of the ship under varying conditions of service.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

2 Application Scope *(2025)*

i) Vessels of characteristics within the scope of [TABLE 1] are to meet the stability and subdivision criteria specified in the following sections, as applicable.

ii) In case the criteria listed in this Section are not applicable to a particular vessel, the intact and damage stability are to be reviewed by ABS in accordance with other recognized criteria appropriate to the vessel's type, size and intended service.

iii) Vessels that are configured as mobile offshore units are to comply with the subdivision and stability requirements of the ABS *Rules for Building and Classing Offshore Units (Offshore Rules)*.

iv) In the situation where the stability review is conducted and found satisfactory by the flag State Administration, the stability information and calculations specified in the following sections need not be submitted.

v) Attained subdivision index "A" calculated by ABS in accordance with Regulation II-1/7 of SOLAS 1974 as amended is to be indicated in the *Record*.

3 Review Procedures *(1 July 2020)*

3.1 Submission of Plans *(2024)*

The following subdivision and stability drawings and documents, as applicable, are to be submitted for ABS review:

i) Trim and Stability Booklet or simplified guidance for Master

ii) General arrangement plan, with outboard profile

iii) Capacity plan or table with centers of gravity and free surface values for tanks and holds

iv) Lines plan

v) Tank Sounding Tables, if not included in the Trim and Stability Booklet.

vi) Cross curves of stability, if not included in the Trim and Stability Booklet.

vii) List of down-flooding points, including their transverse, longitudinal and vertical locations, used in the calculation of the intact and damage stability criteria.

viii) Draft Marks. Drawing showing the draft mark details, longitudinal locations of marks fore and aft referenced to the forward and after perpendiculars or to the nearest frames and vertical reference points. Navigational draft marks should be based on the vessel's lowest vertical projection.

ix) Intact and damage (if required) stability calculations supporting the max. KG or min. GM curve

x) Stability Test Procedure

xi) Stability Test Results

xii) Hydrostatic table, if not included in the Trim and Stability Booklet

xiii) Damage control plan and damage control booklet for vessels where damage stability is required

3.3 Administration Review

3.3.1

Where the vessel is issued a certificate by the flag Administration or its agent other than ABS, such Certificate may be accepted as evidence that the vessel has subdivision and stability in accordance with the criteria in the respective Convention. Examples of these certificates are listed below:

- SOLAS Cargo Ship Safety Construction Certificate
- International Certificate of Fitness for the Carriage of Liquefied Gases in Bulk
- International Certificate of Fitness for the Carriage of Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk
- International Load Line Certificate
- International Oil Pollution Prevention Certificate
- Passenger Ship Safety Certificate
- Cargo Ship Safety Construction Certificate

3.3.2

Where the Administration undertakes the review of subdivision and stability and ABS is issuing one or more of the above Certificates, the acceptance of subdivision and stability by the Administration is required before the certificate is issued.

3.5 ABS Review

In all other cases, the information and calculations for subdivision and stability are to be submitted to ABS for review.

5 Criteria

5.1 Intact Stability *(2024)*

Vessels of applicable size, type and service are to comply with the intact stability criteria as indicated in 3-3-1/Table 1.

The requirements of this section are appliable to new construction vessels based on the keel lay date.

For vessels undergoing modifications, the stability criteria applicable at time of construction or major modification may be applied. The latest stability criteria are applicable if the hydrostatic properties or internal subdivision have been modified.

Vessels under 24 m (79 ft) in length are to meet intact stability requirements of a recognized standard.

TABLE 1
Vessel Intact Stability Criteria – Application Scope
(2024)

Vessel Type, Size, & Characters	*Applicable Intact Stability Requirement*
All Vessels of applicable size, type and service	Regulation 10 of the International Convention on Load Lines (ICLL), intact stability guidance IMO Code on Intact Stability 2008, Part A, as applicable
Cargo Vessels [1]	IMO Code on Intact Stability 2008, Part A, as applicable
Tankers	Regulation 27 in Annex I of the International Convention for Prevention of Pollution from Ships, 1973/1978, as amended.
Offshore Support Vessels [1] • General requirements • Anchor handling vessels • Towing Vessels • Heavy lifting vessels	ABS Rules, Appendix 3-3-A2 • 3-3-A2/11 • Additional requirements in 3-3-A2/13 • Additional requirements in 3-3-A2/15 • Additional requirements in 3-3-A2/17
Fishing Vessels under 90 Meters (295 Feet)	IMO Code on Intact Stability 2008, Part B, Section 2.1.3.1 (see Appendix 3-3-A3)

Note:

1 Cargo vessels of 24 m (79 ft) in length and over with or without deck cargo

Commentary:

- For more information, see IACS Rec. 60 for "Intact stability of tankers during liquid transfer operations".
- For more information, see IACS UI MPC 11 for "Interpretation to MARPOL I/27".
- Cargo vessel is any vessel which is not a passenger vessel, a vessel of war and troopship, a vessel which is not propelled by mechanical means, a wooden vessel of primitive build, a fishing vessel or a mobile offshore drilling unit (IMO Code on Intact Stability 2008)
- For tankers that are not subject to MARPOL Convention Annex I Regulation 27, see ABS Rules, Appendix 3-3-A1.

End of Commentary

5.3 Subdivision and Damage Stability *(2024)*

Vessels of applicable size, type and service are to comply with the subdivision and damage stability criteria as indicated in 3-3-1/Table 2:

TABLE 2
Vessel Subdivision and Damage Stability Criteria – Application Scope
(2024)

Vessel Type, Size, & Characters	*Applicable Damage Stability Requirement*
Passenger Vessels[1,2]	SOLAS Regulation II-1 Parts B, B-1, and B-2, as amended (ABS Rules Section 5C-7-3)
Cargo Vessels[1]	SOLAS Regulation II-1 Parts B, B-1, and B-2, as amended
Oil Tankers[1]	Regulation 28 in Annex I to MARPOL 73/78, as amended Regulation 27 of the International Convention on Loadlines for vessels with freeboard of type A and over 150 m in length
Gas Carriers[1]	IGC Code (ABS Rules Section [5C-8-2]) Regulation 27 of the International Convention on Loadlines for vessels with freeboard of type A and over 150 m in length
Chemical Carriers[1]	IBC Code (ABS Rules Section [5C-9-2]) Regulation 27 of the International Convention on Loadlines for vessels with freeboard of type A and over 150 m in length
Bulk Carriers [1]	ABS Rules, Appendix 3-3-A4 Regulation 27 of the International Convention on Loadlines for vessels with assigned freeboard less than type B and over 100 m in length SOLAS Regulation II-1 Parts B, B-1,and B-2, as amended for vessels with the assigned freeboard not less than Type B
Offshore Support Vessels [1,3]	***i)*** Less than 100M in length - IMO Guidelines for the Design and Construction of Offshore Supply Vessels 2008, as amended ***ii)*** Greater than 100M in length - SOLAS Chapter II-1, Parts B, B-1, and B-2, as amended
All other Offshore Supply Vessels – General • Special purpose ships [4]	ABS Rules, Appendix 3-3-A5 • 3-3-A5/5.3
Fishing Vessels	ABS Rules, Appendix 3-3-A6 “Damage Stability Requirements for Fishing Vessels”

Notes:

1 Vessels of applicable size, type and service are to have subdivision and damage stability as required by the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS), 1974, as amended.

2 Definition of Passenger vessels, refer to Section 5C-1-1,

3 Offshore Support Vessel of 80 m (262 ft) or more in subdivision length

4 Special purpose offshore supply vessels in carrying more than twelve special personnel or for special purpose

Commentary:

- The requirements of 3-3-1/5.3 are based on the regulation 4, Part B, Chapter II-1 of SOLAS.
- For more information, see Resolution MSC.429(98)/Rev.1/2 for the Explanatory Notes to the SOLAS Chapter II-1 subdivision and Damage Stability Regulations.
- For more information, see MSC. /Circ.1461 "Guidelines for Verification of Damage Stability Requirements for Tankers".
- For more information, see IACS Rec.110 "Guidelines for Scope of Damage Stability Verification on new oil tankers, chemical tankers and gas carriers".
- Cargo vessel is any vessel which is not a passenger vessel, a vessel of war and troopship, a vessel which is not propelled by mechanical means, a wooden vessel of primitive build, a fishing vessel or a mobile offshore drilling unit (IMO Code on Intact Stability 2008)

End of Commentary

5.5 Carriage of Hazardous and Noxious Liquid Substances

Where it is intended to carry limited amounts (the lesser of 800 m^3 or a volume in cubic meters equal to 40% of the vessel's deadweight calculated at a cargo density of 1.0) of hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk on offshore support vessels, the arrangement is to comply with IMO Resolution A.673 (16), "Guidelines for the Transport and Handling of Limited Amounts of Hazardous and Noxious Liquid Substances in Bulk in Offshore Support Vessels" as amended by IMO Resolutions MSC.236(82) and MEPC.158(55).

Where the amount of hazardous and noxious liquid substances carried is greater than the lesser of 800 m^3 or a volume in cubic meters equal to 40% of the vessel's deadweight calculated at a cargo density of 1.0, the vessel shall comply with the survival capability requirements of Chapter 2 of the International Bulk Chemical Code or the International Gas Carrier Code.

Consideration will be given to the arrangement which complies with the published requirements of the flag Administration.

5.7 Intact Stability for Anchor Handling/Towing Vessels

Each vessel receiving a towing notation is to comply with the additional intact stability criteria in 3-3-A2/13 and 3-3-A2/17.

5.9 Intact Stability for Vessels Equipped with Lifting Appliances

Each vessel equipped to lift loads is to comply with the additional intact stability criteria in 3-3-A2/17.

7 Lightship Determination *(1 July 2020)*

7.1 *(2024)*

Upon completion, each vessel is to undergo an inclining test to determine the actual displacement and position of the center of gravity for the lightship condition. The inclining test is to be conducted in accordance with Part B Chapter 8 and Annex 1 of the 2008 Intact Stability Code and ASTM Standard F-1321 (current version), "*Standard Guide for Conducting a Stability Test (Lightweight Survey and Inclining Experiment) to Determine the Light Ship Displacement and Centers of Gravity of a Vessel*".

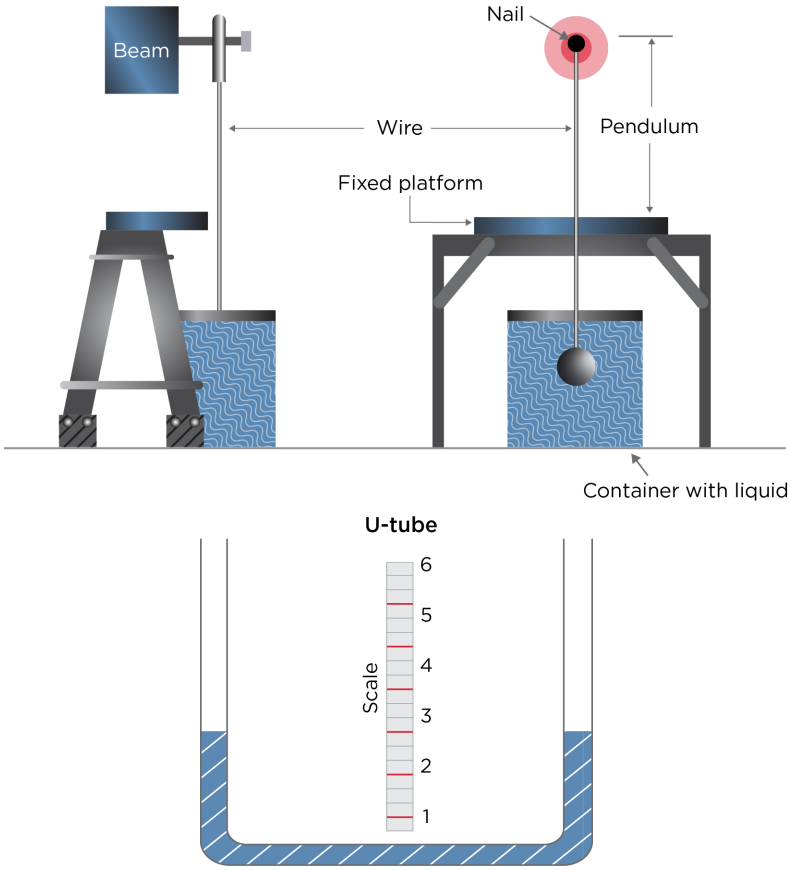
Commentary:

- Two (2) measuring devices (pendulums, inclinometers, U-Tubes, etc.) can be used provided that for each weight movement the difference between the measured heel angles for the two measuring devices does not exceed 0.05 degrees for vessels of not less than 40 m in length and 0.15 degrees for vessels under 40 m in length (*Regulation 8.2.2.9 of 2008 Intact Stability Code*). The use of only two (2) measuring devices is not permitted for U.S. Flag vessels.
- It is recommended that a third measuring device is used to reduce the risk of having to repeat the inclining experiment.

- Refer to 3-3-1/Figure 1 for sample measuring devices.

End of Commentary

FIGURE 1
Inclining Measuring Devices *(2024)*



7.3 *(2024)*

If the inclining test results on the initial vessel in a series have been approved, the inclining test required by [7.1] is to be waived provided that, for each sister vessel (built to the same plans), the weights and centers of any known differences are documented and a lightweight survey is conducted to confirm the effects of the differences on the lightship characteristics.

A lightweight survey is to be carried out upon completion. The ship is to be inclined whenever, in comparison with the data derived from the sister ship :

- There is a deviation from the lightship displacement exceeding 1% for ships of 160 m or more in length and 2% for ships of 50 m or less in length and as determined by linear interpolation for intermediate lengths.
  or
- The lightship's longitudinal center of gravity (LCG) is greater than 0.5% of the lightship's LCG of the lead ship.

When the lightweight survey results do not exceed the specified deviation limits, the lightship displacement and the longitudinal center of gravity obtained from the lightweight survey should be used in conjunction with the higher of either the lead sister ship's vertical center of gravity or the calculated, adjusted value.

For vessels with asymmetrical construction features/arrangements, the transverse center of gravity (TCG) is to be considered in the calculated/adjusted values.

7.5

If it can be demonstrated that the performance of an inclining test is not practicable or safe or yields inaccurate results due to the specific proportions, arrangements, strength or hull of a ship, the vessel's lightship characteristics may be determined by a detailed weight estimate confirmed by a lightweight survey. A formal request for an inclining test waiver is to be made to ABS and is to include the technical justification for the request.

7.7 *(2024)*

Prior to the performance of each inclining test or lightweight survey, a test procedure is to be submitted for approval. The procedure is to include the following data, as applicable:

- Identification of the vessel to be inclined.
- Date and location of the test.
- Inclining weight data.
- Pendulum locations and lengths. Alternate measuring devices may be proposed for use.
- Approximate draft and trim of the vessel, including location of draft and freeboard readings.
- Condition of each tank.
- Estimated items to be installed, removed, or relocated after the test, including the weight and location of each item.
- Schedule of the test.
- Details of weight movements
- Person or persons responsible for conducting the test.

Commentary:

For alternative measuring devices, see Annex I of 2008 Intact Stability Code and ASTM Standard F-1321-14 (current version).

End of Commentary

7.9

Each inclining test and lightweight survey must be performed in the presence of an ABS Surveyor and in accordance with the approved test procedure.

7.11 Vessels Undergoing Modifications *(2024)*

For vessels undergoing modifications, the lightship values may be approved as indicated in the following table. When the submitted detailed weight calculation shows a change in lightship weight, LCG and VCG falling into one of categories below an lightweight survey or inclining is not to be required. The most onerous lightship characteristic determines which category to place the lightship change into.

d by Lightweight Calculation	*Requirement for Inclining Test*	*Update of Stability Information*
Lightweight change > 2%	Yes	Yes, using new incline result
LCG change > 1% of *L* (either forward or aft)	Yes	Yes, using new incline result
VCG change > 1%	Yes	Yes, using new incline result

d by Lightweight Calculation	*Requirement for Inclining Test*	*Update of Stability Information*
1% < Lightweight change $\leq$ 2%	No	Yes, using lightweight calculation
0.5% of L < LCG change $\leq$ 1% of L (either forward or aft)	No	Yes, using lightweight calculation
0.5% < VCG change $\leq$ 1%	No	Yes, using lightweight calculation
Lightweight change $\leq$ 1%	No	No
LCG change $\leq$ 0.5% of L (either forward or aft)	No	No
VCG change $\leq$ 0.5%	No	No

i) Length (L) is the length as defined in the International Convention on Load Lines in force.

ii) The term "Stability Information" in the above table includes any document (paper or electronic) or electronic means of calculation of stability that includes lightship properties. This should include, but is not limited to, the approved stability booklet, computer software for onboard calculation of stability, the approved strength book, and the loading instrument.

Commentary:

Allowances for the addition and/or removal of certified weights (those items with a known weight and center of gravity) may be accepted on a case-by-case basis upon the approval of the flag Administration.

Known weight and centers of gravity are based upon a manufacturer's spec sheet for a piece of equipment, or an item with easily identified centers of gravity and weighed on a certified scale in the presence of the Surveyor.

End of Commentary

9 Free Surface *(2024)*

For all loading conditions, the initial metacentric height and the righting arm curve is to be corrected for the effect of free surfaces of liquids in tanks.

9.1

In determining the correction to initial metacentric height, the transverse moments of inertia of the tanks should be calculated at 0° angle of heel according to the categories indicated in [9.5.i.] and [9.5.ii.] below.

9.3

The righting arm curve may be corrected by any of the following methods:

- Correction based on the actual moment of fluid transfer for each angle of heel calculated; or
- Correction based on the moment of inertia, calculated at 0° angle of heel, modified at each angle of heel calculated.

9.5

Free surface is to be included as follows:

i) For slack, non-consumable tanks (e.g., liquid cargo, water ballast) with filling levels that do not change during the voyage, the free surface correction should be defined for the actual filling level of each tank.

ii) For tanks with variable filling levels (e.g., consumable liquids such as fuel oil, diesel oil and fresh water, and also liquid cargo and water ballast during liquid transfer operations), the free surface correction, except as permitted in iv) and v), should be the maximum value attainable between the filing limits envisaged for each tank, consistent with any operating instructions.

iii) For each type of consumable liquid, the maximum free surface of at least one transverse pair of tanks or a single centerline tank shall be included. The tank or tanks to be taken into account should be those where the effect of free surface is the greatest.

iv) Where water ballast tanks, including roll reduction and anti-heeling tanks, are to be filled and discharged during the course of the voyage, the free surface effects should be calculated to take account of the most onerous transitory stage relating to such operations.

v) During liquid transfer operations, the free surface effects should be calculated to take account of the most onerous transitory stage relating to such operations.

Commentary:

i Guidance on free surface can be found in IMO Code on Intact Stability 2008.

ii For more information, see IACS UI LL59 for the guideline on the free-surface and freeing port application to cargo manifold on weather deck.

End of Commentary

11 Standard Loading Conditions *(2024)*

The following conditions of loading are to be examined in the Trim and Stability Booklet:

i) Vessel at the maximum Load Line draft, with full stores and fuel and fully loaded with cargo corresponding to the worst service departure condition in which all the relevant stability criteria are met.

ii) Vessel with 10% stores and fuel and fully loaded cargoes of i) above, arrival condition.

iii) Vessel with full stores and fuel in ballast departure condition.

iv) Vessel with 10% stores and fuel in ballast arrival condition.

v) Vessel in the worst anticipated operating condition (i.e., arrival condition with deck cargo only – 100% deck cargo with 10% stores and fuel).

vi) Other loading conditions applicable to a vessel in a particular service (i.e., offshore support vessels, fishing vessels)
On a case-by-case basis, specific loading conditions may be excluded if it can be shown that the conditions are not applicable to a specific vessel type and/or operation.

Commentary:

- Guidance on standard loading conditions can be found in IMO Code on Intact Stability 2008.
- For vessels designed and built to the requirements in Part 5A & 5B (IACS CSR Part 1 & 2) of the *Marine Vessel Rules*, common design loading conditions can be found in [5A-4-8/2] of the *Marine Vessel Rules*.
- For vessels not covered by Part 5A & 5B (IACS CSR Part 1 & 2) of the *Marine Vessel Rules*, design loading conditions for longitudinal strength can be found in Appendices 3-2-A2 and 3-2-A3.

End of Commentary

13 Trim and Stability Booklet *(1 July 2020)*

13.1 *(1 July 2020)*

Operating guidance for the Master is to be provided in a Trim and Stability Booklet.

13.3 *(1 July 2020)*

Each trim and stability book is to contain sufficient information to enable the Master to operate the vessel in compliance with the applicable intact and damage stability requirements in Section 3-3-1. Information on loading restrictions used to determine compliance with applicable intact and damage stability criteria is to encompass the entire range of operating drafts and the entire range of the operating trims.

13.5 *(1 July 2020)*

The format of the trim and stability booklet and the information included will vary dependent on the vessel type and operation. Units of measure used in the trim and stability booklet are to agree with the units of measure of the draft markings.

13.7 *(2024)*

The trim and stability booklet, is to include the following information:

i) A table of contents and index for the booklet. All pages are to be numbered.

ii) A general description of the vessel, including identification, lightship data, amount and location of fixed ballast, vessel principal dimensions, Load Line draft, freeboard and allowances, maximum displacement and deadweight, etc.

iii) A brief description of the stability criteria satisfied including assumptions made in the calculations.

iv) Instructions on the use of the booklet.

v) General arrangement plans showing watertight compartments, closures, vents, down-flooding angles, and allowable deck loadings.

vi) Hydrostatic curves or tables.

vii) Cross Curves of stability

viii) Capacity plan showing capacities and vertical, longitudinal, and transverse centers of gravity of stowage spaces and tanks.

ix) Draft Marks Drawing showing the draft mark details, longitudinal locations of marks fore and aft referenced to the forward and after perpendiculars or to the nearest frames and vertical reference points. Navigational draft marks should be based on the vessel's lowest vertical projection.

x) Tank sounding/ullage tables showing capacities, vertical centers of gravity, longitudinal centers of gravity and free surface data in graduated intervals for each tank. This may be submitted as a separate document.

xi) Information on loading restrictions, such as a maximum KG or minimum GM curve with allowable trim range (if applicable) that can be used to determine compliance with applicable intact and damage stability criteria.

xii) In addition to the standard loading conditions in [11] , loading conditions showing vessel specific operations (lifting, towing, etc.) also are to be included.

xiii) A rapid and simple means for evaluating the trim and stability of other loading conditions. This should include clear, step by step instructions for the calculation and evaluation of the loading condition, blank loading forms, and a worked example.

xiv) General precautions for preventing unintentional flooding.

xv) References to the Damage Control Booklet and/or Cargo Securing Manual, as applicable.

xvi) Any other necessary guidance for the safe operation of the vessel under normal and emergency conditions (i.e., required liquid ballast, fuel burn-off sequence, maximum cargo height, crane loads, etc.).

xvii) The inclining experiment report may be included as an appendix.

xviii) Filling limits of cargo tanks of membrance LNG carriers.

Commentary:

The requirements of Section 3-3-1 are based on IMO Code on Intact Stability 2008.

End of Commentary

15 Damage Control Information

15.1 *(2024)*

A plan showing clearly for each deck and hold and boundaries of the watertight compartments, the openings therein with the means of closure and position of any controls thereof, and the arrangements for the correction of any list due to flooding, is to be permanently exhibited or readily available on the navigation bridge for the guidance of the officer in charge of the vessel. Furthermore, the damage control plan is to be permanently exhibited or readily available on the bridge, in the cargo control room, machinery control room, and engineering office.

In addition, booklets containing the aforementioned information are to be made available to the officers of the vessel.

The damage control plan and damage control booklet are to be clear and easy to understand. Information which is not directly relevant to damage control is not to be included.

General precautions to be included are consisting of a listing of equipment, conditions, and operational procedures considered being necessary to maintain watertight integrity under normal ship operations.

Specific precautions to be included are consisting of a listing of elements (i.e., closures, security of cargo, sounding of alarms, etc.) considered to be vital to the survival of the ship and crew.

For ships to which the damage stability requirements of SOLAS 1974 as amended apply, damage stability information is to be provided in a simple and easily understandable way of assessing the ship's survivability in the anticipated damage cases involving a compartment or group of compartments.

15.3 Damage Control Plan

15.3.1

The damage control plan is to be of a scale adequate to show clearly the required content of the plan.

The plan is to include inboard profile, plan views of each deck and transverse sections to the extent necessary to show the following:

i) The watertight boundaries of the ship;

ii) The locations and arrangement of cross-flooding systems, blow-out plugs and any mechanical means to correct list due to flooding, together with the locations of all valves and remote controls, if any;

iii) The locations of all internal watertight closing appliances including, on ro-ro ships, internal ramps or doors acting as extension of the collision bulkhead and their controls and the locations of their local and remote controls, position indicators and alarms . The locations of those watertight closing appliances which are not allowed to be opened during the navigation and of those watertight closing appliances which are allowed to be opened during navigation, according to the regulation II-1/22.4 of SOLAS 1974 as amended , are to be clearly indicated;

iv) The locations of all doors in the shell of the ship, including position indicators, leakage detection and surveillance devices;

v) The locations of all external watertight closing appliances in cargo ships, position indicators and alarms;

vi) The locations of all weather-tight closing appliances in local subdivision boundaries above the bulkhead deck and on the lowest exposed weather decks, together with locations of controls and position indicators, if applicable; and

vii) The locations of all bilge and ballast pumps, their control positions and associated valves.

15.3.2 *(2024)*

In addition to the provisions in [15.3.1] above, damage control plans of passenger ships are to be prepared as follows:

i) Provide a plan in color and confirm that it is legible when printed

ii) Provide a legend describing each symbol used within the plan

iii) Clearly identify the location of damage control equipment and damage equipment lockers on the plan

iv) Provide compartment identification consistent with the damage control booklet and the stability computer information, as applicable

v) Highlight access points (stairways and ladders) as follows:

a) indicate the compartment and deck to be accessed;

b) Indicate whether an access point represents both up and down or only one way trait (at the bottom of the stair or ladder); and

c) Indicate all hatches

vi) Shading of key features may be used on the damage control plan to clearly depict essential information regarding the ship's watertight subdivision and related equipment

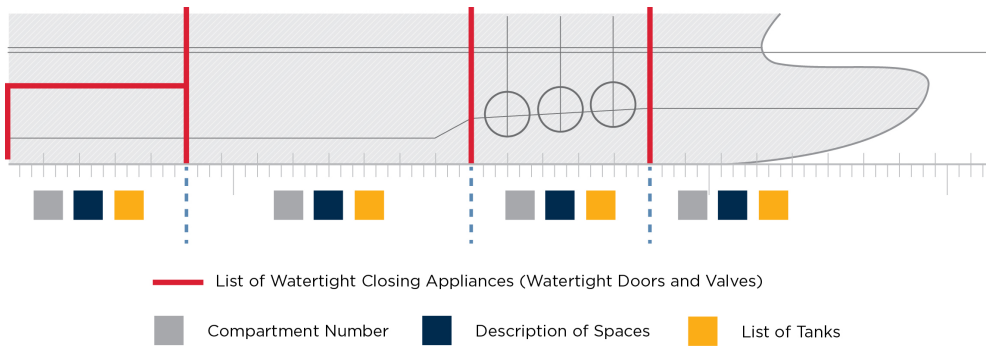
vii) Depict watertight doors and semi-watertight doors

viii) Indicate the locations of sounding pipes for all spaces with a sound pipe, including void spaces

ix) In addition to the bilge and ballast pumps, indicate the location of any other relevant pumps referred to in the damage control booklet

x) The inboard profile plan is to indicate the compartment boundaries with the list of watertight closing appliances necessary to provide watertight integrity of the compartment and the list of tanks and description of spaces within the compartment (see the example in 3-3-1/15.3.2)

FIGURE 2



15.3.3 *(2024)*

Where fittings or equipment are common in both fire and damage control plans of passenger ships, the graphical symbols used in damage control plans is to be in accordance with the *Graphical symbols for shipboard fire control plans* (IMO resolution A.952(23)).

15.5 Damage Control Booklet *(2024)*

The information listed in the damage control plan is to be repeated in the damage control booklet.

The damage control booklet is to include general instructions for controlling the effects of damage, such as:

i) Immediately closing all watertight and weather-tight closing appliances;

ii) Establishing the locations and safety of persons on board, sounding tanks and compartments to ascertain the extent of damage and repeated soundings to determine rates of flooding; and

iii) Cautionary advice regarding the cause of any list and of liquid transfer operations to lessen list or trim, and the resulting effects of creating additional free surfaces and of initiating pumping operations to control the ingress of water.

The booklet is to contain additional details to the information shown on the damage control plan, such as the locations of flooding detection systems, sounding devices, tank vents and overflows which do not extend above the weather deck, pump capacities, piping diagrams, instructions for operating cross-flooding systems, means of accessing and escaping from watertight compartments below the bulkhead deck for use by damage control parties, and alerting ship management and other organizations to stand by and co-ordinate assistance, if required.

If applicable to the ship, locations of non-watertight openings with non-automatic closing devices through which progressive flooding might occur are to be indicated as well as guidance on the possibility of non-structural bulkheads and doors or other obstructions retarding the flow of entering seawater to cause at least temporary conditions of unsymmetrical flooding.

Where the results of the subdivision and damage stability analyses are included, additional guidance is to be provided for the crew to be aware that the analysis results are only for assisting them in estimating the ship's relative survivability.

The guidance is to indicate the criteria on which the analyses were based and clearly indicate that the initial conditions of the ship's loading extents and locations of damage, permeability, assumed for the analyses may have no correlation with the actual damaged condition of the ship.

Commentary:

For more information, see MSC.1/Circ.1245 for guidelines on Damage Control Plans and Information to the Master.

End of Commentary

17 Onboard Computers for Stability Calculations

Except for the vessels indicated below, the use of onboard computers for stability calculations is not a requirement of class. However, if stability software is installed onboard vessels contracted on or after 1 July 2005, it is required to cover all stability requirements applicable to the vessel and is to be approved by ABS for compliance with the requirements of Appendix 3-3-A7, "Computer Software for Onboard Stability Calculations".

Tanker, including oil carriers, fuel oil carriers, gas carriers, and chemical carriers are to be fitted with a stability instrument which uses approved stability software capable of verifying compliance with the applicable intact and damage stability requirements. This requirement may be waived for the following tankers if loaded in accordance with the approved conditions in the trim and stability booklet:

- Tankers on a dedicated service, with a limited number of permutations of loading
- Tankers where stability verifications is made remotely by a means approved by the Administration
- Tankers loaded within an approved range of loading conditions

See also [5C-8-2/2.6] , [5C-8-2/2.7] , [5C-9-2/2.6] , and [5C-9-2/2.7] .

19 Loading and Stability Computer Software *(2024)*

19.1 Application

This Subsection is applicable to vessels equipped with computer software, which is capable of performing both hull girder loading and stability calculations to verify the compliance with the requirements. Vessels provided with computer software in accordance with the requirements of this Subsection are eligible for the Class Notation **LSC** or **LSC(DC)** as follows:

Class Notation	Qualifier	Description	Application
LSC	-	Loading and Stability Computer Software	Mandatory for tankers (as required in 3-2-A2/9 and [17])
	DC	Loading and Stability Computer Software with Damage Control assessment to assist the Master	Optional

Vessel type and size requirements for each loading instrument and stability computer software are to be in accordance with 3-2-A2/9 and [17] , respectively.

19.3 Definitions

19.3.1 Loading and Stability Computer Software

Loading and Stability Computer Software (LSC) is computer software whose functions include longitudinal strength calculations, and stability calculations. The term loading and stability computer software includes a loading instrument and onboard stability computer software.

19.3.2 Damage Control

Damage Control (DC) is a feature in loading and stability computer software which assesses the actual damage conditions using the input from detection systems installed on the vessel. This feature provides information in case of damage conditions.

19.5 LSC Notation

The **LSC** notation may be assigned to a vessel meeting the following requirements:

i) The computer software meets the requirements of a Loading Instrument in Appendix 3-2-A2

ii) The computer software meets the requirements of Onboard Stability Software in Appendix 3-3-A7.

iii) Compliance with Appendix 3-2-A2 and Appendix 3-3-A7 includes all applicable operational, installation and periodic testing requirements.

19.7 LSC(DC) Notation

At the request of the Owners, the optional notation **LSC(DC)** may be assigned to vessels with the capability of damage control assessment, which meet the following requirements:

19.7.1

The vessel is to meet the requirements in [19.5] for the **LSC** notation.

19.7.2 Type 4 Software

In addition to [19.5.ii.], the computer software is to comply with the requirements for Type 4 software in Appendix 3-3-A7. Type 4 Software is used to calculate the damage stability associated with an actual loading condition and actual flooding case, using direct application of user defined damage, for the purpose of providing operational information to enable safe return to port (SRtP).

19.7.3 Flooding Detection System

The vessel is to be fitted with flooding detection systems (or sensors), which are to be installed in the compartments subject to flooding in case of damage.

The flooding detection system is to be maintained for intended operations. Any alerts of flooding or the failure of the system are to be clearly displayed in the main control board.

Communication details between the control board and the flooding detection system are to be submitted for review.

The sensors are to be suitable for use in maritime environment and are recommended to be ABS type approved. General guidance on sensors is provided in the ABS *Guide for Hull Condition Monitoring System*.

Commentary:

For the location of system and sensors on passenger vessels, refer to MSC.1/Circ. 1291 to consider environmental conditions, protective treatment, and selection to confirm they are suitable for the marine environment.

End of Commentary

PART 3

CHAPTER 3
Subdivision and Stability

APPENDIX 1
Intact Stability of Tankers During Liquid Transfer Operations

1 *(2024)*

1.1 Note

The following requirements as specified in 3-3-1/5.1 for tankers (i.e., vessels designed to carry liquid in bulk) are developed from MSC/Circ. 706 (MEPC/Circ. 304), which contains recommendations for existing oil tankers. The phenomenon of lolling is considered to be a safety issue for double hull tankers, as well as for other tankers having exceptionally wide cargo tanks (i.e. having cargo tank breadths greater than 60% of the vessel's maximum beam), which should be solved for every vulnerable tanker. The solution should not be limited only to tankers subject to MARPOL.

1.3 Application *(2024)*

The Appendix applies to any tanker that is not subject to MARPOL Convention Annex I Regulation 27. Alternatively, such tankers may comply with MARPOL Convention Annex I Regulation 27.

3 Goal *(2024)*

The goals and functional requirements covered in 3-3-1/3 are to be met.

3.1 Intact Stability Criteria *(2024)*

3.1.1

Every tanker is to comply with the intact stability criteria specified in 3-3-A1/3.1.2 and 3-3-A1/3.1.3 are to be met for any operating draft reflecting actual, partial or full load conditions, including the intermediate stages of liquid transfer operations.

Liquid transfer operations include cargo loading and unloading, ballasting and deballasting, ballast water exchange and tank cleaning operations.

3.1.2

In port, the initial metacentric height *GMo*, corrected for free surface measured at 0 degree heel, is not to be less than 0.15 m (0.5 ft).

3.1.3

At sea, the intact stability criteria contained in Part A paragraphs 2.2.1 to 2.2.4 of the IMO International Code on Intact Stability 2008 are applicable, or the criteria contained in the national

requirements of the flag Administration if the national stability requirements provide at least an equivalent degree of safety.

3.1.4

For all loading conditions in port and at sea, including intermediate stages of liquid transfer operations, the initial metacentric height and the righting lever curve are to be corrected for the effect of free surfaces of liquids in tanks. Reference may be made to the Unified Interpretation LL61 Method of Correction for the Effect of Free Surface of Liquids in Tanks, set out by the International Association of Classification Societies.

3.1.5

The intact stability criteria specified in 3-3-A1/3 preferably is to be met by design of the vessel (i.e., the design should allow for maximum free surface effects in all cargo, ballast and consumables tanks during liquid transfer operations).

3.3 Compliance *(2024)*

3.3.1

If the intact stability criteria specified in [3.1.1] through [3.1.3] are not met through design of the vessel alone, the Master is to be provided with clear instructions covering the operational restrictions and methods necessary to confirm compliance with these criteria during liquid transfer operations. These instructions should be simple and concise, and:

3.3.1(a)

In a language understood by the officer-in-charge of transfer operations;

3.3.1(b)

Require no more than minimal mathematical calculations by the officer-in-charge;

3.3.1(c)

Indicate the maximum number of cargo and ballast tanks which may be slack under any possible condition of liquid transfer;

3.3.1(d)

Provide pre-planned sequences of cargo/ballast transfer operations, which indicate the cargo and ballast tanks which may be slack to satisfy the stability criteria under any specific condition of liquid transfer, including possible range of cargo densities. The slack may vary during stages of the transfer operations and be any combination which satisfies the intact stability criteria;

3.3.1(e)

Provide instructions for pre-planning other sequences of cargo/ballast transfer operations, including use of stability performance criteria in graphical or tabular form which enable comparisons of required and attained stability. These instructions for pre-planning other sequences, in relation to individual vessels, should take account of:

i) The degree of criticality with respect to the number of tanks which can simultaneously have maximum free surface effects at any stage of liquid transfer operations;

ii) The means provided to the officer-in-charge to monitor and assess the effects on stability and hull strength throughout the transfer operations;

iii) The need to give sufficient warning of an impending critical condition by reference to suitable margins (and the rate and direction of change) of the appropriate stability and hull strength parameters. If appropriate, the instructions should include safe procedures for suspending transfer operations until a suitable plan of remedial action has been evaluated.

iv) The use of on-line shipboard computer systems, where fitted, during all liquid transfer operations, processing cargo and ballast tank ullage data and cargo densities to continuously

monitor the vessel's stability and hull strength and, when necessary, to provide effective warning of an impending critical situation, possibly automatic shut-down, and evaluation of possible remedial actions;

3.3.2

Provide for corrective actions to be taken by the officer-in-charge in case of unexpected technical difficulties with the recommended pre-planned transfer operations and in case of emergency situations. A general reference to the vessel's shipboard oil pollution emergency plan may be included; and the instructions required above be prominently displayed:

i) In the approved trim and stability booklets;

ii) At the cargo/ballast transfer control station;

iii) In any computer software by which intact stability is monitored or calculations performed;

iv) In any computer software by which hull strength is monitored or calculations performed.

3 <No Text>

5 <No Text>

7 <No Text>

9 <No Text>

PART 3

CHAPTER 3
Subdivision and Stability

APPENDIX 2
Intact Stability Requirements for Offshore Support Vessels

1 General

1.1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1.1

The vessels covered in this section are to be designed, constructed, operated and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goal*
STAB 1	have adequate watertight integrity and restoring energy to prevent capsize in an intact condition.
STAB 6	provide means to control the overall vessel weight and distribution to maintain adequate trim and stability.
MGMT 4	establish procedures, plans, and instructions for emergency situations concerning the safety of the personnel, vessel, and protection of the environment. (ISM Code 7)

1.1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above stated goals, the design, construction, installation, and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Stabiolity (STAB)	
STAB-FR1	Vessels are to be designed, constructed, operated and maintained to have sufficient ability to return to the upright equilibrium in intact conditions to prevent capsize against the environmental conditions anticipated throughout the service life, such as the loads from sea, wind, ice and trapped water on exposed decks, and loads in operation, such s towing, anchor handling and lifting, and loads from cargoes, ballast water, fuels and stores.
Safety Management (MGMT)	

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
MGMT-FR1 (STAB)	Provide information to enable the master by rapid and simple processes to obtain accurate guidance as to the stability of the ship under varying conditions of service.
MGMT-FR2 (STAB)	Provide the means onboard capable of verifying compliance with the applicable intact and damage stability requirements.

Also refer to the functional requirements contained 3-3-1/1.1.2.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

1.2 Righting Arm Curve for each Loading Condition *(2024)*

For every loading condition, which is to be shown in the Trim and Stability Booklet, the righting arm curve (GZ curve) is to be plotted using the VCG corrected for the free surface effects of liquid in tanks.

3 Criteria

3.1 General Criteria *(1 July 2023)*

The righting energy criterion in Part A, Section 2.2 of the 2008 Intact Stability Code, as amended, is to be complied with.

3.3 Severe Wind and Rolling Criterion *(1 July 2023)*

In addition to [3.1] , The Severe Wind and Rolling Criterion in Part A, Section 2.3 of the 2008 Intact Stability Code, as amended, is to be complied with.

Commentary:

Where the vessel's characteristics render compliance with this criteria impracticable, consideration will be given for compliance with another published weather criteria, which is to be agreed to by the flag Administration.

End of Commentary

3.5 Alternative Criteria for Offshore Support Vessels *(1 July 2023)*

For vessels of 24 m (79 ft) in length and over but not more than 100 m (328 ft) in length where the vessel's characteristics render compliance with [3.1] impracticable, the alternative criteria in Part B, Section 2.4.5.2 of the 2008 Intact Stability Code, as amended, are to be complied with. The alternative criteria is not applicable to Special Purpose Ships greater than 100 m (328 ft) in length.

Commentary:

For offshore support vessels greater than 100 m (328 ft) in length where the vessel's characteristics render compliance with [3.1] impracticable, the alternative criteria in 3-3-A2/3.5 may be considered for compliance provided it is agreed to by the flag Administration.

End of Commentary

5 Standard Loading Conditions *(1 July 2023)*

The following conditions of loading are to be examined in the Trim and Stability Booklet:

i) Vessel at the maximum Load Line draft, with full stores and fuel and fully loaded with all liquid and dry cargo distributed below deck and with remaining deadweight distributed as above deck cargo (specified by weight, LCG, VCG and total height above deck) corresponding to the worst service departure condition in which all the relevant stability criteria are met.

ii) Vessel with 10% stores and fuel and fully loaded cargoes of i) above, arrival condition.

iii) Vessel with full stores and fuel and loaded with the maximum design deck cargo (specified by weight, LCG, VCG and total height above deck) and with remaining deadweight distributed below deck in liquid and dry cargo spaces corresponding to the worst service departure condition in which all the relevant stability criteria are met.

iv) Vessel with 10% stores and fuel and fully loaded cargoes of iii) above, arrival condition.

v) Vessel with full stores and fuel in ballast departure condition.

vi) Vessel with 10% stores and fuel in ballast arrival condition.

vii) Vessel in the worst anticipated operating condition (i.e., arrival condition with deck cargo only – 100% deck cargo with 10% stores and fuel).

Specific loading conditions may be excluded if it can be shown that the conditions are not applicable to a specific vessel type and/or operation and such limitations are to be described in the trim and stability booklet for guidance to the Master.

7 Carriage of Pipe as Deck Cargo *(1 July 2023)*

Where pipes are carried on deck, a quantity of trapped water equal to a certain percentage of the net volume of the pipe deck cargo is to be accounted for in and around the pipes. The net volume is to be taken as the internal volume of the pipes, plus the volume between the pipes. This percentage is to be 30% if the freeboard amidships is equal to or less than $0.015L$ and 10% if the free board amidships is equal to or greater than $0.03L$. For intermediate values of the freeboard amidships, the percentage is to be obtained by linear interpolation. In assessing the quantity of trapped water, the positive or negative sheer aft, actual trim and area of operation may be taken into account.

Where pipe is stored on decks located above the freeboard deck, the distance from the freeboard deck to the storage deck is to be added to the freeboard in the above calculation to determine the amount of trapped water.

9 Icing *(1 July 2023)*

For vessels operating in areas where ice accretion is likely to occur, icing allowances is to be included in the analysis of conditions of loading. The following guidance is to be complied with:

i) The vessel's stability is to be investigated in the worst conditions of loading.

ii) In the absence of area specific ice accretion data, the following ice accretion may be applied:

- The weight of ice on all horizontal surfaces is to be at least 30 kg/m^2 (6.14 lbs/ft^2).
- The weight of ice of the projected vertical area above the waterline is to be at least 15 kg/m^2 (3.07 lbs/ft^2). This accounts for 7.5 kg/m^2 (1.54 lbs/ft^2) on both the port and starboard vertical surfaces.
- Plans showing projected horizontal and vertical areas are to be submitted.

iii) The height of the center of gravity of the accumulated ice is to be located according to the position of the corresponding horizontal surfaces (decks and gangways) and other continuous surfaces on which ice can reasonably be expected to accumulate. The projected lateral area of small discontinuous surfaces such as rails, spars, and rigging with no sails can be accounted for by increasing the calculated area by 5 percent and the static moments of the area by 10 percent.

iv) The icing accretion assumptions, along with guidance for the avoidance of icing conditions, reduction and removal of ice and other actions to maintain the stability of the vessel during icing conditions are to be included in the Trim and Stability Booklet. Section 3 of Annex 2 of the IMO

Code on Intact Stability contains operational guidance for fishing vessels during ice accretion and may be used as a reference.

Commentary:

The above requirements are based on Part B, Chapter 6 of IMO Code on Intact Stability 2008, as amended. For operation areas where ice accretion is likely to occur, please see the guidance in Part B, 6.3.2 of IMO Code on Intact Stability 2008, as amended.

End of Commentary

11 Special Purpose Offshore Support Vessels *(1 July 2023)*

Special purpose offshore support vessels are to comply with [1] through [9] as applicable. The alternative criteria given in [3.5] may be used for special purpose ships of less than 100 m (328 ft) in length of similar design and characteristics. The submission of evidence showing approval by an Administration of stability of the vessel in accordance with the SPS Code is acceptable.

13 Additional Criteria for Anchor Handling Vessels *(1 July 2023)*

These requirements apply to any vessel intended to engage in anchor handling.

13.1 Intact Stability *(1 July 2023)*

The intact stability of a vessel engaged in anchor handling operation is to be evaluated for all anchor handling conditions, demonstrating compliance with the additional criteria in Part B, 2.7 of IMO Code on Intact Stability 2008, as amended by IMO Res.MSC.415(97) for ships engaged in anchor handling operations.

13.3 Loading Conditions *(1 July 2023)*

The following loading conditions intended for anchor handling are to be examined in the Trim and Stability Booklet:

i) Vessel at the maximum Load Line draft, with full stores and fuel and fully loaded with all liquid and dry cargo distributed below deck and with remaining deadweight distributed as above deck weight (anchors, chain, etc., specified by weight, LCG, VCG and total height above deck) corresponding to the worst service departure condition in which all the relevant stability criteria are met.

ii) Vessel with 10% stores and fuel and fully loaded cargoes of i) above, arrival condition.

iii) Vessel at the maximum Load Line draft, with full stores, a full set of rig anchors on deck to be deployed during single trip (and rig chains, where appropriate) and fuel loaded to the maximum deadweight, corresponding to the worst service departure condition in which all the relevant stability criteria are met.

iv) Vessel with 10% stores and fuel and fully loaded cargoes of iii) above, arrival condition.

v) Service loading condition at the maximum draft at which anchor handling operations may occur with the heeling levers for the line tension the ship is capable of with a minimum of 67% stores and fuel and in which all the relevant stability criteria are met.

vi) Service loading condition at the minimum draft at which anchor handling operations may occur with the heeling levers for the line tension the ship is capable of with 10% stores and fuel and in which all the relevant stability criteria are met.

vii) Vessel in worst anticipated operating condition.
These conditions are to include the following items:

- The loads on the deck (including the weight of anchors, chains and lines) and winch reels (loaded with heaviest possible line types).
- The vertical force from the tension, upon which calculations of trim and curve for righting arm are based.

- The weight of the anchors and lines.
- The righting arm curve (GZ curve) is to be plotted using the VCG corrected for the free surface of all slack tanks (see 3-3-1/9), including any roll reduction tanks in use. Consideration is to be given to fuel oil and fresh water used as well as any ballast water necessary during the operations.
- Where the vessel is fitted with rig chain locker(s) below the main deck, the opening(s) is to be considered as a downflooding point for the stability calculations in [19] and [21.3] .
- Where the vessel is fitted with open rig chain lockers on the main deck, effective means to drain these lockers are to be provided. Where not, the lockers are to be considered flooded and the appropriate free surface effects included in all stability calculations.

13.5 Stability Guidance for the Master *(1 July 2023)*

The trim and stability booklet, required by 3-3-1/13, is to include the following guidance:

i) Information stating the maximum force/tension in wire or chain, as well as corresponding lateral point of direction according to the calculations, is to be provided in the trim and stability booklet and be displayed next to the control desk or at another location where the navigator on duty easily can see the information from his command post.

ii) The displayed information is to be in the form of simple sketches showing the vessel's righting moment/arm curves in addition to a table stating the relevant combinations of force/tension and point of direction which gives the maximum acceptable heeling moment.

iii) Any tank restrictions (i.e. ballast tank and/or roll reduction tank usage, fuel oil burn off sequences, etc.) determined by the stability calculations.
During anchor handling operations, all weather-tight access and emergency hatches, and doors on the work deck, are to be kept closed, except when actually being used for transit under safe conditions.

Commentary:

For additional information on stability booklets and operation manuals for ships engaged in anchor handling operations, refer to Part B, 3.6.3 and 3.8 of IMO Code on Intact Stability 2008, as amended by IMO Res.MSC.415(97).

End of Commentary

15 Additional Criteria for Towing Vessels *(1 July 2023)*

These requirements apply to any vessel intended to engage in towing operations.

15.1 Intact Stability *(1 July 2023)*

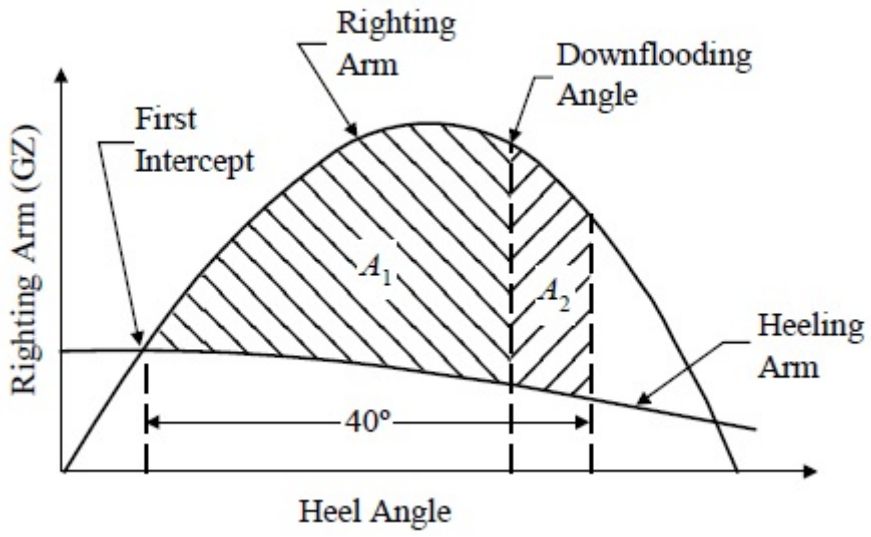
Vessels are to be evaluated for all towing conditions, demonstrating compliance with the IMO Code on Intact Stability 2008, as amended by IMO Res.MSC.415(97).

Alternatively, the intact stability criteria in [15.3] , may be used where a vessel is not subject to the IMO Code on Intact Stability 2008.

15.3 Towing Operations *(1 July 2023)*

The heeling arm curve due to towline pull is to be calculated in accordance with [21.5] . The area of the residual dynamic stability (area between righting and heeling arm curves beyond the angle of the first intercept) up to an angle of heel of 40° beyond the angle of the first intercept ($A_1 + A_2$), or the angle of downflooding, Where this angle is less than 40° beyond the angle of the first intercept (A_1), is not to be less than 0.09 meter-radians. (See 3-3-A2/15.3 FIGURE 1)

FIGURE 1
Righting Arm and Heeling Arm Curves



15.5 Heeling Arm Curve *(1 July 2023)*

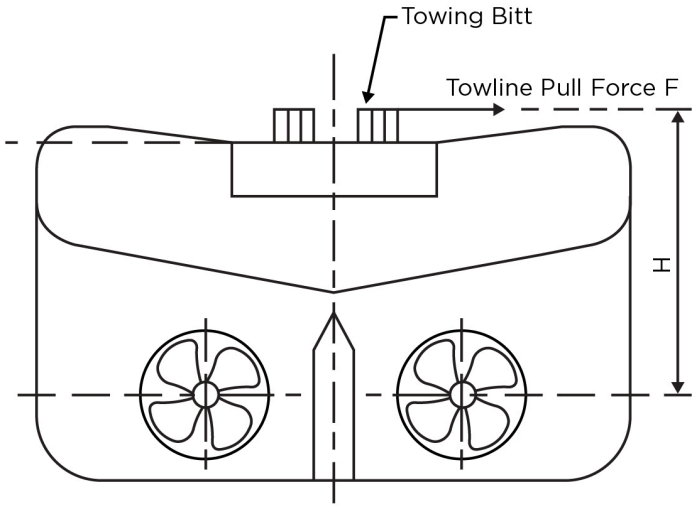
The towline pull force is to be calculated using the corresponding percentage of the maximum bollard pull force, depending on the type of propulsion (see 3-3-A2/15.5 TABLE 1), at right angles to the vessel's fore and aft axes. The heeling moment due to towline pull are to be calculated by multiplying the towline pull force by the distance from the top of the towing bitt to the intersection of propeller shaft centerline and rudder axis (see 3-3-A2/Figure 2). The resultant moment are to be converted to a heeling arm and plotted on the same graph as the righting arm/GZ curve (corrected for free surface). The heeling arm curve can be taken to vary with the cosine of the heeling angle.

The bollard pull force is to be derived from the actual test. For the purposes of preliminary stability evaluations prior to the bollard pull test, the bollard pull force may be estimated, depending on the type of propulsion and shaft power (SHP), as per 3-3-A2/15.5 TABLE 1.

TABLE 1
Towline Pull Force

Type of Propulsion	*Towline Pull Force as Percentage of Max Bollard Pull Force*	*Bollard Pull Force Estimate based on Shaft Power kN/kW (tf/kW, lbs/SHP)*
Twin screw with open propellers, or other types not listed below	50%	5029 (513, 30)
Twin screw with open propellers and flank rudders	50%	5029 (513, 30)
Twin screw with conventional non-movable nozzles	50%	5867 (598, 35)
Water Tractor Tug with twin propeller Z-drives (steerable propellers with nozzles)	70%	5867 (598, 35)
Water Tractor with twin cycloidal propellers (vertical axis)	70%	5029 (513, 30)

FIGURE 2
Heeling Moment by Towline Pull Force *(1 July 2023)*



Note:
H: the distance from the top of the towing bitt to the intersection of propeller shaft centerline and rudder axis.
Heeling moment M = F x H
Heeling Arm = M cosφ / Δ;
Where,
φ is the heeling angle of a ship;
Δ is the displacement of a ship.

15.7 Stability Guidance for the Master *(1 July 2023)*

The Master of the vessel is to receive information in the Trim and Stability Booklet regarding cargo and/or ballast limitations, list of protected flooding openings that need to be kept closed, wind and/or wave restrictions, etc., necessary to ensure that the stability is in compliance with the criteria given in [15.1] .

Where any loading condition requires water ballast for compliance with the criteria in [15.1] , the quantity and disposition are to be stated in the guidance to the Master.

Commentary:

For additional information on stability booklets for ships engaged in towing operations, refer to Part B, 3.6.4 of IMO Code on Intact Stability 2008, as amended by IMO Res.MSC.415(97).

End of Commentary

17 Additional Criteria for Vessels Engaged in Lifting Operations *(1 July 2023)*

Ships engaged in lifting operations are to satisfy the additional intact stability requirements in Part B, 2.9 of IMO Code on Intact Stability 2008, as amendedby IMO Res.MSC.415(97). Stability calculations and corresponding information for the Master are to be submitted for review and approval. The submission of evidence showing approval by an Administration of stability of the vessel for the lifting operations in accordance with a recognized standard may be accepted.

The dynamic load chart for each crane is to be included in the Trim and Stability Booklet and posted at the crane operator's station in the clear view for the operator.

Commentary:

For stability booklets and operational manuals for ships engaged in lifting operations, refer to Part B, 3.6.5 and 3.9 of IMO Code on Intact Stability 2008, as amended by IMO Res.MSC.415(97) for additional information.

End of Commentary

PART 3

CHAPTER 3
Subdivision and Stability

APPENDIX 3
Intact Stability Requirements for Fishing Vessels

1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1 Goal

The vessels covered in this section are to be designed, constructed, operated and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goals*
STAB 1	have adequate watertight integrity and restoring energy to prevent capsize in an intact condition.
STAB 6	provide means to control the overall vessel weight and distribution to maintain adequate trim and stability.
MGMT 4	establish procedures, plans and instructions for emergency situations concerning the safety of the personnel, vessel, and protection of the environment. (ISM Code 7)

1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above stated goals, the design, construction, installation, and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Structure (STRU)	
STAB-FR1	Vessels are to be designed, constructed, operated and maintained to have sufficient ability to return to he upright equilibrium in intact conditions to prevent capsize against the environment conditions anticipated throughout the service life, such as the loads from sea, wind, ice, free surface and trapped water on exposed decks etc. and loads from fishing operations, such as loads from fishing gear handling and lifting.

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
STAB-FR2	Enable the openings and penetrations through watertight or weathertight boundaries to be closed rapidly. Provide means to prevent the crew from leaving hull openings unsecured.
STAB-FR3 (MGMT)	Provide information to enable the master by rapid and simple processes to obtain accurate guidance as to the stability of the ship under varying conditions of service.

1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved .Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

2 Intact Stability *(2024)*

The intact stability of each fishing vessel is to be evaluated and the results for all loading conditions indicated in [9] , verifying compliance with the intact stability criteria in [3] , [5] and [7] and taking into account the design considerations indicated in [11] , are to be submitted.

Where it may be critical, the longitudinal intact stability of the loading conditions is to be investigated.

The maximum allowable KG (or minimum required GM) curve is to confirm compliance with the intact criteria in [3] , [5] and [7] . This curve (or series of curves) is to cover the full range of operation (Load Line/maximum draft to arrival condition, [9.1vii.]), and the full range of anticipated trims). The supporting calculations for this curve shall be submitted for review.

Where it is desired to use intact stability criteria which differ from the following, the details and service experience.

3 Criteria

3.1 General

The intact stability of the fishing vessel is to meet the criteria in Part B Section 2.1.3.1 of the IMO Intact Stability Code, 2008, supplemented by a required 60 degree range of positive stability. This criterion is summarized below and illustrated in [FIGURE 1A] .

i) The area under the righting arm curve is not to be less than 0.055 meter-radians (10.3 ft-degrees) up to an angle of heel of 30 degrees.

ii) The area under the righting arm curve between the angles of heel of 30 degrees and 40 degrees or between 30 degrees and the angle of downflooding (θ_f), where downflooding occurs at less than 40 degrees, is not to be less than 0.030 meter-radians (5.6 ft-degrees)

iii) The area under the righting arm curve is not to be less than 0.090 meter-radians (16.9 ft-degrees) up to an angle of heel of 40 degrees or the angle of downflooding (θ_f), where this angle is less than 40 degrees.*

iv) The righting arm is to be at least 0.2 m (0.66 ft) at an angle greater than or equal to 30 degrees.

v) The maximum righting arm is to occur at an angle of heel preferably exceeding 30 degrees but not less than 25 degrees.

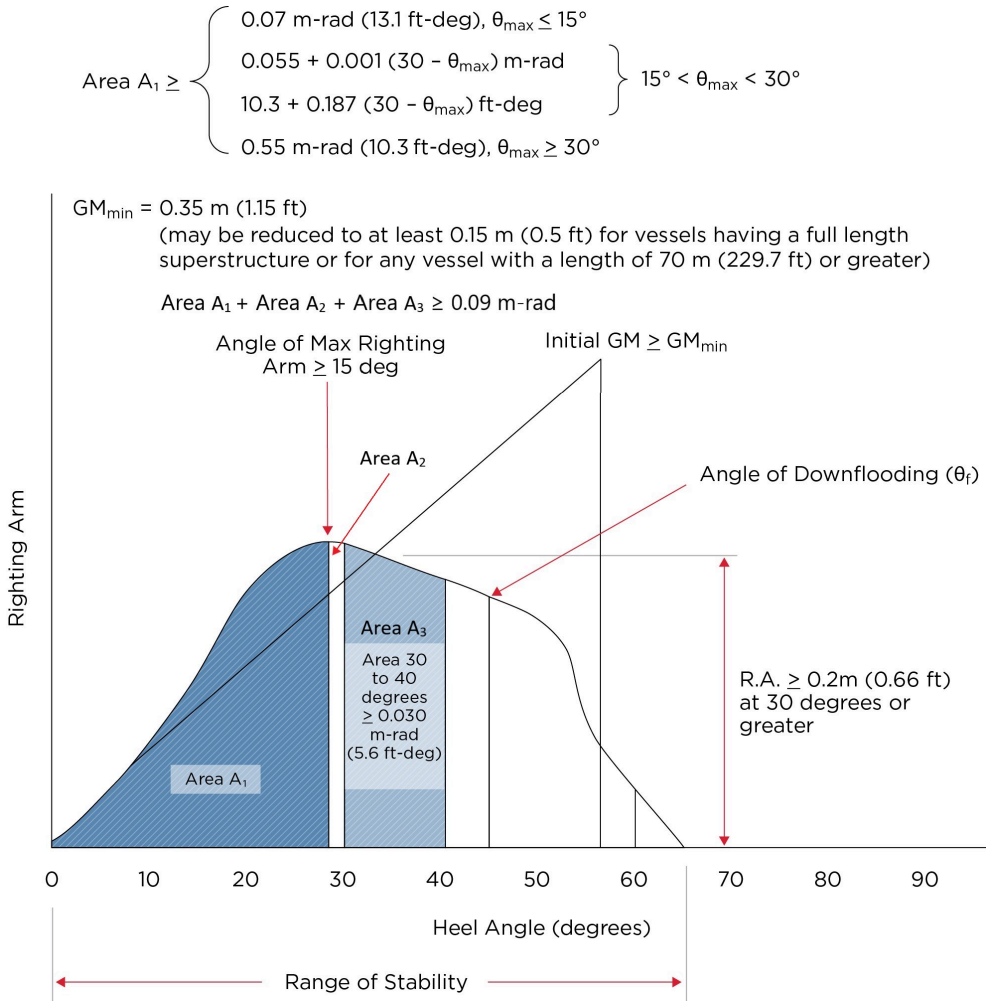
vi) Initial GM is not to be less than 0.35 m (1.15 ft). The required initial GM may be reduced to at least 0.15 m (0.5 ft) for vessels having a full length superstructure or for any vessel with a length of 70 m (229.7 ft) or greater.

vii) A minimum range of stability of 60 degrees is to be provided.

viii) For fishing vessels less than 24 m (79 ft), the stability criteria is specially considered.

Note: *This criterion requires that the sum of the area under the righting arm curve to 30 degrees and the righting arm curve between 30 degrees and 40 degrees or 30 degrees and the angle of downflooding be greater than 0.090 meter-radians (16.9 ft-degrees). This means that either or both of these areas is to be greater than that specified in [3.1ii.]) and [3.1iii.]).

FIGURE 1
Intact Stability Criteria for Fishing Vessels *(2024)*



3.3 Alternate Criteria *(2024)*

Where the vessel's characteristics are such that the above criteria in [3.1] cannot be met, the following criteria may be used:

i) The area under the righting arm curve is not to be less than 0.070 meter-radians (13.1 ft-degrees) up to an angle of 15 degrees when the maximum righting arm occurs at 15 degrees, and 0.055 meter-radians (10.3 ft-degrees) up to an angle of 30 degrees when the maximum righting arm occurs at 30 degrees or above. Where the maximum righting arm occurs at angles of between 15 degrees and 30 degrees, the corresponding area under the righting arm curve is to be:

$0.055 + 0.001\,(30 - \theta_{max})$	meter-radians **
$10.3 + 0.187\,(30 - \theta_{max})$	ft-degrees

** θ_{max} is the angle of heel in degrees at which the righting arm curve reaches its maximum.

ii) The area under the righting arm curve between the angles of heel 30 degrees and 40 degrees, or between 30 degrees and θ_f, where this angle is less than 40 degrees, is to be not less than 0.03 meter-radians (5.6 ft-degrees).

iii) The area under the righting arm curve is not to be less than 0.090 meter-radians (16.9 ft-degrees) up to an angle of heel of 40 degrees or the angle of downflooding (θ_f), where this angle is less than 40 degrees.

iv) The righting arm is to be at least 0.2 m (0.66 ft) at an angle of heel equal to or greater than 30 degrees.

v) The maximum righting arm is to occur at an angle of heel not less than 15 degrees.

vi) The initial GM is to be not less than 0.35 m (1.15 ft). The required initial GM is to be reduced to at least 0.15 m (0.5 ft) for vessels having a full length superstructure or for any vessel with a length of 70 m (229.7 ft) or greater.

vii) A minimum range of stability of 60 degrees is to be provided.

viii) For fishing vessels less than 24 m (79 ft), the criteria indicated above is specially considered.

5 Severe Wind and Rolling Criteria

5.1 General *(2024)*

The fishing vessel is to meet the severe wind and rolling criteria, indicated in Part B Section 2.1.4 of the IMO Intact Stability Code, 2008, as summarized below and illustrated in [FIGURE 2] .

i) The vessel is assumed to be subjected to a steady wind pressure acting perpendicular to the vessel's centerline which results in a steady wind heeling arm (L_{w1}). The vessel heels to an angle of equilibrium (θ_0) which is not to exceed 16 degrees or 80% of the angle of deck edge immersion, whichever is less.

ii) From the resultant angle of equilibrium (θ_0), the vessel is assumed to roll due to wave action to an angle of roll (θ_1) to windward.

iii) The vessel is then subjected to a gust wind pressure which results in a gust wind heeling arm (L_{w2}).

iv) Under these circumstances, area "b" is to be equal to or greater than area "a".

v) Free surface effects are to be accounted for in the standard conditions of loading, as discussed in 3-3-1/9.

vi) The angles in [FIGURE 2] are defined as follows:

θ_0 = angle of heel under action of steady wind (i.e., the intersection of the wind heeling arm curve, L_{w1}, and the righting arm curve)

θ_1 = angle of roll to windward due to wave action

θ_2 = angle of downflooding (θ_f) or 50 degrees or θ_{c2}, whichever is less

θ_3 = angle of heel at which openings in the hull, superstructures or deckhouses which cannot be closed weathertight immerse. In applying this criterion, small openings through which progressive flooding cannot take place need not be considered as open

θ_{c1} = angle of first intercept of wind heeling arm curve, L_{w2}, and righting arm curve

θ_{c2} = angle of second intercept of wind heeling arm curve, L_{w2}, and righting arm curve

vii) The wind heeling arms L_{w1} and L_{w2}, referred to above, are constant values at all angles of inclination and are to be calculated as shown below:

$$L_{w1} = \frac{PAZ}{\Delta} \text{ m(ft)}$$

$$L_{w2} = 1.5L_{w1} \text{m (ft)}$$

where

P = 0.0514 t/m^2 (0.0047 Lt/ft^2) for vessels 45 m (147.6 ft) in length and over
For vessels between 24.0 m (79 ft) and 45 m (147.6 ft) in length, the values of P are to be taken from the following table:

h (m)	1	2	3	4	5	6 and up
p (t/m^2)	0.0322	0.0394	0.0438	0.0469	0.0494	0.0514
p (LT/ft^2)	0.00294	0.00360	0.00400	0.00428	0.00452	0.00470

A = projected lateral area of the portion of the vessel and deck cargo above the waterline, m^2 (ft^2)

Z = vertical distance from the center of A to the center of the underwater lateral area or approximately to a point at one half the draft, m (ft)

h = vertical distance from the center of the projected lateral area of the vessel above the waterline to the waterline, m (ft)

Δ = displacement, metric tons (long tons)

viii) The angle of roll (θ_1) is to be calculated as follows:

$$\theta_1 = 109kX_1X_2\sqrt{rs} \text{degrees}$$

where

X_1 = factor as shown in [TABLE 1]

X_2 = factor as shown in [TABLE 2]

k = factor as follows:

= 1.0 for round bilge vessel having no bilge or bar keels

= 0.7 for a vessel having sharp bilges

= as shown in [TABLE 3] for a vessel having bilge keels, a bar keel or both

r = $0.73 + 0.6OG/d$

with

OG = distance between the center of gravity and waterline, m (ft) (+ where center of gravity is above the waterline, – where it is below)

d = mean design draft of the vessel, m (ft)

s = factor as shown in [TABLE 4] .

Rolling Period

$$T = \frac{2.0CB}{\sqrt{GM}} \text{ sec.(SI/MKSunits)}$$

$$T = \frac{1.108CB}{\sqrt{GM}} \text{ sec.(U.S.units)}$$

where

C = $0.373 + 0.023(B/d) - 0.043(L/100)$(SI/MKSunits)

= $0.373 + 0.023(B/d) - 0.000131L$(U.S.units)

The symbols in [TABLE 1] to [TABLE 4] , below, and formula for the rolling period are defined as follows:

L = waterline length of the vessel, m (ft)

B = molded breath amidships of the vessel, m (ft)

d = mean molded draft of the vessel, m (ft)

C_b = block coefficient

A_k = total overall area of bilge keels, or area of the lateral projection of the bar keel, or sum of these areas, m^2 (ft^2)

GM = metacentric height corrected for free surface effect, m (ft)

The angle of roll for vessels provided with active anti-rolling devices is to be determined without taking into account the operation of these devices. For vessels with anti-roll tanks, the full free surface effect of the tanks is to be used to determine the GM value used in calculating the angle of roll.

FIGURE 2
Severe Wind and Rolling Criteria

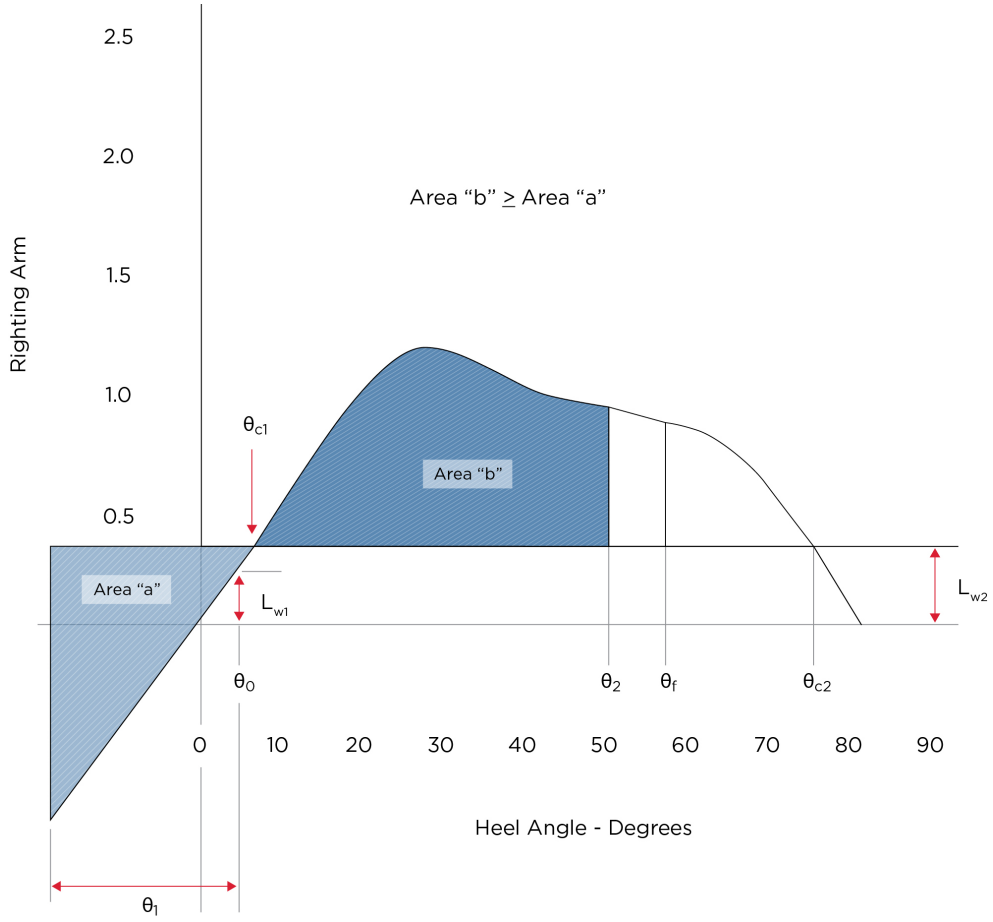


TABLE 1
Values of factor X_1

B/d	X_1
≤2.4	1.00
2.5	0.98
2.6	0.96
2.7	0.95
2.8	0.93
2.9	0.91
3.0	0.90
3.1	0.88
3.2	0.86
3.3	0.84

B/d	X_1
3.4	0.82
≥ 3.5	0.80

TABLE 2
Values of factor X_2

C_b	X_2
≤0.45	0.75
0.50	0.82
0.55	0.89
0.60	0.95
0.65	0.97
≥0.70	1.00

TABLE 3
Values of factor k

$\frac{Ak100}{LB}$	*k*
0.0	1.00
1.0	0.98
1.5	0.95
2.0	0.88
2.5	0.79
3.0	0.74
3.5	0.72
≥ 4.0	0.70

TABLE 4
Values of factor *s*

T	*s*
≤6	0.100
7	0.098
8	0.093
12	0.065

T	*s*
14	0.053
16	0.044
18	0.038
≥ 20	0.035

(Intermediate values in [TABLE 1] through [TABLE 4] should be obtained by linear interpolation.)

Commentary:

According to Part A Section 2.3.5 of the IMO Intact Stability Code, 2008, the tables and formulae described in 3-3-A3/5.1.viii) are based on data from ships having:

1 *B*/*d* smaller than 3.5;

2 (*KG*/*d* - 1) between - 0.3 and 0.5; and

3 *T* smaller than 20 s.

For ships with parameters outside of the above limits, the angle of roll, (θ_1) may be determined model experiments according to the procedure described in MSC.1/Circ.1200. In addition, such alternative determinations may be accepted for any ship if deemed acceptable.

End of Commentary

7 Treatment of Lifting Weights and Heeling Moments Due to Fishing Gear

7.1 General

When a weight is lifted from the deck or a fishing net filled with fish is lifted from the water, the weight then acts at the tip of the boom and is to be considered in developing the VCG and the righting arm curves.

The stability information is to contain the details of the lifting gear including the maximum heeling moments and other information for the crew to avoid exceeding the allowable lifting loads and/or heeling moments used in the stability calculations.

7.3 Definitions

As used in this section:

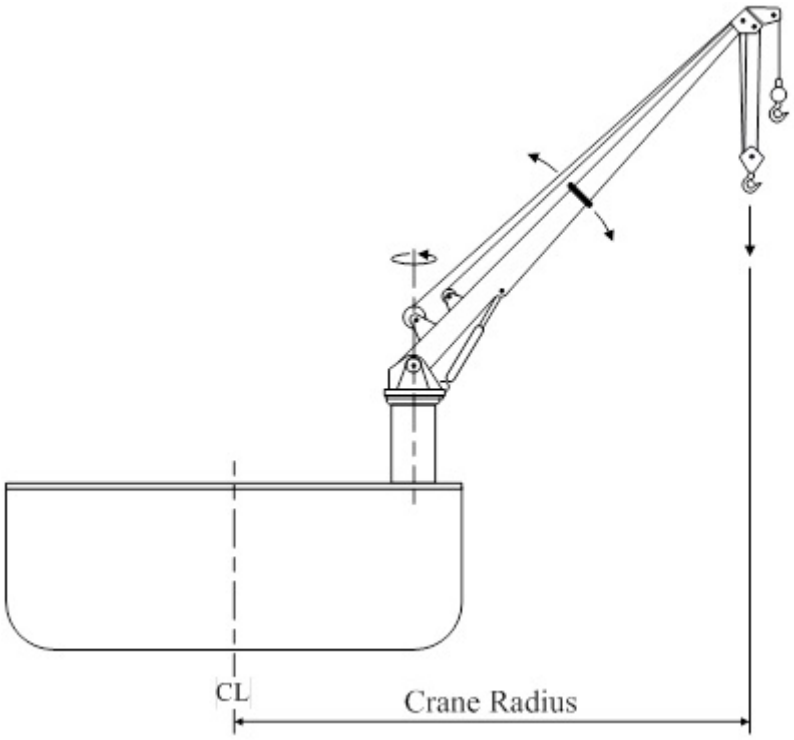
i) Hook load means the weight of the object (i.e., fishing net with catch, crab pot, etc.) lifted by the crane.

ii) Crane radius means the distance illustrated in [FIGURE 3] .

iii) Crane Heeling Moment is the maximum heeling moment developed by multiplying the weight of the hook load and boom by the horizontal distance from vessel's centerline to the hook load and boom center of gravity, respectively, considering the full range of crane elevations and weights. The resulting heeling moment is to be converted to a heeling arm at zero degrees by dividing it by the vessel displacement. The heeling arm is to be assumed constant for all heel angles.
If multiple cranes are used simultaneously, the Crane Heeling Moment shall include the maximum heeling moment created by each crane.

iv) The equilibrium heel angle is the angle of heel under the combined effects of the hook load, counter-ballasting and a beam wind.

FIGURE 3
Crane Radius



7.5 Heeling Moment Due to Onboard Crane Use

7.5.1

The stability of each vessel that uses onboard crane(s) for fishing operations is to be evaluated for the effects of the heeling moments. Stability calculations are to include the following considerations when showing compliance with the requirements in [7.5.2] :

i) Crane Heeling Moment, and

ii) The effect of beam wind on the projected area of the vessel (including deck cargo) is to be evaluated for 25.7 m/s (50 kn) wind speed. Should a lesser wind speed be used, that wind speed shall be listed in the trim and stability booklet as an operational restriction during lifting operations.
The heeling arm, which shall remain constant for all heel angles, shall be calculated as:
$HA = (P \times A \times H)/\Delta$
where

A = projected lateral area, in square meters (square feet), of all exposed surfaces (including deck cargo), in the upright condition

H = vertical distance, in meters (feet), from the center of A to the center of the underwater lateral area or approximately to the one-half draft point.

Δ = displacement of the vessel with the hook load included, in metric tons (long tons)

P = wind pressure, calculated as:

= $fV_k^2 C_h C_s$ N/m^2 (kgf/m^2, lbf/ft^2)

f = 0.611 (0.0623, 0.00338)

V_k = wind velocity in m/s (m/s, kn)

C_s = 1.0, shape coefficient

C_h = height coefficient from [TABLE 5]

TABLE 5
Values of C_h

H (Meters)	*H (Feet)*	C_h
0.0–15.3	0–50	1.00
15.3–30.5	50–100	1.10
30.5–46.0	100–150	1.20
46.0–61.0	150–200	1.30
61.0–76.0	200–250	1.37
76.0–91.5	250–300	1.43
91.5 and above	300 and above	1.48

7.5.2

As illustrated in [FIGURE 4] , each vessel is to have a righting arm curve with the following characteristics:

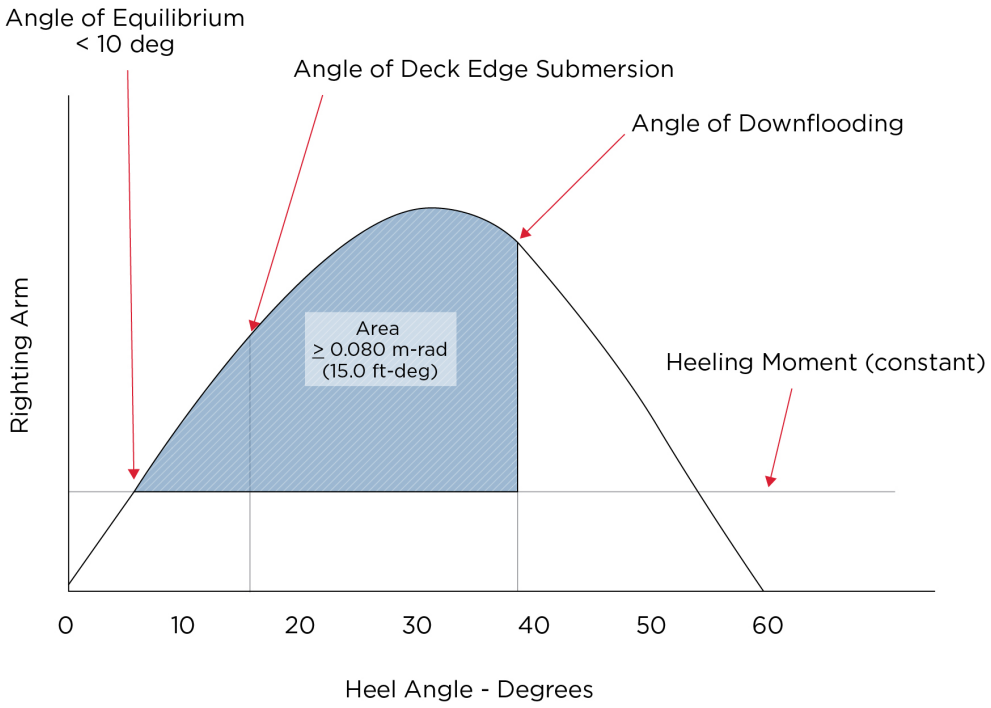
i) The area under the righting arm curve from the equilibrium heel angle up to the smallest of the following angles is to be at least 0.080 meter-radians (15 foot-degrees):

- ***a)*** The downflooding angle
- ***b)*** 40 degrees

ii) The deck edge should not be submerged at the equilibrium heel angle.

iii) The equilibrium heel angle is not to exceed 10 degrees.

FIGURE 4
Lifting Criteria

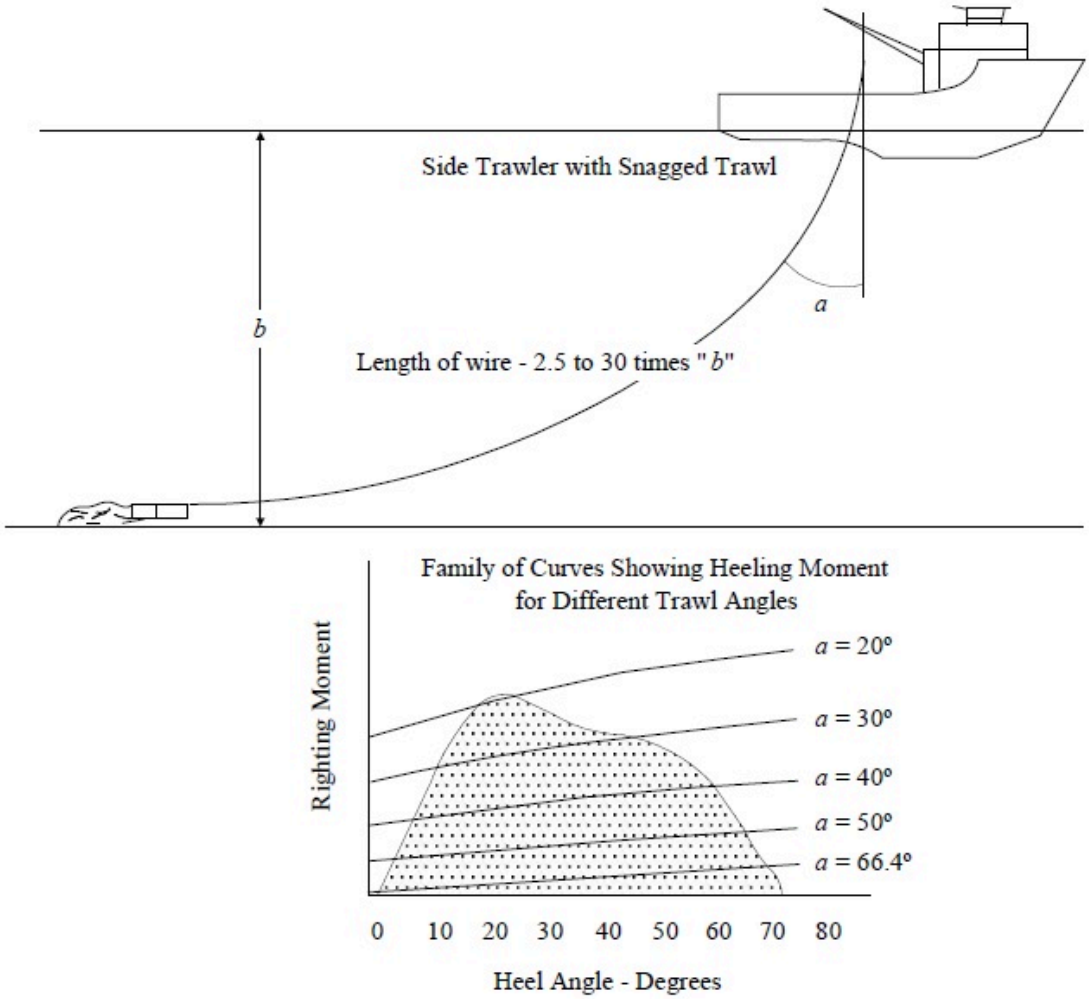


7.7 Heeling Moment Due to Fishing Gear *(2024)*

i) The expected maximum heeling moments imposed by trawling or seining, for instance, are to be evaluated by the designer and included in the stability analysis.

ii) The effect of a trawl snagging on the bottom (and the vessel's attempt to clear the snag) is to be considered for the stability analysis

FIGURE 5
Calculating the Effect of a Fastened Trawl



iii) The stability booklet is to include the following information as guidance for the Master. It is to be avoiced to release fastened trawl by rapidly increasing the engine thrust or suddenly increasing the power on the winch, which may cause the vessel to capsize.

Commentary:

Regarding the effect a trawl snagging on the bottom (and the vessel's attempt to clear the snag), when the trawl becomes snagged, the potential heeling moment can exceed the righting moment. 3-3-A3/Figure 5 shows a family of heeling moment curves for a given propeller thrust and vessel trawl geometry imposed on a righting arm curve. The illustration is not intended to be numerically specific, but is instead presented to show how operational practices should be considered in developing stability information.

The heeling moment increases for decreasing trawl angles α, where α is the angle which the trawl wire makes with the vertical. The magnitude of the heeling moment is a function of the trawl angle, which is in turn a function of the wire length and the water depth. Since normal practice is to shorten up the trawl wire and use power to break the trawl free, the angle at which the wire trails can be significantly reduced as the vessel moves towards the location of the snag.

The stability information should warn the operators that attempting to release a fastened trawl by rapidly increasing the engine thrust or suddenly increasing the power on the winch may cause the vessel to capsize. Consideration should be given to the need for quick-release devices on winches and other lifting equipment.

End of Commentary

9 Standard Loading Conditions

9.1 Loading Conditions

The following assumed loading conditions are to be investigated for each fishing vessel as a minimum:

i) Departure condition from port with full fuel, water, stores, ice, fishing gear (including pot load or other gear on deck), etc.

ii) Arrival at the fishing grounds with reduced fuel, water and stores, ice, fishing gear (including pot load or other gear on deck) and no catch (the amount of fuel, water and stores based on the distance to the fishing area).

iii) At the fishing grounds with 50 percent fuel, water and stores, cargo holds empty and either the maximum deck load on deck or the holds 50 percent full, whichever is consistent with the vessel's fishing method).

iv) Departure from the fishing grounds with reduced fuel, water, and stores and full catch.

v) Departure from the fishing grounds with reduced fuel, water, and stores and 20 percent of full catch.

vi) Arrival at home port with 10 percent fuel, water and stores, and full catch including any weights to be lifted or suspended and their effects on stability.

vii) Arrival at home port with 10 percent fuel, water, and stores and 20 percent of full catch.

viii) Other loading conditions in which the vessel may be operated, such as other partial catch and tank loading combinations, with deck loads, using boxes to store fish, while lifting, in ballast and during periods of icing.

9.3 Load Considerations

The following considerations are to be included in assessing loading conditions.

i) In addition to the loading conditions noted above, loading conditions are to be calculated for any other unusual loads or operating practices not considered by the criteria which may have an effect on the vessel being designed.

ii) Operating conditions which may seriously impair the stability of the vessel are to be brought to the attention of the operator and recommended practical corrective measures are to be included in the stability information furnished to the operator.

iii) When calculating operating conditions, the weight of all fishing gear on deck in that condition (i.e., wet nets, tackle, pots, traps, etc.) is to be included.

iv) Where the vessel operates in areas where ice accretion is likely to occur, the icing loads in [11.11] are to be included.

v) The cargo may be assumed to be homogeneous unless this is inconsistent with practice.

vi) Deck cargo is to be included.

vii) The free surface of slack ballast tanks or fish wells is to be accounted for if it is present in normal operations.

viii) Where normal practice is to stow fish so that one end of the hold is loaded higher, then the increase in VCG is to be accounted for.

11 Design and Operating Factors Affecting Stability *(1 July 2020)*

The following design considerations, environmental forces and operating conditions which affect the stability of each fishing vessel are to be considered when developing the stability calculations and appropriate instructions are to be included in the stability information furnished to the master.

11.1 Calculation of Righting Arms

i) The hull designs of fishing vessels, with house forward and working areas aft, generally cause the vessel to change draft and trim significantly as it is heeled. When calculating the loading conditions, the righting arms are to be determined assuming the initial trim and using constant trimming moments (free to trim).

ii) Superstructures and deck houses may be included in the buoyant volume where the structure is weathertight and of sufficient strength, and where all openings in the sides and ends are weathertight, and all portlights and windows, including those fitted in doors, are to have deadlight covers.

iii) Stern ramps are to be deducted from the buoyant volume.

iv) Bulwarks are not to be included in the buoyant volume.

11.3 Ballast

i) Ballast is normally used to improve the stability of the vessel. However, depending on the location of the ballast, it can either raise or lower the center of gravity of a vessel. Ballast may also decrease the reserve buoyancy of a given vessel and can adversely change the trim of the vessel.

ii) Where it is the intent to ballast during ballast operations, the free surface effect will exist during the interim period until the ballast tank is pressed up is to be considered in developing the stability data.

iii) The installation of permanent ballast is to be verified by the attending Surveyor. Permanent ballast is not to be removed without notifying ABS and evaluating the effect on stability.

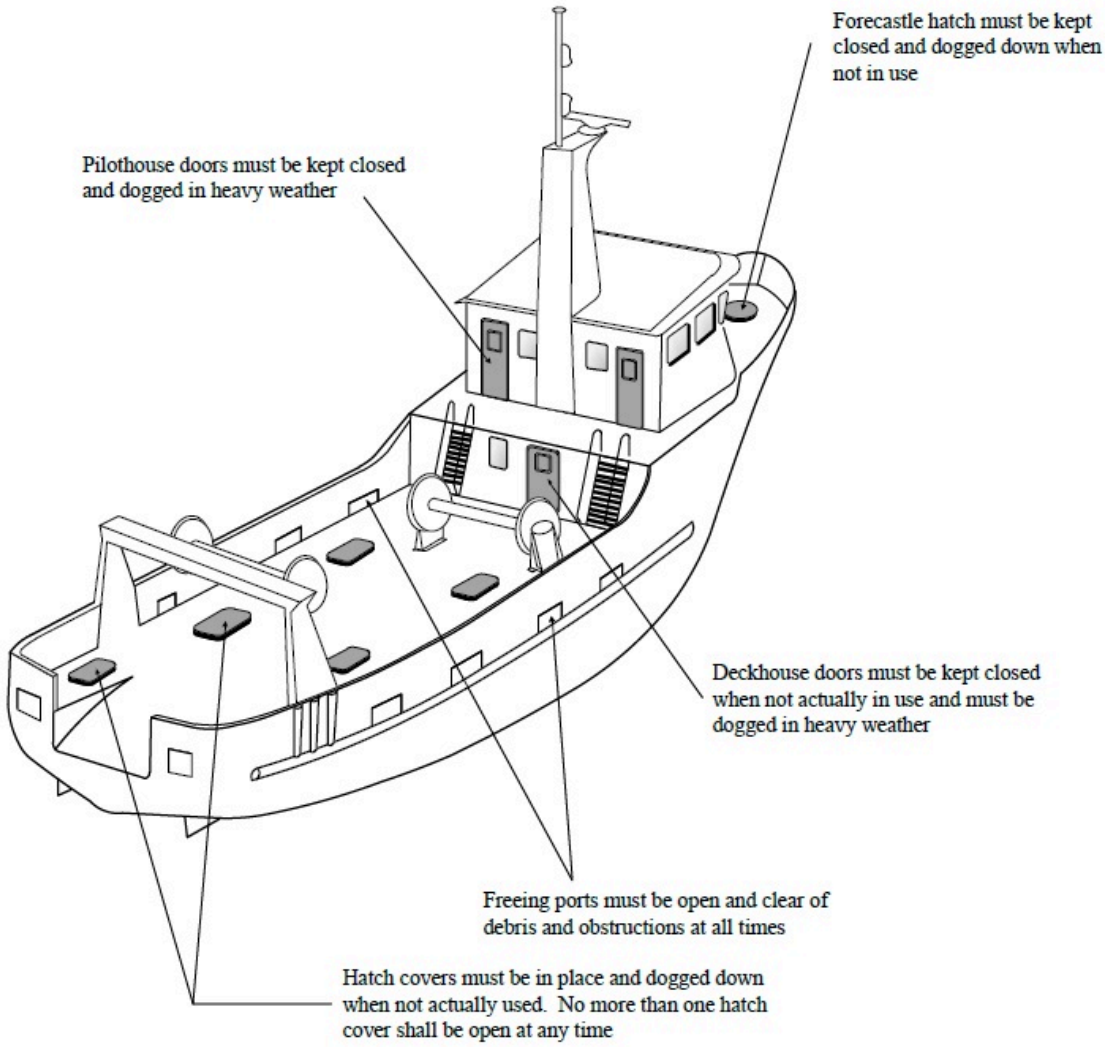
11.5 Watertight Integrity and Flooding *(2024)*

i) Watertight closures that can be quickly closed and easily maintained are to be provided to hull to meet the stability criteria and provide an efficient fishing platform.

ii) All closures which must be opened at sea are to be kept as far inboard and as high as possible in order to maximize the angle at which downflooding occurs.

iii) Instructions to the master are to be provided to keep all watertight closures closed except when actually being used. These closures are to be clearly labeled “This opening is to be kept closed except when actually being used.” or similar. A diagram showing the location to all watertight closures is to be placed aboard the vessel in the Stability Information provided to the operator. An example of this is shown in [FIGURE 6] .

FIGURE 6
Diagram of Key Watertight Closures



Commentary:

The angle of heel at which progressive flooding of fish-holds could occur through hatches which remain open during fishing operations and which cannot rapidly be closed should be at least 20° unless the stability criteria of [3] to [7] can be satisfied with the respective fish-holds partially or completely flooded (Chapter 3, Regulation 3 of International Regulations for the Safety of Fishing Vessels (Annex to the Final Act of the International Conference on Safety of Fishing Vessels, 1993 by MSC 92/11/1)).

Doors in forecastle, poop, and deckhouse end bulkheads should not be located near the side of the vessel, where they could be immersed at low angle of heel. They should be located as close to the ship centerline as possible, so that the angle of downflooding is considerably increased with a resultant increase in safety.

End of Commentary

11.7 Icing *(2024)*

i) Where the vessel operates in areas where ice accretion is likely to occur, the vessel's conditions of loading given in [9] shall include the icing allowance in either [11.11ii. a. b.]) or [11.11iii.]) when they are evaluated for compliance with the applicable intact and damage stability requirements.

ii) The minimum weights of ice are:

a) The weight of ice on all exposed horizontal surfaces, such as exposed weather decks and gangways, is to be at least 30 kg/m^2 (6.14 lbs/ft^2).

b) The weight of ice of the projected vertical area above the waterline is to be at least 15 kg/m^2 (3.07 lbs/ft^2). This accounts for 7.5 kg/m^2 (1.54 lbs/ft^2) on both the port and starboard vertical surfaces.

Plans showing projected horizontal and vertical areas are to be submitted.

iii) The weight of ice recommended by the Administration where the vessel is intended to operate (such as the Transport Canada – Marine Safety requirements for vessels operating in their waters), may be substituted for [11.11ii. a. b.]).

iv) The height of the center of gravity of the accumulated ice is to be located according to the position of the corresponding horizontal surfaces (decks and gangways) and other continuous surfaces on which ice can reasonably expected to accumulate. The projected lateral area of small discontinuous surfaces such as rails, spars, and rigging with no sails is to be accounted for by increasing the calculated area by 5 percent and the static moments of the area by 10 percent.

Commentary:

For operation areas where ice accretion is likely to occur, please see the guidance in Part B, 6.3.2 of IMO Code on Intact Stability2008, as amended.

End of Commentary

11.9 Water on Deck *(2024)*

The IMO Guidance as a means of evaluating the residual stability of the vessel with water on deck is to be complied with as below.

i) The ability of the vessel to withstand the heeling effect due to the presence of water on deck is to be demonstrated by showing that with the vessel in the worst operating condition, the ratio of area "b" to area "a" shown in [FIGURE 7] is not to be less than 1.0. That is, it satisfies the following equation in the worst operating condition:

$$C_{wod} = \frac{\text{area}''\text{b}''}{\text{area}''\text{a}''} \geq 1.0$$

ii) The angle which limits area "b" is to be equal to the downflooding angle θ_f or 40 degrees, whichever is less.

iii) The value of the heeling moment M_{wod} (or the corresponding heeling arm) due to the presence of water on deck is to be determined assuming that the deck well is filled to the top of the bulwark at its lowest point and the vessel heeled up to the angle at which this point is immersed (see [FIGURE 8]). For the determination of M_{wod} the following formula is to be used:

$$M_{wod} = KM_w$$

where

M_w = static heeling moment due to water on deck

K = coefficient

a) Where M_{wod} is determined by static approach, K = 1.0 may be applied.

b) Where M_{wod} is determined by quasi-static approach, K may take into account the rolling period of the vessel and the dynamic effect of the water flow, including the effect of the disposition and configuration of the deck wells and deckhouses. The value of K is to be satisfactory, taking into account the type of vessel, area of operation, etc. For vessels

where the angle of deck edge immersion θ_D is less than 10° to 15°, or the angle of bulwark top immersion θ_B is less than 20° to 25°, a value for K greater than 1.0 may be applied. When θ_D is greater than 20° or θ_B is greater than 30°, a value for K less than 1.0 may be applied.

iv) When calculating M_{wod} the following assumptions are to be made:

a) At the beginning the vessel is in upright position;

b) During heeling, trim and displacement are constant and equal to the values for the vessel without water on deck;

c) The effect of freeing ports is to be ignored.

v) The above provisions may be adjusted, taking into account the seasonal weather conditions and sea states in the areas in which the vessels operate, the type of vessel and its mode of operation.

vi) Other methods for the calculation of the effect of water on deck using the dynamic approach may be adopted.

FIGURE 7
Method of Treatment of Water on Deck

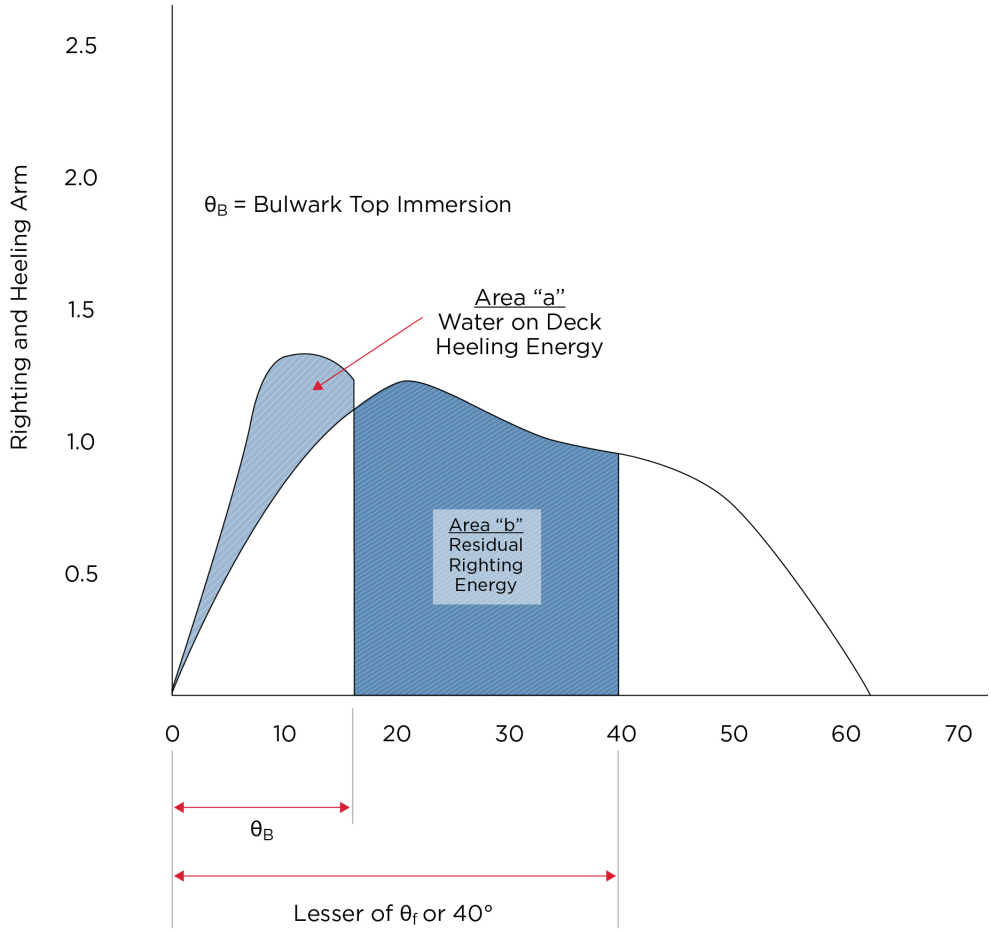
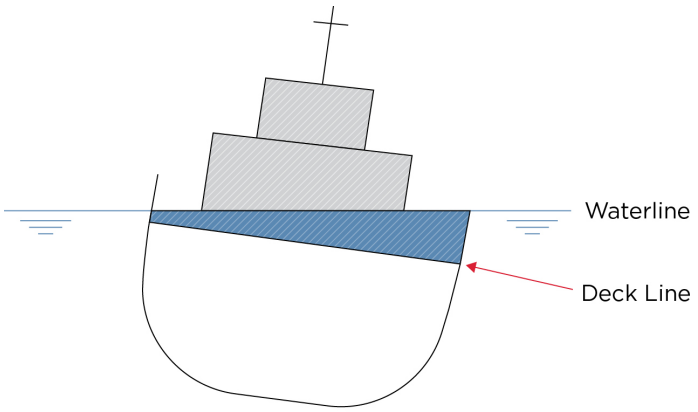


FIGURE 8
Volume of Water to be Included in Calculating Effect of Water on Deck



Note: Deck is filled to top of bulwark and bulwark is immersed.

Commentary:

The above requirements are based on recommendation 1 of attachment 3 to the Final Act of the International Conference on Safety of Fishing Vessels, 1993 by MSC 92/11/1.

End of Commentary

13 Stability Guidance for the Master

13.1

Each vessel is to be provided with stability information in a format acceptable to ABS. The format may be pictorial, tabular, simplified trim and stability booklet or other format that will provide a rapid means for the crew to evaluate the stability of the vessel.

13.3 *(2024)*

Each trim and stability book is to contain sufficient information to enable the Master to operate the vessel in compliance with the applicable intact and damage stability requirements in Appendices 3-3-A3 and 3-3-A6. Information on loading restrictions used to determine compliance with applicable intact and damage stability criteria is to encompass the entire range of operating drafts and the entire range of the operating trims.

The format of the trim and stability booklet and the information included will vary based on the vessel type and operation. Units of measure used in the trim and stability booklet are to agree with the units of measure of the draft markings.

i) The trim and stability booklet is to contain the information specified in 3-3-1/13.

ii) Intact and damage stability calculations supporting the maximum KG or minimum GM curve are to be contained in a separate document and not included in the trim and stability booklet.

iii) The maximum permissible operating draft associated with each operating condition and, when appropriate, the minimum required operating draft are to be included in the stability booklet.

iv) The content and format of a simplified trim and stability booklet or simplified operating guidance is to cover the full operating envelope of the vessel and provide the Master with a rapid and simple means to evaluate the stability of the vessel. The format of the guidance (i.e., tank limitations, load restrictions, lifting restrictions, etc.) is reviewed and accepted by ABS on a case-by-case basis.

PART 3

CHAPTER 3
Subdivision and Stability

APPENDIX 4
Subdivision and Damage Stability Requirements for Bulk Carriers

1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1 Goals

The vessel is to be designed, constructed, operated, and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goal*
STAB 2	Have adequate subdivision and stability to provide survivability to damage or accidental conditions.

1.2 Functional Requirements

In order to achieve the above-stated goals, the design, construction, and maintenance of subdivision and stability is to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Stability (STAB)	
STAB-FR1	Vessel is to remain afloat and stable when damage to the hull causes subsequent loss of watertight integrity.
STAB-FR2	Information is to be provided to enable the master by rapid and simple processes to obtain accurate guidance as to the stability and applicable intact and damage stability requirements of the ship under varying conditions of service.

1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

2 General

2.1 Note

Requirements in the following sections, developed based on Regulation XII/4 of SOLAS 1974, as amended, 'Damage Stability Requirements Applicable to Bulk Carriers', are applicable for bulk carriers in the categories described in [TABLE 1] .

TABLE 1
Bulk Carriers 150 m (492 ft) in Length (L_f) and above to Carry Solid Bulk Cargoes

Construction Date	*Skin Type Single or Double Skin*	*Specific Density ≥ kg/m³ (lb/ft³)*	*Damaged Hold*
on or after 1 July 1999	Single	1000 (62.4)	any one cargo hold
on or after 1 July 2006	Double with long'l bhd. located within the lesser of B/5 or 11.5m (37.7 ft)	1000 (62.4)	any one cargo hold
before 1 July 1999	Single	1780 (111.07)	foremost cargo hold

Note: B is the bulk carrier breadth as defined in the International Convention on Load Lines in force.

The application of the requirements from the Regulation is extended as a condition of classification for consistency with the strength/structural requirements under flooded conditions specified in [5C-3-A5a/1] (Longitudinal Strength), [5C-3-A5b/1] (Corrugated Transverse Watertight Bulkheads) and [5C-3-A5c/1] (Permissible Cargo Loads in Holds).

2.3 Applicability

Single side skin bulk carriers of 150 m (492 ft) in length (L_f) and greater, designed to carry solid bulk cargoes having a density of 1780 kg/m³ (111.07 lb/ft³) and above, constructed before 1 July 1999, are, when loaded to the summer load line, to be able to withstand flooding of the foremost cargo hold in all loading conditions and remain afloat in a satisfactory condition of equilibrium, as specified in [3] .

Single side skin bulk carriers of 150 m (492 ft) in length (L_f) and greater, designed to carry solid bulk cargoes having a density of 1000 kg/m³ (62.4 lb/ft.³) and above are, when loaded to the summer load line, to be able to withstand flooding of any one cargo hold of single side skin construction in all loading conditions and remain afloat in a satisfactory condition of equilibrium, as specified in [3] .

Double side Bulk carriers of 150 m (492 ft) in length (L_f) and upwards in which any part of longitudinal bulkhead is located within B/5 or 11.5 m (37.73 ft), whichever is less, inboard from vessel's side at right angle to the centerline at the assigned Summer Load Line, designed to carry solid bulk cargoes having a density of 1,000 kg/m³ (62.4 lb/ft³) and above, constructed on or after 1 July 2006, is to, when loaded to the Summer Load Line, be able to withstand flooding of any one cargo hold in all loading conditions and remain afloat in a satisfactory condition of equilibrium, as specified in [3] .

3 Damage Stability Criteria

The condition of equilibrium after flooding is to satisfy the condition of equilibrium laid down in Regulation 27 as per the 1988 Protocol to the International Convention on Load Lines, 1966, as amended.

The assumed flooding need only take into account flooding of the cargo hold space. The permeability of a loaded hold is to be assumed as 0.9 and the permeability of an empty hold is to be assumed as 0.95, unless permeability relevant to a particular cargo is assumed for the volume of a flooded hold occupied by cargo and permeability of 0.95 is assumed for the remaining empty volume of the hold.

5 Bulk Carriers with a Reduced Freeboard

Alternatively, bulk carriers which have been assigned a reduced freeboard in compliance with the provisions of paragraph (8) of the Regulation Equivalent to Regulation 27 of the International Convention on Load Lines, 1966, adopted by Resolution A.320(IX), as amended by Resolution A.514(13) may be considered as complying with [1.3] .

On bulk carriers which have been assigned reduced freeboard in compliance with the provisions of Regulation 27(8) set out in Annex B of the International Convention on Load Lines, 1966, as modified by the Protocal of 1988, as amended, the condition of equilibrium after flooding is to satisfy the relevant provisions of the Convention.

PART 3

CHAPTER 3
Subdivision and Stability

APPENDIX 5
Damage Stability Requirements for Offshore Supply Vessels

1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1 Goals

The vessel is to be designed, constructed, operated, and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goal*
STAB 2	Have adequate subdivision and stability to provide survivability to damage or accidental conditions.

1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above-stated goals, the design, construction, and maintenance of subdivision and stability is to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Stability (STAB)	
STAB-FR1	Remain afloat and stable when damage to the hull causes subsequent loss of watertight integrity.
STAB-FR2	Provide information to enable the master by rapid and simple processes to obtain accurate guidance as to the stability and applicable intact and damage stability requirements of the ship under varying conditions of service.

1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

2 General

Taking into account, as initial conditions before flooding all of the standard loading conditions as referred to in 3-3-A2/5 and the damage assumptions in [3] , the vessel is to comply with the damage stability criteria as specified in [5] .

3 Damage Assumptions for OSV of less than 100 Meters *(2024)*

3.1 *(2024)*

The assumed extent of damage is to be as follows:

i) Damage is to be assumed to occur anywhere in the vessel's length between transverse watertight bulkheads. The longitudinal extent of damage is:

- ***a)*** For a vessel the keel of which is laid or which is at a similar stage of construction* before 22 November 2012:
  with length (L_f **) not greater than 43 m (141 ft): 10% of L_f; and
  with length (L_f) greater than 43 m (141 ft): 3 m (10 ft) plus 3% of L_f;
- ***b)*** For a vessel the keel of which is laid or which is at a similar stage of construction on or after 22 November 2012:
  with length (L_f) not greater than 43 m (141 ft): 10% of L_f;
  with length (L_f) greater than 43 m (141 ft) and less than 80 m (262.5 ft): 3 m (10 ft) plus 3% of L_f; and
  with length (L_f) from 80 m (262.5 ft) to 100 m (328 ft): 1/3 $L_f^{2/3}$;

ii) The vertical extent of damage is to be assumed from the underside of the cargo deck, or the continuation thereof, for the full depth of the vessel.

iii) The transverse extent of damage is:

- ***a)*** For a vessel the keel of which is laid or which is at a similar stage of construction before 22 November 2012:
  760 mm (30 in.) measured inboard from the side of the vessel perpendicularly to the centerline at the level of the summer load waterline;
- ***b)*** For a vessel the keel of which is laid or which is at a similar stage of construction on or after 22 November 2012:
  with length (L_f) less than 80 m (262.5 ft): 760 mm (30 in.); and
  with length (L_f) from 80 m to 100 m (262.5 ft to 328 ft): *B*/20, but not less than 760 mm (30 in.);

3.3 *(2024)*

If pipes, ducts or tunnels are situated within the assumed extent of damage, arrangements are to be made to prevent progressive flooding from extending to compartments other than those assumed to be floodable for each case of damage.

3.5 *(2024)*

If damage of a lesser extent than that specified in 3-3-A5/3.i), 3-3-A5/3.ii), and 3-3-A5/3.iii) results in a more severe condition, such lesser extent is to be assumed.

3.7 *(2024)*

Where a transverse watertight bulkheadis located within the transverse extent of assumed damage and is stepped in way of a double bottom or side tank by more than 3.05 m (10 ft), the double bottom or side

tanks adjacent to the steeped portion of the transverse watertight bulkheads is to be considered as flooded simultaneously.

3.9 *(2024)*

If the distance between adjacent transverse watertight bulkheads or the distance between the transverse planes passing through the nearest stepped portions of the bulkheads is less than the longitudinal extent of damage given in *i*), only one of these bulkheads should is to be regarded as effective.

3.11 *(2024)*

The forecastle space need not be assumed damaged if the continuation of the cargo deck forward is capable of being secured watertight.

3.13 *(2024)*

For a vessel operating in well stimulation service, the assumed damage occurs anywhere in the vessel's length at any transverse watertight bulkhead.

Commentary:

i The requirements of 3-3-A5/3 are based on the Resolution MSC.235(82) and MSC.335(90).

ii L_f is the freeboard length, as defined in 3-1-1/3.3.

iii A similar stage of construction means the stage at which:

a) Construction identifiable with a specific ship begins; and

b) Assembly of that ship has commenced comprising at least 50 tons (49 Long tons) or one percent of the estimated mass of all structural material, whichever is less.

End of Commentary

5 Criteria

5.1 OSV – General

The following damage stability criteria are to be satisfied for offshore support vessels except for those of characters indicated in [5.3] :

i) The final waterline, taking into account sinkage, heel and trim, is to be below the lower edge of any opening through which progressive flooding may take place. Such openings are to include air pipes and those openings which are capable of being closed by means of weather-tight doors or hatch covers and exclude those openings closed by means of watertight manhole covers and flush scuttles, small watertight cargo tank hatch covers which maintain the high integrity of the deck, remotely operated watertight sliding doors, and side scuttles of the non-opening type.

ii) In the final stage of flooding, the angle of heel due to unsymmetrical flooding is not to exceed 15°. This angle may be increased up to 17° if no deck immersion occurs.

iii) The stability in the final stage of flooding is to be investigated and may be regarded as sufficient if the righting lever curve has a positive range of at least 20° beyond the position of equilibrium in association with a maximum residual righting lever of at least 100 mm (3.9 in.) within this range. Unprotected openings are not to become immersed at an angle of heel within the prescribed minimum range of residual stability unless the space in question has been included as a floodable space in calculations for damage stability. Within this range, immersion of any of the openings referred to in [5.1i.]) and any other openings capable of being closed weather-tight may be authorized.

iv) The vessel is to maintain sufficient stability during intermediate stages of flooding.

5.3 OSV – Special Purpose

Special Purpose offshore support vessels (see definitions in 5D-1-2) are to satisfy the following damage stability criteria:

5.3.1 *(2024)*

The subdivision and damage stability of special purpose ships is in general to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-1 where the ship is considered a passenger ship, and special personnel are considered passengers, with an R-value calculated in accordance with IMO MSC.408(96) as follows:

i) Where the ship is certified to carry 240 persons or more, the R-value is assigned as R;

ii) Where the ship is certified to carry not more than 60 persons, the R-value is assigned as 0.8R; and

iii) For more than 60 (but not more than 240) persons, the R-value is to be determined by linear interpolation between the R-values given in *i)* and *ii)* above

where

$$R = 1 - \frac{5000}{Ls + 2.5N + 15225}$$

$$N = N_1 + 2N_2$$

$N_1 =$ number of persons for whom lifeboats are provided

$N_2 =$ number of persons (including officers and crew) the ship is permitted to carry in excess of N_1

Where the conditions of service are such that compliance with the standard above on the basis of $N = N_1 + 2N_2$ is impracticable and where the Administration considers that a suitably reduced degree of hazard exists, a lesser value of N may be taken but in no case less than $N = N1 + N2$.

Commentary:

- The requirements of 3-3-A5/5.3 are based on the Resolution MSC.266(84) and MSC.408(96).
- *Ls* is the subdivision length, is the greatest projected moulded length of that part of the ship at or below deck or decks limiting the vertical extent of flooding with the ship at the deepest subdivision draught according to regulation 2, Part A of SOLAS II-1.

End of Commentary

5.3.2

For special purpose ships to which *i)* applies, the requirements of SOLAS regulations II-1/8 and II-1/8-1 and of SOLAS Chapter II-1, parts B-2, B-3 and B-4 are to be applied as though the ship is a passenger ship and the special personnel are passengers. However, SOLAS regulations II-1/14 and II-1/18 are not applicable.

5.3.3

For special purpose ships to which *ii)* or *iii)* applies, except as provided in [5.3.4] below, the provisions of SOLAS Chapter II-1, Parts B-2, B-3 and B-4 are to be applied as though the ship is a cargo ship and the special personnel are crew. However, SOLAS regulations II-1/8 and II-1/8-1 need not be applied and SOLAS regulations II-1/14 and II-1/18 are not applicable.

5.3.4

All special purpose ships are to comply with SOLAS regulations II-1/9, II-1/13, II-1/19, II-1/20, II-1/21 and II-1/35-1, as though the ship is a passenger ship.

5.3.5 *(2024)*

The partial indices A_s, A_p and A_ℓ are to be not less than $0.9R$.

Commentary:

Refer to IMO Resolution MSC.429(98) – Revised Explanatory Notes to the SOLAS Chapter II-1 Subdivision and Damage Stability Regulations.

End of Commentary

7 Permeability *(2024)*

The permeability** of compartments assumed to be damaged is to be as follows:

Spaces	*Permeability*
Appropriated to stores	0.60
Occupied by accommodation	0.95
Occupied by machinery	0.85
Void spaces	0.95
Intended for dry cargo	0.95

The permeability of tanks is to be consistent with the amount of liquid carried, as shown in the loading conditions specified in [1]. The permeability of empty tanks is to be assumed to be not less than 0.95.

Commentary:

The permeability of a space means the ratio of the volume within that space, which should be assumed to be occupied by water to the total volume of that space. The total volume should be calculated to the molded lines and no reduction in total volume should be considered due to structural members (i.e., stiffeners, etc.).

End of Commentary

9 Free Surface

The free surface effects are to be calculated in accordance with 3-3-A1/9. Additionally, the free surface effect of a damaged non-consumable tank may be omitted from the damage stability calculations.

11 Subdivision *(2024)*

The machinery spaces, working, cargo and accommodation spaces in the hull are to be separated by bulkheads made watertight up to the freeboard deck.

A collision bulkhead is to be fitted forward, complying with the relevant provisions of 3-2-9/3.1 applicable to cargo ships. In vessels having a long superstructure at the fore end, the collision bulkhead is to extend weather-tight up to the superstructure deck.

An aft peak bulkhead is to be fitted and made watertight up to the freeboard deck. The aft peak bulkhead may be stepped below the freeboard deck provided the degree of safety of the vessel with regard to subdivision is not diminished.

Arrangements made to maintain the watertight integrity of the watertight subdivisions in way of openings therein are to comply with the relevant provisions of Section 3-2-9 applicable to cargo ships.

Commentary:

The requirements of 3-3-A5/5, 7, 9, 11 are based on the Resolution MSC.235(82)

End of Commentary

PART 3

CHAPTER 3
Subdivision and Stability

APPENDIX 6
Damage Stability Requirements for Fishing Vessels

1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1 Goals

The vessel is to be designed, constructed, operated, and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goal*
STAB 2	Have adequate subdivision and stability to provide survivability to damage or accidental conditions.

1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above-stated goals, the design, construction, and maintenance of subdivision and stability is to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Stability (STAB)	
STAB-FR1	Vessel is to remain afloat and stable when damage to the hull causes subsequent loss of watertight integrity.
STAB-FR2	Information is to be provided to enable the master by rapid and simple processes to obtain accurate guidance as to the stability and applicable intact and damage stability requirements of the ship under varying conditions of service.

1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

2 Applicability *(2024)*

Vessels of 100 m (328 ft) or greater in length and where the total number of persons onboard is 100 or more, shall be capable of remaining afloat with positive stability, after flooding of any one compartment assumed damaged.

3 General

Taking into account, as initial conditions before flooding, all of the standard loading conditions (without icing) as referred to in 3-3-A3/9 and the damage assumptions in [5] , the vessel is to comply with the damage stability criteria as specified in [7] .

The maximum allowable KG (or minimum required GM curve) in the trim and stability booklet are to compliance with the damage criteria in 3-3-A3/7. This curve(s) is to cover the full range of operations (Load Line draft to arrival condition, 3-3-A3/9.1.ii.) and the full range of operational trims. The supporting calculations for this curve are to be submitted for ABS review.

5 Damage Assumptions

5.1 *(2024)*

The assumed extent of damage is to be as follows:

i) Damage is to be assumed to occur anywhere in the vessel's length between transverse watertight bulkheads. The longitudinal extent of damage is: $(1/3)\,L_f{}^{2/3}$ m, where L_f is the freeboard length, as defined in 3-1-1/3.3.

ii) The vertical extent of damage is to be assumed from the base line upwards without limit.

iii) The transverse extent of damage is to be assumed as $B/5$ m, measured inboard from the side of the vessel perpendicularly to the centerline at the level of the summer load line.

5.3

The flooding is to be restricted to any single compartment between adjacent transverse bulkheads. If there are steps or recesses in a transverse bulkhead of not more than 3.05 m (10 ft) in length located within the transverse extent of assumed damage, such transverse bulkhead may be considered intact and the adjacent compartments may be flooded singly. Where the step or recess within the transverse extent of damage exceeds 3.05 (10 ft) m in length in a transverse bulkhead, the two compartments adjacent to this bulkhead are to be considered as flooded. The step formed at the junction of the aftpeak bulkhead and the afterpeak tank top is not to be considered as a step.

5.5

If pipes, ducts or tunnels are situated within the assumed extents of damage, arrangements are to be made to ensure that progressive flooding cannot thereby extend to compartments other than those assumed to be floodable for each case of damage.

5.7

If damage of a lesser extent than that specified in [3-3-A6/5i), 3-3-A6/5ii) and 3-3-A6/5iii)] results in a more severe condition, such lesser extent is to be assumed.

5.9

Where a transverse watertight bulkhead is located within the transverse extent of assumed damage and is stepped in way of a double bottom or side tank by more than 3.05 m (10 ft), the double bottom or side tanks adjacent to the stepped portion of the transverse watertight bulkhead is to be considered as flooded simultaneously.

5.11

If the distance between adjacent transverse watertight bulkheads or the distance between the transverse planes passing through the nearest stepped portions of the bulkheads is less than the longitudinal extent of damage given in [5i.] , only one of these bulkheads is to be regarded as effective.

7 Criteria

The following damage stability criteria are to be satisfied:

i) The final waterline, taking into account sinkage, heel, and trim, is to be below the lower edge of any opening through which progressive flooding may take place. Such openings are to include air pipes and those openings which are capable of being closed by means of weather-tight doors or hatch covers and exclude those openings closed by means of watertight manhole covers and flush scuttles, small watertight cargo tank hatch covers which maintain the high integrity of the deck, remotely operated watertight sliding doors, and side scuttles of the non-opening type.

ii) In the final stage of flooding, the angle of heel due to unsymmetrical flooding is not to exceed 20°.

iii) The stability in the final stage of flooding is to be investigated and may be regarded as sufficient if the righting lever curve has a positive range of at least 20° beyond the position of equilibrium in association with a maximum residual righting lever of at least 100 mm (3.9 in.) within this range. The area under the righting arm curve within this range shall not be less than 0.0175 m-rad. Unprotected openings are not to become immersed at an angle of heel within the prescribed minimum range of residual stability unless the space in question has been included as a floodable space in calculations for damage stability. Within this range, immersion of any of the openings referred to in [7i.] and any other openings capable of being closed weather-tight may be authorized.

iv) The initial metacentric height of the damaged vessel in the final condition of flooding for the upright position is not to be less than 50 mm.

v) Unsymmetrical flooding is to be kept to a minimum consistent with efficient arrangements. Where it is necessary to correct large angles of heel, the means is to be automatic. The vessel is to maintain sufficient stability during intermediate stages of flooding.

9 Permeability *(2024)*

The permeability** of compartments assumed to be damaged is to be as follows:

Spaces	*Permeability*
Appropriated to Stores	0.60
Accommodations	0.95
Machinery Spaces	0.85
Void Spaces	0.95
Spaces for Dry Cargo	0.95
Empty Fish Hold	0.95
Full Fish Hold	0.50
Tanks	0.95

Commentary:

The permeability of a space means the ratio of the volume within that space, which should be assumed to be occupied by water to the total volume of that space. The total volume is to be calculated to the molded lines and no reduction in total volume is to be taken into account due to structural members.

End of Commentary

11 Free Surface

The free surface effects are to be calculated in accordance with 3-3-1/9. Additionally, the free surface effect of a damaged non-consumable tank may be omitted from the damage stability calculations.

13 Subdivision *(2024)*

The machinery spaces, working, cargo and accommodation spaces in the hull are to be separated by bulkheads made watertight up to the freeboard deck.

A collision bulkhead is to be fitted forward, complying with the relevant provisions of 3-2-9/3.1 applicable to cargo ships. In vessels having a long superstructure at the fore end, the collision bulkhead is to extend weather-tight up to the superstructure deck.

An aft peak bulkhead is to be fitted and made watertight up to the freeboard deck. The aft peak bulkhead may be stepped below the freeboard deck provided the degree of safety of the vessel with regard to subdivision is not diminished.

Arrangements made to maintain the watertight integrity of the watertight subdivisions in way of openings therein is to comply with the relevant provisions of Section 3-2-9 applicable to cargo ships.

Commentary:

The requirements of Appendix 3-3-A6 are based on the Cape Town Agreement of 2012.

End of Commentary

PART 3

CHAPTER 3
Subdivision and Stability

APPENDIX 7
Computer Software for Onboard Stability Calculations

1 General

1.1 *(2024)*

1.1.1 Goal *(2024)*

The vessel is to be designed, constructed, operated, and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goal*
STAB 6	Provide means to control the overall vessel weight and distribution to maintain adequate trim and stability.

1.1.2 Functional Requirements *(2024)*

To achieve the above stated goals, the design, construction, installation, and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Stability (STAB)	
STAB-FR1	Means are to be provided to enable the Master by rapid and simple processes to obtain accurate guidance as to the stability and applicable intact and damage stability requirements of the ship under varying conditions of service.

1.1.3 Compliance *(2024)*

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

The scope of stability calculation software is to be in accordance with the stability information as approved by the flag Administration or ABS on behalf of the flag Administration. The software is

at least to include all information and perform all calculations or checks as necessary to confirm compliance with the applicable stability requirements.

The approved stability software is not a substitute for the approved stability information, and is used as a supplement to the approved stability information to facilitate stability calculations.

1.3 Design

The input/output information is to be easily comparable with the approved stability information so as to avoid confusion and possible misinterpretation by the operator relative to the approved stability information.

An operation manual is to be provided for the onboard computer stability software.

The language in which the stability information is displayed and printed out, and in which the operation manual is written is to be the same as used in the vessel's approved stability information. The primary language is to be English.

The onboard computer for stability calculations is to be vessel specific equipment and the results of the calculations are to be applicable only to the vessel for which it has been approved.

In case of modifications implying changes in the main data or internal arrangement of the vessel, the specific approval of any original stability calculation software is no longer valid. The software is to be modified accordingly and submitted for re-approval.

3 Calculation Systems

This Appendix covers either system, a passive system that requires manual data entry or an active system, which replaces the manual with the automatic entry with sensors reading and entering the contents of tanks, etc., provided the active system is in the off-line operation mode. However, an integrated system, which controls or initiates actions based on the sensor-supplied inputs is not within the scope of this Appendix.

5 Types of Stability Software

Four types of calculations performed by stability software are acceptable depending upon a vessel's stability requirements:

- Type 1 Software calculating intact stability only (for vessels not required to meet a damage stability criterion)
- Type 2 Software calculating intact stability and checking damage stability on basis of a limit curve (for vessels applicable to SOLAS Part B-1 damage stability calculations, etc.) or checking all the stability requirements (intact and damage stability) on the basis of a limit curve
- Type 3 Software calculating intact stability and damage stability by direct application of preprogrammed damage cases based on the relevant Conventions or Codes for each loading condition (for some tankers, etc.)
- Type 4 Software calculating damage stability associated with an actual loading condition and actual flooding case, using direct application of user defined damage, for the purpose of providing operational information for safe return to port (SRtP).

Damage stability of both Type 3 and Type 4 stability software is to be based on a hull form model, that is, directly calculated from a full three-dimensional geometric model.

7 Functional Requirements

7.1 Calculation Program

The calculation program is to present relevant parameters of each loading condition in order to assist the Master in their judgment on whether the vessel is loaded within the approval limits. The following parameters are to be presented for a given loading condition:

- Deadweight data
- Lightship data
- Trim
- Draft at the draft marks and perpendiculars
- Summary of loading condition displacement, VCG, LCG and, if applicable, TCG
- Downflooding angle and corresponding downflooding opening (not applicable for Type 2 software which uses limit curve for checking all the stability requirements. However, if intact stability criteria are given in addition to the limit curve, the limit values, the obtained values and the conclusion is to be indicated).
- Compliance with stability criteria: Listing of all calculated stability criteria, the limit values, the obtained values and the conclusions (criteria fulfilled or not fulfilled) (not applicable for Type 2 software which uses limit curve for checking all the stability requirements. However, if intact stability criteria are given in addition to the limit curve, the limit values, the obtained values and the conclusion is to be indicated).

7.3 Direct Damage Stability Calculations *(1 July 2021)*

For direct damage stability calculations, the relevant damage cases for both sides of the ship according to the applicable requirements are to be pre-defined for automatic check of a given loading condition.

7.5 Warning

A clear warning is to be given on screen and in hard copy printout if any of the loading limitations are not complied with.

As applicable, loading limitations are to include, but may not be limited to:

- Trim, draft, liquid densities, tank filling levels, initial heel
- Use of limit KG/GM curves in conjunction with above for Type 2
- Restrictions to the stowage height for timber where timber load lines are assigned

7.7 Data Printout

The data are to be presented on screen and in hard copy printout in a clear unambiguous manner.

7.9 Date and Time

The date and time of a saved calculation are to be part of the screen display and hard copy printout.

7.11 Information of Program

Each hard copy printout is to include identification of the calculation program with version number.

7.13 Units

Units of measurement are to be clearly identified and used consistently within a loading calculation.

7.15 Computer Model

For Type 3 and Type 4 software, the system is to be pre-loaded with a detailed computer model of the complete hull, including appendages, all compartments, tanks and the relevant parts of the superstructure considered in the damage stability calculation, wind profile, down-flooding and up-flooding openings, cross-flooding arrangements, internal compartment connections and escape routes, as applicable and according to the type of stability software.

For Type 1 and Type 2 software, in case a full three dimensional model is used for stability calculations, the requirements of the computer model are to be as per the paragraph above to the extent as applicable and according to the type of stability software.

7.17 Further Requirements for Type 4 Stability Software

7.17.1

The normal (Type 1, 2 and 3) and SRtP (Type 4) software need not be "totally separated". Where the normal and SRtP software are not totally separated:

- The function of switching between normal software and Type 4 software is to be provided.
- The actual intact loading condition is to be the same for both functions (normal operation and SRtP); and
- The SRtP module needs only to be activated in case of an incident.

Approval of Type 4 (SRtP) software is for stability only.

7.17.2

In passenger vessels which are subject to SRtP and have an onboard stability computer and shore-based support, such software need not be identical.

7.17.3

Each internal space is to be assigned its permeability as shown below, unless a more accurate permeability has been reflected in the approved stability information.

Spaces	*Permeability*			
	Default	*Full*	*Partially Filled*	*Empty*
Container Spaces	0.95	0.70	0.80	0.95
Dry Cargo spaces	0.95	0.70	0.80	0.95
Ro-Ro spaces	0.95	0.90	0.90	0.95
Cargo liquids	0.95	0.70	0.80	0.95
Intended for consumable liquids	0.95	0.95	0.95	0.95
Stores	0.95	0.60	0.60	0.95
Occupied by machinery	0.85			
Void spaces	0.95			
Occupied by accomodation	0.95			

7.17.4

The system is to be capable of accounting for applied moments such as wind, lifeboat launching, cargo shifts and passenger relocation.

7.17.5

The system is to account for the effect of wind by using the method in SOLAS regulation II-1/7-2.4.1.2 as the default, but allow for manual input of the wind speed/pressure if the on-scene pressure is significantly different (P = 120 N/m^2 equates to Beaufort 6; approximately 13.8 m/s or 27 knots).

7.17.6

The system is to be capable of assessing the impact of open main watertight doors on stability (e.g., for each damage case provided for verification, additional damage stability calculation is to be done and presented, taking into account any watertight door located within the damaged compartment(s)).

7.17.7

The system is to utilize the latest approved lightship weight and center of gravity information.

7.17.8

The output of the software is to be such that it provides the master with sufficient clear unambiguous information to enable quick and accurate assessment of the stability of the vessel for any actual damage, the impact of flooding on the means of escape and the controls of devices necessary for managing and/or controlling the stability of the vessel.

When the actual loading condition is input in the SRtP software, the following output (intact stability) is to be available:

- Deadweight data
- Lightship data
- Trim
- Heel
- Draft at the draft marks and perpendiculars
- Summary of loading condition displacement, VCG, LCG and, if applicable, TCG
- Downflooding angle and corresponding downflooding opening
- Free surfaces
- GM value
- GZ values relevant to an adequate range of heeling (not less than 60°) available indicatively at the following intervals: 0 5 10 15 20 25 30 40 50 60 deg
- Compliance with relevant intact stability criteria (i.e., 2008 IS Code): listing of all calculated intact stability criteria, the limiting values, the obtained values and the evaluation (criteria fulfilled or not fulfilled)
- GM/KG limiting curve according to SOLAS, Ch II-1, Regulation 5-1

When the actual loading condition is associated to the actual damage case(s) due to the casualty, the following output (damage stability) is to be available:

- Trim
- Heel
- Draft at the draft marks and perpendiculars

- Progressive flooding angle and corresponding progressive flooding openings
- GM value
- GZ values relevant to an adequate range of heeling (not less than 60°) available indicatively at the following intervals: 0 5 10 15 20 25 30 40 50 60 deg
- Compliance with stability criteria: listing of all calculated stability criteria, the limit values, the obtained values and the conclusions (criteria fulfilled or not fulfilled)
- The survivability criteria for Type 4 software (SRtP) are left to the discretion of the Administration
- Relevant flooding points (unprotected or weathertight) with the distance from the damage waterline to each point
- List of all flooded compartments with the permeability considered
- Amount of water in each flooded compartment
- Escape route immersion angles
- A profile view, deck views and cross-sections of the vessel indicating the flooded water-plane and the damaged compartments

7.17.9

For ro-ro passenger vessels, there are to be algorithms in the software for estimating the effect of water accumulation on deck (WOD) (e.g., 1. In addition to the predefined significant wave height, taken from the approved stability document, there is to be possibility for the crew to input manually the significant wave height of the vessel navigation area in the system, 2. In addition to the predefined significant wave height, taken from the approved stability document, calculations with two additional significant wave heights are to be submitted for checking the correctness of the algorithms in the software for estimating the effect of WOD). *

Note: * This paragraph applies to Ro-Ro Passenger vessels subject to the Stockholm Agreement (IMO Circular Letter No. 1891)

9 Acceptable Tolerances

Depending on the type and scope of programs, the acceptable tolerances are to be determined differently, according to [9.1] or [9.3] . In general, deviation from these tolerances is not to be accepted unless a satisfactory explanation for the difference is submitted for review and the same is satisfactorily confirmed by ABS that there would be no adverse effect on the safety of the vessel.

Examples of pre-programmed input data include the following:

- Hydrostatic data: Displacement, LCB, LCF, VCB, KMt and MCT vs. draft
- Stability data: KN or MS values at appropriate heel/trim angles vs. displacement, stability limits or allowable VCG.
- Compartment data: Volume, LCG, VCG, TCG and FSM/Grain heeling moments vs. level of the compartment's contents.

Examples of output data include the following:

- Hydrostatic data: Displacement, LCB, LCF, VCB, KMt and MCT versus draft, as well as actual drafts, trim.
- Stability data: FSC (free surface correction), GZ-values, KG, GM, KG/GM limits, allowable grain heeling moments, derived stability criteria (e.g., areas under the GZ curve), weather criteria.
- Compartment data: Calculated Volume, LCG, VCG, TCG and FSM/Grain heeling moments vs. level of the compartment's contents

The computational accuracy of the calculation program results is to be within the acceptable tolerances specified in [9.1] or [9.3], of the results using an independent program or the approved stability information with identical input.

9.1 Calculation Program of the Approved Stability Information

Programs which use only pre-programmed data from the approved stability information as the basis for stability calculations are to have zero tolerances for the printouts of input data.

Output data tolerances are to be close to zero. However, small differences associated with calculation rounding or abridged input data are acceptable. Additionally differences associated with the use of hydrostatic and stability data for trims that differ from those in the approved stability information are acceptable subject to review by ABS.

9.3 Independent Program for Assessment of Stability

Programs which use hull form models as their basis for stability calculations are to have tolerances for the printouts of basic calculated data established against either data from the approved stability information or data obtained using the approval authority's model. Acceptable tolerances shall be in accordance with [TABLE 1].

TABLE 1
Acceptable Tolerances

Hull Form Dependent	***Acceptable Tolerance*** (1)
Displacement	± 2%
Longitudinal center of buoyancy, from AP	± 1% or 50 cm, whichever is greater
Vertical center of buoyancy	± 1% or 5 cm, whichever is greater
Transverse center of buoyancy	± 0.5% of *B* or 5 cm whichever is greater
Longitudinal center of flotation, from AP	± 1% or 50 cm, whichever is greater
Moment to trim 1 cm	± 2%
Transverse metacentric height	± 1% or 5 cm, whichever is greater
Longitudinal metacentric height	± 1% or 50 cm, whichever is greater
Cross curves of stability	± 5 cm
Compartment Dependent	*Acceptable Tolerance* (1)
Volume or deadweight	± 2%
Longitudinal center of gravity, from AP	± 1% or 50 cm, whichever is greater
Vertical center of gravity	± 1% or 5 cm, whichever is greater
Transverse center of gravity	± 0.5% of *B* or 5 cm, whichever is greater
Free surface moment	± 2%
Shifting moment	± 5%
Level of contents	± 2%

Hull Form Dependent	***Acceptable Tolerance*** [(1)]
Trim and Stability	*Acceptable Tolerance* [(1)]
Drafts (forward, aft, mean)	± 1% or 5 cm, whichever is greater
GMt	± 1% or 5 cm, whichever is greater
GZ values	± 5% or 5 cm, whichever is greater
Downflooding angle	± 2°
Equilibrium angles	± 1°
Distance to unprotected openings or margin line from WL, if applicable	± 5% or 5 cm, whichever is greater
Areas under righting arm curve	± 5% or 0.0012 mrad

Notes:

1 Deviation in % = {(base value-applicant's value)/base value} × 100
where the "base value" may be from the approved stability information or the society's computer model.

2 Where differences in calculation methodology exist between the programs used in the comparison, this may be a basis for accepting deviations greater than that specified in the table above provided a software examination is carried out in sufficient detail to clearly document that such differences are technically justifiable.

3 Deviation from these tolerances are not to be accepted unless ABS considers that there is a satisfactory explanation for the difference and that it is clearly evident from ABS's stability calculations that the deviation does not impact compliance with the required stability criteria for the vessel under consideration.

11 Approval Procedure

11.1 Conditions of approval of the onboard software for stability calculations

The onboard software used for stability calculations is subject to approval, which is to include:

- Verification of type approval, if any,
- Verification that the data used is consistent with the current condition of the vessel (see [11.5]),
- Verification and approval of the test conditions, and
- Verification that the software is appropriate for the type of vessel and stability calculations required.
- Verification that the software is installed so that failure of the primary computer or server does not prevent the stability calculation from being carried out (this is to be demonstrated onboard as noted below)
- Verification of functional requirements under [7] .

The satisfactory operation of the software for stability calculations is to be verified by testing upon installation on the primary computer or server and at least one back-up computer or redundant server onboard (see [15]). A copy of the approved test conditions and the operation manual for the computer/software are to be available onboard.

11.3 General Approval (optional)

Upon receipt of application for general approval of the calculation program, ABS may provide the applicant with test data consisting of two or more design data sets, each of which is to include a vessel's hull form

data, compartmentation data, lightship characteristics and deadweight data, in sufficient detail to accurately define the vessel and its loading condition.

Acceptable hull form and compartmentation data may be in the form of surface coordinates for modeling the hull form and compartment boundaries (e.g., a table of offsets) or in the form of precalculated tabular data (e.g., hydrostatic tables, capacity tables) depending upon the form of data used by the software being submitted for approval. Alternatively, the general approval may be given based on at least two test vessels agreed upon between the applicant and ABS.

In general, the software is to be tested for two types of vessels for which approval is requested, with at least one design data set for each of the two types. Where approval is requested for only one type of vessel, a minimum of two data sets for different hull forms of that type of vessel are required to be tested.

For calculation software which is based on the input of hull form data, design data sets are to be provided for three types of vessels for which the software is to be approved, or a minimum of three data sets for different hull forms if approval is requested for only one type of vessel. Representative vessel types which require different design data sets due to their hull forms, typical arrangements, and nature of cargo include: tanker, bulk carrier, container carrier, and other dry cargo and passenger vessels.

The test data sets are to be used by the applicant to run the calculation program for the test vessels. The results obtained, together with the hydrostatic data and cross-curve data developed by the program, if appropriate are to be submitted to ABS for the assessment of the program's computational accuracy. ABS is to perform parallel calculations using the same data sets and a comparison of these results will be made against the applicant's submitted program's results.

11.5 Specific Approval

ABS is to verify the accuracy of the computational results and actual vessel data used by the calculation program for the particular vessel on which the program will be installed.

Upon receipt of application for data verification, ABS and the applicant are to agree on a minimum of four loading conditions, taken from the vessel's approved stability information, which are to be used as the test conditions.

For vessels carrying liquids in bulk, at least one of the conditions is to include partially filled tanks. For vessels carrying grain in bulk, one of the grain loading conditions is to include a partially filled grain compartment. Within the test conditions each compartment is to be loaded at least once. The test conditions normally are to cover the range of load drafts from the deepest envisaged loaded condition to the light ballast condition and are to include at least one departure and one arrival condition.

For Type 4 stability software for SRtP, ABS is to examine at least three damage cases, each of them associated with at least three loading conditions taken from the vessel's approved stability information. Output of the software is to be compared with results of corresponding load/damage case in the approved damage stability booklet or an alternative independent software source.

ABS is to verify that the following data, submitted by the applicant, is consistent with arrangements and most recently approved lightship characteristics of the vessel according to current plans and documentation on file with ABS, subject to possible further verification onboard:

- Identification of the calculation program including version number.
- Main dimensions, hydrostatic particulars and, if applicable, the vessel profile.
- The position of the forward and after perpendiculars, and if appropriate, the calculation method to derive the forward and after drafts at the actual position of the vessel's draft marks.
- Vessel lightweight and center of gravity derived from the most recently approved inclining experiment or lightweight survey.

- Lines plan, offset tables or other suitable presentation of hull form data if necessary for ABS to model the vessel.
- Compartment definitions, including frame spacing, and centers of volume, together with capacity tables (sounding/ullage tables), free surface corrections, if appropriate
- Cargo and Consumables distribution for each loading condition.

Verification by ABS does not absolve the applicant and shipowner of responsibility for ensuring that the information programmed into the onboard computer software is consistent with the current condition of the vessel.

13 Operation Manual

A simple and straightforward operation manual is to be provided, containing descriptions and instructions, as appropriate, for at least the following:

- Installation
- Function keys
- Menu displays
- Input and output data
- Required minimum hardware to operate the software
- Use of the test loading conditions
- Computer-guided dialogue steps
- List of warnings

15 Installation Testing *(2024)*

The installation testing is in accordance with 3-7-3/7.

17 Periodical Testing *(2024)*

The periodical testing is to be in accordance with 7-3-2/1.1.5 of the ABS *Rules for Survey After Construction (Part 7)*.

19 Other Requirements

The following features are to be provided to the software:

- Protection against unintentional or unauthorized modification of programs and data is to be provided.
- The program is to monitor operations and activate an alarm when the program is incorrectly or abnormally used.
- The program and any data stored in the system are to be protected from corruption by loss of power.
- Error messages with regard to limitations such as filling a compartment beyond capacity, or exceeding the assigned load line, etc. are to be included.

PART 3

CHAPTER 4

Fire Safety Measures

CONTENTS

SECTION 1 Structural Fire Protection 656

1 General 656
1.1 Objective 656
1.2 Regulatory Application 656
1.3 Materials Containing Asbestos 657
3 Offshore Support Vessels 657
5 Passenger Vessels 657
7 Cargo Vessel 657
7.1 General Requirements 657
7.3 Additional Requirements for Tankers 657
7.5 Additional Requirements for Chemical Carriers or Liquefield Gas Carriers 658
9 Fiber Reinforced Plastic (FRP) Gratings 658
11 Review Procedures 658
11.1 Administration Review 658
11.3 ABS Review 658

APPENDIX 1 Fiber Reinforced Plastic (FRP) Gratings 659

1 General 659
1.1 Objective 659
2 Applications 660
2.1 660
2.3 660
3 FRP Grating Material Systems 660
3.1 660
5 Fire Test Requirements 660
5.1 Structural Fire Integrity 660
5.3 Flame Spread 661
5.5 Smoke Generation 661
7 Structural Fire Integrity Test Procedures 661
9 Structural Fire Integrity Matrix 661
11 Other Authorized Uses 662

TABLE 1 Structural Fire Integrity Matrix 661

PART 3

CHAPTER 4
Fire Safety Measures

SECTION 1
Structural Fire Protection

1 General

1.1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1.1 Goals

The goals in the cross-referenced Rules/Regulations are to be met.

1.1.2 Functional Requirements

The structural fire protection and escape routes are to meet the functional requirements in the cross-referenced Rules/Regulations.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

Commentary:

Regulation II-2/17 allows alternative fire safety design and arrangements to deviate from the prescriptive requirements of SOLAS if it can be demonstrated that the fire safety objectives and functional requirements of Chapter II-2 are met.

End of Commentary

1.2 Regulatory Application *(2024)*

For classification purposes, the fire safety measures contained in the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, 1974 (1974 SOLAS) as amended, are applicable to vessels of type, size and service coming under that Convention.

For vessels of less than Convention Size, IACS Recommendation 99 or flag Administration specific requirements are to be complied with.

This Chapter does not relax the requirements in other Chapters of these Rules.

Commentary:

1 For a SOLAS vessel, when an abbreviated notation is used (e.g.. Regulation II-2/5.2), this means Regulation 5.2 of Chapter II-2 of SOLAS 1974 as amended.

2 For definitions of terms used in this Chapter of the Rules, refer Regulation II-2/3 of SOLAS 1974 as amended.

3 Refer to the following interpretations for more specific guidance for application of the relevant requirements of the 1974 SOLAS as amended.

- MSC/Circ. 847, Interpretations of Vague Expressions and other vague wording in SOLAS Chapter II-2.
- MSC/Circ. 1120, Unified Interpretations of SOLAS Chapter II-2, the FSS Code, the FTP Code and related fire test procedures.
- MSC. 1/Circ. 1239 Unified Interpretations of SOLAS Chapter II-2.

Also refer to IACS unified interpretations of the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea (SOLAS) 1974 and its amendments for additional guidance.

End of Commentary

1.3 Materials Containing Asbestos

Installation of materials which contains asbestos is prohibited.

3 Offshore Support Vessels *(2024)*

Offshore support vessels are considered as cargo vessels as defined in Regulation II-2/3.7, and are to comply with 3-7-1/7.1 of the ABS *Marine Vessel Rules*.

Offshore support vessels intended to carry hazardous and noxious liquid substances in bulk are to comply with Section 5D-2-3 of the ABS *Marine Vessel Rul*es.

5 Passenger Vessels

For Passenger vessels, the requirements in Part 5C, Chapter 7 are applicable.

7 Cargo Vessel

7.1 General Requirements

For all cargo vessels as defined in Regulation 3.7, the relevant requirements in Part B: Regulation 4, 5, 6; Part C: Regulations 7, 8, 9, 10, 11; Part D: Regulation 13; and Part G: Regulations 19 and 20, Chapter II-2 of 1974 SOLAS, as amended, are applicable.

7.3 Additional Requirements for Tankers

For tankers as defined in Regulation 3.48, Chapter II-2 of 1974 SOLAS, as amended, the following requirements are additional to [7.1] .

7.3.1 Low Flash Point Cargoes

For tankers intended for the carriage of cargoes having a flash point of 60°C (140°F) or less, the relevant requirements in Part A: Regulation 1; Part B: Regulation 4; Part C: Regulations 9, 10, 11; and Part E: Regulations 16, Chapter II-2 of 1974 SOLAS, as amended, are applicable. Furthermore, the requirements of Chapters 2, 14 and 15 of the Fire Safety Systems Code are also applicable.

For tankers with bow or stern loading and unloading connections, the provisions of SOLAS Regulations II-2/4.5.1.6, II-2/4.5.2.1 to II-2/4.5.2.3 inclusive and II-2/9.2.4.2.5 are to apply, unless alternative arrangements are acceptable to the Administration. This applies to the exterior boundaries of superstructures and deckhouses enclosing accommodation spaces which face the cargo shore connection, the overhanging decks which support such accommodation, the outboard sides of the superstructures and deckhouses for the specific distances from the boundaries which face the cargo shore connection.

7.3.2 High Flash Point Cargoes

For tankers intended for the carriage of cargoes having a flash point above 60°C (140°F), the requirements in [7.1] are applicable, except that in lieu of the fixed fire extinguishing system required by Regulation II-2/10.7.1.3 they are to be fitted with a fixed deck foam system which is to comply with Chapter 14 of the Fire Safety Systems Code.

7.5 Additional Requirements for Chemical Carriers or Liquefield Gas Carriers *(2024)*

Chemical carriers or liquefied gas carriers are to comply Part 5C of the ABS *Marine Vessel Rules*, the International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Dangerous Chemicals in Bulk (IBC Code), International Code for the Construction and Equipment of Ships Carrying Liquefied Gases in Bulk (IGC Code), and API standards, as applicable.

9 Fiber Reinforced Plastic (FRP) Gratings

Where approved by the Administration, the use of Fiber Reinforced Plastic (FRP) gratings is to be in accordance with Appendix 3-4-A1.

11 Review Procedures

11.1 Administration Review *(2024)*

When the vessel is issued a Passenger Ship Safety Certificate, Cargo Ship Safety Equipment Certificate or Cargo Ship Safety Construction Certificate by the flag Administration or its agent other than ABS, such Certificate will be accepted as evidence that the vessel is in accordance with the applicable criteria in 1974 SOLAS as amended.

Where the Administration undertakes any part of the review and ABS is issuing the above Certificate, the acceptance by the Administration will be required before the certificate is issued.

Compliance with the Rule requirements, which are not covered in 1974 SOLAS as amended, is to be verified by ABS.

Commentary:

For US-Flagged cargo vessels, the US Coast Guard (USCG) differentiates domestic vessels and SOLAS vessels. For structural fire protection, domestic vessels comply with 46 CFR, while SOLAS vessels comply with SOLAS Chapter II-2 and the FTP Code as per Navigation and Vessel Inspection Circular (NVIC) 9-97 CH-1 “Guide to Structural Fire Protection”.

US-Flagged vessels enrolled in the Alternate Compliance Program (ACP) must comply with USCG regulations, SOLAS and ABS rules. The details of this program can be found in NVIC 02-95 “The Alternate Compliance Program (ACP)”.

End of Commentary

11.3 ABS Review

In all other cases, the required information and plans are to be submitted to ABS for review.

PART 3

CHAPTER 4
Fire Safety Measures

APPENDIX 1
Fiber Reinforced Plastic (FRP) Gratings

1 General *(2024)*

1.1 Objective

1.1.1 Goals

The fiber reinforced plastic (FRP) gratings covered in this section are to be designed, constructed, operated, and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goals*
EER 1	*provide means of escape so that persons on board can safely and swiftly escape* to a protected place of refuge, muster station, or embarkation stations. (SOLAS II-2/Reg. 13.1)
FIR 1	*reduce the risk to life caused by fire* (SOLAS II-2/Reg. 2.1.2).

1.1.2 Functional Requirements

In order to achieve the above stated goals, the design, construction and maintenance of the FRP gratings is to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Escape, Evacuation, Rescue (EER)	
EER-FR1	FRP gratings are to provide adequate structural integrity during a fire scenario to allow for means of escape, access for firefighting, and emergency operation or rescue.
Fire Safety (FIR)	
FIR-FR1	FRP gratings are to limit the fire growth potential and minimize the hazards from a fire.
FIR-FR2	FRP gratings are to reduce the hazards to life from smoke and toxic products generated during a fire.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

2 Applications *(2024)*

2.1 *(2024)*

FRP gratings may be used in other machinery spaces, cargo areas, and on-deck areas. FRP gratings are not accepted in accommodation, service, control spaces, and areas where smoke and toxicity is a concern. The floor plating and gratings in Category A machinery spaces is to be made of steel. Refer to [TABLE 1] .

2.3

Changes in either the type, amount, and/or architecture, of either the reinforcement materials, resin matrix, coatings, or manufacturing processes require separate testing in accordance with the procedures below. Manufacturers are required to provide evidence, such as enrollment in a follow-up program, that the FRP gratings being installed are the same as those which were tested and approved.

3 FRP Grating Material Systems

3.1

Where required, all fire integrity, flame spread, smoke, and toxicity testing are to be conducted on each material system.

5 Fire Test Requirements

5.1 Structural Fire Integrity

The structural fire integrity requirements are intended for self-supporting personnel platforms or walkways, and are not intended for grating overlaid on steel decking or used in other applications such as pipe guards, sea chest screenings, safety guards, etc.

The structural fire integrity matrix in [TABLE 1] establishes the structural fire integrity characteristics that FRP gratings are to have based on location and service. Where a specific application satisfies more than one block in the matrix, the highest level of fire integrity is required. The test procedures required to qualify FRP gratings to one of levels are described in [7] . The location and service of the FRP gratings are to be determined on the basis of the following considerations for each of the four performance levels:

5.1.1 Level 1 (L1)

FRP gratings meeting the L1 performance criteria are intended to be satisfactory for use in escape routes or access for firefighting, emergency operation or rescue, after having been exposed to a significant hydrocarbon or cellulosic fire incident. In addition, they are also acceptable for the services and functions described for levels L2 and L3.

5.1.2 Level 2 (L2)

FRP gratings meeting the L2 performance criteria are intended to be satisfactory for use in open deck areas where groups of people are likely to assemble, such as temporary safe refuge or lifeboat embarkation areas. In addition, they are also acceptable for the services and functions described for level L3.

5.1.3 Level 3 (L3)

FRP gratings meeting the L3 performance criteria are intended to be satisfactory for use in egress routes and any areas that may require access for firefighting, rescue or emergency operations during exposure to or shortly after exposure to a transitory hydrocarbon or cellulosic fire.

5.1.4 Level 0 (L0) *(2024)*

L0 FRP gratings are to be tested in accordance with ASTM E84 with a flame spread index not to exceed 20 and a smoke developed index not to exceed 450. L0 FRP gratings have no fire integrity. L0 FRP gratings may be used for personnel walkways, catwalks, ladders, platforms, or access areas in cargo holds and tanks.

Commentary:

Level 1 (L1) gratings may not be available due to the technical challenges of meeting this criteria.

End of Commentary

5.3 Flame Spread

All FRP gratings, are to have low flame spread characteristics as determined by the following test procedure:

5.3.1

Tested to ASTM E84 with a flame spread rating not to exceed 20.

5.5 Smoke Generation

All FRP gratings are to have low smoke characteristics as determined by the following test procedure:

5.5.1

Tested to ASTM E84 with a smoke developed index limit not to exceed 450.

7 Structural Fire Integrity Test Procedures

Structural fire integrity tests are to be in accordance with ASTM F3059 *Standard Specification for Fiber-Reinforced Polymer (FRP) Gratings Used in Marine Construction and Shipbuilding,* according to the structural fire integrity performance levels (L1, L2, L3, L0).

9 Structural Fire Integrity Matrix

TABLE 1
Structural Fire Integrity Matrix

Location	*Service*	*Fire Integrity*
Machinery Spaces of Category A[(1)]	Steel Grating	-
Other Machinery Spaces	Walkways or areas which may be used for escape, or access for firefighting, emergency operation or rescue	L1 [(2)]
	Personnel walkways, catwalks, ladders, platforms or access areas other than those described above	L3
Cargo Pump Rooms	All personnel walkways, catwalks, ladders, platforms or access areas	L1
Cargo Holds	Walkways or areas which may be used for escape, or access for firefighting, emergency operation or rescue	L1

Location	*Service*	*Fire Integrity*
	Personnel walkways, catwalks, ladders, platforms or access areas other than those described above	L0
Cargo Tanks	All personnel walkways, catwalks, ladders, platforms or access areas	L0(3, 6)
Fuel Oil Tanks	All personnel walkways, catwalks, ladders, platforms or access areas	L0(3)
Ballast Water Tanks	All personnel walkways, catwalks, ladders, platforms or access areas	L0(4)
Cofferdams, void spaces, double bottoms, pipe tunnels, etc.	All personnel walkways, catwalks, ladders, platforms or access areas	L0(4)
Accommodation, service, and control spaces	All personnel walkways, catwalks, ladders, platforms or access areas	Not permitted
Lifeboat embarkation or temporary safe refuge stations in open deck areas	All personnel walkways, catwalks, ladders, platforms or access areas	L2
Open Decks or semi-enclosed areas	Operational areas and access routes for deck foamfirefighting systems on tank vessels	L2
	Walkways or areas which may be used for escape, or accessfor firefighting systems and AFFF hose reels, emergencyoperation, or rescue on MODUs and production platformsincluding safe access to tanker bows	L2
	Walkways or areas which may be used for escape, or access for firefighting, emergency operation or rescue other tan those described above	L3 (5)
	Personnel walkways, catwalks, ladders, platforms or access areas other than those described above	L3

Notes:

1) Machinery spaces of category A is as defined in 4-7-1/11.15.

2) If the machinery space does not contain any internal combustion machinery, other oil-burning, oil-heating, or oil-pumping units, fuel oil filling stations, or other potential hydrocarbon fire sources and has not more than 2.5 kg/m^2 (0.51 lb/ft^2) of combustible storage, gratings of L3 integrity may be used in lieu of L1.

3) If these spaces are normally entered when underway, gratings of L1 integrity are required.

4) If these spaces are normally entered when underway, gratings of L3 integrity are required.

5) Vessels fitted with deck foam or dry powder firefighting systems require gratings of L2 integrity for the firefighting system operational areas and access routes.

6) With regard to the use of FRP/GRP grating inside LNG/LPG tanks, although the gratings are not to be used at cryogenic temperatures, the manufacturer has to demonstrate the suitability for the intended purpose showing that low temperature does not affect the material characteristics when used.

11 Other Authorized Uses *(2024)*

The ABS Surveyor may authorize the use of FRP gratings without Main Office approval in applications where structural fire integrity of the FRP gratings is not a concern, provided they meet the applicable flame spread and smoke generation requirements set forth in [5.3] and [5.5] Applications where the uses of FRP gratings have been authorized in the past, without any structural fire integrity requirement, include the following:

i) Sea chest coverings;

ii) Small sundeck awnings and supports;

iii) Lifeboat bilge flooring;

iv) Electrical control flooring;

v) Pipe guards on deck, in cargo holds, and in engine rooms;

vi) Removable guards over hawse holes, anchor hawse pipes, and scuppers;

vii) Personnel barriers, such as protection for electrical panels; and

PART 3

CHAPTER 5
Equipment

CONTENTS

SECTION 1 Anchoring, Mooring, and Towing Equipment 667

1 General 667
1.1 Objective 667
2 Application 668
3 Equipment Mass and Size 670
3.1 Equipment Number (EN) 670
3.3 Vessels Having an EN less Than 205 or Intended for Towing Service as Tug 673
3.5 Vessels Having Unconventional Topside Arrangements or Operational Profiles 673
3.7 Equipment without the Symbol Ⓔ 674
5 Material and Tests 674
7 Anchor Types 674
9 Mooring and Towing Equipment 675
9.1 All Vessels 675
9.3 Mooring Lines 675
9.5 Tow Line 679
9.7 Mooring and Tow Line Construction 679
9.9 Mooring Winches 679
9.11 Mooring and Towing Line Arrangement 680
11 Windlass or Winch Supporting Hull Structure and Chain Stopper 681
11.1 Supporting Hull Structure 681
11.3 Winches Used for Anchoring (Vessels Under 90 m (295 ft)) 684
11.5 Trial 685
12 Hawse Pipes 686
13 Securing of the Inboard Ends of Chain Cables 687
14 Securing of Stowed Anchors 687
15 Towing and Mooring Arrangement and Shipboard Fittings 687
15.1 Bollards and Bitts, Fairleads, Stand Rollers and Chocks 688
15.3 Safe Working Load (SWL) and Towing Load (TOW) 689

15.5 Documents to be Submitted....690
15.7 Emergency Towing Arrangements 691
17 Offshore Mooring Chain for Station Keeping.... 691
17.1 Qualification of Manufacturers....691
17.3 Materials.... 691
17.5 Design, Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Mooring Chain.... 691
19 Chafing Chain for Emergency Towing Arrangements 691
19.1 Scope 691
19.3 Qualification of Manufacturers....691
19.5 Materials.... 691
19.7 Design, Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Chafing Chain....692

TABLE 1A Equipment for Self-propelled Ocean-going Vessels..... 693
TABLE 1B Equipment for Self-propelled Ocean-going Vessels..... 696
TABLE 2 Mooring Lines for Self-propelled Ocean-going Vessels with $EN \leq$ 2000....700
TABLE 3 Tow Lines for Self-propelled Ocean-going Vessels 701

FIGURE 1A Effective Heights and Widths of Deck Houses.... 672
FIGURE 1B Profile Area.... 673
FIGURE 2 Direction of Forces and Weight 686
FIGURE 3 Sign Convention 686
FIGURE 4 Typical Outboard Chafing Chain End 692

SECTION 2 Mooring of Vessels at Single Point Moorings 704
1 General.... 704
1.1 Objective.... 704
1.2 Application.... 705
3 Notation....705
5 Submission of Design Plans and Data....705
7 Arrangements.... 706
7.1 General.... 706
7.3 Bow Chain Stoppers....706
7.5 Bow Fairleads....707
7.7 Pedestal Rollers.... 707
7.9 Winches or Capstans.... 708
7.11 Winch Storage Drum....708
9 Materials.... 708

TABLE 1 Arrangements by Vessel Deadweight for SPMA Notation....706

SECTION 3 Equipment without symbol Ⓔ 709

1 General 709
3 Vessels intended for Limited Service..... 709
5 Vessels Intended for Towing Service..... 709

PART 3

CHAPTER 5
Equipment

SECTION 1
Anchoring, Mooring, and Towing Equipment

1 General

1.1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1.1 Goals

The vessel structure is to be designed, constructed, operated, and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goals*
STRU 1	In the intact condition, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU 3	Provide protection to persons onboard, the environment and required safety services.
PROP 6	*Possess means to enable the safe conduct of all towing, mooring, and anchoring operations.* (SOLAS II-1 Reg 3-8)

1.1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above stated goals, the design, construction, installation, and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Propulsion, Maneuvering, Station Keeping (PROP)	
PROP-FR1 (STRU)	*The vessel is to be provided with arrangements, equipment, and fittings of sufficient safe working load to enable the safe conduct of all towing and mooring operations associated with the normal operation of the ship.* (SOLAS II-1 Reg 3-8)
PROP-FR2	Anchoring equipment is to have sufficient holding power to maintain the vessel in position based on the environmental and holding ground conditions outlined in [3.1] .
PROP-FR3 (STRU)	*The vessel is to be provided with arrangements, equipment, and fittings of sufficient safe working load at both ends to enable the safe conduct of emergency towing on tankers of 20,000 tons (19,684 Lton) deadweight and above.* (SOLAS II-1 Reg 3-8)

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
PROP-FR4 (STRU)	Structures that regularly contact mooring and towing lines are to have adequate wear allowance.
PROP-FR5	Means are to be provided to release anchor chain cables in case of emergency.
PROP-FR6 (STRU)	Means are to be provided to protect the ship structure from overload from anchor chain that has been completely paid out.
PROP-FR7	Guidance is to be provided for the safe operation of the equipment, system, and fittings for mooring and tow systems, including normal and anticipated emergency conditions.
Structure (STRU)	
STRU-FR1	Scantlings are to have sufficient strength to resist failure and excessive deformation associated with buckling and yielding when subjected to loads associated with temporary anchoring within a harbor or sheltered area, mooring, towing and emergency towing, as applicable.
STRU-FR2	The manufacturing process is to generate materials with minimal defects to enable performance in accordance with the design assumptions.
STRU-FR3	Fabrication is to be of sufficient quality (structural tolerances, alignment, defects) so that the finished product performs in accordance with the design assumptions.
STRU-FR4	Scantlings, fittings, and equipment are to be maintained so that the vessel will continue to satisfy all Goals and Functional Requirements.

The goals and functional Requirements in the cross-referenced Rules are to be met.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

2 Application *(2024)*

All vessels are to have a complete equipment of anchors and chains. The mandatory symbol Ⓔ placed after the symbols of classification in the *Record*, thus: ✠ **A1** Ⓔ, will signify that the equipment of the vessel is in compliance with the requirements of these Rules, or with requirements corresponding to the service limitation noted in the vessel's classification, which have been specially approved for the particular service. This symbol is optional for vessels under 90 m (295 ft) having EN less than 205 or vessels intended for towing as indicated in [3.7] and 3-5-3.

The mass per anchor of bower anchors, given in [TABLE 1A] (in SI, MKS Units) and [TABLE 1B] (in US Units), is for anchors of equal mass. The length of chain cable required by [TABLE 1A] and [TABLE 1B] can be equally distributed between the two bower anchors connected and ready for use.

Commentary:

For tankers and bulk carriers that anchor outside a harbor or similar area of sheltered waters, the ABS *Guide for the Optional Class Notation Deep Water Anchoring for Oil Tankers and Bulk Carriers*, with the optional notation **DWA**, enables owners, operators, and designers to assess the adequacy of anchoring equipment in these locations.

End of Commentary

The application of the requirements of this Section is indicated in the table below:

Application	*Size Design Criteria*	*Class Requirement*	*Rule Section*
Equipment Number	EN ≥ 205	Mandatory	3-5-1/3.1
	EN < 205 or Towing Service	Mandatory	3-5-1/3.3
	Unconventional Topside Arrangements or Profiles	Mandatory	3-5-1/3.5
	EN < 205 and L < 90 m (295 ft) or Towing Service NO Symbol Ⓔ	Optional	3-5-1/3.7
Anchor Type	Stockless Type	Mandatory	3-5-1/7.*i*)
	HHP & SHHP	Optional	3-5-1/7.*ii*)
Mooring Lines	EN ≤ 2000	Optional	3-5-1/9.3.1 & 3-5-1/9.3.3
	EN >2000	Optional	3-5-1/9.3.2 & 3-5-1/9.3.3
	All Vessels	Optional	3-5-1/9.11.1
Tow Lines	All Vessels	Optional	3-5-1/9.5 & 3-5-1/9.11.2
Mooring Winches	All Vessels	Optional	3-5-1/9.9 (1)
Windlass	All Vessels	Mandatory	3-5-1/11
Windlass Supporting Hull Structure	L ≥ 80 m	Mandatory	3-5-1/11.1 .1 & 3-5-1/11.1.2
	L < 80 m	Mandatory	3-5-1/11.1
Winches Used for Anchoring	L < 40 m	Optional	3-5-1/11.3
Hawse Pipes	All Vessels	Mandatory	3-5-1/12
Securing of Chain Cables	All Vessels	Mandatory	3-5-1/13
Securing Anchor and Stowing Cables	All Vessels	Mandatory	3-5-1/14
Bollard, Fairlead and Chocks	SOLAS Vessels	Mandatory	3-5-1/15 (1)
Shipboard Fittings & Towing and Mooring Arrangement			
Emergency Towing Arrangement	Oil Tankers, Chemical Tankers and Gas Carriers deadweight ≥ 20000 tons	Mandatory	3-5-1/15.7 & 3-5-1/19
Offshore Mooring Chain	Station Keeping Units	Mandatory	3-5-1/17

Note:

1 The strength of supporting hull structure in way of shipboard fittings used for mooring operations and towing operations as well as supporting hull structures of winches and capstans at the bow, sides, and stern are to comply with the requirements of 3-2-7/4.

3 Equipment Mass and Size

Equipment mass and size are to be in accordance with the following sections as applicable.

3.1 Equipment Number (EN) *(1 July 2024)*

The requirements herein are intended for temporary mooring of a vessel within a harbor or sheltered area when the vessel is awaiting berth, tide, etc.

Commentary:

- The requirements in 3-5-1/3.1 are based on IACS Unified Requirements (UR) A1.
- Deck cargo does not need to be included in the calculation of projected area
- The ABS *Guide for the Optional Notation Deep Water Anchoring for Oil Tankers and Bulk Carriers* or the IACS Recommendation No. 10 'Anchoring, Mooring and Towing Equipment' may be referred to for recommendations concerning anchoring equipment for vessels in deep and unsheltered water.
- The direct calculation method provided in IACS Recommendation No. 10 Appendix B can be used as an alternative for the determination of anchor weights and chain cable dimensions for ships under 90 m (295 ft) in length except for dredgers with unusual design of the underwater part of the hull.

End of Commentary

The equipment is therefore not designed to hold a vessel off fully exposed coasts in rough weather or to stop a ship that is moving or drifting. In this condition, the loads on the anchoring equipment increase to such a degree that its components may be damaged or lost owing to the high energy forces generated, particularly in large vessels. The anchoring equipment required herewith is designed to hold a vessel in good holding ground in conditions such as to avoid dragging of the anchor. In poor holding ground, the holding power of the anchors is significantly reduced.

The "Equipment Number" (EN) equation is based on an assumed maximum current speed of 2.5 m/s (8.2 ft/s), a maximum wind speed of 25 m/s (49 knots) and a minimum scope of 6, the scope being the ratio of length of chain paid out to the water depth. For vessels with a Rule length greater than 135 m (443 ft), alternatively the required anchoring equipment can be considered applicable to a maximum current speed of 1.54 m/s (4.9 ft/s), a maximum wind speed of 11 m/s (21 knots) and waves with maximum significant height of 2 m (6.6 ft). Anchors and chains are to be in accordance with [TABLE 1A] and [TABLE 1B] and the numbers, mass and sizes of these are to be regulated by the equipment number (*EN*) obtained from the following equation:

$$\mathrm{EN} = k\Delta^{2/3} + m(Bh + S_{fun}) + nA$$

where

k	=	1.0 (1.0, 1.012)
m	=	2 (2, 0.186)
n	=	0.1 (0.1, 0.00929)
Δ	=	molded displacement, as defined in 3-1-1/13.1
B	=	molded breadth, as defined in 3-1-1/5
h	=	effective height, in m (ft), from the Summer Load waterline to the top of the uppermost house
	=	$a + h_1 + h_2 + h_3 +$ . . . See Notes 1, 2 and 3.
a	=	vertical distance at hull side, in m (ft), from the Summer Load waterline amidships to the upper deck.

$h_1, h_2, h_3 \ldots$ = height shown in [FIGURE 1A] , in m (ft), measured at the centerline of each tier of houses having a breadth greater than *B*/4, as applicable. For the lowest tier, h_1 is to be measured at the centerline from the upper deck or from a notional deck line where there is local discontinuity in the upper deck, see [FIGURE 1A] for an example.

S_{fun} = effective front projected area, in m^2 (ft^2), of the funnel

= $A_{FS} - S_{shield}$

A_{FS} = front projected area, in m^2 (ft^2), of the funnel calculated between the upper deck at the centerline, or the notional deck line where there is local discontinuity in the upper deck, and the top of the effective height h_F. See [FIGURE 1A] and Note 5.

A_{FS} is taken equal to zero if the funnel breadth is less than or equal to *B*/4 at all elevations along the funnel height.

h_F = effective height, in m (ft), of the funnel measured from the upper deck at the centerline, or the notional deck line where there is local discontinuity in the upper deck, and the top of the funnel. See [FIGURE 1A] and Note 5.
The top of the funnel may be taken at the level where the funnel breadth reaches *B*/4.

S_{shield} = the section of front projected area A_{FS} , in m^2 (ft^2), which is shielded by all deck houses having breadth greater than *B*/4. If there is more than one shielded section, the individual shielded sections (i.e., $S_{shield\,1}$, $S_{shield\,2}$, etc.), as shown in 3-5-1/Figure 1A, are to be added together. To determine S_{shield}, the deckhouse breadth is assumed *B* for all deck houses having breadth greater than *B*/4 as shown for $S_{shield\,1}$ and $S_{shield\,2}$ in 3-5-1/Figure 1A.

A = side projected area, in m^2 (ft^2), of the hull, superstructures, houses and funnels above the Summer Load waterline which are within the Rule length of the ship and also have a breadth greater than *B*/4. The side projected area of the funnel is considered in A when A_{FS} is greater than zero.
In this case, the side projected area of the funnel is to be calculated between the upper deck, or notional deck line where there is local discontinuity in the upper deck, and the top of the effective height h_F. See Notes 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5.

Notes:

1 The sheer and trim may be neglected. Superstructures or deck houses having a breadth at any point not greater than *B*/4 may be excluded.

2 Screens and bulwarks more than 1.5 m (4.9 ft) in height are to be regarded as parts of houses in the calculation.

3 The heights of hatch coamings and that of any deck cargos such as containers may be disregarded, except as specified by [9.3] for mooring lines.

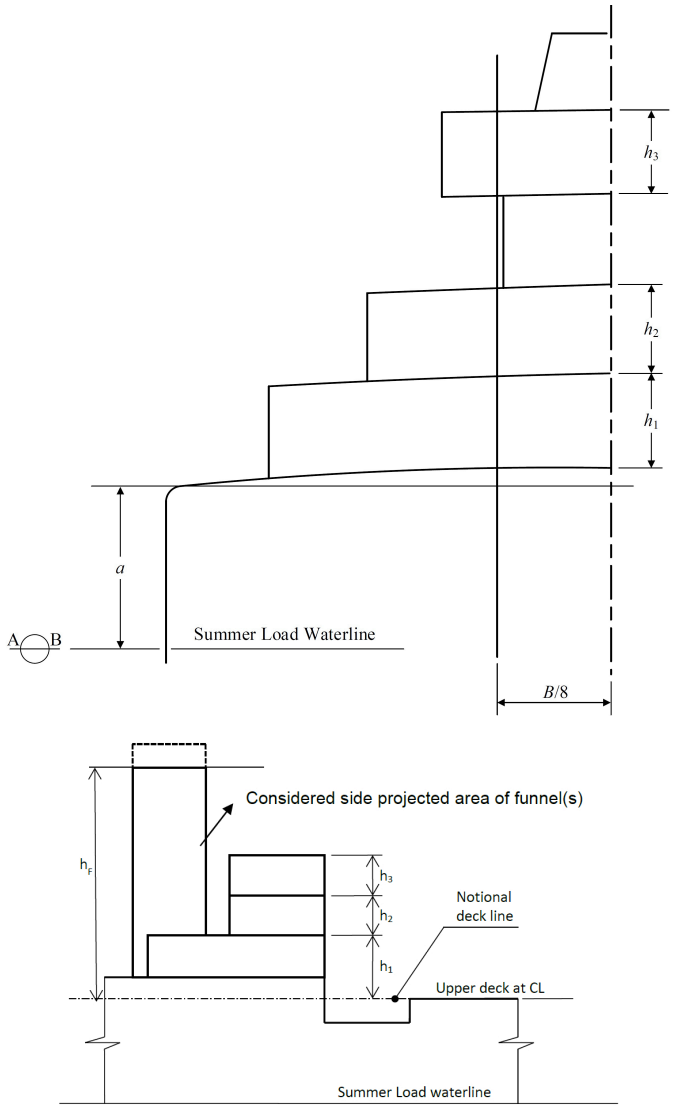
4 Where bulwark is more than 1.5 m (4.9 ft) in height, area A_2 within the Rule length as illustrated in [FIGURE 1B]), is to be included in A.

5 When several funnels are fitted on the ship, A_{FS} , h_F and A are taken as follows:

- A_{FS} : sum of the front projected area of each funnel, in m^2(ft^2), calculated between the upper deck, or notional deck line where there is local discontinuity in the upper deck, and the effective height h_F. A_{FS} is to be taken equal to zero if the sum of each funnel breadth is less than or equal to *B*/4 at all elevations along the funnels height.
- h_F: effective height of the funnel, in m (ft), measured from the upper deck, or notional deck line where there is local discontinuity in the upper deck, and the top of the highest funnel. The top of the highest funnel may be taken at the level where the sum of each funnel breadth reaches *B*/4.
- A: Side projected area, in m^2(ft^2), of the hull, superstructures, houses and funnels above the Summer Load waterline which are within the Rule length of the ship. The total side projected area of the funnels is to be

considered in the side projected area of the ship, A, when A_{FS} is greater than zero. The shielding effect of funnels in transverse direction may be considered in the total side projected area (i.e., when the side projected areas of two or more funnels fully or partially overlap, the overlapped area needs only to be counted once).

FIGURE 1A
Effective Heights and Widths of Deck Houses *(1 July 2022)*



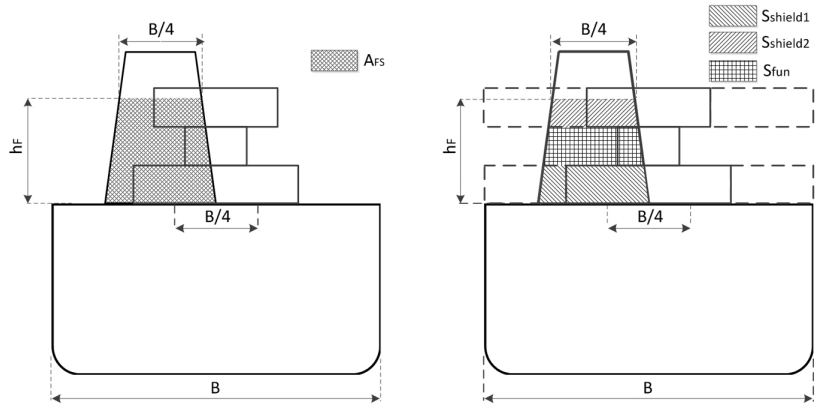
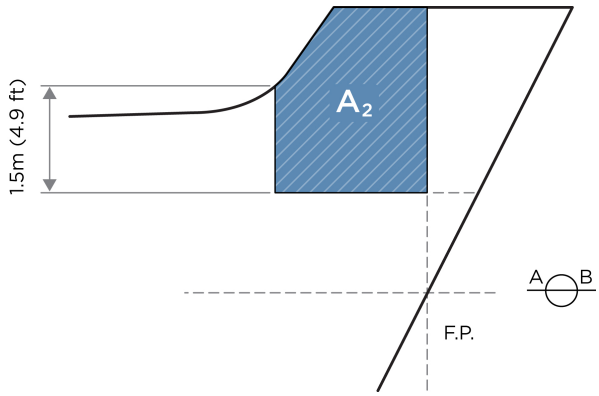


FIGURE 1B
Profile Area *(2024)*



3.3 Vessels Having an EN less Than 205 or Intended for Towing Service as Tug *(2024)*

For the following under 90 m (295 ft) vessels the basic EN obtained from [3.1] is to be readjusted and to be used in conjunction with [TABLE 1A] and [TABLE 1B] :

i) Vessels having Basic EN less than 205

ii) Vessels Intended for Towing Service
The adjusted EN for use with [TABLE 1A] and [TABLE 1B] may be calculated in accordance with the following:

$$\mathrm{EN} = k\Delta^{2/3} + m(Ba + \sum bh) + nA$$

where

b = breadth, in m (ft), of the widest superstructure or deckhouse on each tier.

h = height, in m (ft), of each tier of deckhouse or superstructure having a width of B/4 or greater. In the calculation of h, sheer, camber and trim may be neglected. See [FIGURE 1A] .

k, m, n, Δ, B, a and A are as defined in [3.1] .

3.5 Vessels Having Unconventional Topside Arrangements or Operational Profiles *(2024)*

Vessels having unconventional topside arrangements or operational profiles are subject to ABS technical assessment with regard to EN calculation. Such assessments are to include, but not limited to:

i) Additional wind areas of widely separated deckhouses or superstructures are to be accounted for;

ii) Equipment sizing is based on direct calculation but not to be taken less than that required by [3.1] and [3.3] , as applicable.

3.7 Equipment without the Symbol Ⓔ *(1 July 2020)*

For vessels under 90 m (295 ft) having EN less than 205 or vessels intended for towing, where the symbol Ⓔ is not desired, see Section 3-5-3.

5 Material and Tests *(1 July 2018)*

Material and testing for anchors and chains on vessels receiving the Ⓔ symbol are to be in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 2 of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)* for the respective sizes of anchors and chains. See Section [2-2-1] and Section [2-2-2] of the above referenced Part 2. Materials and tests for wire rope on vessels under 90 m (295 ft) are to be in accordance with a national or other recognized standard.

Where the symbol Ⓔ is not desired in accordance with [3.7] , the testing is to be carried out in accordance with the approved specification, and the manufacturer's test certificate to that effect is to be submitted to the Surveyor.

7 Anchor Types *(2024)*

i) Stockless Type Anchor
Anchors are to be of the stockless type. The mass per anchor of bower anchors, given in [TABLE 1A] (in SI, MKS Units) and [TABLE 1B] (in US Units), is for anchors of equal mass. The mass of the head of a stockless anchor, including pins and fittings, is not to be less than three-fifths of the total mass of the anchor. The mass of individual anchors may vary 7% plus or minus from the tabular mass, provided that the combined mass of all anchors is not less than that required for anchors of equal mass.

ii) Where specifically requested by the Owners, ABS will consider the use of special types of anchors, if they are shown to possess a proven superior holding capacity. This may result in a mass reduction of up to a maximum of 25% from the mass specified in [TABLE 1A] and [TABLE 1B] . In such cases, the notation **RW** (reduced weight) is to be indicated in the ABS *Record*. **RW** notation is mandatory for vessels fitted with reduced weight anchors and required to receive the Ⓔ notation.

- Superior Holding Power (SHP) Anchors
  A superior holding power (SHP) anchor is an anchor with a holding capacity of at least twice that of a stockless anchor of the same mass. The use of superior holding power anchors may result in a mass reduction of up to a maximum of 25% from the mass specified in [TABLE 1A] and [TABLE 1B] .
- Superior Holding Power Anchors for Restricted Service and to a Maximum of 1500 kg (3306 lbs)
  An SHP anchor for restricted service, and with a maximum weight of 1500 kg (3306 lbs) is an anchor with a holding capacity of at least four times that of a stockless of the same mass. The use of subject superior holding power anchors may result in a mass reduction of up to a maximum of 50% from the mass specified in [TABLE 1A] and [TABLE 1B] .

Superior holding power anchors and Superior holding power anchors for restricted service and with a maximum weight of 1500 kg (3306 lbs) are to be of an ABS approved type. The certification of SHP anchors is to be based on satisfactory full scale tests. Refer to [2-2-1] .

Commentary:

The requirements in 3-5-1/7 are based on IACS Unified Requirements (UR) A1.4

End of Commentary

9 Mooring and Towing Equipment *(1 July 2018)*

9.1 All Vessels *(2024)*

For vessels required to comply with SOLAS, the arrangement and details of shipboard fittings used for mooring operations and/or towing operations are to comply with [15] . The hawsers and towlines listed in [TABLE 2] and [TABLE 3] are as a minimum guide.

Commentary:

- The guidance in 3-5-1/9 is based on IACS Recommendation 10, Chain Anchoring, Mooring and Towing Equipment.
- Designers may also refer to IMO MSC.1/Circ. 1619 “Guidelines on the Design of Mooring Arrangements and the Selection of Appropriate Mooring Equipment and Fittings for Safe Mooring” and IACS Unified Interpretation SC212 "Shipboard fittings and supporting hull structures associated with towing and mooring on conventional vessels".
- Hawsers, towlines, and requirements for associated equipment and arrangements as described in [9.9] and [9.11] are optional requirements, not required as a condition of classification.

End of Commentary

9.3 Mooring Lines *(2024)*

The mooring lines for vessels with Equipment Number EN of less than or equal to 2000 are given in [9.3.1] . For other vessels, the mooring lines are given in [9.3.2] .

The Equipment Number EN is to be calculated in compliance with [3] . Deck cargoes at the ship nominal capacity condition are to be included for the determination of side-projected area A. The nominal capacity condition is defined in 3-2-7/4.3.1.

Commentary:

3-5-1/9.3.1 and 3-5-1/9.3.2 specify the minimum recommended number and strength of mooring lines. As an alternative to 3-5-1/9.3.1 and 3-5-1/9.3.2, the minimum recommendation for mooring lines may be determined by direct mooring analysis in line with the procedure given in IACS Recommendation 10/Appendix A.

The designer should consider verifying the adequacy of mooring lines based on assessments carried out for the individual mooring arrangement, expected shore-side mooring facilities and design environmental conditions for the berth.

End of Commentary

9.3.1 Mooring Lines for Vessels with EN $\leq$ 2000

The minimum mooring lines for vessels having an Equipment Number EN of less than or equal to 2000 are given in [TABLE 2] is intended as a guide.

For vessels having an *A/EN* ratio greater than 0.9 for SI or MKS units (9.7 for US units), the number of hawsers given in [TABLE 2] is to be increased by the number given below:

A/EN Ratio		*Increase number of hawsers by*
SI Units MKS Units	*U.S. Units*	
Above 0.9 up to 1.1	above 9.7 up to 11.8	1
Above 1.1 up to 1.2	above 11.8 up to 12.9	2
above 1.2	above 12.9	3

9.3.2 Mooring Lines for Vessels with EN > 2000 *(2024)*

The ship design minimum breaking load and number of mooring lines for vessels with an Equipment Number $EN > 2000$ are given in [9.3.2(a)] and [9.3.2(b)], respectively, and is intended as a guide. The length of mooring lines is given by [9.3.3].

The ship design minimum breaking load of mooring lines and the number of head, stern, and breast lines (see Note below defining head, stern, and breast lines) for vessels with an Equipment Number $EN > 2000$ are based on the side-projected area A_1. Side projected area A_1 is to be calculated similar to the side-projected area A according to [3] but considering the following conditions:

- The ballast draft is to be considered for the calculation of the side-projected area A_1. For ship types having small variation in the draft (e.g., passenger and RO/RO vessels), the side projected area A_1 may be calculated using the summer load waterline.
- Wind shielding of the pier may be considered for the calculation of the side-projected area A_1 unless the vessel is intended to be regularly moored to jetty type piers. A height of the pier surface of 3 m (9.8 ft) over waterline may be assumed (i.e., the lower part of the side-projected area with a height of 3 m (9.8 ft) above the waterline) for the considered loading condition and may be disregarded for the calculation of the side-projected area A_1.
- Deck cargoes at the ship nominal capacity condition are to be included for the determination of side-projected area A_1. For the condition with cargo on deck, the summer load waterline may be considered. Deck cargoes may not need to be considered if ballast draft condition generates a larger side-projected area A_1 than the full load condition with cargoes on deck. The larger of both side-projected areas is to be chosen as side-projected area A_1. The nominal capacity condition is defined in 3-2-7/4.3.1.

The mooring lines as given here under are based on a maximum current speed of 1.0 m/s (3.3 ft/s) and the following maximum wind speed v_w, in m/s (ft/s):

v_w	=	$25.0 - 0.002(A_1 - 2000)$ m/s	for passenger vessels, ferries, and car carriers with 2000 m^2 < $A_1 \leq$ 4000 m^2
	=	21.0 m/s	for passenger vessels, ferries, and car carriers with A_1 > 4000 m^2
	=	25.0 m/s	for other vessels
	=	$82.0 - 0.00061(A_1 - 21528)$ ft/s	for passenger vessels, ferries, and car carriers with 21528 ft^2 < $A_1 \leq$ 43056 ft^2
	=	68.9 ft/s	for passenger vessels, ferries, and car carriers with A_1 > 43056 ft^2
	=	82.0 ft/s	for other vessels

The wind speed is considered representative of a 30 second mean speed from any direction and at a height of 10 m (32.8 ft) above the ground. The current speed is considered representative of the maximum current speed acting on bow or stern (±10°) and at a depth of one-half of the mean draft. Furthermore, it is considered that vessels are moored to solid piers that provide shielding against cross current.

Commentary:

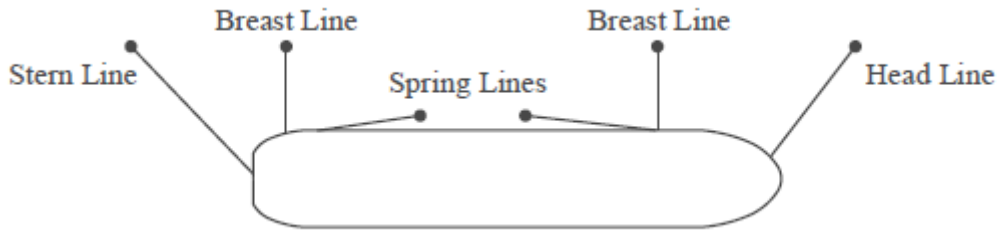
It is recommended that additional loads caused by the intended operation be considered (e.g., higher wind or current speeds, cross currents, additional wave loads, or reduced shielding from non-solid piers). Furthermore, it should be recognized that unbeneficial mooring layouts can considerably increase the loads on single mooring lines.

End of Commentary

Notes:

The following is defined with respect to the purpose of mooring lines, see also figure below:

- Breast line: A mooring line that is deployed perpendicular to the vessel, restraining the vessel in the off-berth direction.
- Spring line: A mooring line that is deployed almost parallel to the vessel, restraining the vessel in the fore or aft direction.
- Head/Stern line: A mooring line that is oriented between longitudinal and transverse direction, restraining the vessel in the off-berth and in fore or aft direction. The amount of restraint in the fore or aft and off-berth directions depends on the line angle relative to these directions.



9.3.2(a) Ship Design Minimum Breaking Load (2022)

The ship design minimum breaking load, in kN (kgf, lbf), of the mooring lines is to be taken as:

$$\mathrm{MBL_{SD}} = 0.1A_1 + 350\mathrm{kN}$$

$$\mathrm{MBL_{SD}} = 10.20A_1 + 35690\mathrm{kgf}$$

$$\mathrm{MBL_{SD}} = 2.089A_1 + 78680\mathrm{lbf}$$

The ship design minimum breaking load may be limited to 1275 kN (130,000 kgf, 286,600 lbf). However, in this case the moorings are to be considered as not sufficient for environmental conditions given by [9.3.2] . For these vessels, the acceptable wind speed v_w* can be estimated as follows:

$$v_w^* = v_w\sqrt{\frac{\mathrm{MBL_{SD}^*}}{\mathrm{MBL_{SD}}}}$$

where

v_w = wind speed as per [9.3.2]

$\mathrm{MBL_{SD}^*}$ = ship design minimum breaking load of the mooring lines intended to be supplied

$\mathrm{MBL_{SD}}$ = ship design minimum breaking load according to the above formula

However, the ship design minimum breaking load is not to be taken less than that corresponding to an acceptable wind speed of 21 m/s (68.9ft/s):

$$\mathrm{MBL}^{*}_{\mathrm{SD}} \geq \left(\frac{21}{v_w}\right)^2 \cdot \mathrm{MBL}_{\mathrm{SD}} \text{for} v_w \text{in m/ s}$$

$$\mathrm{MBL}^{*}_{\mathrm{SD}} \geq \left(\frac{68.9}{v_w}\right)^2 \cdot \mathrm{MBL}_{\mathrm{SD}} \text{for} v_w \text{in ft/s}$$

If lines are intended to be supplied for an acceptable wind speed v_w* higher than v_w as per [9.3.2], the ship design minimum breaking load is to be taken as:

$$\mathrm{MBL}^{*}_{\mathrm{SD}} = \left(\frac{v^{*}_w}{v_w}\right)^2 \cdot \mathrm{MBL}_{\mathrm{SD}}$$

9.3.2(b) Number of Mooring Lines **(2022)**

The total number of head, stern, and breast lines (see Note in [9.3.2]) is to be taken as:

$$n = 8.3 \cdot 10^{-4} \cdot A_1 + 6 \quad \text{for } A_1 \text{ in m}^2$$

$$n = 7.71 \cdot 10^{-5} \cdot A_1 + 6 \quad \text{for } A_1 \text{ in ft}^2$$

For oil tankers, chemical tankers, bulk carriers, and ore carriers the total number of head, stern, and breast lines is to be taken as:

$$n = 8.3 \cdot 10^{-4} \cdot A_1 + 4 \quad \text{for } A_1 \text{ in m}^2$$

$$n = 7.71 \cdot 10^{-5} \cdot A_1 + 4 \quad \text{for } A_1 \text{ in ft}^2$$

The total number of head, stern, and breast lines is to be rounded to the nearest whole number.

The number of head, stern, and breast lines may be increased or decreased in conjunction with an adjustment to the ship design minimum breaking load of the lines. The adjusted ship design minimum breaking load, $\mathrm{MBL}^{**}_{\mathrm{SD}}$, is to be taken as:

$$\mathrm{MBL}^{**}_{\mathrm{SD}} = 1.2 \cdot \mathrm{MBL}_2 \cdot n/n^{**} \leq \mathrm{MBL}_2 \quad \text{for increased number of lines}$$

$$\mathrm{MBL}^{**}_{\mathrm{SD}} = \mathrm{MBL}_2 \cdot n/n^{**} \quad \text{for reduced number of lines}$$

where MBL_2 is $\mathrm{MBL}_{\mathrm{SD}}$ or $\mathrm{MBL}^{*}_{\mathrm{SD}}$ specified in [9.3.2(a)], as appropriate, n^{**} is the increased or decreased total number of head, stern and breast lines and n the number of lines for the considered vessel type as calculated by the above formulas without rounding

Similarly, the ship design minimum breaking load of head, stern, and breast lines may be increased or decreased in conjunction with an adjustment to the number of lines.

The total number of spring lines n_S (see Note in [9.3.2]) is not to be taken as less than:

- Two lines, where EN < 5000
- Four lines, where EN ≥ 5000

The ship design minimum breaking load of spring lines is to be the same as that of the head, stern, and breast lines. If the number of head, stern, and breast lines is increased in conjunction with an adjustment to the ship design minimum breaking load of the lines, the number of spring lines is to be taken as follows, but rounded up to the nearest even number:

$$n_S^* = (\mathrm{MBL}_2/\mathrm{MBL}_{\mathrm{SD}}^{**})\, n_S$$

where MBL_2, $\mathrm{MBL}_{\mathrm{SD}}^{**}$ and n_S are defined above, and n_S^* is the increased number of spring lines.

9.3.3 Length of Mooring Lines

The length of mooring lines for vessels with *EN* of less than or equal to 2000 may be taken from [TABLE 2]. For vessels with *EN* > 2000 the length of mooring lines may be taken as 200 m (656 ft).

The lengths of individual mooring lines may be reduced by up to 7% of the above given lengths, but the total length of mooring lines should not be less than would have resulted had all lines been of equal length.

9.5 Tow Line *(2022)*

The tow lines are given in [TABLE 3] and are intended as a vessel's own tow line for a vessel to be towed by a tug or other vessel. For the selection of the tow line from [TABLE 3], the Equipment Number (*EN*) is to be taken according to [9.3].

The designer is to consider verifying the adequacy of towing lines based on assessments carried out for the individual towing arrangement.

9.7 Mooring and Tow Line Construction *(1 July 2025)*

Tow lines and mooring lines may be of wire, natural fiber, or synthetic fiber construction or of a mixture of wire and fiber. For synthetic fiber ropes it is recommended to use lines with reduced risk of recoil (snap-back) to mitigate the risk of injuries or fatalities in the case of breaking mooring lines.

The LDBF of a line should be 100%-105% of the ship design minimum breaking load ($\mathrm{MBL}_{\mathrm{SD}}$) defined in 3-5-1/9.3. The LDBF for nylon (polyamide) mooring lines should be specified as break tested wet.

Commentary:

The definition of line design break force (LDBF) is the minimum force that a new, dry, spliced mooring line will break at. This is for all synthetic cordage material.

This value is declared by the manufacturer on each line's mooring line certificate and is stated on a manufacturer's line data sheet.

Break testing wet for nylon (polyamide) mooring lines is recommended because nylon lines change strength characteristics once exposed to water and generally do not fully dry to their original construction state.

End of Commentary

9.9 Mooring Winches *(1 July 2018)*

9.9.1 *(2022)*

Each winch is to be fitted with brakes with a holding capacity sufficient to prevent unreeling of the mooring line when the rope tension is equal to 80% of the ship design minimum breaking load of the

rope as fitted on the first layer. The winch is to be fitted with brakes that will allow for the reliable setting of the brake rendering load.

9.9.2 *(2022)*

For powered winches the maximum hauling tension which can be applied to the mooring line (the reeled first layer) is not be less than 1/4.5 times, nor be more than $^{1}/_{3}$ times the rope's ship design minimum breaking load. For automatic winches, these figures apply when the winch is set to the maximum power with automatic control.

9.9.3 *(2025)*

For powered winches on automatic control, the rendering tension that the winch can exert on the mooring line (the reeled first layer) is not to exceed 1.5 times, nor be less than 1.05 times the hauling tension for that particular power setting of the winch. The winch is to be marked with the range of rope strength for which it is designed.

Commentary:

Winches discussed in this subsection are intended for mooring vessels to a quay or terminal. For an anchor windlass or winch associated with the circle E notation, refer to Section 4-5-1 of the *Marine Vessel Rules*. Reference is also made to ABS *Requirements for Position Mooring Systems*, which supplement ABS Rules for issuing classification notations relevant to position mooring systems.

End of Commentary

9.11 Mooring and Towing Line Arrangement *(2024)*

9.11.1 Mooring Line Arrangement *(2024)*

Mooring lines in the same service (e.g. breast lines, see Note in [9.3.2]) should be of the same characteristic in terms of strength and elasticity.

The number of mooring winches to be fitted is to allow for all mooring lines to be belayed on winches. This allows for an efficient distribution of the load to all mooring lines in the same service and for the mooring lines to shed load before they break. If the mooring arrangement is designed such that mooring lines are partly to be belayed on bitts or bollards, these lines are considered to be not as effective as the mooring lines belayed on winches.

Mooring lines are to have a lead as straight as is practicable from the mooring drum to the fairlead.

At points of change in direction, sufficiently large radii of the contact surface of a rope on a fitting are to be provided to minimize the wear experienced by mooring lines and as recommended by the rope manufacturer for the rope type intended to be used.

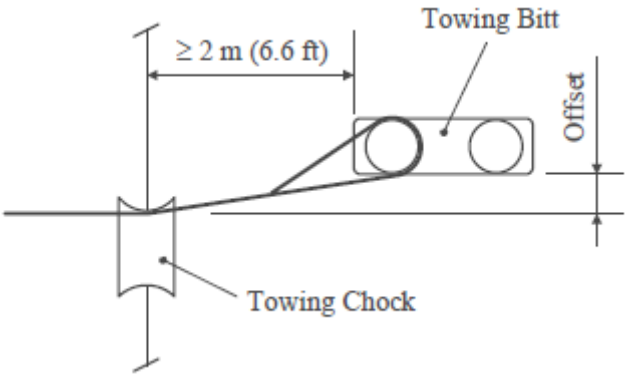
9.11.2 Towing Line Arrangement *(2024)*

Towing lines, in general, should be led through a closed chock. The use of open fairleads with rollers or closed roller fairleads is to be avoided.

For towing purposes, at least one chock is to be provided close to centerline of the vessel forward and aft. It is also beneficial to provide additional chocks on port and starboard side at the transom and at the bow.

Towing lines are to have a straight lead from the towing bitt or bollard to the chock.

For the purpose of towing, bitts or bollards serving a chock are to be located slightly offset and at least 2 m (6.6 ft) away from the chock, see figure below:



Warping drums are to be positioned not more than 20 m (65.6 ft) away from the chock, measured along the path of the line.

Attention is to be given to the arrangement of the equipment for towing and mooring operations to prevent interference of mooring and towing lines as far as practicable. It is beneficial to provide dedicated towing arrangements separate from the mooring equipment.

Commentary:

- For emergency towing arrangements for tankers reference is to be made to [15.7] .
- It is recommended that all vessels other than tankers provided with towing arrangements fore and aft of sufficient strength for 'other towing' service as defined in 3-2-7/4.3.2.

End of Commentary

11 Windlass or Winch Supporting Hull Structure and Chain Stopper *(2024)*

Construction and installation of all windlasses used for anchoring are to be carried out in accordance with 4-1-1/5 and Section 4-5-1. Where fitted, an independent chain stopper and its components are to be adequate for the load imposed. The arrangements and details of the chain stopper are to be submitted for review.

Means are to be provided for stopping each cable as it is paid out, and the windlass should be capable of heaving in either cable. Where the chain is arranged such that one anchor has a longer length for anchoring it is to be verified that the windlass has sufficient ability to heave in the longer length of chain.

The windlass supporting hull structures are to meet the requirements in [11.1] .

11.1 Supporting Hull Structure *(2022)*

The windlass is to be bolted down to a substantial foundation which is to meet the following load cases and associated criteria.

11.1.1 Design Loads *(2022)*

11.1.1(a) Load on Windlass Support Structure. **(2022)**

The following load is to be applied in the direction of the chain.

With cable stopper not attached to windlass:	0.45 B.S.
With cable stopper attached to windlass:	0.8 B.S.
Without cable stopper:	0.8 B.S.

where

BS = minimum breaking strength of the chain, as indicated in [2-2-2/TABLE 2] and [2-2-2/TABLE 3] of the *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)*.

11.1.1(b) Load on Cable Stopper and Support Structure .

A load of 0.8 BS is to be applied in the direction of the chain.

11.1.1(c) Allowable Stresses. ***(2022)***

The allowable stress for the structures supporting the windlass and cable stopper are as follows:

i) For strength assessment by means of beam theory or grillage analysis:

- Normal stress: 100% of the specified minimum yield stress of the material
- Shear stress: 60% of the specified minimum yield stress of the material

The normal stress is the sum of bending stress and axial stress. The shear stress to be considered corresponds to the shear stress acting perpendicular to the normal stress. No stress concentration factors are to be taken into account.

ii) For strength assessment by means of finite element analysis:

- Von Mises stress: 100% of the specified minimum yield stress of the material

For strength assessment by means of finite element analysis, the mesh is to be fine enough to represent the geometry as realistically as possible. The ratio of element length to width is not to exceed 3. Girders are to be modelled using shell or plane stress elements. Symmetric girder flanges may be modelled by beam or truss elements. The element height of girder webs is not to exceed one-third of the web height. In way of small openings in girder webs, the web thickness is to be reduced to a mean thickness over the web height. Large openings are to be modelled. Stiffeners may be modelled using shell, plane stress, or beam elements. The mesh size of stiffeners is to be fine enough to obtain proper bending stress. If flat bars are modelled using shell or plane stress elements, dummy rod elements are to be modelled at the free edge of the flat bars and the stresses of the dummy elements are to be evaluated. Stresses are to be read from the center of the individual element. For shell elements, the stresses are to be evaluated at the mid plane of the element.

11.1.1(d) Required Scantlings ***(2022)***

The net minimum scantlings of the supporting hull structure are to comply with the requirements given in [11.1.1(c)] . The required gross scantlings are determined according to 3-2-7/4.7.

11.1.2 Sea Loads

For vessels with length, L (as defined in 3-1-1/3.1), of 80 meters (263 feet) or more, where the height of the exposed deck in way of the item is less than $0.1L$ or 22 m above the summer load waterline, whichever is the lesser, the windlass supporting structures located on the exposed fore deck within the forward $0.25L$ are to meet the following requirements Where the mooring winch is integral with the windlass, it is to be considered as a part of the windlass for the purpose of said paragraph.

11.1.2(a) Pressures. **(1 July 2018)**

The following pressures and associated areas are to be applied (see [FIGURE 2]):

- 200 kN/m^2 (20.4 tf/m^2, 4178 lbs/ft^2) normal to the shaft axis and away from the forward perpendicular, over the projected area in this direction. Where the cable is stored on the windlass drum, the entire projected area of the drum's flange is to be accounted for.
- 150 kN/m^2 (15.3 tf/m^2, 3133 lbs/ft^2) parallel to the shaft axis and acting both inboard and outboard separately, over the multiple of f times the projected area in this direction,

  where f is defined as:

f = 1 + *B/H*, but need not be taken as greater than 2.5

B = width of windlass measured parallel to the shaft axis (see [FIGURE 2])

H = overall height of windlass (see [FIGURE 2]).

11.1.2(b) Forces.

Forces in the bolts, chocks and stoppers securing the windlass to the deck are to be calculated. The windlass is supported by N groups of bolts, each containing one or more bolts, see [FIGURE 2] .

i) Axial Forces

The aggregate axial force R_i in respective group of bolts (or bolt) i, positive in tension, may be calculated from the following equations:

$$R_{xi} = P_x h x_i A_i / I_x$$

$$R_{yi} = P_y h y_i A_i / I_y$$

$$R_i = R_{xi} + R_{yi} - R_{si}$$

where

P_x = force, kN (tf, Ltf), acting normal to the shaft axis

P_y = force, kN (tf, Ltf), acting parallel to the shaft axis, either inboard or outboard, whichever gives the greater force in bolt group i

h = shaft height above the windlass mounting, cm (in.)

x_i, y_i = x and y coordinates of bolt group i from the centroid of all N bolt groups, positive in the direction opposite to that of the applied force, cm (in.)

A_i = cross-sectional area of all bolts in group i, cm^2 (in^2)

I_x = $A_i x_i^2$ for N bolt groups

I_y = $A_i y_i^2$ for N bolt groups

R_{si} = static reaction at bolt group i, due to weight of windlass.

ii) Shear Forces

Aggregated shear forces, F_{xi}, F_{yi}, applied to the respective bolt group, i, of bolts, and the resultant combined force, F_i, may be calculated from:

$$F_{xi} = (P_x - \alpha g M)/N$$

$$F_{yi} = (P_y - \alpha g M)/N$$

$$F_i = \left(F_{xi}^2 + F_{yi}^2\right)^{0.5}$$

where

α = coefficient of friction (0.5)
M = mass of windlass, in tons (Ltons)
g = gravity: 9.81 m/s^2 (32.2 ft/sec^2)
N = number of groups of bolts

The axial tensile/compressive and lateral forces from the above equations are also to be considered in verifying the supporting structure.

11.1.2(c) Stresses in Bolts.

Tensile axial stresses in the individual bolts in each group of bolts i are to be calculated. The horizontal forces, F_{xi} and F_{yi}, are normally to be reacted by shear chocks. Where "fitted" bolts are designed to support these shear forces in one or both directions, the von Mises equivalent stresses in the individual "fitted" bolts are to be calculated and compared to the stress under proof load. Where pourable resins are incorporated in the holding down arrangements, due account is to be taken in the calculations.

11.1.2(d) Allowable Stresses. ***(2024)***

i) *Bolts.* The safety factor against bolt proof strength is to be not less than 2.0.

ii) *Supporting Structures.* The stresses acting on the above deck framing and the hull structure supporting the windlass and chain stopper are to meet the requirements in [11.1.1(c)] and [11.1.1(d)].

Commentary:

The requirements in 3-5-1/11.1.2 are based on IACS Unified Requirements (UR) S27.

End of Commentary

11.3 Winches Used for Anchoring (Vessels Under 90 m (295 ft)) *(1 July 2024)*

For vessels where wire ropes are used in lieu of chain cables, construction and installation of all winches used for anchoring are to be carried out in accordance with the following requirements, to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

Wire ropes used in lieu of chain cables are subject to the following conditions:

- The wire is to have a breaking strength not less than a grade 1 chain of the required size and a length of at least 1.5 times the chain it is replacing.

- The anchor weight is to be increased by 25% on top of the anchor weight determined based on 3-5-1/19.7 Table 1A (in SI, MKS Units) and 3-5-1/19.7 Table 1B (in US Units).
- Between the wire rope and anchor, chain cable of the required size having a length of 12.5 m (41.0 ft), or the distance between the anchor in the stored position and the winch, whichever is less, is to be fitted.
- All surfaces in contact with the wire need to be rounded with a radius of not less than 10 times the wire rope diameter (including stem).
- Steel wire is to be selected to be fit for purpose based on the manufacturer's recommendation and provided with guidance for maintenance and inspection.

Commentary:

Cables which are intended to form part of the equipment should not be used as check chains when the vessel is launched.

The requirements in 3-5-1/11.3 for use of wire ropes are based on IACS Unified Requirements (UR) A1.5.

End of Commentary

The winch is to be well bolted down to a substantial bed. See [11.1.1] for further requirements and guidance on the design of the supporting hull structure.

The design of winches used for anchoring is to conform to an applicable standard or code of practice. As a minimum, standards or practices are to indicate strength, performance and testing criteria.

The manufacturer or builder is to submit, in accordance with 4-1-1/5, the plans and calculations from following subsections, as applicable.

11.3.1 Plans *(2024)*

i) Arrangement and details of the winch, drums, brakes, shaft, gears, coupling bolts, wildcat, sheaves, pulleys and foundation

ii) Electric one line diagram

iii) Piping system diagrams

iv) Control arrangements

Plans or data are to show complete details including power ratings, working pressures, welding details, material specifications, pipe and electric cable specifications, and standards or code of practices considered in the design.

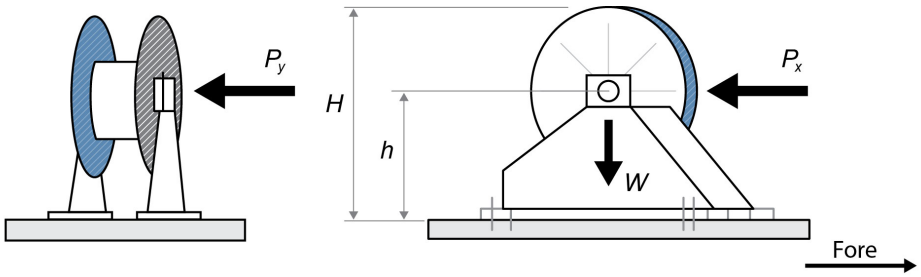
11.3.2 Calculations *(2024)*

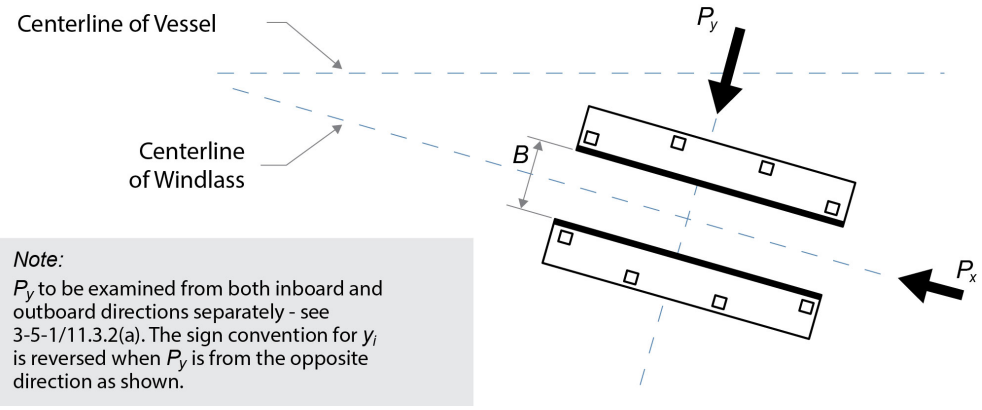
Detailed stress calculations are to be submitted for the applicable system components listed in [11.2.1] above. The calculations are to be based on the breaking strength of the chain or wire rope, are to indicate maximum torque or load to which the unit will be subjected and also show compliance with either applicable sections of the Rules, such as Section 4-3-1 and 4-3-1-A1, for the gears and shafts, or to other recognized standard or code of practice.

11.5 Trial

Trial requirements refer to 3-7-2/1.

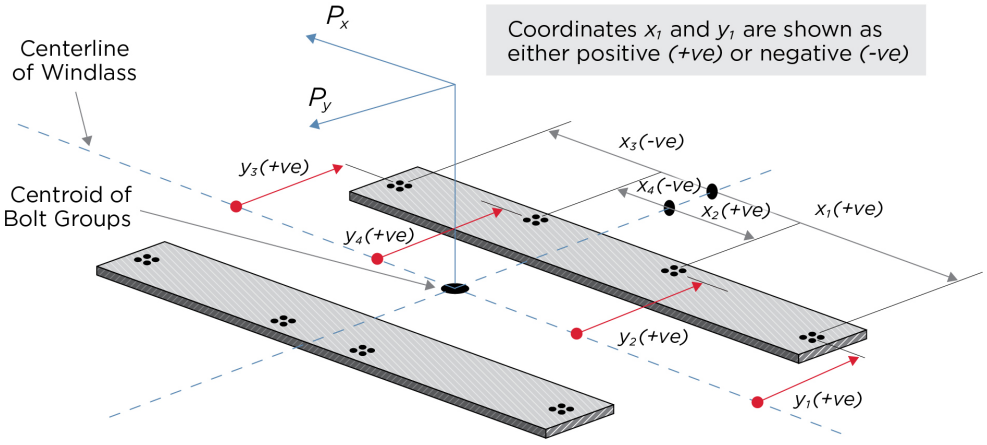
FIGURE 2
Direction of Forces and Weight





Note:
P_y to be examined from both inboard and outboard directions separately - see 3-5-1/11.3.2(a). The sign convention for y_i is reversed when P_y is from the opposite direction as shown.

FIGURE 3
Sign Convention



Coordinates x_i and y_i are shown as either positive *(+ve)* or negative *(-ve)*

12 Hawse Pipes *(2021)*

Hawse pipes are to comply with the following:

i) To be of ample size and strength in accordance with the following equations or other recognized design practices:

- Minimum hawse pipe inner diameter = 9.5 x d (mm) [(1)];
- Minimum top plate thickness = 0.3 x d (mm);

- Minimum bottom plate thickness = 0.4 x *d* (mm);
- Where the hawse pipe is made of one plate, minimum plate thickness = (0.35 x *d*) - 0.5 (mm).

Where *d* is the diameter of the anchor chain.

Note:

1 8.5 x *d* (mm) may be acceptable for large diameter of anchor chain if proposed inner diameter of hawse pipe is greater than 33 x $(G)^{1/3}$ (mm) , where *G* is anchor weight (kg).

ii) To have full rounded flanges and the least possible lead, in order to minimize the nip on the cables.

iii) They are to be securely attached to thick doubling or insert plates by continuous welds the size of which are to be in accordance with Section 3-2-19 for the plating thickness and type of joint selected.

iv) When in position, they are to be thoroughly tested for watertightness by means of a hose in which the water pressure is not to be less than 2.06 bar (2.1 kgf/cm^2, 30 psi).

v) Hawse pipes for stockless anchors are to provide enough clearances to preclude the anchor jamming. The anchors are to be let go aweigh and heaved up to the satisfaction of the Surveyor, proving the smooth setting, flukes' adherence to the pocket surface and no jamming occurrence.

vi) The anchors are to be shipped and unshipped so that the Surveyor may be satisfied that there is no risk of the anchor jamming in the hawse pipe.

vii) Care is to be taken to ensure a fair lead for the chain from the windlass to the hawse pipes and to the chain pipes.

13 Securing of the Inboard Ends of Chain Cables *(2024)*

Arrangements are to be provided for securing the inboard ends of the bower anchor chain cables. The bower anchors and their cables are to be connected and positioned, ready for use. The chain cables are to be secured to the vessel's structures by a fastening able to withstand a force not less than 15% nor more than 30% of the breaking load of the chain cable. The fastening is to be provided with a mean suitable to permit, in case of emergency, an easy slipping of the chain cables to sea, operable from an accessible position outside the chain locker.

14 Securing of Stowed Anchors *(2024)*

Arrangements are to be provided for securing the anchors and stowing the cables.

Commentary:
To hold the anchor tight in against the hull or the anchor pocket, it is recommended to fit anchor lashings (e.g., a "devil's claw"). If fitted, anchor lashings should be designed to resist a load at least corresponding to twice the anchor mass plus 10 m (32.8 ft) of cable without exceeding 40% of the yield strength of the material.

End of Commentary

15 Towing and Mooring Arrangement and Shipboard Fittings *(2024)*

For vessels which are required to comply with SOLAS, the arrangements and details of shipboard fittings used for mooring operations and/or towing operations at bow, sides and stern are to comply with the requirements in this Section. The requirements for the supporting structures of these deck fittings are specified in 3-2-7/4.

Commentary:

The requirements in 3-5-1/15 are based on SOLAS Regulation II-1/3.8. Refer to "Guidelines on The Design of Mooring Arrangements and The Selection of Appropriate Mooring Equipment and Fittings for Safe Mooring" (MSC.1/Circ.1619) and "Revised Guidance on Shipboard Towing and Mooring Equipment" (MSC/Circ.1175/Rev.1).

While applying the requirements of SOLAS Reg II-1/3.8, the following minimum requirements need to be verified:

For Ships of less than 3,000 GT

Towing and mooring arrangement plan is to be submitted to ABS for technical review. The winch brake holding capacities shall be included in addition to the information required by MSC.1/Circ.1175/Rev.1 paragraph 5 for the "Towing and Mooring Arrangement Plan".

A technical specification document for the mooring lines supplied with the vessel shall be provided to ABS for information in support of the required technical review. The recommended minimum diameter of each fitting in contact with the mooring lines and the line design break force (LDBF) of the mooring lines shall be included in the document.

For Ships of 3,000 GT and above

A document shall be provided by the designer for information and as a supplement to the "Towing and Mooring Arrangement Plan", confirming that MSC.1/Circ.1619 has been considered. The document shall explicitly confirm if the deviations are unavoidable.

Any deviations are to be recorded as per MSC.1/Circ. 1619 paragraph 6 as a supplement to the "Towing and Mooring Arrangement Plan". Justification and suitable safety measures are to be provided in this supplement and a preference to the supplement is to be included on the "Towing and Mooring Arrangement Plan".

The Mooring winch brake holding capacities shall be less than 100% of the MBLSD - Ref MSC.1/Circ. 1619 paragraph 5.2.3.3 and 5.2.4. The winches are to be fitted with brakes that will allow for the reliable setting of the brake rendering load.

End of Commentary

15.1 Bollards and Bitts, Fairleads, Stand Rollers and Chocks *(2023)*

The size of shipboard fittings is to be in accordance with recognized standards (e.g. ISO13795 Ships and marine technology – Ship's mooring and towing fittings – Welded steel bollards for sea-going vessels) or comply with the requirements given in 3-5-1/15.1.1 and 3-5-1/15.1.2. For shipboard fittings not in accordance with recognized standard the corrosion addition, t_c, and the wear allowance, t_w, given in 3-2-7/4.7, respectively, are to be considered.

Details of the shipboard fittings are to be submitted for review. The design load used to assess shipboard fittings and their attachments to the hull are to be in accordance with the requirements as specified in 3-2-7/4.

15.1.1 Mooring Operations *(2024)*

Shipboard fittings may be selected from a recognized national or international standard. The Safe Working Load (SWL) is to be suitable for mooring lines with a minimum breaking strength that is not less than the ship design minimum breaking load according to [TABLE 2] (see Notes in 3-2-7/4.3.1(b).

Mooring bitts (double bollards) are to be chosen for the mooring line attached in figure-of-eight fashion if the industry standard distinguishes between different methods to attach the line, i.e. figure-of-eight or eye splice attachment.

When the shipboard fitting is not selected from an accepted industry standard, the strength of the fitting and of its attachment to the vessel is to be in accordance with 3-2-7/4.3 for the applicable loads and 3-2-7/4.5 for the applicable allowable stress. Mooring bitts (double bollards) are required to resist the loads caused by the mooring line attached in figure-of-eight fashion, see Commentary. For strength assessment beam theory or finite element analysis using net scantlings is to be applied, as appropriate. Refer to [11.1.1(c)] . Corrosion additions are to be as defined in 3-2-7/4.7.2. A wear down allowance is to be included as defined in 3-2-7/4.7.3.

Commentary:

With the line attached to a mooring bitt in the traditional manner (figure-of-eight fashion), either of the two posts of the mooring bitt can be subjected to a force twice as large as that acting on the mooring line. Disregarding this effect may overload the bitt, depending on the industry standard and fitting size.

Consideration may be given to accepting load tests as alternative to strength assessment by calculations.

End of Commentary

15.1.2 Towing Operations *(2024)*

Shipboard fittings may be selected from a recognized industry standard and are to be at least based on the following loads:

i) For normal towing operations, the intended maximum towing load (e.g., static bollard pull) as indicated on the towing and mooring arrangements plan

ii) For other towing service, the ship design minimum breaking load of the tow line according to [TABLE 3] (see Notes in 3-2-7/4.3.2(b)

iii) For fittings intended to be used for, both, normal and other towing operations, the greater of the loads according to *i)* and *ii)*

Towing bitts (double bollards) may be chosen for the towing line attached with eye splice if the industry standard distinguishes between different methods to attach the line, i.e. figure-of-eight or eye splice attachment.

When the shipboard fitting is not selected from an accepted industry standard, the strength of the fitting and of its attachment to the vessel is to be in accordance with 3-2-7/4.3 for the applicable loads and 3-2-7/4.5 for the applicable allowable stress. Towing bitts (double bollards) are required to resist the loads caused by the towing line attached with eye splice. For strength assessment beam theory or finite element analysis using net scantlings is to be applied, as appropriate. Refer to [11.1.1(c)] . Corrosion additions are to be as defined in 3-2-7/4.7.2. A wear down allowance is to be included as defined in 3-2-7/4.7.3.

Commentary:

ABS may give consideration to accepting load tests as an alternative to strength assessment by calculations.

End of Commentary

15.3 Safe Working Load (SWL) and Towing Load (TOW) *(1 July 2018)*

The requirements on SWL apply for a single post basis (no more than one turn of one cable).

15.3.1 Mooring Operations *(2022)*

i) The Safe Working Load (SWL) is the safe load limit of shipboard fittings used for mooring purpose.

ii) Unless a greater SWL is requested by the applicant according to 3-2-7/4.3.3, the SWL is not to exceed the ship design minimum breaking load of the mooring line according to [TABLE 2] , see Notes in 3-2-7/4.3.1.

iii) The SWL, in tons, of each shipboard fitting is to be marked (by weld bead or equivalent) on the fittings used for mooring. For fittings intended to be used for both, mooring and towing, TOW, in tons, according to [15.3.2] is to be marked in addition to SWL.

iv) The above requirements on SWL apply for use with no more than one mooring line.

v) The towing and mooring arrangements plan mentioned in [15.5] is to define the method of use of mooring lines.

15.3.2 Towing Operations *(2022)*

i) The Safe Towing Load (TOW) is the safe load limit of shipboard fittings used for towing purpose.

ii) TOW used for normal towing operations is not to exceed 80% of the design load per 3-2-7/4.3.2(a).

iii) TOW used for other towing operations is not to exceed 80% the design load according to 3-2-7/4.3.2(b).

iv) For fittings used for both normal and other towing operations, the greater of the safe towing loads according to *ii)* and *iii)* is to be used.

v) TOW, in tons, of each shipboard fitting is to be marked (by weld bead or equivalent) on the fittings used for towing. For fittings intended to be used for both towing and mooring, SWL, in tons, according to [15.3.1] is to be marked in addition to TOW.

vi) The above requirements on TOW apply for the use with no more than one line. If not otherwise chosen, for towing bitts (double bollards) TOW is the load limit for a towing line attached with eye-splice.

vii) The towing and mooring arrangements plan mentioned in [15.5] is to define the method of use of towing lines.

15.3.3 Marking and Plan

15.3.3(a) Marking.

The SWL of each shipboard fitting is to be permanently marked (by weld bead or equivalent, but not painting alone) on the fittings used for towing/mooring.

15.3.3(b) Plan.

The towing and mooring arrangements plan mentioned in [15.5] is to define the method and purpose of use of mooring lines and/or towing lines.

15.5 Documents to be Submitted *(2024)*

The SWL and TOW for the intended use for each shipboard fitting is to be noted in the towing and mooring arrangements plan available on board for the guidance of the Master.

The plan is to include for each shipboard fitting the listed below information:

- Location on the ship;
- Fitting type;
- SWL and TOW;
- Purpose (mooring/harbor towing/other towing); and
- Manner of applying the towing or mooring line load including limiting fleet angle (i.e., the angle of change in direction of a line at the fitting).

The above information is to be incorporated into the pilot card in order to provide the pilot proper information on harbor/other towing operations.

In addition, the towing and mooring arrangement plan is to include the following general information:

- the arrangement of mooring lines showing number of lines (N)
- the ship design minimum breaking load of each mooring line (MBL_{SD})
- the acceptable environmental conditions as given in [9.3.2] for the recommended ship design minimum breaking load lines for vessels with Equipment Number $EN > 2000$:

– 30 second mean wind speed from any direction (v_W or v_W* according to [9.3.2])

– Maximum current speed acting on bow or stern (±10°)

15.7 Emergency Towing Arrangements *(2024)*

Emergency towing arrangements at both ends on tankers of 20,000 tons (19684 Lton) deadweight and above, including oil tankers, chemical tankers and gas carriers, are to be fitted in accordance with Maritime Safety Committee Resolution MSC 35(63), as amended. Refer to SOLAS II-1/3.4.

Written approval by the flag Administration of the emergency towing arrangements is to be accepted as evidence of compliance with this paragraph.

17 Offshore Mooring Chain for Station Keeping

17.1 Qualification of Manufacturers

Offshore mooring chain is to be manufactured by works approved by ABS, in accordance with [2-2-2/7.1] of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)* or in accordance with the ABS *Requirements for Certification of Offshore Mooring Chain*.

17.3 Materials

Materials used for the manufacture of offshore mooring chain are to meet the requirements of [2-2-2/7.1] of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)* or in accordance with the ABS *Requirements for Certification of Offshore Mooring Chain*.

17.5 Design, Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Mooring Chain

Offshore mooring chain is to be designed, manufactured, tested and certified in accordance with the requirements of Section [2-2-2] of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)* or in accordance with the ABS *Requirements for Certification of Offshore Mooring Chain*.

The common link is to be of stud link type grade 2a, 2b or 3a, 3b Anchor Chain, or grade RQ3, RQ3S, RQ4 Mooring Chain.

19 Chafing Chain for Emergency Towing Arrangements

19.1 Scope

These requirements apply to the chafing chain for chafing gear of two types of Emergency Towing Arrangement (ETA), those with a specified safe working load (SWL) of 1000 kN (ETA1000) for tankers of 20,000 tons deadweight and over but less than 50,000 tons deadweight and those with a specified safe working load of 2000 kN (ETA2000) for tankers of 50,000 tons deadweight and over. Chafing chains other than those specified can be used subject to special agreement with ABS.

19.3 Qualification of Manufacturers

Qualification of chafing chain manufacturers is to comply with [17.1] .

19.5 Materials

Materials used for the manufacture of chafing chain are to comply with [17.3] .

19.7 Design, Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Chafing Chain

19.7.1

Chafing chain is to be designed, manufactured, tested and certified in accordance with the requirements of Section [2-2-2] of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)* or in accordance with the ABS *Requirements for Certification of Offshore Mooring Chain.*

19.7.2

The common link is to be of stud link type grade 2a, 2b or 3a, 3b Anchor Chain, or grade RQ3, RQ3S, RQ4 Mooring Chain.

19.7.3

The arrangement at the end connected to the strongpoint and the dimensions of the chafing chain are determined by the type of ETA. The other end of the chafing chain is to be fitted with a pear-shaped open link allowing connection to a shackle corresponding to the type of ETA and chain cable grade. A typical arrangement of this chain end is shown in [FIGURE 4] .

19.7.4

The chafing chain is to be able to withstand a breaking load not less than twice the SWL. For each type of ETA, the nominal diameter of common link for chafing chains is to comply with the value indicated below.

Type of ETA	*Nominal Diameter of Common Link, d, min.*	
	Grade 2	*Grade 3*
ETA1000	62 mm	52 mm
ETA2000	90 mm	76 mm

FIGURE 4
Typical Outboard Chafing Chain End

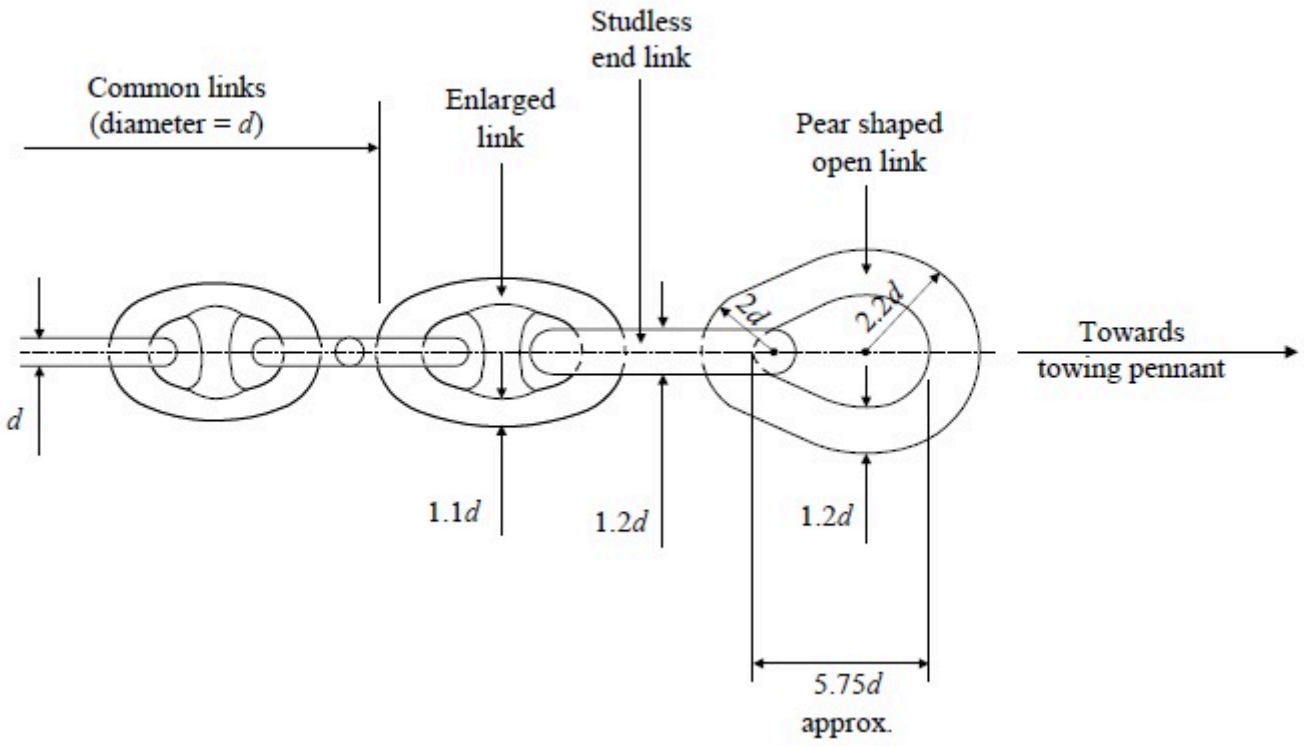


TABLE 1A
Equipment for Self-propelled Ocean-going Vessels
(1 July 2024)

For intermediate values of equipment number, use equipment complement in sizes and weights given for the lower equipment number in the table.
For tugs under 45 m (147.6 ft) in length intended for towing service only, one anchor may be used on board provided that the second anchor and its relevant chain cable are readily available to be installed. In case of loss of anchor, the tug is to remain in port until replacement anchoring equipment is installed on board.
SI, MKS Units

		Stockless Bower Anchors		*Chain Cable Stud Link Bower Chain**			
					Diameter		
Equipment Numeral	*Equipment Number*	*Number*	*Mass per Anchor, kg*	*Length, m*	*Ordinary-Strength Steel (Grade 1), mm*	*High-Strength Steel (Grade 2), mm*	*Extra High-Strength Steel (Grade 3), mm*
UA1	30	2	75	192.5	12.5	--	--
UA2	40	2	100	192.5	12.5	--	--
UA3	50	2	120	192.5	12.5	--	--
UA4	60	2	140	192.5	12.5	--	--

Equipment Numeral	Equipment Number	Stockless Bower Anchors		Chain Cable Stud Link Bower Chain*			
		Number	Mass per Anchor, kg	Length, m	Diameter		
					Ordinary-Strength Steel (Grade 1), mm	High-Strength Steel (Grade 2), mm	Extra High-Strength Steel (Grade 3), mm
UA5	70	2	160	220	14	12.5	--
UA6	80	2	180	220	14	12.5	--
UA7	90	2	210	220	16	14	--
UA8	100	2	240	220	16	14	--
UA9	110	2	270	247.5	17.5	16	--
UA10	120	2	300	247.5	17.5	16	--
UA11	130	2	340	275	19	16	--
UA12	140	2	390	275	20.5	17.5	--
U6	150	2	480	275	22	19	
U7	175	2	570	302.5	24	20.5	
U8	205	2	660	302.5	26	22	20.5
U9	240	2	780	330	28	24	22
U10	280	2	900	357.5	30	26	24
U11	320	2	1020	357.5	32	28	24
U12	360	2	1140	385	34	30	26
U13	400	2	1290	385	36	32	28
U14	450	2	1440	412.5	38	34	30
U15	500	2	1590	412.5	40	34	30
U16	550	2	1740	440	42	36	32
U17	600	2	1920	440	44	38	34
U18	660	2	2100	440	46	40	36
U19	720	2	2280	467.5	48	42	36
U20	780	2	2460	467.5	50	44	38
U21	840	2	2640	467.5	52	46	40
U22	910	2	2850	495	54	48	42
U23	980	2	3060	495	56	50	44
U24	1060	2	3300	495	58	50	46

Equipment Numeral	Equipment Number	Stockless Bower Anchors		Chain Cable Stud Link Bower Chain*			
					Diameter		
		Number	Mass per Anchor, kg	Length, m	Ordinary-Strength Steel (Grade 1), mm	High-Strength Steel (Grade 2), mm	Extra High-Strength Steel (Grade 3), mm
U25	1140	2	3540	522.5	60	52	46
U26	1220	2	3780	522.5	62	54	48
U27	1300	2	4050	522.5	64	56	50
U28	1390	2	4320	550	66	58	50
U29	1480	2	4590	550	68	60	52
U30	1570	2	4890	550	70	62	54
U31	1670	2	5250	577.5	73	64	56
U32	1790	2	5610	577.5	76	66	58
U33	1930	2	6000	577.5	78	68	60
U34	2080	2	6450	605	81	70	62
U35	2230	2	6900	605	84	73	64
U36	2380	2	7350	605	87	76	66
U37	2530	2	7800	632.5	90	78	68
U38	2700	2	8300	632.5	92	81	70
U39	2870	2	8700	632.5	95	84	73
U40	3040	2	9300	660	97	84	76
U41	3210	2	9900	660	100	87	78
U42	3400	2	10500	660	102	90	78
U43	3600	2	11100	687.5	105	92	81
U44	3800	2	11700	687.5	107	95	84
U45	4000	2	12300	687.5	111	97	87
U46	4200	2	12900	715	114	100	87
U47	4400	2	13500	715	117	102	90
U48	4600	2	14100	715	120	105	92
U49	4800	2	14700	742.5	122	107	95
U50	5000	2	15400	742.5	124	111	97

Equipment Numeral	Equipment Number	Stockless Bower Anchors		Chain Cable Stud Link Bower Chain*			
		Number	Mass per Anchor, kg	Length, m	Diameter		
					Ordinary-Strength Steel (Grade 1), mm	High-Strength Steel (Grade 2), mm	Extra High-Strength Steel (Grade 3), mm
U51	5200	2	16100	742.5	127	111	97
U52	5500	2	16900	742.5	130	114	100
U53	5800	2	17800	742.5	132	117	102
U54	6100	2	18800	742.5	--	120	107
U55	6500	2	20000	770	--	124	111
U56	6900	2	21500	770	--	127	114
U57	7400	2	23000	770	--	132	117
U58	7900	2	24500	770	--	137	122
U59	8400	2	26000	770	--	142	127
U60	8900	2	27500	770	--	147	132
U61	9400	2	29000	770	--	152	132
U62	10000	2	31000	770	--	--	137
U63	10700	2	33000	770	--	--	142
U64	11500	2	35500	770	--	--	147
U65	12400	2	38500	770	--	--	152
U66	13400	2	42000	770	--	--	157
U67	14600	2	46000	770	--	--	162

Notes:

* Wire ropes may be used in lieu of chain cables for anchors:

a Not intended for use in normal temporary anchoring operations on ships under 90 m (295 ft) in length, or

b Used for positioning with a minimum of 4 points anchoring (e.g., for cable or pipe laying).

See [11.3] .

TABLE 1B
Equipment for Self-propelled Ocean-going Vessels
(1 July 2024)

For intermediate values of equipment number, use equipment complement in sizes and weights given for the lower equipment number in the table.

For tugs under 45 m (147.6 ft) in length intended for towing service only, one anchor may be used on board provided that the second anchor and its relevant chain cable are readily available to be installed. In case of loss of anchor, the tug is to remain in port until replacement anchoring equipment is installed on board.

US Units

Equipment Numeral	*Equipment Number*	*Stockless Bower Anchors*		*Chain Cable Stud Link Bower Chain**			
		Number	*Mass per Anchor, pounds*	*Length, fathoms*	*Diameter*		
					Ordinary-Strength Steel (Grade 1), inches	*High-Strength Steel (Grade 2), inches*	*Extra High-Strength Steel (Grade 3), inches*
UA1	30	2	165	105	1/2	--	--
UA2	40	2	220	105	1/2	--	--
UA3	50	2	265	105	1/2	--	--
UA4	60	2	310	105	1/2	--	--
UA5	70	2	350	120	9/16	1/2	--
UA6	80	2	400	120	9/16	1/2	--
UA7	90	2	460	120	5/8	9/16	--
UA8	100	2	530	120	5/8	9/16	--
UA9	110	2	595	135	11/16	5/8	--
UA10	120	2	670	135	11/16	5/8	--
UA11	130	2	750	150	3/4	11/16	--
UA12	140	2	860	150	13/16	11/16	--
U6	150	2	1060	150	7/8	3/4	
U7	175	2	1255	165	15/16	13/16	
U8	205	2	1455	165	1	7/8	13/16
U9	240	2	1720	180	1 1/8	15/16	7/8
U10	280	2	1985	195	1 3/16	1	15/16
U11	320	2	2250	195	1 1/4	1 1/8	15/16
U12	360	2	2510	210	1 5/16	1 3/16	1
U13	400	2	2840	210	1 7/16	1 1/4	1 1/8
U14	450	2	3170	225	1 1/2	1 5/16	1 3/16
U15	500	2	3500	225	1 9/16	1 5/16	1 3/16

Equipment Numeral	Equipment Number	Stockless Bower Anchors		Chain Cable Stud Link Bower Chain*			
					Diameter		
		Number	Mass per Anchor, pounds	Length, fathoms	Ordinary-Strength Steel (Grade 1), inches	High-Strength Steel (Grade 2), inches	Extra High-Strength Steel (Grade 3), inches
U16	550	2	3830	240	1 5/8	1 7/16	1 1/4
U17	600	2	4230	240	1 3/4	1 1/2	1 5/16
U18	660	2	4630	240	1 13/16	1 9/16	1 7/16
U19	720	2	5020	255	1 7/8	1 5/8	1 7/16
U20	780	2	5420	255	2	1 3/4	1 1/2
U21	840	2	5820	255	2 1/16	1 13/16	1 9/16
U22	910	2	6280	270	2 1/8	1 7/8	1 5/8
U23	980	2	6740	270	2 3/16	1 15/16	1 3/4
U24	1060	2	7270	270	2 5/16	2	1 13/16
U25	1140	2	7800	285	2 3/8	2 1/16	1 13/16
U26	1220	2	8330	285	2 7/16	2 1/8	1 7/8
U27	1300	2	8930	285	2 1/2	2 3/16	2
U28	1390	2	9520	300	2 5/8	2 5/16	2
U29	1480	2	10120	300	2 11/16	2 3/8	2 1/16
U30	1570	2	10800	300	2 3/4	2 7/16	2 1/8
U31	1670	2	11600	315	2 7/8	2 1/2	2 3/16
U32	1790	2	12400	315	3	2 5/8	2 5/16
U33	1930	2	13200	315	3 1/16	2 11/16	2 3/8
U34	2080	2	14200	330	3 3/16	2 3/4	2 7/16
U35	2230	2	15200	330	3 5/16	2 7/8	2 1/2
U36	2380	2	16200	330	3 7/16	3	2 5/8
U37	2530	2	17200	345	3 9/16	3 1/16	2 11/16
U38	2700	2	18300	345	3 5/8	3 3/16	2 3/4
U39	2870	2	19200	345	3 3/4	3 5/16	2 7/8
U40	3040	2	20500	360	3 7/8	3 5/16	3
U41	3210	2	21800	360	3 15/16	3 7/16	3 1/16
U42	3400	2	23100	360	4	3 9/16	3 1/16

Equipment Numeral	Equipment Number	Stockless Bower Anchors		Chain Cable Stud Link Bower Chain*			
		Number	Mass per Anchor, pounds	Length, fathoms	Diameter		
					Ordinary-Strength Steel (Grade 1), inches	High-Strength Steel (Grade 2), inches	Extra High-Strength Steel (Grade 3), inches
U43	3600	2	24500	375	4 1/8	3 5/8	3 3/16
U44	3800	2	25800	375	4 1/4	3 3/4	3 5/16
U45	4000	2	27100	375	4 3/8	3 7/8	3 7/16
U46	4200	2	28400	390	4 1/2	3 15/16	3 7/16
U47	4400	2	29800	390	4 5/8	4	3 9/16
U48	4600	2	31100	390	4 3/4	4 1/8	3 5/8
U49	4800	2	32400	405	4 3/4	4 1/4	3 3/4
U50	5000	2	33900	405	4 7/8	4 3/8	3 7/8
U51	5200	2	35500	405	5	4 3/8	3 7/8
U52	5500	2	37200	405	5 1/8	4 1/2	3 15/16
U53	5800	2	39200	405	5 1/8	4 5/8	4
U54	6100	2	41400	405	--	4 3/4	4 1/4
U55	6500	2	44000	420	--	4 7/8	4 3/8
U56	6900	2	47400	420	--	5	4 1/2
U57	7400	2	50700	420	--	5 1/8	4 5/8
U58	7900	2	54000	420	--	5 3/8	4 3/4
U59	8400	2	57300	420	--	5 5/8	5
U60	8900	2	60600	420	--	5 3/4	5 1/8
U61	9400	2	63900	420	--	6	5 1/8
U62	10000	2	68000	420	--	--	5 3/8
U63	10700	2	72500	420	--	--	5 5/8
U64	11500	2	78000	420	--	--	5 3/4
U65	12400	2	85000	420	--	--	6
U66	13400	2	92500	420	--	--	6 1/8
U67	14600	2	101500	420	--	--	6 3/8

Notes:
* Wire ropes may be used in lieu of chain cables for anchors:

a Not intended for use in normal temporary anchoring operations on ships under 90 m (295 ft) in length, or

b Used for positioning with a minimum of 4 points anchoring (e.g., for cable or pipe laying)

See [11.3] .

TABLE 2
Mooring Lines for Self-propelled Ocean-going Vessels with *EN* ≤ 2000
(2022)

Equipment Number		*Mooring Lines*					
Exceeding	*Not Exceeding*	*Number*	*Minimum length of each line **		*Ship design minimum breaking load ***		
			(m)	*(fathoms)*	*(kN)*	*(kgf)*	*(lbf)*
50	70	3	80	44	37	3750	8300
70	90	3	100	55	40	4000	9000
90	110	3	110	60	42	4500	9400
110	130	3	110	60	48	5000	10800
130	150	3	120	66	53	5400	11900
150	175	3	120	66	59	6000	13300
175	205	3	120	66	64	6500	14400
205	240	4	120	66	69	7000	15500
240	280	4	120	66	75	7500	16900
280	320	4	140	77	80	8000	18000
320	360	4	140	77	85	8500	19100
360	400	4	140	77	96	9500	21600
400	450	4	140	77	107	11000	24100
450	500	4	140	77	117	12000	26300
500	550	4	160	87	134	13500	30100
550	600	4	160	87	143	14500	32100
600	660	4	160	87	160	16500	36000
660	720	4	160	87	171	17500	38400
720	780	4	170	93	187	19000	42000
780	840	4	170	93	202	20500	45400
840	910	4	170	93	218	22000	49000
910	980	4	170	93	235	24000	52800
980	1060	4	180	98	250	25500	56200

Equipment Number		*Mooring Lines*					
Exceeding	*Not Exceeding*	*Number*	*Minimum length of each line **		*Ship design minimum breaking load ***		
			(m)	*(fathoms)*	*(kN)*	*(kgf)*	*(lbf)*
1060	1140	4	180	98	272	27500	61100
1140	1220	4	180	98	293	30000	65900
1220	1300	4	180	98	309	31500	69500
1300	1390	4	180	98	336	34500	75500
1390	1480	4	180	98	352	36000	79100
1480	1570	5	190	104	352	36000	79100
1570	1670	5	190	104	362	37000	81400
1670	1790	5	190	104	384	39000	86300
1790	1930	5	190	104	411	42000	92400
1930	2000	5	190	104	437	44500	98200

Note:
* [9.3.3] is to be observed
** Ship design minimum breaking load (MBL_{SD}) means the minimum breaking load of new, dry mooring lines or tow lines for which shipboard fittings and supporting hull structures are designed in order to meet mooring restraint requirements or the towing requirements of other towing service.

TABLE 3
Tow Lines for Self-propelled Ocean-going Vessels
(2022)

Equipment Number		*Tow Lines*				
Exceeding	*Not Exceeding*	*Minimum length of each line*		*Ship design minimum breaking load **		
		(m)	*(fathoms)*	*(kN)*	*(kgf)*	*(lbf)*
50	70	180	98	98	10000	22000
70	90	180	98	98	10000	22000
90	110	180	98	98	10000	22000
110	130	180	98	98	10000	22000
130	150	180	98	98	10000	22000
150	175	180	98	98	10000	22000
175	205	180	98	112	11400	25100
205	240	180	98	129	13200	29100
240	280	180	98	150	15300	33700
280	320	180	98	174	17700	39000

Equipment Number		*Tow Lines*				
Exceeding	*Not Exceeding*	*Minimum length of each line*		*Ship design minimum breaking load **		
		(m)	*(fathoms)*	*(kN)*	*(kgf)*	*(lbf)*
320	360	180	98	207	21100	46500
360	400	180	98	224	22800	50300
400	450	180	98	250	25500	56200
450	500	180	98	277	28200	62200
500	550	190	104	306	31200	68800
550	600	190	104	338	34500	76000
600	660	190	104	370	37800	83300
660	720	190	104	406	41400	91200
720	780	190	104	441	45000	99200
780	840	190	104	479	48900	107800
840	910	190	104	518	52800	116400
910	980	190	104	559	57000	125600
980	1060	200	109	603	61500	135500
1060	1140	200	109	647	66000	145500
1140	1220	200	109	691	70500	155400
1220	1300	200	109	738	75300	166000
1300	1390	200	109	786	801000	176500
1390	1480	200	109	836	85200	187800
1480	1570	220	120	888	90600	199700
1570	1670	220	120	941	967000	211500
1670	1790	220	120	1024	104400	230000
1790	1930	220	120	1109	113100	249500
1930	2080	220	120	1168	119100	262500
2080	2230	240	131	1259	128400	283000
2230	2380	240	131	1356	138300	305000
2380	2530	240	131	1453	148200	326500
2530	2700	260	142	1471	150000	330500
2700	2870	260	142	1471	150000	330500
2870	3040	260	142	1471	150000	330500
3040	3210	280	153	1471	150000	330500
3210	3400	280	153	1471	150000	330500
3400	3600	280	153	1471	150000	330500
3600	-	300	164	1471	150000	330500

Note:

* Ship design minimum breaking load (MBL_{SD}) means the minimum breaking load of new, dry mooring lines or tow lines for which shipboard fittings and supporting hull structures are designed in order to meet mooring restraint requirements or the towing requirements of other towing service

PART 3

CHAPTER 5
Equipment

SECTION 2
Mooring of Vessels at Single Point Moorings

1 General *(2024)*

1.1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1.1 Goal

The vessel structure is to be designed, constructed, operated, and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goals*
STRU 1	in the intact condition, have sufficient structural strength to withstand the environmental conditions, loading conditions, and operational loads anticipated during the design life.
STRU 3	provide protection to persons onboard, environment and required safety services.
PROP 6	be provided with means to enable the safe conduct of all towing, mooring, and anchoring operations. (SOLAS II-1 Reg. 3-8.2).

1.1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above stated goals, the design, construction, installation, and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Structure (STRU)	
STRU-FR1	*Provided with arrangements, equipment and fittings of sufficient safe working load to enable the safe conduct of all towing and mooring operations associated with the normal operation of the ship*. (SOLAS II-1)
STRU-FR2	Scantlings are to have sufficient strength to resist failure and excessive deformation associated with buckling and yielding when subjected to the loads associated with temporary mooring to single point mooring or moored in tandem with FPSO/FSO.

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
STRU-FR3 (PROP)	Structures that regularly contact mooring and towing lines are to have adequate wear allowance.
STRU-FR4	The manufacturing process is to generate materials with minimal defects to enable performance in accordance with the design assumptions.
STRU-FR5	Fabrication is to be of sufficient quality (structural tolerances, alignment, defects) so that the finished product performs in accordance with the design assumptions.
STRU-FR6	Scantlings are to be maintained so that the structure will continue to satisfy all Goals and Functional Requirements.

The goals and functional requirements in the cross-referenced Rules are to be met.

1.1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

1.2 Application *(2024)*

This Section is applicable to conventional vessels fitted with equipment enabling them to be moored by the bow to single point moorings or moored in tandem to FPSO/FSO terminals. Application to other types of tankers are subject to ABS technical assessment. Such assessments are to include design environmental limits and conditions, particulars of mooring points and of the mooring fittings and arrangement.

3 Notation *(2024)*

Vessels provided with mooring arrangements in accordance with the requirements of this Section will be eligible to be assigned the Class Notation **SPMA**. This notation is optional.

Where a vessel is fitted with fittings for morning at single point mooring and the optional notation is not requested, the requirements for hull supporting deck structure in way of all fittings and equipment are to be in accordance with 3-2-7/4, in association with specific loads and safety factors of [7.3.5] for bow chain stoppers, of [7.5.6] for bow fairleads and [7.7.4] for pedestal rollers.

5 Submission of Design Plans and Data

The following design plans and data are to be submitted:

- Plan showing the mooring arrangement with position of bow fairleads, bow chain stoppers, winches and capstans and pedestal rollers and winch storage drums, if applicable
- Details of bow chain stoppers
- Details of bow fairleads and their attachment to the bulwark
- Details of attachment to deck and supporting structure of the bow chain stoppers, winch or capstans and pedestal rollers and winch storage drums, if applicable.

7 Arrangements

7.1 General *(2024)*

The vessel is to be fitted with bow chain stoppers and bow fairleads as per [TABLE 1]. Additional pedestal roller fairleads may be required for alignment purposes and a winch or capstan for the pick-up rope.

Commentary:

The size of shipboard fittings may be in accordance with recognized standards (e.g., ISO13795 Ships and marine technology - ship's mooring and towing fittings - Welded steel bollards for sea-going vessels).

End of Commentary

TABLE 1
Arrangements by Vessel Deadweight for SPMA Notation
(2024)

Ship Size (Tons DWT at maximum summer draft)	*Chafing Chain Size*	*Number of Bow Chain Stoppers*	*Minimum SWL*	*Number of Bow Fairleads (recommended)*
100,000 or less (See Note)	76 mm (3 in.)	1	200 tons (440405 lbs)	1
Over 100,000 but not greater than 150,000 (See Note)	76 mm (3 in.)	1	250 (550505 lbs)	1
Over 150,000	76 mm (3 in.)	2	350 (770707 lbs)	2

Note: Ships in this size range may elect to fit two stoppers / fairleads to ensure full range terminal acceptance

7.3 Bow Chain Stoppers

7.3.1 Number, Chain Cable Size, and Minimum SWL

The number, chain cable size, and minimum SWL of bow chain stoppers are to be in accordance with [TABLE 1] . The chain stoppers are to be permanently marked with the SWL to which they have been designed and tested.

7.3.2 Location

Bow chain stoppers are to be located between 2.7 m (8 ft 10 in.) and 3.7 m (12 ft 2 in.) aft of the bow fairlead.

7.3.3 Alignment

Stoppers are to be positioned to give correct alignment with the bow fairlead and the pedestal fairlead or storage drum of the winch.

7.3.4 Securing

A standard 76 mm (3 in.) stud-link chain is to be secured when the chain engaging pawl or bar is in the closed position. When in open position, the chain and associated fittings are to be allowed to pass freely.

7.3.5 Structural Strength

The structural strength of the stopper and supporting structure is to be based on a safety factor of 2.0 against the yield criterion when applying a load equal to SWL given in [TABLE 1] .

7.3.6 Relation to Deck Structure

Stoppers are to be fitted as close as possible to the deck structure, taking due consideration to possible obstacles to obtain a free lead through the fairleads.

7.3.7 Fairing of Leading Edge

The leading edge of the bow chain stopper base is to be faired to allow for the unimpeded entry of the chafing chain.

7.3.8 Testing *(2024)*

Upon installation, bow stoppers are to be load tested to the equivalent SWL in the presence of the Surveyor and a test certificate is to be issued. The test certificate is to be available for inspection onboard the ship. Alternative testing arrangements that can be shown to be equivalent to the above load test requirements may be considered.

The structural strength of the supporting structure is to be documented by adequate analyses and submitted for ABS review. A copy of the approval letter is to be available onboard.

7.5 Bow Fairleads

7.5.1 Openings

Bow fairlead openings are to measure at least 600 mm × 450 mm. ($23^{1}/_{2}$ in. × $17^{3}/_{4}$ in.)

7.5.2 Ships with Two Fairleads

For ships fitted with two fairleads, they are to be spaced, from center to center, at least 2.0 m (6 ft $6^{3}/_{4}$ in.) apart. In any event, the fairleads are not to be spaced more than 3.0 m (9 ft 10 in.) apart.

7.5.3 Ships with One Fairlead

For ships fitted with one fairlead, it is to be positioned on the centerline.

7.5.4 Shape

Fairleads are to be oval or round in shape and adequately faired when fitted in order to prevent chafing chains from fouling on the lower lip when heaving inboard. Square fairleads are not suitable.

7.5.5 Number of Fairleads

When two bow chain stoppers are fitted, then two bow fairleads are required.

7.5.6 Structural Strength

The structural strength of the bow fairlead is to be based on a safety factor of 2.0 against the yield criterion when applying a load equal to SWL given in [TABLE 1] .

7.7 Pedestal Rollers

7.7.1 Position

Winches or capstans are to be positioned to enable a direct pull to be achieved on the continuation of the direct lead line between the bow fairleads and bow stoppers. Alternatively, a pedestal roller may be positioned between the stopper and the winch or the capstan, to achieve direct pull.

7.7.2 Distance between the Bow Stoppers and Pedestal Roller

The distance between the bow stoppers and pedestal roller is to be considered so that an unrestricted line pull is achieved from the bow fairlead and through the bow stopper.

7.7.3 Number and Angle

The number of pedestal rollers used for each bow chain stopper is not to exceed two and the angle of change of direction of the pick-up rope lead is to be minimal.

7.7.4 Structural Strength

The structural strength of the pedestal rollers and supporting structure is to be verified to withstand the design load of 1.25 times the maximum hauling-in force of the winch or capstan and in accordance with 3-5-1/15.

7.9 Winches or Capstans

Winches or capstans are to be capable of exerting a continuous duty pull of not less than 15 tons (33030 lbs).

7.11 Winch Storage Drum

If a winch storage drum is used to stow the pick-up rope, it is to be of sufficient size to accommodate 150 m (492 ft) of 80 mm ($3^{3}/_{16}$ in.) diameter rope.

9 Materials

Material for the hull structure is to be in accordance with Chapter 1 of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)*. Material for the deck fittings will be accepted on the basis of the manufacturer's certified mill test reports.

PART 3

CHAPTER 5
Equipment

SECTION 3
Equipment without symbol Ⓔ

1 General *(2024)*

Equipment without the symbol Ⓔ is to be in compliance with the requirements of this Section. The Class Notation symbol Ⓔ is optional for vessels solely intended for towing service or having EN less than 205 per 3-5-1/3.3.2. The equipment is to be in accordance with 3-5-1/19.7 TABLE 1A and 3-5-1/19.7 TABLE 1B in association with the calculated EN, but considering the following modifications. Refer also to 3-5-1/5.

3 Vessels intended for Limited Service *(2024)*

Vessels intended for limited service [see [1A-1-3/7] of the ABS *Rules for Conditions of Classification (Part 1A)*] and having their own moorage (e.g., ferries, launch, etc.) with an equipment number less than 150, obtained from 3-5-1/3.3.2, are to have one anchor of the tabular weight and one-half the tabulated length of anchor chain in 3-5-1/19.7 TABLE 1A or 3-5-1/19.7 TABLE 1B. Alternatively, two anchors of one-half the tabular weight with the total length of anchor chain listed in 3-5-1/19.7 TABLE 1A or 3-5-1/19.7 TABLE 1B are to be fitted, provided both anchors are positioned and ready for use and the windlass is capable of heaving in either anchor.

5 Vessels Intended for Towing Service *(2024)*

Vessels intended solely for towing service are to have at least one anchor of one-half the tabular weight listed in 3-5-1/19.7 TABLE 1A or 3-5-1/19.7 TABLE 1B.

The towing winch can be used for releasing and heaving in the anchor, provided that the anchor is positioned ready for use and is capable of being quickly connected to the winch's wire rope.

PART 3

CHAPTER 6
Navigation

CONTENTS

SECTION 1 Visibility 711

1 Objective 711
1.1 Goal 711
1.2 Functional Requirements 711
1.3 Compliance 712
2 Navigation Bridge Visibility 712
2.1 Field of Vision 712
2.3 Windows and their Arrangements 717
2.5 Unconventional Design 719
2.7 Articulated Tug-Barge Units 719
3 Offshore Operations Bridge Visibility 719
3.1 Field of Vision 720
3.3 Aft Windows Arrangements 720
5 Side Windows Arrangement 721

FIGURE 1 712
FIGURE 1A 713
FIGURE 2 714
FIGURE 3 716
FIGURE 4 716
FIGURE 5 717
FIGURE 6 717
FIGURE 7 Forward Window 718
FIGURE 8 Aft Window 720

PART 3

CHAPTER 6
Navigation

SECTION 1
Visibility

1 Objective *(2024)*

1.1 Goal

The vessels covered in this section shall be designed, constructed, operated and maintained to:

Goal No.	*Goals*
NAV 1	be navigated independently and safely while at sea, minimizing the risk of collision, grounding, floundering and adverse impact to the marine environment.
NAV 1.1	identify and avoid potential hazardous navigational situations.

The goals covered in the cross-referenced Rules are also to be met.

1.2 Functional Requirements

To achieve the above stated goals, the design, construction, installation, and maintenance are to be in accordance with the following functional requirements:

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
Navigation (NAV)	
NAV-FR1	Sufficient visibility towards forward and sides from the working positions in navigation bridge is to be provided to observe all objects of interest for safe navigation and operation of the ship to minimize the risk of collision, grounding, floundering and adverse impact to the marine environment for all design operation conditions.
NAV-FR2	Sufficient visibility at bridge wings is to be provided to observe all objects of interest forward, aft and along the ship sides for safe navigation and operation of the ship to minimize the risk of collision, grounding, floundering and adverse impact to the marine environment for all design operation conditions including docking.
NAV-FR3	Windows are to be arranged to avoid view distortions.

Functional Requirement No.	*Functional Requirements*
NAV-FR4	There is to be sufficient visibility from the working positions in the navigation bridge in all weather conditions for safe navigation and operation of the ship to minimize the risk of collision, grounding, floundering and adverse impact to the marine environment for all design operation conditions.
NAV-FR5	Means are to be provided to safely clean windows located in the working positions on navigation bridge.
NAV-FR6	For offshore support vessels, clear view is to be provided from the Offshore Operations Control Area towards the cargo or work decks and machinery or specialist equipment for the safe operation of the vessels and cargo handling.

The functional requirements covered in the cross-referenced Rules are also to be met.

1.3 Compliance

A vessel is considered to comply with the goals and functional requirements within the scope of classification when the applicable prescriptive requirements are complied with or when an alternative arrangement has been approved. Refer to Part 1D, Chapter 2.

2 Navigation Bridge Visibility *(2024)*

Vessels of not less than 55 m (180 ft) in length overall are to meet the following requirements for visibility from navigation bridge, unless they are navigating solely the Great Lakes of North America and their connecting and tributary waters as far east as the lower exit of the St. Lambert Lock at Montreal in the Province of Quebec, Canada. Special consideration may be given to vessels that operate only on domestic or on short, limited, international voyages.

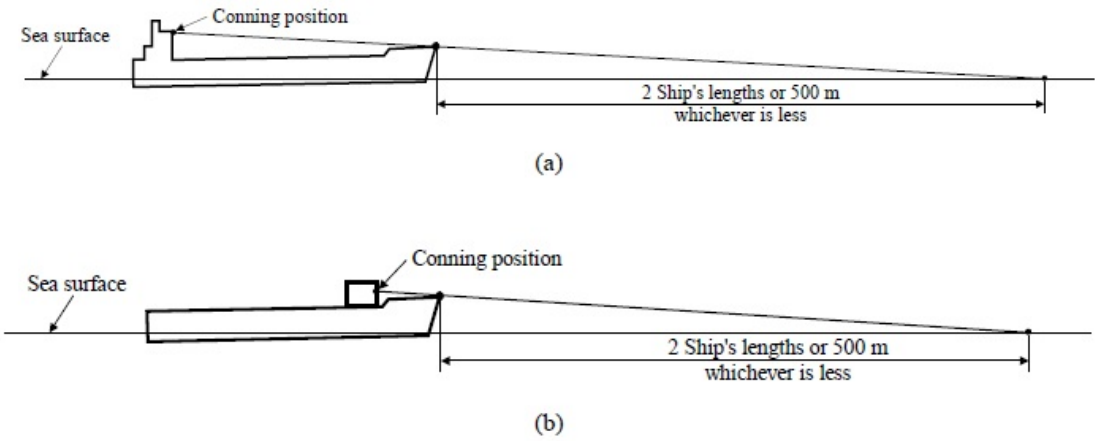
2.1 Field of Vision

2.1.1 Conning Position

2.1.1(a)

The view of the sea surface from the conning position is not to be obscured by more than 2 L_{OA} (Length Overall) or 500 m (1640 ft), whichever is the less, forward of the bow to 10° on either side for all conditions of draft, trim and deck cargo under which the particular vessel is expected to operate. See [FIGURE 1] as applicable.

FIGURE 1



Notes:

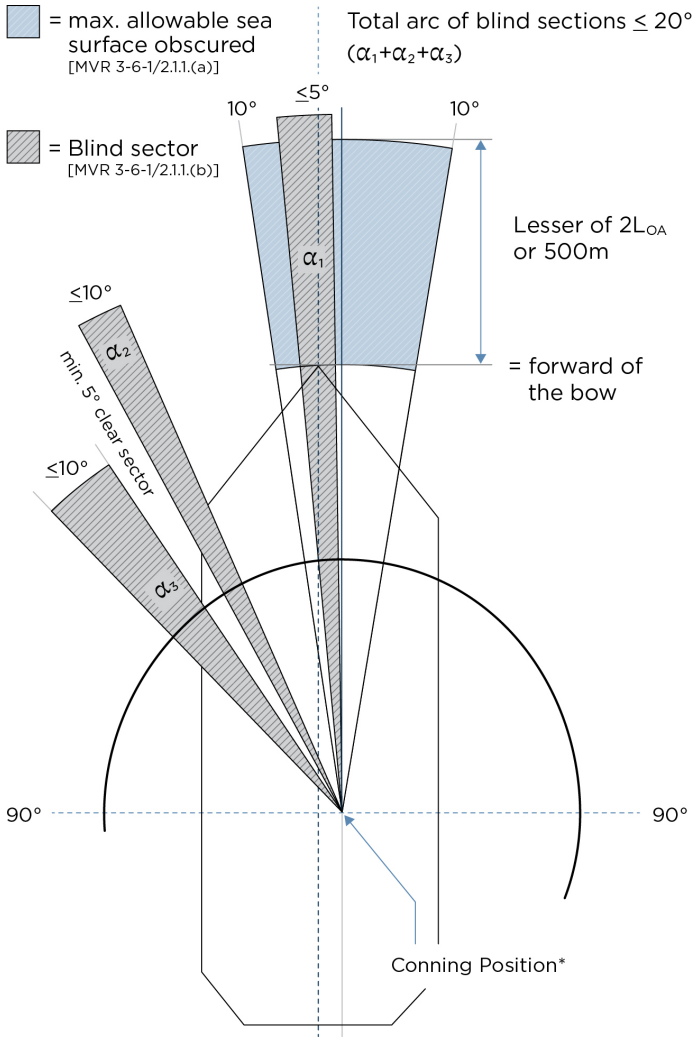
1. A conning position is a place on the bridge with a commanding view and which is used by navigators when commanding, maneuvering and controlling a vessel.

2. Attention is drawn to flag Administrations requiring lengths of less than 2 L_{OA} .

2.1.1(b) ***(2024)***

No blind sector caused by cargo, cargo gear, specialist equipment, support for helicopter deck or other obstructions outside of the wheelhouse forward of the beam which obstructs the view of the sea surface as seen from the conning position is to exceed 10°. The total arc of blind sectors is not to exceed 20°. The clear sectors between blind sectors are to be at least 5°. However, in the view described in [1.1.1(a)] , each individual blind sector is not to exceed 5°. See 3-6-1/Figure 1A.

FIGURE 1A *(2024)*



Commentary:

The obstruction by the forward bulwark is to be checked for compliance with the above requirements. If the bulwark does not create a blind sector more than 5°, then it is acceptable to exclude this portion of the bulwark in determining the line of sight from the conning position to the sea surface reference point.

End of Commentary

2.1.1(c)

The horizontal field of vision from the conning position is to extend over an arc of not less than 225°, that is, from right ahead to not less than 22.5° abaft the beam on either side of the vessel. See [FIGURE 3] , as applicable.

2.1.2 Bridge Wing

2.1.2(a) From each bridge wing, the horizontal field of vision is to extend over an arc of at least 225°, that is, from at least 45° on the opposite bow to right ahead and then from right ahead to right astern through 180° on the same side of the vessel. See [FIGURE 4] , as applicable.

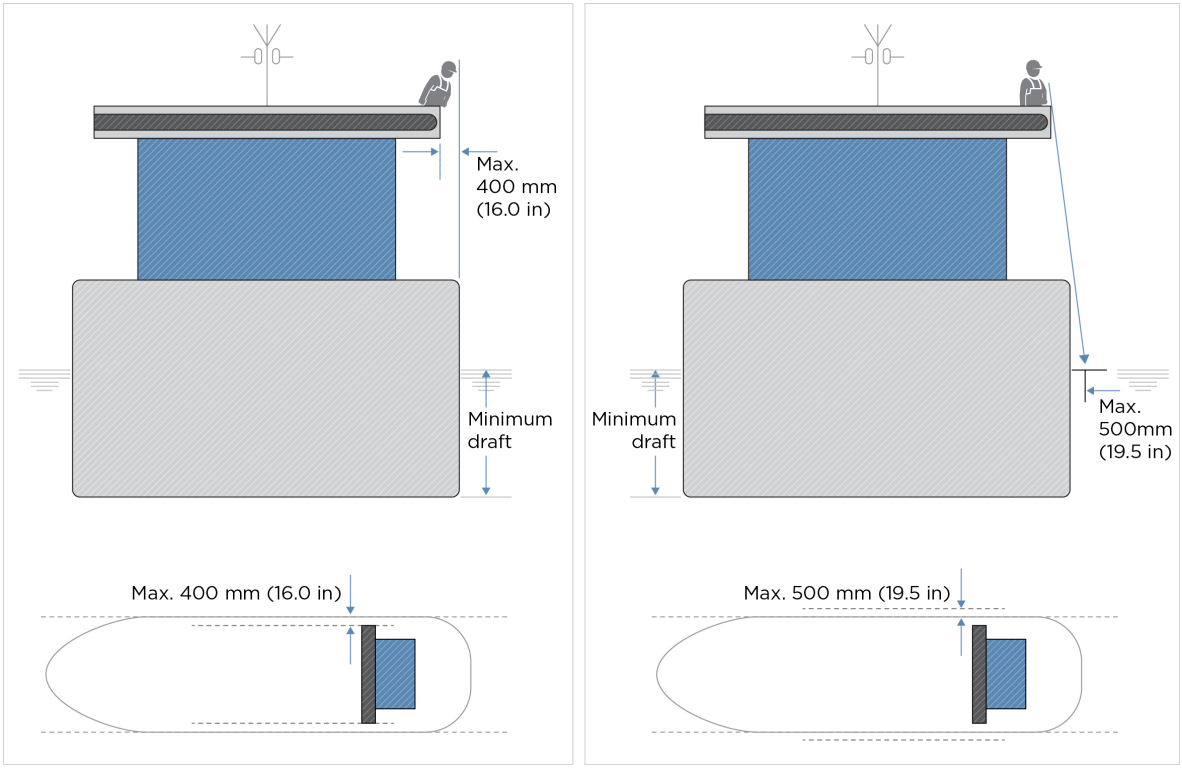
2.1.2(b) The vessel's side is to be visible from the bridge wing.

i) The requirements of [1.1.2(b)] are accomplished when:

- A view from the bridge wing plus a distance corresponding to a reasonable and safe distance of a seafarer leaning over the side of the bridge wing, which needs not to be more than 400 mm (16 in.), to the location vertically right under the maximum beam of the ship at the lowest seagoing draft is not obscured; or
- The sea surface at the lowest seagoing draft and with a transverse distance of 500 mm (19.5 in.) and more from the maximum beam throughout the ship's length is visible from the side of the bridge wing.

See [FIGURE 2] .

FIGURE 2



ii) For particular ship types, such as tug/tow boat, offshore supply vessel (OSV), rescue ship, work ship (e.g., floating crane ships), etc., that are designed such that, in normal operations, they come along side, or operate in close proximity to, other vessels or offshore structures at sea, [1.1.2(b)] is considered to be met provided the bridge wings extend at least to a

location from which the sea surface, at the lowest seagoing draft and at a transverse distance of 1500 mm (59 in.) from the maximum beam throughout the ship's length, is visible. If this ship type is changed to a type other than those addressed in this paragraph, then the interpretation in this paragraph would no longer apply.

iii) Remote Camera System
The use of a remote camera system may be accepted for ships of unconventional design, other than those mentioned in 3-6-1/2.1.2(b)ii) above, as means for achieving the view of the ship's side from the bridge wing, provided:

a) The installed remote camera system is to be redundant from the circuit breaker to the camera and screen, including communication cables (i.e., the system is to provide on each side of the ship redundancy of):

- The power cables and circuit breakers from the main switchboard to the camera and the screen;
- The camera;
- The screen;
- The transmission lines from the camera to the display screen; and
- The components associated with these lines and cables;

b) The remote camera system is powered from the ship's main source of electrical power and is not required to be powered by the emergency source of electrical power

c) The remote camera system is capable of continuous operation under environmental conditions as per [4-9-9/TABLE 1] and [4-9-9/TABLE 2] ;

d) The view provided by the remote camera system is analogous to that from the bridge wing so the ship's side is to be visible, and is also displayed at locations where the maneuvering of the ship may take place;

e) The upper edge of the ship's side abeam is directly visible from locations where the maneuvering of the ship may take place.

Commentary:

The above requirements in 3-6-1/2.1.2(b)i), ii) and iii) are based on IMO MSC.1/Circ.1350/Rev.1 and IACS UI SC235.

End of Commentary

2.1.3 Main Steering Position

The horizontal field of vision is to extend over an arc from right ahead to at least 60° on each side of the vessel, see [FIGURE 5] , as applicable.

FIGURE 3

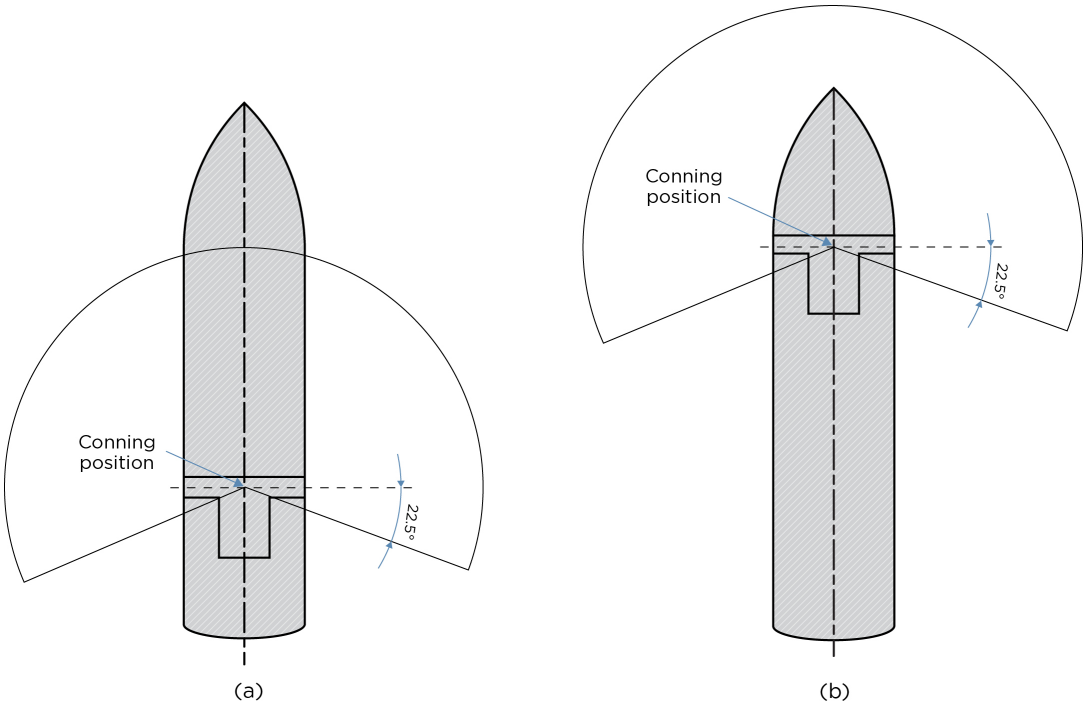


FIGURE 4

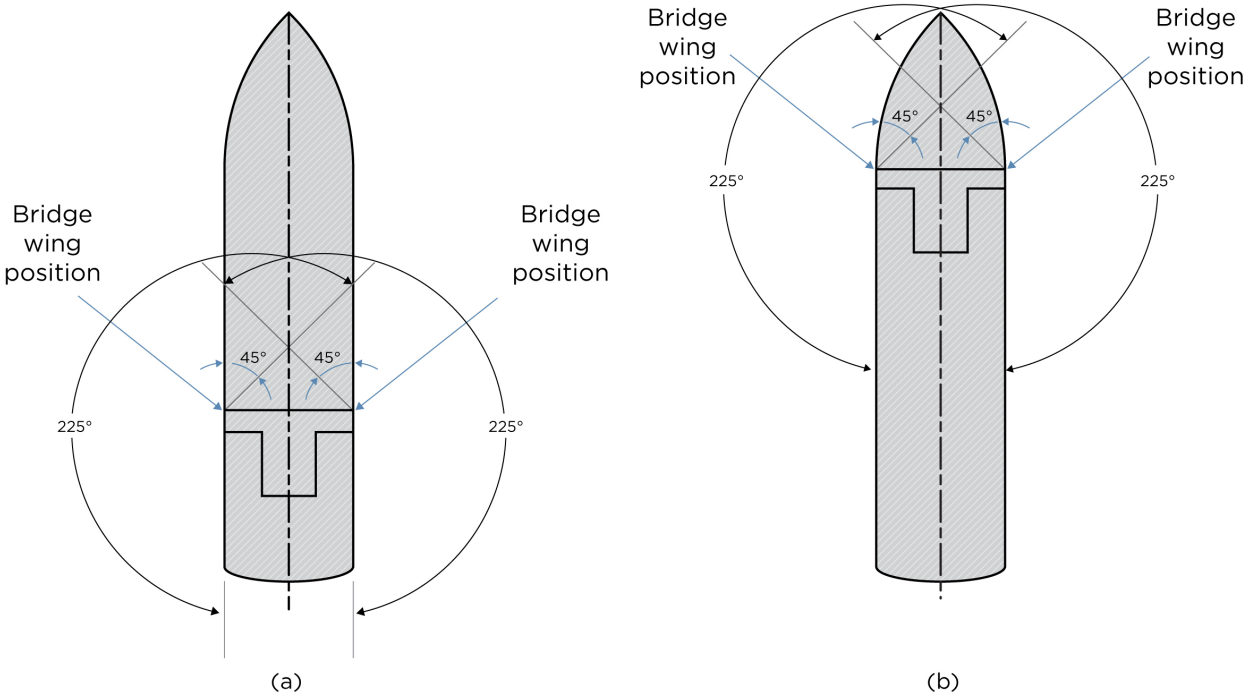


FIGURE 5

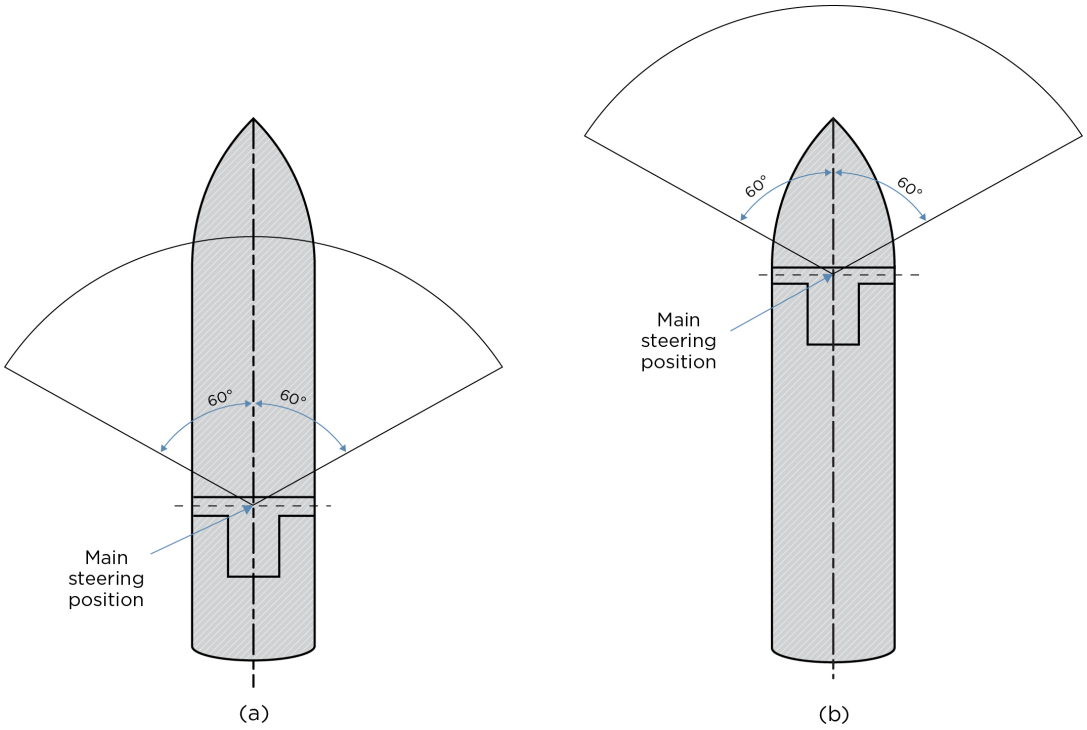
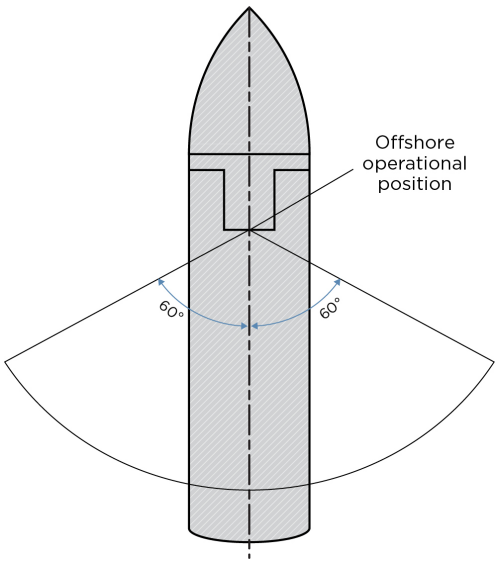


FIGURE 6



2.3 Windows and their Arrangements

Navigation bridge windows and their arrangements are to meet the following requirements:

2.3.1 Framing *(2024)*

Framing between navigation bridge windows is to be kept to a minimum to meet the structural strength and stiffness requirements, and is not to be installed immediately in front of any workstations.

Commentary:

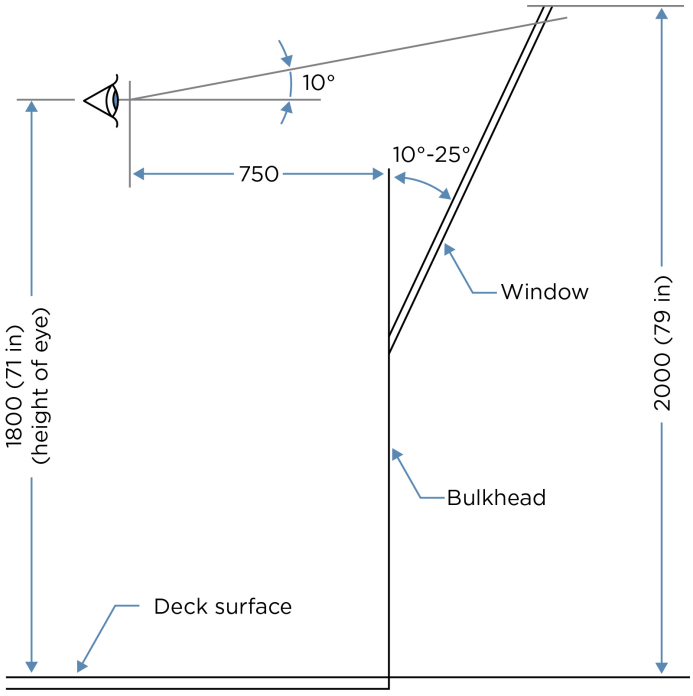
The maximum recommended width of frame is 150 mm per ISO 8468 & IACS Rec. 95. If stiffeners are used, the width and depth should generally not to exceed 100 mm and 120 mm, respectively. If stiffeners between windows are to be covered, then this should not to cause further obstruction of the field of view from any position inside the wheelhouse.

End of Commentary

2.3.2 Inclination Angle

The navigation bridge front windows are to be inclined from a vertical plane top out, at an angle of not less than that as indicated in [FIGURE 7] , as applicable.

FIGURE 7
Forward Window *(2019)*



2.3.3 Glass

Polarized and tinted windows are not to be fitted.

2.3.4 Clear View

At all times, regardless of the weather conditions, at least two of the navigation bridge front windows are to provide a clear view, and in addition, depending on the bridge configuration, an additional number of windows are to provide a clear view. To this end, the following, or equivalent, is to be provided.

2.3.4(a) Sun Screens.

Sunscreens with minimum color distortion. These sunscreens are to be readily removable and not permanently installed.

2.3.4(b) Wipers and Fresh Water Wash Systems.

Heavy-duty wipers, preferably provided with an interval function, and fresh water wash systems. These wipers are to be capable of operating independently of each other.

2.3.4(c) De-icing and De-misting Systems.

De-icing and de-misting systems to be provided.

2.3.4(d) Fixed Catwalk.

A fixed catwalk with guardrails is to be fitted in front of bridge windows for manual cleaning of windows in the event of failure of the above systems.

Commentary:

The bridge front windows providing a clear view should include windows within the field of vision required for conning, seen from the viewing point at workplaces arranged to be used by the bridge team and the pilot for conning.

The fitting of hinged navigation bridge windows is an acceptable alternative means to providing a fixed catwalk as required by 3-6-1/2.3.4(d). The hinged windows should be arranged so that access is available to clean all front windows, in the event of failure of other means of providing a clear view.

End of Commentary

2.3.5 Lower Edge *(2024)*

The height of the lower edge of the navigation bridge front windows above the bridge deck is to be kept as close to the bridge deck as practical. In no case is the lower edge to present an obstruction to the forward view as described in this Section.

Commentary:

ISO 8468 & IACS Rec. 95 recommends that the height of the lower edge of front windows should not, as far as practicable, be more than 1000 mm.

End of Commentary

2.3.6 Upper Edge

The upper edge of the navigation bridge front windows is to allow a forward view of the horizon, for a person with a height of eye of 1800 mm (5 ft 11 in.) above the bridge deck at the conning position, when the vessel is pitching in heavy seas. ABS, if satisfied that an 1800 mm (5 ft 11 in.) height of eye is unreasonable and impractical, may allow reduction of the height of eye but not to less than 1600 mm (5 ft 3 in.). See [FIGURE 7] .

2.5 Unconventional Design

For vessels of unconventional design which cannot comply with the above requirements, arrangements are to be provided to the satisfaction of ABS to achieve a level of visibility that is as near as practical to those prescribed in this Section.

2.7 Articulated Tug-Barge Units *(2019)*

Tugboats designed to push barges as part of an Articulated Tug-Barge unit (ATB), are required to meet the requirements of [1.1.1] . The length overall is to be based on the length from the barge's stem to the stern of the tug when operating as a combined unit. The visibility is to be determined based on the largest barge that the tugboat is designed to operate with as an articulated unit.

3 Offshore Operations Bridge Visibility

All offshore support vessels are to be provided with an unobstructed as possible and practical view abaft from the Offshore Operations Control Area towards the cargo or work decks and machinery or specialist equipment. On supply vessels it is necessary to control both, the station keeping as well as cargo loading/unloading operations. On anchor handling/towing vessels it is necessary to control the heading, position, speed as well as deck machinery engaged for towing and/or anchor handling operations. On other types

of offshore support vessels it may be necessary to control the station keeping as well as the specific service equipment installed on work deck. Where direct visual observation of machinery and equipment is unavoidably obstructed, a CCTV system suitable for use in the marine environment would be considered acceptable.

3.1 Field of Vision

The view of the cargo or work deck area, including loading/unloading ports on supply vessels, as well as view of the sea surface in close vicinity of the vessel shall not be obstructed. From the Offshore Operations Control Area, the horizontal field of vision should extend over an arc from right astern to at least 60° on each side of the vessel see [FIGURE 6] .

3.3 Aft Windows Arrangements

Aft windows and their arrangements are to meet the following requirements:

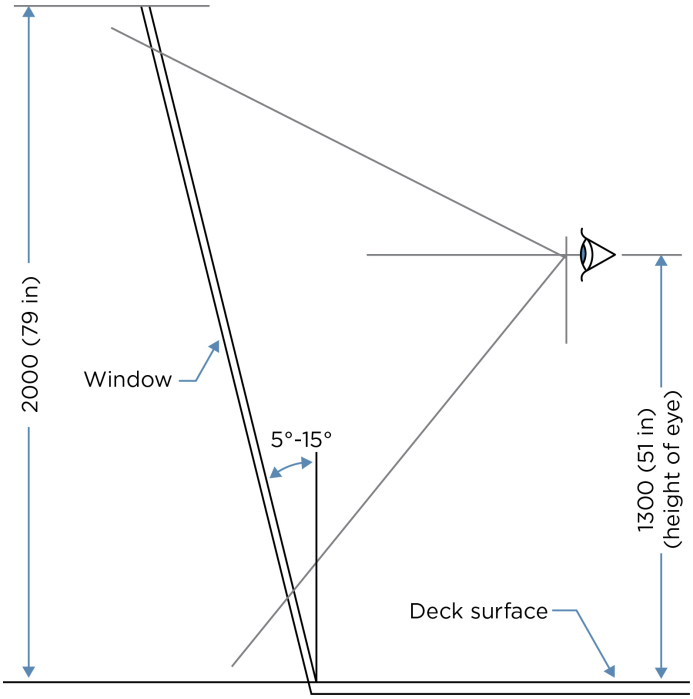
3.3.1 Framing

Framing between navigation bridge aft windows is to be kept to a minimum to meet the structural strength and stiffness requirements, and is not to be installed immediately in front of any main commanding/maneuvering and controlling positions.

3.3.2 Inclination Angle

The bridge aft windows are to be inclined from a vertical plane top out, at an angle of not less than 5° and not more than 15°, see [FIGURE 8] .

FIGURE 8
Aft Window *(2019)*



3.3.3 Glass

Polarized and tinted windows are not to be fitted.

3.3.4 Clear View *(2024)*

At all times, regardless of the weather conditions, at least two of the above aft windows are to provide a clear view, as described above. The following, or equivalent, is to be provided as well:

3.3.4(a) Sun Screens. Sunscreens are to be with minimum color distortion; are to be readily removable and are not to be permanently installed.

3.3.4(b) Wipers and Fresh Water Wash Systems. Heavy-duty wipers provided with an interval function and fresh water wash systems, being capable of operating independently of each other.

3.3.4(c) De-icing and De-misting Systems. De-icing and de-misting systems are to be provided.

3.3.4(d) Fixed Catwalk. A fixed catwalk with guardrails, fitted aft of the bridge windows is to be provided, enabling manual cleaning of windows in the event of failure of the above systems.

Commentary:

Suitable protection of the after windows against impact from any cargo being lifted onboard the vessel is recommended.

The lower edge of the navigation bridge aft windows should be kept as close to the bridge deck as practical. The upper edge of the navigation bridge after windows should be kept as close to the overhead deck as practical. See [FIGURE 8]

End of Commentary

5 Side Windows Arrangement

Side windows for offshore support vessels are constructed to meet the following requirements:

i) To be arranged to minimize blind sectors such as funnels etc. which unavoidably restricts a 360° view of the sea surface from the wheelhouse.

ii) Where windows are installed on bridge wings aligned with ship sides they are to provide the horizontal field of vision as well as visibility of vessel's sides as required in [1.1.2] above, see [FIGURE 4] , as applicable.

iii) Where windows are installed on bridge wings not aligned with ship sides then a fixed catwalk with guardrails is to be installed to enable fulfilling this requirement.

PART 3

CHAPTER 7

Testing, Trials and Surveys During Construction - Hull

CONTENTS

SECTION 1 Tank, Bulkhead and Rudder Tightness Testing.....724

1 General 724

3 Testing Requirements for Ships Built in Compliance with SOLAS 1974 as Amended (Including Ships that are to Comply with the Requirements in Parts 5A and 5B) - General...725

3.1 Application..... 725

3.3 Test Types and Definitions..... 725

3.5 Test Procedures.....727

5 Testing Requirements for Ships Built in Compliance with SOLAS 1974 as Amended (Including Ships that are to Comply with the Requirements in Parts 5A & 5B) - Ships with Granted Test Exemption or Equivalent Test.....735

5.1 735

5.3 735

5.5 735

5.7 735

5.9 735

5.11 735

5.13 736

7 Testing Requirements for Ships Not Built in Compliance with SOLAS 1974 as Amended.....736

7.1 736

7.3 736

7.5 736

7.7 736

7.9 736

7.11 737

7.13 737

7.15 737

TABLE 1 Testing Requirements for Tanks and Boundaries 731

TABLE 2 Additional Testing Requirements for Vessels or Tanks of Special Service 733

TABLE 3 Application of Leak Testing, Coating and Provision of Safe Access for Type of Welded Joints 734

FIGURE 1 726
FIGURE 2 727

SECTION 2 Trials 738
1 Anchor Windlass Trials 738
3 <No Text> 738
5 <No Text> 738

SECTION 3 Surveys 739
1 Construction, Welding and Fabrication 739
3 Hull Castings and Forgings 739
5 Hull Piping 739
7 Loading and Stability Information 739
7.1 Required Verifications for Loading Instrument 739
7.2 Installation Testing for Computer Software for Stability Calculations 740
7.3 Annual Surveys 740

PART 3

CHAPTER 7

Testing, Trials and Surveys During Construction - Hull

SECTION 1

Tank, Bulkhead and Rudder Tightness Testing

1 General *(1 July 2024)*

Testing to confirm the tightness[3,4] watertightness of tanks, watertight boundaries and the structural adequacy of tanks which form a part of the watertight subdivisions[1] of ships is to be completed. Verification of the weathertightness of structures and shipboard outfitting is to be carried out. This section includes requirements for tests to verify conformance to goals and functional requirements outlined in the cross-referenced sections. The tightness of all tanks and tight boundaries of new ships and those tanks and boundaries whose structural integrity is affected by major conversions or major repairs[2] is to be confirmed prior to the delivery of the ship or prior to the completion of the modification or repair as relevant.

Testing procedures of watertight compartments for ships built in compliance with SOLAS 1974 as amended (including ships which are to comply with the requirements in Parts 5A and 5B) are to be carried out in accordance with [3] , unless:

i) The shipyard provides documentary evidence of the Owner's agreement to a request to the Flag Administration for an exemption from the application of Chapter II-1, Regulation 11 of SOLAS 1974 as amended, or for an equivalency agreeing that the content of [5] is equivalent to Chapter II-1, Regulation 11 of SOLAS 1974 as amended; and

ii) The above-mentioned exemption/equivalency has been granted by the responsible Flag Administration.

Testing procedures of watertight compartments are to be carried out in accordance with [5] for ships built in compliance with SOLAS 1974 as amended (including ships which are to comply with the requirements in Parts 5A and 5B) for which:

i) The shipyard provides documentary evidence of the Owner's agreement to a request to the Flag Administration for an exemption from the application of Chapter II-1, Regulation 11 of SOLAS 1974 as amended, or for an equivalency agreeing that the content of [5] is equivalent to Chapter II-1, Regulation 11 of SOLAS 1974 as amended; and

ii) The above-mentioned exemption/equivalency has been granted by the responsible Flag Administration.

Testing procedures of watertight compartments are to be carried out in accordance with [7] for ships not built in compliance with SOLAS 1974 as amended. See Chapter I Regulations 1 and 3 of SOLAS 1974 as amended.

Notes:

1) Watertight subdivision means the transverse and longitudinal subdivisions of the ship required to satisfy the subdivision requirements of SOLAS Chapter II-1.

2) Major repair means a repair affecting structural integrity.

3) Watertight means the capability of preventing the passage of water through the structure in any direction under a head of water for which the surrounding structure is designed.

4) Weathertight means that in any sea condition, water will not penetrate into the vessel.

3 Testing Requirements for Ships Built in Compliance with SOLAS 1974 as Amended (Including Ships that are to Comply with the Requirements in Parts 5A and 5B) - General *(2024)*

3.1 Application

All gravity tanks which are subjected to vapor pressure not greater than 0.7 bar (0.7 kgf/cm^2, 10 psi) and other boundaries required to be watertight or weathertight are to be tested in accordance with this Subsection and proven to be tight or structurally adequate as follows:

3.1.1

Gravity Tanks for their structural adequacy and tightness,

3.1.2

Watertight Boundaries Other Than Tank Boundaries for their watertightness, and

3.1.3

Weathertight Boundaries for their weathertightness.

For the testing of cargo containment systems of liquefied gas carriers, the requirements in 5C-8-4/20 will apply.

Testing of structures not listed in [TABLE 1] and [TABLE 2] is to be specially considered.

3.3 Test Types and Definitions

3.3.1

The following two types of tests are specified in this requirement.

3.3.1(a) Structural Test. A test to verify the structural adequacy of tank construction. This may be a hydrostatic test or, where the situation warrants, a hydropneumatic test.

3.3.1(b) Leak Test. A test to verify the tightness of a boundary. Unless a specific test is indicated, this may be a hydrostatic/hydropneumatic test or an air test. A hose test may be considered an acceptable form of leak test for certain boundaries, as indicated by Footnote 3 of [TABLE 1] .

3.3.2 *(2024)*

The definition of each test type is as follows:

Hydrostatic Test: (Leak and Structural)	A test wherein a space is filled with a liquid to a specified head.
Hydropneumatic Test: (Leak and Structural)	A test combining a hydrostatic test and an air test, wherein a space is partially filled with a liquid and pressurized with air.

Hose Test: *(Leak)*	A test to verify the tightness of a joint by a jet of water with the joint visible from the opposite side.
Air Test: *(Leak)*	A test to verify tightness by means of air pressure differential and leak indicating solution. It includes tank air test and joint air tests, such as *compressed air fillet weld tests* and *vacuum box tests.*See [FIGURE 1] .
Compressed Air Fillet Weld Test: *(Leak)*	An air test of fillet welded tee joints wherein leak indicating solution is applied on fillet welds.
Vacuum Box Test: *(Leak)*	A box over a joint with leak indicating solution applied on the welds. A vacuum is created inside the box to detect any leaks. See [FIGURE 2] .
Ultrasonic Test: *(Leak)*	A test to verify the tightness of the sealing of closing devices such as hatch covers by means of ultrasonic detection techniques.
Penetration Test: *(Leak)*	A test to verify that no visual dye penetrant indications of potential continuous leakages exist in the boundaries of a compartment by means of low surface tension liquids (i.e. dye penetrant test).

FIGURE 1 *(2024)*

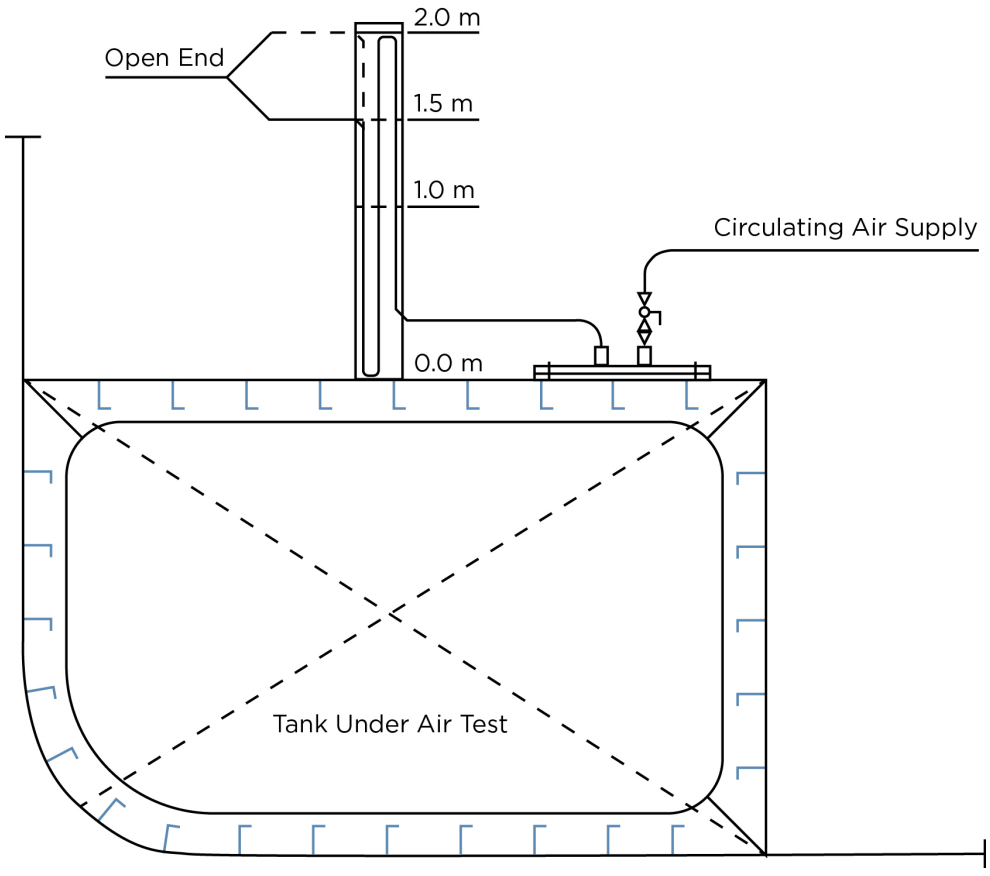
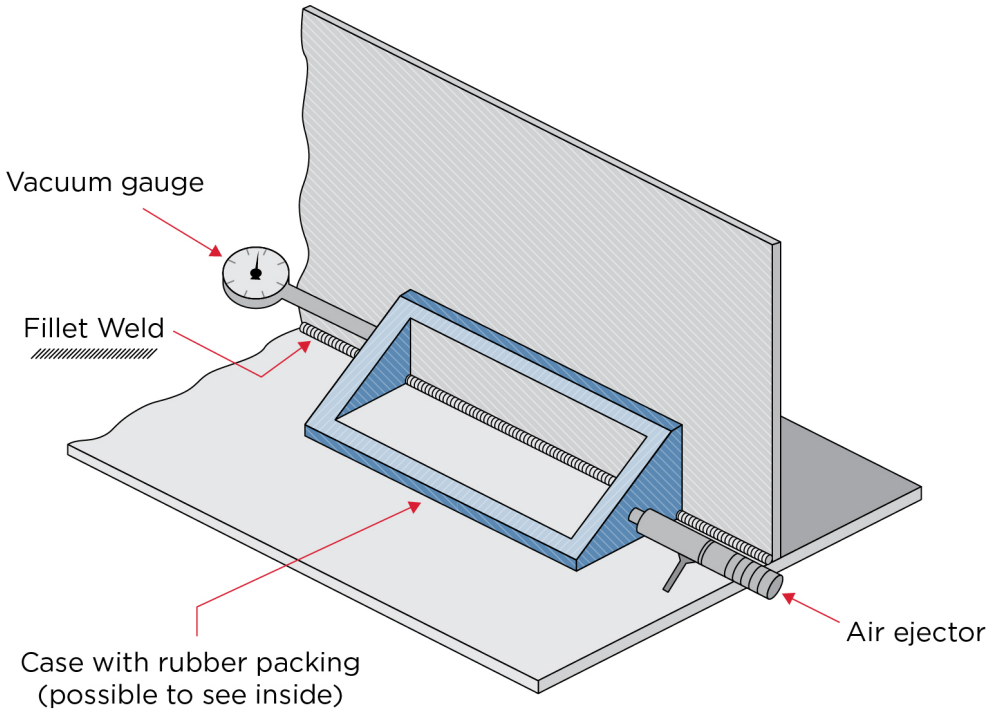


FIGURE 2 *(2024)*



3.3.3 *(2024)*

The "top of the overflow" is defined as being the top of any overflow system which is used to prevent overfilling of a tank. Such system can be an overflow pipe, airpipe, or intermediate tank. For gravity tanks (i.e., sewage, grey water and similar tanks, not filled by pumps), the top of the overflow is to be taken as the highest point of the filling line.

Gauging devices are not considered equivalent to an overflow system with the exception of fuel oil overflow tanks which are fitted with a level alam and not intended to hold fuel.

Where a tank is fitted with multiple means of overfilling preventions, the decision on which overflow system is to be used to determine the test head is to be based on the highest point to which the liquid may rise in service.

3.5 Test Procedures

3.5.1 General

Tests are to be carried out in the presence of a Surveyor at a stage sufficiently close to the completion of work with all hatches, doors, windows, etc. installed and all penetrations including pipe connections fitted, and before any ceiling and cement work is applied over the joints. Specific test requirements are given in [3.5.4] and [TABLE 1] . For the timing of the application of coating and the provision of safe access to joints, see [3.5.5] , [3.5.6] and [TABLE 3] .

3.5.2 Structural Test Procedures

3.5.2(a) Type and Time of Test. *(2024)*

Where a structural test is specified in [TABLE 1] or [TABLE 2] , a hydrostatic test in accordance with [3.5.4(a)] will be acceptable. Where practical limitations (strength of building berth, light density of liquid, etc.) prevent the performance of a hydrostatic test, a hydropneumatic test in accordance with [3.5.4(b)] may be accepted instead.

A hydrostatic test or hydropneumatic test for the confirmation of structural adequacy may be carried out while the vessel is afloat, provided the results of a leak test are confirmed to be satisfactory before the vessel is afloat.

Alternative equivalent tank testing procedures may be considered for tanks which are constructed from composite materials such as glass reinforced plastic (GRP) and fibre reinforced plastic (FRP) based on the recommendations of the composite manufacturer.

3.5.2(b) Testing Schedule for New Construction or Major Structural Conversion.

i) Tanks which are intended to hold liquids, and which form part of the watertight subdivision of the ship*, shall be tested for tightness and structural strength as indicated in [TABLE 1] and [TABLE 2] .

ii) The tank boundaries are to be tested from at least one side. The tanks for structural test are to be selected so that all representative structural members are tested for the expected tension and compression.

iii) The watertight boundaries of spaces other than tanks for structural testing may be exempted, provided that the water-tightness of boundaries of exempted spaces is verified by leak tests and inspections. Structural testing may not be exempted and the requirements for structural testing of tanks in [3-7-1/3.5.2(b).i to 3-7-1/3.5.2(b)iii.] shall apply, for ballast holds, chain lockers and a representative cargo hold if intended for in-port ballasting.

iv) Tanks which do not form part of the watertight subdivision of the ship*, may be exempted from structural testing provided that the water-tightness of boundaries of exempted spaces is verified by leak tests and inspections.

Note: * Watertight subdivision means the main transverse and longitudinal subdivisions of the ship required to satisfy the subdivision requirements of SOLAS Chapter II-1.

3.5.3 Leak Test Procedures

For the leak tests specified in [TABLE 1] , tank air tests, compressed air fillet weld tests, vacuum box tests in accordance with [3.5.4(d)] through [3.5.4(f)] , or their combination, will be acceptable. Hydrostatic or hydropneumatic tests may also be accepted as leak tests provided that [3.5.5] , [3.5.6] and [3.5.7] are complied with. Hose tests will also be acceptable for such locations as specified in [TABLE 1] , note 3, in accordance with [3.5.4(c)] .

The application of the leak test for each type of welded joint is specified in [TABLE 3] .

Air tests of joints may be carried out in the block stage provided that all work on the block that may affect the tightness of a joint is completed before the test. See also [3.5.5(a)] for the application of final coatings and [3.5.6] for the safe access to joints and the summary in [TABLE 3] .

3.5.4 Test Methods

3.5.4(a) Hydrostatic Test. ***(2024)***

Unless another liquid is approved, hydrostatic tests are to consist of filling the space with fresh water or sea water, whichever is appropriate for testing, to the level specified in [TABLE 1] or [TABLE 2] . See also [3.5.7] .

In cases where a tank is designed for cargo densities greater than sea water and testing is with fresh water or sea water, the testing pressure height is to simulate the actual loading for those greater cargo densities as far as practicable, but the test pressure is not to exceed the maximum design internal pressure at the top of the tank.

All external surfaces of the tested space are to be examined for structural distortion, bulging and buckling, other related damage and leaks..

3.5.4(b) Hydropneumatic Test.

Hydropneumatic tests, where approved, are to be such that the test condition, in conjunction with the approved liquid level and supplemental air pressure, will simulate the actual loading as far as practicable. The requirements and recommendations for tank air tests in [3.5.4(d)] will also apply to hydropneumatic tests. See also [3.5.7] .

All external surfaces of the tested space are to be examined for structural distortion, bulging and buckling, other related damage and leaks.

3.5.4(c) Hose Test. *(2024)*

Hose tests are to be carried out with the pressure in the hose nozzle maintained at least at 2 bar (2 kgf/cm^2, 30 psi) during the test. The nozzle is to have a minimum inside diameter of 12 mm (0.5 in.) and be at a perpendicular distance from the joint not exceeding 1.5 m (5 ft). The water jet is to impinge directly upon the weld.

Commentary:

Where a hose test is not practical because of possible damage to machinery, electrical equipment insulation or outfitting items, a careful visual examination of welded connections, supported where necessary by means such as a dye penetrant test or ultrasonic leak test or the equivalent, may be performed in lieu of the hose test.

End of Commentary

3.5.4(d) Tank Air Test. *(2024)*

All boundary welds, erection joints and penetrations, including pipe connections, are to be examined in accordance with approved procedure and under a stabilized pressure differential above atmospheric pressure not less than 0.15 bar (0.15 kgf/cm^2, 2.2 psi), with a leak indicating solution such as soapy water/detergent or a proprietary brand applied.

A U-tube with a height sufficient to hold a head of water corresponding to the required test pressure is to be arranged. The cross sectional area of the U-tube is not to be less than that of the pipe supplying air to the tank. Arrangements involving the use of two calibrated pressure gauges to verify the required test pressure may be accepted taking into account the provisions in F5.1 and F7.4 of IACS Recommendation 140, “Recommendation for Safe Precautions during Survey and Testing of Pressurized Systems”.

For acceptance of other effective methods of air testing, including compressed air fillet weld testing or vacuum testing, see [3.5.4(i)] .

A double inspection is to be made of tested welds. The first is to be immediately upon applying the leak indication solution; the second is to be after approximately four or five minutes, without further application of leak indication solution, in order to detect those smaller leaks which may take time to appear.

3.5.4(e) Compressed Air Fillet Weld Test. *(2024)*

In this air test, compressed air is injected from one end of a fillet welded joint and the pressure verified at the other end of the joint by a pressure gauge. Pressure gauges are to be arranged so that an air pressure of at least 0.15 bar (0.15 kgf/cm^2, 2.2 psi) can be verified at each end of all passages within the portion being tested.

Where a leaking test of partial penetration welding is required and the root face is sufficiently large such as 6-8 mm (0.24-0.32 inch), the compressed air test is to be applied in the same manner as for a fillet weld.

Commentary:

For limited portions of the partial penetration or fillet welded joints forming tank boundaries, such as corners and section of the weld adjacent to the testing apparatus, the attending Surveyor may accept the use of Magnetic Particle Inspection or Dye Penetration examination as an alternative to fillet air testing.

End of Commentary

3.5.4(f) Vacuum Box Test.

A box (vacuum testing box) with air connections, gauges and an inspection window is placed over the joint with a leak indicating solution applied to the weld cap vicinity. The air within the box is removed by an ejector to create a vacuum of 0.20 bar (0.20 kgf/cm^2, 2.9 psi) – 0.26 bar (0.27 kgf/cm^2, 3.8 psi) inside the box.

3.5.4(g) Ultrasonic Test.

An ultrasonic echo transmitter is to be arranged inside of a compartment and a receiver is to be arranged on the outside. The watertight/weathertight boundaries of the compartment are scanned with the receiver in order to detect an ultrasonic leak indication. A location where sound is detectable by the receiver indicates a leakage in the sealing of the compartment.

3.5.4(h) Penetration Test.

A test of butt welds or other weld joints uses the application of a low surface tension liquid at one side of a compartment boundary or structural arrangement. If no liquid is detected on the opposite sides of the boundaries after the expiration of a defined period of time, this indicates tightness of the boundaries. In certain cases, a developer solution may be painted or sprayed on the other side of the weld to aid leak detection.

3.5.4(i) Other Tests. ***(2024)***

Acceptance of other methods, except as provided in [5] , is subject to the submission of full particulars prior to the commencement of testing.

3.5.5 Application of Coating

3.5.5(a) Final Coating. ***(2024)***

For butt joints welded by an automatic process, the final coating may be applied any time before the completion of a leak test of spaces bounded by the joints, provided that the welds have been carefully visually inspected by the attending Surveyor.

Surveyors reserve the right to require a leak test prior to the application of final coating over automatic erection butt welds.

For all other joints, the final coating is to be applied after the completion of the leak test of the joint. See also [TABLE 3] .

3.5.5(b) Temporary Coating.

Any temporary coating which may conceal defects or leaks is to be applied at the time as specified for the final coating (see [3.5.5(a)]). This requirement does not apply to shop primer.

3.5.6 Safe Access to Joints

For leak tests, safe access to all joints under examination is to be provided. See also [TABLE 3] .

3.5.7 Hydrostatic or Hydropneumatic Tightness Test

In cases where the hydrostatic or hydropneumatic tests are applied instead of a specific leak test, examined boundaries must be dew-free, otherwise small leaks are not visible.

TABLE 1
Testing Requirements for Tanks and Boundaries
(1 July 2024)

	Tank or Boundary to be Tested	*Test Type*	*Test Head or Pressure*	*Remarks*
1	Double bottom tanks [4]	Leak & Structural [1]	The greater of - top of the overflow[10], - to 2.4 m (8 ft) above top of tank [2], or - to bulkhead deck	
2	Double bottom voids [5]	Leak	See [3-7-1/3.5.4(d) through 3-7-1/3.5.4(f)] , as applicable	Including pump room double bottom and bunker tank protection double hull required by MARPOL Annex I
3	Double side tanks	Leak & Structural [1]	The greater of - top of the overflow[10], - to 2.4 m (8 ft) above top of tank [2], or - to bulkhead deck	
4	Double side voids	Leak	See [3-7-1/3.5.4(d) through 3-7-1/3.5.4(f)] , as applicable	
5	Deep tanks other than those listed elsewhere in this table	Leak & Structural [1]	The greater of - top of the overflow[10], or - to 2.4 m (8 ft) above top of tank [2]	
6	Cargo oil tanks	Leak & Structural [1]	The greater of - top of the overflow[10], - to 2.4 m (8 ft) above top of tank [2], or - to top of tank [2] plus the design vapour pressure	
7	Ballast hold of bulk carriers	Leak & Structural [1]	To top of cargo hatch coaming	See item 16 for hatch covers.
8	Peak tanks	Leak & Structural [1]	The greater of - top of the overflow[10], or - to 2.4 m (8 ft) above top of tank [2]	After peak to be tested after installation of stern tube.
9	.1 Fore peak spaces with equipment	Leak	See [3-7-1/3.5.4(c) through 3-7-1/3.5.4(f),] as applicable	
	.2 Fore peak voids	Leak	See [3-7-1/3.5.4(d) through 3-7-1/3.5.4(f),] as applicable	
	.3 Aft peak spaces with equipment	Leak	See [3-7-1/3.5.4(c) through 3-7-1/3.5.4(f),] , as applicable	

	Tank or Boundary to be Tested	*Test Type*	*Test Head or Pressure*	*Remarks*
	.4 Aft peak voids	Leak	See [3-7-1/3.5.4(d) through 3-7-1/3.5.4(f),] as applicable	After peak to be tested after installation of stern tube.
10	Cofferdams	Leak	See [3-7-1/3.5.4(d) through 3-7-1/3.5.4(f),] as applicable	
11	.1 Watertight bulkheads	Leak [8]	See [3-7-1/3.5.4(c) through 3-7-1/3.5.4(f),] as applicable [7]	
	.2 Superstructure end bulkheads	Leak	See [3-7-1/3.5.4(c) through 3-7-1/3.5.4(f),] as applicable	
	.3 Cable penetrations in watertight/weathertight bulkheads	Hose	See [3.5.4(c)]	
12	Watertight doors below freeboard or bulkhead deck	Leak [6, 7]	See [3-7-1/3.5.4(c) through 3-7-1/3.5.4(f),] as applicable	See 3-2-9/9.11 for additional test at the manufacturer.
13	Double plate rudder blades	Leak	See [3-7-1/3.5.4(d) through 3-7-1/3.5.4(f),] as applicable	
14	Shaft tunnels clear of deep tanks	Leak [3]	See [3-7-1/3.5.4(c) through 3-7-1/3.5.4(f),] as applicable	
15	Shell doors	Leak [3]	See [3-7-1/3.5.4(c) through 3-7-1/3.5.4(f),] as applicable	
16	Weathertight hatch covers and closing appliances	Leak[3, 7]	See [3-7-1/3.5.4(c) through 3-7-1/3.5.4(f),] as applicable	Hatch covers closed by tarpaulins and battens excluded
17	Dual purpose tanks/dry cargo hatch covers	Leak[3, 7]	See [3-7-1/3.5.4(c) through 3-7-1/3.5.4(f),] as applicable	In addition to structural test in item 6 or 7
18	Chain lockers	Leak & Structural[1]	Top of chain pipe	
19	L.O. sump tanks and other similar tanks/spaces under main engine	Leak[9]	See [3-7-1/3.5.4(c) through 3-7-1/3.5.4(f),] as applicable	
20	Ballast ducts	Leak & Structural [1]	The greater of - ballast pump maximum pressure, or - setting of any pressure relief valve	
21	Fuel oil tanks	Leak & Structural [1]	The greater of - top of the overflow[10], or - to 2.4 m (8 ft) above top of tank [2], or - to top of tank [2] plus the design vapour pressure, or - to bulkhead deck	

	Tank or Boundary to be Tested	*Test Type*	*Test Head or Pressure*	*Remarks*
22	Fuel oil overflow tanks not intended to hold fuel	Leak & Structural [1]	The greater of - top of the overflow[10], - to 2.4 m (8 ft) above top of tank[2], or - to bulkhead deck	
23	Azimuthing Pod	Leak	See [3-7-1/3.5.4(c) through 3-7-1/3.5.4(f),] as applicable	

Notes:

1 Refer to [3.5.2(b)] .

2 Top of tank is the deck forming the top of the tank, excluding any hatchways

3 Hose Test may also be considered as a medium of the test. See [3.3.2] .

4 Including tanks arranged in accordance with the provisions of SOLAS regulation II-1/9.4

5 Including duct keels and dry compartments arranged in accordance with the provisions of SOLAS regulation II-1/11.2 and II-1/9.4 respectively, and/or oil fuel tank protection and pump room bottom protection arranged in accordance with the provisions of MARPOL Annex I, Chapter 3, Part A regulation 12A and Chapter 4, Part A, regulation 22, respectively.

6 Where water tightness of a watertight door has not confirmed by prototype test, testing by filling watertight spaces with water is to be carried out. See SOLAS regulation II-1/16.2 and MSC.1/Circ.1572/Rev.1.

7 As an alternative to the hose testing, other testing methods listed in [3.5.4(g)] through [3.5.4(i)] may be applicable subject to adequacy of such testing methods being verified. See SOLAS regulation II-1/11.1. For watertight bulkheads (item 11.1) alternatives to the hose testing may only be used where a hose test is not practicable.

8 A “Leak and structural test”, see [3.5.2(b)] , is to be carried out for a representative cargo hold if intended for in-port ballasting. The filling level requirement for testing cargo holds intended for in-port ballasting is to be the maximum loading that will occur in-port as indicated in the loading manual.

9 Where L.O. sump tanks and other similar spaces under main engines intended to hold liquid form part of the watertight subdivision of the ship, they are to be tested as per the requirements of Item 5, Deep tanks other than those listed elsewhere in this table.

10 Refer to [3.3.3] .

TABLE 2
Additional Testing Requirements for Vessels or Tanks of Special Service
(2024)

	Type of Vessels or Tanks	*Structures to be Tested*	*Type of Testing*	*Hydrostatic Testing Head*	*Remarks*
1	Liquefied Gas Carriers	Ballast or Fuel Oil Tanks adjacent to or between Cargo Tank Hold Spaces	Leak & Structural	The greater of - the top of overflow, or - to 2.4 m (8 ft.) above top of tank [2]	See 5C-8-4/20 for testing requirements applicable to integral cargo tanks, independent

	Type of Vessels or Tanks	*Structures to be Tested*	*Type of Testing*	*Hydrostatic Testing Head*	*Remarks*
					cargo tanks and hull structure supporting membrane or semi-membrane cargo tanks.
2	Edible Liquid Tanks	Independent Tanks	Leak & Structural[1]	The greater of - the top of overflow[3], or - to 0.9 m (3 ft.) above top of tank [2]	
3	Chemical Carriers	Integral or Independent Tanks	Leak & Structural[1]	The greater of - to 2.4 m (8 ft.) above top of tank [2], or - to top of tank [2] plus the design vapour pressure	Where a cargo tank is designed for the carriage of cargoes with specific gravities larger than 1.0, see [3.5.4(a)] .

Notes:

1 See [3.5.2(b)] .

2 Top of tank is the deck forming the top of the tank, excluding any hatchways.

3 Refer to [3.3.3] .

TABLE 3
Application of Leak Testing, Coating and Provision of Safe Access for Type of Welded Joints
(2024)

Type of Welded Joints		*Leak Testing*	*Coating [1]*		*Safe Access [2]*	
			Before Leak Testing	*After Leak Testing & Before Structural Test*	*Leak Test*	*Structural Test*
Butt	Automatic	Not required	Allowed [3]	N/A	Not required	Not required
	Manual or Semi-automatic [4]	Required	Not allowed	Allowed	Required	Not required
Fillet	Boundary including penetrations	Required	Not allowed	Allowed	Required	Not required

Notes:

1 Coating refers to internal (tank/hold coating), where applied, and external (shell/deck) painting. It does not refer to shop primer.

2 Temporary means of access for verification of the leak testing.

3 The condition applies provided that the welds have been carefully visually inspected by the attending Surveyor.

4 Flux Core Arc Welding (FCAW) semiautomatic butt welds need not be tested provided that careful visual inspections show continuous uniform weld profile shape, free from repairs, and the results of the Rule and Surveyor required NDE testing show no significant defects.

5 Testing Requirements for Ships Built in Compliance with SOLAS 1974 as Amended (Including Ships that are to Comply with the Requirements in Parts 5A & 5B) - Ships with Granted Test Exemption or Equivalent Test *(2024)*

5.1 *(2024)*

Testing procedures are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of [3] in association with the following alternative procedures for [3.5.2(b)] "Testing Schedule for New Construction or Major Structural Conversion".

5.3

The tank boundaries are to be tested from at least one side. The tanks for structural test are to be selected so that all representative structural members are tested for the expected tension and compression.

5.5

Structural tests are to be carried out for at least one tank of a group of tanks having structural similarity (i.e., same design conditions, alike structural configurations with only minor localized differences determined to be acceptable by the attending Surveyor) on each vessel provided all other tanks are tested for leaks by an air test. The acceptance of leak testing using an air test instead of a structural test does not apply to cargo space boundaries adjacent to other compartments in tankers and combination carriers or to the boundaries of tanks for segregated cargoes or pollutant cargoes in other types of ships.

5.7

Additional tanks may require structural testing if found necessary after the structural testing of the first tank.

5.9 *(2024)*

For tanks which are less than 2.0 m^3 (70.6 ft^3) in volume, structural testing may be replaced by leak testing.

5.11 *(2024)*

Where the structural adequacy of the tanks and spaces of a vessel were verified by the structural testing required by either [3] or [5.5] , subsequent vessels in the series (i.e. sister ships built from the same plans at the same shipyard) may be exempted from structural testing of tanks, provided that:

i) Water-tightness of boundaries of all tanks and spaces are verified by leak tests and thorough inspections are carried out.

ii) Structural testing is carried out for at least one tank or space of each type among all tanks/spaces of each sister vessel.

iii) Additional tanks and spaces may require structural testing if found necessary after the structural testing of the first tank or if deemed necessary by the attending Surveyor.

For cargo space boundaries adjacent to other compartments in tankers and combination carriers or boundaries of tanks for segregated cargoes or pollutant cargoes in other types of ships, structural tests are to be carried out for at least one tank of a group of tanks having structural similarity (i.e., same design conditions, alike structural configurations with only minor localized differences determined to be acceptable by the attending Surveyor) on each vessel provided all other tanks are tested for leaks by an air test.

5.13 *(2024)*

Sister ships built (i.e., keel laid) two years or more after the delivery of the last ship of the series, may be tested in accordance with [5.11] at the discretion of the Surveyor, provided that:

i) General workmanship has been maintained (i.e., there has been no discontinuity of shipbuilding or significant changes in the construction methodology or technology at the yard and shipyard personnel are appropriately qualified and demonstrate an adequate level of workmanship as determined by the Surveyor), and

ii) An NDT plan is implemented and evaluated by the Surveyor for the tanks not subject to structural tests. Shipbuilding quality standards for the hull structure during new construction are to be reviewed and agreed during the kick-off meeting. The work is to be carried out in accordance with the Rules and under attendance of the Surveyor.

7 Testing Requirements for Ships Not Built in Compliance with SOLAS 1974 as Amended *(2024)*

7.1

Testing procedures are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of [3] in association with the following alternative procedures for [3.5.2(b)] "Testing Schedule for New Construction or Major Structural Conversion".

7.3

The tank boundaries are to be tested from at least one side. The tanks for structural test are to be selected so that all representative structural members are tested for the expected tension and compression.

7.5

The requirements given in [TABLE 1] to structurally test tanks to 2.4 m (8 ft) above the top of the tank do not apply. Instead, the minimum test pressure for structural testing is to be taken as $0.3D + 0.76$ m ($0.3D +$ 2.49 ft) above the top of the tank where the top of the tank is the deck forming the top of the tank, excluding any hatchways and D is the depth of the ship in m (ft). The minimum test pressure needs not be taken greater than 2.4 m (8 ft) above the top of the tank.

7.7

Structural tests are to be carried out for at least one tank of a group of tanks having structural similarity (i.e., same design conditions, alike structural configurations with only minor localied differences determined to be acceptable by the attending Surveyor) on each vessel provided all other tanks are tested for leaks by an air test. The acceptance of leak testing using an air test instead of a structural test does not apply to cargo space boundaries adjacent to other compartments in tankers and combination carriers or the boundaries of tanks for segregated cargoes or pollutant cargoes in other types of ships.

7.9

Additional tanks may require structural testing if found necessary after the structural testing of the first tank.

7.11

For tanks which are less than 2.0 m^3 (70.6 ft^3) in volume, structural testing may be replaced by leak testing.

7.13

Where the structural adequacy of the tanks and spaces of a vessel were verified by the structural testing required by either [3] or [7.7] , subsequent vessels in the series (i.e., sister ships built from the same plans at the same shipyard) may be exempted from structural testing of tanks, provided that:

i) Watertightness of boundaries of all tanks and spaces are verified by leak tests and thorough inspections are carried out,

ii) Structural testing is carried out for at least one tank or space among all tanks/spaces of each sister vessel, and

iii) Additional tanks and spaces may require structural testing if found necessary after the structural testing of the first tank or if deemed necessary by the attending Surveyor.

For cargo space boundaries adjacent to other compartments in tankers and combination carriers or boundaries of tanks for segregated cargoes or pollutant cargoes in other types of ships, structural tests are to be carried out for at least one tank of a group of tanks having structural similarity (i.e., same design conditions, alike structural configurations with only minor localised differences determined to be acceptable by the attending Surveyor) on each vessel provided all other tanks are tested for leaks by an air test.

7.15

Sister ships built (i.e., keel laid) two years or more after the delivery of the last ship of the series, may be tested in accordance with [7.13] at the discretion of the Surveyor, provided that:

i) General workmanship has been maintained (i.e. there has been no discontinuity of shipbuilding or significant changes in the construction methodology or technology at the yard, shipyard personnel are appropriately qualified and demonstrate an adequate level of workmanship as determined by the Surveyor), and

ii) An NDT plan is implemented and evaluated by the Surveyor for the tanks not subject to structural tests. Shipbuilding quality standards for the hull structure during new construction are to be reviewed and agreed during the kick-off meeting. The work is to be carried out in accordance with the Rules and under attendance of the Surveyor.

PART 3

CHAPTER 7
Testing, Trials and Surveys During Construction - Hull

SECTION 2
Trials

1 Anchor Windlass Trials *(2024)*

This section includes requirements for tests and trials to verify conformance to goals and functional requirements outlined in the cross-referenced sections. Each windlass is to be tested under working conditions after installation onboard to demonstrate satisfactory operation. Each windlass is to be tested under working conditions after installation onboard to demonstrate satisfactory operation. Each unit is to be independently tested for braking, clutch functioning, lowering and hoisting of chain cable and anchor, proper riding of the chain over the chain lifter, proper transit of the chain through the hawse pipe and the chain pipe, and effecting proper stowage of the chain and the anchor. It is to be confirmed that anchors properly seat in the stored position and that chain stoppers function as designed, if fitted.

The mean hoisting speed, as specified in 4-5-1/5.1.4, is to be measured and verified, with each anchor and at least 82.5 m (44.5 fathoms) length of chain submerged and hanging free.

The braking capacity is to be tested by intermittently paying out and holding the chain cable by means of the application of the brake.

Where the available water depth is insufficient, the test is to be carried out in accordance with an approved test procedure.

3 <No Text>

5 <No Text>

SECTION 3
Surveys

1 Construction, Welding and Fabrication *(2025)*

For surveys of hull construction, refer to the ABS *Guide for Hull Survey for New Construction*.

For surveys of hull construction welding and fabrication, refer to Chapter 4 of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)* and the ABS *Requirements for Nondestructive Testing*.

3 Hull Castings and Forgings

For surveys in connection with the manufacture and testing of hull castings and forgings, refer to Chapter 1 of the ABS *Rules for Materials and Welding (Part 2)*.

5 Hull Piping

For surveys in connection with the manufacture and testing of hull piping, refer to Section 4-6-1.

7 Loading and Stability Information *(2024)*

7.1 Required Verifications for Loading Instrument

Before a loading instrument is accepted for the vessel, all relevant aspects of the instrument, including but not limited to the following, are to be demonstrated to the Surveyor for verification:

- The instrument is type approved, where applicable
- The instrument is based on the final data of the vessel
- The number and position of read-out points are satisfactory
- The relevant limits for all read-out points are satisfactory
- The operation of the instrument after installation onboard, in accordance with the approved test conditions has been found satisfactory
- Approved test conditions are available onboard
- An operation manual, which does not require approval, is available onboard for the instrument.

Commentary:

See IACS Recommendation No. 48 for recommendations on the approval of loading instruments.

End of Commentary

7.2 Installation Testing for Computer Software for Stability Calculations

To confirm correct working of the computer after the final or updated software has been installed, it is the responsibility of the vessel's master to perform test calculations according to the following pattern in the presence of the Surveyor:

- From the approved test conditions at least one load case (other than lightship) is to be calculated.

Note: Actual loading condition results are not suitable for checking the correct working of the computer.

- Normally, the test conditions are permanently stored in the computer.

Steps to be performed:

- Retrieve the test load case and start a calculation run; compare the stability results with those in the documentation.
- Change several items of deadweight (tank weights and the cargo weight) sufficiently to change the draft or displacement by at least 10%. The results are to be reviewed to confirm that they differ in a logical way from those of the approved test condition.
- Revise the above modified load condition to restore the initial test condition and compare the results. Confirm that the relevant input and output data of the approved test condition have been replicated.
- Alternatively, one or more test conditions can be selected and the test calculation performed by entering all deadweight data for each selected test condition into the program as if it were a proposed loading. The results are to be verified as identical to the results in the approved copy of the test conditions.

7.3 Annual Surveys

The annual surveys are to be carried-out in accordance with 7-3-2/1.1.5 of the ABS *Rules for Survey After Construction (Part 7)*.